CONTENTS

SECTION 1 GENERAL

SECTION 2 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

SECTION 3 HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

SECTION 4 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

SECTION 5 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

SECTION 6 TROUBLESHOOTING

SECTION 7 MAINTENANCE STANDARD

SECTION 8 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

SECTION 9 COMPONENT MOUNTING TORQUE

1. STRUCTURE

This service manual has been prepared as an aid to improve the quality of repairs by giving the serviceman an accurate understanding of the product and by showing him the correct way to perform repairs and make judgements. Make sure you understand the contents of this manual and use it to full effect at every opportunity.

This service manual mainly contains the necessary technical information for operations performed in a service workshop.

For ease of understanding, the manual is divided into the following sections.

SECTION 1 GENERAL

This section explains the safety hints and gives the specification of the machine and major components.

SECTION 2 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

This section explains the structure and function of each component. It serves not only to give an understanding of the structure, but also serves as reference material for troubleshooting.

SECTION 3 HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

This section explains the hydraulic circuit, single and combined operation.

SECTION 4 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

This section explains the electrical circuit, monitoring system and each component. It serves not only to give an understanding electrical system, but also serves as reference material for trouble shooting.

SECTION 5 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

This section explains the computer aided power optimization system and each component.

SECTION 6 TROUBLESHOOTING

This section explains the troubleshooting charts correlating problems to causes.

SECTION 7 MAINTENANCE STANDARD

This section gives the judgement standards when inspecting disassembled parts.

SECTION 8 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

This section explains the order to be followed when removing, installing, disassembling or assembling each component, as well as precautions to be taken for these operations.

SECTION 9 COMPONENT MOUNTING TORQUE

This section shows bolt specifications and standard torque values needed when mounting components to the machine.

The specifications contained in this shop manual are subject to change at any time and without any advance notice. Contact your HYUNDAI distributor for the latest information.

2. HOW TO READ THE SERVICE MANUAL

Distribution and updating

Any additions, amendments or other changes will be sent to HYUNDAI distributors.
Get the most up-to-date information before you start any work.

Filing method

1. See the page number on the bottom of the page.
   File the pages in correct order.
2. Following examples shows how to read the page number.
   Example 1
   2 - 3
   - Item number(2. Structure and Function)
   - Consecutive page number for each item.
3. Additional pages : Additional pages are indicated by a hyphen(-) and number after the page number. File as in the example.
   10 - 4
   10 - 4 - 1
   10 - 4 - 2
   Added pages
   10 - 5

Revised edition mark(①②③…)

When a manual is revised, an edition mark is recorded on the bottom outside corner of the pages.

Revisions

Revised pages are shown at the list of revised pages on the between the contents page and section 1 page.

Symbols

So that the shop manual can be of ample practical use, important places for safety and quality are marked with the following symbols.

Symbol	Item	Remarks
	Safety	Special safety precautions are necessary when performing the work.
		Extra special safety precautions are necessary when performing the work because it is under internal pressure.
※	Caution	Special technical precautions or other precautions for preserving standards are necessary when performing the work.

3. CONVERSION TABLE

Method of using the Conversion Table

The Conversion Table in this section is provided to enable simple conversion of figures. For details of the method of using the Conversion Table, see the example given below.

Example

1. **Method of using the Conversion Table to convert from millimeters to inches**
   Convert 55mm into inches.
   (1) Locate the number 50in the vertical column at the left side, take this as ⓐ, then draw a horizontal line from ⓐ.
   (2) Locate the number 5in the row across the top, take this as ⓑ, then draw a perpendicular line down from ⓑ.
   (3) Take the point where the two lines cross as ⓒ. This point ⓒ gives the value when converting from millimeters to inches. Therefore, 55mm = 2.165 inches.

2. Convert 550mm into inches.
   (1) The number 550 does not appear in the table, so divide by 10(Move the decimal point one place to the left) to convert it to 55mm.
   (2) Carry out the same procedure as above to convert 55mm to 2.165 inches.
   (3) The original value(550mm) was divided by 10, so multiply 2.165 inches by 10(Move the decimal point one place to the right) to return to the original value.
   This gives 550mm = 21.65 inches.

Millimeters to inches

ⓑ

1mm = 0.03937 in

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.039	0.079	0.118	0.157	0.197	0.236	0.276	0.315	0.354
10	0.394	0.433	0.472	0.512	0.551	0.591	0.630	0.669	0.709	0.748
20	0.787	0.827	0.866	0.906	0.945	0.984	1.024	1.063	1.102	1.142
30	1.181	1.220	1.260	1.299	1.339	1.378	1.417	1.457	1.496	1.536
40	1.575	1.614	1.654	1.693	1.732	1.772	1.811	1.850	1.890	1.929
ⓐ 50	1.969	2.008	2.047	2.087	2.126	ⓒ 2.165	2.205	2.244	2.283	2.323
60	2.362	2.402	2.441	2.480	2.520	2.559	2.598	2.638	2.677	2.717
70	2.756	2.795	2.835	2.874	2.913	2.953	2.992	3.032	3.071	3.110
80	3.150	3.189	3.228	3.268	3.307	3.346	3.386	3.425	3.465	3.504
90	3.543	3.583	3.622	3.661	3.701	3.740	3.780	3.819	3.858	3.898

Millimeters to inches

1mm = 0.03937in

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.039	0.079	0.118	0.157	0.197	0.236	0.276	0.315	0.354
10	0.394	0.433	0.472	0.512	0.551	0.591	0.630	0.669	0.709	0.748
20	0.787	0.827	0.866	0.906	0.945	0.984	1.024	1.063	1.102	1.142
30	1.181	1.220	1.260	1.299	1.339	1.378	1.417	1.457	1.496	1.536
40	1.575	1.614	1.654	1.693	1.732	1.772	1.811	1.850	1.890	1.929
50	1.969	2.008	2.047	2.087	2.126	2.165	2.205	2.244	2.283	2.323
60	2.362	2.402	2.441	2.480	2.520	2.559	2.598	2.638	2.677	2.717
70	2.756	2.795	2.835	2.874	2.913	2.953	2.992	3.032	3.071	3.110
80	3.150	3.189	3.228	3.268	3.307	3.346	3.386	3.425	3.465	3.504
90	3.543	3.583	3.622	3.661	3.701	3.740	3.780	3.819	3.858	3.898

Kilogram to Pound

1kg = 2.2046lb

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		2.20	4.41	6.61	8.82	11.02	13.23	15.43	17.64	19.84
10	22.05	24.25	26.46	28.66	30.86	33.07	35.27	37.48	39.68	41.89
20	44.09	46.30	48.50	50.71	51.91	55.12	57.32	59.5.	61.73	63.93
30	66.14	68.34	70.55	72.75	74.96	77.16	79.37	81.57	83.78	85.98
40	88.18	90.39	92.59	94.80	97.00	99.21	101.41	103.62	105.82	108.03
50	110.23	112.44	114.64	116.85	119.05	121.25	123.46	125.66	127.87	130.07
60	132.28	134.48	136.69	138.89	141.10	143.30	145.51	147.71	149.91	152.12
70	154.32	156.53	158.73	160.94	163.14	165.35	167.55	169.76	171.96	174.17
80	176.37	178.57	180.78	182.98	185.19	187.39	189.60	191.80	194.01	196.21
90	198.42	200.62	202.83	205.03	207.24	209.44	211.64	213.85	216.05	218.26

Liter to U.S. Gallon

1 l = 0.2642 U.S.Gal

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.264	0.528	0.793	1.057	1.321	1.585	1.849	2.113	2.378
10	2.642	2.906	3.170	3.434	3.698	3.963	4.227	4.491	4.755	5.019
20	5.283	5.548	5.812	6.6076	6.340	6.604	6.869	7.133	7.397	7.661
30	7.925	8.189	8.454	8.718	8.982	9.246	9.510	9.774	10.039	10.303
40	10.567	10.831	11.095	11.359	11.624	11.888	12.152	12.416	12.680	12.944
50	13.209	13.473	13.737	14.001	14.265	14.529	14.795	15.058	15.322	15.586
60	15.850	16.115	16.379	16.643	16.907	17.171	17.435	17.700	17.964	18.228
70	18.492	18.756	19.020	19.285	19.549	19.813	20.077	20.341	20.605	20.870
80	21.134	21.398	21.662	21.926	22.190	22.455	22.719	22.983	23.247	23.511
90	23.775	24.040	24.304	24.568	24.832	25.096	25.631	25.625	25.889	26.153

Liter to U.K. Gallon

1 l = 0.21997 U.K.Gal

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.220	0.440	0.660	0.880	1.100	1.320	1.540	1.760	1.980
10	2.200	2.420	2.640	2.860	3.080	3.300	3.520	3.740	3.950	4.179
20	4.399	4.619	4.839	5.059	5.279	5.499	5.719	5.939	6.159	6.379
30	6.599	6.819	7.039	7.259	7.479	7.969	7.919	8.139	8.359	8.579
40	8.799	9.019	9.239	9.459	9.679	9.899	10.119	10.339	10.559	10.778
50	10.998	11.281	11.438	11.658	11.878	12.098	12.318	12.528	12.758	12.978
60	13.198	13.418	13.638	13.858	14.078	14.298	14.518	14.738	14.958	15.178
70	15.398	15.618	15.838	16.058	16.278	16.498	16.718	16.938	17.158	17.378
80	17.598	17.818	18.037	18.257	18.477	18.697	18.917	19.137	19.357	19.577
90	19.797	20.017	20.237	20.457	20.677	20.897	21.117	21.337	21.557	21.777

kgf · m to lbf · ft

1kgf · m = 7.233lbf · ft

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
		7.2	14.5	21.7	28.9	36.2	43.4	50.6	57.9	65.1
10	72.3	79.6	86.8	94.0	101.3	108.5	115.7	123.0	130.2	137.4
20	144.7	151.9	159.1	166.4	173.6	180.8	188.1	195.3	202.5	209.8
30	217.0	224.2	231.5	238.7	245.9	253.2	260.4	267.6	274.9	282.1
40	289.3	396.6	303.8	311.0	318.3	325.5	332.7	340.0	347.2	354.4
50	361.7	368.9	376.1	383.4	390.6	397.8	405.1	412.3	419.5	426.8
60	434.0	441.2	448.5	455.7	462.9	470.2	477.4	484.6	491.8	499.1
70	506.3	513.5	520.8	528.0	535.2	542.5	549.7	556.9	564.2	571.4
80	578.6	585.9	593.1	600.3	607.6	614.8	622.0	629.3	636.5	643.7
90	651.0	658.2	665.4	672.7	679.9	687.1	694.4	701.6	708.8	716.1
100	723.3	730.5	737.8	745.0	752.2	759.5	766.7	773.9	781.2	788.4
110	795.6	802.9	810.1	817.3	824.6	831.8	839.0	846.3	853.5	860.7
120	868.0	875.2	882.4	889.7	896.9	904.1	911.4	918.6	925.8	933.1
130	940.3	947.5	954.8	962.0	969.2	976.5	983.7	990.9	998.2	10005.4
140	1012.6	1019.9	1027.1	1034.3	1041.5	1048.8	1056.0	1063.2	1070.5	1077.7
150	1084.9	1092.2	1099.4	1106.6	1113.9	1121.1	1128.3	1135.6	1142.8	1150.0
160	1157.3	1164.5	1171.7	1179.0	1186.2	1193.4	1200.7	1207.9	1215.1	1222.4
170	1129.6	1236.8	1244.1	1251.3	1258.5	1265.8	1273.0	1280.1	1287.5	1294.7
180	1301.9	1309.2	1316.4	1323.6	1330.9	1338.1	1345.3	1352.6	1359.8	1367.0
190	1374.3	1381.5	1388.7	1396.0	1403.2	1410.4	1417.7	1424.9	1432.1	1439.4

kgf/cm^2 to lbf/in^2

1kgf / cm^2 = 14.2233lbf / in^2

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
		14.2	28.4	42.7	56.9	71.1	85.3	99.6	113.8	128.0
10	142.2	156.5	170.7	184.9	199.1	213.4	227.6	241.8	256.0	270.2
20	284.5	298.7	312.9	327.1	341.4	355.6	369.8	384.0	398.3	412.5
30	426.7	440.9	455.1	469.4	483.6	497.8	512.0	526.3	540.5	554.7
40	568.9	583.2	597.4	611.6	625.8	640.1	654.3	668.5	682.7	696.9
50	711.2	725.4	739.6	753.8	768.1	782.3	796.5	810.7	825.0	839.2
60	853.4	867.6	881.8	896.1	910.3	924.5	938.7	953.0	967.2	981.4
70	995.6	1010	1024	1038	1053	1067	1081	1095	1109	1124
80	1138	1152	1166	1181	1195	1209	1223	1237	1252	1266
90	1280	1294	1309	1323	1337	1351	1365	1380	1394	1408
100	1422	1437	1451	1465	1479	1493	1508	1522	1536	1550
110	1565	1579	1593	1607	1621	1636	1650	1664	1678	1693
120	1707	1721	1735	1749	1764	1778	1792	1806	1821	1835
130	1849	2863	1877	1892	1906	1920	1934	1949	1963	1977
140	1991	2005	2020	2034	2048	2062	2077	2091	2105	2119
150	2134	2148	2162	2176	2190	2205	2219	2233	2247	2262
160	2276	2290	2304	2318	2333	2347	2361	2375	2389	2404
170	2418	2432	2446	2460	2475	2489	2503	2518	2532	2546
180	2560	2574	2589	5603	2617	2631	2646	2660	2674	2688
200	2845	2859	2873	2887	2901	2916	2930	2944	2958	2973
210	2987	3001	3015	3030	3044	3058	3072	3086	3101	3115
220	3129	3143	3158	3172	3186	3200	3214	3229	3243	3257
230	3271	3286	3300	3314	3328	3343	3357	3371	3385	3399
240	3414	3428	3442	3456	3470	3485	3499	3513	3527	3542

TEMPERATURE

Fahrenheit-Centigrade Conversion.

A simple way to convert a fahrenheit temperature reading into a centigrade temperature reading or vice verse is to enter the accompanying table in the center or boldface column of figures.

These figures refer to the temperature in either Fahrenheit or Centigrade degrees.

If it is desired to convert from Fahrenheit to Centigrade degrees, consider the center column as a table of Fahrenheit temperatures and read the corresponding Centigrade temperature in the column at the left.

If it is desired to convert from Centigrade to Fahrenheit degrees, consider the center column as a table of Centigrade values, and read the corresponding Fahrenheit temperature on the right.

˚C		˚F	˚C		˚F	˚C		˚F	˚C		˚F
-40.4	-40	-40.0	-11.7	11	51.8	7.8	46	114.8	27.2	81	117.8
-37.2	-35	-31.0	-11.1	12	53.6	8.3	47	116.6	27.8	82	179.6
-34.4	-30	-22.0	-10.6	13	55.4	8.9	48	118.4	28.3	83	181.4
-31.7	-25	-13.0	-10.0	14	57.2	9.4	49	120.2	28.9	84	183.2
-28.9	-20	-4.0	-9.4	15	59.0	10.0	50	122.0	29.4	85	185.0
-28.3	-19	-2.2	-8.9	16	60.8	10.6	51	123.8	30.0	86	186.8
-27.8	-18	-0.4	-8.3	17	62.6	11.1	52	125.6	30.6	87	188.6
-27.2	-17	1.4	-7.8	18	64.4	11.7	53	127.4	31.1	88	190.4
-26.7	-16	3.2	-6.7	20	68.0	12.8	55	131.0	32.2	90	194.0
-26.1	-15	5.0	-6.7	20	68.0	12.8	55	131.0	32.2	90	194.0
-25.6	-14	6.8	-6.1	21	69.8	13.3	56	132.8	32.8	91	195.8
-25.0	-13	8.6	-5.6	22	71.6	13.9	57	134.6	33.3	92	197.6
-24.4	-12	10.4	-5.0	23	73.4	14.4	58	136.4	33.9	93	199.4
-23.9	-11	12.2	-4.4	24	75.2	15.0	59	138.2	34.4	94	201.2
-23.3	-10	14.0	-3.9	25	77.0	15.6	60	140.0	35.0	95	203.0
-22.8	-9	15.8	-3.3	26	78.8	16.1	61	141.8	35.6	96	204.8
-22.2	-8	17.6	-2.8	27	80.6	16.7	62	143.6	36.1	97	206.6
-21.7	-7	19.4	-2.2	28	82.4	17.2	63	145.4	36.7	98	208.4
-21.1	-6	21.2	-1.7	29	84.2	17.8	64	147.2	37.2	99	210.2
-20.6	-5	23.0	-1.1	35	95.0	21.1	70	158.0	51.7	125	257.0
-20.0	-4	24.8	-0.6	31	87.8	18.9	66	150.8	40.6	105	221.0
-19.4	-3	26.6	0	32	89.6	19.4	67	152.6	43.3	110	230.0
-18.9	-2	28.4	0.6	33	91.4	20.0	68	154.4	46.1	115	239.0
-18.3	-1	30.2	1.1	34	93.2	20.6	69	156.2	48.9	120	248.0
-17.8	0	32.0	1.7	35	95.0	21.1	70	158.0	51.7	125	257.0
-17.2	1	33.8	2.2	36	96.8	21.7	71	159.8	54.4	130	266.0
-16.7	2	35.6	2.8	37	98.6	22.2	72	161.6	57.2	135	275.0
-16.1	3	37.4	3.3	38	100.4	22.8	73	163.4	60.0	140	284.0
-15.6	4	39.2	3.9	39	102.2	23.3	74	165.2	62.7	145	293.0
-15.0	5	41.0	4.4	40	104.0	23.9	75	167.0	65.6	150	302.0
-14.4	6	42.8	5.0	41	105.8	24.4	76	168.8	68.3	155	311.0
-13.9	7	44.6	5.6	42	107.6	25.0	77	170.6	71.1	160	320.0
-13.3	8	46.4	6.1	43	109.4	25.6	78	172.4	73.9	165	329.0
-12.8	9	48.2	6.7	44	111.2	26.1	79	174.2	76.7	170	338.0
-12.2	10	50.0	7.2	45	113.0	26.7	80	176.0	79.4	172	347.0

SECTION 1 GENERAL

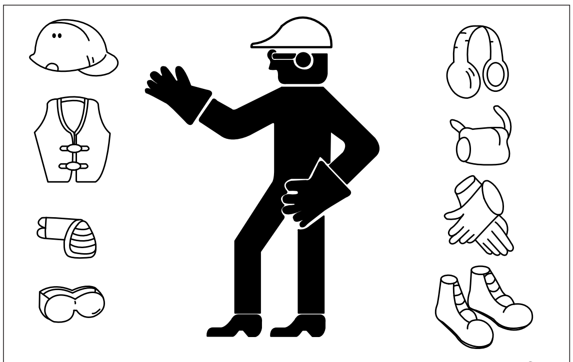
GROUP 1 SAFETY

FOLLOW SAFE PROCEDURE

Unsafe work practices are dangerous. Understand service procedure before doing work; Do not attempt shortcuts.

WEAR PROTECTIVE CLOTHING

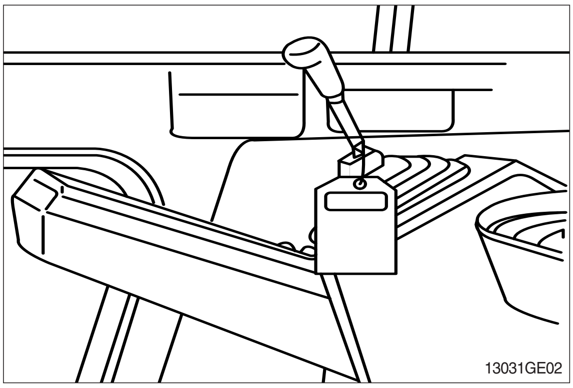
Wear close fitting clothing and safety equipment appropriate to the job.



13031GE01

WARN OTHERS OF SERVICE WORK

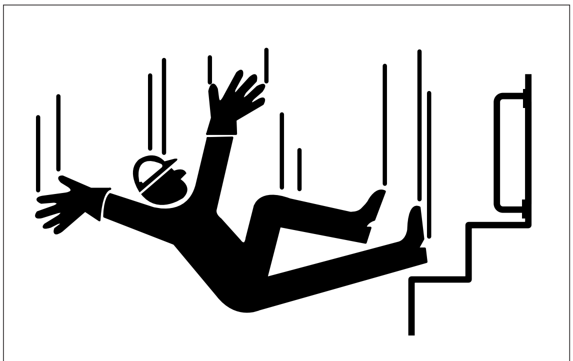
Unexpected machine movement can cause serious injury.
Before performing any work on the excavator, attach a 「**Do Not Operate**」 tag on the right side control lever.



13031GE02

USE HANDHOLDS AND STEPS

Falling is one of the major causes of personal injury.
When you get on and off the machine, always maintain a three point contact with the steps and handrails and face the machine. Do not use any controls as handholds.
Never jump on or off the machine. Never mount or dismount a moving machine.
Be careful of slippery conditions on platforms, steps, and handrails when leaving the machine.



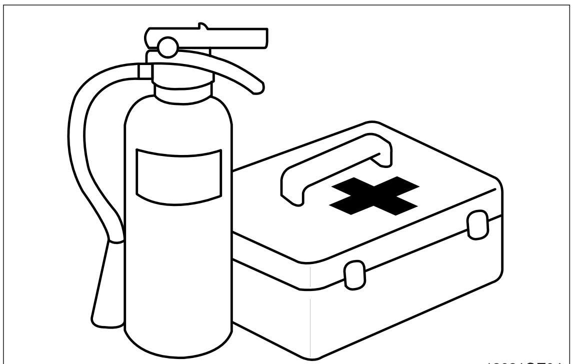
13031GE03

PREPARE FOR EMERGENCIES

Be prepared if a fire starts.

Keep a first aid kit and fire extinguisher handy.

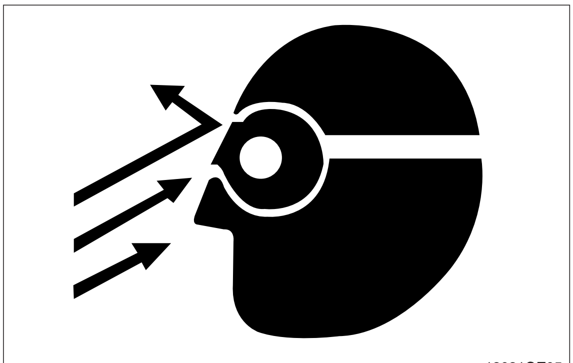
Keep emergency numbers for doctors, ambulance service, hospital, and fire department near your telephone.



13031GE04

PROTECT AGAINST FLYING DEBRIS

Guard against injury from flying pieces of metal or debris; Wear goggles or safety glasses.

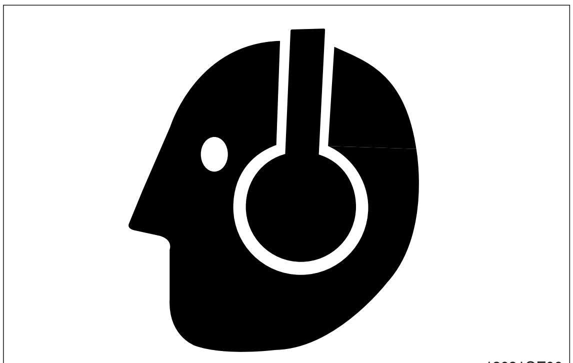


13031GE05

PROTECT AGAINST NOISE

Prolonged exposure to loud noise can cause impairment or loss of hearing.

Wear a suitable hearing protective device such as earmuffs or earplugs to protect against objectionable or uncomfortable loud noises.

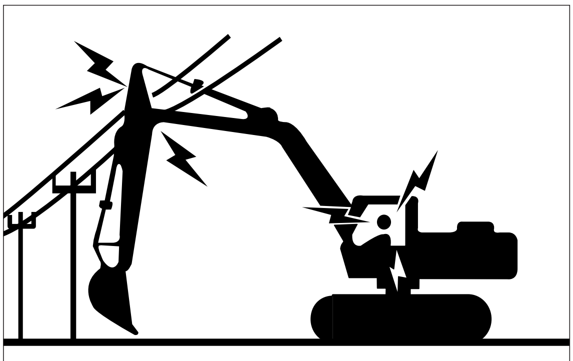


13031GE06

AVOID POWER LINES

Serious injury or death can result from contact with electric lines.

Never move any part of the machine or load closer to electric line than 3m(10ft) plus twice the line insulator length.

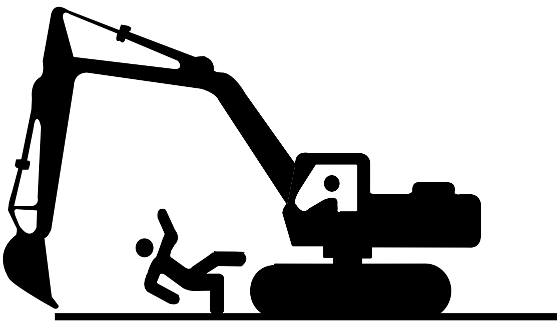


13031GE07

KEEP RIDERS OFF EXCAVATOR

Only allow the operator on the excavator. Keep riders off.

Riders on excavator are subject to injury such as being struck by foreign objects and being thrown off the excavator. Riders also obstruct the operator's view resulting in the excavator being operated in an unsafe manner.



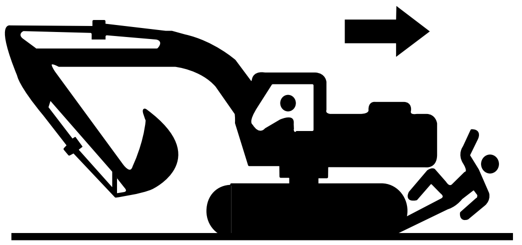
13031GE08

MOVE AND OPERATE MACHINE SAFELY

Bystanders can be run over. Know the location of bystanders before moving, swinging, or operating the machine.

Always keep the travel alarm in working condition. It warns people when the excavator starts to move.

Use a signal person when moving, swinging, or operating the machine in congested areas. Coordinate hand signals before starting the excavator.

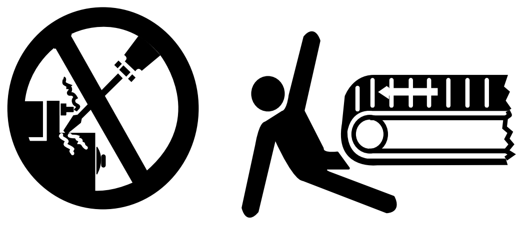


13031GE09

OPERATE ONLY FORM OPERATOR'S SEAT

Avoid possible injury machine damage. Do not start engine by shorting across starter terminals.

NEVER start engine while standing on ground. Start engine only from operator's seat.



13031GE26

PARK MACHINE SAFELY

Before working on the machine:

· Park machine on a level surface.
· Lower bucket to the ground.
· Turn auto idle switch off.
· Run engine at 1/2 speed without load for 2 minutes.
· Turn key switch to OFF to stop engine. Remove key from switch.
· Move pilot control shutoff lever to locked position.
· Allow engine to cool.

SUPPORT MACHINE PROPERLY

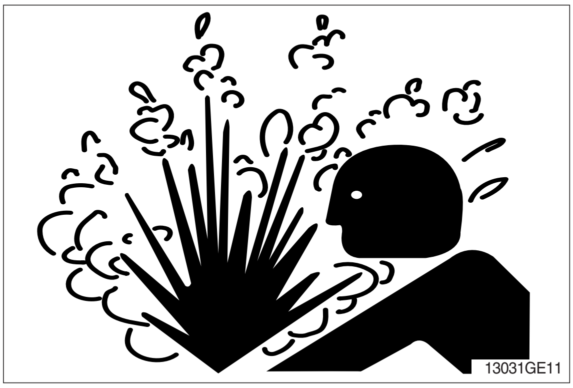
Always lower the attachment or implement to the ground before you work on the machine. If you must work on a lifted machine or attachment, securely support the machine or attachment.

Do not support the machine on cinder blocks, hollow tiles, or props that may crumble under continuous load.
Do not work under a machine that is supported solely by a jack. Follow recommended procedures in this manual.

SERVICE COOLING SYSTEM SAFELY

Explosive release of fluids from pressurized cooling system can cause serious burns.

Shut off engine. Only remove filler cap when cool enough to touch with bare hands.



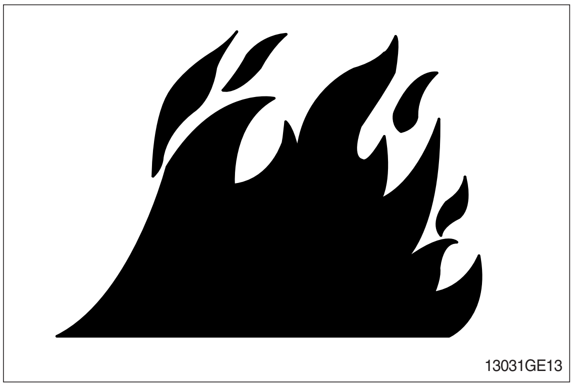
HANDLE FLUIDS SAFELY-AVOID FIRES

Handle fuel with care; It is highly flammable. Do not refuel the machine while smoking or when near open flame or sparks. Always stop engine before refueling machine.
Fill fuel tank outdoors.

Store flammable fluids away from fire hazards. Do not incinerate or puncture pressurized containers.

Make sure machine is clean of trash, grease, and debris.

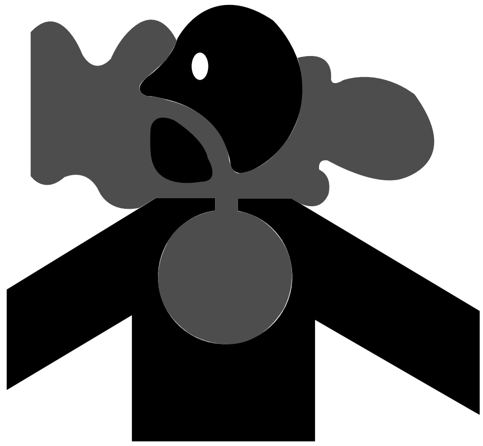
Do not store oily rags; They can ignite and burn spontaneously.



BEWARE OF EXHAUST FUMES

Prevent asphyxiation. Engine exhaust fumes can cause sickness or death.

If you must operate in a building, be positive there is adequate ventilation. Either use an exhaust pipe extension to remove the exhaust fumes or open doors and windows to bring enough outside air into the area.



13031GE14

REMOVE PAINT BEFORE WELDING OR HEATING

Avoid potentially toxic fumes and dust.

Hazardous fumes can be generated when paint is heated by welding, soldering, or using a torch.

Do all work outside or in a well ventilated area. Dispose of paint and solvent properly.

Remove paint before welding or heating:

· If you sand or grind paint, avoid breathing the dust.
  Wear an approved respirator.

· If you use solvent or paint stripper, remove stripper with soap and water before welding. Remove solvent or paint stripper containers and other flammable material from area. Allow fumes to disperse at least 15 minutes before welding or heating.

ILLUMINATE WORK AREA SAFELY

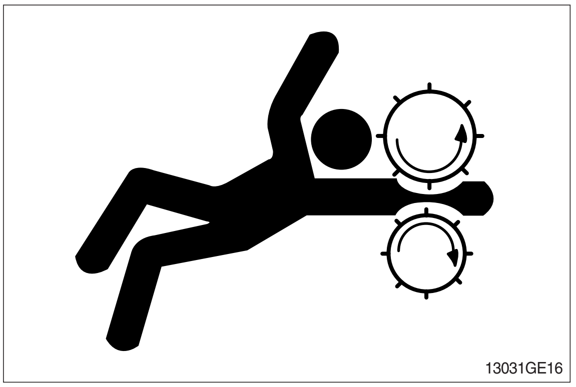
Illuminate your work area adequately but safely. Use a portable safety light for working inside or under the machine. Make sure the bulb is enclosed by a wire cage. The hot filament of an accidentally broken bulb can ignite spilled fuel or oil.

13031GE15

SERVICE MACHINE SAFELY

Tie long hair behind your head. Do not wear a necktie, scarf, loose clothing or necklace when you work near machine tools or moving parts. If these items were to get caught, severe injury could result.

Remove rings and other jewelry to prevent electrical shorts and entanglement in moving parts.

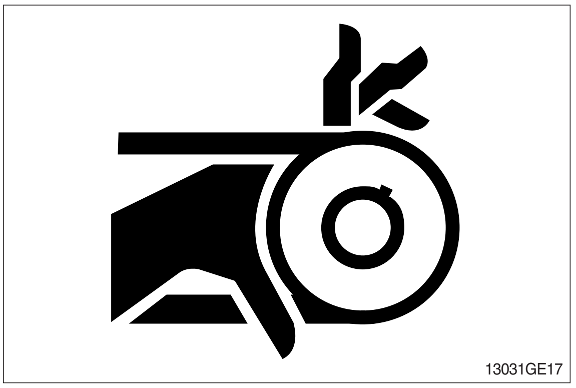


13031GE16

STAY CLEAR OF MOVING PARTS

Entanglements in moving parts can cause serious injury.

To prevent accidents, use care when working around rotating parts.



13031GE17

AVOID HIGH PRESSURE FLUIDS

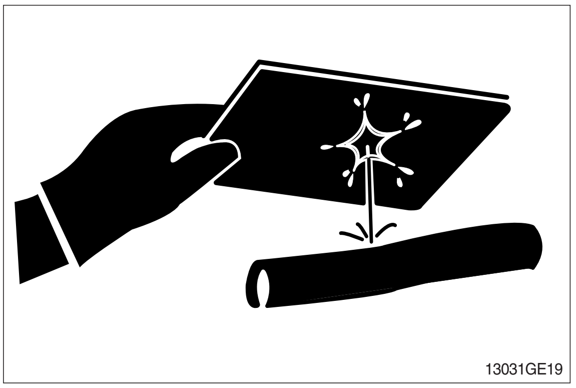
Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.

Avoid the hazard by relieving pressure before disconnecting hydraulic or other lines. Tighten all connections before applying pressure.

Search for leaks with a piece of cardboard. Protect hands and body from high pressure fluids.

If an accident occurs, see a doctor immediately. Any fluid injected into the skin must be surgically removed within a few hours or gangrene may result.

13031GE18



13031GE19

AVOID HEATING NEAR PRESSURIZED FLUID LINES

13031GE20

Flammable spray can be generated by heating near pressurized fluid lines, resulting in severe burns to yourself and bystanders. Do not heat by welding, soldering, or using a torch near pressurized fluid lines or other flammable materials.

Pressurized lines can be accidentally cut when heat goes beyond the immediate flame area. Install fire resisting guards to protect hoses or other materials.

PREVENT BATTERY EXPLOSIONS

13031GE21

Keep sparks, lighted matches, and flame away from the top of battery. Battery gas can explode.

Never check battery charge by placing a metal object across the posts. Use a volt-meter or hydrometer.

Do not charge a frozen battery; It may explode. Warm battery to 16˚C (60˚F).

PREVENT ACID BURNS

Sulfuric acid in battery electrolyte is poisonous. It is strong enough to burn skin, eat holes in clothing, and cause blindness if splashed into eyes.

Avoid the hazard by:

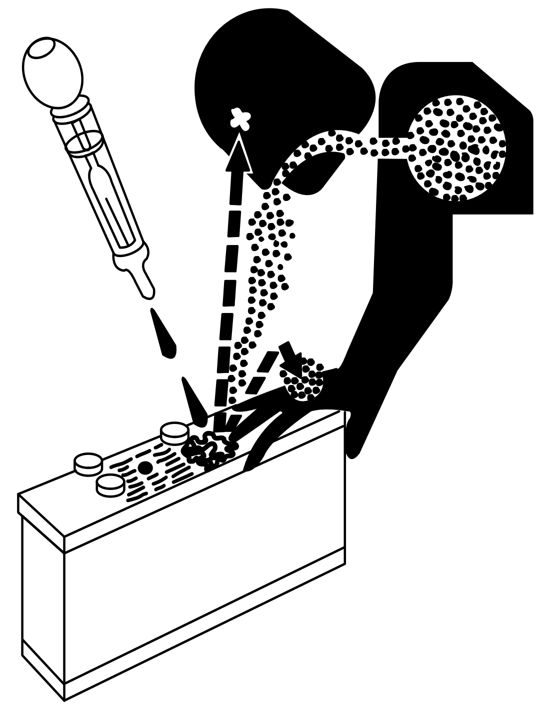
1. Filling batteries in a well-ventilated area.
2. Wearing eye protection and rubber gloves.
3. Avoiding breathing fumes when electrolyte is added.
4. Avoiding spilling of dripping electrolyte.
5. Use proper jump start procedure.

If you spill acid on yourself:

1. Flush your skin with water.
2. Apply baking soda or lime to help neutralize the acid.
3. Flush your eyes with water for 10-15 minutes. Get medical attention immediately.

If acid is swallowed:

1. Drink large amounts of water or milk.
2. Then drink milk of magnesia, beaten eggs, or vegetable oil.
3. Get medical attention immediately.



13031GE22

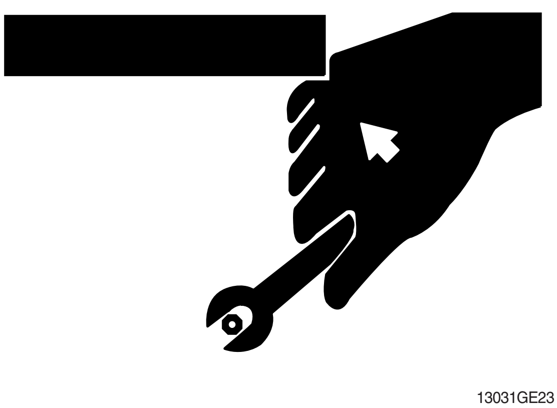
USE TOOLS PROPERLY

Use tools appropriate to the work. Makeshift tools, parts, and procedures can create safety hazards.

Use power tools only to loosen threaded tools and fasteners.

For loosening and tightening hardware, use the correct size tools. DO NOT use U.S. measurement tools on metric fasteners. Avoid bodily injury caused by slipping wrenches.

Use only recommended replacement parts. (See Parts catalogue.)



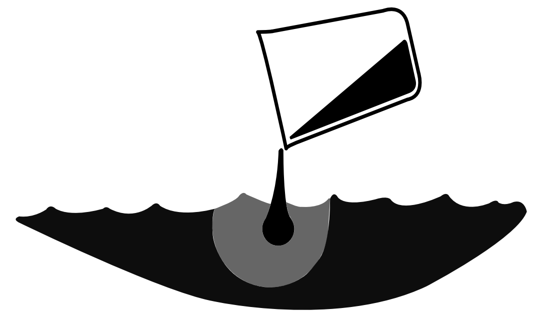
13031GE23

DISPOSE OF FLUIDS PROPERLY

Improperly disposing of fluids can harm the environment and ecology. Before draining any fluids, find out the proper way to dispose of waste from your local environmental agency.

Use proper containers when draining fluids. Do not use food or beverage containers that may mislead someone into drinking from them.

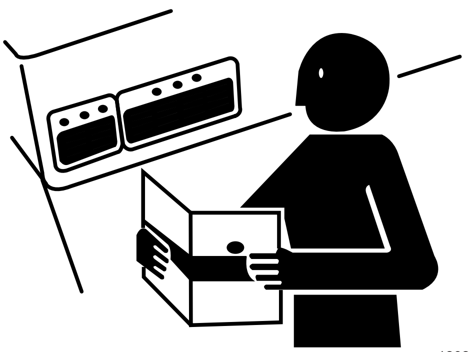
DO NOT pour oil into the ground, down a drain, or into a stream, pond, or lake. Observe relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of oil, fuel, coolant, brake fluid, filters, batteries, and other harmful waste.



13031GE24

REPLACE SAFETY SIGNS

Replace missing or damaged safety signs. See the machine operator's manual for correct safety sign placement.



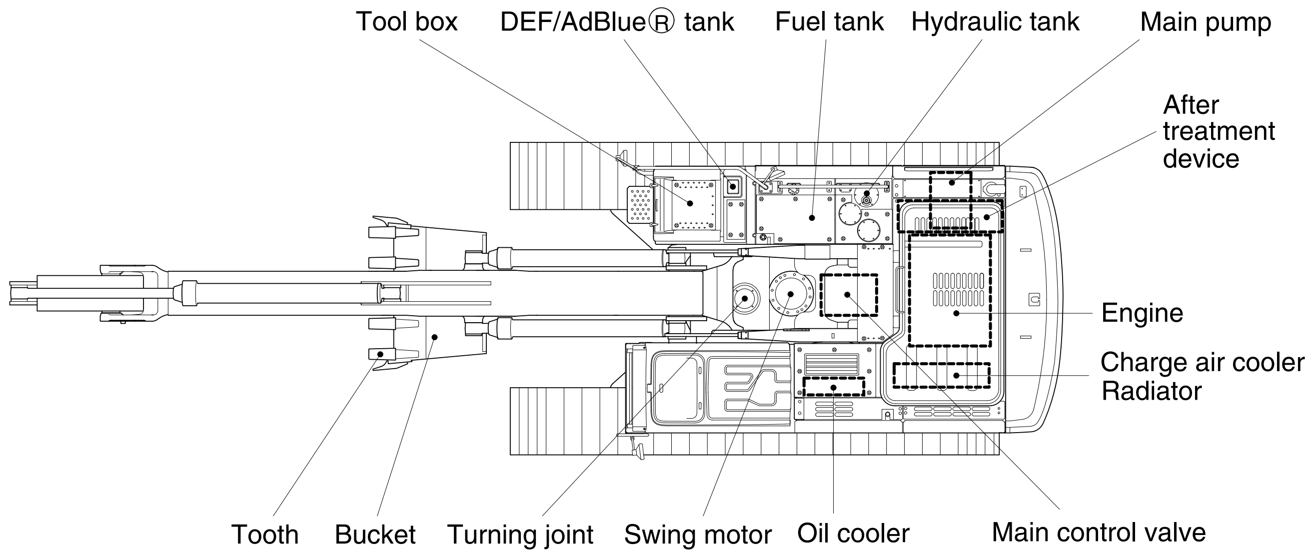
13031GE25

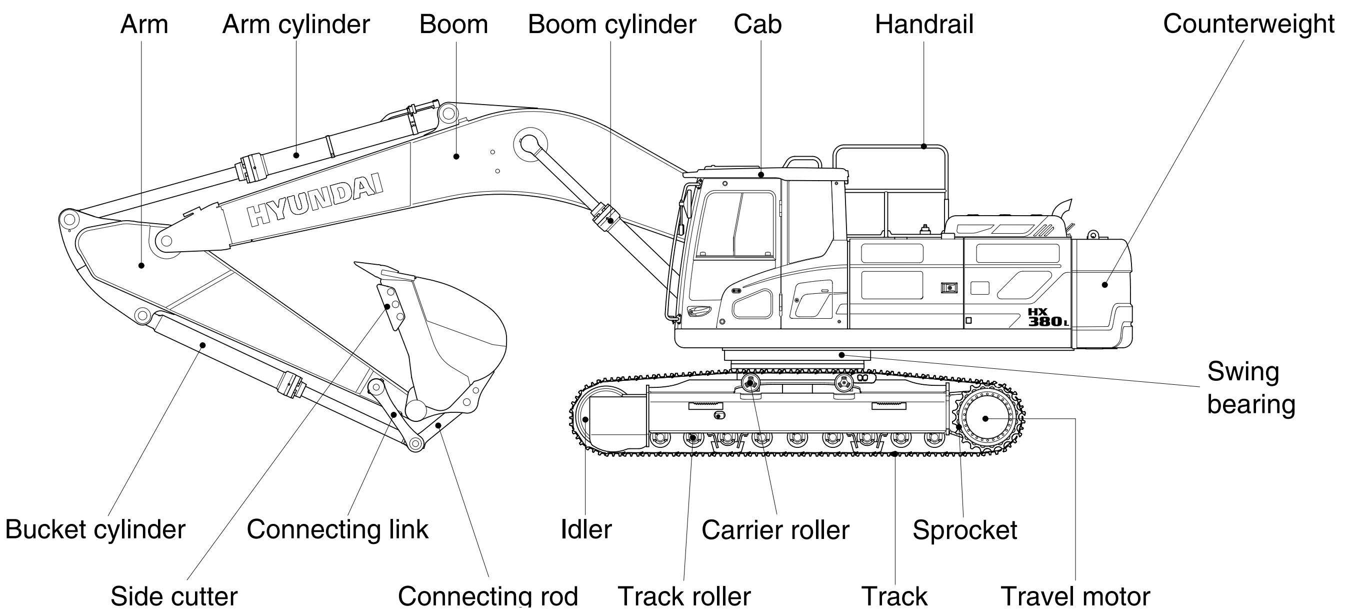
LIVE WITH SAFETY

Before returning machine to customer, make sure machine is functioning properly, especially the safety systems. Install all guards and shields.

GROUP 2 SPECIFICATIONS

1. MAJOR COMPONENT



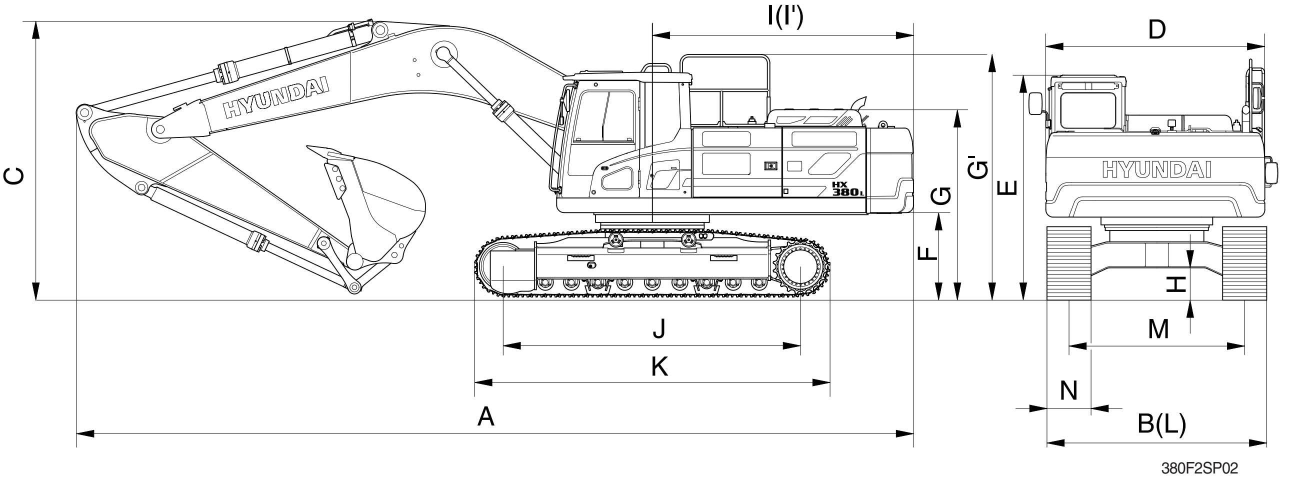


380F2SP01

2. SPECIFICATIONS

1) HX380 L

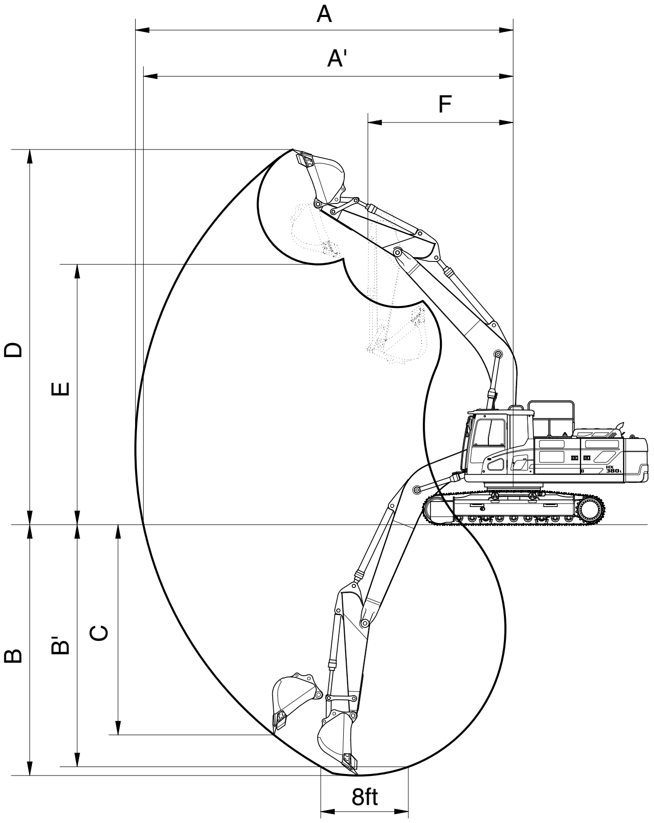
· 6.5 m (21' 4") BOOM and 3.2 m (10' 6") ARM



Description		Unit	Specification
Operating weight		kg (lb)	37200 (82011)
Bucket capacity (SAE heaped), standard		m^3 (yd^3)	1.44 (1.88)
Overall length	A	mm (ft-in)	11340 (37' 2")
Overall width, with 600 mm shoe	B		3230 (10' 9")
Overall height of boom	C		3760 (12' 3")
Superstructure width	D		2980 (9' 9")
Overall height of cab	E		3190 (10' 4")
Ground clearance of counterweight	F		1200 (3' 11")
Overall height of engine hood	G		2672 (8' 9")
Overall height of handrail	G'		3350 (11' 0")
Minimum ground clearance	H		530 (1' 8")
Rear-end distance	I		3510 (11' 6")
Rear-end swing radius	I'		3570 (11' 9")
Distance between tumblers	J		4030 (13' 3")
Undercarriage length	K		4940 (16' 2")
Undercarriage width	L		3280 (10' 9")
Track gauge	M		2590 (8' 5")
Track shoe width, standard	N		600 (24")
Travel speed (low/high)		km/hr (mph)	3.6/6.4 (2.11/3.98)
Swing speed		rpm	11.2
Gradeability		Degree (%)	35 (70)
Ground pressure (600 mm shoe)		kgf/cm^2(psi)	0.64 (9.03)
Max traction force		kg (lb)	32500 (71650)

3. WORKING RANGE

1) HX380 L, HX380 NL [6.5 m (21' 2") BOOM]



380F2SP04

Description		6.45 m (21' 2") Boom		
		2.2 m (7' 3") Arm	2.65 m (8' 8") Arm	3.2 m (10' 6") Arm
Max digging reach	A	10330 mm (33'11")	10710mm (35' 1")	11150 mm (36' 7")
Max digging reach on ground	A'	10120 mm (33' 2")	10580mm (34' 7")	10950 mm (35'11")
Max digging depth	B	6360 mm (20'10")	6820 mm (22' 4")	7360 mm (24' 2")
Max digging depth (8ft level)	B'	6170 mm (20' 3")	6650 mm (21' 10")	7200 mm (23' 7")
Max vertical wall digging depth	C	5970 mm (19' 7")	6320 mm (20' 7")	6330 mm (20' 9")
Max digging height	D	10260 mm (33' 8")	10190 mm (33' 4")	10360 mm (34' 0")
Max dumping height	E	7060 mm (23' 2")	7120 mm (23'4")	7260 mm (23'10")
Min swing radius	F	4630 mm (15' 2")	4620 mm (15' 2")	4360 mm (14' 4")
Bucket digging force	SAE	186.3 [203.3] kN	186.3 [203.3] kN	188.3 [205.5] kN
		19000 [20730] kgf	19000 [20730] kgf	19200 [20950] kgf
		41890 [45700] lbf	41890 [45700] lbf	42330 [46190] lbf
	ISO	214.8 [234.3] kN	214.8 [234.3] kN	216.7 [236.4] kN
		21900 [23890] kgf	21900 [23890] kgf	22100 [24110] kgf
		48280 [52670] lbf	48280 [52670] lbf	48720 [53150] lbf
Arm crowd force	SAE	195.2 [212.9] kN	156.9[171.2] kN	140.2 [153.0] kN
		19900 [21710] kgf	16000 [17480] kgf	14300 [15600] kgf
		43870 [47860] lbf	35270 [38480] lbf	31530 [34390] lbf
	ISO	205.0 [223.6] kN	162.8 [177.6] kN	145.1 [158.4] kN
		20900 [22800] kgf	16600 [18080] kgf	14800 [16150] kgf
		46080 [50270] lbf	36600[39930] lbf	32630 [35600] lbf

[ ] : Power boost

4. WEIGHT

Item	HX380L	
	kg	lb
Upperstructure assembly	10714.71	23621.89
Main frame weld assembly	2919.22	6435.77
Engine assembly	730	1609.37
Main pump assembly	201	443
Main control valve assembly	220	485
Swing motor assembly	370	820
Hydraulic oil tank assembly	300	661
Fuel tank assembly	350	772
Counterweight	6600	13230
Cab assembly	515	1135.38
Radiator assy	230	510
Oil cooler assy	80	180
Lower chassis assembly	8917.23	19659.12
Track frame weld assembly	4951.13	10915.37
Swing bearing	468	1031.76
Travel motor assembly	380	837.75
Turning joint	53	116.85
Tension cylinder	225	496
Idler	261	575.4
Sprocket	83	183
Carrier roller	79.50	175.26
Track roller	40	88.18
Track-chain assembly (600 mm standard triple grouser shoe)	2196	4841.35
Front attachment assembly (6.45 m boom, 2.65 m arm	2879.52	6348.25
6.45 m boom assembly	272.68	601.15
2.65 m arm assembly	1219.68	2688.9
1.44 m^3 SAE heaped bucket	1230	2710
Boom cylinder assembly	314.10	692.47
Arm cylinder assembly	434.70	958.34
Bucket cylinder assembly	266.3	587.09
Bucket control linkage assembly	372.06	820.25

5. LIFTING CAPACITIES

1) 6.45m (21'2") boom, 2.65 m (8'7") arm equipped with 600 mm (24") triple grouser shoe and 6,600 kg (13230 lb) counterweight.

◦ : Rating over-front ◦ : Rating over-side or 360 degree

Load Point Height		Load Radius										At max. reach		
		3.0m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0m (19.7 ft)		7.5m (24.6 ft)		9.0 (29.5 ft)		Capacity		Reach
														m (ft)
7.5m	Kg											*6990	*6990	7.2
24.6ft	lb											*15410	*15410	(23.6)
6.0m	Kg							*7110	6400			*7050	5480	8.13
19.7ft	lb							*15670	14110			*15540	12080	(26.7)
4.5m	Kg			*11190	*11190	*8840	*8840	*7690	6140			*7230	4680	8.71
14.8ft	lb			*24670	*24670	*19490	*19491	*16950	13540			*15940	10320	(28.6)
3.0m	Kg			*14550	12910	8310	8310	*8490	5820	6750	4250	6750	4250	9.00
9.8ft	lb			*32080	28460	18320	18320	*18720	12830	14880	9370	14880	9370	(29.5)
1.5m	Kg			*16970	11930	7770	7770	8840	5520	6590	4110	6560	4080	9.03
4.9ft	lb			*37410	26300	17130	17130	19490	12170	14530	9060	14460	8990	(29.6)
Ground line	Kg			*17790	11570	7450	7450	8620	5320			6720	4160	8.80
Ground line	lb			*39220	25510	16420	16420	19000	11730			14820	9170	(28.9)
-1.5m	Kg	*15040	*15040	*17480	11540	7330	7330	8530	5240			7330	4520	8.29
-4.9ft	lb	*33160	*33160	*38540	25440	16160	16160	18810	11550			16160	9960	(27.2)
-3.0m	Kg	*22610	*22610	*16230	11720	7410	7410					8720	5390	7.45
-9.8ft	lb	*49850	*49850	*35780	25840	16340	16340					19220	11880	(24.4)
-4.5m	Kg	*18600	*18600	*13680	12130	7720	7720					*9830	7500	6.12
-14.8ft	lb	*41010	*41010	*30160	26740	17020	17020					*21670	16530	(20.1)

Note 1. Lifting capacity are based on SAE J1097 and ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the ROBEX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The load point is a hook located on the back of the bucket.
4. *indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

Load Point Height		Load Radius										At max. reach		
		3.0m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0m (19.7 ft)		7.5m (24.6 ft)		9.0 (29.5 ft)		Capacity		Reach
														m (ft)
7.5m	Kg											*8510	7720	7.09
24.6ft	lb											*18760	17020	(23.3)
6.0m	Kg					*9010	*9010	*8450	6970			*8440	6190	8.04
19.7ft	lb					*19860	*19860	*18630	15370			*18610	13650	(26.4)
4.5m	Kg			13210	13211	*10310	9540	*8970	6780			8070	5400	8.62
14.8ft	lb			*29120	*29121	*22370	21030	*19780	14950			17790	11900	(28.3)
3.0m	Kg					*11880	9000	*9740	6510			7530	5010	8.92
9.8ft	lb					*26190	19840	*21470	14350			16600	11050	(29.3)
1.5m	Kg					*13180	8570	9580	6280			7380	4880	8.95
4.9ft	lb					*29060	18890	21120	13850			16270	10760	(29.3)
Ground line	Kg			*18160	12660	13180	8330	9420	6130			7600	5000	8.71
Ground line	lb			*40040	27910	29060	18360	20770	13510			16760	11020	(28.6)
-1.5m	Kg	*12520	*12520	*18300	12700	13110	8270	9380	6090			8280	5430	8.20
-4.9ft	lb	*27600	*27600	*40340	28000	28900	18230	20680	13430			18250	11970	(26.9)
-3.0m	Kg	*22130	*22130	*16700	12900	*12760	8380					9820	6400	7.34
-9.8ft	lb	*48790	*48790	*36820	28440	*28130	18470					21650	14110	(24.1)
-4.5m	Kg			*13570	13310							*9820	8760	5.99
-14.8ft	lb			*29920	29340							*21760	19310	(19.7)

2) 6.45m (21'2") boom, 3.2m (10'4") arm equipped with 600mm (24") triple grouser shoe and 6,600 kg (13230 lb) counterweight

Rating over-front

Rating over-side or 360 degree

Load Point Height		Load Radius										At max. reach		
		3.0m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0m (19.7 ft)		7.5m (24.6 ft)		9.0 (29.5 ft)		Capacity		Reach
		over-front	over-side	over-front	over-side	over-front	over-side	over-front	over-side	over-front	over-side	over-front	over-side	m (ft)
7.5m	Kg							*6300	*6300			*4910	*4910	7.88
24.6ft	lb							*13890	*13890			*10820	*10820	(25.9)
6.0m	Kg							*6530	*6530			*4850	*4850	8.75
19.7ft	lb							*14400	*14400			*10690	*10690	(28.7)
4.5m	Kg					*8150	*8150	*7200	6290	*6570	4500	*4990	4230	9.28
14.8ft	lb					*17970	*17970	*15870	13870	*14480	9920	*11000	9330	(30.5)
3.0m	Kg			*13430	*13430	*9830	8560	*8100	5960	6840	4330	*5320	3870	9.56
9.8ft	lb			*29610	*29610	*21670	18870	*17860	13140	15080	9550	*11730	8530	(31.4)
1.5m	Kg			*16300	12370	*11410	7990	8970	5640	6660	4170	*5870	3730	9.58
4.9ft	lb			*35940	27270	*25150	17610	19780	12430	14680	9190	*12940	8220	(31.4)
Ground line	Kg	*8690	*8690	*17710	11820	12470	7600	8710	5400	6520	4040	6120	3780	9.37
Ground line	lb	*19160	*19160	*39040	26060	27490	16760	19200	11900	14370	8910	13490	8330	(30.7)
-1.5m	Kg	*13540	*13540	*17870	11670	12260	7420	8570	5280			6590	4070	8.89
-4.9ft	lb	*29850	*29850	*39400	25730	27030	16360	18890	11640			14530	8970	(29.2)
-3.0m	Kg	*19290	*19290	*17020	11760	12260	7430	8580	5290			7620	4720	8.11
-9.8ft	lb	*42530	*42530	*37520	25930	27030	16380	18920	11660			16800	10410	(26.6)
-4.5m	Kg	*21120	*21120	*15000	12050	*11130	7620					*9200	6170	6.92
-14.8ft	lb	*46560	*46560	*33070	26570	*24540	16800					*20280	13600	(22.7)
-6.0m	Kg			*10840	*10840							*9590	*9590	5.01
-19.7ft	lb			*23900	*23900							*21140	*21140	(16.4)

NOTES :
1. Lifting Capacity are based on SAE J1097, ISO 10567.
2. Lifting Capacity of the Robex Series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The load point is a hook (standard equipment) located on the back of the bucket.
4. (✱) Indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

Load Point Height		Load Radius										At max. reach		
		3.0m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0m (19.7 ft)		7.5m (24.6 ft)		9.0 (29.5 ft)		Capacity		Reach
		over-front	over-side	over-front	over-side	over-front	over-side	over-front	over-side	over-front	over-side	over-front	over-side	m (ft)
7.5m	Kg							*7750	7210			*6630	*6630	7.74
24.6ft	lb							*17090	15900			*14620	*14620	(25.4)
6.0m	Kg							*7860	7140			*6420	5620	8.62
19.7ft	lb							*17330	15740			*14150	12390	(28.3)
4.5m	Kg			*11980	*11980	*9650	*9650	*8500	6930	7650	5150	*6450	4990	9.17
14.8ft	lb			*26410	*26410	*21270	*21270	*18740	15280	16870	11350	*14220	11000	(30.1)
3.0m	Kg			*15520	14090	*11340	9250	*9380	6660	7520	5030	*6690	4660	9.44
9.8ft	lb			*34220	31060	*25000	20390	*20680	14680	16580	11090	*14750	10270	(31.0)
1.5m	Kg			*18140	13210	*12840	8770	9710	6400	7390	4910	6840	4540	9.47
4.9ft	lb			*39990	29120	*28310	19330	21410	14110	16290	10820	15080	10010	(31.1)
Ground line	Kg			*19100	12840	13340	8470	9510	6210	7290	4820	7010	4630	9.25
Ground line	lb			*42110	28310	29410	18670	20970	13690	16070	10630	15450	10210	(30.4)
-1.5m	Kg	*12280	*12280	*18880	12780	13200	8360	9420	6130			7540	4970	8.77
-4.9ft	lb	*27070	*27070	*41620	28180	29100	18430	20770	13510			16620	10960	(28.8)
-3.0m	Kg	*19800	*19800	*17670	12910	13250	8400	9470	6180			8700	5710	7.98
-9.8ft	lb	*43650	*43650	*38960	28460	29210	18520	20880	13620			19180	12590	(26.2)
-4.5m	Kg	*20570	*20570	*15170	13220	*11400	8620					*9590	7350	6.76
-14.8ft	lb	*45350	*45350	*33440	29150	*25130	19000					*21140	16200	(22.2)
-6.0m	Kg													
-19.7ft	lb													

NOTES :
1. Lifting Capacity are based on SAE J1097, ISO 10567.
2. Lifting Capacity of the Robex Series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The load point is a hook (standard equipment) located on the back of the bucket.
4. (✱) Indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

3) 6.45m (21'2") boom, 2.2m (7'2") arm equipped with 600mm (24") triple grouser shoe and 6,600 kg (13230 lb) counterweight

Rating over-front

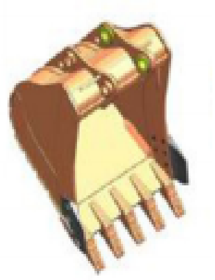
Rating over-side or 360 degree

Load Point Height		Load Radius								At max. reach		
		3.0m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0m (19.7 ft)		7.5m (24.6 ft)		Capacity		Reach
												m (ft)
7.5m	Kg									*7740	7480	6.94
24.6ft	lb									*17060	16490	(22.8)
6.0m	Kg					*8300	*8300	*7740	6420	*7710	5810	7.91
19.7ft	lb					*18300	*18300	*17060	14150	*17000	12810	(25.9)
4.5m	Kg			*12400	*12400	*9570	8960	*8250	6200	7700	4960	8.50
14.8ft	lb			*27340	*27340	*21100	19750	*18190	13670	16980	10930	(27.9)
3.0m	Kg					*11110	8370	*9010	5920	7120	4530	8.80
9.8ft	lb					*24470	18450	*19860	13050	15700	9990	(28.9)
1.5m	Kg					*12380	7900	8980	5660	6940	4380	8.83
4.9ft	lb					*27290	17420	19800	12480	15300	9660	(29.0)
Ground line	Kg			*18100	11850	12490	7650	8800	5500	7150	4490	8.59
Ground line	lb			*39900	26120	27540	16870	19400	12130	15760	9900	(28.2)
-1.5m	Kg			*17460	11900	12420	7590	8760	5470	7860	4930	8.07
-4.9ft	lb			*38490	26230	27380	16730	19310	12060	17330	10870	(26.5)
-3.0m	Kg	*13840	*13840	*15900	12130	*12020	7710			9470	5940	7.20
-9.8ft	lb	*30510	*30510	*35050	26470	*26500	17000			20880	13100	(23.6)
-4.5m	Kg	*21290	*21290	*12860	12590					*9720	8480	5.81
-14.8ft	lb	*46990	*46990	*28350	27760					*21430	18700	(19.1)

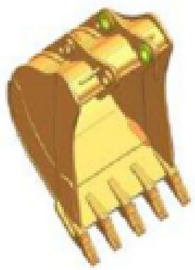
NOTES :
1. Lifting Capacity are based on SAE J1097, ISO 10567.
2. Lifting Capacity of the Robex Series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The load point is a hook (standard equipment) located on the back of the bucket.
4. (*) Indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

Load Point Height		Load Radius								At max. reach		
		3.0m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0m (19.7 ft)		7.5m (24.6 ft)		Capacity		Reach
												m (ft)
7.5m	Kg					*9270	*9270			*9410	8410	6.71
24.6ft	lb					*20440	*20440			*20750	18450	(22.0)
6.0m	Kg					*9770	*9770	*9170	6980	*9210	6650	7.71
19.7ft	lb					*21450	*21450	*20220	15390	*20300	14660	(25.3)
4.5m	Kg					*11050	9550	*9550	6830	8600	5790	8.32
14.8ft	lb					*24360	21050	*21050	15060	18960	12760	(27.3)
3.0m	Kg					*12560	9060	9930	6610	8020	5370	8.62
9.8ft	lb					*27690	19970	21890	14570	17680	11840	(28.3)
1.5m	Kg					13580	8700	9710	6410	7880	5250	8.65
4.9ft	lb					29440	19180	21410	14130	17370	11570	(28.4)
Ground line	Kg					13380	8530	9580	6300	8150	5420	8.41
Ground line	lb					29500	18810	21120	13890	17970	11950	(27.6)
-1.5m	Kg			*18050	13070	13360	8520	9590	6310	8980	5940	7.88
-4.9ft	lb			*39790	28810	29450	18780	21140	13910	19800	13100	(25.8)
-3.0m	Kg	*20300	*20300	*16130	13290	*12440	8670			*10070	7150	6.98
-9.8ft	lb	*44750	*44750	*35560	29300	*27430	19110			*22200	15700	(22.9)
-4.5m	Kg			*12300	*12300					*9490	*9490	5.54
-14.8ft	lb			*27120	*27120					*20920	*20920	(18.2)

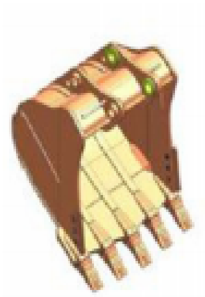
6. BUCKET SELECTION GUIDE



General bucket



Heavy duty
(without side cutter)



Rock heavy duty

Capacity m3 (yd3)		Width mm(in)	Weight kg(lb)	Tooth	Recommendation mm(ft-in)	Recommendation mm(ft-in)	Recommendation mm(ft-in)
					6.450 (21'2") Boom	6.450 (21'2") Boom	6.450 (21'2") Boom
SAE heaped	CECE heaped				2650 (8'7") Arm	2200 (7'2") Arm	3200 (10'4") Arm
2.10 (2.75)	1.80 (2.35)	1823	1650 (3640)	5	■	●	
1.44 (1.88)	1.25 (1.63)	1278	1485 (3270)	4	●		●
▲1.62 (2.12)	1.40 (1.83)	1540	1570 (3460)	5	●	●	
2.3	2.02	1746	1830 (4034)	6	■	■	
▲ 1.8	1.6	1556	1722 (3796)	5	●	●	

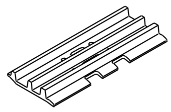
▲ Heavy Duty Bucket
L' Rock-Heavy duty bucket [Granite/Marble Bucket]
● Applicable for materials with density of 2,100 Kgf/m3 (3,500 lbf/yd3) or less
■ Applicable for materials with density of 1,500 Kgf/m3 (2,500 lbf/yd3) or less

7. UNDERCARRIAGE

1) TRACKS

X-leg type center frame is integrally welded with reinforced box-section track frames. The design includes dry tracks, lubricated rollers, idlers, sprockets, hydraulic track adjusters with shock absorbing springs and assembled track-type tractor shoes with triple grousers.

2) TYPES OF SHOES

Model	Shapes		Triple grouser				
							
HX380 L	Shoe width	mm (in)	600 (24)	700 (28)	750 (30)	800 (32)	900 (36)
	Operating weight	kg (lb)	38920 (85800)	39370 (86800)	39595 (87290)	39820 (87790)	40270 (88780)
	Ground pressure	kgf/cm^2 (psi)	0.70 (9.95)	0.61 (8.67)	0.57 (8.11)	0.54 (7.68)	0.48 (6.83)
	Overall width	mm (ft-in)	3340 (10' 11")	3440 (11' 3")	3490 (11' 5")	3540 (11' 7")	3640 (11' 11")
HX380 NL	Shoe width	mm (in)	600 (24)	-	-	-	-
	Operating weight	kg (lb)	38820 (85580)	-	-	-	-
	Ground pressure	kgf/cm^2 (psi)	0.70 (9.95)	-	-	-	-
	Overall width	mm (ft-in)	2990 (9' 10")	-	-	-	-

3) NUMBER OF ROLLERS AND SHOES ON EACH SIDE

Item	Quantity
Carrier rollers	2 EA
Track rollers	9 EA
Track shoes	51 EA

4) SELECTION OF TRACK SHOE

Suitable track shoes should be selected according to operating conditions.

Method of selecting shoes

Confirm the category from the list of applications in **table 2**, then use **table 1** to select the shoe. Wide shoes (categories B and C) have limitations on applications. Before using wide shoes, check the precautions, then investigate and study the operating conditions to confirm if these shoes are suitable.

Select the narrowest shoe possible to meet the required flotation and ground pressure. Application of wider shoes than recommendations will cause unexpected problem such as bending of shoes, crack of link, breakage of pin, loosening of shoe bolts and the other various problems.

※ Table 1

Track shoe	Specification	Category
600 mm triple grouser	Standard	A
700 mm triple grouser	Option	B
750 mm triple grouser	Option	B
800 mm triple grouser	Option	C
900 mm triple grouser	Option	C

※ Table 2

Category	Applications	Applications
A	Rocky ground, river beds, normal soil	· Travel at low speed on rough ground with large obstacles such as boulders or fallen trees
B	Normal soil, soft ground	· These shoes cannot be used on rough ground with large obstacles such as boulders or fallen trees · Travel at high speed only on flat ground · Travel slowly at low speed if it is impossible to avoid going over obstacles
C	Extremely soft gound (swampy ground)	· Use the shoes only in the conditions that the machine sinks and it is impossible to use the shoes of category A or B · These shoes cannot be used on rough ground with large obstacles such as boulders or fallen trees · Travel at high speed only on flat ground · Travel slowly at low speed if it is impossible to avoid going over obstacles

8. SPECIFICATIONS FOR MAJOR COMPONENTS

1) ENGINE-1

Item	Specification
Model	Cummins QSL9
Type	4-cycle turbocharged charger air cooled diesel engine
Cooling method	Water cooling
Number of cylinders and arrangement	6 cylinders, in-line
Firing order	1-5-3-6-2-4
Combustion chamber type	Direct injection type
Cylinder bore × stroke	114 × 145 mm (4.49" × 5.69")
Piston displacement	8900 cc (543 cu in)
Compression ratio	16.7 : 1
Rated net horse power (SAE J1349)	344 Hp at 1650 rpm (257 kW at 1650 rpm)
Rated gross horse power (SAE J1995)	359 Hp at 1650 rpm (267 kW at 1650 rpm)
Maximum torque	166 kgf · m (1186 lbf · ft) at 1500 rpm
Engine oil quantity	30 ℓ (7.9 U.S. gal)
Wet weight	708 kg (1560 lb)
Low idling speed	900 ± 100 rpm
High idling speed	1700 + 50 rpm
Rated fuel consumption	155 g/Hp · hr at 1650 rpm
Starting motor	Denso (24V-7.8 kW)
Alternator	Denso 24V-95A
Battery	2 × 12V × 160Ah

1) ENGINE-2

Item	Specification
Model	HD Hyundai Construction Equipment / HM8.3
Type	4-cycle, turbocharged, charger air cooled, mechanical controlled diesel engine
Cooling method	Water cooled
Number of cylinders and arrangement	6 cylinders, in-line
Firing order	1-5-3-6-2-4
Combustion chamber type	Direct injection type
Cylinder bore × stroke	114× 135 mm (4.49" × 5.31")
Piston displacement	8.3 ℓ (506 cu in)
Compression ratio	18 : 1
Gross power	260 Hp (194 kW) at 2200 rpm
Net power	255 Hp (190 kW) at 2200 rpm
Max. power	261 Hp (195 kW) at 2200 rpm
Maximum torque	1150 N·m (848 lbf·ft) at 1300 rpm
Engine oil quantity	26.5 ℓ (7.0 U.S. gal)
Wet weight	604 kg (1332 lb)
Starting motor	24 V-7.5 kW
Alternator	24 V-90A

2) MAIN PUMP

Item	Specification
Type	Variable displacement tandem axis piston pumps
Capacity	2 × 175 cc/rev
Rated oil flow	2 × 306 ℓ /min (80.8 U.S. gpm / 67.3 U.K. gpm)
Rated speed	1750 rpm

3) GEAR PUMP

Item	Specification
Type	Fixed displacement gear pump single stage
Capacity	15cc/rev
Maximum pressure	40 kgf/cm² (570 psi)
Rated oil flow	24.75 ℓ/min (6.5 U.S. gpm/5.4 U.K. gpm)

4) MAIN CONTROL VALVE

Item	Specification
Type	9 spools
Operating method	Hydraulic pilot system
Main relief valve pressure	330 kgf/cm² (4690 psi) [360 kgf/cm² (5120 psi)]
Overload relief valve pressure	390 kgf/cm² (5550 psi)

[ ]: Power boost

5) SWING MOTOR

Item	Specification	
Machine serial No.	-#0465	#0466-
Type	Axial piston motor	
Capacity	233 cc/rev	240 cc/rev
Relief pressure	290 kgf/cm² (4120 psi)	
Braking system	Automatic, spring applied hydraulic released	
Braking torque	107 kgf · m (773 lbf · ft)	134 kgf · m (969 lbf · ft)
Brake release pressure	30~50 kgf/cm² (427~711 psi)	26 kgf/cm² (370 psi)
Reduction gear type	2 - stage planetary	

6) TRAVEL MOTOR

Item	Specification
Type	Variable displacement axial piston motor
Relief pressure	370 kgf/cm² (5260 psi) *360 kgf/cm² (5120 psi)
Capacity (max / min)	185/114 cc/rev
Reduction gear type	3-stage planetary
Braking system	Automatic, spring applied hydraulic released
Brake release pressure	10.6 kgf/cm² (151 psi) *8.9 kgf/cm² (127 psi)
Braking torque	57.1 kgf · m (413 lbf · ft) *49.0 kgf · m (354 lbf · ft)

* : TRAVEL MOTOR (TYPE 2)

7) CYLINDER

Item		Specification
Boom cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	ø 160 × ø 110 × 1500 mm
	Cushion	Extend only
Arm cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	ø 170 × ø 120 × 1760 mm
	Cushion	Extend and retract
Bucket cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	ø 150 × ø 105 × 1295 mm
	Cushion	Extend only

※ Discoloration of cylinder rod can occur when the friction reduction additive of lubrication oil spreads on the rod surface.

※ Discoloration does not cause any harmful effect on the cylinder performance.

8) SHOE

Item		Width	Ground pressure	Link quantity	Overall width
HX380 L	Standard	600 mm (24")	0.70 kgf/cm² (9.95 psi)	51	3340 mm (10' 11")
	Option	700 mm (28")	0.61 kgf/cm² (8.67 psi)	51	3440 mm (11' 3")
		750 mm (30")	0.57 kgf/cm² (8.11 psi)	51	3490 mm (11' 5")
		800 mm (32")	0.54 kgf/cm² (7.68 psi)	51	3540 mm (11' 7")
		900 mm (36")	0.48 kgf/cm² (6.83 psi)	51	3640 mm (11' 11")
HX380 NL	Standard	600 mm (24")	0.70 kgf/cm² (9.95 psi)	51	2990 mm (9' 10")

9) BUCKET

Item		Capacity		Tooth quantity	Width
		SAE heaped	CECE heaped		
HX380L HX380NL	Standard	1.62 m³ (2.12 yd³)	1.42 m³ (1.86 yd³)	5	1480 mm (58")
		1.46 m³ (1.91 yd³)	1.28 m³ (1.67 yd³)	4	1370 mm (54")
		1.90 m³ (2.49 yd³)	1.65 m³ (2.16 yd³)	5	1665 mm (66")
		2.10 m³ (2.75 yd³)	1.84 m³ (2.41 yd³)	5	1800 mm (71")
		2.32 m³ (3.03 yd³)	2.02 m³ (2.64 yd³)	6	1950 mm (77")
		◈1.46 m³ (1.91 yd³)	1.28 m³ (1.67 yd³)	4	1370 mm (54")
		◈1.62 m³ (2.12 yd³)	1.42 m³ (1.86 yd³)	5	1480 mm (58")
		◈1.90 m³ (2.49 yd³)	1.65 m³ (2.16 yd³)	5	1665 mm (66")
		◈2.10 m³ (2.75 yd³)	1.84 m³ (2.41 yd³)	5	1800 mm (71")
		◆1.46 m³ (1.91 yd³)	1.28 m³ (1.67 yd³)	4	1370 mm (54")
		◆1.62 m³ (2.12 yd³)	1.42 m³ (1.86 yd³)	5	1480 mm (58")
		◆1.90 m³ (2.49 yd³)	1.65 m³ (2.16 yd³)	5	1665 mm (66")

◈ : Heavy duty bucket
◆ : Rock-heavy duty bucket

9. RECOMMENDED OILS

HYUNDAI genuine lubricating oils have been developed to offer the best performance and service life for your equipment. These oils have been tested according to the specifications of HYUNDAI and, therefore, will meet the highest safety and quality requirements.

We recommend that you use only HYUNDAI genuine lubricating oils and grease officially approved by HYUNDAI.

Service point	Kind of fluid	Capacity ℓ (U.S. gal)	Ambient temperature °C(°F) -50 (-58), -30 (-22), -20 (-4), -10 (14), 0 (32), 10 (50), 20 (68), 30 (86), 40 (104)
Engine oil pan	Engine oil	31.7 (8.4)	★SAE 5W-40
			SAE 30
			SAE 10W
			SAE 10W-30
			SAE 15W-40
DEF/ AdBlue® tank	Mixture of urea and deionized water	42.5 (11.2)	ISO 22241, High-purity urea + deionized water (32.5:67.5)
Swing drive	Gear oil	8.0 (2.1)	★SAE 75W-90
Final drive		TYPE 1 : 4.3 (1.1) ×2 TYPE 2 : 5.5 (1.5) ×2	SAE 80W-90
Hydraulic tank	Hydraulic oil	Tank : 210 (55.5) System : 414 (109)	★ISO VG 15
			ISO VG 32
			ISO VG 46, HBHO VG 46★3
			ISO VG 68
Fuel tank	Diesel fuel★1	600 (159)	★ASTM D975 NO.1
			ASTM D975 NO.2
Fitting (grease nipple)	Grease	As required	★NLGI NO.1
			NLGI NO.2
Radiator (reservoir tank)	Mixture of antifreeze and soft water★2	55 (14.5)	Ethylene glycol base permanent type (50 : 50)
			★Ethylene glycol base permanent type (60 : 40)

SAE : Society of Automotive Engineers
API : American Petroleum Institute
ISO : International Organization for Standardization
NLGI : National Lubricating Grease Institute
ASTM : American Society of Testing and Material
UTTO : Universal Tractor Transmission Oil
DEF : Diesel Exhaust Fluid, DEF compatible with AdBlue®

★ : Cold region
Russia, CIS, Mongolia
★1 : Ultra low sulfur diesel
- sulfur content ≤ 15 ppm
★2 : Soft water
City water or distilled water
★3 : Hyundai Bio Hydraulic Oil
- For more information, contact HYUNDAI dealers.

※ Using any lubricating oils other than HYUNDAI genuine products may lead to a deterioration of performance and cause damage to major components.

※ Do not mix HYUNDAI genuine oil with any other lubricating oil as it may result in damage to the systems of major components.

※ Do not use any engine oil other than that specified above, as it may clog the diesel particulate filter(DPF).

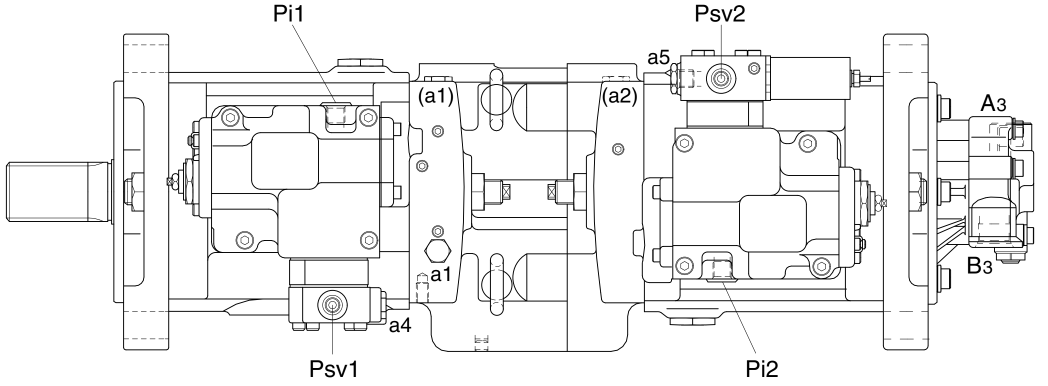
※ For HYUNDAI genuine lubricating oils and grease for use in regions with extremely low temperatures, please contact HYUNDAI dealers.

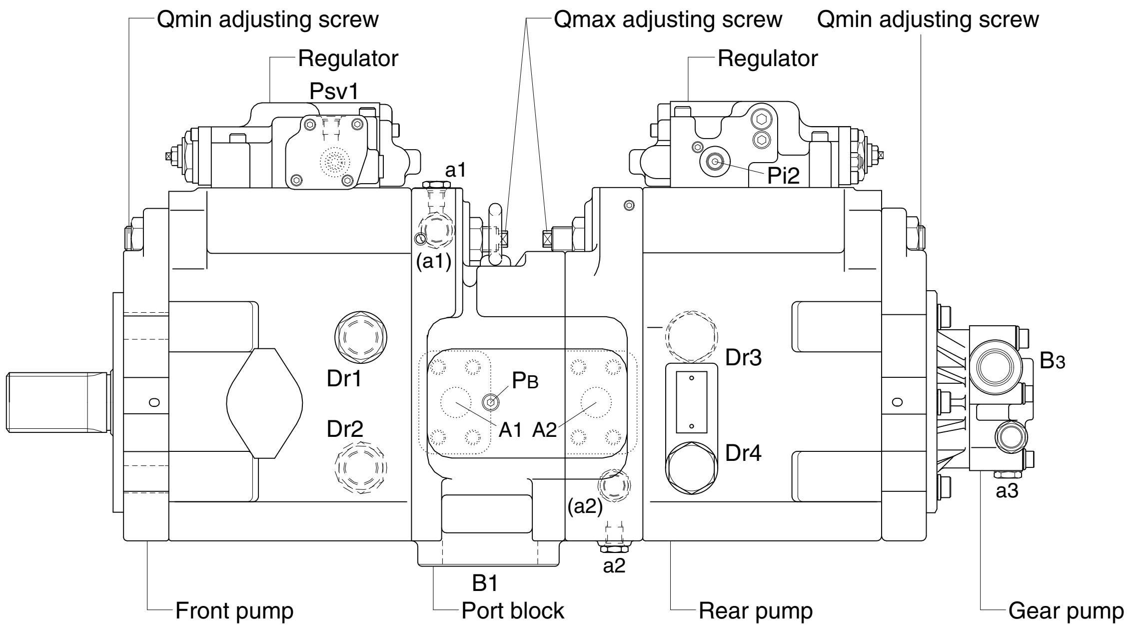
SECTION 2 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

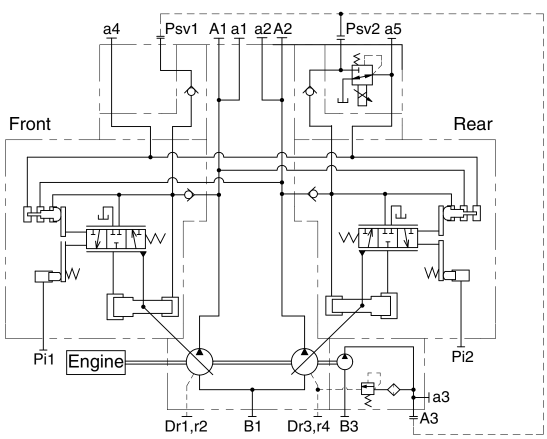
GROUP 1 PUMP DEVICE

1. STRUCTURE

The pump device consists of main pump, regulator and gear pump.







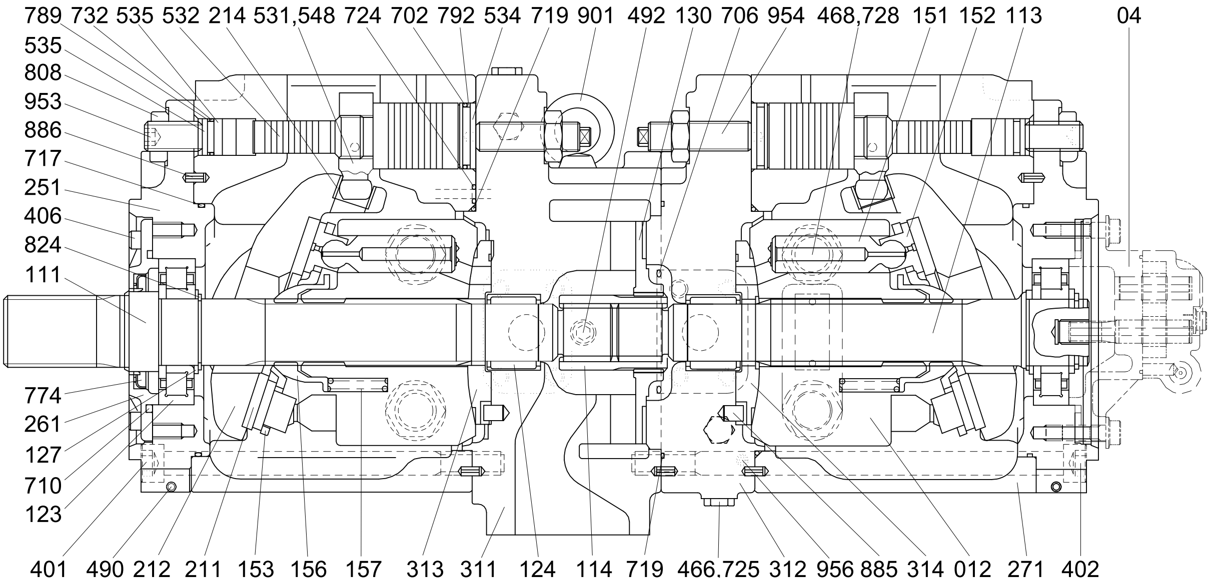
Hvdraulic circuit

380F2MP01

Port	Port name	Port size
A1, 2	Delivery port	SAE6000 psi 1"
B1	Suction port	SAE2500 psi 3"
Dr	Drain port	PF 3/4 - 23
Pi1, i2	Pilot port	PF 1/4 - 15
Psv1, sv2	Servo assist port	PF 1/4 - 15
a1, 2, 4, 5	Gauge port	PF 1/4 - 15
a3	Gauge port	PF 1/4 - 14
A3	Gear pump delivery port	PF 1/2 - 19
B3	Gear pump suction port	PF 3/4 - 20

1) MAIN PUMP (1/2)

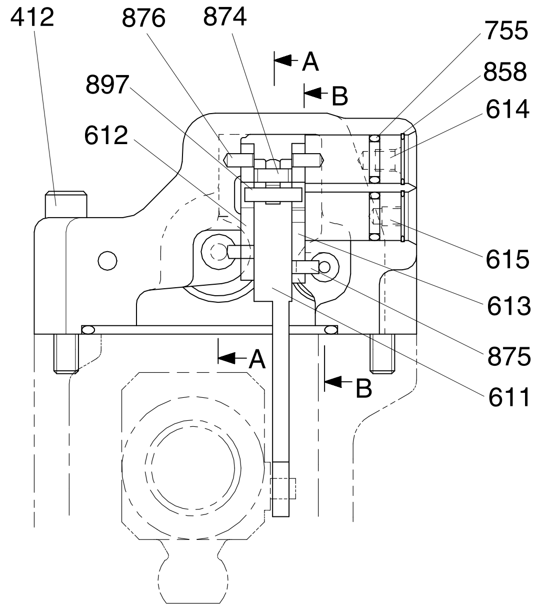
The main pump consists of two piston pumps (front & rear) and valve block.

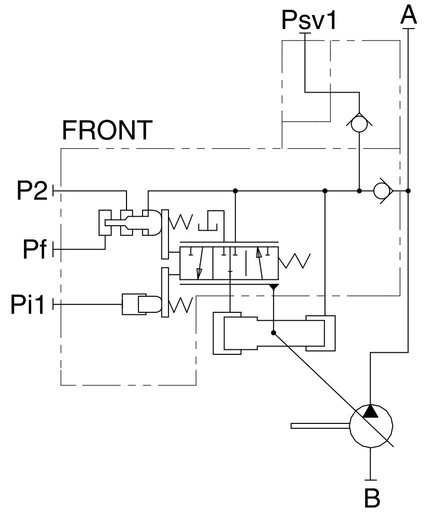


380F2MP02

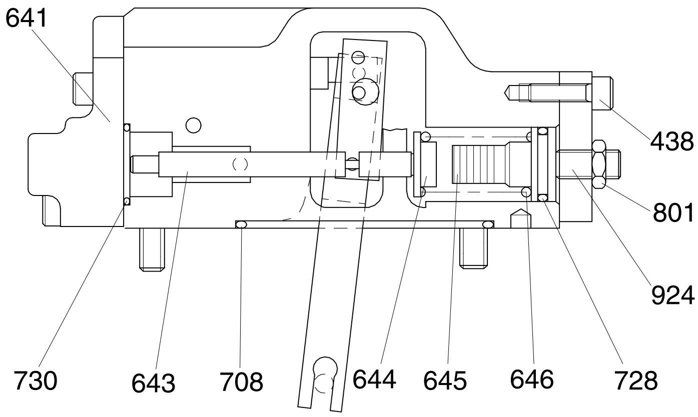
04	Gear pump	271	Pump casing	710	O-ring
111	Drive shaft (F)	311	Valve cove r(F)	717	O-ring
113	Drive shaft (R)	312	Valve cover (R)	719	O-ring
114	Spline coupling	313	Valve plate (R)	724	Square ring
123	Roller bearing	314	Valve plate (L)	725	O-ring
124	Needle bearing	401	Hexagon socket bolt	728	O-ring
127	Bearing spacer	402	Hexagon socket bolt	732	O-ring
130	Booster	406	Hexagon socket bolt	774	Oil seal
012	Cylinder block	466	VP Plug	789	Back up ring
151	Piston	468	VP Plug	792	Back up ring
152	Shoe	490	Plug	808	Hexagon head nut
153	Set plate	492	Plug	824	Snap ring
156	Bushing	531	Tilting pin	885	Pin
157	Cylinder spring	532	Servo piston	886	Spring pin
211	Shoe plate	534	Stopper (L)	901	Eye bolt
212	Swash plate	535	Stopper (S)	953	Set screw
214	Bushing	548	Feedback pin	954	Adjust screw
251	Support plate	702	O-ring	956	Set screw
261	Seal cover (F)	706	O-ring		

2) FRONT REGULATOR (1/2)

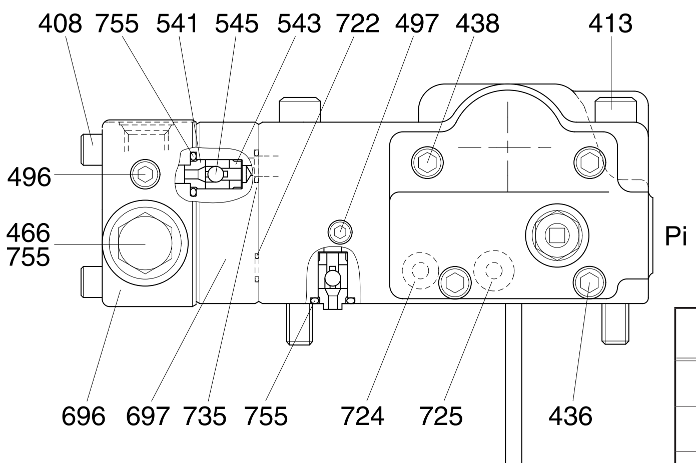




Hydraulic circuit



SECTION B-B

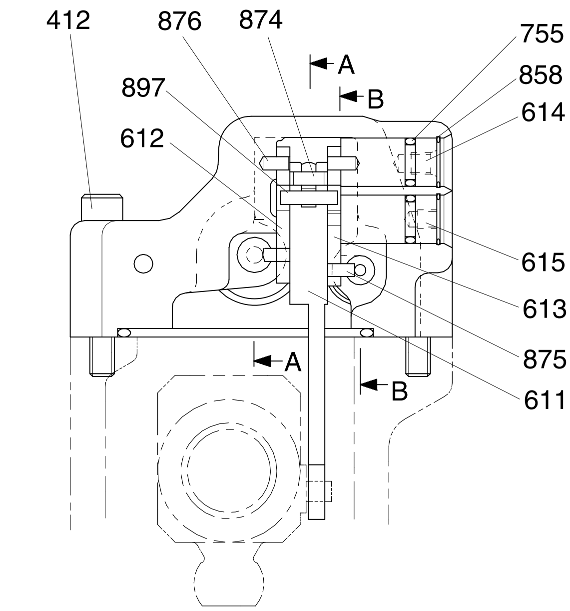


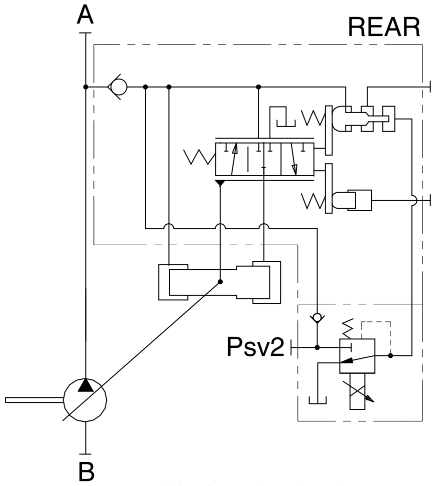
VIEW C

430F2RG01

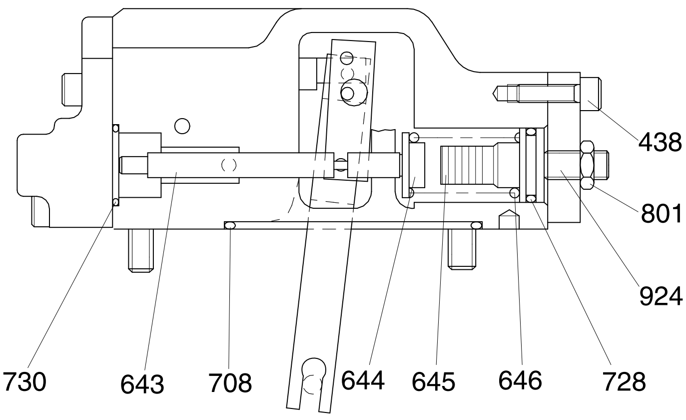
Port	Port name	Port size
Pi1	Pilot port	PF 1/4-15
Psv1	Servo assist port	PF 1/4-15
Pf	Power shift port	-
P2	Companion delivery port	-

3) REAR REGULATOR (1/2)

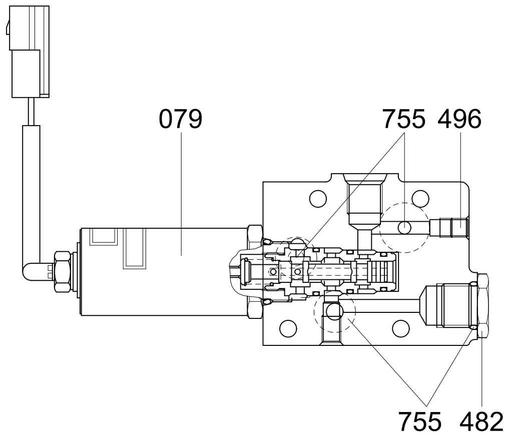




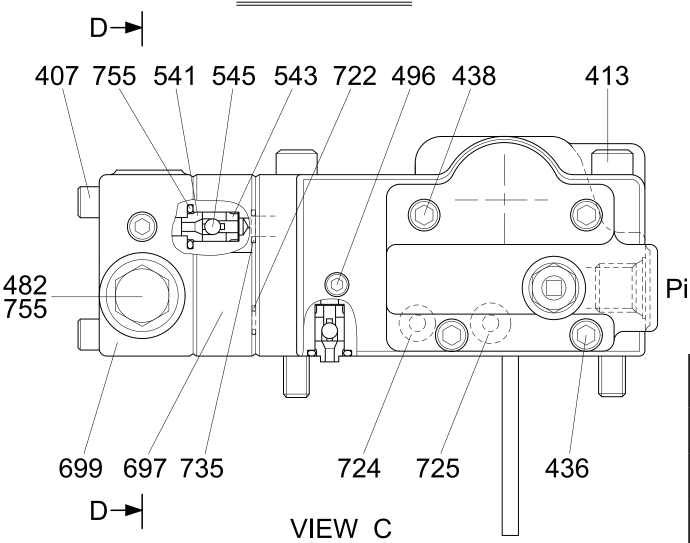
Hydraulic circuit



SECTION B-B



SECTION D-D

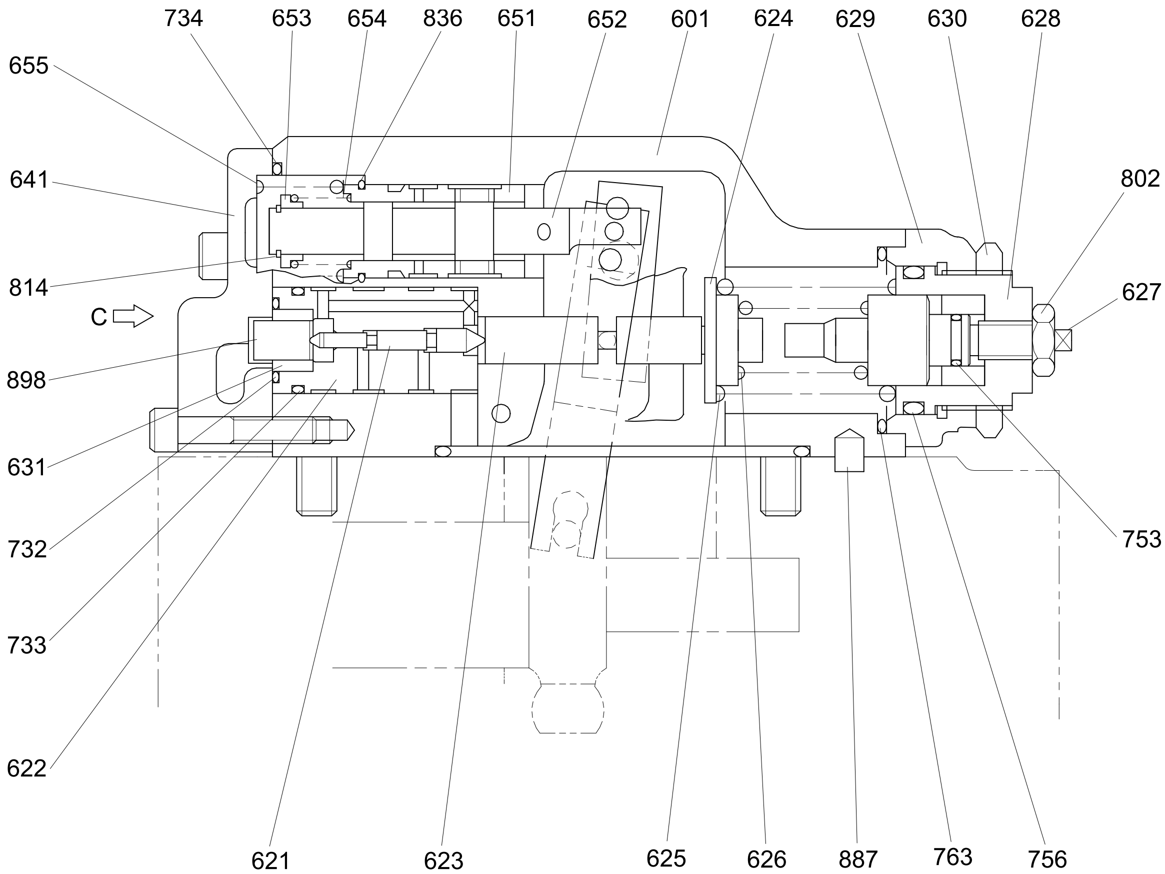


VIEW C

Port	Port name	Port size
Pi1	Pilot port	PF 1/4-15
Psv1	Servo assist port	PF 1/4-15
Pf	Power shift port	-
P2	Companion delivery port	-

38092RG02

REGULATOR (2/2)

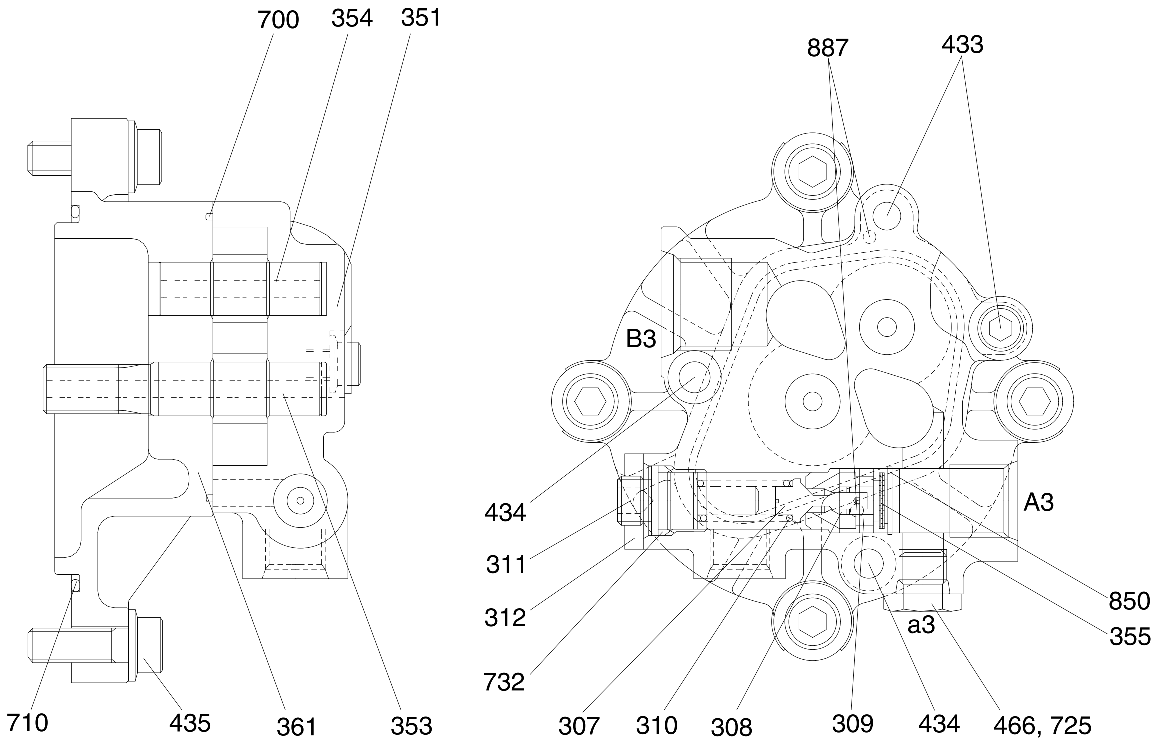


SECTION A-A

38092RG03

407	Hexagon socket bolt	625	Outer spring	725	O-ring
408	Hexagon socket bolt	626	Inner spring	728	O-ring
412	Hexagon socket bolt	627	Adjust stem (C)	730	O-ring
413	Hexagon socket bolt	628	Adjust screw (C)	732	O-ring
436	Hexagon socket bolt	629	Cover (C)	733	O-ring
438	Hexagon socket bolt	630	Lock nut	734	O-ring
466	Plug	631	Sleeve, pf	735	O-ring
482	Plug	641	Pilot cover	753	O-ring
496	Plug	643	Pilot piston	755	O-ring
497	Plug	644	Spring seat (Q)	756	O-ring
541	Seat	645	Adjust stem (Q)	763	O-ring
543	Stopper	646	Pilot spring	801	Hexagon nut
545	Steel ball	651	Sleeve	802	Nut
601	Casing	652	Spool	814	Snap ring
611	Feedback lever	653	Spring seat	836	Stop ring
612	Lever(1)	654	Return spring	858	Snap ring
613	Lever(2)	655	Set spring	874	Pin
614	Center plug	696	Port cover	875	Pin
615	Adjust plug	697	Check valve plate	876	Pin
621	Compensator piston	699	Valve casing	887	Pin
622	Piston case	708	O-ring	897	Pin
623	Compensator rod	722	O-ring	898	Pin
624	Spring seat (C)	724	Square ring	924	Set screw

4) GEAR PUMP



29092MP05

307	Poppet	353	Drive gear	466	Plug
308	Seat	354	Driven gear	700	Ring
309	Ring	355	Filter	710	O-ring
310	Spring	361	Front case	725	O-ring
311	Screw	433	Flange socket	732	O-ring
312	Nut	434	Flange socket	850	Snap ring
351	Gear case	435	Flange socket	887	Pin

2. FUNCTION

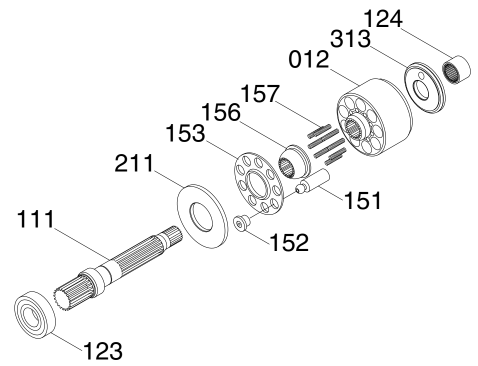
1) MAIN PUMP

The pumps may classified roughly into the rotary group performing a rotary motion and working as the major part of the whole pump function: the swash plate group that varies the delivery rates: and the valve cover group that changes over oil suction and discharge.

(1) Rotary group

The rotary group consists of drive shaft (F)(111), cylinder block (012), piston shoes (151,152), set plate (153), spherical bush (156) and cylinder spring (157). The drive shaft is supported by bearing (123,124) at its both ends.

The shoe is caulked to the piston to from a spherical coupling. It has a pocket to relieve thrust force generated by loading pressure and the take hydraulic balance so that it slides lightly over the shoe plate (211). The sub group composed by a piston and a shoe is pressed against the shoe plate by the action of the cylinder spring via a retainer and a spherical bush. Similarly, the cylinder block is pressed against valve plate (313) by the action of the cylinder spring.



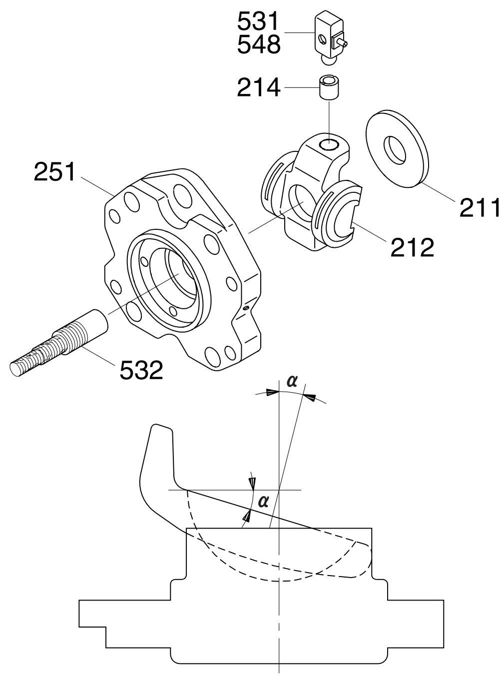
32092MP03

(2) Swash plate group

The swash plate group consists of swash plate (212), shoe plate (211), swash plate support (251), tilting bush (214), tilting pin (531) and servo piston (532).

The swash plate is a cylindrical part formed on the opposite side of the sliding surface of the shoe and is supported by the swash support.

If the servo piston moves to the right and left as hydraulic force controlled by the regulator is admitted to hydraulic chamber located on both sides of the servo piston, the swash plate slides over the swash plate support via the spherical part of the tilting pin to change the tilting angle (α)



3607A2MP10

(3) Valve block group

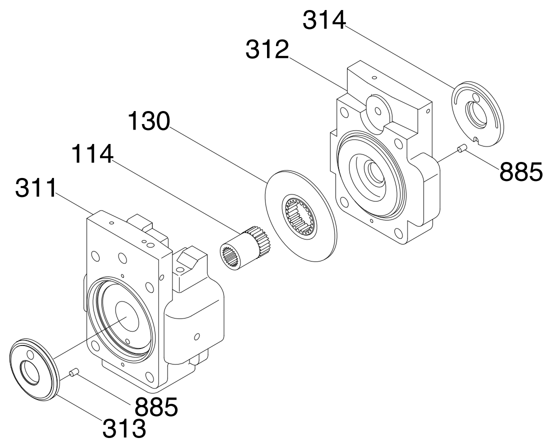
The valve block group consists of valve cover (F, 311), valve cover (F, 312), valve plate (313, 314), spline coupling (114), booster (130) and valve plate pin (885).

The valve plate having two melon-shaped ports is fixed to the valve block and feeds and collects oil to and from the cylinder block.

The oil changed over by the valve plate is connected to an external pipeline by way of the valve block.

Now, if the drive shaft is driven by a prime mover (electric motor, engine, etc), it rotates the cylinder block via a spline linkage at the same time. If the swash plate is tilted as in Fig (previous page) the pistons arranged in the cylinder block make a reciprocating motion with respect to the cylinder block, while they revolve with the cylinder block.

If you pay attention to a single piston, it performs a motion away from the valve plate (oil sucking process) within 180 degrees, and makes a motion towards the valve plate (or oil discharging process) in the rest of 180 degrees. When the swash plate has a tilting angle of zero, the piston makes no stroke and discharges no oil.



38092MP04

2) REGULATOR

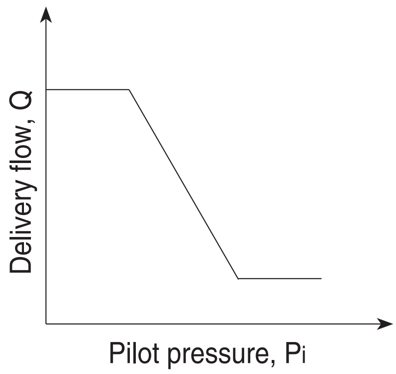
Regulator consists of the negative flow control, total horse power control and power shift control function.

(1) Negative flow control

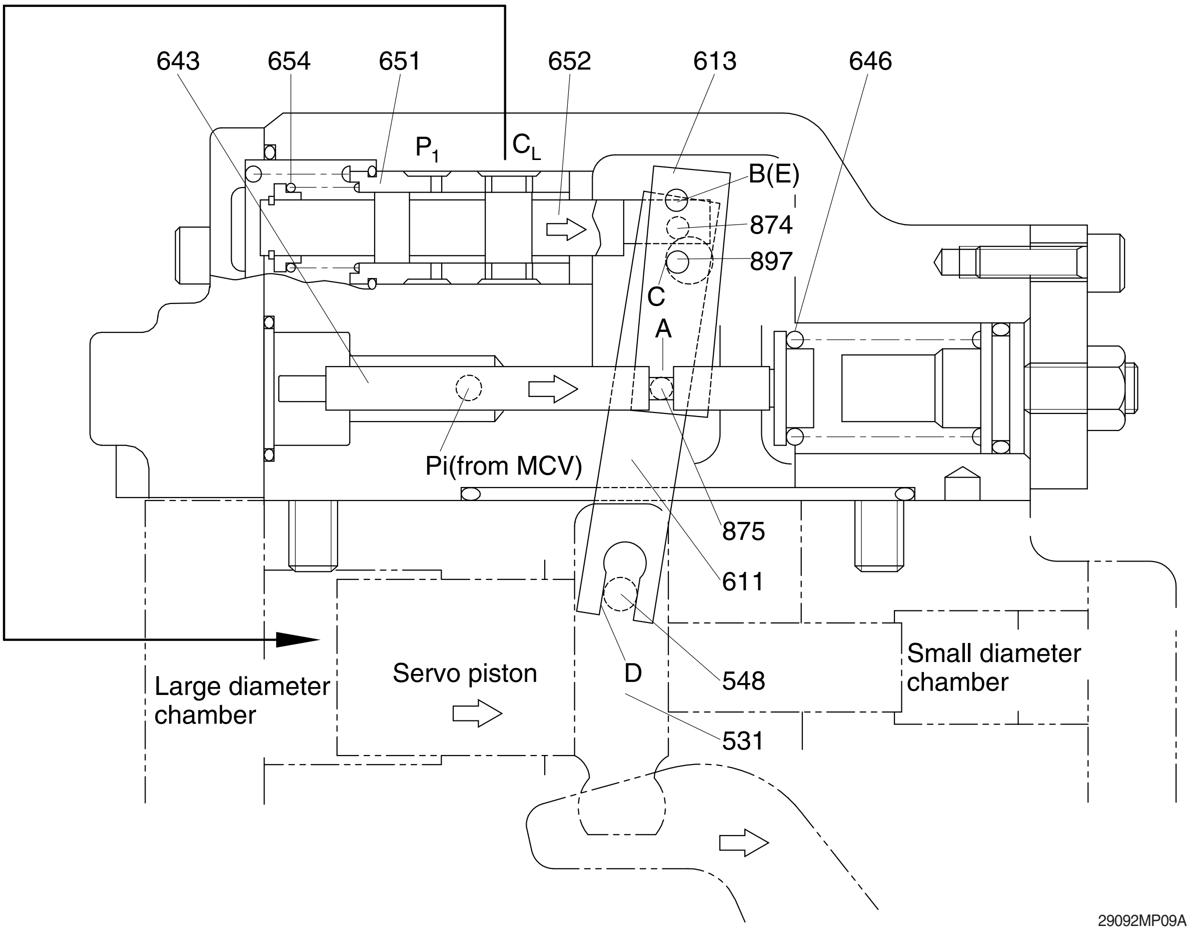
By changing the pilot pressure Pi, the pump tilting angle (delivery flow) is regulated arbitrarily, as shown in the figure.

This regulator is of the negative flow control in which the delivery flow Q decreases as the pilot pressure Pi rises.

With this mechanism, when the pilot pressure corresponding to the flow required for the work is commanded, the pump discharges the required flow only, and so it does not consume the power uselessly.



① Flow reducing function



As the pilot pressure Pi rises, the pilot piston (643) moves to the right to a position where the force of the pilot spring (646) balances with the hydraulic force.

The groove (A) in the pilot piston is fitted with the pin (875) that is fixed to lever 2 (613). Therefore, when the pilot piston moves, lever 2 rotates around the fulcrum of point B [Fixed by the fulcrum plug (614) and pin (875)]. Since the large hole section (C) of lever 2 contains a protruding pin (897) fixed to the feedback lever (611), the pin (897) moves to the right as lever 2 rotates. Since the opposing-flat section (D) of the feedback lever is fitted with the pin (548) fixed by the tilting pin (531) that swings the swash plate, the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point D, as the pin (897) moves.

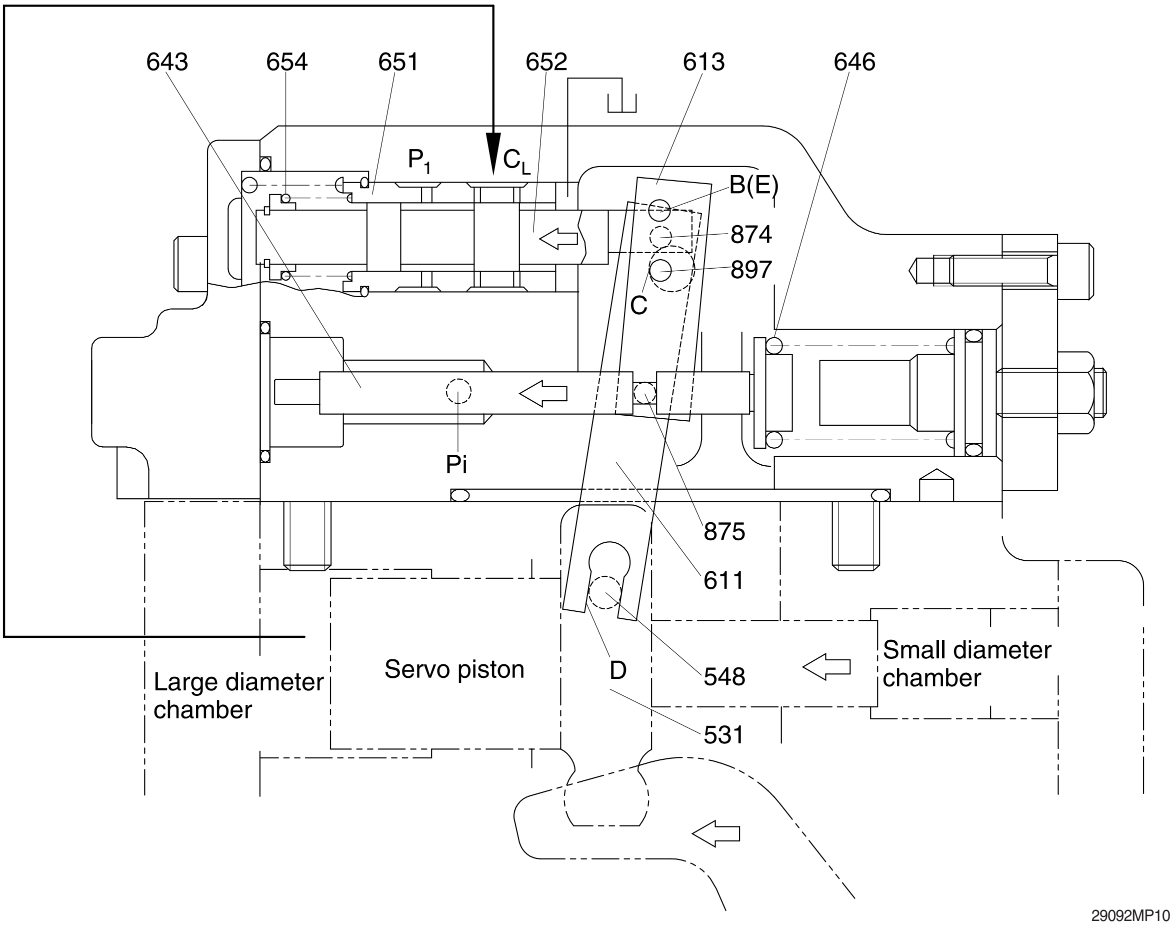
Since the feedback lever is connected with the spool (652) via the pin (874), the spool moves to the right.

The movement of the spool causes the delivery pressure P1 to connect to port CL through the spool and to be admitted to the large diameter section of the servo piston. The delivery pressure P1 that is constantly admitted to the small diameter section of the servo piston moves the servo piston to the right due to the area difference, resulting in decrease of the tilting angle.

When the servo piston moves to the right, point D also moves to the right. The spool is fitted with the return spring (654) and is tensioned to the left at all times, and so the pin (897) is pressed against the large hole section (C) of lever 2.

Therefore, as point D moves, the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point C, and the spool is shifted to the left. This causes the opening between the sleeve (651) and spool (652) to close slowly, and the servo piston comes to a complete stop when it closes completely.

② Flow increasing function



As the pilot pressure Pi decreases, the pilot piston (643) moves to the left by the action of the pilot spring (646) and causes lever 2 (613) to rotate around the fulcrum of point B. Since the pin (897) is pressed against the large hole section (C) of lever 2 by the action of the return spring (654) via the spool (652), pin (874), and feedback lever (611), the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point D as lever 2 rotates, and shifts the spool to the left. Port CL opens a way to the tank port as the spool moves. This deprives the large diameter section of the servo piston of pressure, and shifts the servo piston to the left by the discharge pressure P1 in the small diameter section, resulting in an increase in the flow rate.

As the servo piston moves, point D also moves to the left, the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point C, and the spool moves to the right till the opening between the spool and sleeve is closed.

③ **Adjustment of flow control characteristic**

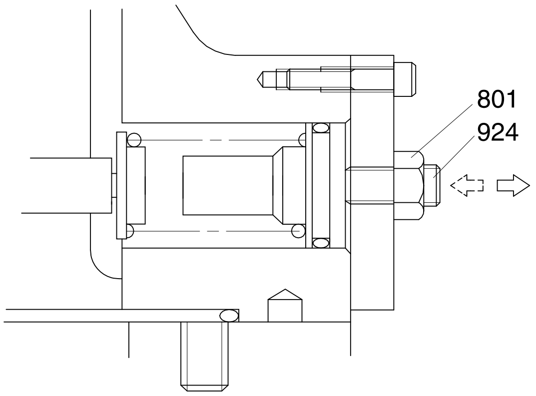
The flow control characteristic can be adjusted with the adjusting screw.

Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (801) and by tightening (or loosening) the hexagonal socket head screw (924).

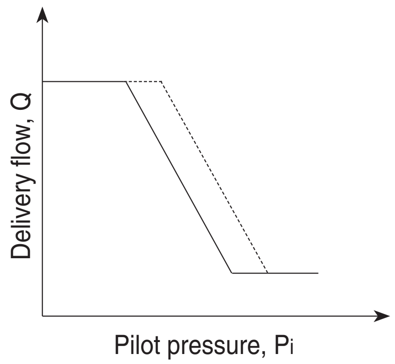
Tightening the screw shifts the control chart to the right as shown in the figure.

※ **Adjusting values are shown in table.**

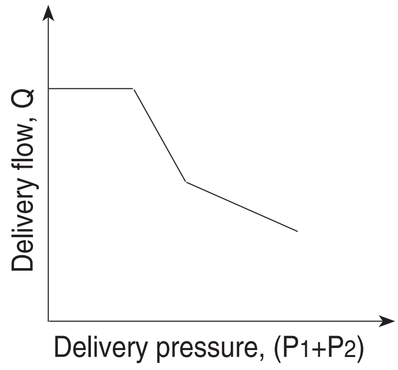
Speed	Adjustment of flow control characteristic		
	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (924)	Flow control starting pressure change amount	Flow change amount
(min^{-1})	(Turn)	(kgf/cm^2)	(l /min)
1800	+1/4	+1.0	+18.9



R290RE08(1)



(2) Total horsepower control



The regulator decreases the pump tilting angle (delivery flow) automatically to limit the input torque within a certain value with a rise in the delivery pressure P1 of the self pump and the delivery pressure P2 of the companion pump.

(The input horsepower is constant when the speed is constant.)

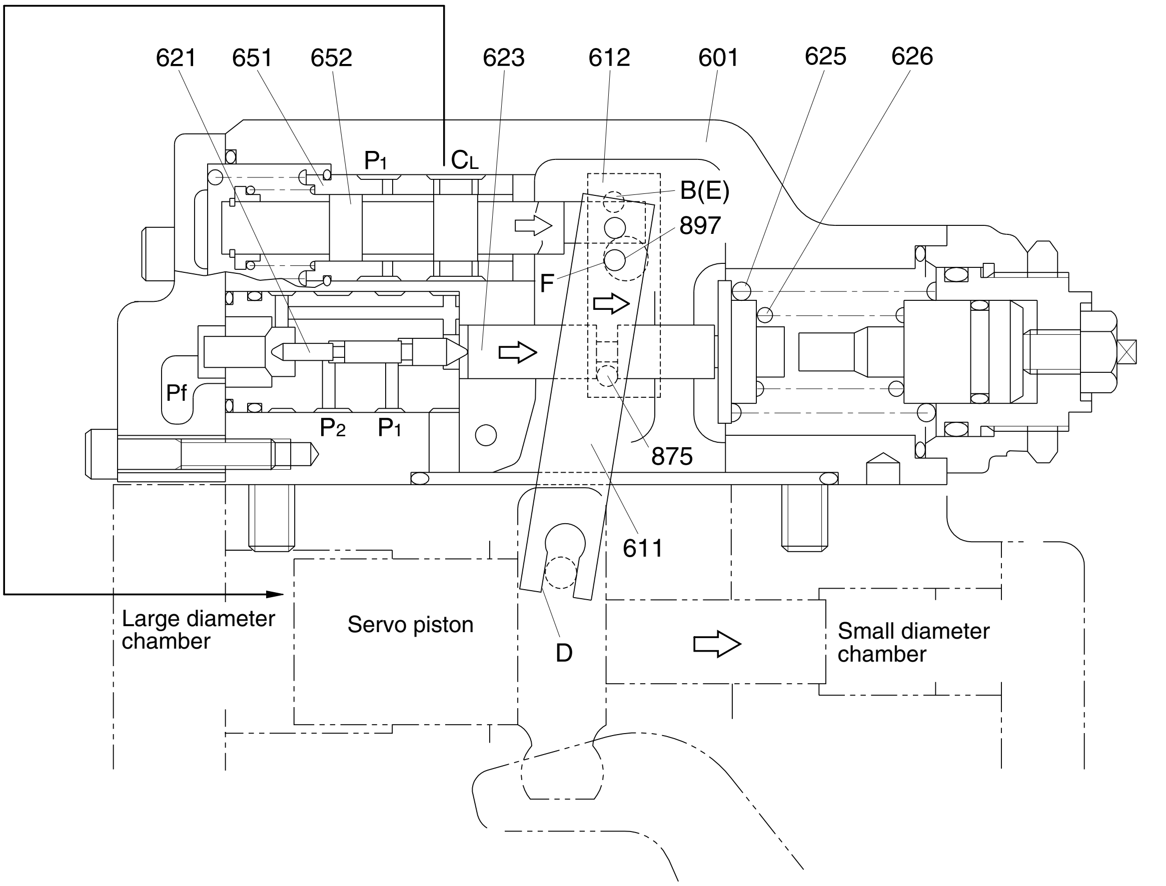
Since the regulator is of the simultaneous total horsepower type that operates by the sum of load pressures of the two pumps in the tandem double-pump system, the prime mover is automatically prevented from being overloaded, irrespective of the load condition of the two pumps, when horsepower control is under way.

Since this regulator is of the simultaneous total horsepower type, it controls the tilting angles (displacement volumes) of the two pumps to the same value as represented by the following equation :

$$Tin = P1 \times q / 2\pi + P2 \times q / 2\pi$$
$$= (P1+P2) \times q / 2\pi$$

The horsepower control function is the same as the flow control function and is summarized in the following. (for detailed behaviors of respective parts, refer to the section of flow control).

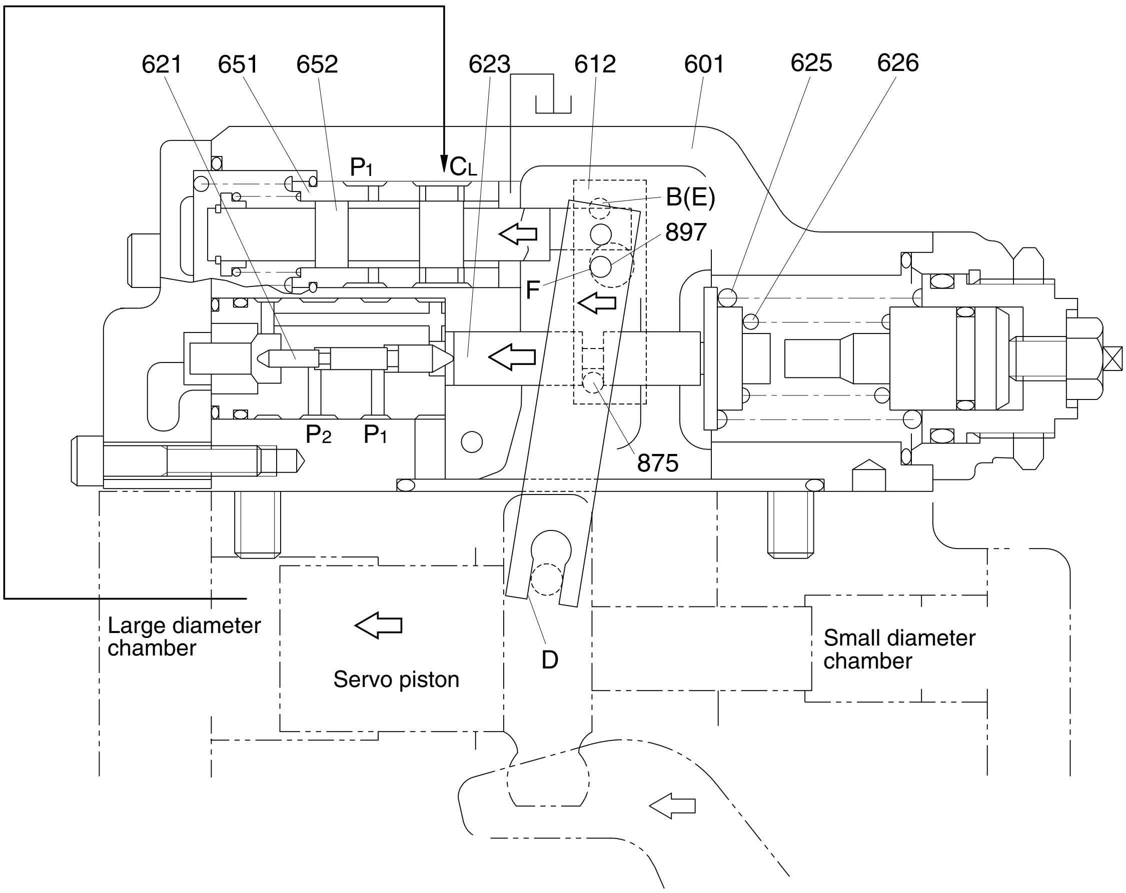
① Overload preventive function



When the self pump delivery pressure P1 or the companion pump delivery pressure P2 rises, it acts on the stepped part of the compensating piston (621). It presses the compensating rod (623) to the right till the force of the outer spring (625) and inner spring (626) balances with the hydraulic force. The movement of the compensating rod is transmitted to lever 1 via pin (875). Lever 1 rotates around the pin (875) (E) fixed to the casing (601).

Since the large hole section (F) of lever 1 contains a protruding pin (897) fixed to the feedback lever (611), the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point D as lever 1 rotates, and then the spool (652) is shifted to the right. As the spool moves, the delivery pressure P1 is admitted to the large diameter section of the servo piston via port CL, causes the servo piston move to the right, reduces the pump delivery flow rate, and prevents the prime mover from being overloaded. The movement of the servo piston is transmitted to the feedback lever via point D. Then the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point F and the spool is shifted to the left. The spool moves till the opening between the spool (652) and sleeve (651) is closed.

② Flow reset function



R130RE11

As the self pump delivery pressure P1 or the companion pump delivery pressure P2 decreases, the compensating rod (623) is pushed back by the action of the springs (625 & 626) to rotate lever 1 (612) around point E. Rotating of lever 1 causes the feedback lever (611) to rotate around the fulcrum of point D and then the spool (652) to move to the left. As a result, port CL opens a way to the tank port.

This causes the servo piston to move to the left and the pump's delivery rate to increase.

The movement of the servo piston is transmitted to the spool by the action of the feedback mechanism to move it till the opening between the spool and sleeve is closed.

③ **Low tilting angle (low flow) command preferential function**

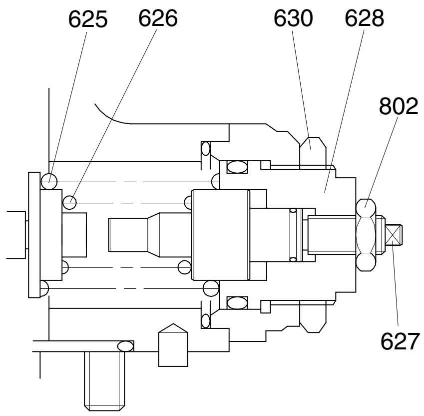
As mentioned above, flow control and horsepower control tilting angle commands are transmitted to the feedback lever and spool via the large-hole sections (C & F) of levers 1 and 2. However, since sections C and F have the pins (ø4) protruding from the large hole (ø8), only the lever lessening the tilting angle contacts the pin (897) ; the hole (ø8) in the lever of a larger tilting angle command is freed without contacting the pin (897). Such a mechanical selection method permits preference of the lower tilting angle command of the flow control and horsepower control.

④ **Adjustment of input horsepower**

Since the regulator is of total cumulative horsepower type, adjust the adjusting screws of both the front and rear pumps, when changing the horsepower set values. The pressure change values by adjustment are based on two pumps pressurized at the same time, and the values will be doubled when only one pump is loaded.

a. **Adjustment of outer spring**

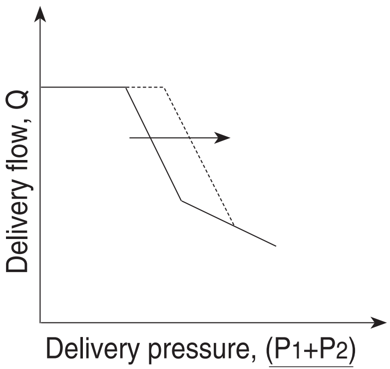
Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (630) and by tightening (or loosening) the adjusting screw C (628). Tightening the screw shifts the control chart to the right and increases the input horsepower as shown in the figure. Since turning the adjusting screw C by N turns changes the setting of the inner spring (626), return the adjusting screw QI (627) by N×A turns at first. (A=1.85)



8007A2MP03

※ **Adjusting values are shown in table.**

Speed	Adjustment of outer spring		
	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (C) (628)	Compensating control starting pressure change amount	Input torque change amount
(min^{-1})	(Turn)	(kgf/cm^2)	(kgf · m)
1800	+1/4	+17.8	+6.7



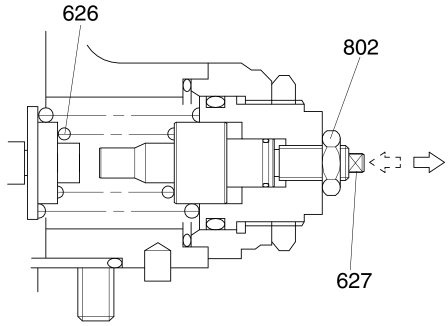
b. Adjustment of inner spring

Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (802) and by tightening (or loosening) the adjusting screw QI (627).

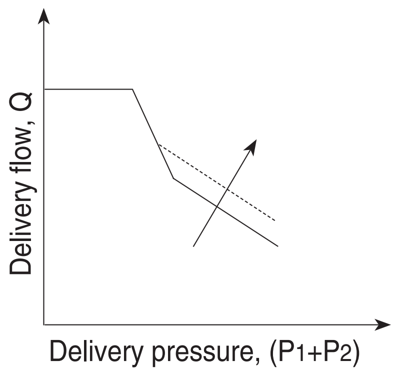
Tightening the screw increases the flow and then the input horsepower as shown in the figure.

※ Adjusting valves are shown in table.

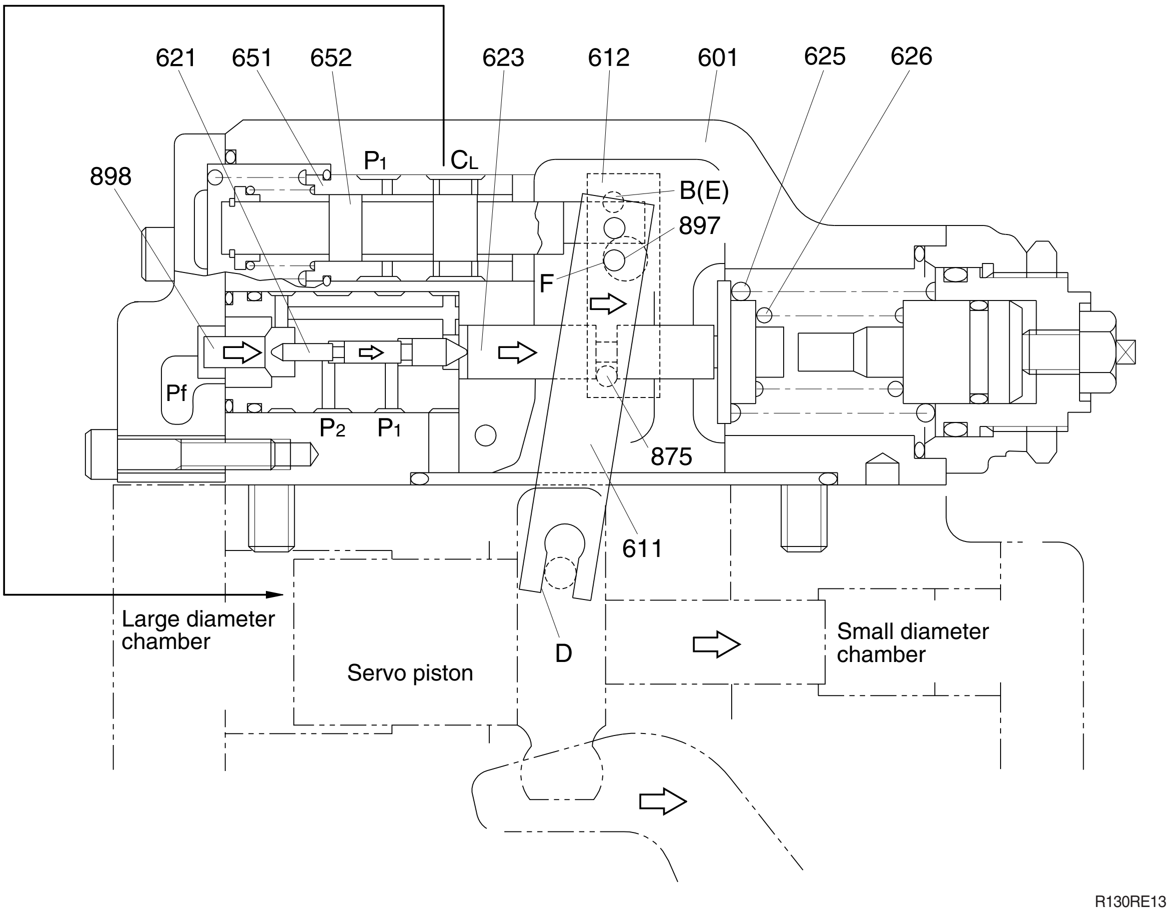
Speed	Adjustment of inner spring		
	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (QI) (627)	Flow change amount	Input torque change amount
(min^{-1})	(Turn)	(lpm)	(kgf · m)
1800	+1/4	+16.7	+7.2

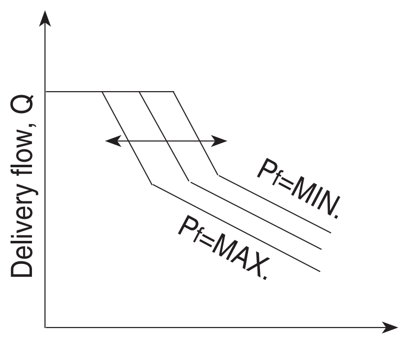


8007A2MP04



(3) Power shift control





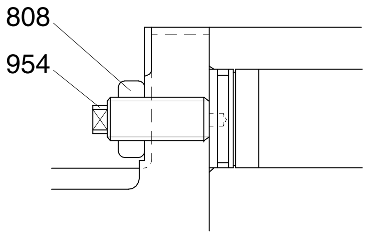
The set horsepower valve is shifted by varying the command current level of the proportional pressure reducing valve attached to the pump.
Only one proportional pressure reducing valve is provided.
However, the secondary pressure Pf (power shift pressure) is admitted to the horsepower control section of each pump regulator through the pump's internal path to shift it to the same set horsepower level.
This function permits arbitrary setting of the pump output power, thereby providing the optimum power level according to the operating condition.
The power shift pressure Pf controls the set horsepower of the pump to a desired level, as shown in the figure.
As the power shift pressure Pf rises, the compensating rod (623) moves to the right via the pin (898) and compensating piston (621).
This decreases the pump tilting angle and then the set horsepower in the same way as explained in the overload preventive function of the horsepower control. On the contrary, the set horsepower rises as the power shift pressure Pf falls.

(4) Adjustment of maximum and minimum flows

① Adjustment of maximum flow

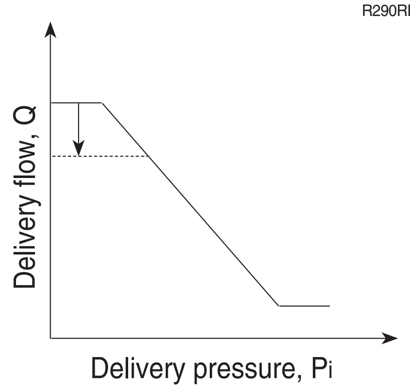
Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (808) and by tightening (or loosening) the set screw (954).

The maximum flow only is adjusted without changing other control characteristics.



R290RE08(5)

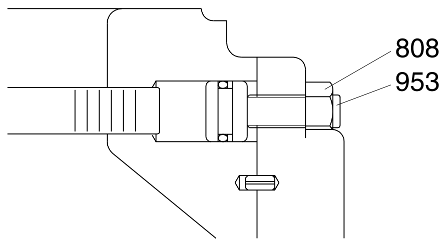
Speed	Adjustment of max flow spring	
	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (954)	Flow change amount
(min $^{-1}$)	(Turn)	(l /min)
1800	+1/4	-6.9



② Adjustment of minimum flow

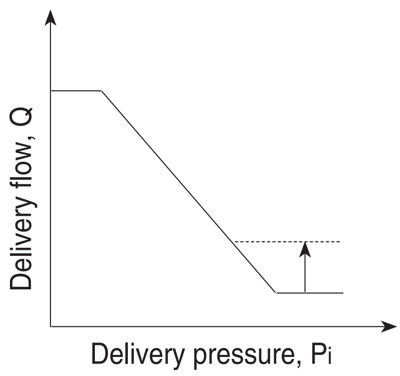
Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (808) and by tightening (or loosening) the hexagonal socket head set screw (953). Similarly to the adjustment of the maximum flow, other characteristics are not changed.

However, remember that, if tightened too much, the required horsepower during the maximum delivery pressure (or during relieving) may increase.



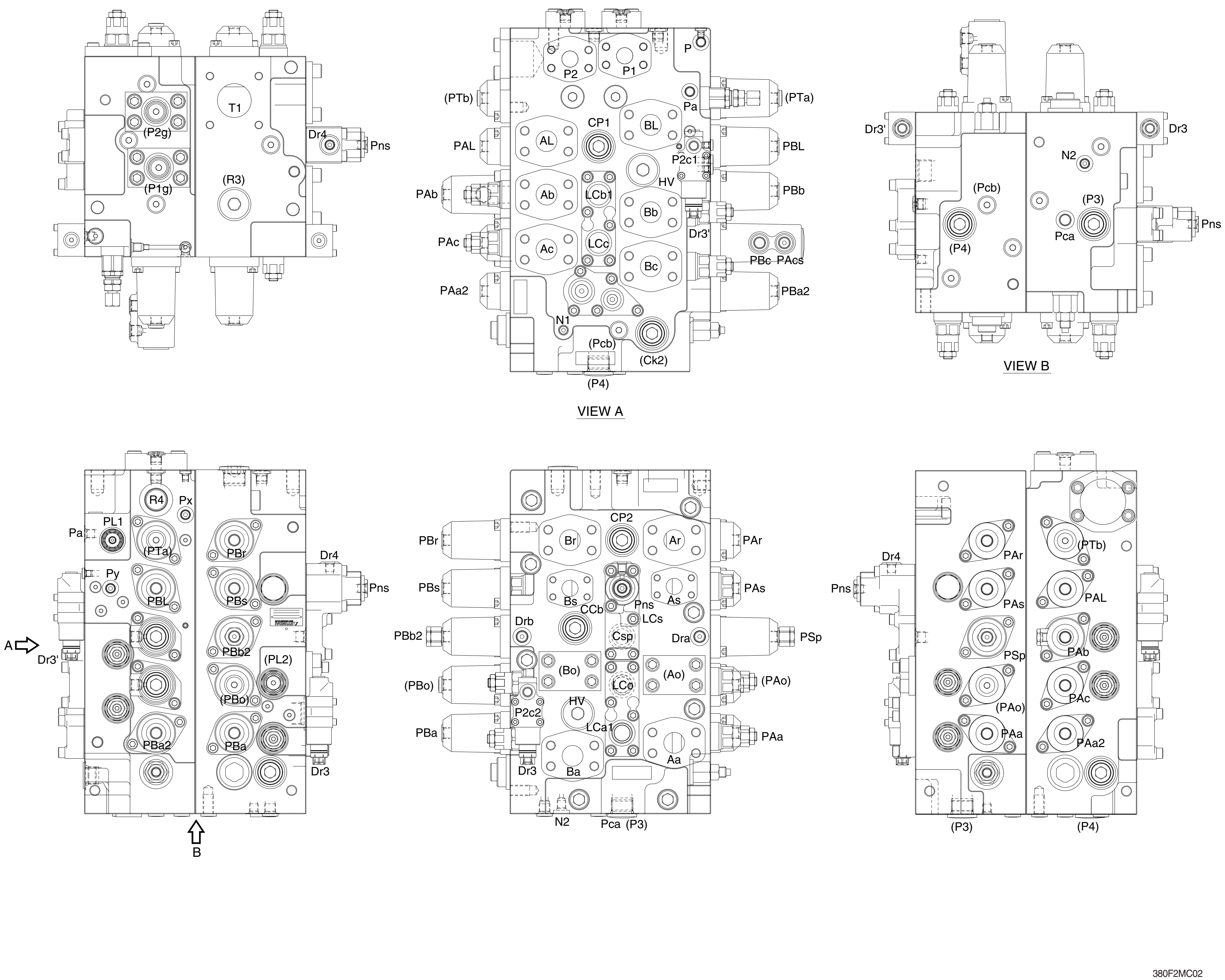
3607A2MP02

Speed	Adjustment of min flow spring	
	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (953)	Flow change amount
(min $^{-1}$)	(Turn)	(l /min)
1800	+1/4	+6.9



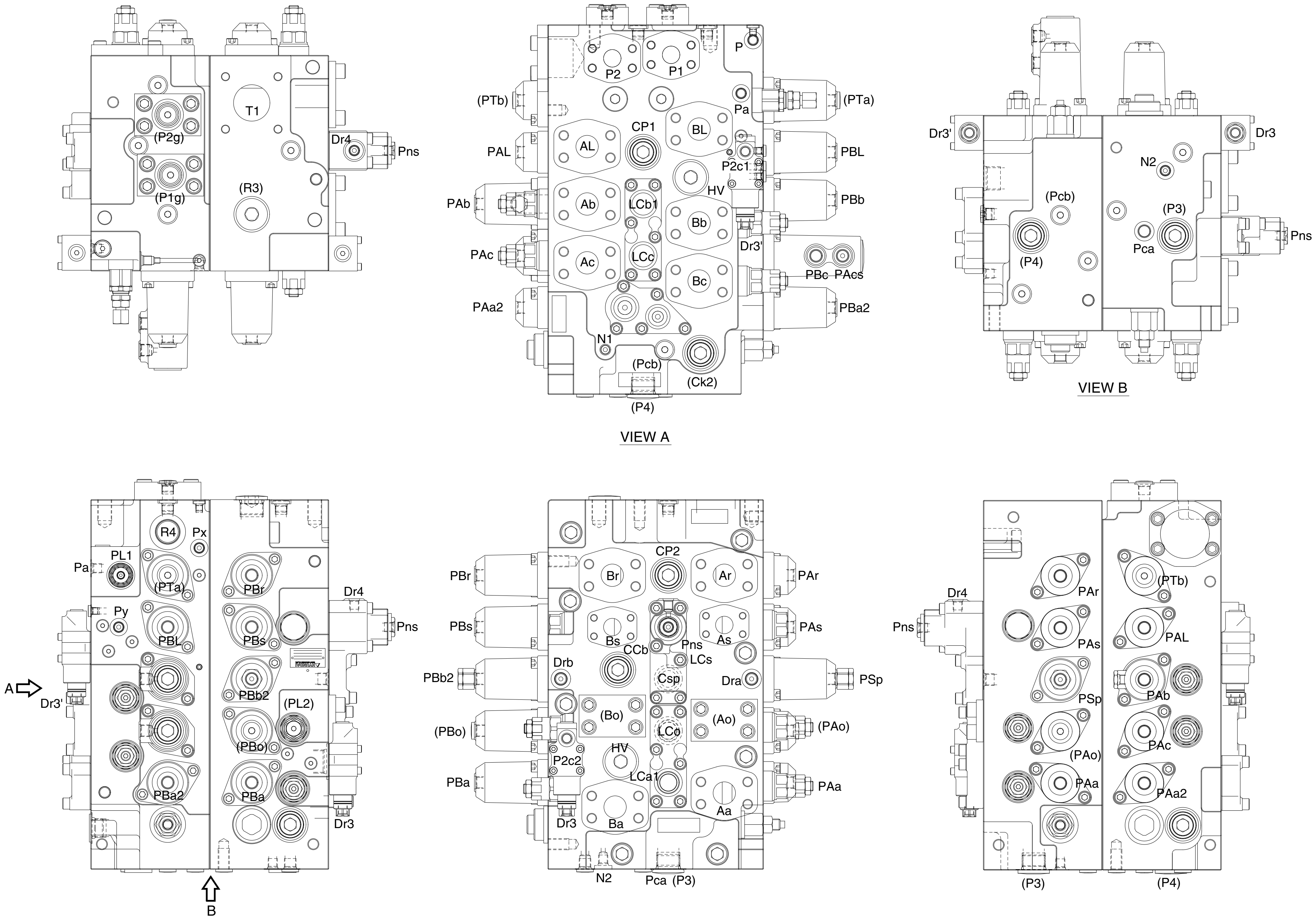
GROUP 2 MAIN CONTROL VALVE

1. STRUCTURE (1/4)



Mark	Port name	Port size	Tightening torque
(R3)	-	PF1	15~18 kgf · m (108.5~130 lbf · ft)
R4	Make up port		
(P3)	-		
(P4)	-		
(Ck2)	-		
PAa	Arm 1 (in) pilot port	PF3/8	7~8 kgf · m (50.6~57.8 lbf · ft)
PBa	Arm 1 (out) pilot port		
PAb	Boom (down) pilot port		
PBb	Boom (up) pilot port		
PAc	Bucket (in) pilot port		
PBc	Bucket (out) pilot port		
PAL	Travel right (reverse) pilot port		
PBL	Travel right (forward) pilot port		
PAr	Travel left (reverse) pilot port		
PBr	Travel left (forward) pilot port		
PAs	Swing (left) pilot port		
PBs	Swing (right) pilot port		
PAa2	Arm 2 (in) pilot port		
PBa2	Arm 2 (out) pilot port		
PBb2	Boom (up) confluence pilot port		
(PAo)	Optional pilot port		
(PBo)	Optional pilot port		
PAcs	Bucket (in) stroke limitter pilot port		
Pca	Bypass cut spool (P2 side) pilot port		
(Pcb)	Bypass cut spool (P1 side) pilot port		
Dra	Drain port		
Drb	Drain port		
(PTa)	-		
(PTb)	-		
(P1g)	Quick clamp solenoid valve supply port		
(P2g)	-		
Psp	Swing priority		
P	Pilot port	PF1/4	3.5~4.0 kgf · m (25.3~29 lbf · ft)
Pa	Pilot port		
Px	Pressure port for attachment		
Py	Pressure port for travel		
(PL2)	For switching		
Pns	Boom priority valve pilot port		
P2c1	Lock valve (boom head side) pilot port		
P2c2	Lock valve (arm rod side) pilot port		

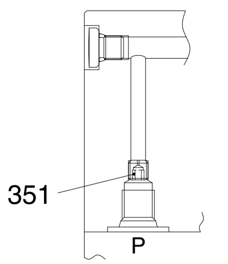
STRUCTURE (2/4)



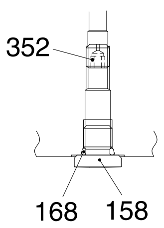
Mark	Port name	Port size	Tightening torque
N1	Nega-con pressure (boom1 side) port	PF1/4	3.5~4.0 kgf · m (25.3~29 lbf · ft)
N2	Nega-con pressure (arm1 side) port		
Dr3	Drain port		
Dr3'	Drain port		
Dr4	Drain port		
PL1	Main relief valve pilot port for switching to high pressure	PF1/8	1.5~1.9 kgf · m (10.8~13.7 lbf · ft)
Aa	Arm cylinder head side port (in)	M14	14~18 kgf · m (101~130 lbf · ft)
Ba	Arm cylinder rod side port (out)		
Ab	Boom cylinder rod side port (down)		
Bb	Boom cylinder head side port (up)		
Ac	Bucket cylinder head side port (in)		
Bc	Bucket cylinder rod side port (out)		
Ar	Travel left motor (reverse)		
Br	Travel left motor (forward)		
AL	Travel right motor (reverse)		
BL	Travel right motor (forward)		
(Ao)	Optional port		
(Bo)	Optional port		
P1	Pump port (A1 side)	M12	8.5~11 kgf · m (61.5~80 lbf · ft)
P2	Pump port (A2 side)		
T1	Return port		
As	Swing motor port (left)	M10	5~6.5 kgf · m (36~47 lbf · ft)
Bs	Swing motor port (right)		

380F2MC02

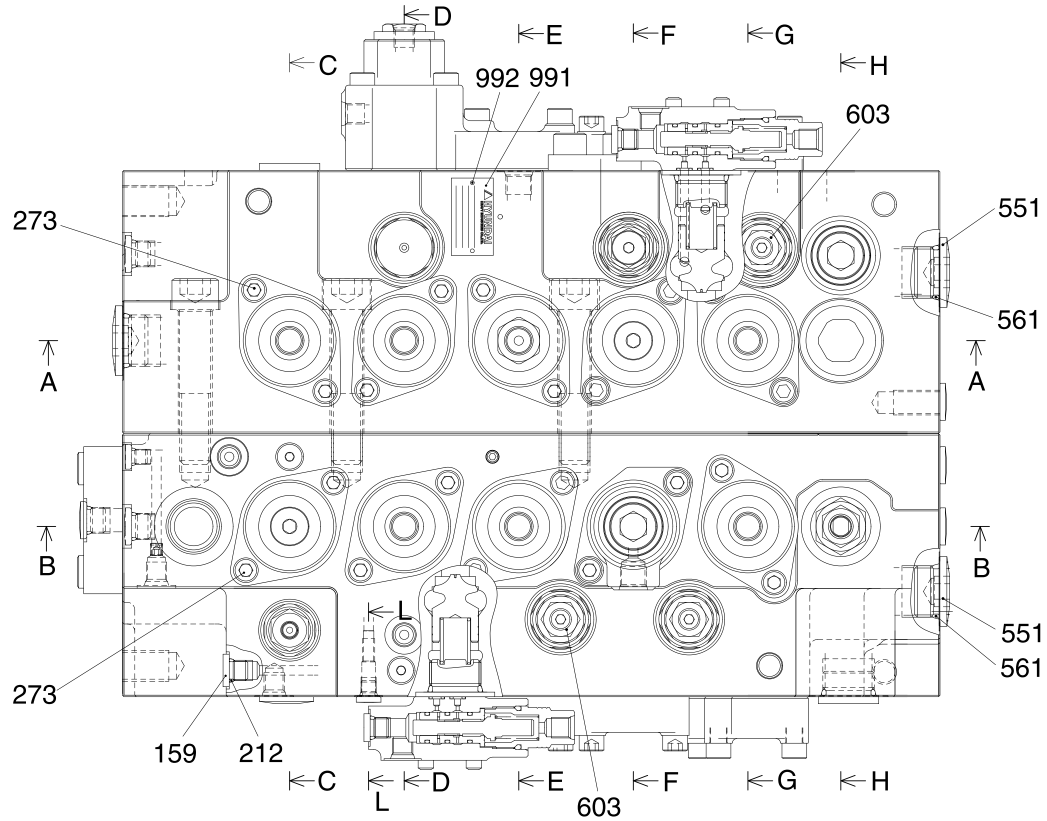
STRUCTURE (3/4)

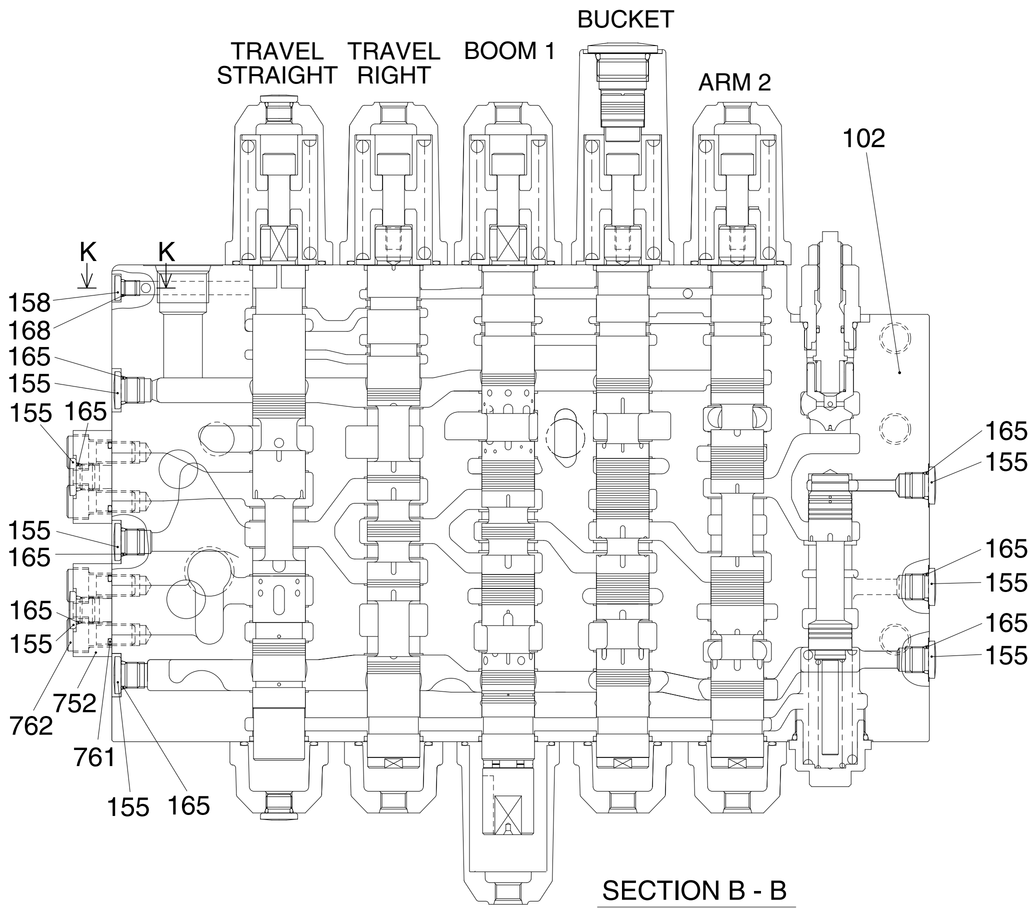


SECTION K - K

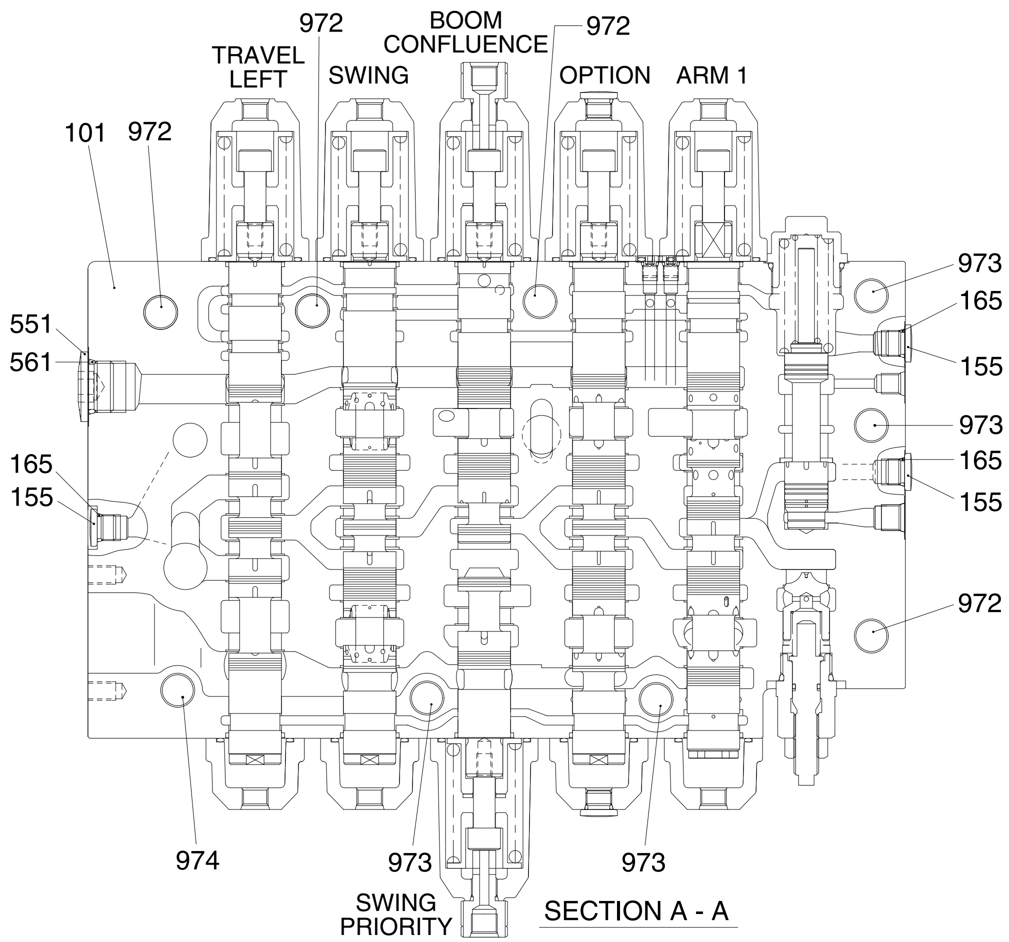


SECTION L - L





SECTION B - B

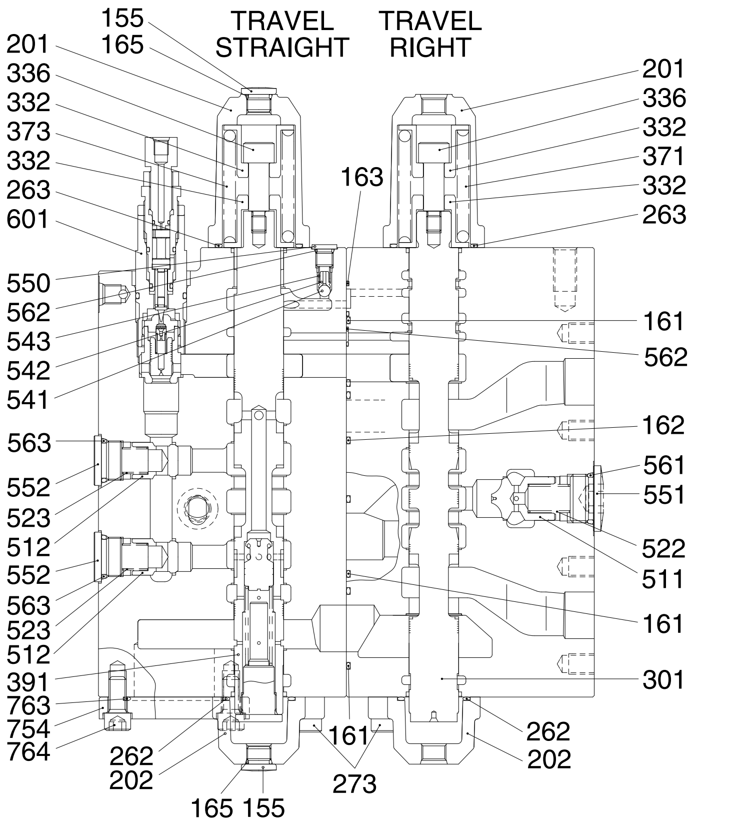


SECTION A - A

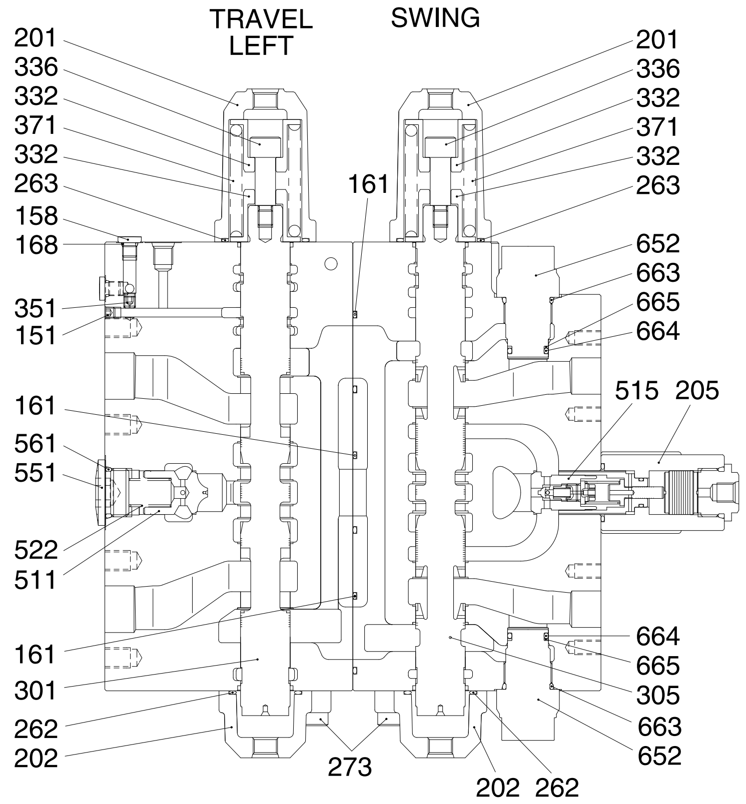
380F2MC03

101	Casing-A	373	Spring
102	Casing-B	391	Travel straight spool assy
151	Plug	392	Bypass cut spool
155	Plug	393	Boom confluence spool
158	Plug	394	Arm confluence spool
159	Plug	395	Swing priority spool
161	O-ring	511	Poppet
162	O-ring	512	Poppet
163	O-ring	513	Poppet
165	O-ring	514	Poppet
168	O-ring	515	Boom priority valve assy
201	Cover	522	Spring
202	Cover	523	Spring
203	Cover	524	Spring
204	Cover	525	Spring
205	Cover assy	541	Steel ball
206	Cover	542	Spring seat
208	Cover	543	Spring
211	Plug	550	Plug
212	O-ring	551	Plug
251	Plug	552	Plug
252	Lock valve assy	553	Plug
262	O-ring	554	Plug
263	O-ring	557	Plug assy
264	O-ring	558	Plug
265	O-ring	561	O-ring
267	O-ring	562	O-ring
273	Bolt	563	O-ring
274	Bolt	601	Main relief valve
275	Bolt	603	Port relief valve
301	Travel spool	611	Nagative control relief valve
302	Arm 1 spool	652	Plug
303	Boom 1 spool	663	O-ring
304	Bucket spool	664	O-ring
305	Swing spool	665	Backup ring
308	Option spool	751	Flange
313	Plug	752	Flange
326	Spring	754	Flange
327	Spring	761	O-ring
332	Spring seat	762	Bolt
335	Shim	763	O-ring
336	Bolt	764	Bolt
337	Rod	972	Bolt
351	Orifice	973	Bolt
352	Orifice	974	Bolt
356	Piston	991	Name plate
371	Spring	997	Pin
372	Spring		

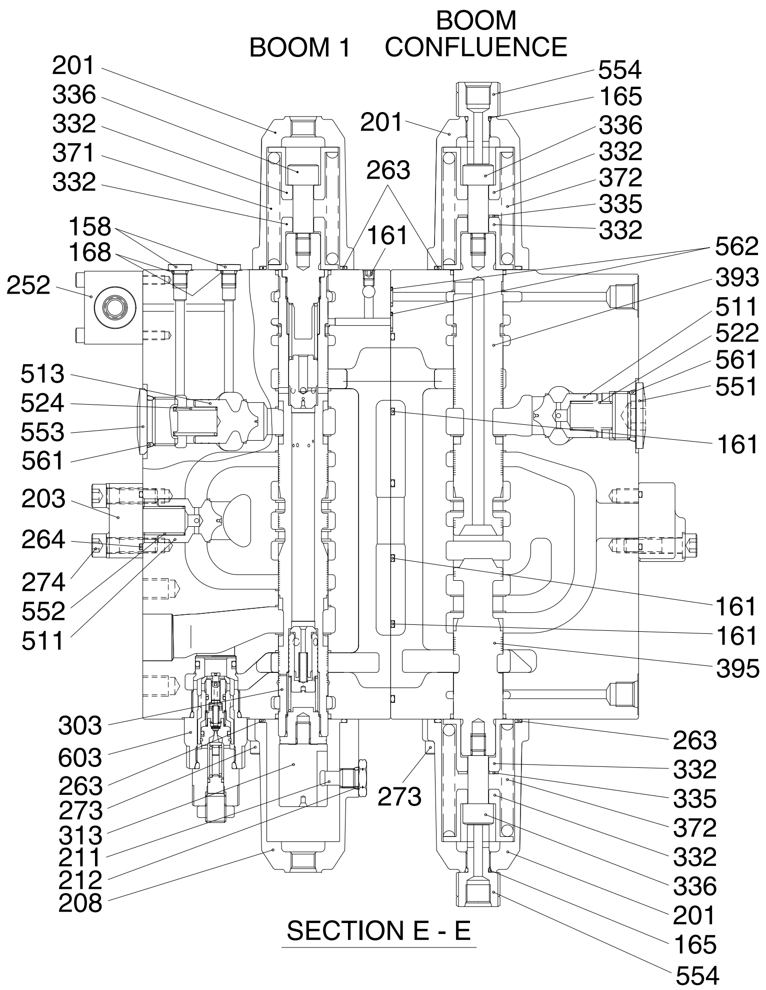
STRUCTURE (4/4)



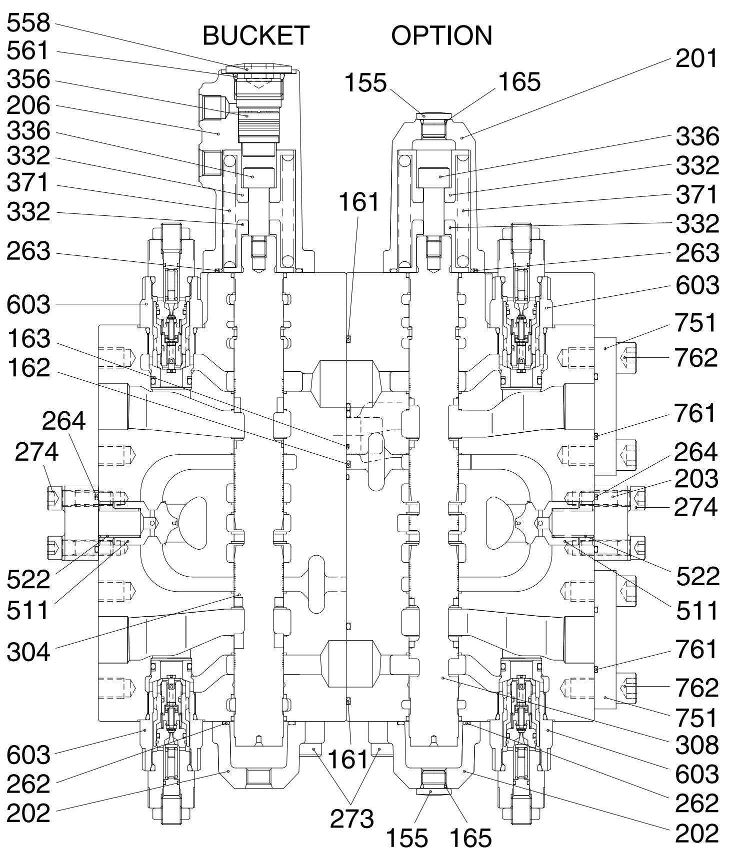
SECTION C - C



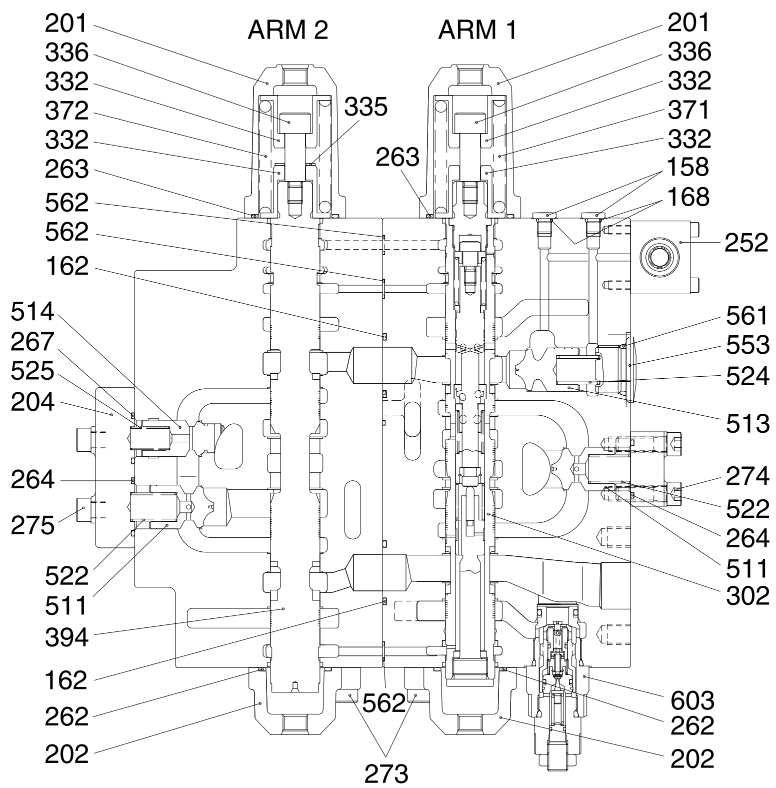
SECTION D - D



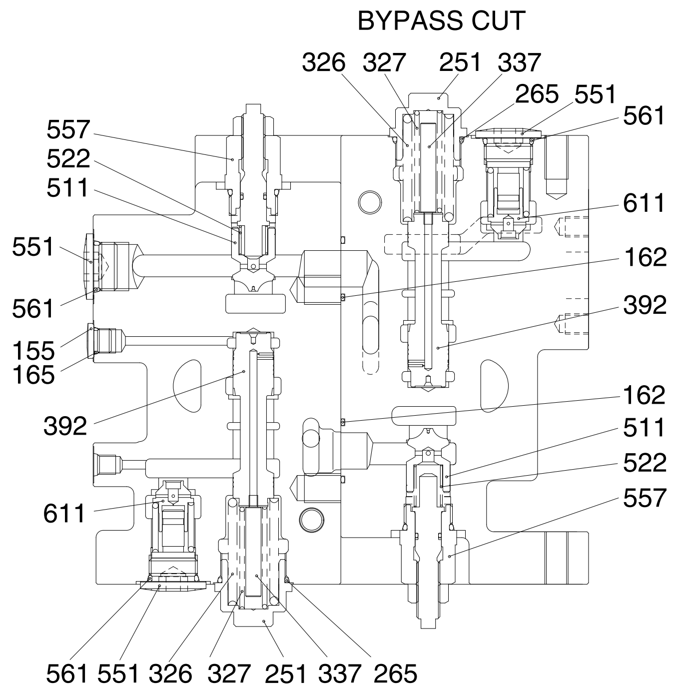
SECTION E - E



SECTION F - F



SECTION G - G

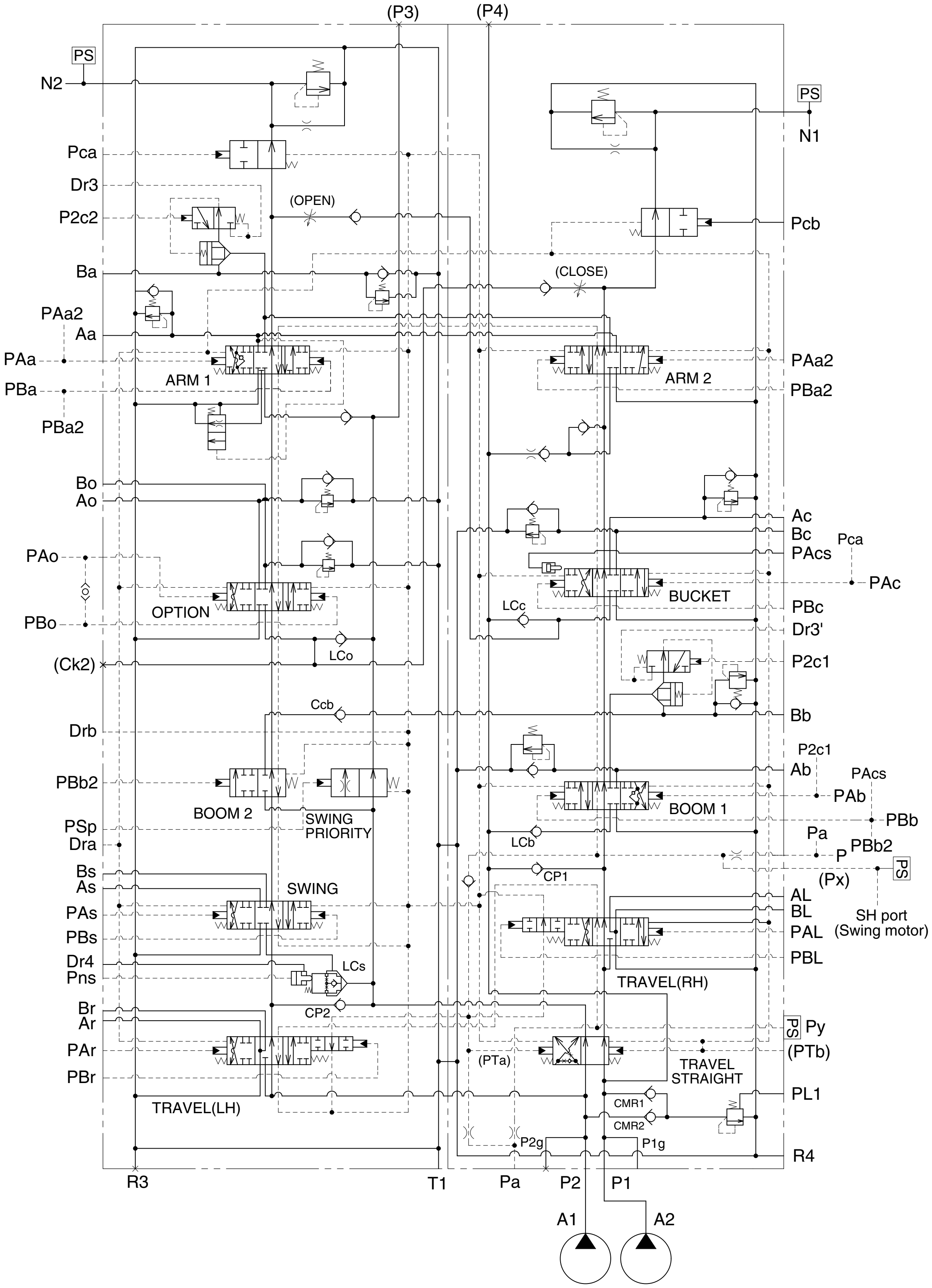


SECTION H - H

380F2MC04

2. FUNCTION

1) HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT



380F2MC05

2) OPERATION

(1) Neutral positions of spools

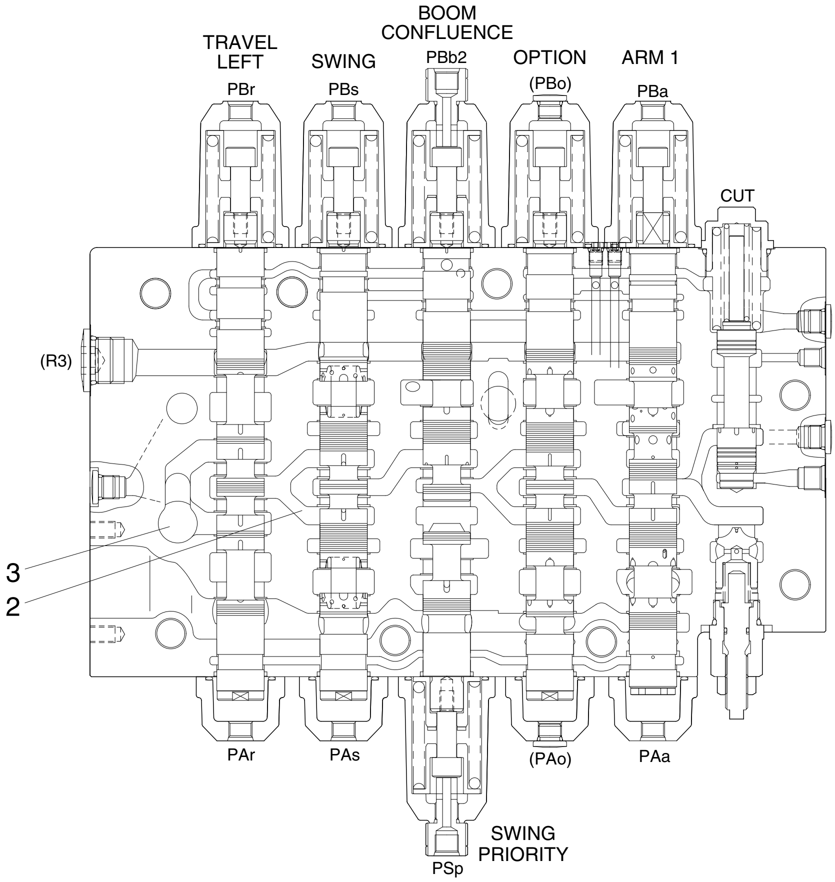
When all spools are in the neutral positions, the pressurized oil discharged from the main pump (A2) passes through Port P1, the main path (1), the bypass circuit (2) passing the spools for boom 1, bucket and arm 2, and boom 1 side negative control orifice, and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (T1).

The pressure upstream the boom 1 side negative control orifice (the negative control signal pressure) is led from port N1 to the regulator on the main pump (A2) side, and controls the pump discharge flow rate to its minimum value.

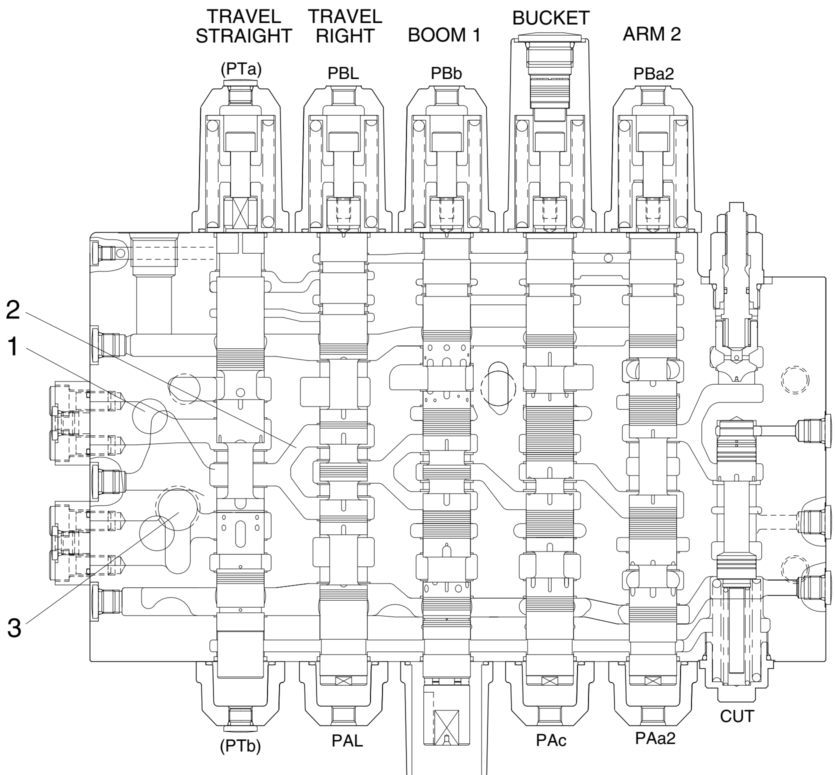
The oil discharged from the main pump (A1) passes through port P2, the main path (3), the bypass circuit (2) passing the spools for swing, boom confluence (boom 2), option and arm 1, and the arm 1 side negative control orifice, and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (T1).

The pressure upstream the arm 1 side negative control orifice (the negative control signal pressure) is led from port N2 to the regulator on the main pump (A1) side, and controls the pump discharge flow rate to its minimum value.

When any of nine main spools is changed over, the bypass circuit (2) is cut off and the hydraulic oil at port N1 or N2 in the negative control circuit is shut off.



BOOM
CONFLUENCE
TRAVEL
LEFT
SWING
PBb2
OPTION
ARM 1
PBr
PBs
(PBo)
PBa
CUT
(R3)
3
2
PAr
PAs
(PAo)
PAa
SWING
PRIORITY
PSp

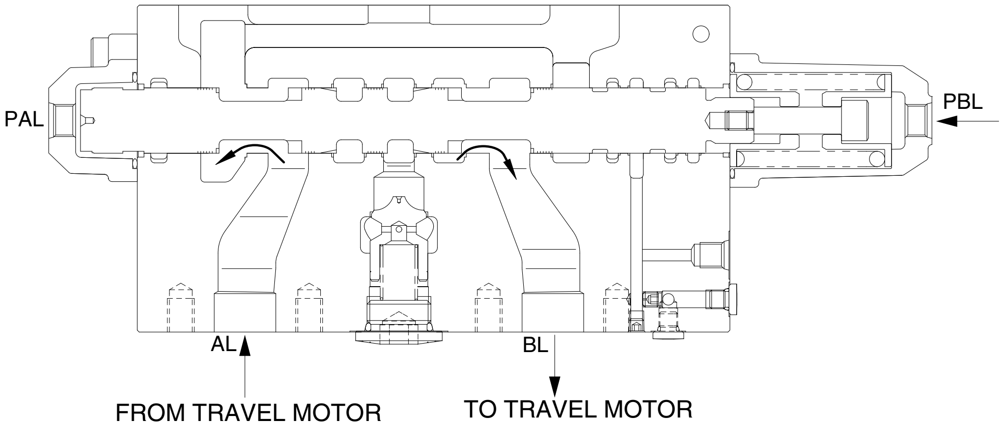


TRAVEL
STRAIGHT
TRAVEL
RIGHT
BOOM 1
BUCKET
ARM 2
(PTa)
PBL
PBb
PBa2
2
1
3
CUT
(PTb)
PAL
PAc
PAa2
PAb

3809A2MC14

(2) Travel operation

When pilot port PBL of the travel right spool is pressurized, the bypass circuit (2) in the arm 2 side is shut off and pressurized oil from port P2 passes through port BL and flows to the travel motor. On the other hand, the return oil from the travel motor passes through port AL and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (T1).



3607A2MC15

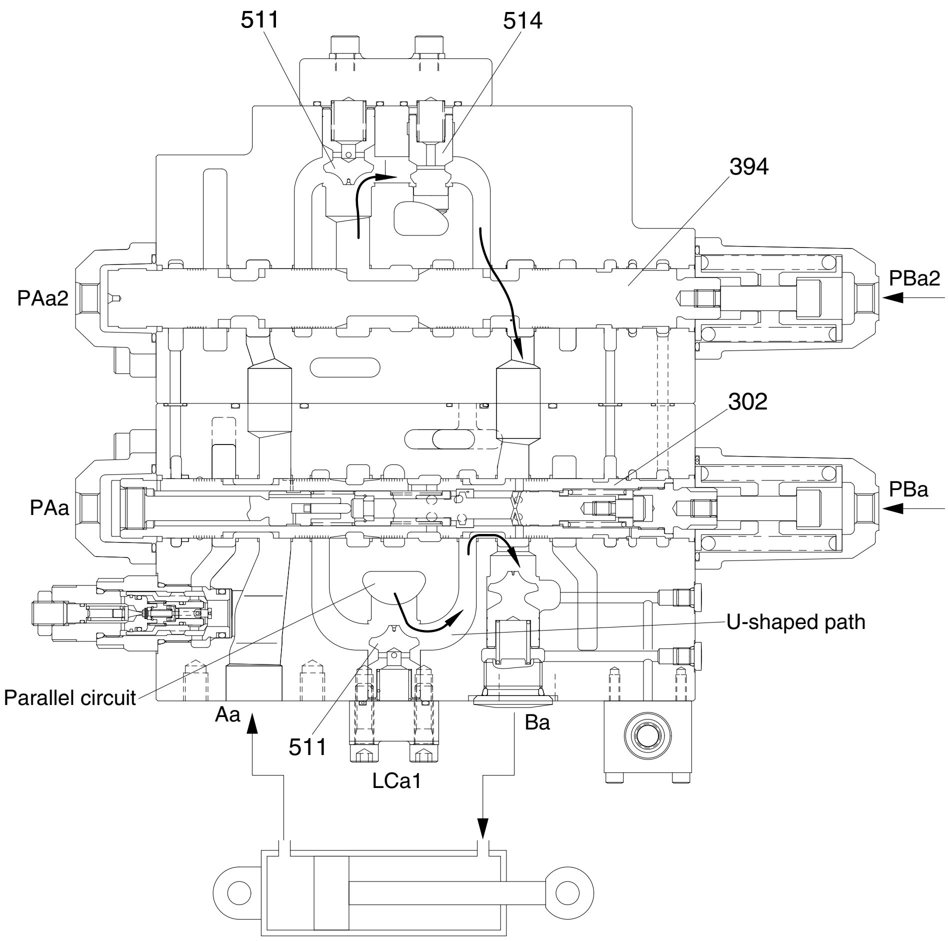
(3) Arm

① Arm out operation

During the arm out operation the pilot pressure enters through ports PBa and PBa2. When the pressure enters through port PBa, the spool transfers in the left direction in figure. The hydraulic oil entering through port P2 Passes through the main path (3) and flows to the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit is shut off due to transfer of the arm 1 spool. Therefore, the hydraulic oil from the parallel circuit pushes open the check valve (511) and flows through the U-shaped path to the arm1 spool (302). Then, it flows around the periphery of the arm 1 spool (302) to port Ba, and is supplied to the arm cylinder rod side (R).

On the other hand, the oil entering through port P1 passes in the main path (1), and flows into the bypass circuit (2), and the bypass circuit is shut off due to transfer of the arm 2 spool (394). Oil from the parallel circuit pushes open the check valve (514) and oil from the bypass circuit pushes open the check valve (511) and flows through the U-shaped path to the arm 2 spool (394). Then, it flows around the periphery of arm 2 spool in the inside path and joins into port Ba.

Besides, the return oil from the arm cylinder head side (H) passes through port Aa, flows into tank line in arm 1 side and in arm 2 side and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (T1).



3607A2MC16

② Arm in operation

During the arm in operation, the pilot pressure enters through ports PAa and PAa2. When the pressure enters through port PAa, the spool transfers in the right direction in figure MC17A. The hydraulic oil entering through port P2 passes through the main path (3) and flows to the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit is shut off due to transfer of the arm 1 spool. Therefore, the hydraulic oil from the parallel circuit pushes open the check valve (511) and flows through the U-shaped path to the arm 1 spool (302). Then, it flows around the periphery of the arm1 spool to port Aa, and is supplied to the arm cylinder head side (H).

Besides, the oil entering through port P1 passes in the main path (1), and flows into the bypass circuit (2), and the bypass circuit is shut off due to transfer of the arm 2 spool (394). Oil from the parallel circuit pushes open the check valve (514) and oil from the bypass circuit pushes open the check valve (511) and flows through the U-shaped path to the arm 2 spool (394). Then, it flows around the periphery of arm 2 spool in the inside path and joins into port Aa.

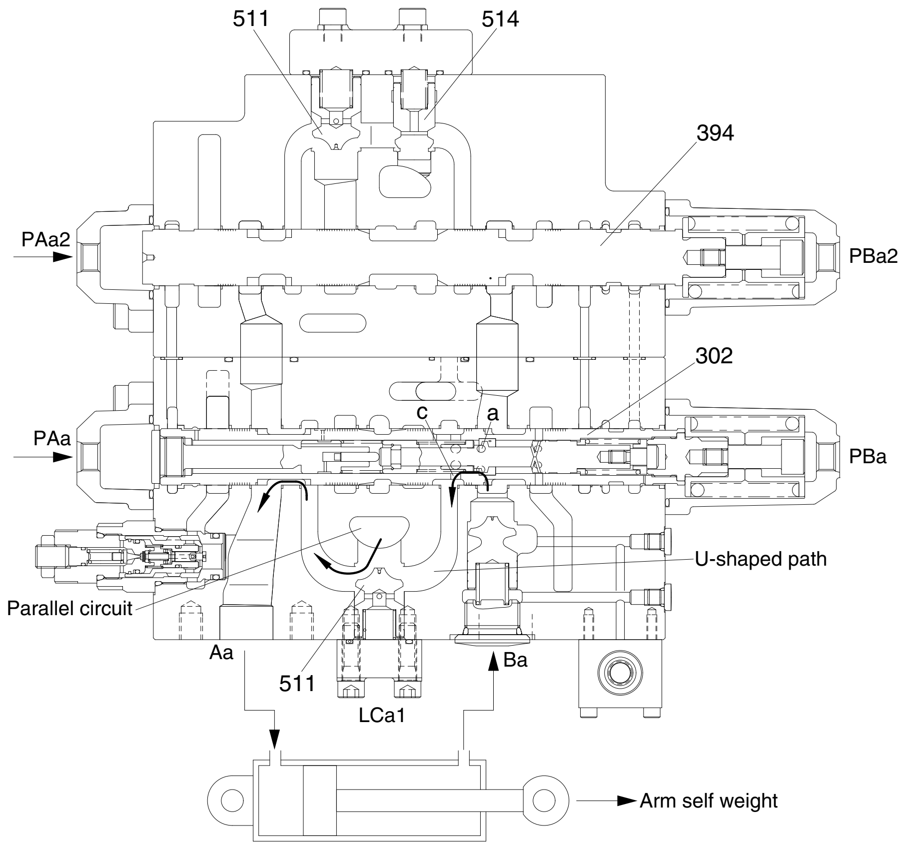
On the other hand, the return oil from the arm cylinder rod side (R) is pressurized by self-weight of the arms and so on, and returns to port Ba. The pressurized oil returning to Port Ba enters into the spool through the outside hole (a) of the arm1 spool (302). During a light load only, it pushes open the sleeve check valve and part of oil flows the U-shaped path reversely from the spool hole (c), and joins into port Aa. The rest of oil returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (T1).

This is called the arm regeneration function.

When the pressure in the arm cylinder head side (H) increases, the piston (d) and sub-spool (e) are transferred in the right direction, and at the same time the sleeve check valve (f) is closed by its backpressure. This shuts off the arm regeneration function, and the return oil from the arm cylinder rod side (R) enters from port Ba through the periphery hole (a) of the arm1 spool into the spool, flows out through the periphery hole (b) of the spool, and returns through the tank port (T1) to the hydraulic oil tank.

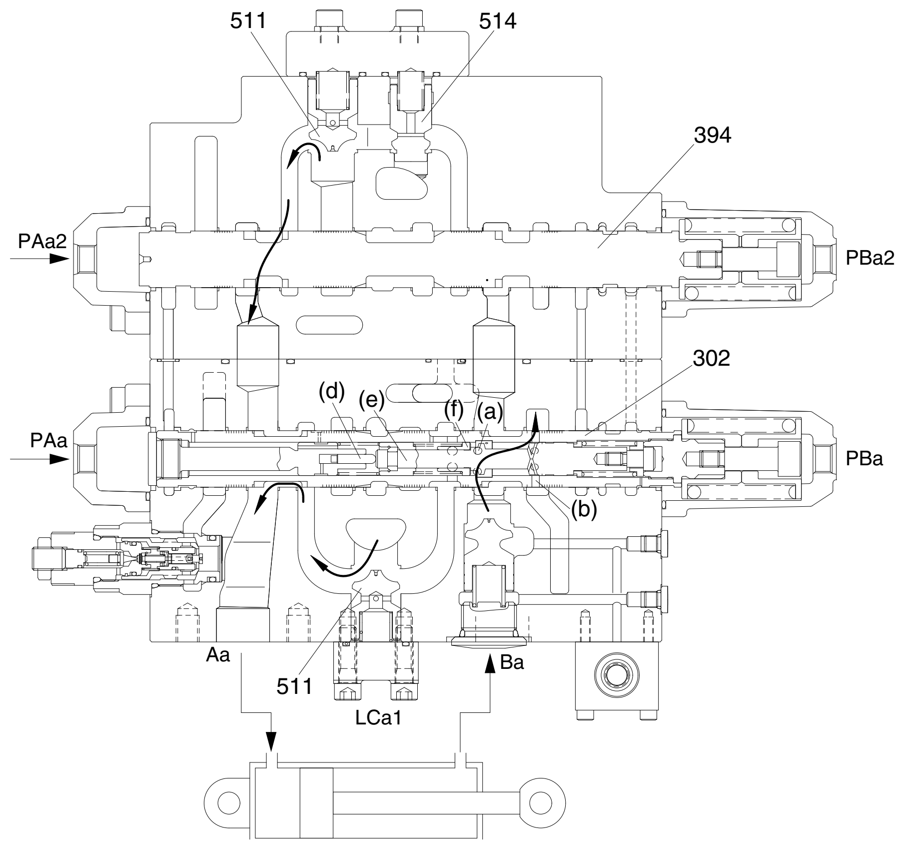
On the other hand, the pressurized oil entering through port P1 joins into port Aa through the inside path similarly to the case of the arm stretching operation.

· During light load only



3607A2MC17A

· The pressure in the arm cylinder head side (H) increases.

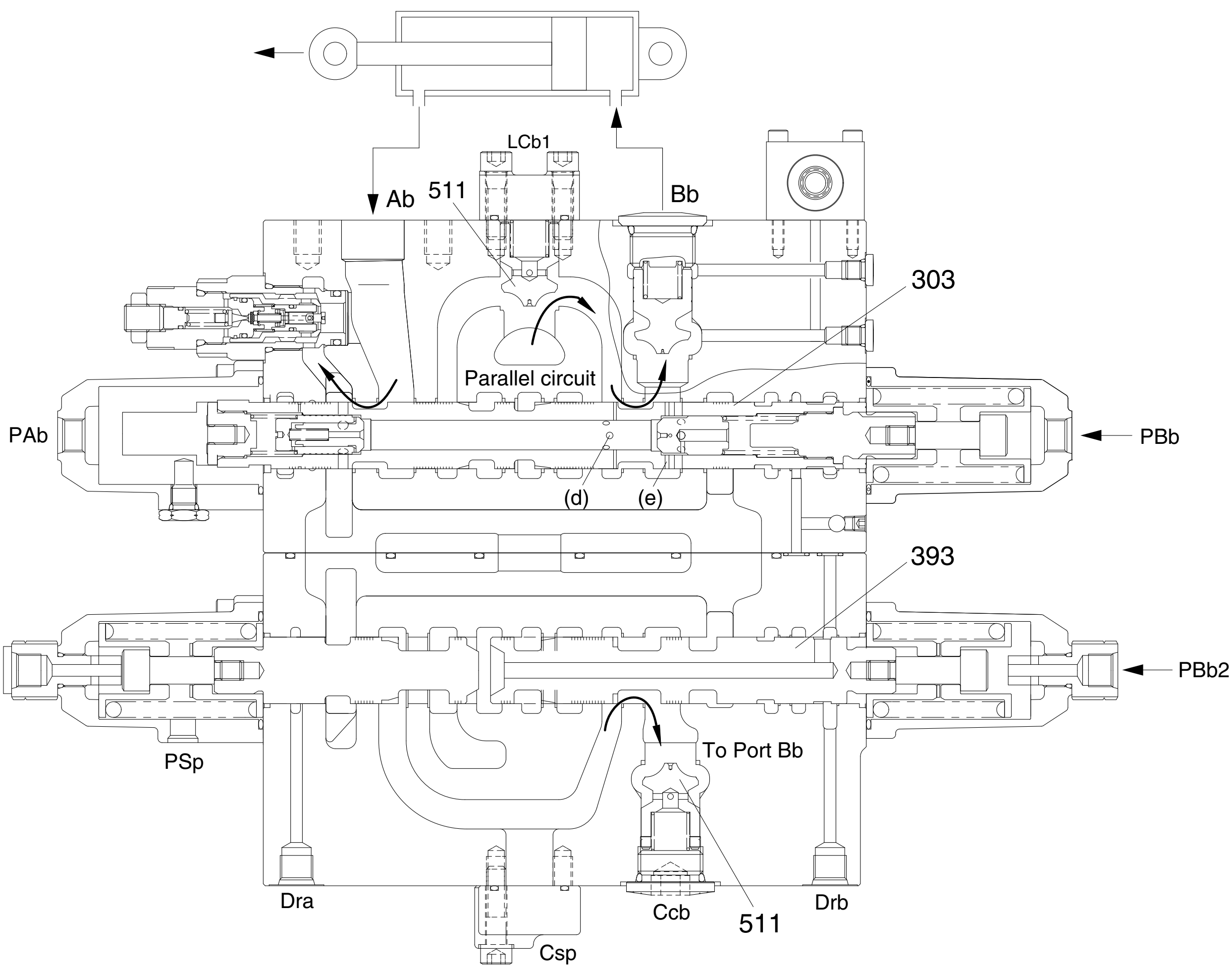


3607A2MC17B

(4) Boom

① Boom up operation

During the boom up operation, the pilot pressure enters through port PBb and moves the boom 1 spool in the left direction in figure. The pressurized oil entering through port P1 passes through the main path (1) and flows to the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit is shut off due to transfer of the boom 1 spool. Therefore, the pressurized oil flows into the parallel circuit, pushes open the check valve (511), and flows through U-shaped path to the boom1 spool (303). When the stroke of the boom 1 spool is small, the oil enters through the periphery hole (d) of the spool to the inside of the spool, and flows out to port Bb through the periphery hole (e). When the stroke of the boom 1 spool is large, the oil flows out to port Bb through the periphery of the spool.
At the same time, the pilot pressure enters also through Port PBb2 to transfer the boom 2 spool (393) in the left direction in figure. Though the pressurized oil enters into port P2, the bypass is shut off due to transfer of the boom 2 spool. Therefore, the oil flows in the parallel circuit and flows through the U-shaped path to the boom 2 spool. Then, the oil passes through the periphery of the boom 2 spool, pushes open the check valve (511), joins into port Bb in the inside path, and is supplied to the boom cylinder head side (H). (Boom confluent flow)
On the other hand, the return oil from the boom cylinder rod side (R) enters through port Ab and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (T1).



② Boom down operation

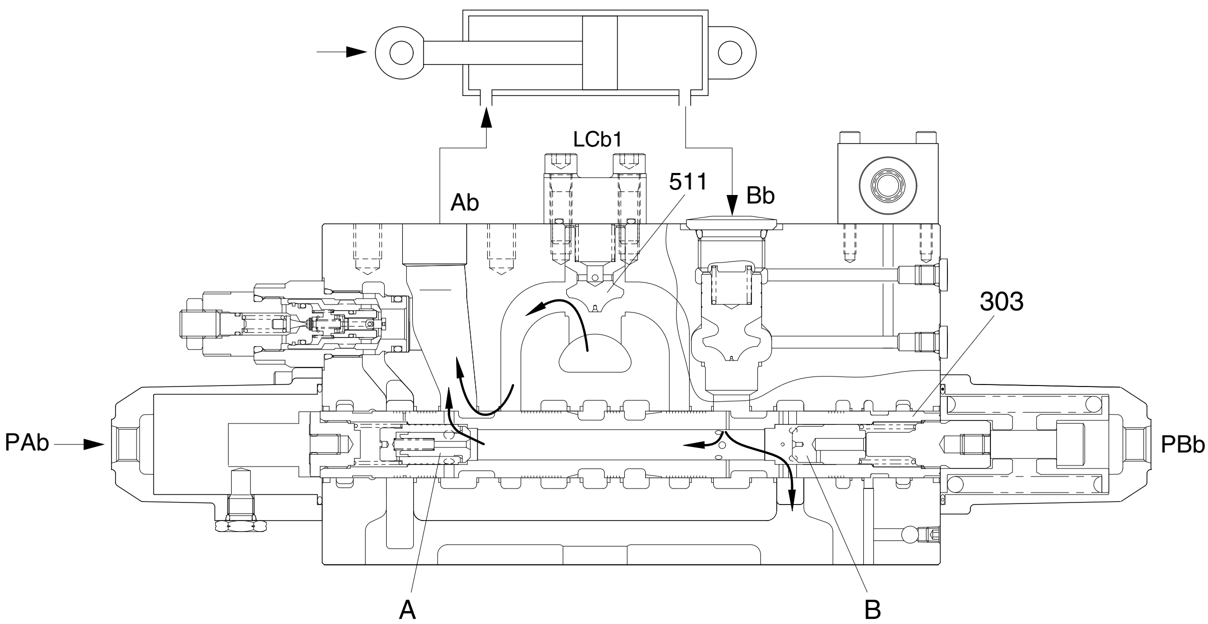
During the boom down operation, the pilot pressure enters through port PAb and transfers the boom 1 spool in the right direction in figure. The pressurized oil entering through port P1 passes through the main path (1) and flows to the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit is shut off due to transfer of the boom 1 spool. Therefore, the pressurized oil flows into the parallel circuit, pushes open the check valve (511), and flows through the U-shaped path to the boom 1 spool (303). Then, it flows around the periphery of the boom 1 spool to port Ab and is supplied to the boom cylinder rod side (R).

On the other hand, the return oil from the boom cylinder head side (H) passes to the notch of the boom 1 spool.

Since this return oil has a sufficient pressure caused by the weight of the boom, it passes through the path inside the spool, pushes the poppet A in the spool in the left direction shown in the figure, flows around the outside of the spool. Then, it is supplied again to the boom cylinder rod side (R) as hydraulic oil to lower the boom. (boom regeneration)

Besides, a part of the return oil from the boom cylinder flows from the check valve B (boost check) into the tank.

The boost check boosts the hydraulic oil flowing to the tank to secure the sufficient regeneration flow rate.



3809A2MC19

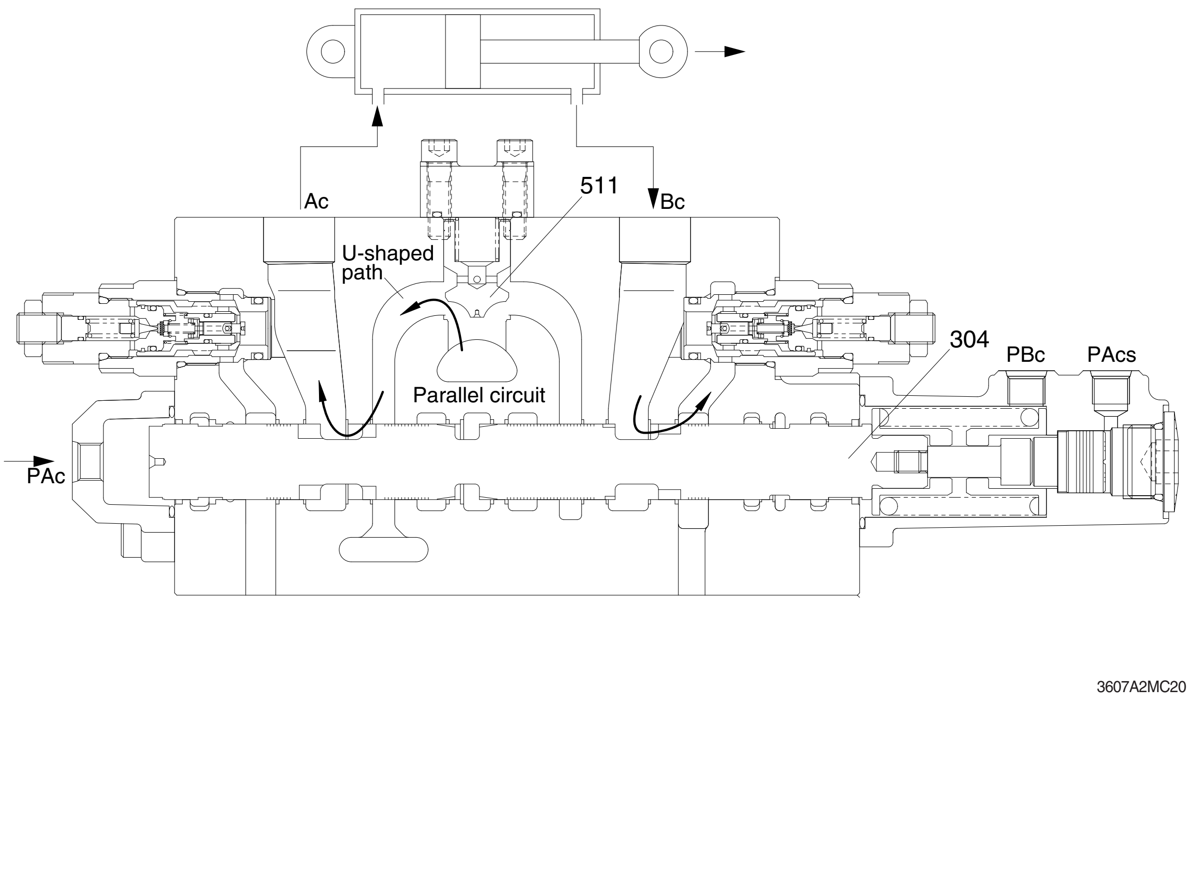
(5) Bucket

① Bucket in operation

During the bucket in operation, the pilot pressure enters through port PAc and transfers the bucket spool in the right direction in figure. The pressurized oil entering through port P1 passes through the main path (1) and flows through the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit is shut off due to transfer of the bucket spool. Therefore, the pressurized oil flows into the parallel circuit, pushes open the check valve (511), and flows through the U-shaped path to the bucket spool (304). Then, it flows through the periphery of the spool to port Ac and is supplied to the bucket cylinder head side (H).

On the other hand, the return oil from the bucket cylinder rod side (R) enters through port Bc, passes around the periphery of the spool, and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (T1).

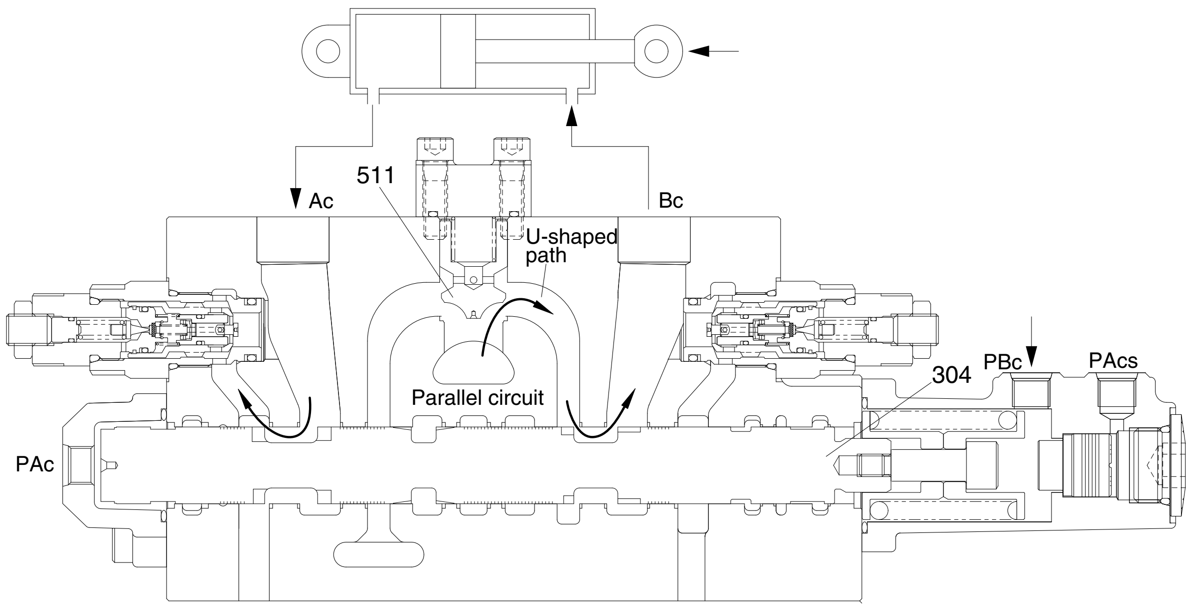
During the boom up and bucket in operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port PAcs and the bucket spool transfers in the half stroke not full stroke. Therefore, the most of pressurized oil entering through Port P1 flows to the boom 1 spool (304) than the bucket spool (304) to make the boom up operation most preferential.



② Bucket out operation

During the bucket out operation, the pilot pressure enters through port PBc and transfers the bucket spool in the left direction in figure. The pressurized oil entering through port P1 passes through the main path (1) and flows through the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit is shut off due to transfer of the bucket spool. Therefore, the pressurized oil flows into the parallel circuit, pushes open the check valve (511), and flows through the U-shaped path to the bucket spool (304). Then, it flows through the periphery of the spool to port Bc and is supplied to the bucket cylinder rod side (R).

On the other hand, the return oil from the bucket cylinder head side (H) enters through port Ac, passes around the periphery of the spool, and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (T1).



3607A2MC21

(6) Swing

① Independent swing operation

During the swing operation, the pilot pressure enters through port PAs (or PBs) and transfers the swing spool. The pressurized oil entering through Port P2 flows to Port As (or Bs) and is supplied to the swing motor. The return oil from the swing motor enters Port Bs (or As) and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (T1).

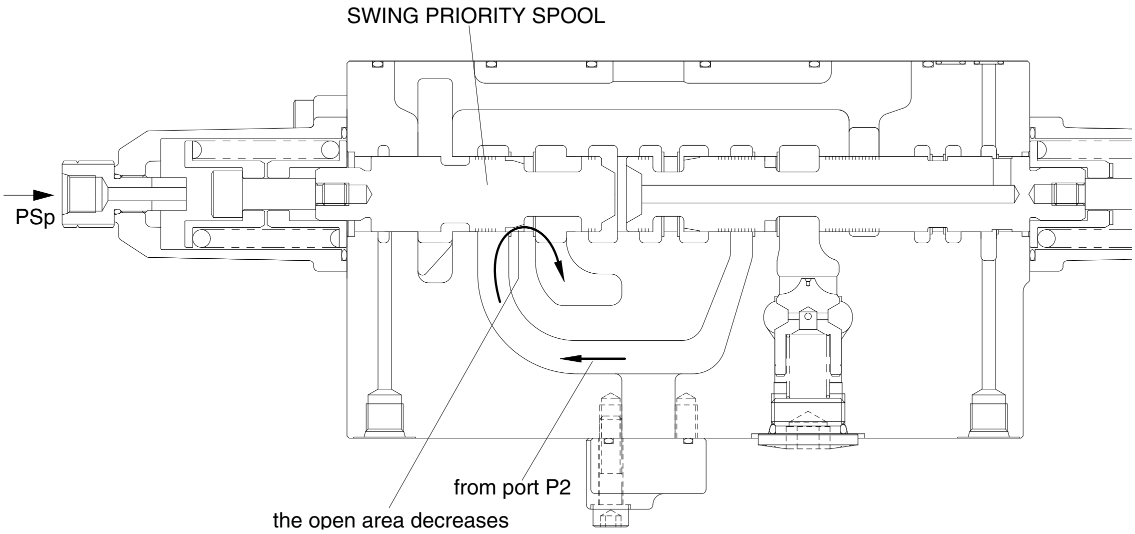
② Swing operation preference function

[Pilot Circuit]

The pilot pressure enters through Port PSp to transfer the swing priority spool (395).

[Main Circuit]

Due to transfer of the swing priority spool, the open area of the swing priority spool decreases, and the most of the pressurized oil entering through port P2 flows to the swing side to make the swing operation most preferential.



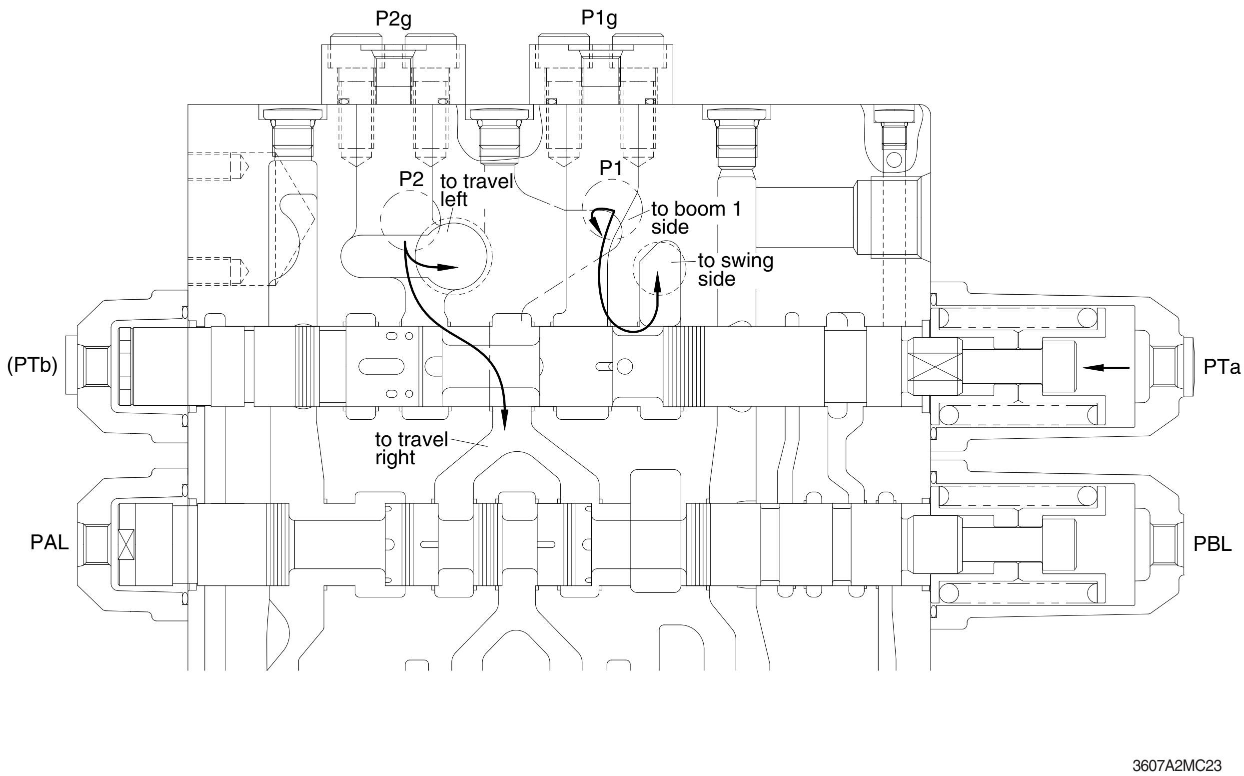
3607A2MC22

(7) Travel straight operation

Simultaneous operating of both travel spools and other spool.
A case where both travel spools and swing spool are changed over will be considered.
(The pilot ports PAL, PAr and PAs are pressurized.)

[Pilot Circuit]
Since the side bypass sections of both travel spools close and the side bypass section of the downstream-side swing closes, the pilot pressure from the port Pa enters through the port PTa to transfer the travel straight spool.

[Main Circuit]
After changeover of the travel straight spool, the port P2 and both travel spools are connected preferentially and the port P1 and the parallel paths of swing, boom 2, option and arm 1 / boom 1, bucket and arm 2 are connected preferentially. Therefore, the pressurized oil entering through port P2 passes through mainly ports AL and Ar, and flows to both travel motors separately.
On the other hand, the pressurized oil entering through port P1 flows to port As and is supplied to the swing motor.
When the pressure of port P2 is lower than the pressure of port P1, part of oil entering through port P1 flows into port P2 side. Therefore, it prevents the rapid slowdown of travel.



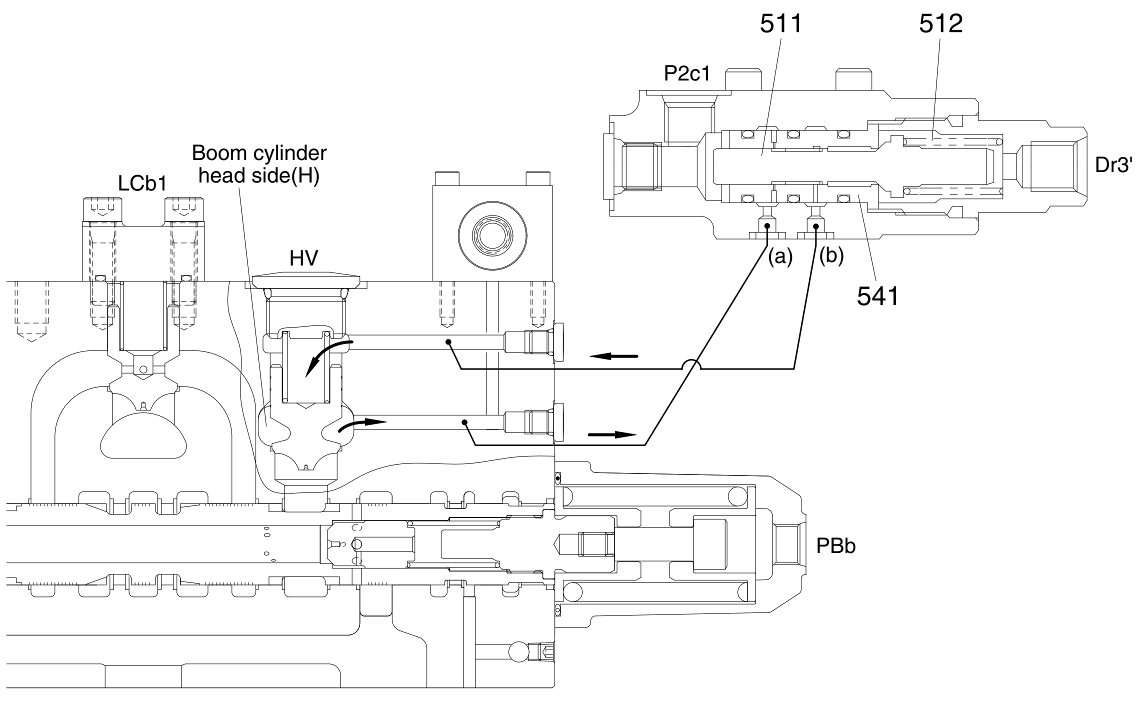
3607A2MC23

(8) Function of lock valve

The lock valve is fitted between the arm cylinder rod side (R) and the arm1 spool (302).
It decreases the leakage by the pressure of the cylinder.
Another lock valve is similarly fitted between the boom cylinder head side (H) and the boom 1 spool (303). It decreases the leakage by the pressure of the cylinder.

① Neutral positions of spools

The following is the case of the boom 1 spool.
(The case of the arm 1 spool is in the same way.)
During the boom 1 spool is in neutral position, the lock valve is kept in the position shown in figure. The spool (511) in lock valve is pushed to the seat of the bushing (541) by the force of the spring (512).
In this position, pressurized oil from the boom cylinder head side (H) enters through hole (a), the periphery of the spool and hole (b), and it pushes the poppet to the casing seat, and the leakage is decreased.

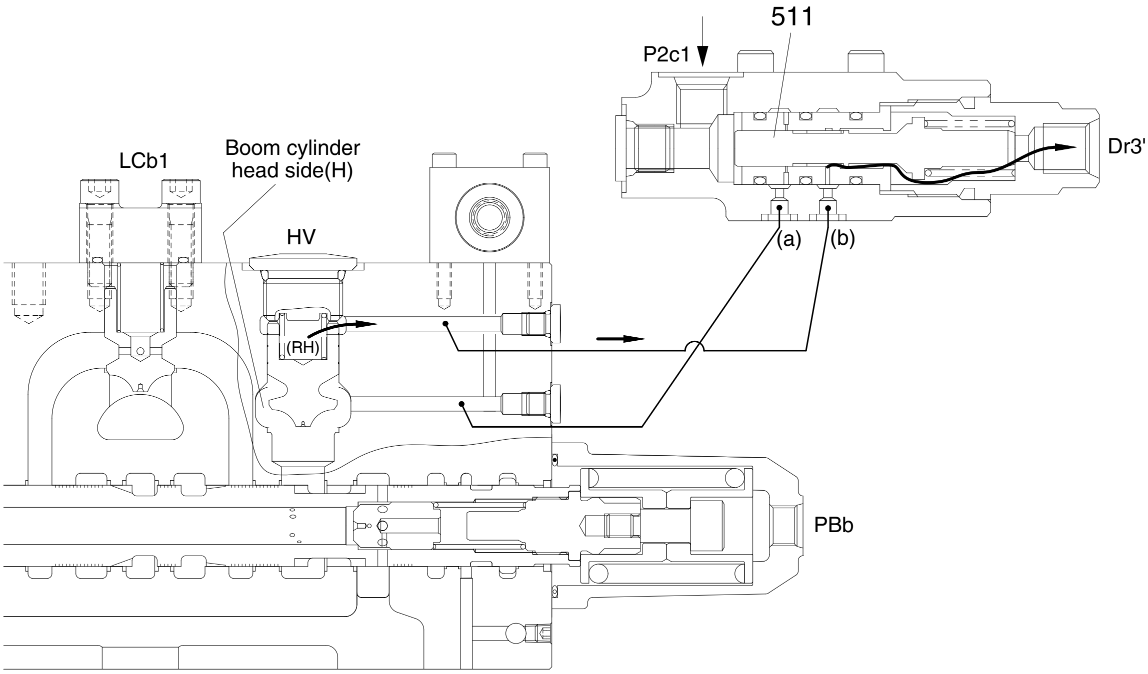


3809A2MC24

② Boom down operation

During the boom down operation, pilot pressure enters through port P2c1 and PAb. Pilot pressure transfers the spool (511) in lock valve assy in the right direction in figure. By the transfer of the spool, firstly the hole (a) is blocked and pressurized oil from the boom cylinder head side (H) does not enter to spring chamber (RH). Secondly, oil in spring chamber (RH) enters through hole (b) and flows to port Dr3'.

Therefore, the poppet is lifted by the pressure of the boom cylinder head side (H) and the function of the lock valve is released.



3809A2MC25

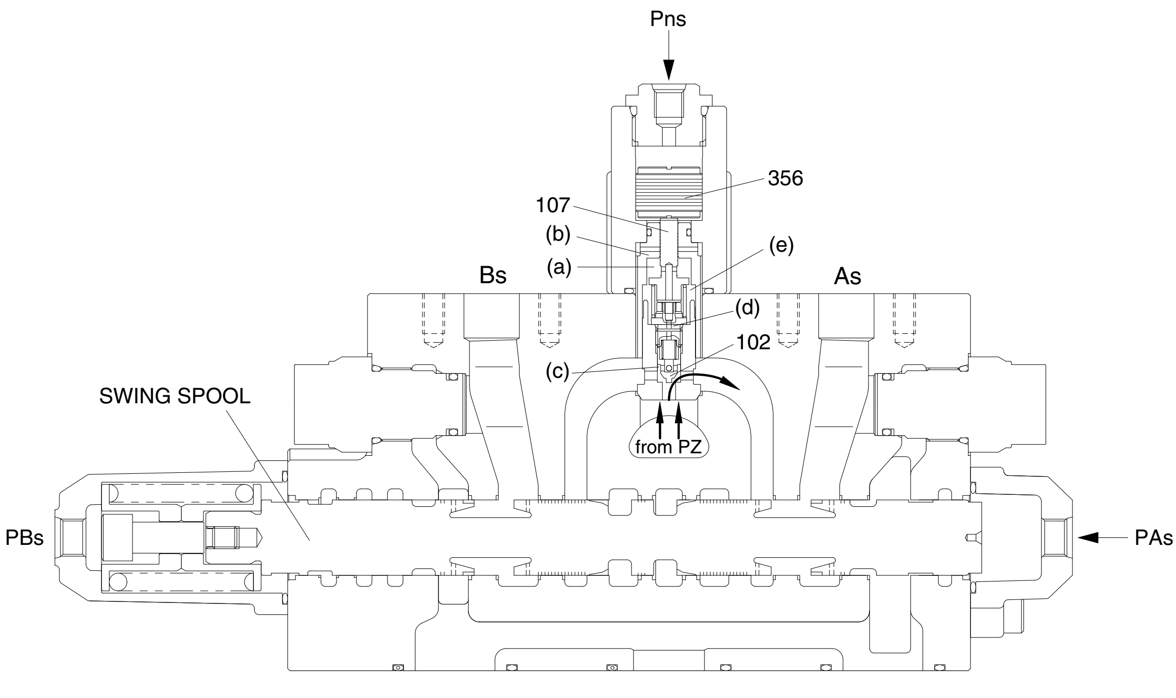
③ Boom up operation

During the boom up operation, the pilot pressure enters through port PBb. The oil flowing from the boom 1 spool pushes open the poppet (513) and flows to Port Bb.

(9) Function of boom priority valve

During both the swing operation and the boom hoisting operation, the pilot pressure enters through ports PAs(or PBs), PBb and Pns. The pressure Pns transfers the piston (356) and the spool (107) to the down direction, and the path from (a) to (b) is closed. Hereby, the pressurized oil pushes open the poppet (102), passes in the path (c) and (d), enters into the chamber (e), and the poppet (101) is pushed to the casing seat. Therefore, the most of pressurized oil entering through port P2 flows to the boom priority spool (393) than the swing spool (305) to make the boom hoisting operation most preferential.

On the other hand, in the independent swing operation, the pilot pressure does not enter through ports Pns, and the path from (a) to (b) is not closed, and oil of chamber (e) flows to the path (a) and (b). The pressurized oil entering through port P2 pushes open the poppet (101) and flows to the swing spool (305).



3607A2MC26

(10) Function of main relief valve

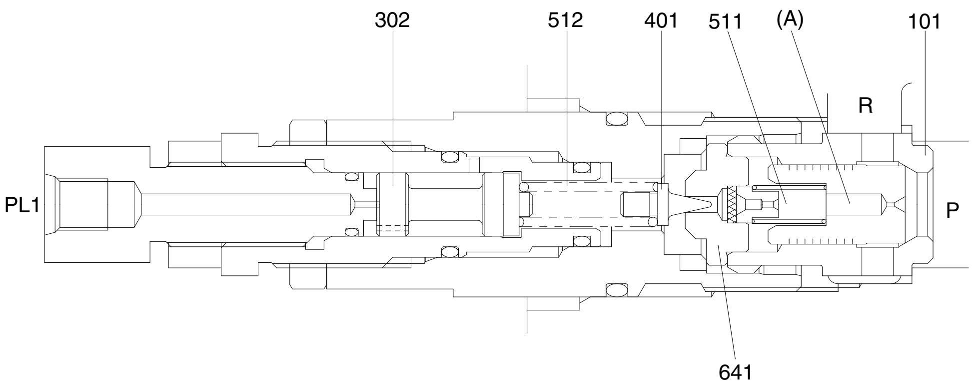
The main relief valve is fitted in the casing B and functions as follows :

① The hydraulic oil is filled up in the inside space chamber (A) from the path (P) through a hole of the body (101) and a restriction of the plunger (511), and seats the plunger (511) against body (101) securely.

② When the pressure in the path (P) becomes equal to the set load of the spring (512), the poppet (401) opens to make the hydraulic oil flow through a hole of the seat (2) (641), around the poppet (401) and into the low pressure path (R).

③ Opening of the poppet (401) causes the pressure in the chamber (A) to fall and the plunger (511) to open. As the result the pressurized oil in the path (P) runs into the low pressure path (R) directly.

④ When the pressurized oil higher than pressure 2.2 MPa enters through the port PL1, it pushes the piston (302) to change the relief set pressure of the spring (512) to the high pressure.



3607A2MC27

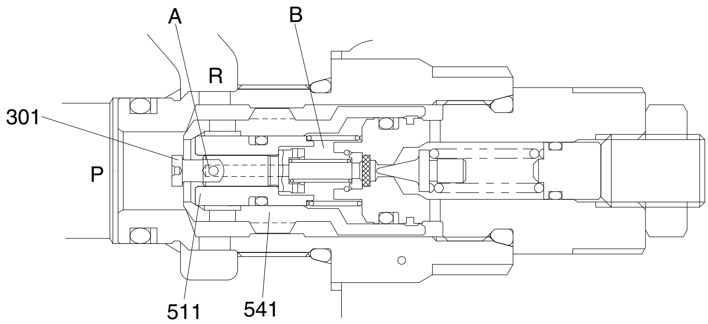
(11) Function of port relief valve

The port relief valve is fitted between the cylinder port and low-pressure path.

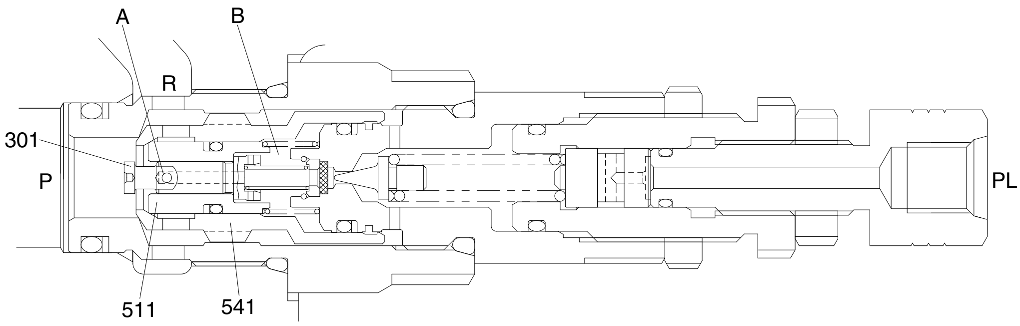
In addition to the relief valve, this serves also as an anti-cavitation check valve, and functions as follows:

(1) Function as relief valve

① The pressurized oil passes through hole A of the piston (301), is filled up in chamber B of the inside space, and seat the plunger (511) against the seat (541) securely.

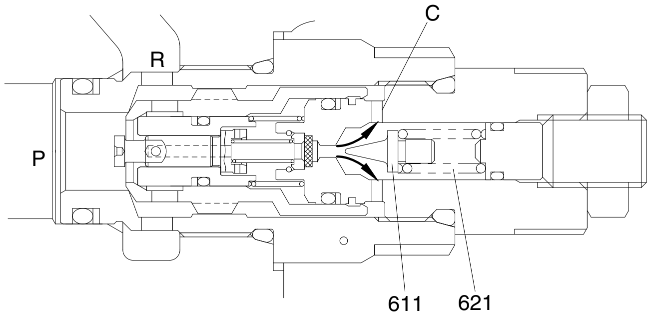


3607A2MC28

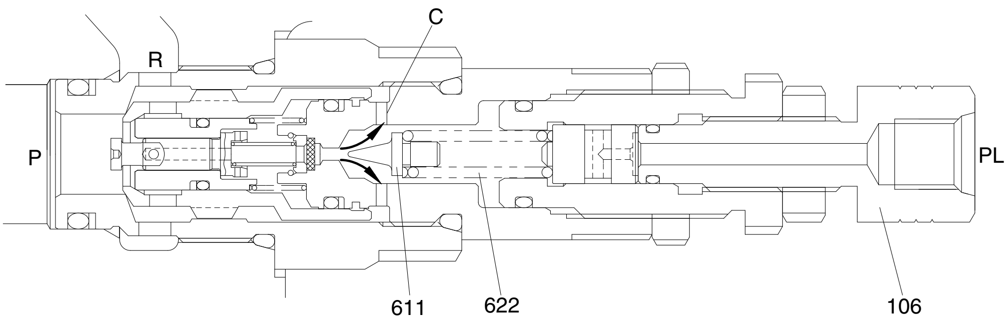


3607A2MC29

② When the pressure in the path (P) becomes equal to the set pressure of the spring (621 or 622), the pressurized oil pushes open the poppet (611), flows around it, and flows to the low pressure path (R) through Hole C.

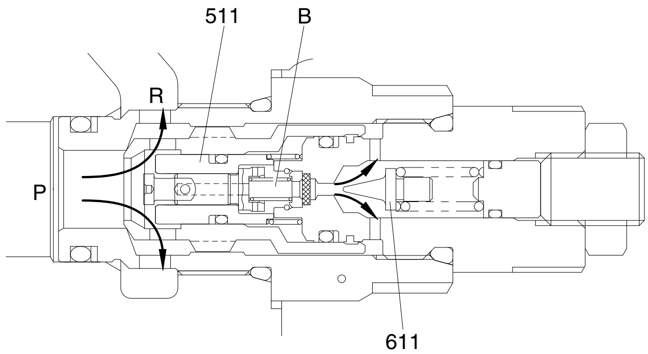


3607A2MC30

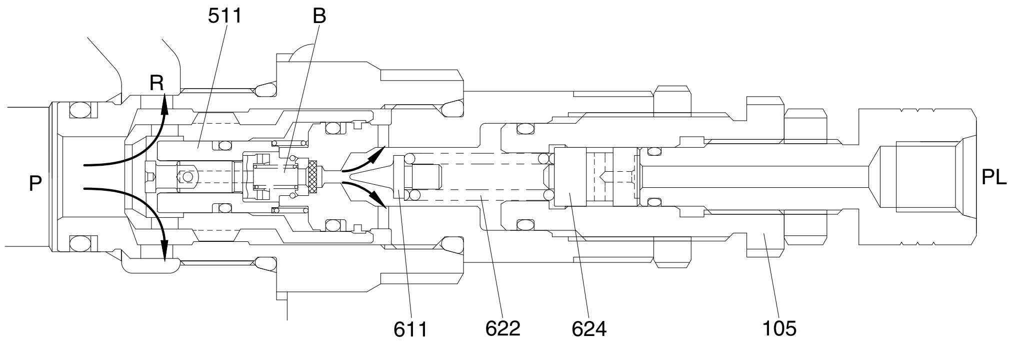


3607A2MC31

③ Opening of the poppet (611) causes the pressure in chamber B to fall and the plunger (511) to open. As the result the pressurized oil in the path (P) runs into the low pressure path (R) directly.



3607A2MC32



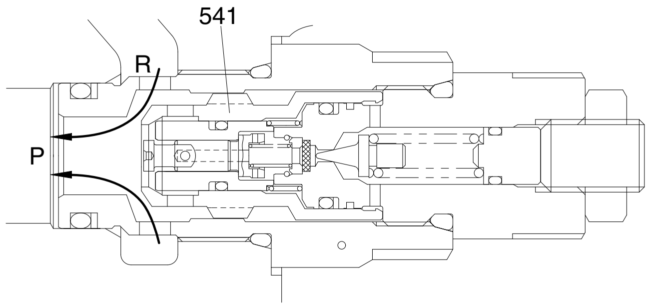
3607A2MC33

④ When the pressurized oil higher than pressure 1.5 MPa enters through the port PL, it pushes the piston (624) to change the relief set pressure of the spring (622) to the high pressure.

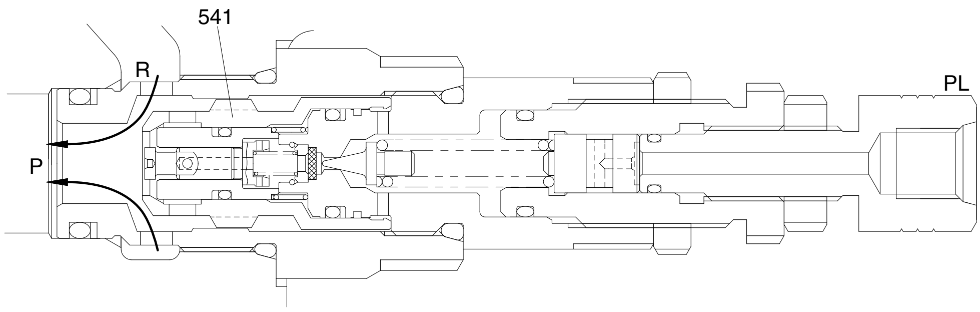
(2) Function as anti-cavitation check valve

When any negative pressure exists in the path (p), the oil is supplied through the path (R). When the pressure at (R) becomes higher than that in the path (P), the seat (541) moves in the right direction.

Then, sufficient oil passes around the seat (541) from the path (R) to the path (P) and prevents cavitation.



3607A2MC34

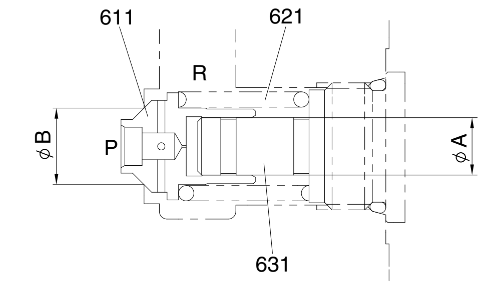


3607A2MC35

(12) Function of negative control relief valve

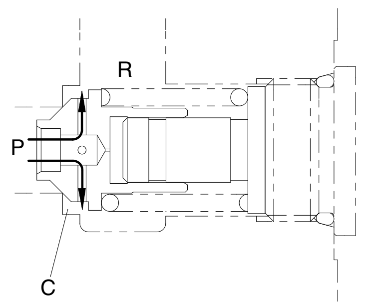
The negative control relief valve is fitted between the downstream of the center bypass path and low-pressure path, and functions as follows :

① When the pressure in the path (P) falls below the set level of the spring (621),the poppet (611) is in the condition shown in the figure. The pressure acting area of the poppet (611) is reduced to (ø B- ø A), as the area ø B is cancelled by the area ø A of the damping rod (631).



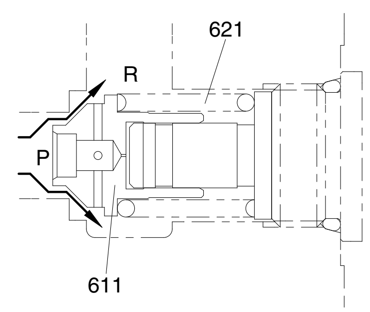
3607A2MC36

② In this condition, the pressurized oil in the path (P) runs out to the path (R) through the orifice (c).



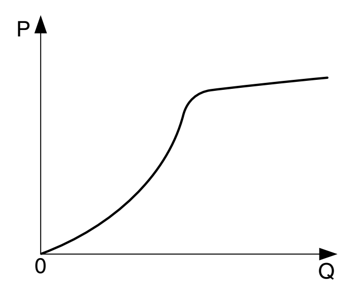
3607A2MC37

③ When the pressure in the path (P) goes over the set pressure of the spring (621), the poppet (611) opens. Then, the pressurized oil in the path (P) passes around the outside of the poppet (611) and flows to the low-pressure path (R).



3607A2MC38

The relation between the flow rate Q and pressure P of the hydraulic oil that flows from the path (P) to the low-pressure path (R) is as shown in the diagram.

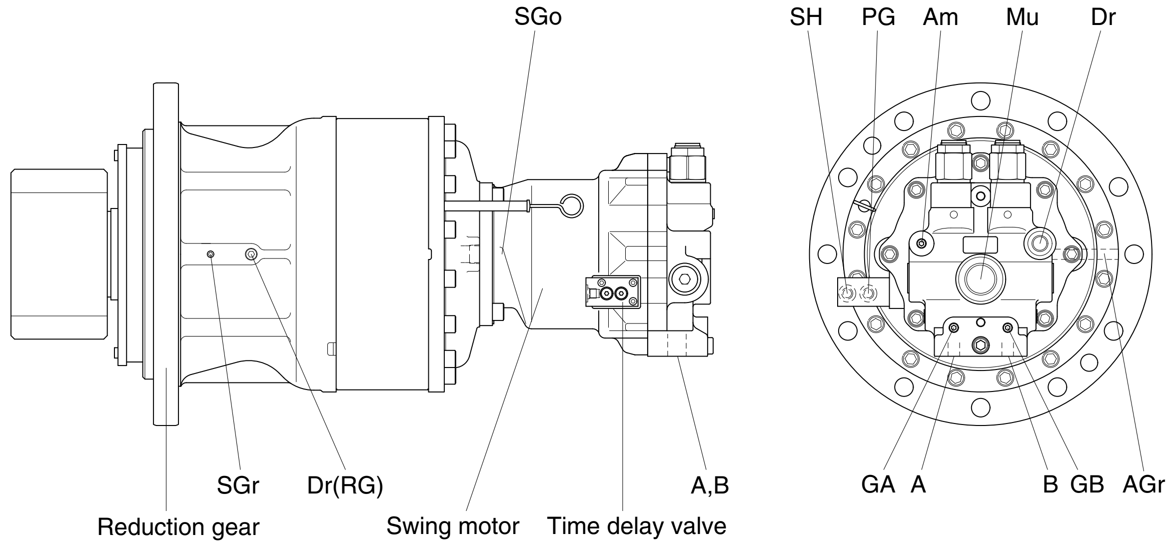


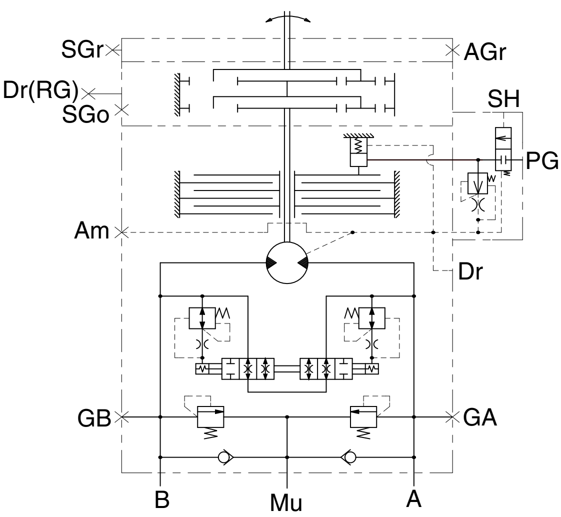
3607A2MC39

1. STRUCTURE (MACHINE SERIAL NO. : -#0465)

Swing device consists swing motor, swing reduction gear.

Swing motor include mechanical parking valve, relief valve, make up valve and time delay valve.



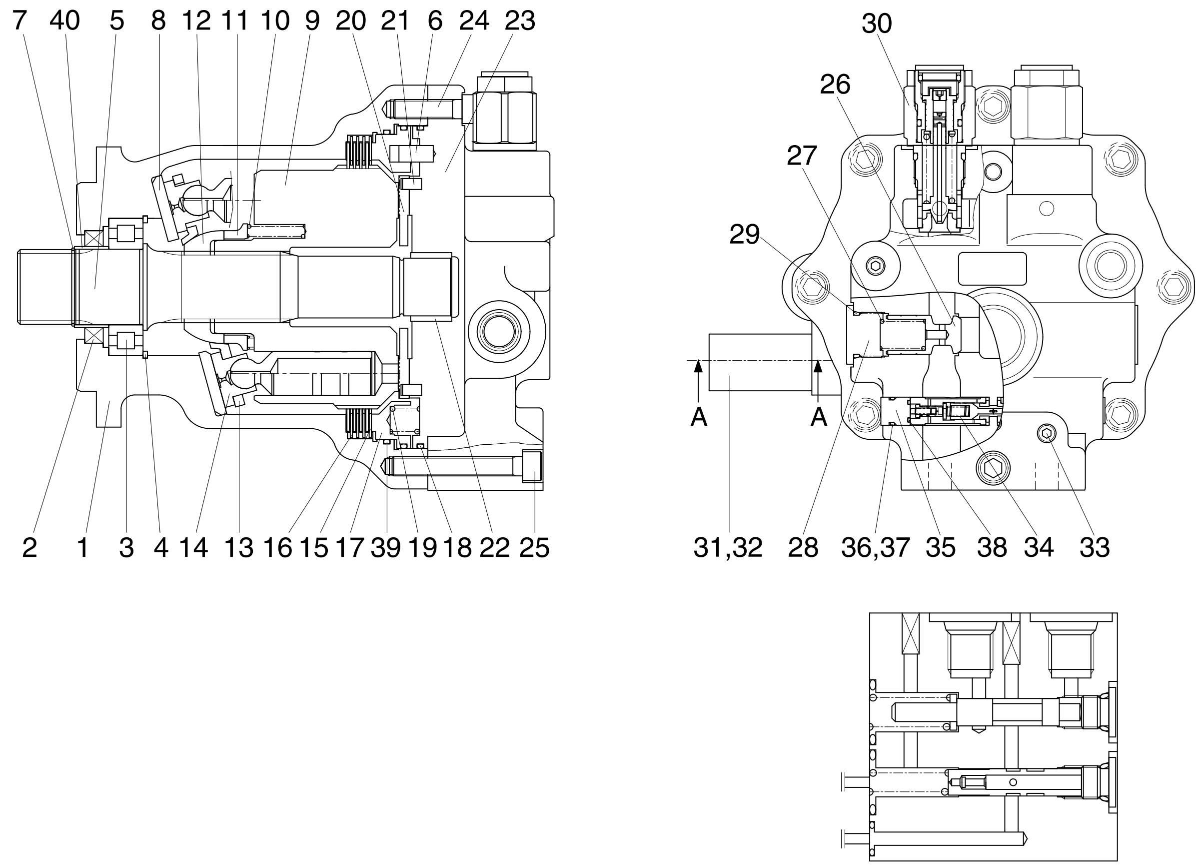


Hydraulic circuit

Port	Port name	Port size
A	Main port	SAE 1"
B	Main port	SAE 1"
Dr	Drain port	PF 1/2
Mu	Make up port	PF 1 1/4
SH	Brake release pilot port	PF 1/4
PG	Brake release stand by port	PF 1/4
GA, GB	Gauge port	PF 1/4
Am	Motor air bleed port	PF 1/4
AGr	R/G air bleed port	PT 1/8
SGr	Grease filling port	PT 1/8
Dr(R/G)	Gear oil drain port	PT 1/2
SGo	Gear oil filling port	PT 3/4

38092SM01A

1) SWING MOTOR (MACHINE SERIAL NO. -#0465)



SECTION A-A

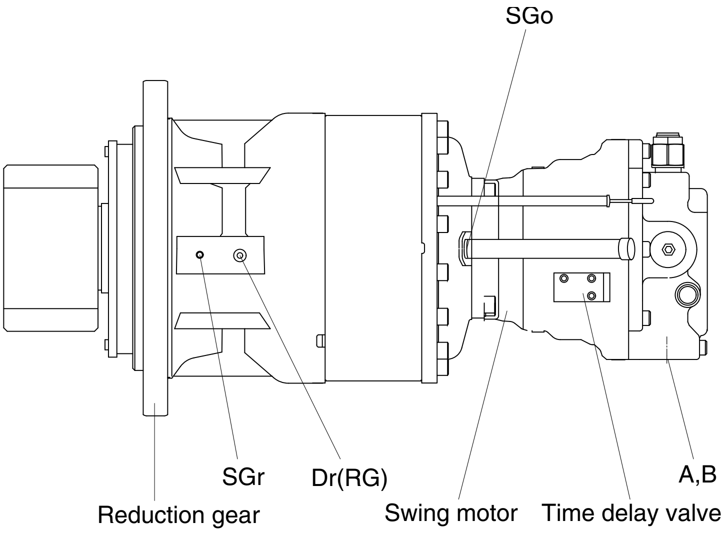
38092SM02

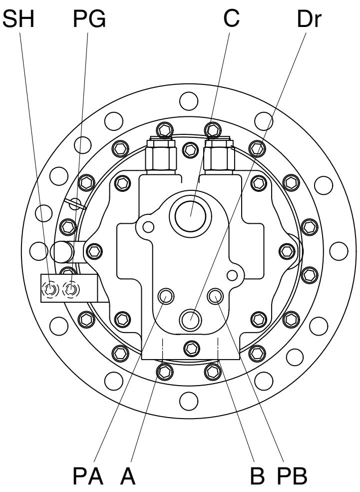
1	Body
2	Oil seal
3	Roller bearing
4	Snap ring
5	Shaft
6	Pin
7	Stop ring
8	Shoe plate
9	Cylinder block
10	Spring
11	Ball guide seat
12	Ball guide
13	Set plate
14	Piston assy
15	Friction plate
16	Plate
17	Brake piston
18	O-ring
19	Spring
20	Valve plate
21	Pin
22	Needle bearing
23	Rear cover
24	Wrench bolt
25	Wrench bolt
26	Poppet
27	Spring
28	Plug
29	O-ring
30	Relief valve assy
31	Time delay valve
32	Wrench bolt
33	Plug
34	Swing reactionless valve assy
35	Plug
36	O-ring
37	Back up ring
38	O-ring
39	O-ring
40	Bushing

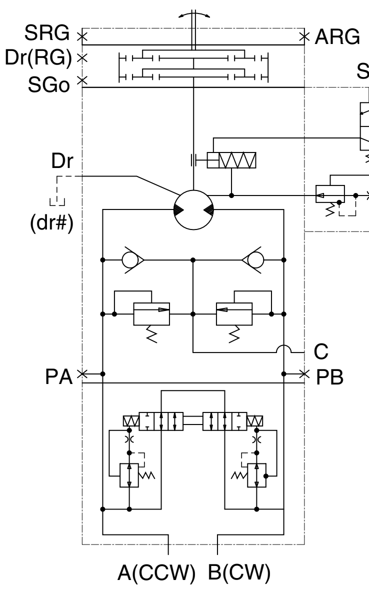
1. STRUCTURE (MACHINE SERIAL NO. : #0466-)

Swing device consists swing motor, swing reduction gear.

Swing motor include mechanical parking valve, relief valve, make up valve and time delay valve.





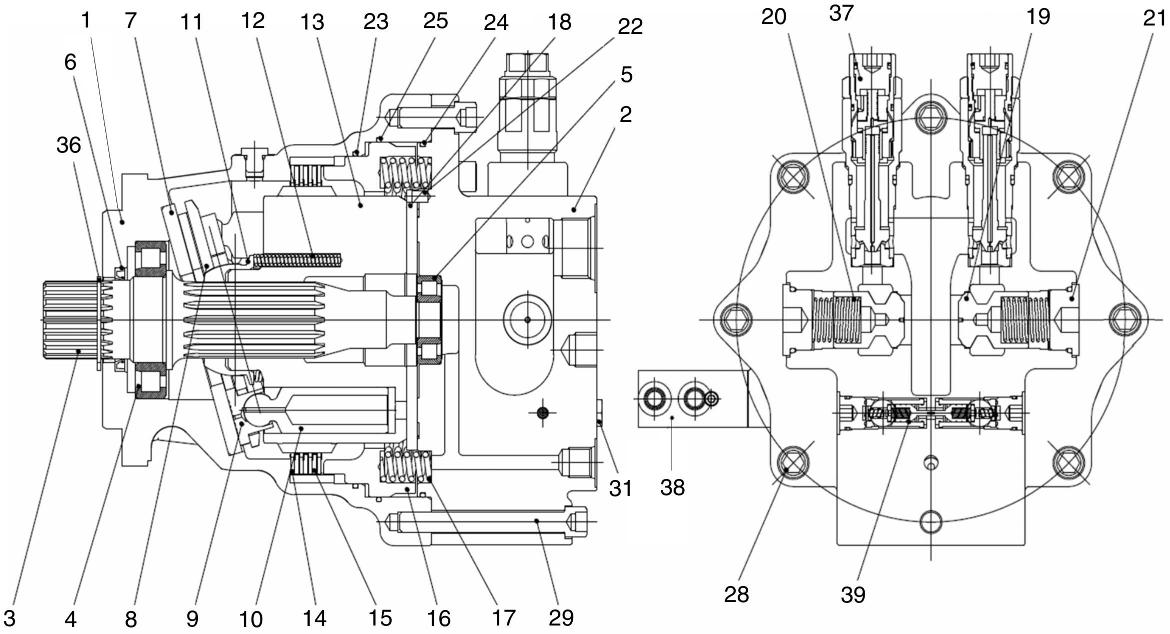


Hydraulic circuit

Port	Port name	Port size
A	Main port	SAE 1"
B	Main port	SAE 1"
DB	Drain port	PF 1/2
C	Make up port	PF 1 1/4
SH	Brake release pilot port	PF 1/4
PG	Brake release stand by port	PF 1/4
PA, PB	Gauge port	PF 1/4
SGr	Grease filling port	PT 1/8
Dr (R/G)	Gear oil drain port	PT 1/2
SGo	Gear oil filling port	PT 3/4

380A2SM01

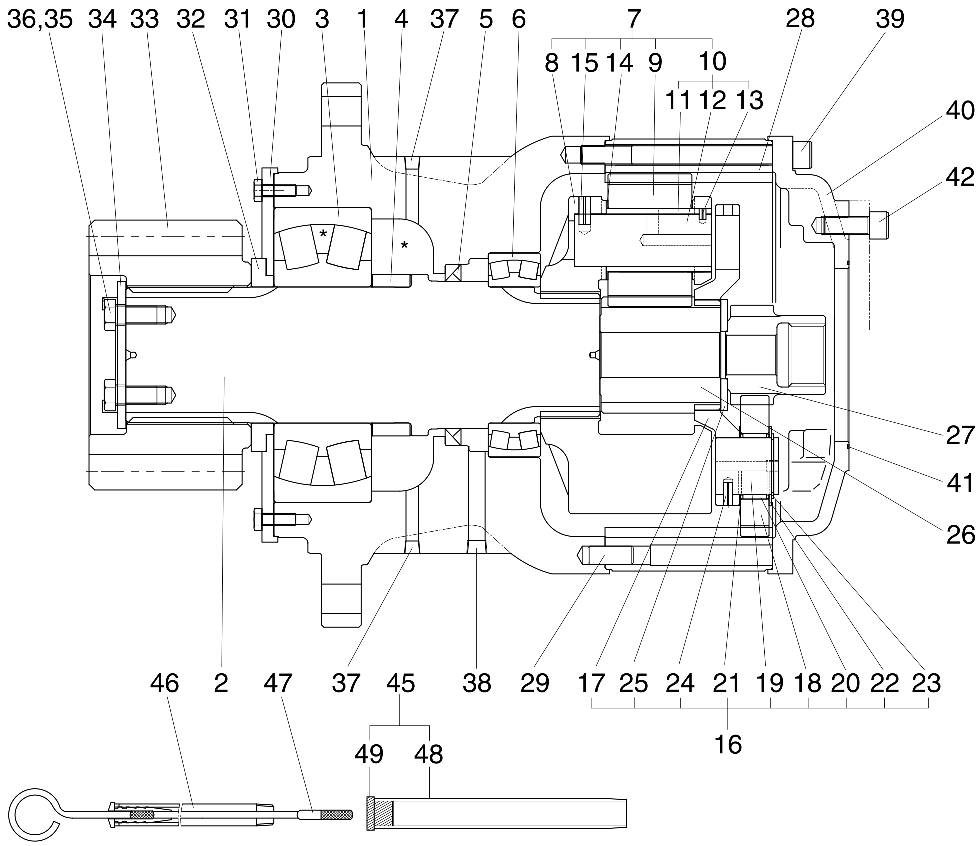
1) SWING MOTOR (MACHINE SERIAL NO. : #0466-)



380A8SM05

1	Casing	12	Cylinder spring	23	O-ring
2	Valve casing	13	Cylinder block	24	O-ring
3	Drive shaft	14	Friction plate	25	O-ring
4	Roller bearing	15	Separation plate	28	Socket bolt
5	Roller bearing	16	Brake piston	29	Socket bolt
6	Oil seal	17	Brake spring	30	Socket bolt
7	Shoe plate	18	Valve plate	31	VP plug assy
8	Retainer plate	19	Plunger	36	Snap ring
9	Shoe	20	Check spring	37	Relief valve
10	Piston	21	RO plug assy	38	Brake valve
11	Thrust ball	22	Pin	39	Reactionless valve

2) REDUCTION GEAR



38092SM03

1	Casing	17	Carrier 1	33	Pinion gear
2	Drive shaft	18	Planetary gear 1	34	Lock plate
3	Roller bearing	19	Pin 1	35	Hexagon bolt
4	Spacer ring	20	Needle cage	36	Lock washer
5	Oil seal	21	Side plate 1	37	Plug
6	Roller bearing	22	Side plate 2	38	Plug
7	Carrier assy 2	23	Stop ring	39	Socket bolt
8	Carrier 2	24	Spring pin	40	Cover
9	Planetary gear 2	25	Thrust ring	41	O-ring
10	Pin assy 2	26	Sun gear 2	42	Hexagon socket bolt
11	Pin 2	27	Sun gear 1	45	Air breather assy
12	Bushing 2	28	Ring gear	46	Gauge pipe
13	Spring pin	29	Knock pin	47	Gauge bar
14	Thrust washer	30	Cover plate	48	Post
15	Spring pin	31	Hexagon bolt	47	Cap
16	Carrier assy 1	32	Spacer		

2. FUNCTION

1) ROTARY PART

When high pressurized oil enters a cylinder through port (a), which is the inlet of balance plate (1), hydraulic pressure acting on the piston causes axial force F. The pressure force F works via the piston (2) upon the return plate (3) which acts upon the swash plate (4) via an hydrostatic bearing. Force F1 perpendicular to swash plate (4) and force F2 perpendicular to cylinder center.

Being transferred to the cylinder block (5) through piston, force F2 causes rotational moment at surroundings of cylinder.

Since cylinder block has 9 equidistantly arrayed pistons, rotational torque is transmitted to cylinder shaft in order by several pistons connected to the inlet port of high pressurized oil. When the direction of oil flow is reversed, rotational direction of cylinder is also reversed. Output torque is given by the equation.

$$T=\frac{p\times q}{2\pi}\ ,\ q=Z\cdot A\cdot PCD\cdot \tan\theta\ ,\ F_1=\frac{F}{COS\theta}\ ,\ F_2=F\tan\theta\ ,\ S=PCD\times\tan\theta$$

Where p : Effective difference of pressure (kgf/cm^2)

q : Displacement (cc/rev)

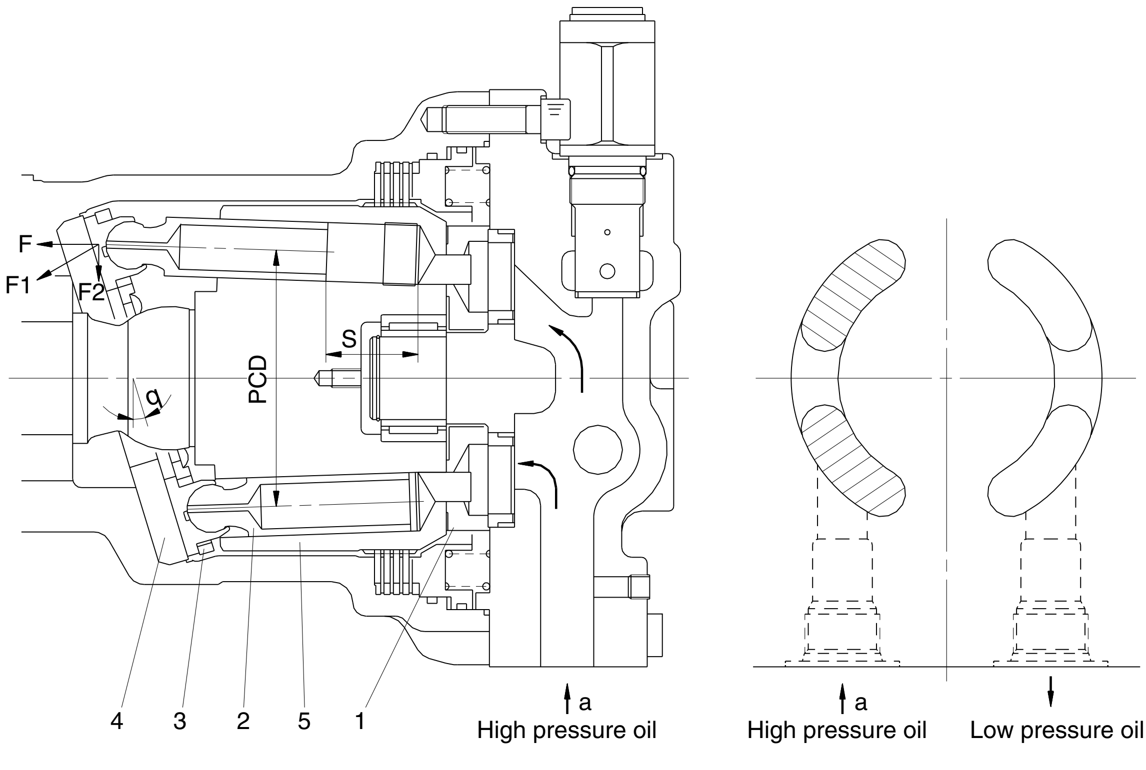
T : Output torque (kgf · cm)

Z : Piston number

A : Piston area (cm^2)

θ : Tilting angle of swash plate (degree)

S : Piston stroke (cm)



36072SM04A

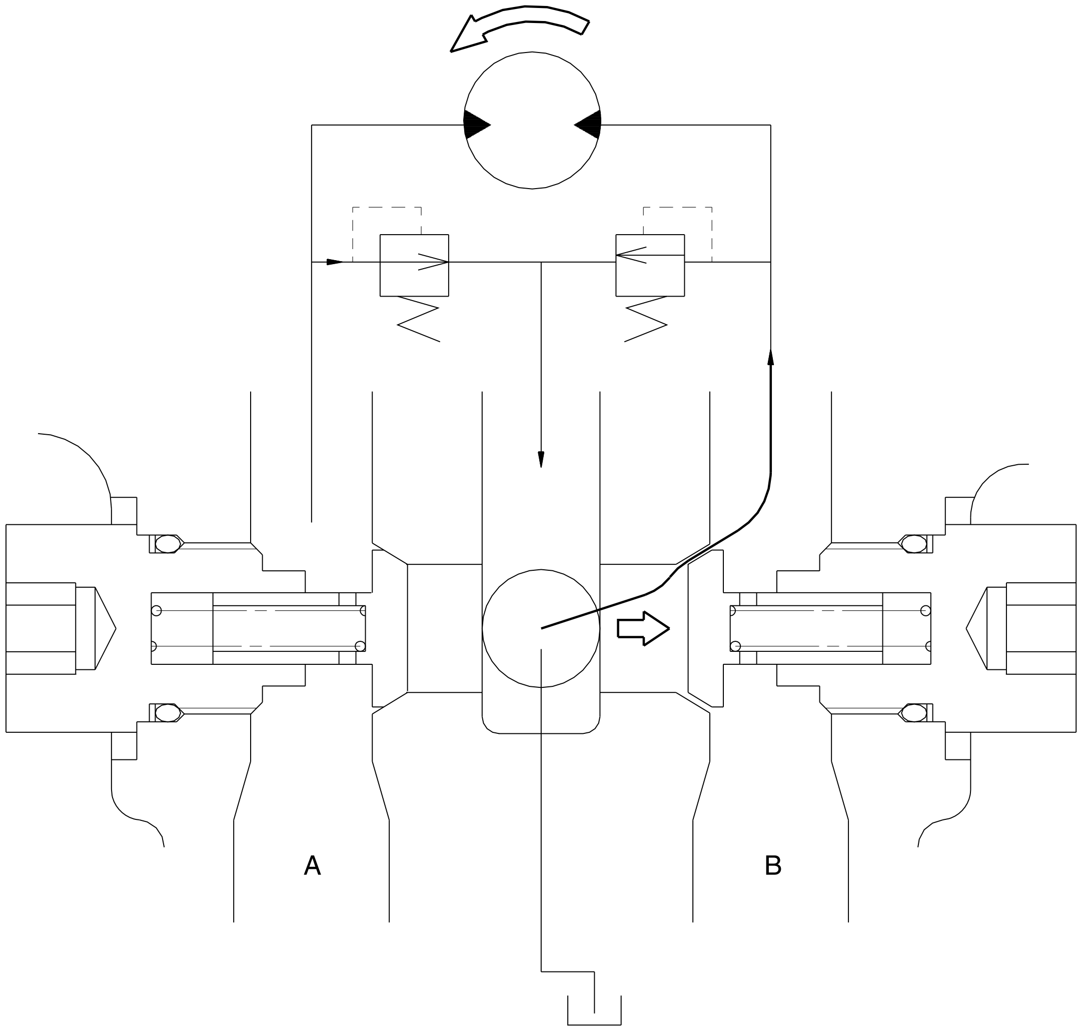
2) MAKE UP VALVE

In the system using this type of motor, there is no counter balance functioning valve and there happens the case of revolution exceeding hydraulic supply of motor. To prevent the cavitation caused by insufficient oil flow there is a make up valve to fill up the oil insufficiency.

A make up valve is provided immediately before the port leading to the hydraulic oil tank to secure feed pressure required when the hydraulic motor makes a pumping action. The boost pressure acts on the hydraulic motor's feed port via the make up valve.

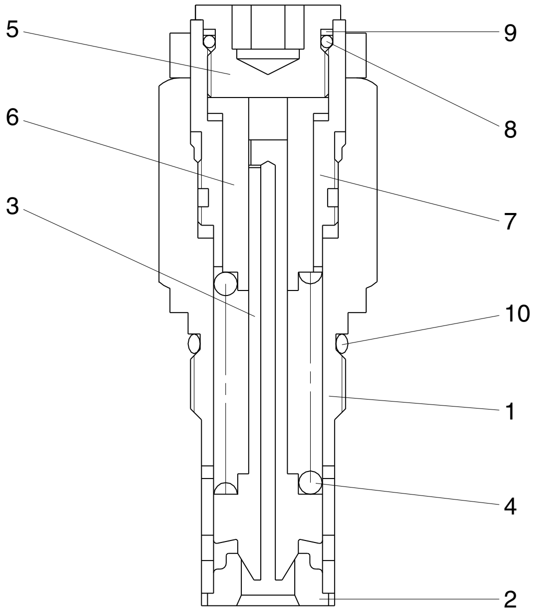
Pressurized oil into the port B, the motor rotate counterclockwise.

If the plunger of MCV moves neutral position, the drain oil from Mu port run into motor via right make up valve, which prevent the cavitation of motor.



36072SM05

3) RELIEF VALVE



36072SM06

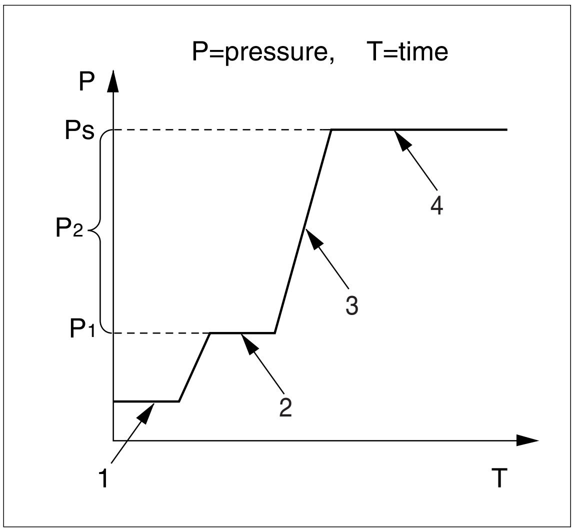
1	Body
2	Seat
3	Plunger
4	Spring
5	Adjusting screw
6	Piston
7	Sleeve
8	O-ring
9	Back up ring
10	O-ring

(1) Construction of relief valve

The valve casing contains two cartridge type relief valves that stop the regular and reverse rotations of the hydraulic motor. The relief valves relieve high pressure at start or at stop of swing motion and can control the relief pressure in two steps, high and low, in order to insure smooth operation.

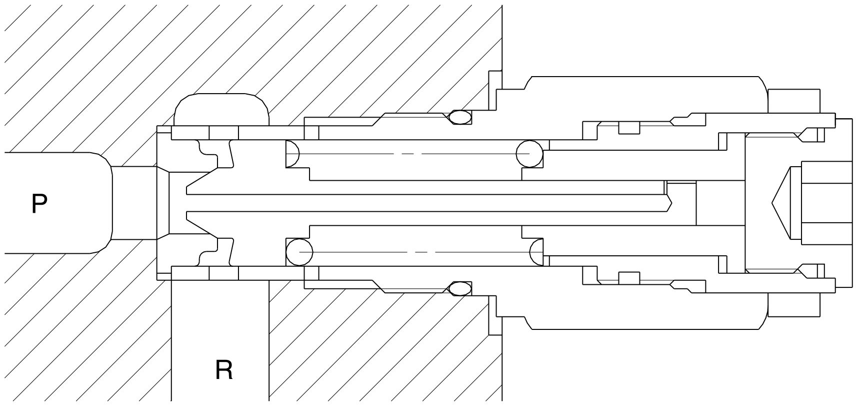
(2) Function of relief valve

Figure illustrates how the pressure acting on the relief valve is related to its rising process. Here is given the function, referring to the figure following page.



2-51(2) [360-7]

① Ports (P, R) at tank pressure.

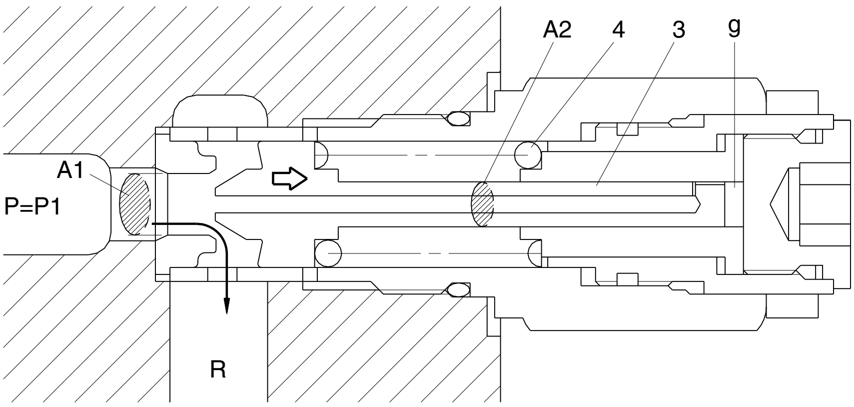


36072SM07

② When hydraulic oil pressure ($P \times A1$) reaches the preset force (F_{SP}) of spring (4), the plunger (3) moves to the right as shown.

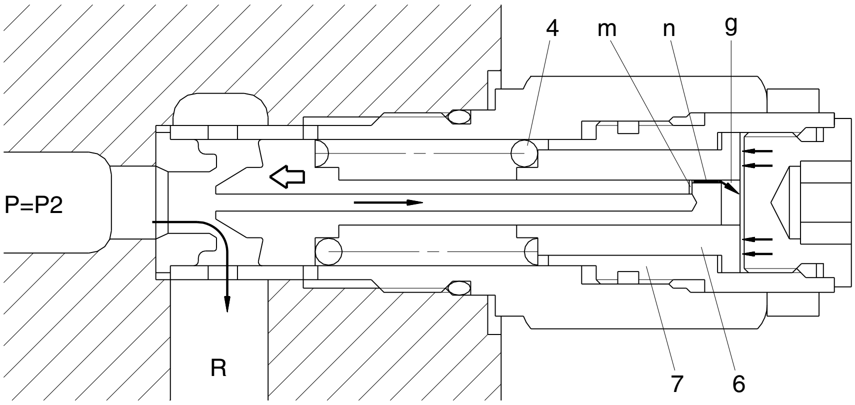
$P_1 \times A_1 = F_{SP} + Pg \times A_2$

$$P1 = \frac{Fsp + Pg \times A2}{A1}$$



36072SM08

③ The oil flow chamber g via orifice m and n. When the pressure chamber g reaches the preset force (Fsp) of spring (4), the piston (6) moves left and stop the piston (6) hits the bottom of sleeve (7).

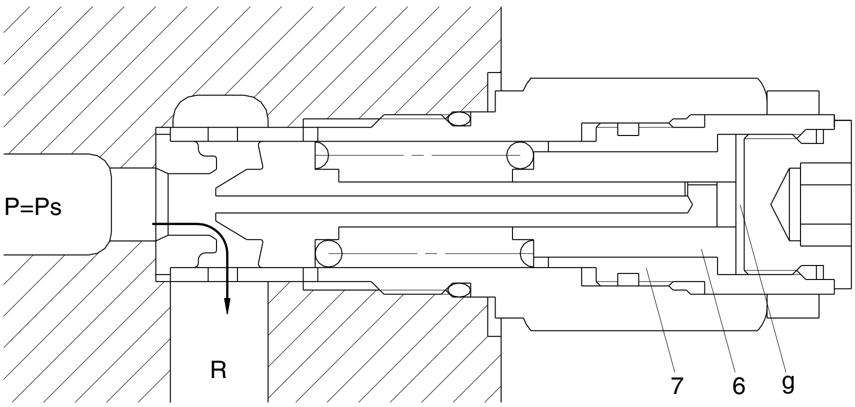


36072SM09

④ When piston (6) hits the end of sleeve (7), it stops moving to the left any further. As the result, the pressure in chamber (g) equals (P_S).

$P_S \times A_1 = F_{SP} + P_S \times A_2$

$$PS = \frac{Fsp}{A1-A2}$$



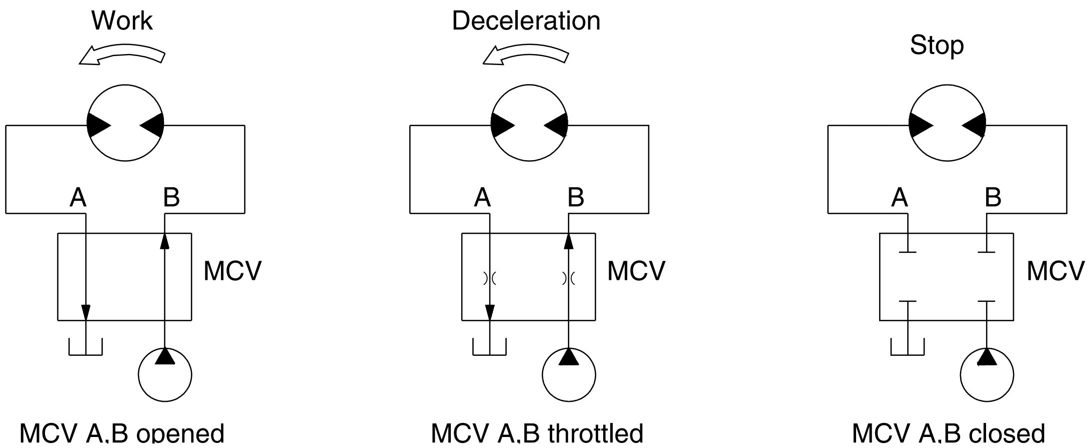
36072SM10

4) BRAKE SYSTEM

(1) Control valve swing brake system

This is the brake system to stop the swing motion of the excavator for during operation.

In this system, the hydraulic circuit is throttled by the swing control valve, and the resistance created by this throttling works as a brake force to slow down the swing motion.



R130SM05

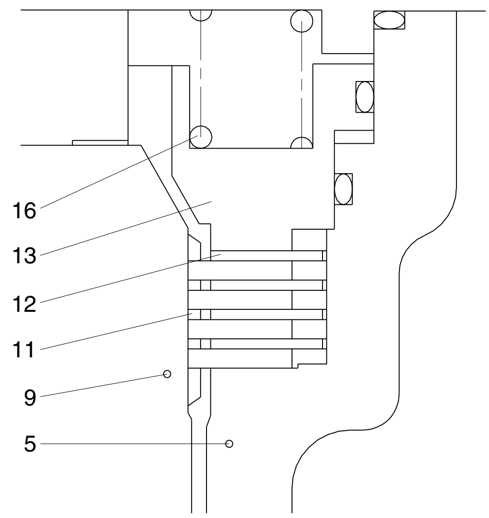
(2) Mechanical swing parking brake system

The mechanical swing parking brake system is installed to prevent the upper structure from swinging downhill because of its own weight when the excavator is parked on a slope since it completely eliminates the hydraulic drift of swing motion while the excavator is on a slop, work can be done more easily and safely.

① Brake assembly

Circumferential rotation of separate plate (12) is constrained by the groove located at housing (5). When housing is pressed down by brake spring (16) through friction plate (11), separate plate (12) and brake piston (13), friction force occurs there.

Cylinder block (9) is constrained by this friction force and brake acts, while brake releases when hydraulic force exceeds spring force.

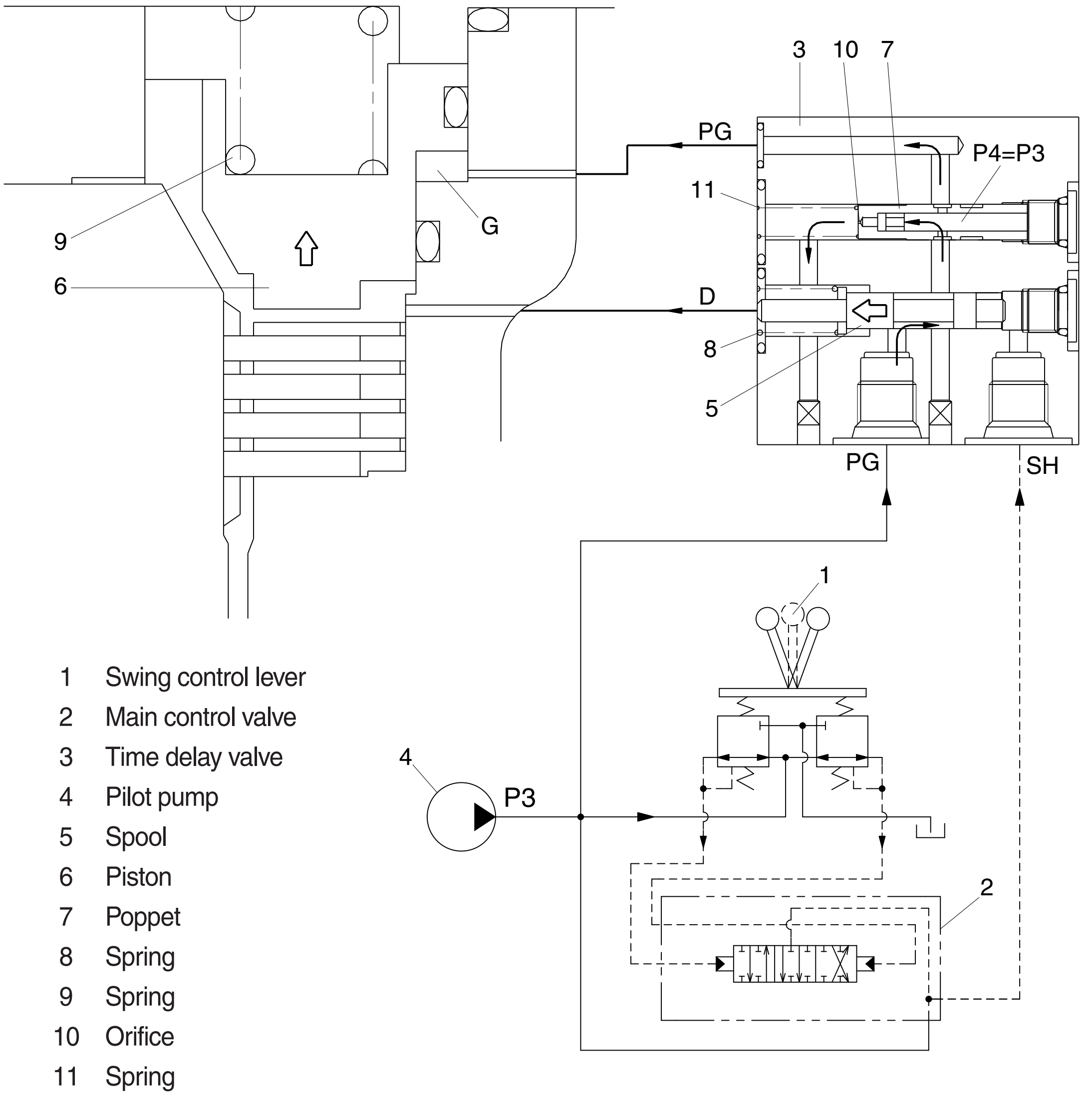


36072SM11

5	Housing	12	Separate plate
9	Cylinder block	13	Brake piston
11	Friction plate	16	Brake spring

② Operating principle

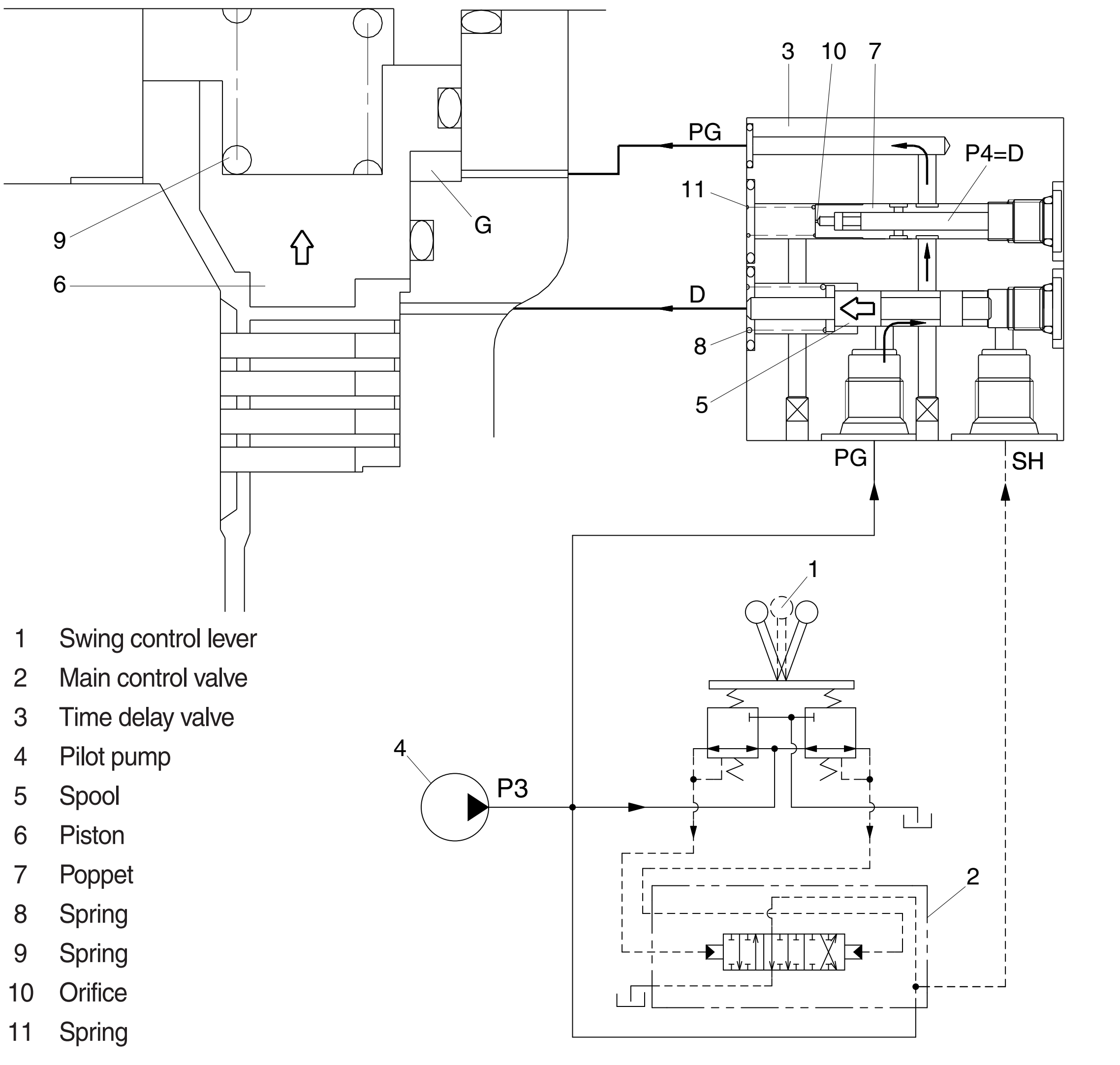
a. When one of the RCV lever (1) is set to the operation position, the each spool is shifted to left or right and the pilot oil flow is blocked. Then the pilot oil go to SH of the time delay valve (3).
This pressure moves spool (5) to the leftward against the force of the spring(8), so pilot pump charged oil (P3) goes to the chamber G through port PG.
This pressure is applied to move the piston (6) to the upward against the force of the spring (9). Thus, it releases the brake force.



1 Swing control lever
2 Main control valve
3 Time delay valve
4 Pilot pump
5 Spool
6 Piston
7 Poppet
8 Spring
9 Spring
10 Orifice
11 Spring

36072SM12

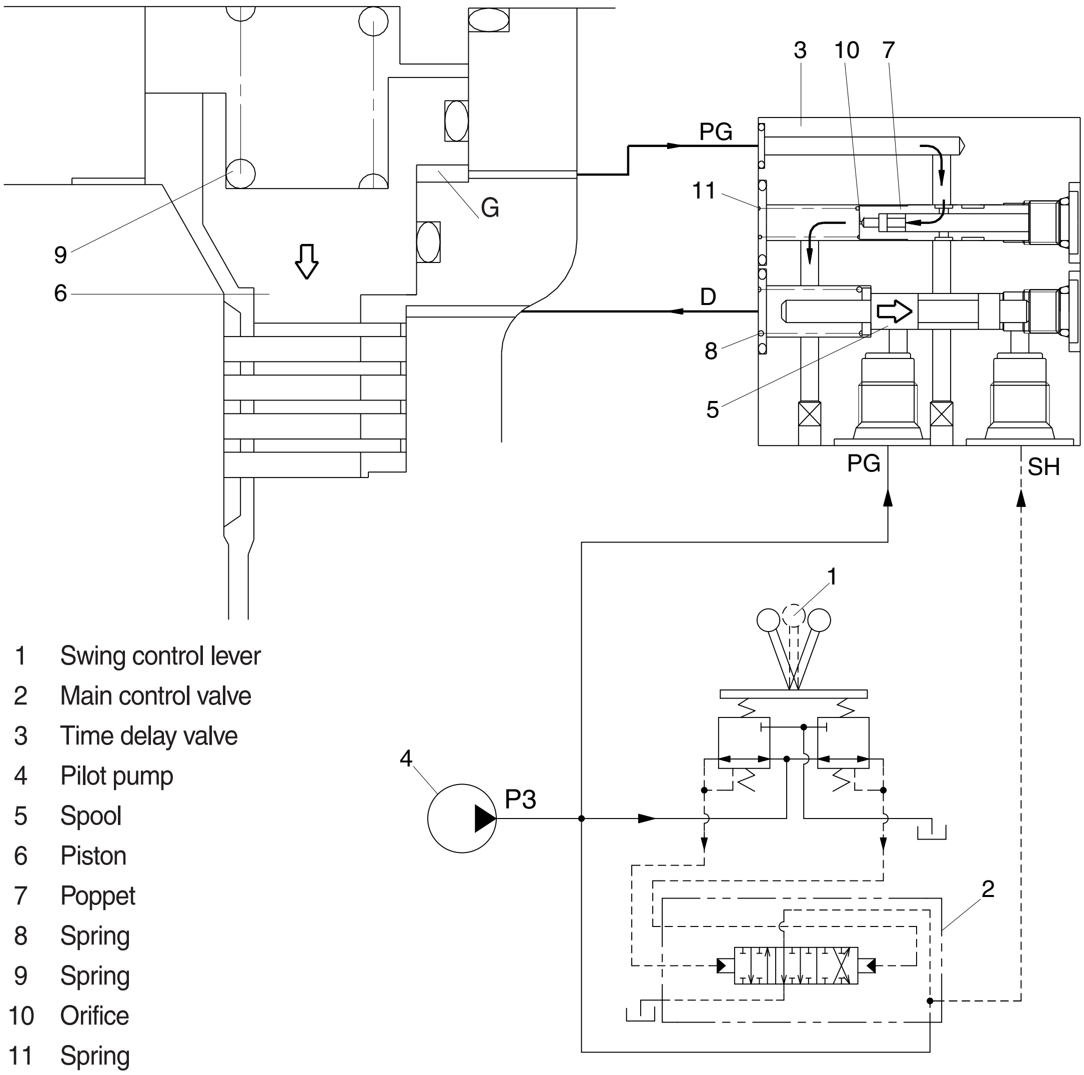
b. When all of the RCV lever (1) are set the neutral position, the spool (5) returns to right.
   Then, the piston (6) is moved lower by spring force and the return oil from the chamber G flows back to tank port.
   At this time, the brake works.



1 Swing control lever
2 Main control valve
3 Time delay valve
4 Pilot pump
5 Spool
6 Piston
7 Poppet
8 Spring
9 Spring
10 Orifice
11 Spring

36072SM13A

c. When the swing control (1) lever is set the neutral position the spool (5) returns right in the time delay valve (3).
Then, the piston (6) is moved lower by spring force and the return and the return oil from the chamber G flows back to D-port through orifice (10) of the poppet (7).
At this time, the poppet (7) works to make a time lag for 5 seconds.



1 Swing control lever
2 Main control valve
3 Time delay valve
4 Pilot pump
5 Spool
6 Piston
7 Poppet
8 Spring
9 Spring
10 Orifice
11 Spring

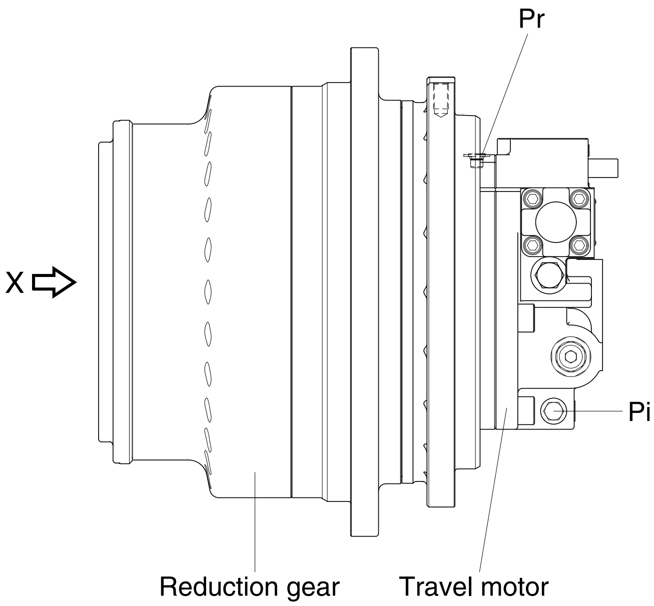
38092SM04

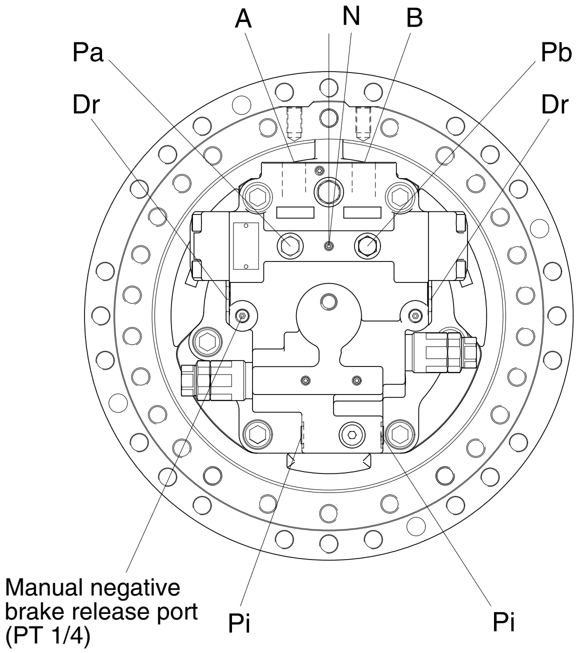
GROUP 4 TRAVEL DEVICE

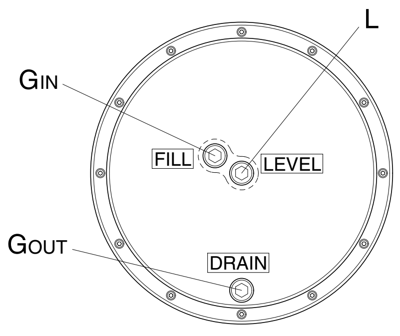
1. CONSTRUCTION (TYPE 1)

Travel device consists travel motor and reduction gear.

Travel motor include counterbalance valve, cross over relief valve.

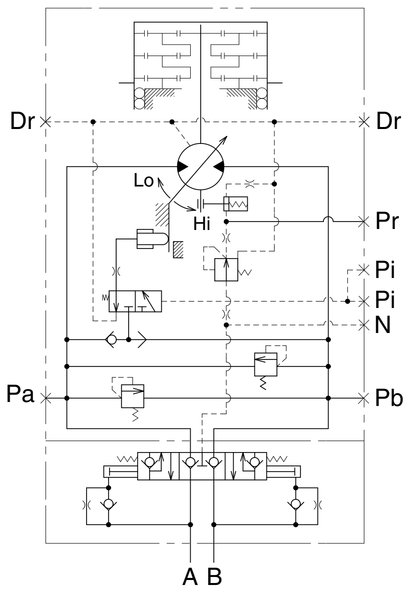






VIEW X

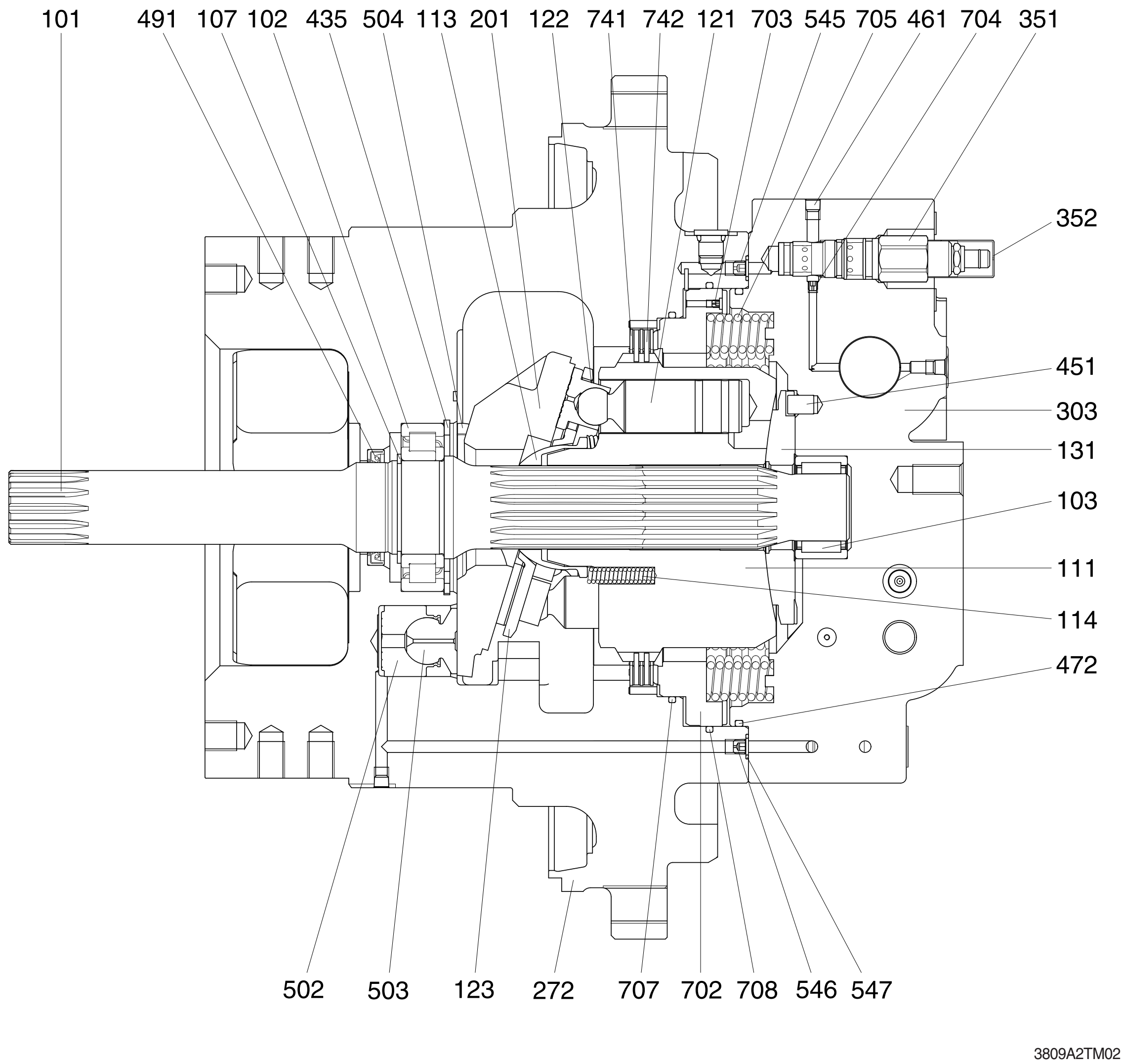
3809A2TM01



Hydraulic circuit

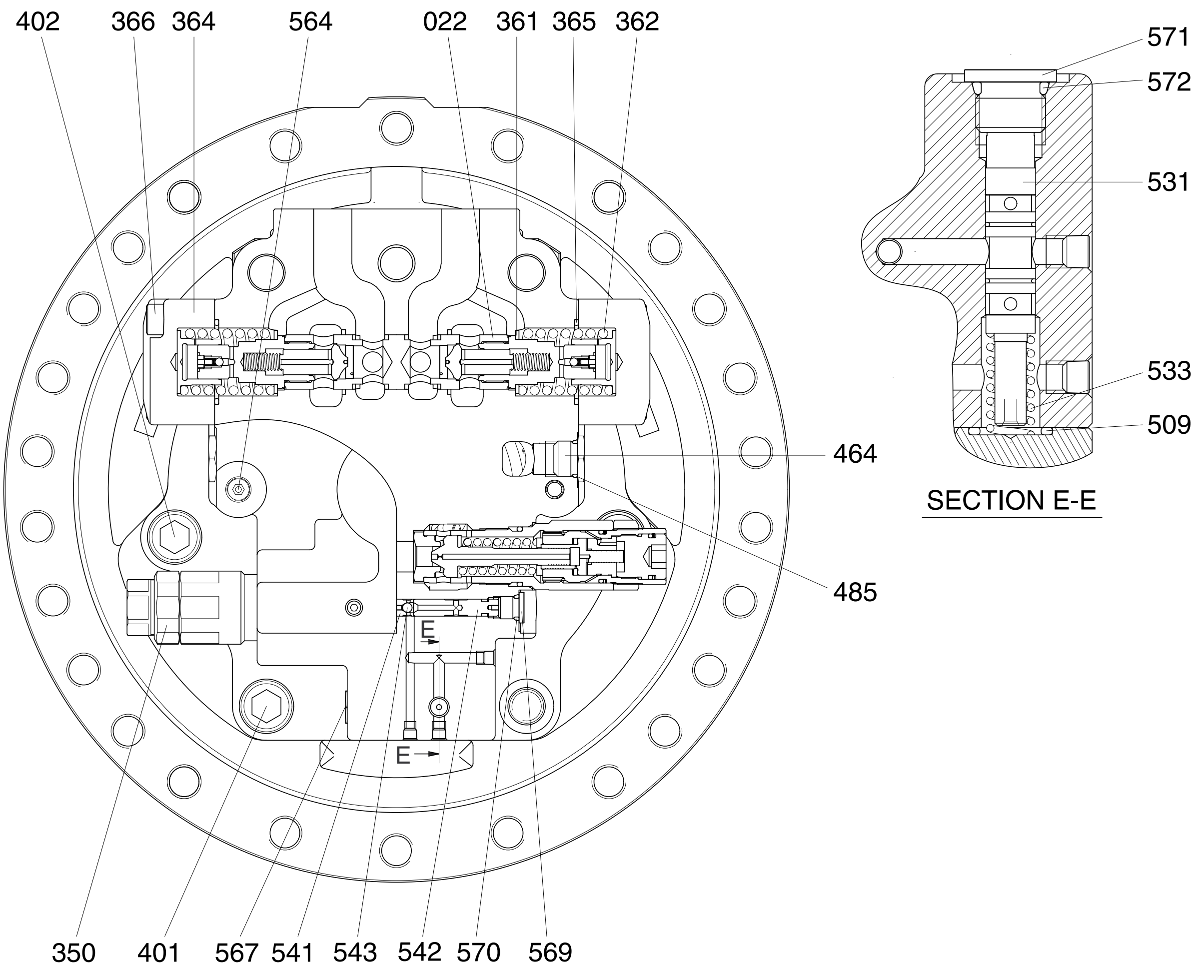
Port	Port name	Port size
A	Main port	SAE 6000 psi 1"
B	Main port	SAE 6000 psi 1"
Pi	Pilot port	PF 1/4
Dr	Drain port	PF 1/2
N	Negative brake release port	NPTF 1/16
Pa, Pb	Pressure gauge port	PF 1/4
Pr	Brake release pressure gauge port	PF 1/4
L	Level gauge	PF 1/2
GIN	Gear oil inlet port	PF 1/2
GOUT	Gear oil outlet port	PF 1/2

1) TRAVEL MOTOR (1/2)



101	Drive shaft	272	Shaft casing	545	Orifice
102	Roller bearing	303	Valve casing	546	Orifice
103	Needle bearing	351	Reducing valve	547	O-ring
107	Snap ring	352	Cover	702	Brake piston
111	Cylinder block	435	Snap ring	703	Orifice
113	Spherical bushing	451	Pin	704	Orifice
114	Cylinder spring	461	Plug	705	Brake spring
121	Piston	472	O-ring	707	O-ring
122	Shoe	491	Oil seal	708	O-ring
123	Set plate	502	Piston	741	Separation plate
131	Valve plate	503	Shoe	742	Friction plate
201	Swash plate	504	Pivot ball		

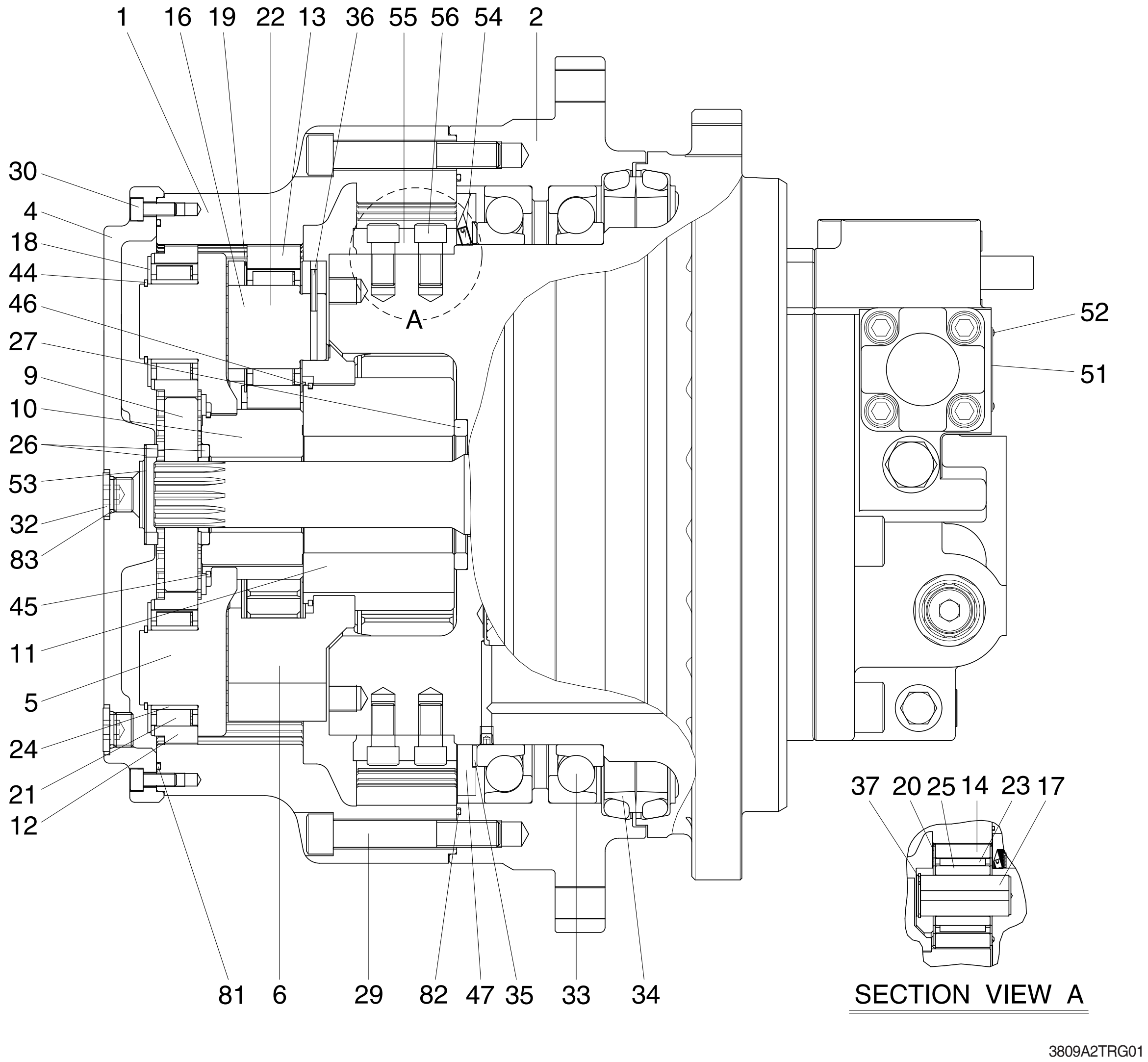
TRAVEL MOTOR (2/2)



3607A2TM03

022	Counterbalance spool	402	Hex socket bolt	543	Steel ball
350	Relief valve	464	VP plug	564	Plug
361	Washer	485	O-ring	567	VP plug
362	Counterbalance spring	509	O-ring	569	RO plug
364	Counterbalance cover	531	Tilting spool	570	O-ring
365	O-ring	533	Tilting spring	571	RO plug
366	Hex socket bolt	541	Seat	572	O-ring
401	Hex socket bolt	542	Stopper		

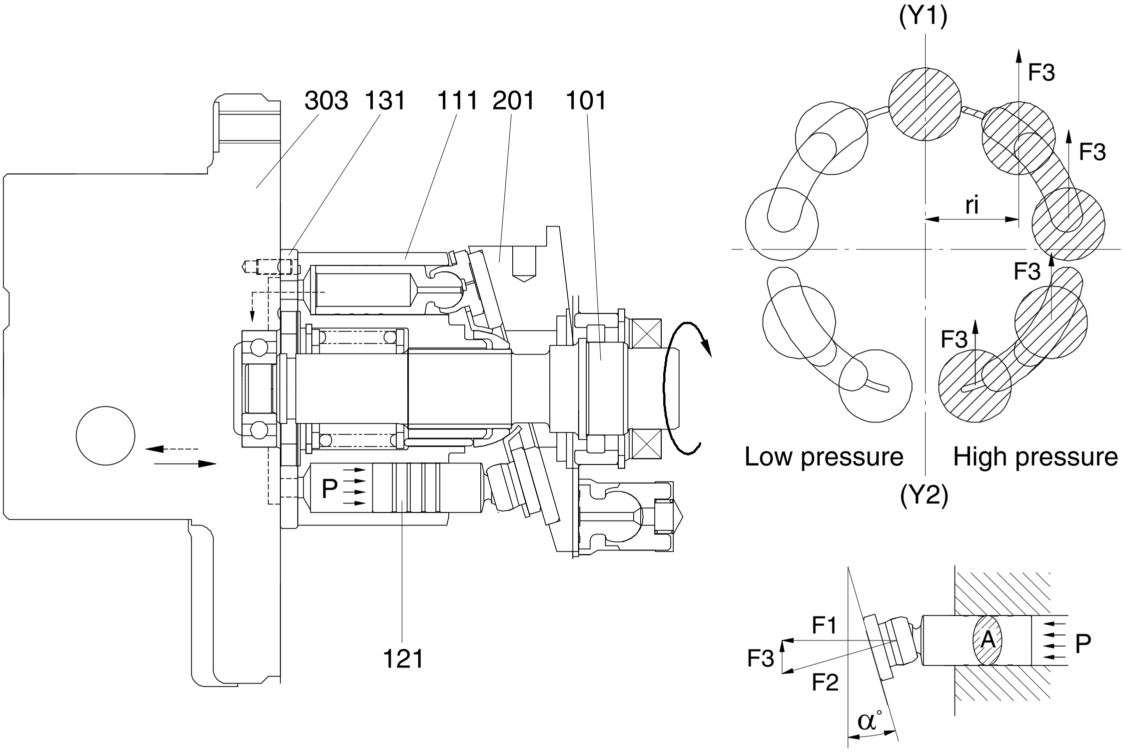
2) REDUCTION GEAR



1	Ring gear	20	Side plate	37	Snap ring
2	Housing	21	Needle cage	44	Snap ring
4	Side cover	22	Needle cage	45	Clip
5	Carrier 1	23	Needle cage	46	W clip
6	Carrier 2	24	Inner ring	47	Nutring
9	Sun gear 1	25	Floating bushing	51	Name plate
10	Sun gear 2	26	Thrust ring	52	Rivet
11	Sun gear 3	27	Thrust ring	53	Washer
12	Planetary gear 1	29	Socket bolt	54	Set screw
13	Planetary gear 2	30	Socket bolt	55	Nutring stopper
14	Planetary gear 3	32	RO plug	56	Hex socket bolt
16	Pin 2	33	Angular bearing	81	O-ring
17	Pin 3	34	Floating seal	82	O-ring
18	Side plate	35	Shim	83	O-ring
19	Side plate	36	Spring pin		

2. FUNCTION

1) GENERATION OF TORQUE



3607A2TRG02

The pressurized oil delivered from the hydraulic pump flows to valve casing (303) of the motor, passes through the brake valve mechanism, and is introduced into cylinder block (111) via valve plate (131). This oil constructively introduced only to one side of (Y1)- (Y2) connecting the upper and lower dead points of stroke of piston (121). The pressurized oil led to one side in cylinder block (111) pushes each piston (121) four or five and generates a forec [F (kgf) = P (kgf/cm²) × A (cm²)].

This force acts on swash plate (201), and is resolves into components (F2 and F3) because swash plate (201) is fixed at an angle (α) with the axis of drive shaft (101).

Radial component (F3) generates respective torques (T=F3×ri) for (Y1)- (Y2). This residual of torque [T=S (F3×ri)] rotates cylinder block (111) via piston (121).

Since the cylinder block (111) is spline coupled with drive shaft (101).

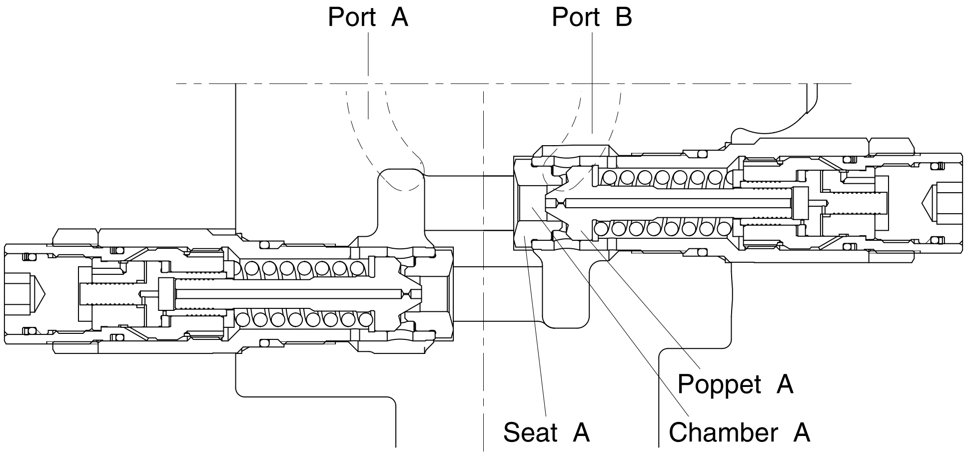
So the drive shaft (101) rotates and the torque is transmitted.

2) RELIEF VALVE

The relief valve mainly has the following two functions :

(1) To keep the starting pressure of the hydraulic motor at a constant value and bypass to the return line excessive oil generated at the motor inlet depending upon the acceleration speed of the driven inertia.

(2) To generate a brake pressure at the outlet during stopping of the driven inertia, and stop it forcedly.



3607A2TM06

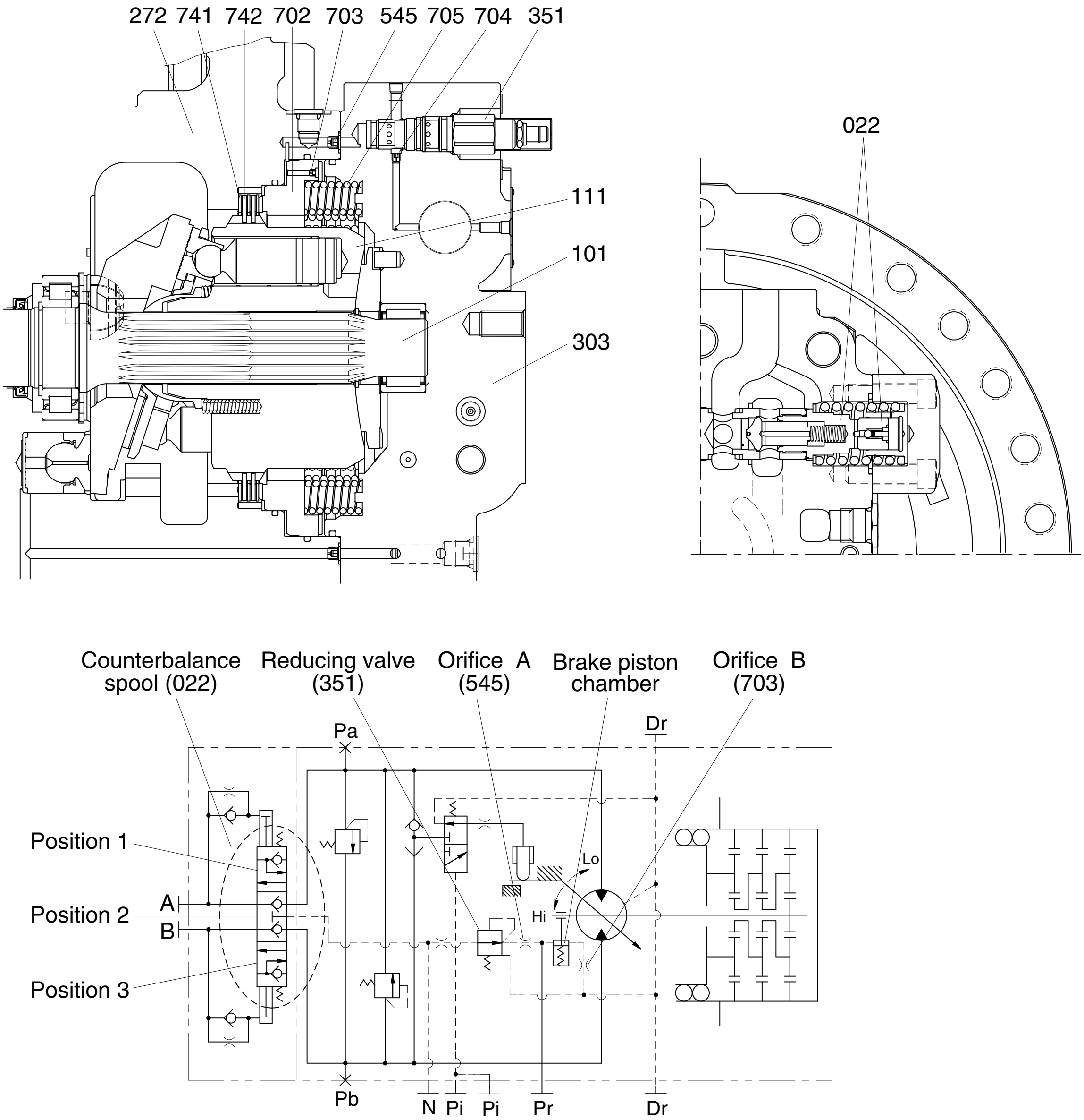
The chamber A is always connected to the port A of the motor.

When the pressure at port A increases and the force pushing poppet A is higher than the set pressure of the spring, then poppet A is pushed up from the contact surface of seat A, and oil flows from chamber A to port B.

3) NEGATIVE BRAKE

The negative brake is released applying to the brake piston (702) the pressure led through the built-in counterbalance spool sub-assembly (022).

With no pressure working, the brake force is always ensured.

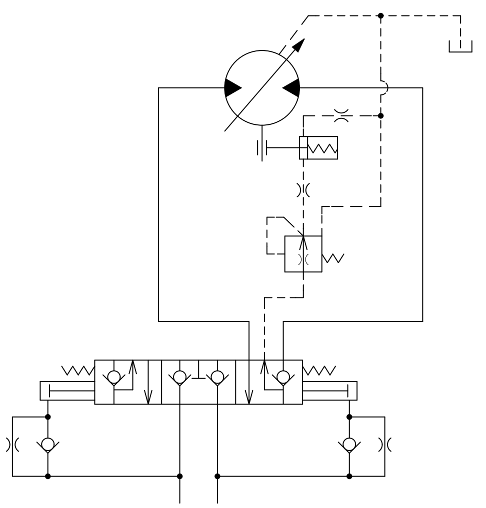


3607A2TM07

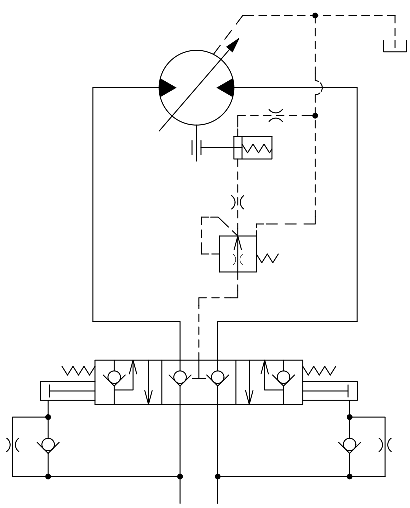
The brake force is the friction force generated on the surfaces of the friction plates (742) spline-coupled with the cylinder block (111), when their rotation is restricted by the shaft casing (272), separation plate (741), and brake piston (702).

Without pressure being applied to the brake piston, the brake piston is pushed by fourteen brake springs (705), and the friction plate and separation plate are held between the brake and shaft casing. This holding force functions as the friction force. This friction force restrains the shaft (101) spline-coupled with the cylinder block, and this function is the brake.

4) PRESSURE RELEASE VALVE (Flow control valve)



During running



During stop

3607A2TM08A

This brake is of a backpressure-insensitive type. In other words, since the counterbalance spool used be overlapped at the neutral position, the pressure release valve prevents the circuit backpressure from working into the brake chamber when the machine stops traveling and works, and so the specified brake torque is available even on a slope.

During normal traveling, the pressure coming through the counterbalance valve is applied to the brake chamber to release the break, and is also applied to the pressure release valve section.

This pressure release valve is of a constant differential pressure type, and irrespective of the working pressure, the passing flow is constant and approximately 1 to 2 l / min.

When the condition changes from traveling to stop, the counterbalance spool returns to its neutral position. The brake piston is pushed by the brake spring, and the oil in the brake chamber flow to the motor drain line via the pressure release valve. Then the brake torque is generated.

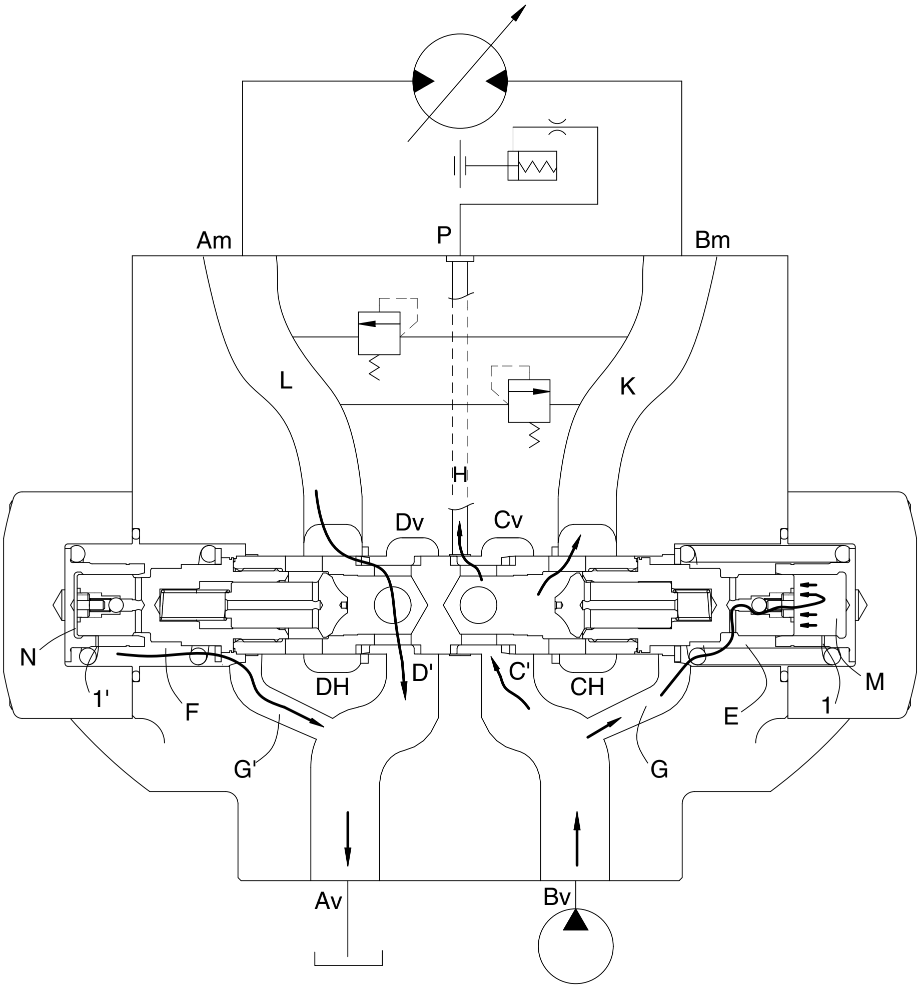
5) RELEASING METHOD OF NEGATIVE BRAKE

In releasing the negative brake without applying the brake releasing pressure, follow the procedures shown below.

Details of work	Tools
Remove two plugs (564) from the valve casing (303). (For their position, see the attached installation dimension) Tighten an M10 screw of 135 mm in length into a tapped hole of the brake piston (702). Then the condition having the brake release pressure is attained and the brake is released.	Socket wrench 6 mm 8 mm

Note : Even with the negative brake released, the hydraulic motor will not turn. When it is difficult to generate the working pressure due to failure of the pump or so, and the whole machine is to be pulled for transportation without removing the hydraulic motor, connect pressure measurement ports P_a and P_b with a short hose or something. Then the machine can be pulled slowly.

6) COUNTERBALANCE VALVE



3607A2TRG03

Suppose port Bv is connected to the hydraulic pump and Port Av, to the tank. The oil supplied from the hydraulic pump passes through Bv, Cv and C' in sequence, pushes up the poppet of the check valve, passes through K to Port Bm, and is supplied to the hydraulic motor to turn it.

Therefore, the pump discharge oil pressure increases, and the pressure is led via passage G to spring room E and via the ball check valve to dumping room M. When the pressure in rooms E and M exceeds the value equivalent to the force of the spring which holds the spool at its neutral position, the spool begins to move left. Since the working oil in room N flows into room F via throttle 1' and that in room F is discharged via passage G' through port Av to the tank, the spool moves left to have passage L-DH-D'-Dv composed. In addition, passage Cv-H-P is also composed, and the pump discharge pressure in port Bv is led to port P.

Because of the throttle or clearance provided for the working oil flow from room N, this changeover motion of the spool is comparatively slow.

When the pump discharge pressure is higher, the spool movement is larger and the above opening area of the spool is larger.

When the pump discharge pressure falls, pressures in rooms E and M fall and the spool will move right due to the spring on the room F side.

Since working oil in room M flows to room E via throttle 1 and that in room E, to port Bv via passage G, the spool moves right.

When the pressure at port Bv falls down to the tank pressure, the pressure in room E also falls to the tank pressure and becomes equal to that in room F, and so the spool returns to its neutral position.

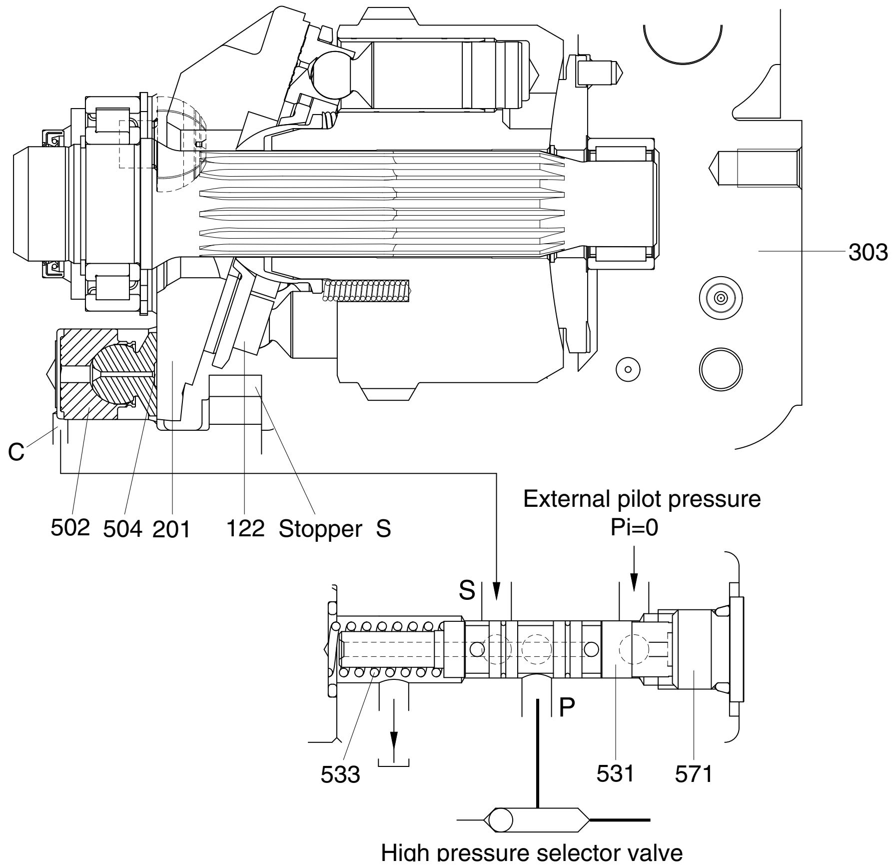
7) DISPLACEMENT CHANGEOVER SECTION

As a supporting mechanism for the swash plate (201) on which the shoes (122) slide, the pillar system is adopted to support the load with semi-cylindrical sliding bearings provided at both ends of the mechanism.

The capacity is changed by changing the tilting angle of this swash plate.

This is a mechanism that swash plate was pushed by tilting position, and the tilting angle of the swash plate is decided in two positions (large and small) by controlling the flows to and from these piston rooms with the displacement changeover valve section.

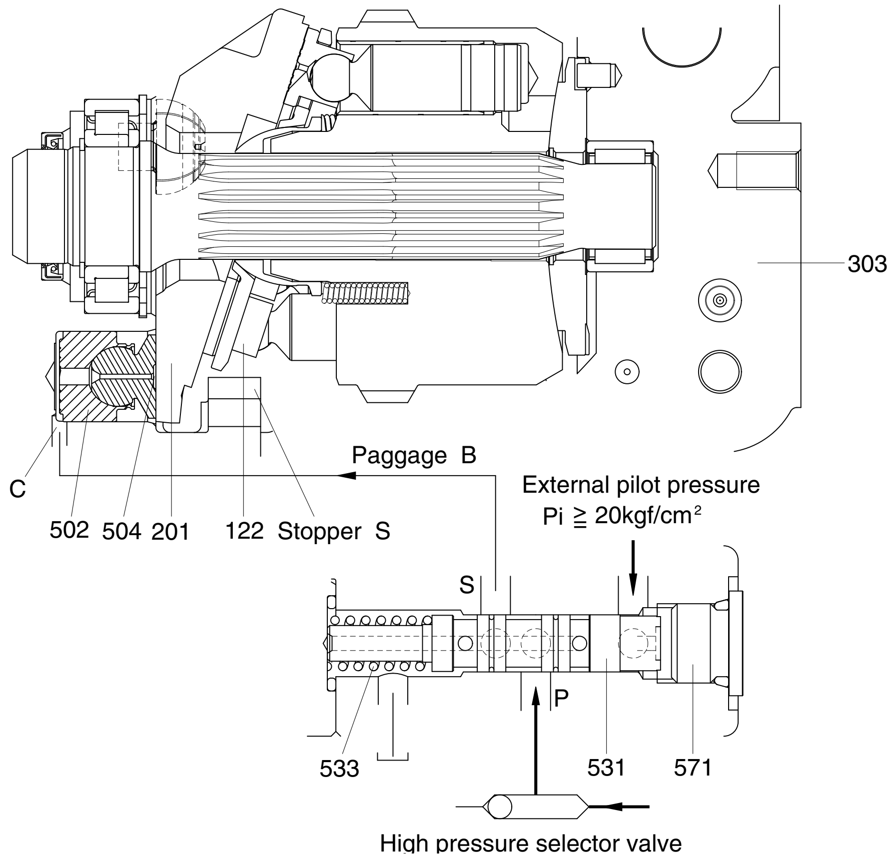
(1) **External pilot pressure** : $P_i = 0$ .... Large displacement



3607A2TM04

By means of the built-in high pressure selector mechanism in the valve casing (303), the high pressure oil working on the motor functions to port P of the displacement-changeover valve. This pressure becomes the servo pressure. Since the spool (531) assembled in the displacement changeover valve is pressed to plug (571) by thy spring (533), the high pressure oil at port P is enclosed.

(2) **External pilot pressure** : Pi ≧ 20 kgf/cm² ——— small displacement



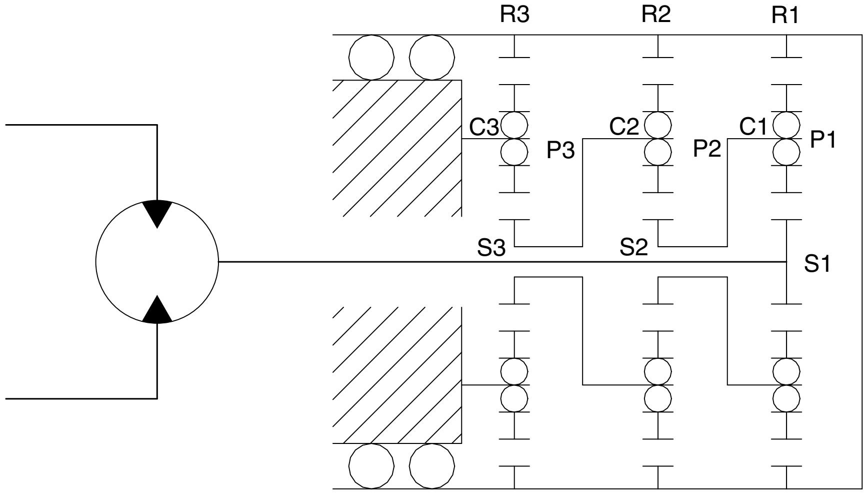
3607A2TM05

The force working on the spool (531) of the displacement-changeover valve becomes higher than that of the spring (533), and the spool moves left. The high pressure oil flows from port P of the displacement-changeover valve through port S and passage B to room C where it works.

The displacement changeover piston (502) is pushed light by the high pressure oil and the swash plate moves in the arrowed direction. The swash plate moves until it touched stopper S, and then is fixed there.

8) REDUCTION GEAR

The reduction gear is composed of a three-stage planetary gear mechanism shown in the following figure. Since the sun gear is designed to have a floating mechanism, errors of the gears and carrier pin hole pitches will not affect the gears' lives heavily.



3607A2TRG04

The input rotation of the hydraulic motor is transmitted to No. 1 sun gear (S1) and this drives No. 1 planetary gears (P1). This No. 1 planetary gears (P1) drive No.1 ring gear (R1) with the same force as the meshing tangential force with No. 1 sun gear (S1), and also No. 1 carrier (C1) with the same force as the meshing reaction force. In other words, No. 1 planetary gears (P1) revolve rotating. This rotation of No. 1 carrier (C1) becomes the output of the 1st stage, and is transmitted directly to No. 2 sun gear (S2).

(No. 1 carrier is spline-coupled with No. 2 sun gear.) Similarly the revolution of No. 2 planetary gear (P2) are transmitted via No.2 carrier (C2) to No. 3 sun gear (S3). Since No. 3 carrier (C3) supporting No. 3 planetary gears (P3) are fixed, No. 3 planetary gears (P3) do not revolve, but rotates to drive No. 3 ring gear (R3).

Therefore, the rotating case is driven by the overall driving torque of No1, 2 and 3 ring gears.

This reduction ratio is expressed as shown below:

$$i = \frac{(Z_{S1} + Z_{R1})\,(Z_{S2} + Z_{R2})\,(Z_{S3} + Z_{R3})}{Z_{S1} \cdot Z_{S2} \cdot Z_{S3}} - 1$$

where Z : Number of teeth of each gear

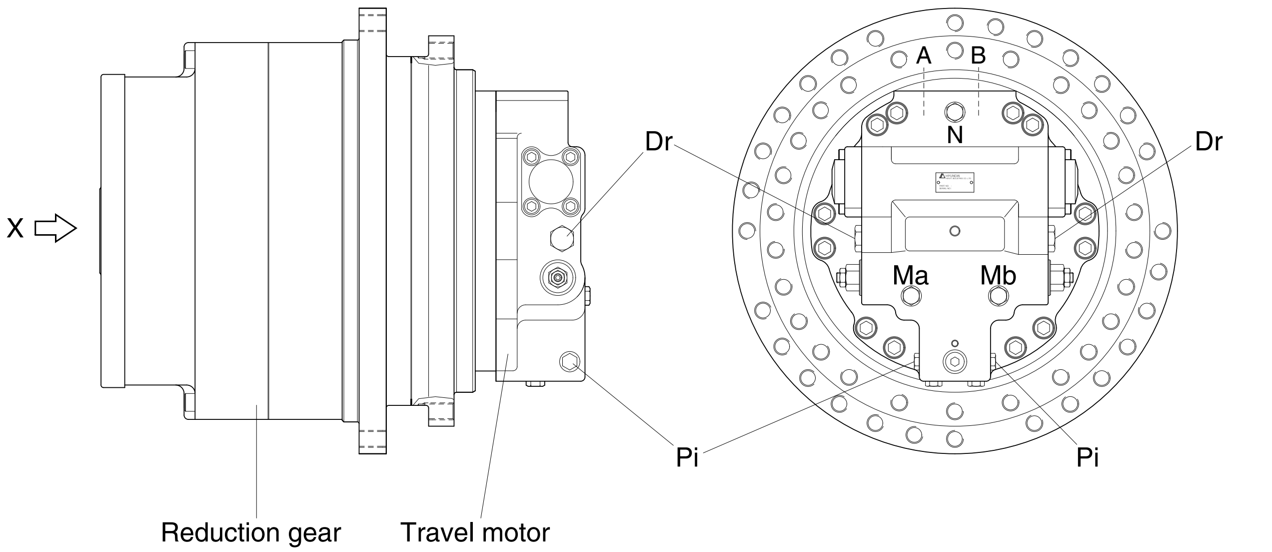
The direction of rotation is reverse to that of the input shaft.

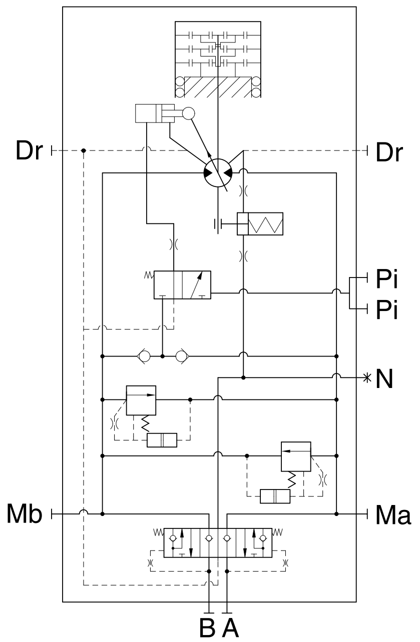
■ TRAVEL MOTOR (TYPE 2)

1. CONSTRUCTION

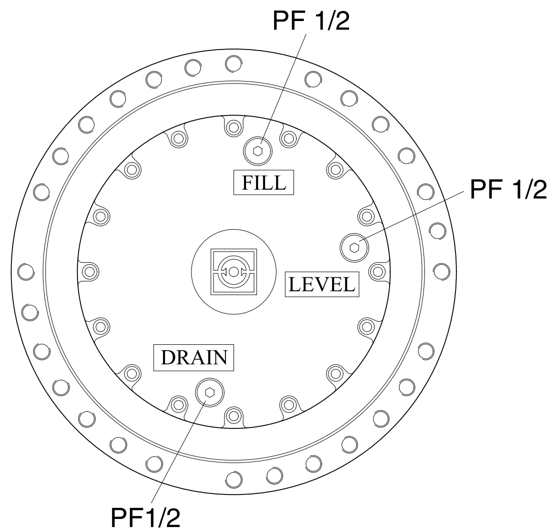
Travel device consists travel motor and gear box.

Travel motor includes brake valve, parking brake and high/low speed changeover mechanism.





Hydraulic circuit



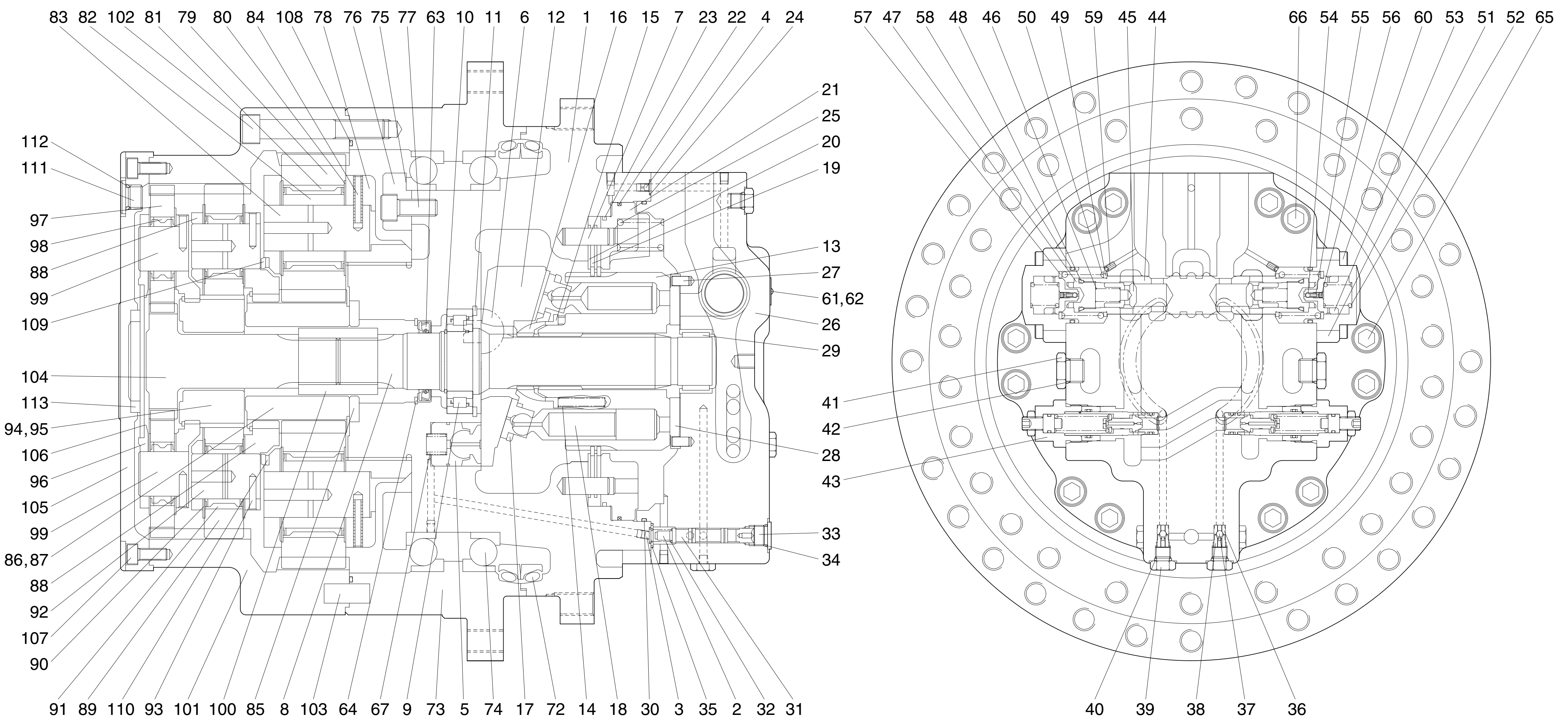
VIEW X

3809A2TM21

Port	Port name	Port size
A, B	Main port	SAE 6000 psi ø 25
Pi	Two speed control port	PF 1/4
Dr	Drain port	PF 1/2
Ma, Mb	Gage port	PF 1/4
N	Brake release port	PF 1/4

2. SPECIFICATION

1) TRAVEL MOTOR



3809A2TM22

1	Shaft casing
2	Plug
3	Orifice
4	Orifice screw
5	Swash piston
6	Swash ball
7	Brake pin
8	Shaft
9	Roller bearing
10	Stop ring
11	Lock ring
12	Swash plate
13	Cylinder block
14	Cylinder spring
15	Spacer
16	Ball guide
17	Set plate
18	Piston & Shoe assy
19	Friction plate
20	Separator plate
21	Brake piston
22	Piston ring
23	Piston ring
24	O-ring
25	Brake spring
26	Valve casing
27	Valve plate pin
28	Valve plate
29	Needle bearing
30	O-ring
31	Swash spool
32	Swash spring
33	Plug
34	O-ring
35	O-ring
36	Seat
37	Steel ball
38	Stopper
39	Plug
40	O-ring
41	Plug
42	O-ring
43	Relief valve assy
44	Main spool
45	Check
46	Spring
47	Plug
48	O-ring
49	Spring seat
50	Spring
51	Cover
52	Spring
53	Spool
54	Steel ball
55	Spring
56	Plug
57	Spring seat
58	O-ring
59	Orifice
60	Wrench bolt
61	Name plate
62	Rivet
63	Oil seal
64	Snap ring
65	Wrench bolt
66	Wrench bolt
67	Spring pin
72	Floating seal
73	Hub
74	Bearing
75	Shim
76	Bearing guide
77	Wrench bolt
78	Carrier
79	Planetary gear
80	Plate
81	Needle bearing
82	Bearing bushing
83	Pin
84	Spring pin
85	Thrust plate
86	Sun gear
87	Snap ring
88	Carrier
89	Planetary gear
90	Plate
91	Needle bearing
92	Pin
93	Spring pin
94	Sun gear
95	Snap ring
96	Carrier
97	Planetary gear
98	Needle bearing
99	Pin
100	Coupling
101	Ring gear
102	Wrench bolt
103	Planetary pin
104	Drive gear
105	End cover
106	Plate
107	Wrench bolt
108	O-ring
109	Ring
110	Ring
111	Plug
112	O-ring
113	Bushing

3. PRINCIPLE OF DRIVING

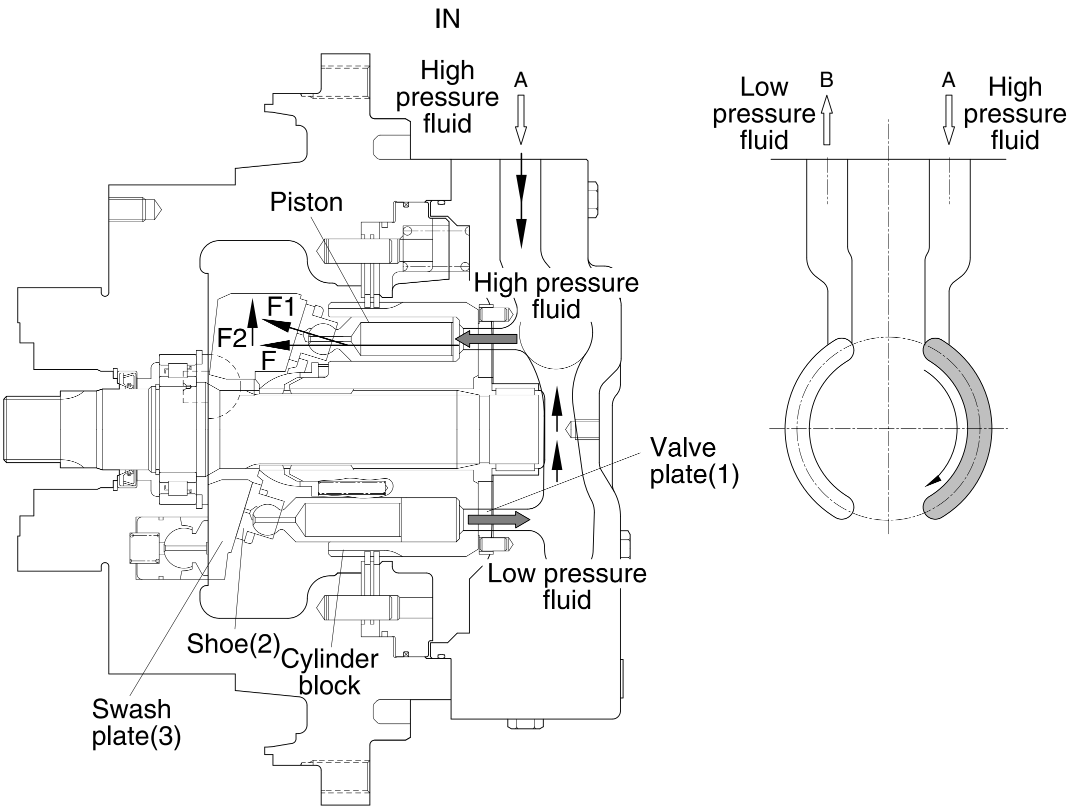
Travel motor comprises with rotary, relief valve, parking brake, counterbalance valve and 2-speed control.

1) WORKING OF ROTARY PART

In the figure below, axis direction power F occurs, when the high pressure oil flows in the cylinder block through to the valve plate (1) port, and the piston moves to the left hand side.

This power F, which takes shoe (2) as a medium, split into F1 power vertical to swash plate (3), and F2 power perpendicular from an axis. Through F2 power, cylinder block rotate with piston and shoe, while shoe (2) moves on the swash plate with piston. There are 9 pistons inserted into the cylinder block and they rotate with the cylinder block by taking high pressure gas in order at the entrance.

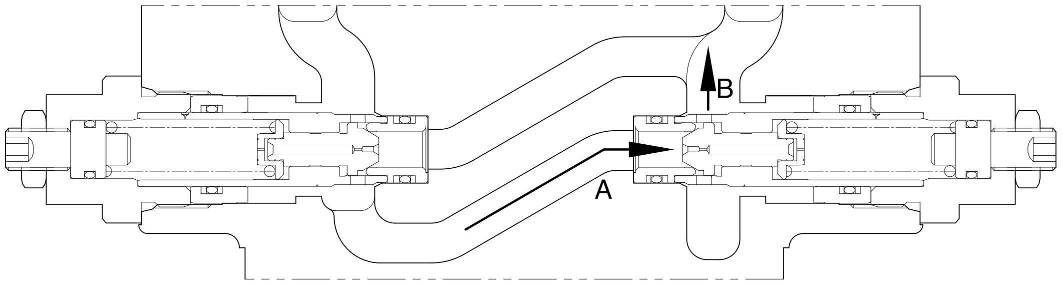
When you reverse the flow of the high pressure oil, piston and cylinder block rotate in the opposite direction above the shoe plate.



3809A2TM23

2) WORKING OF RELIEF VALVE

When the port from control valve to motor is closed, traveling movement stops.
However, motor continues rotating because of the traveling inertia of the machine's upper body.
By doing so, motor is damaged by the gradual rising of the pressure at the exit.
To prevent this damage, relief valve discharge the gradual rising pressure from the exit to the entrance which has lower pressure.



3809A2TM24

- Setting pressure : 360 kgf/cm^2
- Back pressure : 5 kgf/cm^2
- Cracking pressure : 330 kgf/cm^2 over

- AT THE BEGINNING OF TRAVELING

RELIEF VALVE A

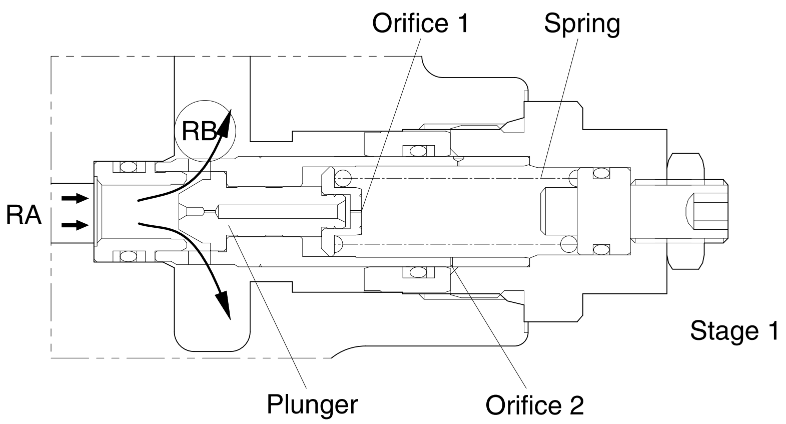
Traveling manipulation lever works to rise the pressure of RA port up. When this pressure oil press plunger to the right, and then sustain the power of the spring, the plunger moves to the right and release the pressure oil of RA port to RB port (stage 1).

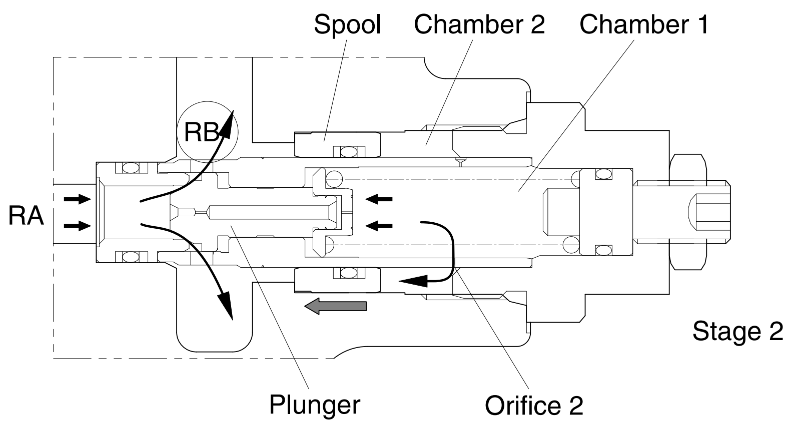
The plunger moves slowly by the pressure oil which flows into chamber 1 through orifice 1.

The pressure oil flowed into chamber 1 flows into chamber 2 through orifice 2, and at this point, the plunger moves to the left again, when the spring is compressed by the flowed pressure oil which press the spool to the left. (stage 2).

When the RA port pressure goes up much more and the set pressure overcome the power of the compressed spring again, the plunger moves to the right and the pressure has of RA port is released to RB port.

Thus, at the early stage of the relief-valve operation, it works primarily at lower pressure, after then, shock is reduced during rotating at the set pressure as the secondary operation.





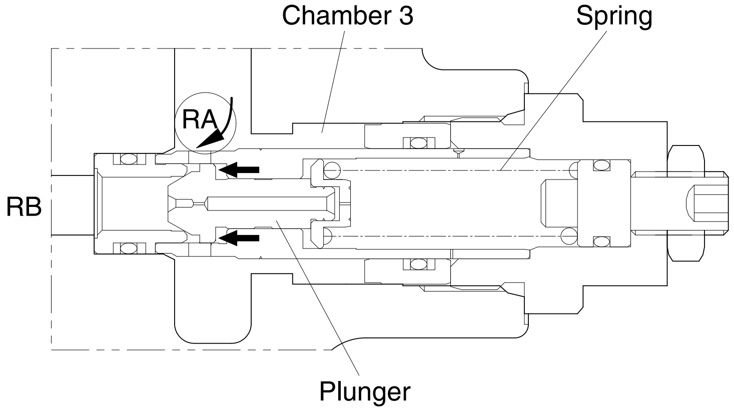
RELIEF VALVE A

3809A2TM25

- DURING TRAVELING OPERATION

RELIEF VALVE B

During traveling operation, RA port pressure goes up and RB port pressure goes down. Thus RA port pressure oil flows into chamber 3, and pushes plunger to the left with a high pressure and the power of the spring.



RELIEF VALVE B

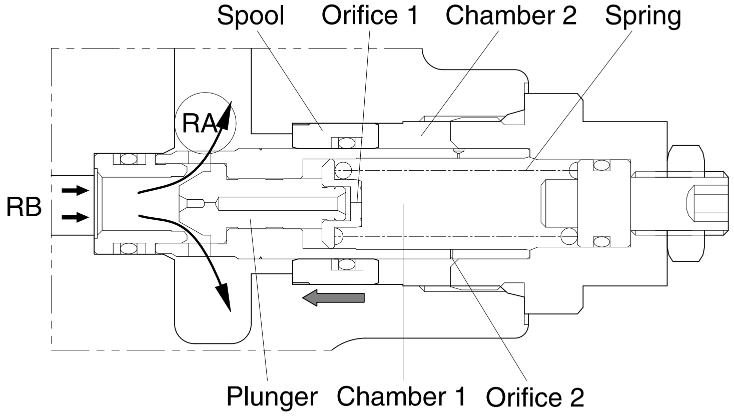
3809A2TM26

- WHEN IT STOP

RELIEF VALVE B

When it stops or operates reversely, RA port pressure is extremely lowered and RB port pressure gradually goes up because of the swing inertia from the upper swing part of machine.

Consequently, relief valve B operates as the same order as relief valve A, and maintains the set pressure by releasing the high pressure of RB port to RA port.



RELIEF VALVE B

3809A2TM27

3) WORKING OF PARKING BRAKE

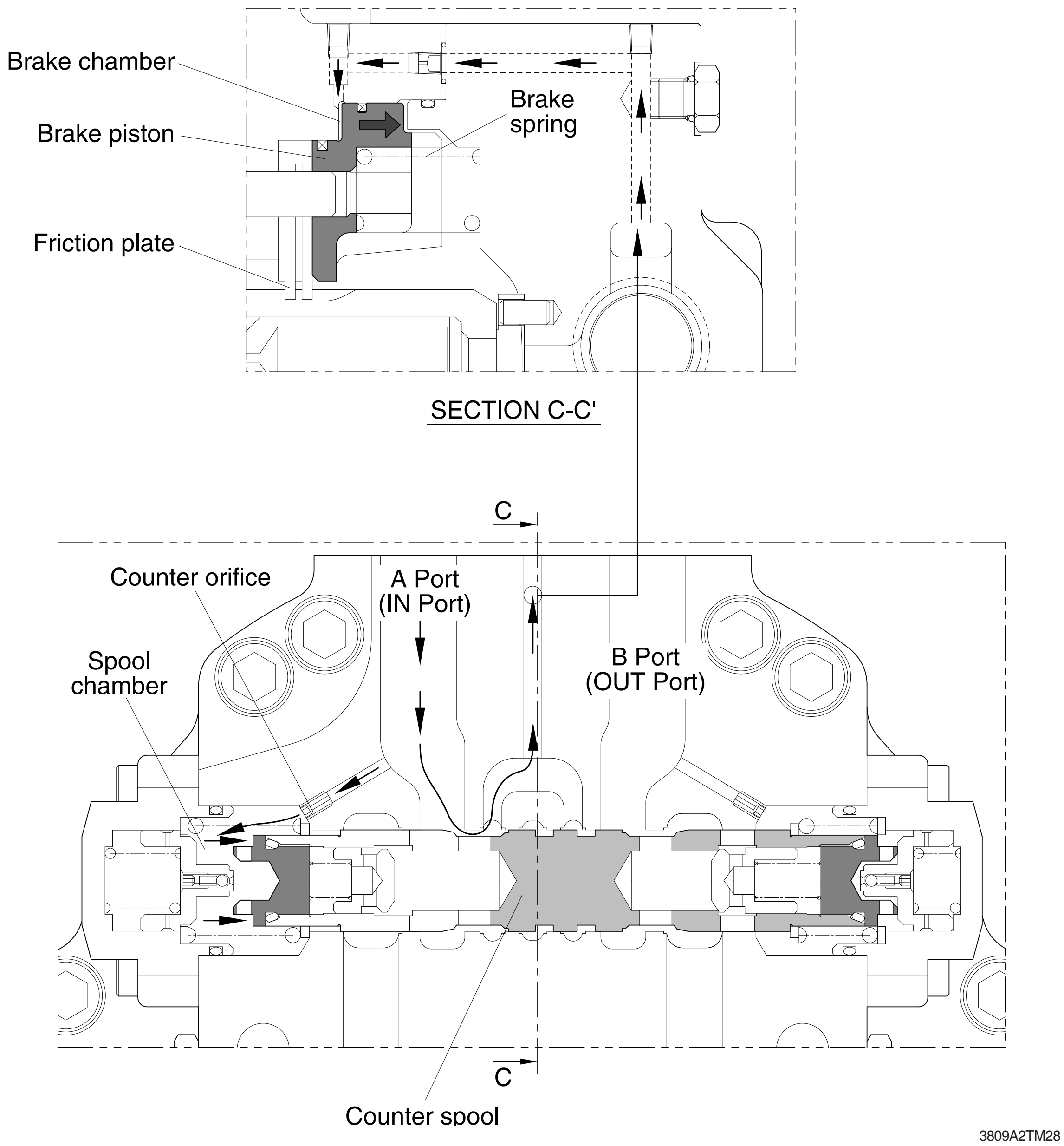
Parking brake consists of many wet friction plate. The brake is usually held with the power of spring, and it only removed by traveling pressure of motor.

- Parking brake OFF

  If worker operates the traveling control lever, traveling working pressurized oil into IN PORT flows from spool chamber through counter orifice.

  Pressurized oil pushes counter balance spool to right.

  Then notch of spool opens the brake line. At the same time, pressurized oil flow to brake chamber of motor from brake line. Brake piston to force of brake spring moves to right and brake lift.



- Parking brake ON

  If worker leave lever in neutral, pressurized oil supply to in port of motor stop.

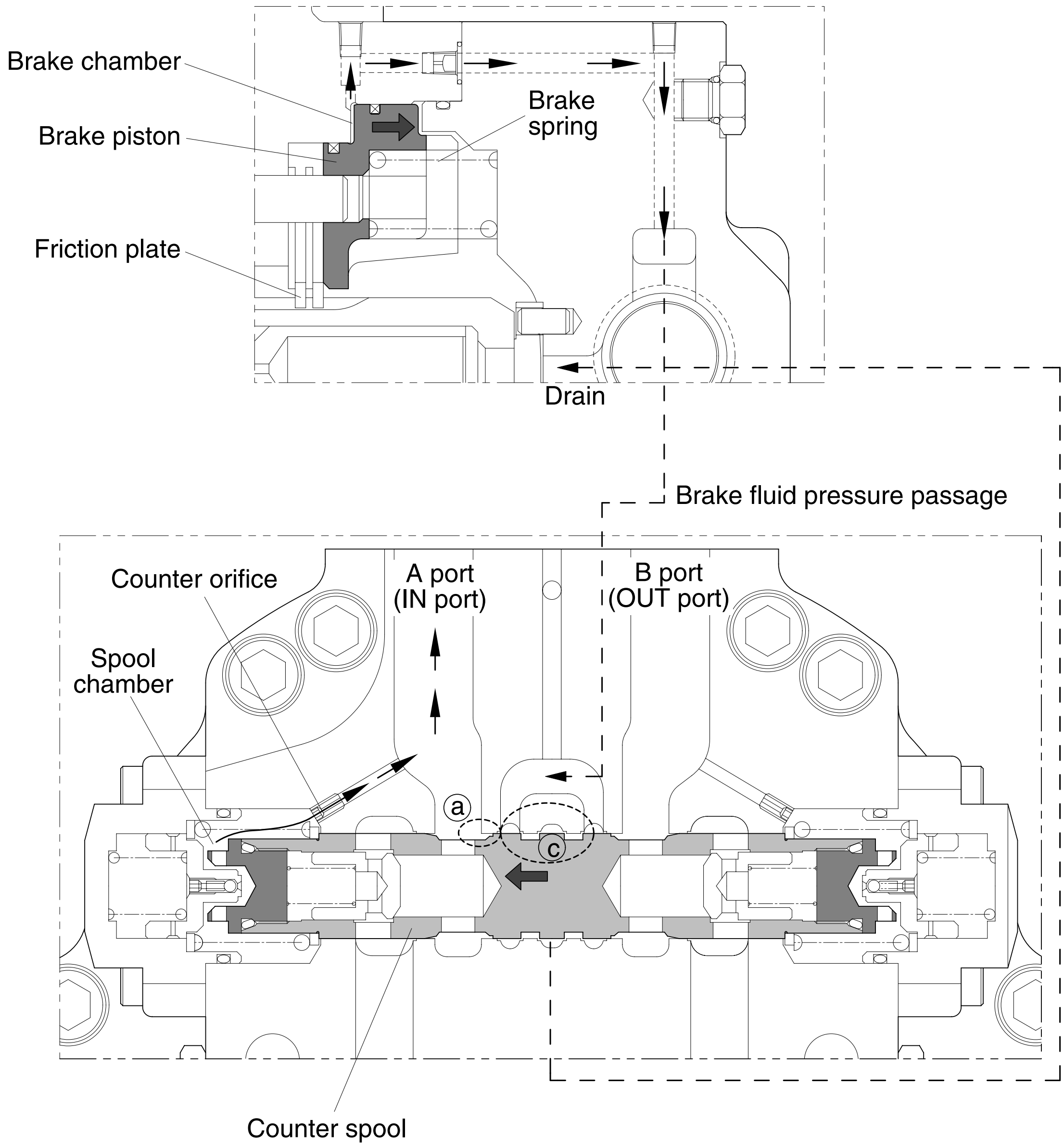
  If pressurized oil supply stop, in port pressure decline and pressurized oil of spool chamber moves to oil tank through counter orifice. Therefore counter balance spool return in neutral.

  If spool leave in neutral, notch ⓐ part of spool obstructed and brake pressurized oil obstructed.

  Brake pressurized oil line obstructed. So pressurized oil supply to brake chamber obstructed.

  Therefore if pressure of brake chamber decline, brake piston to force of brake spring moves to left and push friction plate.

  If brake force happens, brake stop. And pressurized oil to brake chamber drain to motor casing internal through line ⓒ to counter spool center.



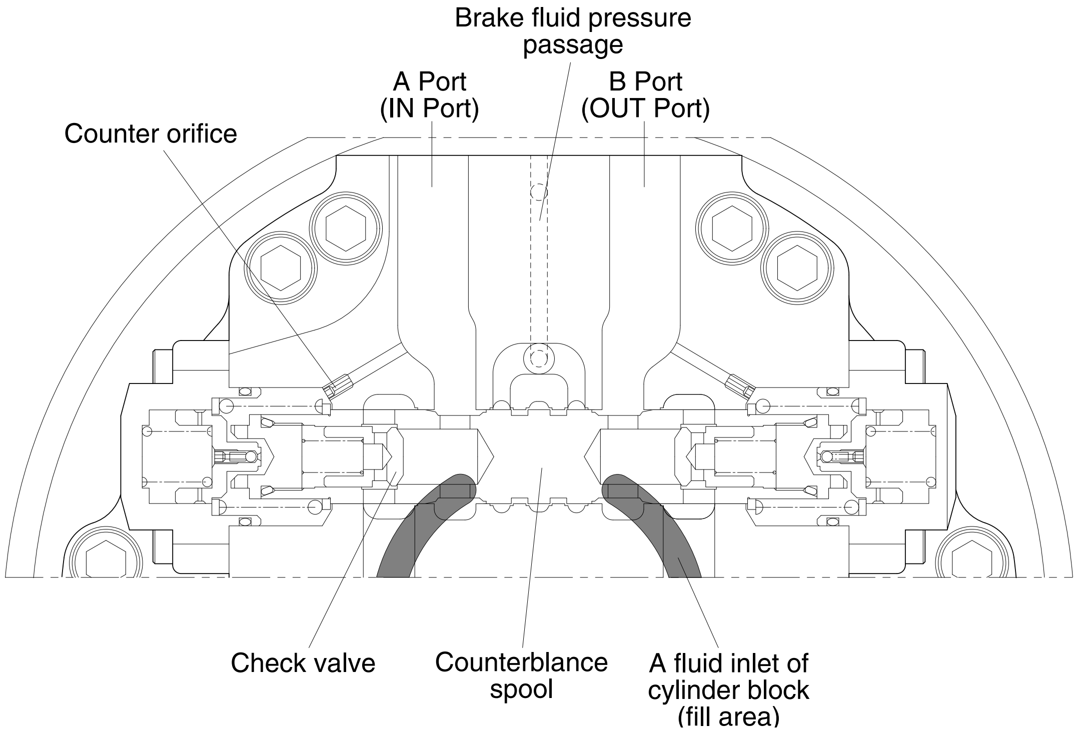
3809A2TM29

4) COUNTERBALANCE VALVE

- **Function of counterbalance valve**

(1) Parking brake off and operation of motor
(2) When motor descend in slope, traveling velocity control.
(3) After motor stop in slope, slip prevention.
(4) When motor stop, supplement the flow.

- NEUTRAL



3809A2TM30

5) HOW TO WORK

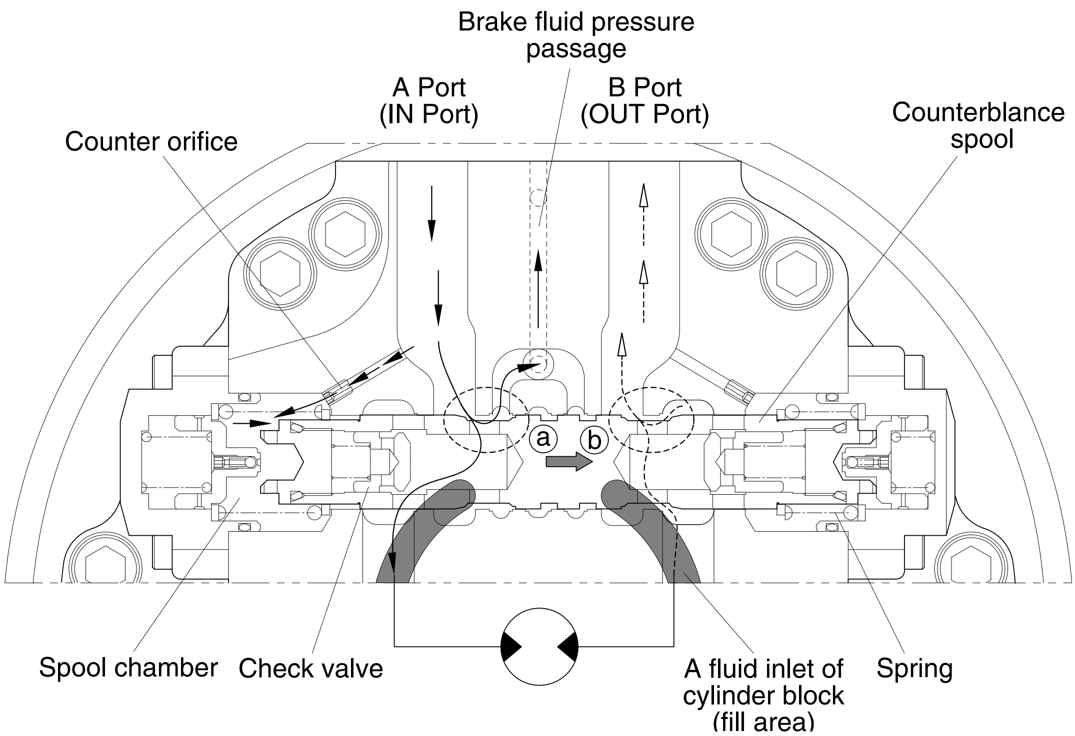
(1) When motor travel

If worker operates the traveling control lever, traveling working pressurized oil into IN PORT flows from spool chamber through counter orifice.

If spool moves to right, notch of spool open line ⓐ of brake pressurized oil.

Then pressurized oil lift the brake. At the same time, notch of counterbalance spool opens the line ⓑ.

Flowed pressurized oil to A port opens check valve and cylinder block of motor rotate.



3809A2TM31

(2) When motor stop

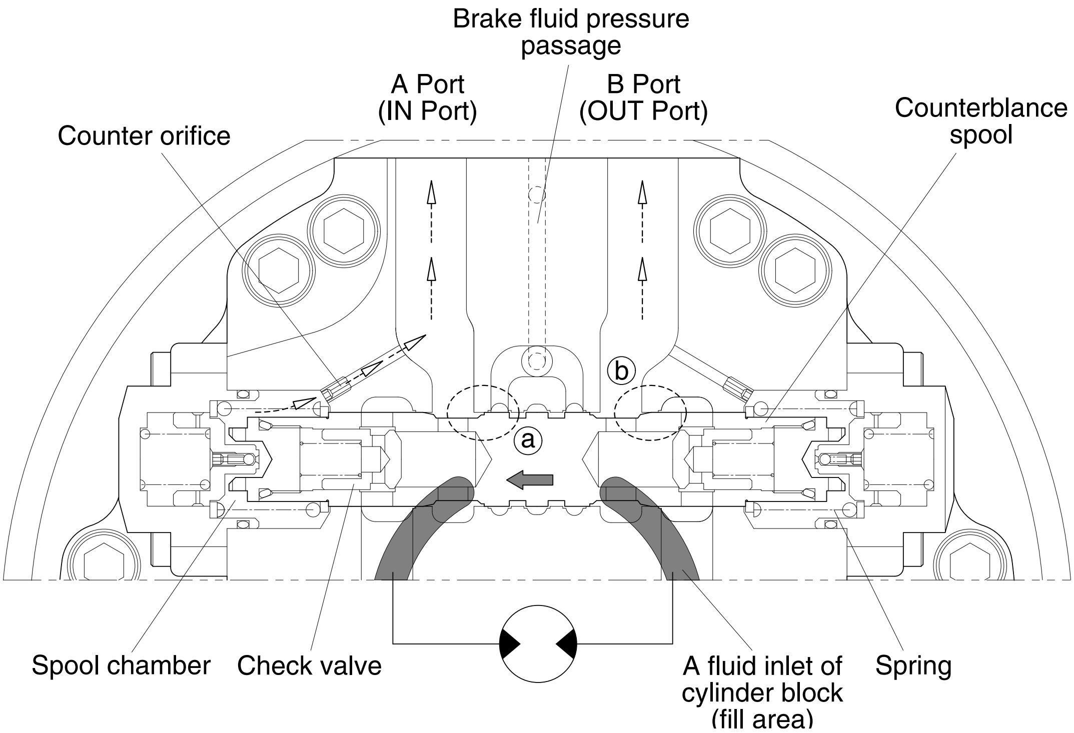
If worker leave lever in neutral, pressurized oil supply to in port of motor stop.

If pressurized oil supply stop, A port pressure decline and pressurized oil of spool chamber moves to oil tank through counter orifice. Therefore counterbalance spool return in neutral.

If counterbalance spool moves to left, line ⓑ by notch of counterbalance spool obstructed and brake pressurized oil obstructed.

At the same time, line ⓐ by notch of counterbalance valve obstructed. Therefore brake obstructed.

If brake force happens, brake stop.



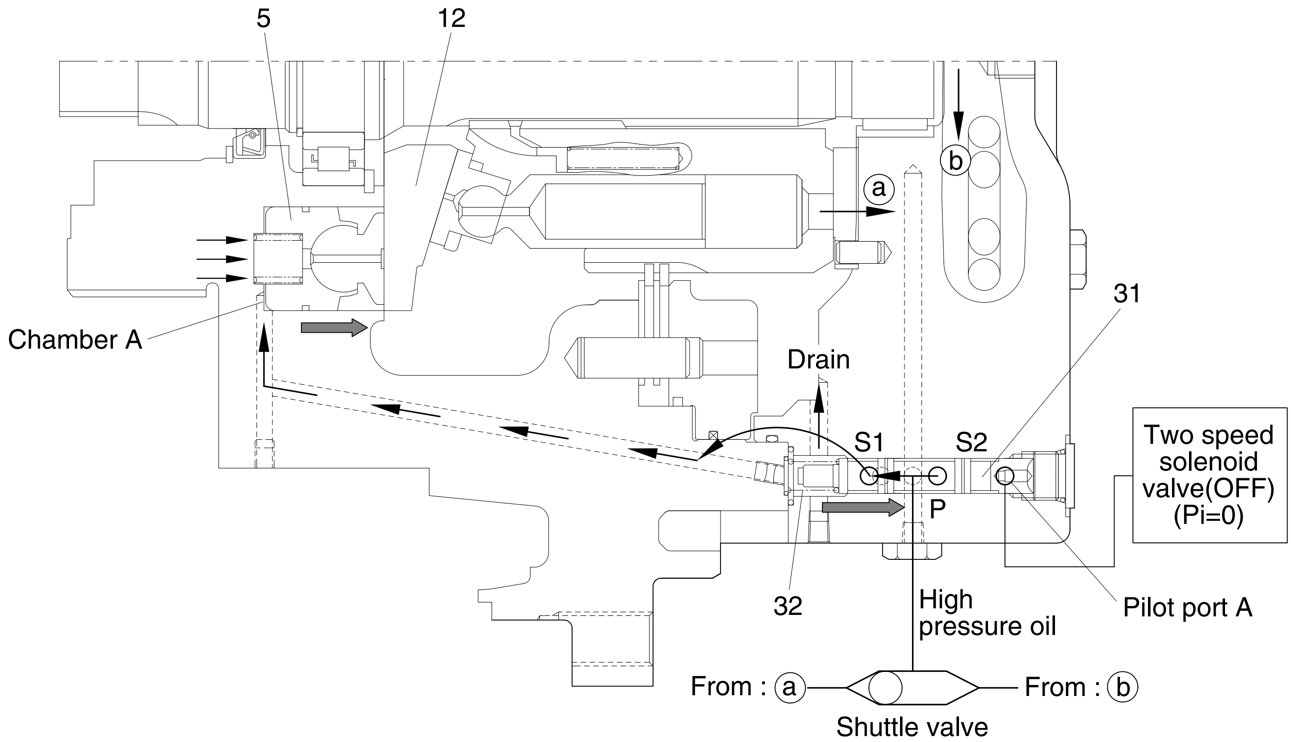
3809A2TM32

6) TWO SPEED (LOW SPEED - HIGH SPEED) CHANGEOVER EQUIPMENT

Rotation speed of track motor is depended on slope angle of swash plate (12).
When swash plate angle is Max, the motor rotates at low speed.
When swash plate angle is Min, the motor rotates at high speed.

• Low speed

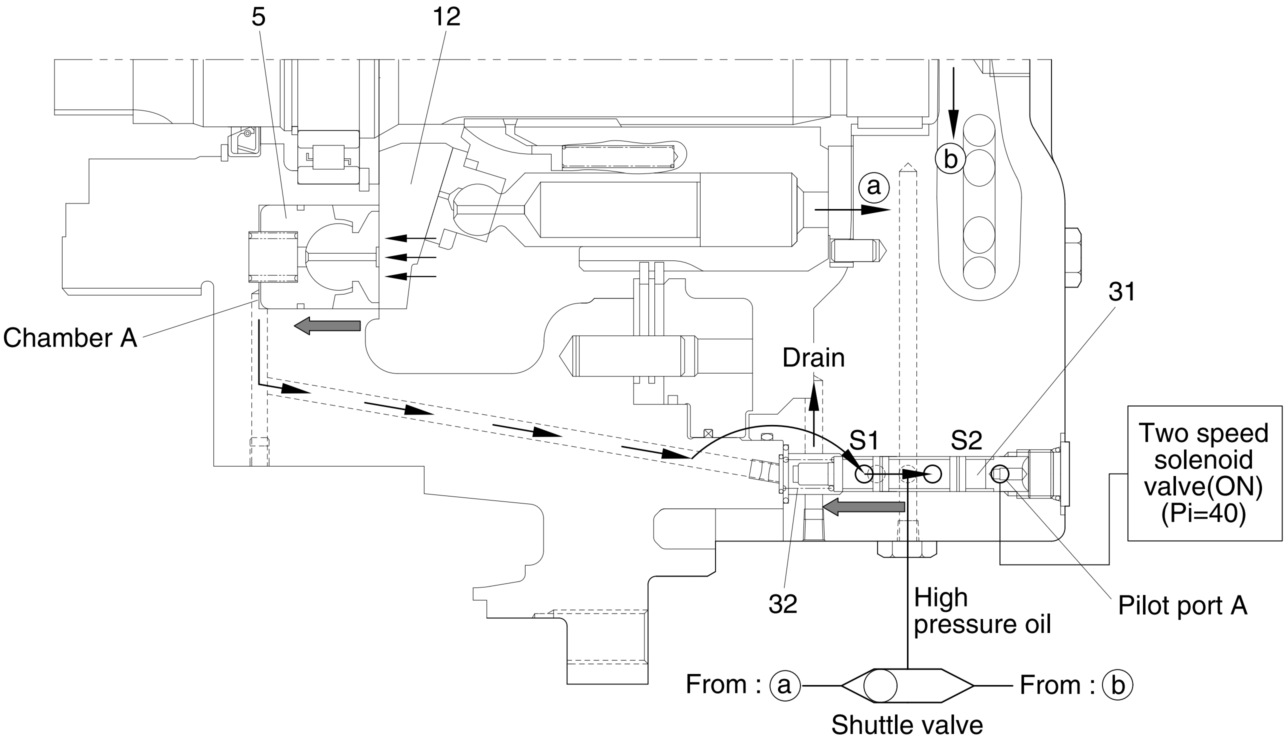
- When the pilot pressure on spool (31) is disconnected, pilot pressure does not pass to pilot port A. Two speed changeover spool (31) moves right by the spring (32) force.
- High pressure oil of ⓐ port (or ⓑ port) of cylinder block flow to P port of two speed changeover spool (31) through shuttle valve.
  Pressurized oil of two speed changeover spool flow to chamber A of swash piston (5) through S2 port.
- Swash plate moves to increase swash angle, so the motor rotates at low speed.



3809A2TM33

• High speed

- The pilot pressure on spool (31) of the displacement changeover valve overcomes the force of spring (32), and the spool moves left.
- High pressure oil of ⓐ port (or ⓑ port) of cylinder block flow to P port of two speed changeover spool (31) through shuttle valve.
- Swash plate moves to decrease swash angle, so the motor rotates at high speed.



3809A2TM34

4. REDUCTION GEAR

1) PLANETARY GEAR MECHANISM

Reduction unit slows down the rotating speed of motor and converts motor torque to strong rotating force.

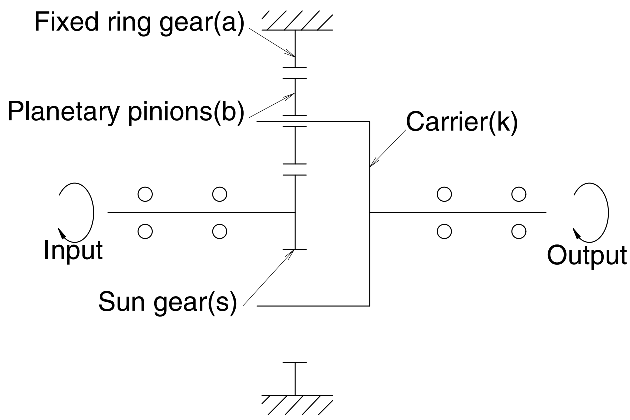
This reduction unit utilizes two stages, planetary reduction system.

Planetary reduction system consists of sun gear, planetary gears, carriers and ring gear.

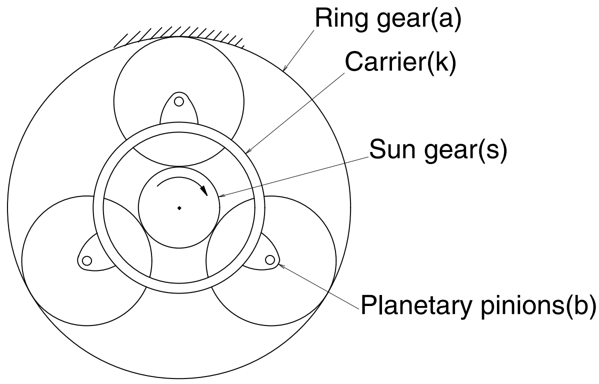
When the sun gear (s) is driven through input shaft, planetary pinions (b), rotating on their center, also move, meshing with fixed ring gear (a), around sun gears (s).

This movement is transferred to carrier (k) and deliver the torque.

This mechanism is called planetary gear mechanism.



29072TM10

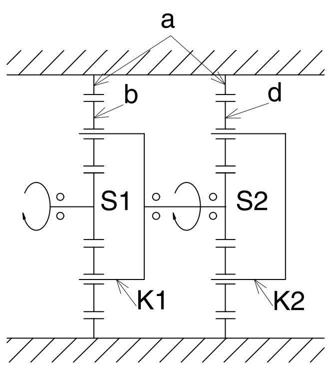


29072TM11

2) TWO STAGES REDUCTION GEAR

When the sun gear S1 is driven by input shaft, planetary action occurs among gears S1, a and b and revolution of gear b transfers the rotation of carrier K1 to second sun gear S2, and also evokes planetary action between gear S2, a and d.

This time, because carrier K2 is fixed to frame, gear d drives ring gear a and then ring gear a rotates to drive sprocket.



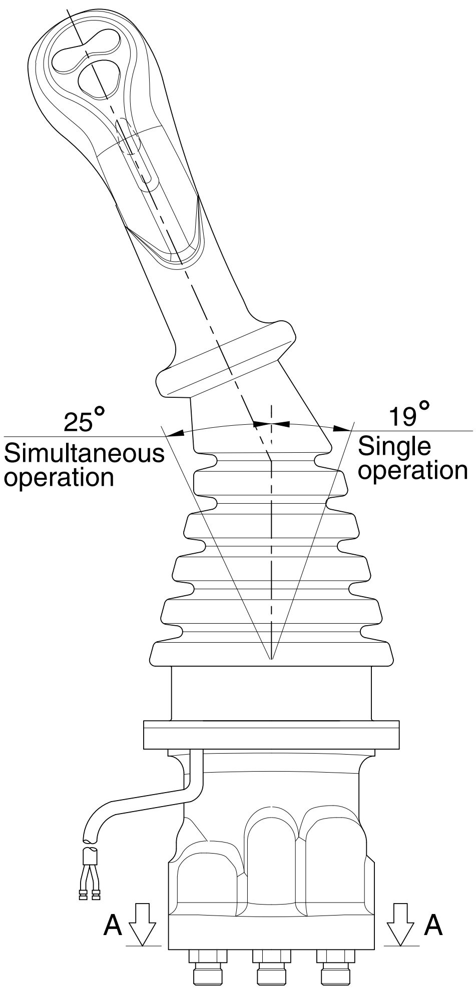
29072TM12

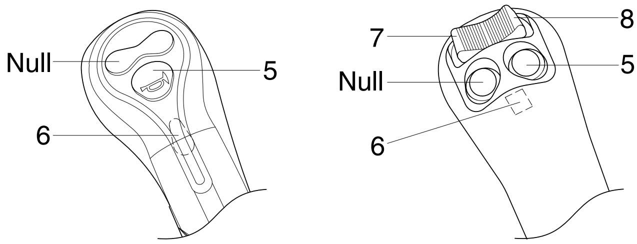
1. STRUCTURE

The casing has the oil inlet port P (primary pressure) and the oil outlet port T (tank). In addition the secondary pressure is taken out through ports 1, 2, 3 and 4 provided at the bottom face.

※ **Refer to the parts manual for the types of the RCV lever.**

1) TYPE L1, L3, L5



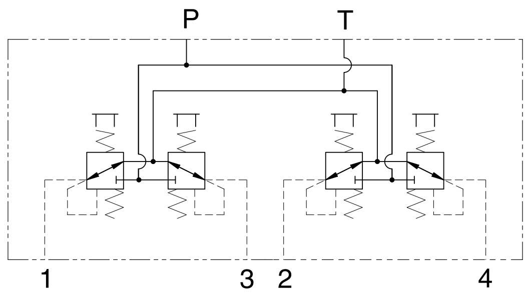


TYPE L1, L3 TYPE L5

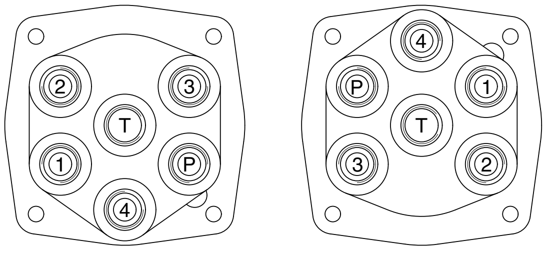
Switches

Type	No.	LH	RH
L1, L3	5	One touch decel	Horn
	6	Power boost	Breaker
L5	5	One touch decel	Horn
	6	Power boost	Null
	7	CCW rotation	Close
	8	CW rotation	Open

※ Number 7 and 8 : Option attachment



Hydraulic circuit



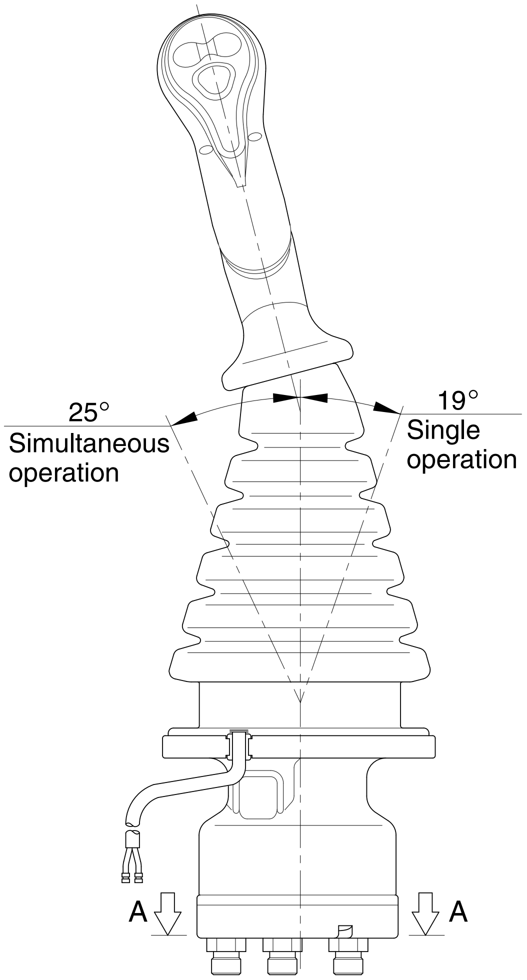
VIEW A-A

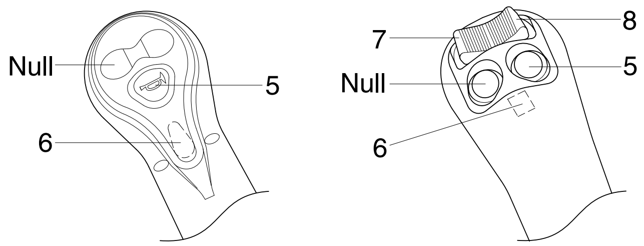
Pilot ports

Port	LH	RH	Port size
P	Pilot oil inlet port	Pilot oil inlet port	PF 3/8
T	Pilot oil return port	Pilot oil return port	
1	Left swing port	Bucket out port	
2	Arm out port	Boom up port	
3	Right swing port	Bucket in port	
4	Arm in port	Boom down port	

300L2RL01

2) TYPE L2, L4, L6

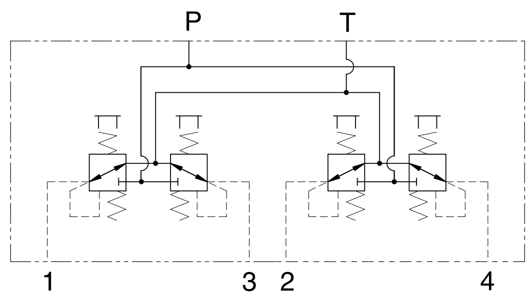




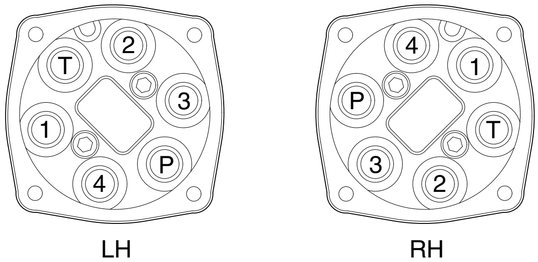
Switches

Type	No.	LH	RH
L2, L4	5	One touch decel	Horn
	6	Power boost	Breaker
L6	5	One touch decel	Horn
	6	Power boost	Null
	7	CCW rotation	Close
	8	CW rotation	Open

※ Number 7 and 8 : Option attachment



Hydraulic circuit



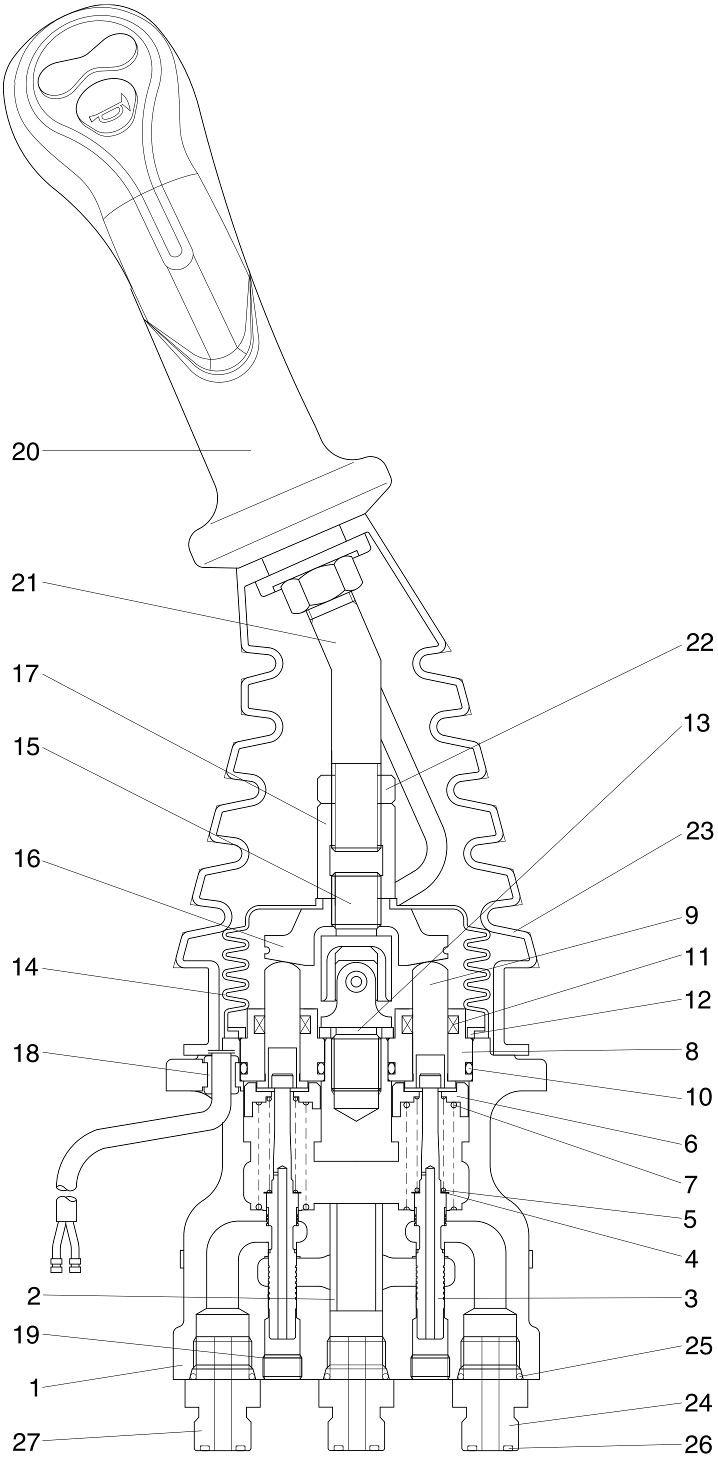
VIEW A-A

Pilot ports

Port	LH	RH	Port size
P	Pilot oil inlet port	Pilot oil inlet port	PF 3/8
T	Pilot oil return port	Pilot oil return port	
1	Left swing port	Bucket out port	
2	Arm out port	Boom up port	
3	Right swing port	Bucket in port	
4	Arm in port	Boom down port	

300L2RL05

3) CROSS SECTION



1	Case
2	Bushing
3	Spool
4	Shim
5	Spring
6	Spring seat
7	Spring
8	Plug
9	Push rod
10	O-ring
11	Rod seal
12	Plate
13	Spacer
14	Boot
15	Joint assembly
16	Swash plate
17	Adjusting nut
18	Bushing
19	Plug
20	Handle assembly
21	Handle bar
22	Nut
23	Boot
24	Last guard filter
25	O-ring
26	O-ring
27	Connector

300L2RL06

Item numbers are based on the type L1.

The construction of the pilot valve is shown in the attached cross section drawing. The casing has vertical holes in which reducing valves are assembled.

The pressure reducing section is composed of the spool (3), spring (5) for setting secondary pressure, return spring (7), spring seat (6) and shim (4). The spring for setting the secondary pressure has been generally so preset that the secondary pressure is 5 to 20.5 kgf/cm^2 (depending on the type). The spool is pushed against the push rod (9) by the return spring.

When the push rod is pushed down by tilting the handle, the spring seat comes down simultaneously and changes setting of the secondary pressure spring.

2. FUNCTIONS

1) FUNDAMENTAL FUNCTIONS

The pilot valve is a valve that controls the spool stroke, direction, etc of a main control valve. This function is carried out by providing the spring at one end of the main control valve spool and applying the output pressure (secondary pressure) of the pilot valve to the other end.

For this function to be carried out satisfactorily, the pilot valve is composed of the following elements.

(1) Inlet port (P) where oil is supplied from hydraulic pump.

(2) Output ports (1, 2, 3 & 4) to apply pressure supplied from inlet port to ends of control valve spools.

(3) Tank port (T) necessary to control the above output pressure.

(4) Spool to connect output port to inlet port or tank port.

(5) Mechanical means to control output pressure, including springs that work on the above spools.

2) FUNCTIONS OF MAJOR SECTIONS

Item numbers are based on the type L1.

The functions of the spool (3) are to receive the supply oil pressure from the hydraulic pump at its port P, and to change over oil paths to determine whether the pressure oil of port P is led to output ports 1, 2, 3 & 4 or the output port pressure oil to tank port T.

The spring (5) works on this spool to determine the output pressure.

The change the deflection of this spring, the push rod (9) is inserted and can slide in the plug (8).

For the purpose of changing the displacement of the push rod through the swash plate (16) and adjusting nut (17) are provided the handle assy (20) that can be tilted in any direction around the fulcrum of the universal joint (15) center.

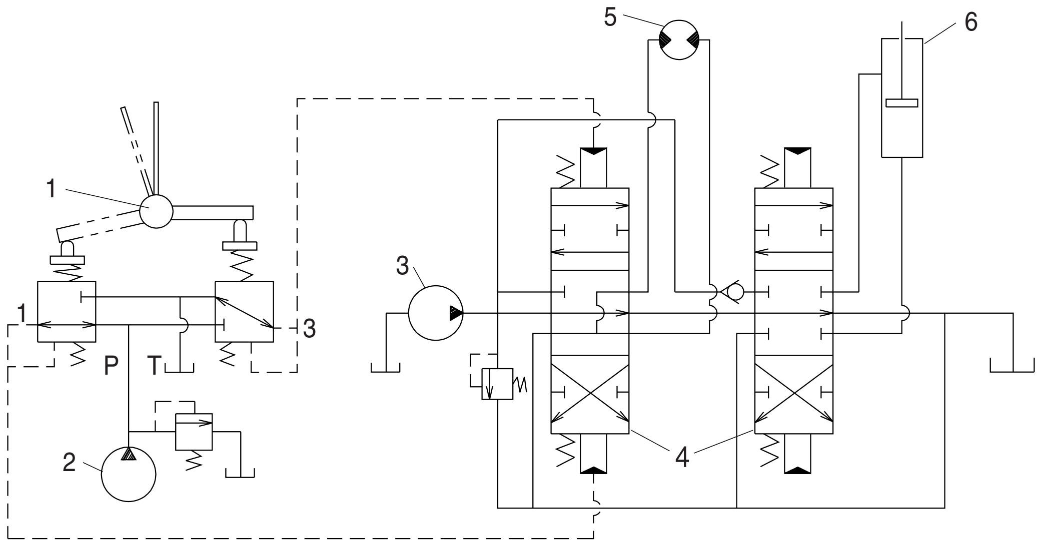
The spring (7) works on the case (1) and spring seat (6) and tries to return the push rod (9) to the zero-displacement position irrespective of the output pressure, securing its resetting to the center position.

This also has the effect of a reaction spring to give appropriate control feeling to the operator.

3) OPERATION

The operation of the pilot valve will be described on the basis of the hydraulic circuit diagram shown below and the attached operation explanation drawing.

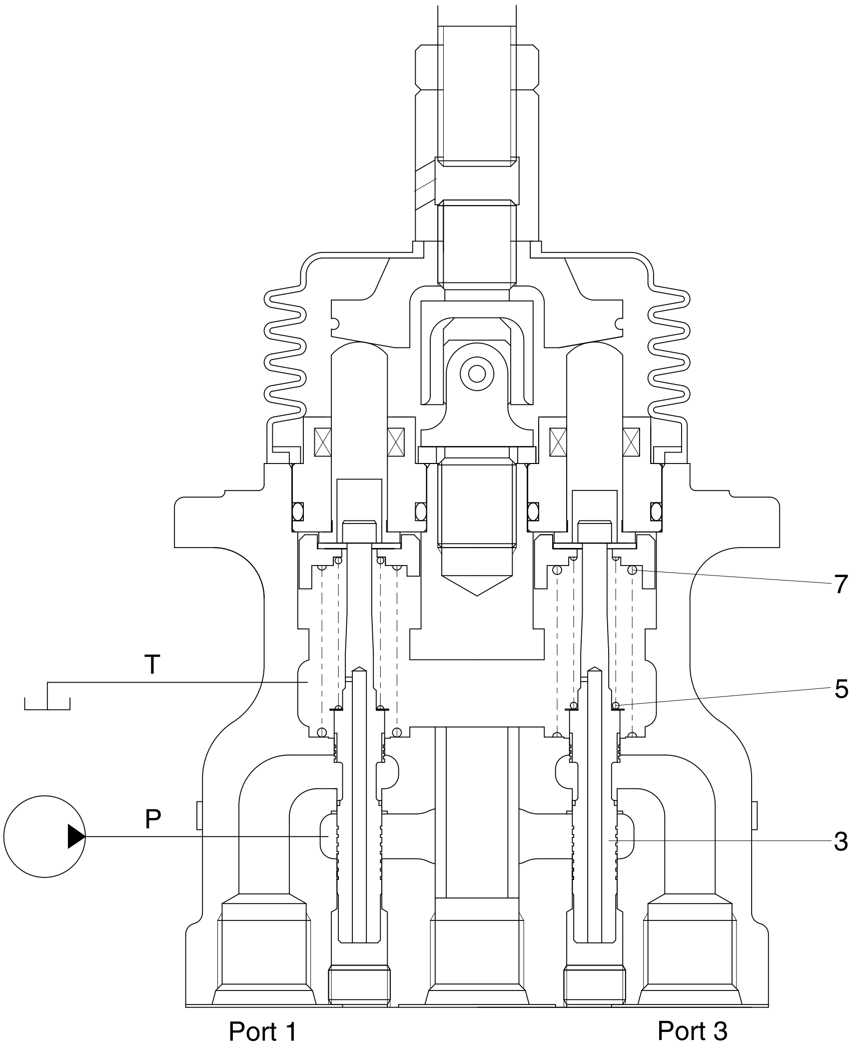
The diagram shown below is the typical application example of the pilot valve.



2-70

1	Pilot valve	3	Main pump	5	Hydraulic motor
2	Pilot pump	4	Main control valve	6	Hydraulic cylinder

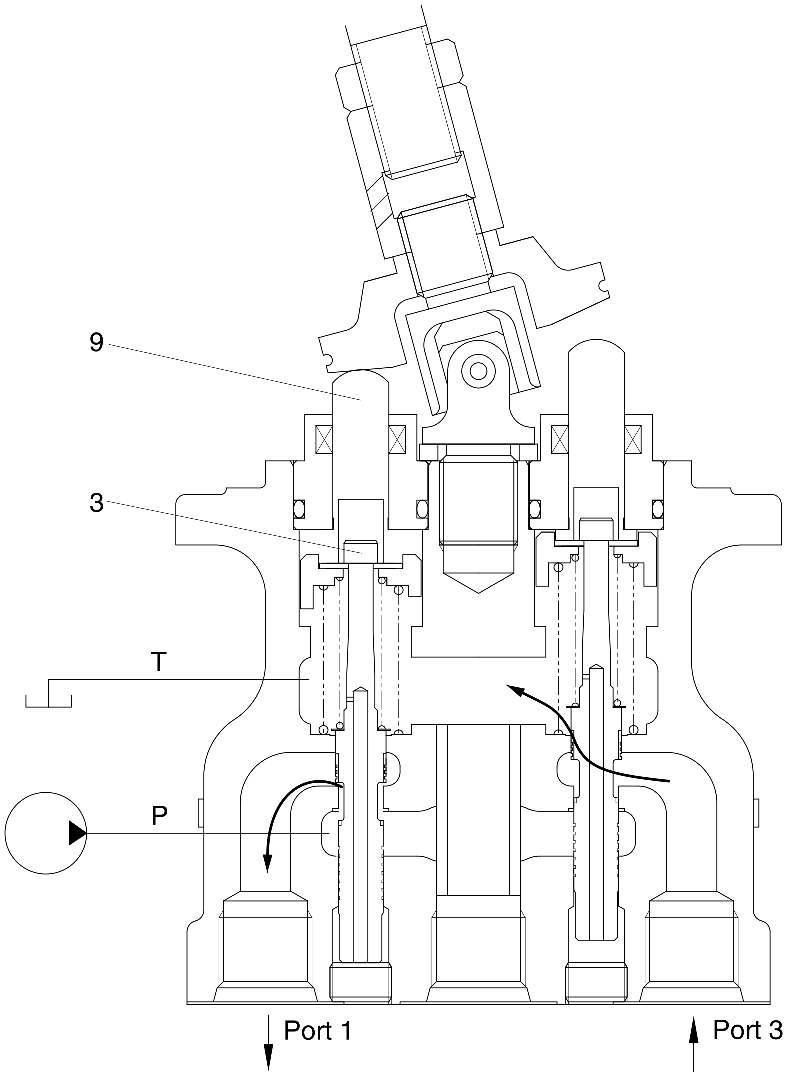
(1) Case where handle is in neutral position



300L2RL03

The force of the spring (5) that determines the output pressure of the pilot valve is not applied to the spool (3). Therefore, the spool is pushed up by the spring (7) to the position of port (1, 3) in the operation explanation drawing. Then, since the output port is connected to tank port T only, the output port pressure becomes equal to tank pressure.

(2) Case where handle is tilted

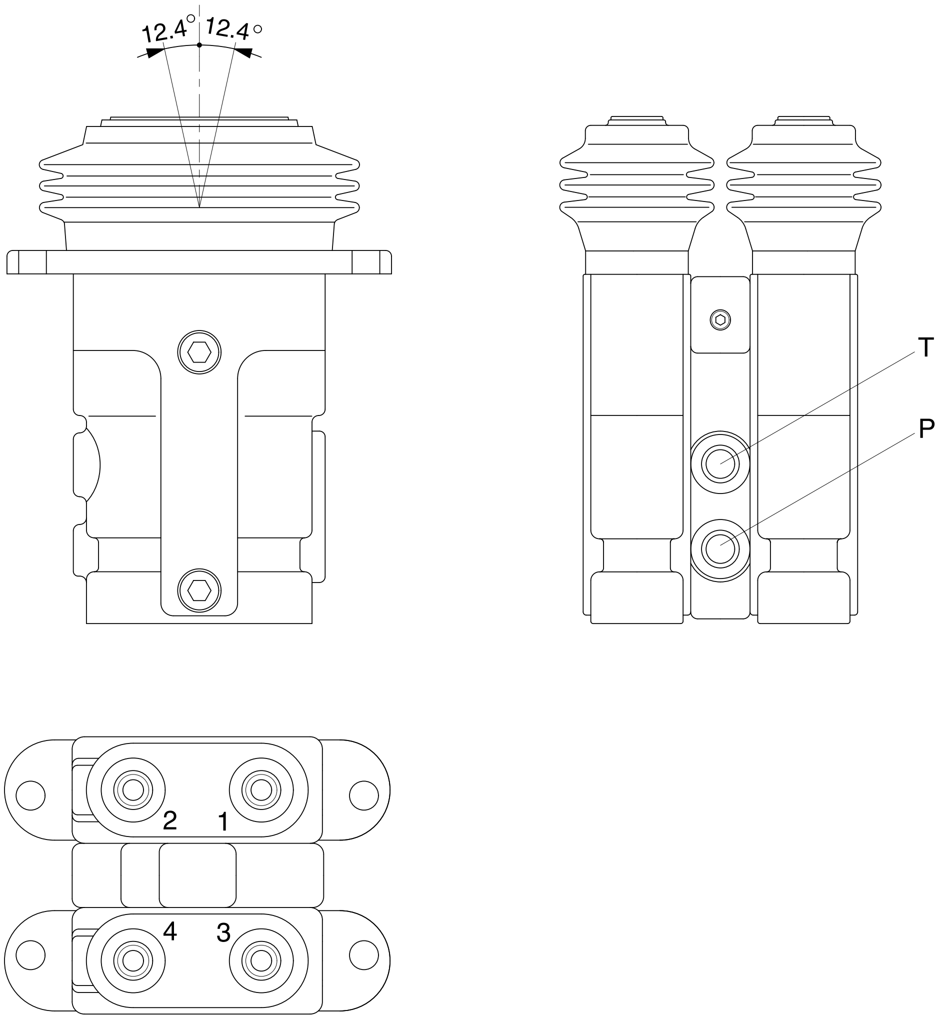


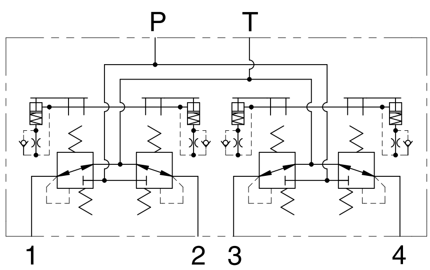
When the push rod (9) is stroked, the spool (3) moves downwards.
Then port P is connected with port (1) and the oil supplied from the pilot pump flows through port (1) to generate the pressure.
When the pressure at port (1) increases to the value corresponding to the spring force set by tilting the handle, the hydraulic pressure force balances with the spring force. If the pressure at port (1) increases higher than the set pressure, port P is disconnected from port (1) and port T is connected with port (1). If it decreases lower than the set pressure, port P is connected with port (1) and port T is disconnected from port 1.
In this manner the secondary pressure is kept at the constant value.
Besides, in some type, when the handle is tilted more than a certain angle, the upper end of the spool contacts with the inside bottom of the push rod and the output pressure is left to be connected with port P.

GROUP 6 RCV PEDAL

1. STRUCTURE

The casing (spacer) has the oil inlet port P (primary pressure), and the oil outlet port T (tank). In addition the secondary pressure is taken out through ports 1, 2, 3 and 4 provided at the bottom face.





Hydraulic circuit

Port	Port	Port size
P	Pilot oil inlet port	PF 1/4
T	Pilot oil return port	
1	Travel (LH, Forward)	
2	Travel (LH, Backward)	
3	Travel (RH, Forward)	
4	Travel (RH, Backward)	

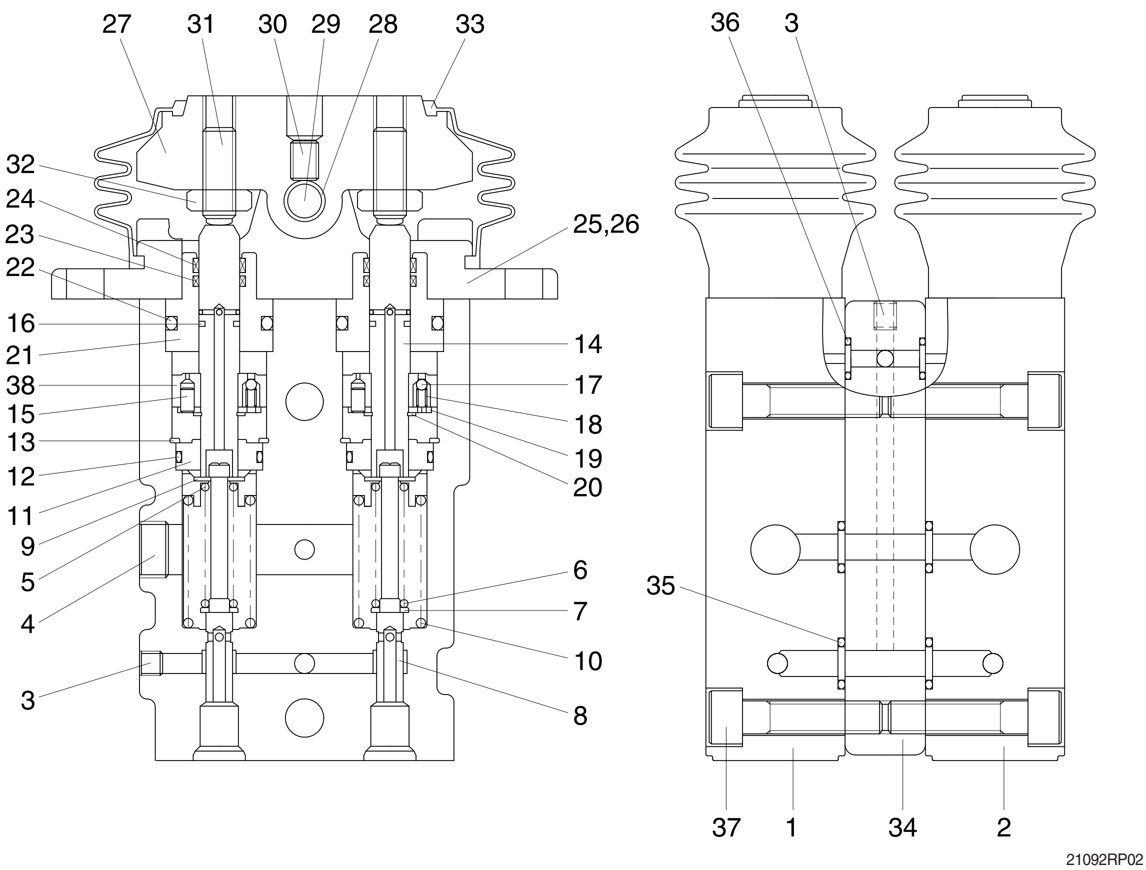
21092RP01

CROSS SECTION

The construction of the RCV pedal is shown in the below drawing. The casing has vertical holes in which reducing valves are assembled.

The pressure reducing section is composed of the spool (8), spring (6) for setting secondary pressure, return spring (10), stopper (9), and spring seat (7). The spring for setting the secondary pressure has been generally so preset that the secondary pressure is 5 to 19 kgf/cm^2 (depending on the type). The spool is pushed against the push rod (14) by the return spring.

When the push rod is pushed down by tilting pedal, the spring seat comes down simultaneously and changes setting of the secondary pressure spring.



1	Body(1)	14	Push rod	27	Cam
2	Body(2)	15	Spring pin	28	Bushing
3	Plug	16	Seal	29	Cam shaft
4	Plug	17	Steel ball	30	Set screw
5	Spring seat	18	Spring	31	Set screw
6	Spring	19	Plate	32	Nut
7	Spring seat	20	Snap ring	33	Bellows
8	Spool	21	Plug	34	Space
9	Stopper	22	O-ring	35	O-ring
10	Spring	23	Rod seal	36	O-ring
11	Rod guide	24	Dust seal	37	Socket bolt
12	O-ring	25	Cover	38	Piston
13	Snap ring	26	Socket bolt		

2. FUNCTION

1) FUNDAMENTAL FUNCTIONS

The pilot valve is a valve controls the spool stroke, direction, etc of a main control valve. This function is carried out by providing the spring at one end of the main control valve spool and applying the output pressure (secondary pressure) of the pilot valve to the other end.

For this function to be carried out satisfactorily, the pilot valve is composed of the following elements.

(1) Inlet port (P) where oil is supplied from hydraulic pump.

(2) Output port (1, 2, 3 & 4) to apply pressure supplied from inlet port to ends of control valve spools.

(3) Tank port (T) necessary to control the above output pressure.

(4) Spool to connect output port to inlet port tank port.

(5) Mechanical means to control output pressure, including springs that work on the above spools.

2) FUNCTIONS OF MAJOR SECTIONS

The functions of the spool (8) are to receive the supply oil pressure from the hydraulic pump at its port P, and to change over oil paths to determine whether the pressure oil of port P is led to output ports 1, 2, 3 & 4 or the output spool to determine the output pressure.

The spring (6) works on this spool to determine the output pressure.

The change the deflection of this spring, the push rod (14) is inserted and can slide in the plug (21).

For the purpose of changing the displacement of the push rod through the cam (27) and adjusting nut (32) are provided the pedal that can be tilted in any direction around the fulcrum of the cam (27) center.

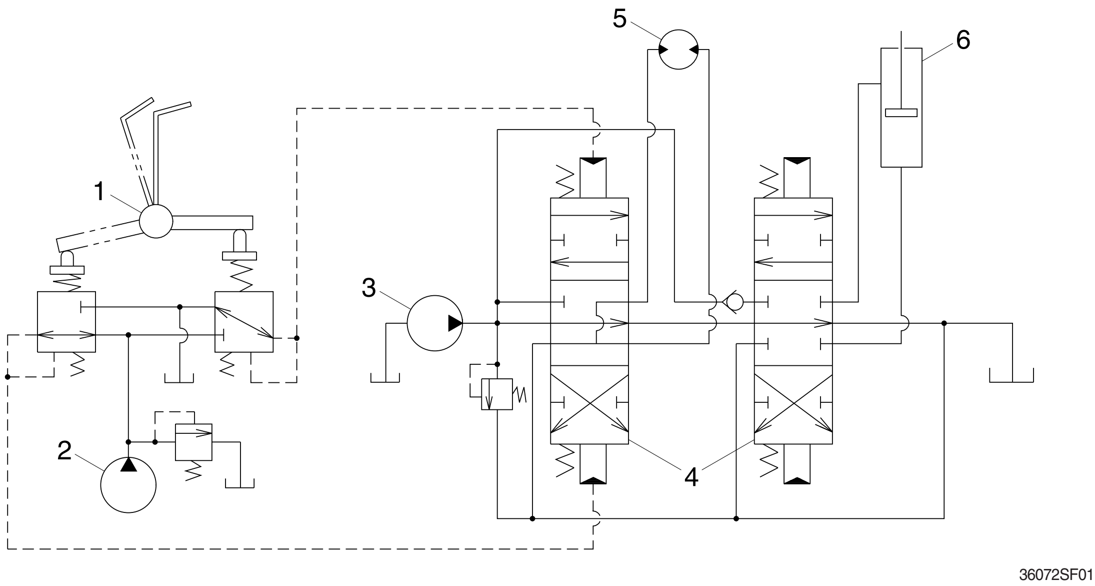
The spring (10) works on the casing (1) and spring seat (7) and tries to return the push rod (14) to the zero-displacement position irrespective of the output pressure, securing its resetting to the center position.

This also has the effect of a reaction spring to give appropriate control feeling to the operator.

3) OPERATION

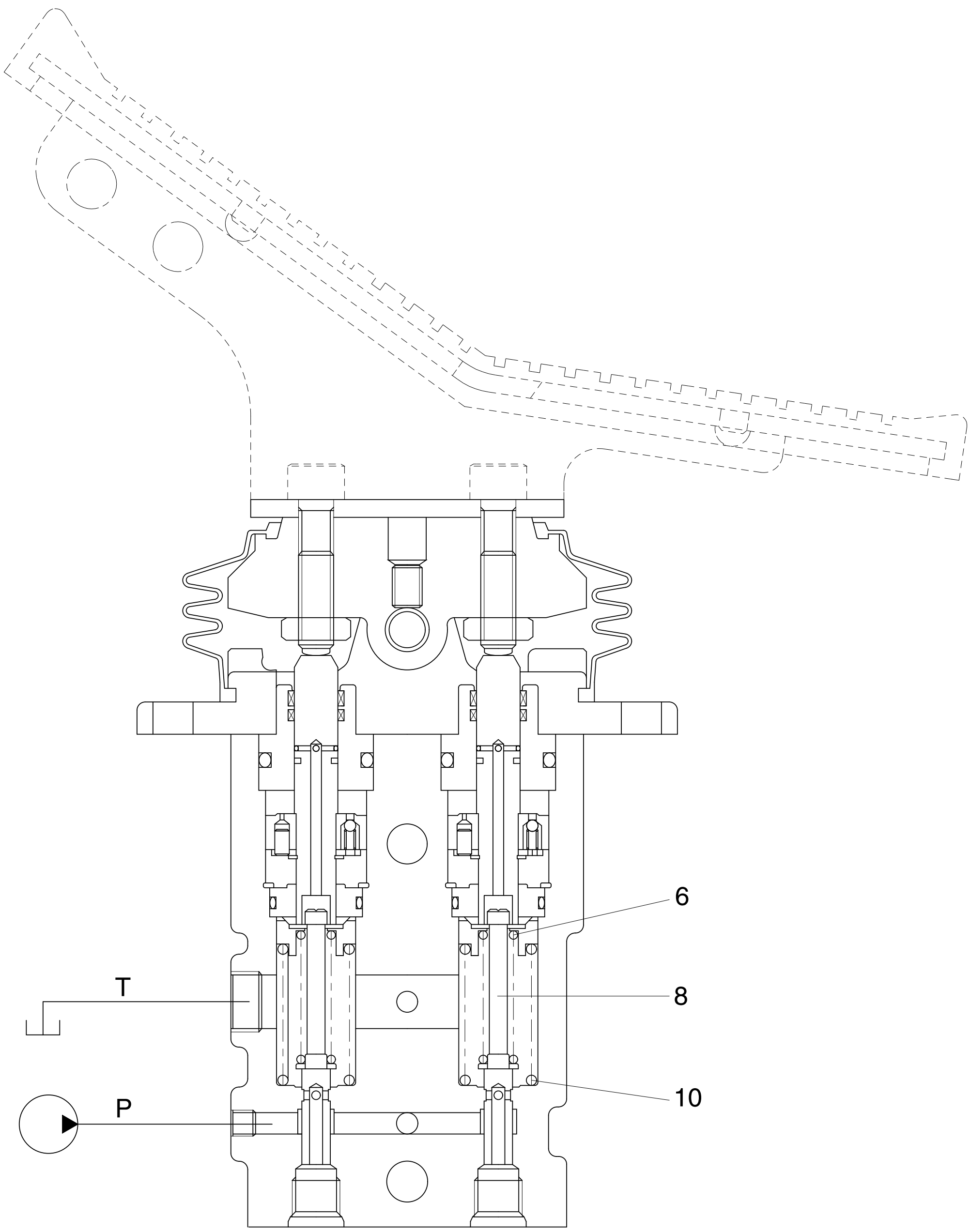
The operation of the pilot valve will be described on the basis of the hydraulic circuit diagram shown below ant the attached operation explanation drawing.

The diagram shown below is the typical application example of the pilot valve.



1	Pilot valve	3	Main pump	5	Hydraulic motor
2	Pilot pump	4	Main control valve	6	Hydraulic cylinder

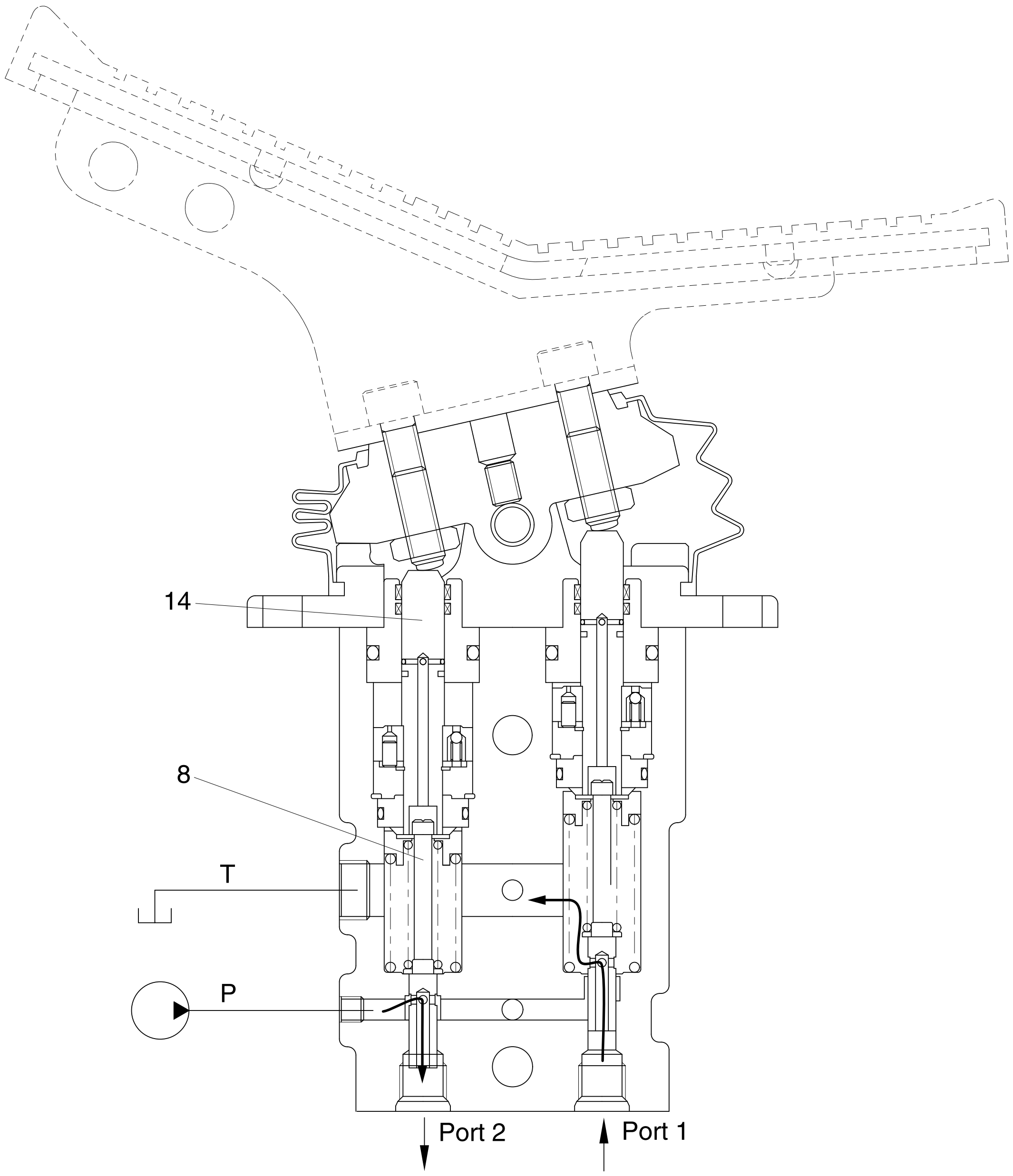
(1) Case where pedal is in neutral position



21092RP03

The force of the spring (6) that determines the output pressure of the pilot valve is not applied to the spool (8). Therefore, the spool is pushed up by the spring (10) to the position of port 2 in the operation explanation drawing. Then, since the output port is connected to tank port T only, the output port pressure becomes equal to tank pressure.

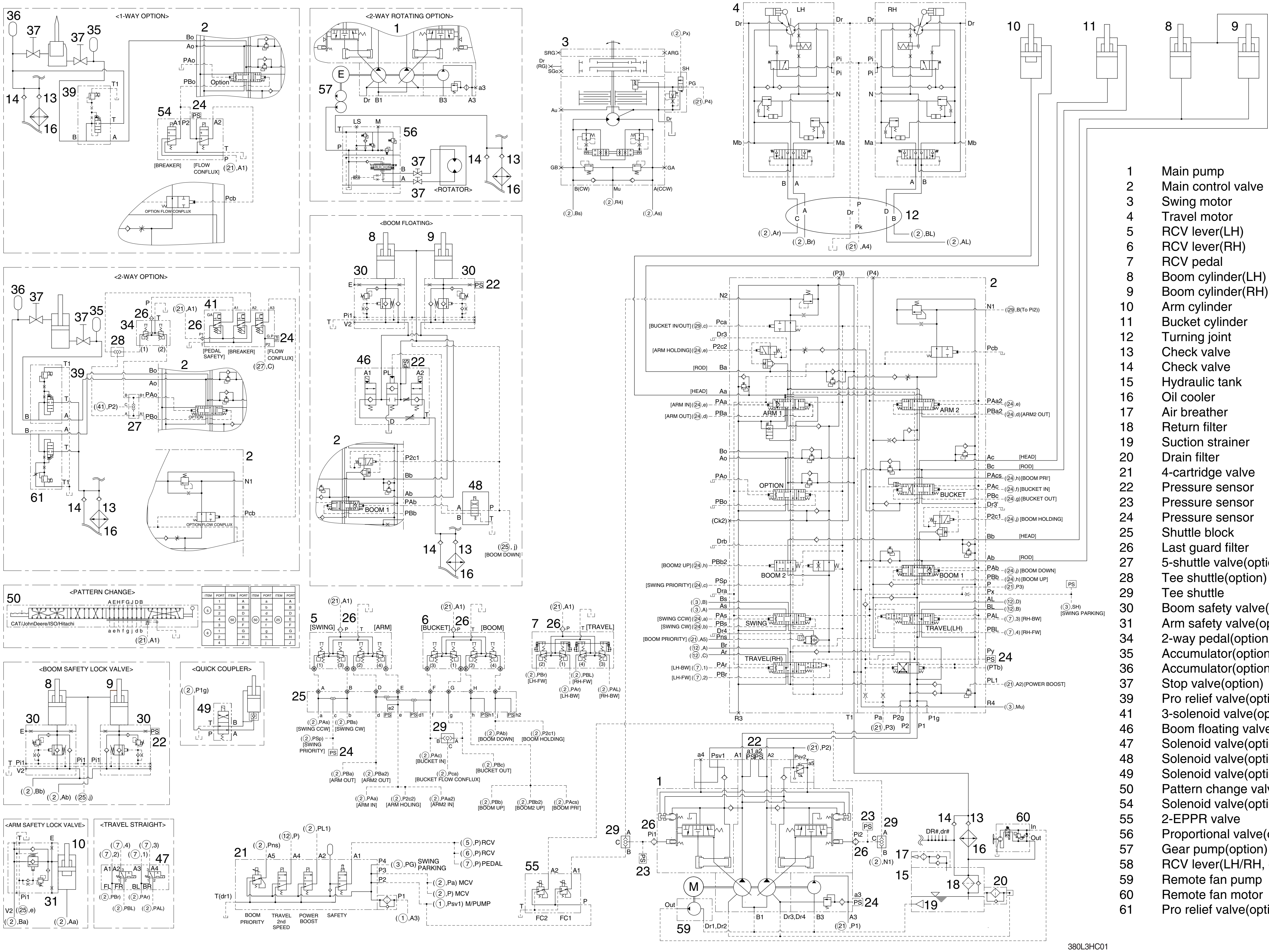
(2) Case where pedal is tilted



When the push rod (14) is stroked, the spool (8) moves downwards.
Then port P is connected with port (2), and the oil supplied from the pilot pump flows through port 1 to generate the pressure.
When the pressure at port (2) increases to the value corresponding to the spring force set by tilting the pedal, the hydraulic pressure force balances with the spring force. If the pressure at port (1) increases higher than the set pressure, port P is disconnected from port (1) and port T is connected with port (2). If it decreases lower than the set pressure, port P is connected with port (2) and port T is disconnected from port (2).
In this manner the secondary pressure is kept at the constant value.
Besides, in some type, when the pedal is tilted more than a certain angle, the upper end of the spool contacts with inside bottom of the push rod and the output pressure is left to be connected with port P.

SECTION 3 HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

GROUP 1 HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT

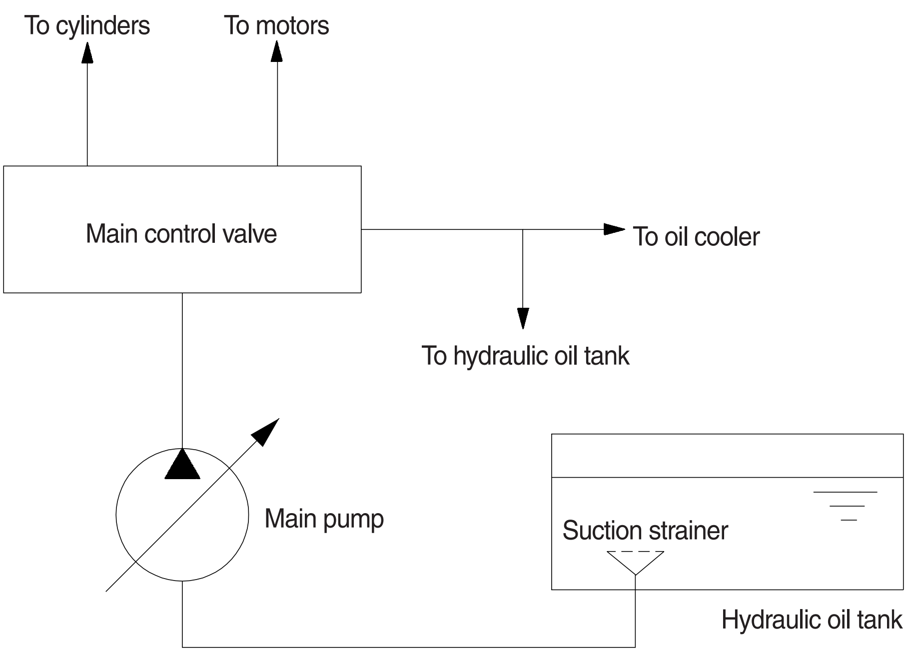


1 Main pump
2 Main control valve
3 Swing motor
4 Travel motor
5 RCV lever(LH)
6 RCV lever(RH)
7 RCV pedal
8 Boom cylinder(LH)
9 Boom cylinder(RH)
10 Arm cylinder
11 Bucket cylinder
12 Turning joint
13 Check valve
14 Check valve
15 Hydraulic tank
16 Oil cooler
17 Air breather
18 Return filter
19 Suction strainer
20 Drain filter
21 4-cartridge valve
22 Pressure sensor
23 Pressure sensor
24 Pressure sensor
25 Shuttle block
26 Last guard filter
27 5-shuttle valve(option)
28 Tee shuttle(option)
29 Tee shuttle
30 Boom safety valve(option)
31 Arm safety valve(option)
34 2-way pedal(option)
35 Accumulator(option)
36 Accumulator(option)
37 Stop valve(option)
39 Pro relief valve(option)
41 3-solenoid valve(option)
46 Boom floating valve(option)
47 Solenoid valve(option)
48 Solenoid valve(option)
49 Solenoid valve(option)
50 Pattern change valve(option)
54 Solenoid valve(option)
55 2-EPPR valve
56 Proportional valve(option)
57 Gear pump(option)
58 RCV lever(LH/RH, option)
59 Remote fan pump
60 Remote fan motor
61 Pro relief valve(option)

GROUP 2 MAIN CIRCUIT

The main hydraulic circuit consists of suction circuit, delivery circuit, return circuit and drain circuit.
The hydraulic system consists of one main pump, one control valve, one swing motor, four cylinders and two travel motors.
The swash plate type variable displacement tandem axial piston pump is used as the main pump and is driven by the engine at ratio 1.0 of engine speed.

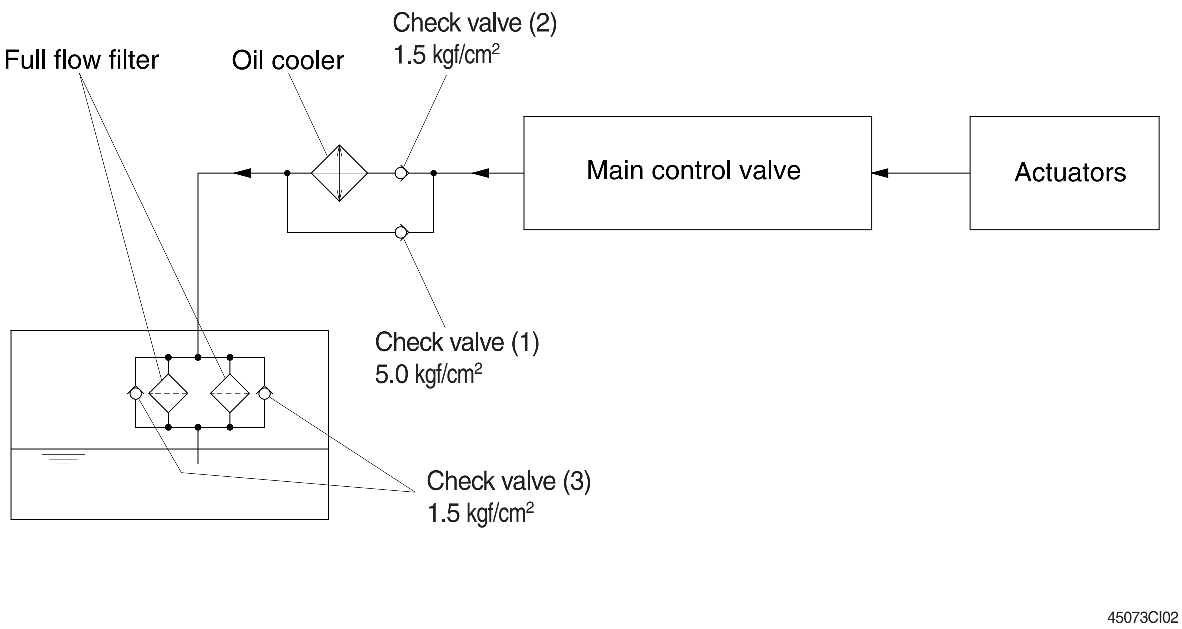
1. SUCTION AND DELIVERY CIRCUIT



3-02

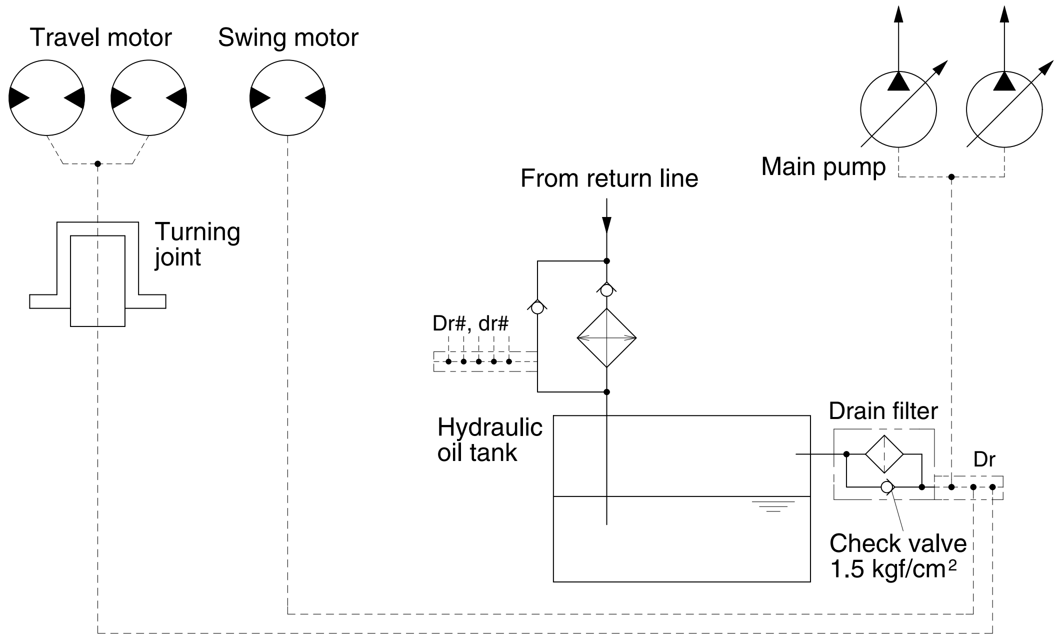
The pumps receive oil from the hydraulic tank through a suction strainer. The discharged oil from the pump flows into the control valve and goes out the tank ports.
The oil discharged from the main pump flows to the actuators through the control valve.
The control valve controls the hydraulic functions.
The return oil from the actuators flows to the hydraulic tank through the control valve and the oil cooler.

2. RETURN CIRCUIT



All oil from each actuator returns to the hydraulic tank through the control valve.
The bypass check valves are provided in the return circuit.
The setting pressure of bypass check valves are 1.5 kgf/cm^2 (21 psi) and 5.0 kgf/cm^2 (71 psi). Usually, oil returns to the hydraulic tank from the left side of control valve through oil cooler.
When oil temperature is low, viscosity becomes higher and flow resistance increases when passing through the oil cooler. The oil pressure exceeds 5.0 kgf/cm^2 (71 psi), the oil returns directly to the hydraulic tank, resulting in the oil temperature being raised quickly at an appropriate level.
When the oil cooler is clogged, the oil returns directly to the hydraulic tank through bypass check valve (1).
The full-flow filter and bypass relief valve are provided in the hydraulic tank.
The oil from right and left side of control valve is combined and filtered by the return filter. A bypass relief valve is provided in the full-flow filter.
When the filter element is clogged, the bypass relief valve opens at 1.5 kgf/cm^2 (21 psi) differential pressure.

3. DRAIN CIRCUIT



140L3CI03

Besides internal leaks from the motors and main pump, the oil for lubrication circulates. These oil have to be fed to the hydraulic tank passing through drain filter and full flow filter in the hydraulic tank. When the drain oil pressure exceed 1.5 kgf/cm^2 (21 psi), the oil returns to the hydraulic tank directly.

1) TRAVEL MOTOR DRAIN CIRCUIT

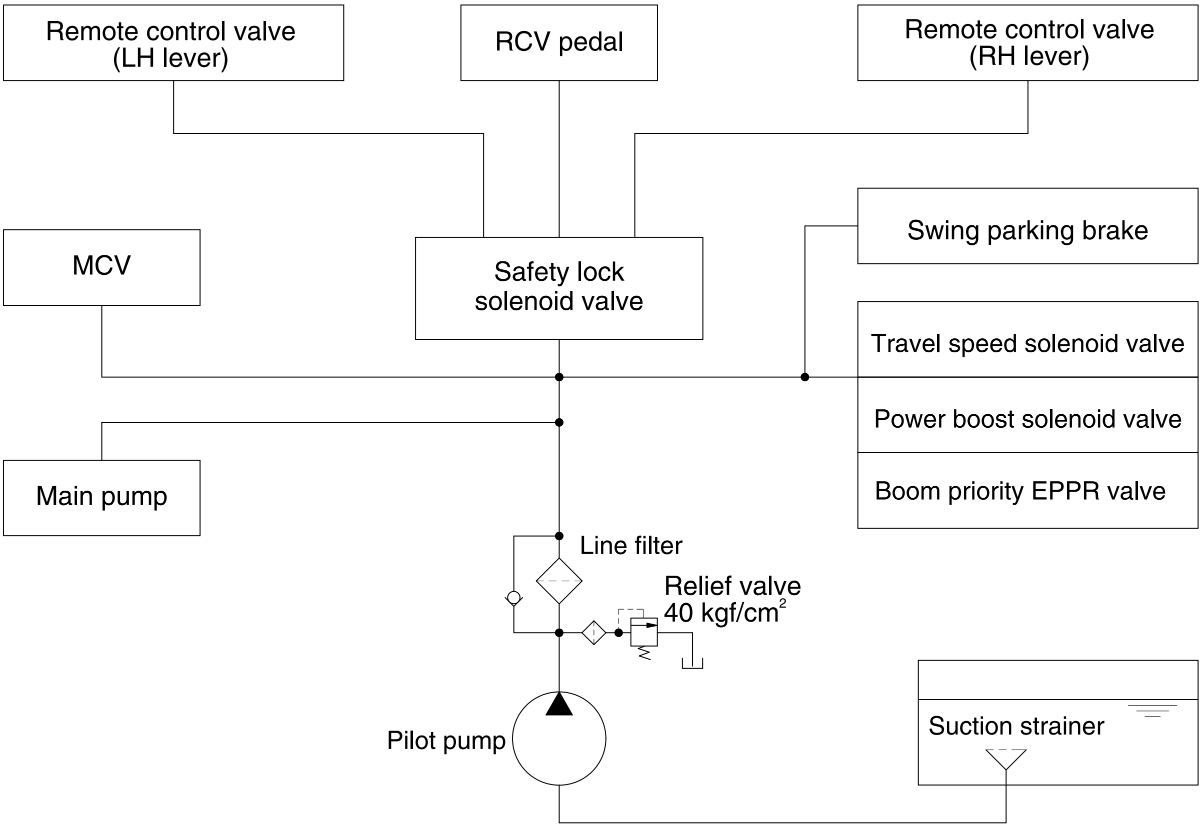
Oil leaking from the right and left travel motors comes out of the drain ports provided in the respective motor casing and join with each other. These oils pass through the turning joint and return to the hydraulic tank after being filtered by full flow filter in the hydranlic tank.

2) SWING MOTOR DRAIN CIRCUIT

Oil leaking from the swing motor come out and return to the hydraulic tank passing through a drain filter.

3) MAIN PUMP DRAIN CIRCUIT

Oil leaking from main pump come out and return to the hydraulic tank passing through drain filter.



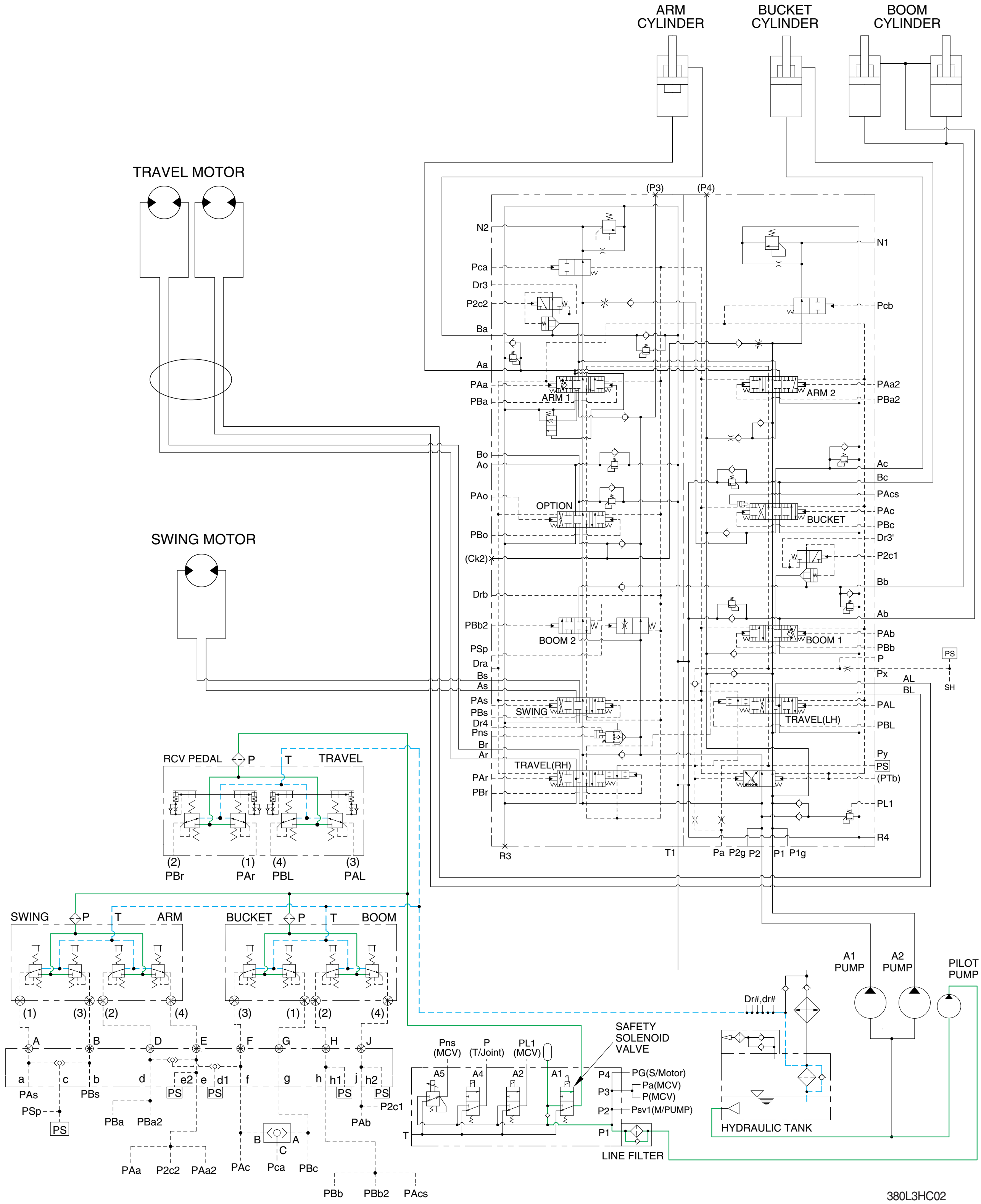
430L3CI01

The pilot circuit consists of suction circuit, delivery circuit and return circuit.

The pilot pump is provided with relief valve, receives the oil from the hydraulic tank through the suction strainer.

The discharged oil from the pilot pump flows to the remote control valve through line filter, EPPR valve, solenoid valve assemblies, swing parking brake, main control valve and safety lock solenoid valve.

1. SUCTION, DELIVERY AND RETURN CIRCUIT

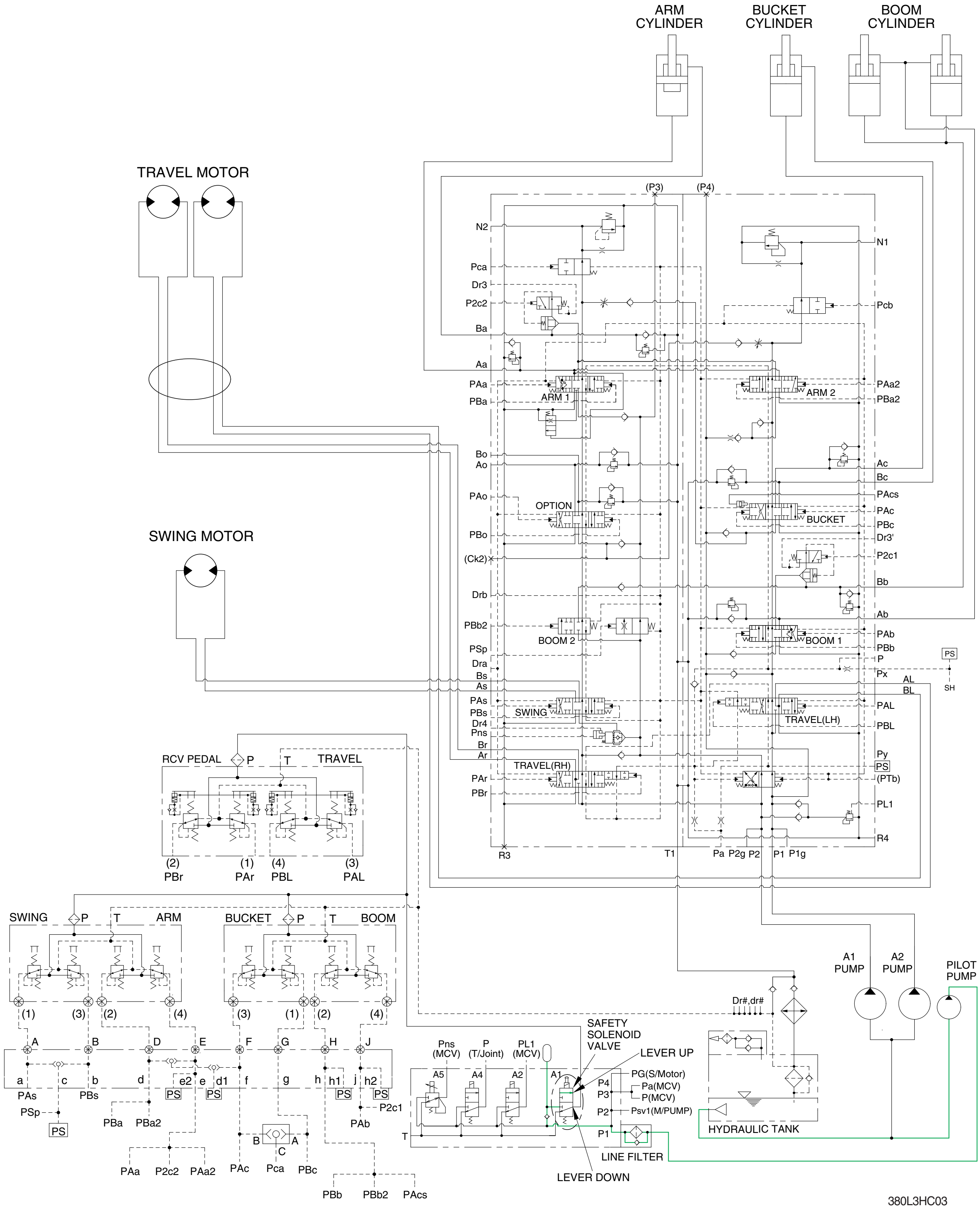


The pilot pump receive oil from the hydraulic tank. The discharged oil from the pilot pump flows to the safety solenoid valve through the line filter. The oil is filtered by the line filter. The pilot relief valve is provided in the pilot pump for limiting the pilot circuit pressure.

The oil filtered by line filter flows remote control valve through safety solenoid valve.

The return oil from remote control valve returned to hydraulic tank.

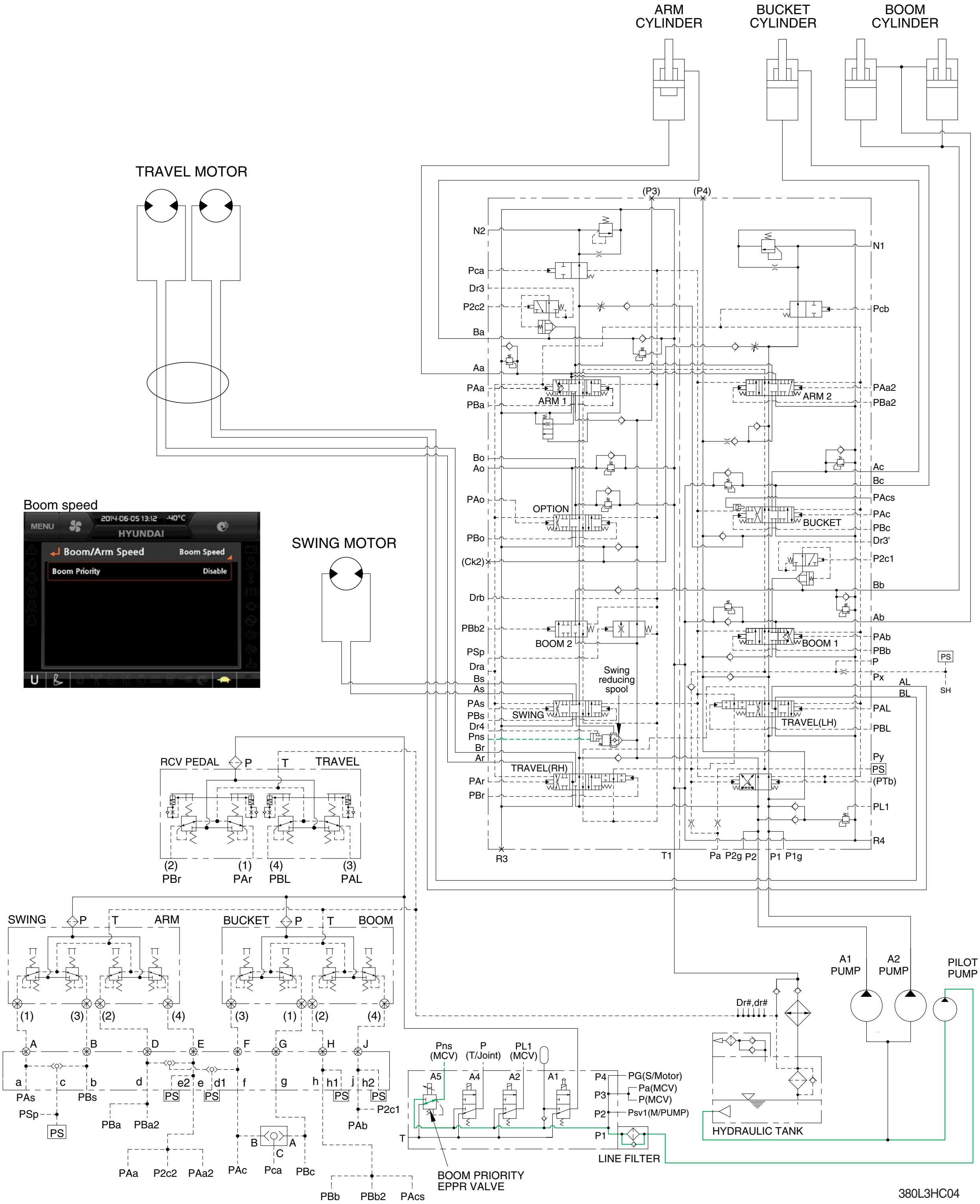
2. SAFETY SOLENOID VALVE (SAFETY LEVER)



When the lever of the safety solenoid valve is moved upward, oil flows into the remote control valve through solenoid valve and line filter.

When the lever of the safety solenoid valve moved downward, oil does not flows into the remote control valve, because of blocked by the spool.

3. BOOM PRIORITY SYSTEM



When carrying out the combined operation of swing and boom up, the boom up operating speed is lowered then normal operation.

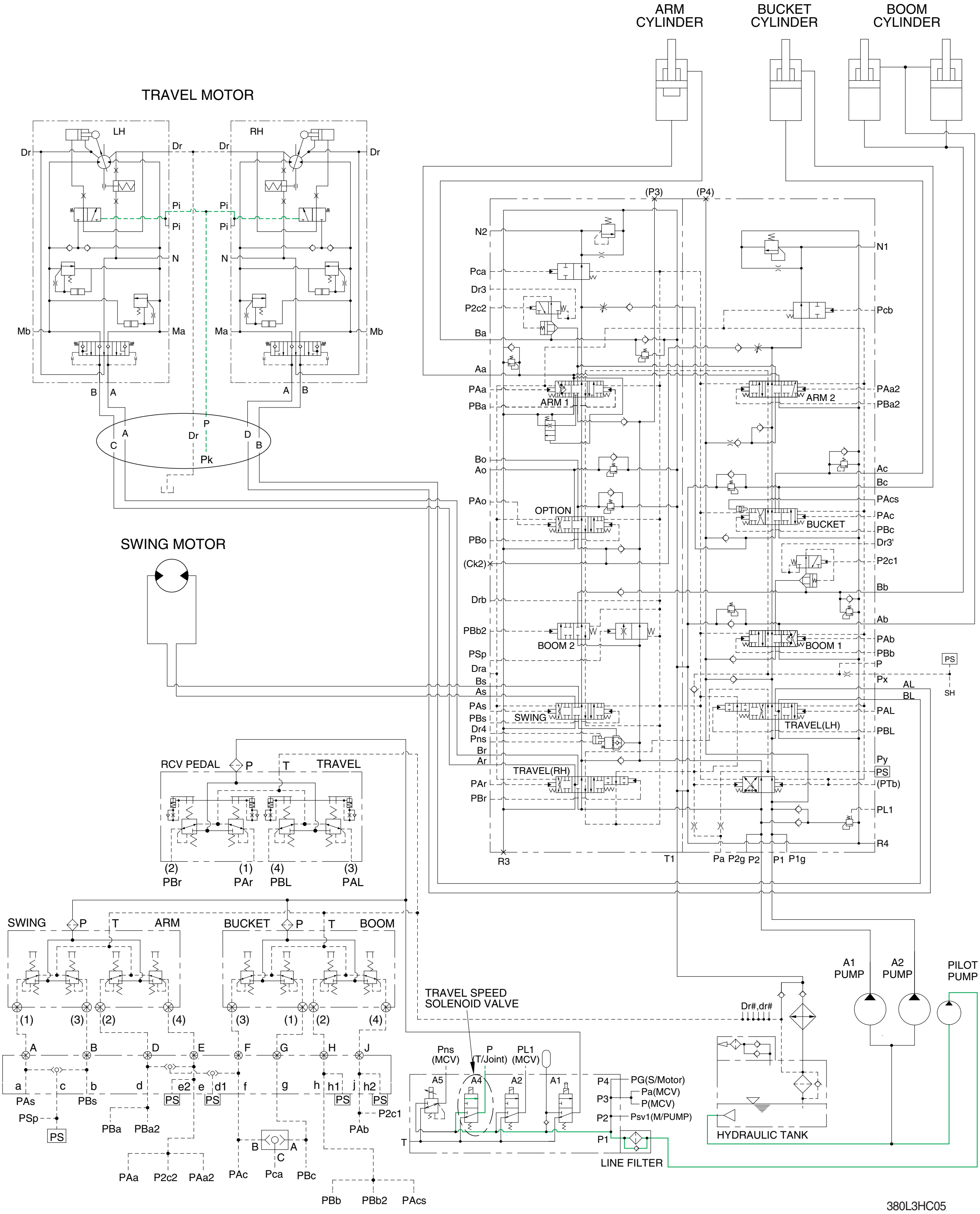
To increase working efficiency, swing speed reducing system is used.

The pilot oil from pilot pump flow into Pns port in main control valve through boom EPPR valve. Pns oil pressure moves swing reducing spool to upper position and oil flow rate to the swing motor decreased.

Then, the boom up speed is increased. This is called the boom priority system.

The boom up speed can be adjusted by the cluster. Refer to page 3-20 of the operator's manual.

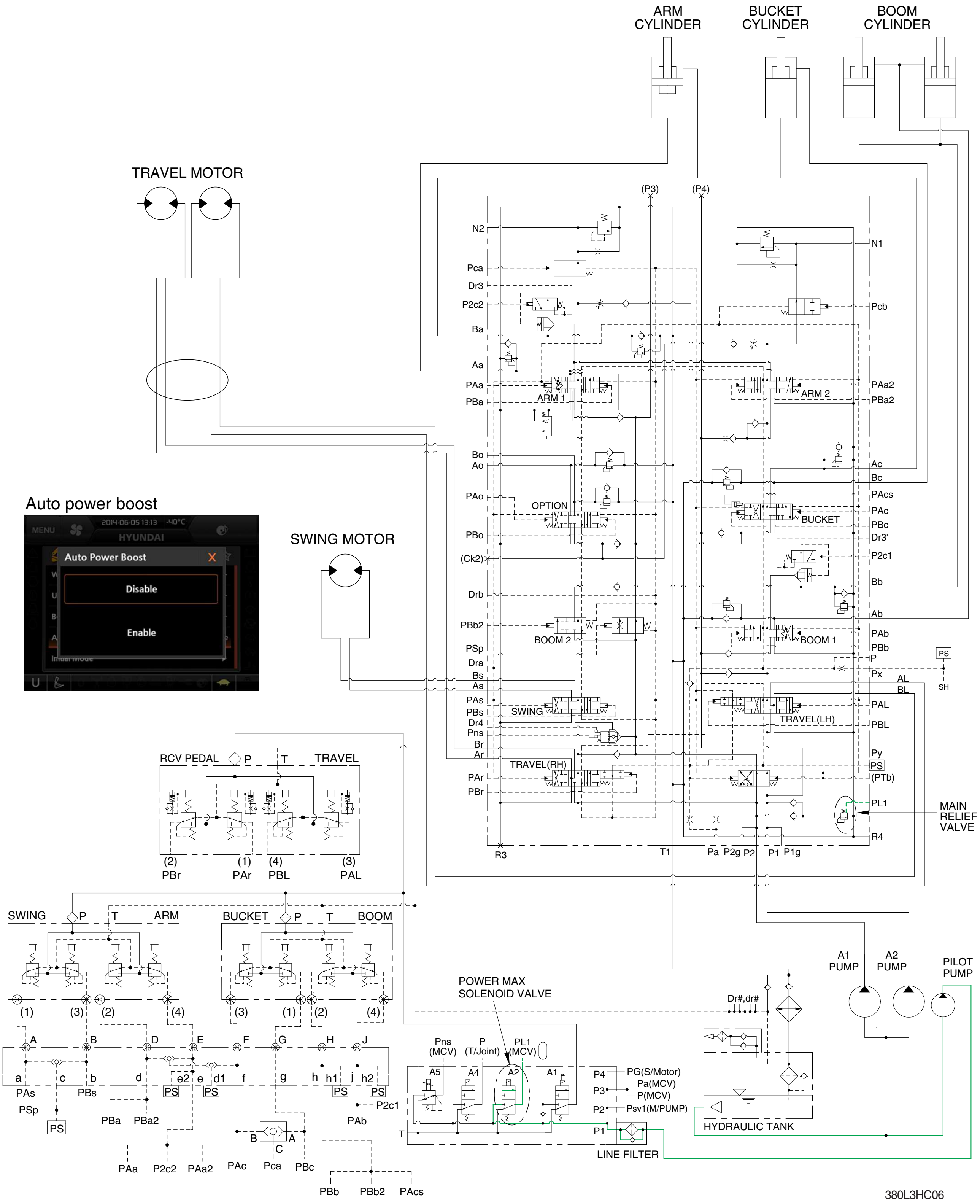
4. TRAVEL SPEED CONTROL SYSTEM



When the travel speed solenoid valve was placed in the Hi position, the pressure oil from pilot pump through line filter flows to port Pi of travel speed change over valve, and the control piston is pushed left (LH) and right (RH), thus minimizing the displacement.

When the travel speed solenoid valve was placed in the Lo position, the oil of Pi port return to the tank and the control piston is returned, thus maximizing the displacement.

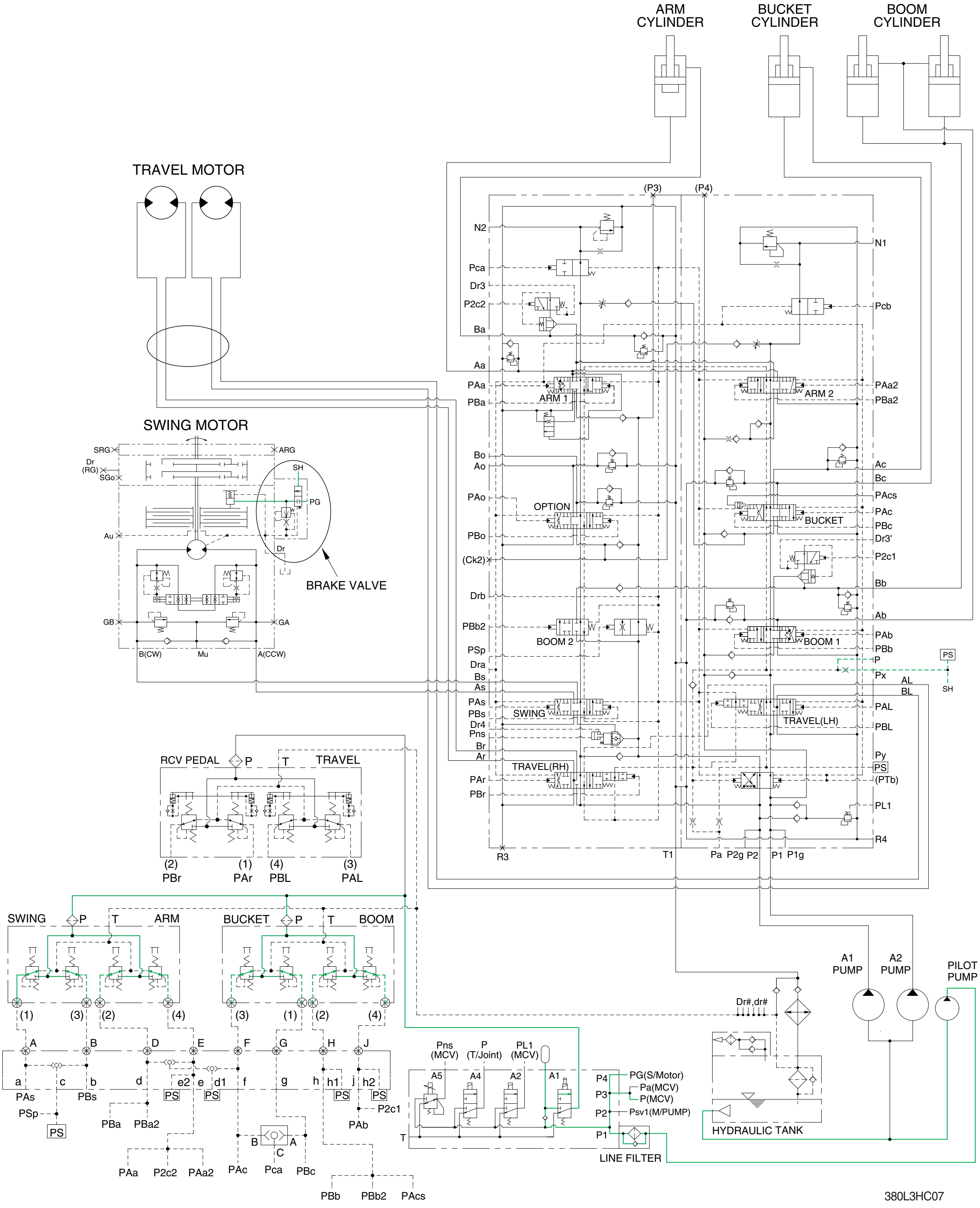
5. MAIN RELIEF PRESSURE CHANGE CIRCUIT



When the power max switch on the left control lever is pushed ON, the power max solenoid valve is actuated, the discharged oil from the pilot pump into PL1 port of the main relief valve of main control valve ; Then the setting pressure of the main control valve is raises from 330 kgf/cm^2 to 360 kgf/cm^2 for increasing the digging power. And even when press continuously, it is canceled after 8 seconds.

When the auto power boost function is selected to enable on the cluster, the pressure of the main relief valve is automatically increased to 360 kgf/cm^2 as working condition by the MCU. It is also operated max 8 seconds.

6. SWING PARKING BRAKE RELEASE

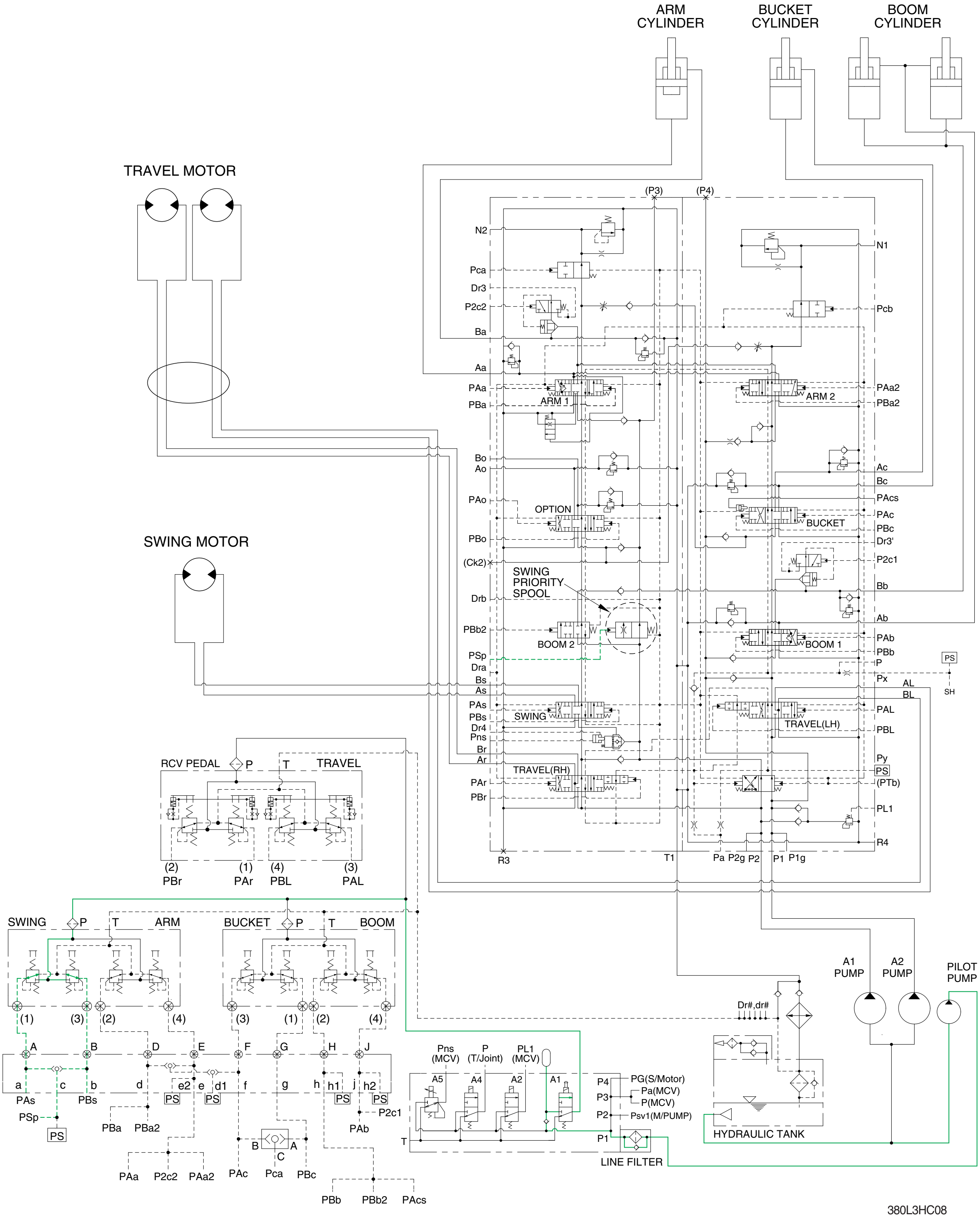


When one of the RCV lever (except travel lever) is tilted, the pilot oil flows into SH port through main control valve.

This pressure moves spool of the time delay valve so, discharged oil from pilot valve flows to swing motor PG port. This pressure is applied to swing motor disc, thus the brake is released.

When all of the RCV lever are set in the neutral position, oil in the swing motor disc cylinder is drained, thus the brake is applied.

7. SWING PRIORITY SYSTEM

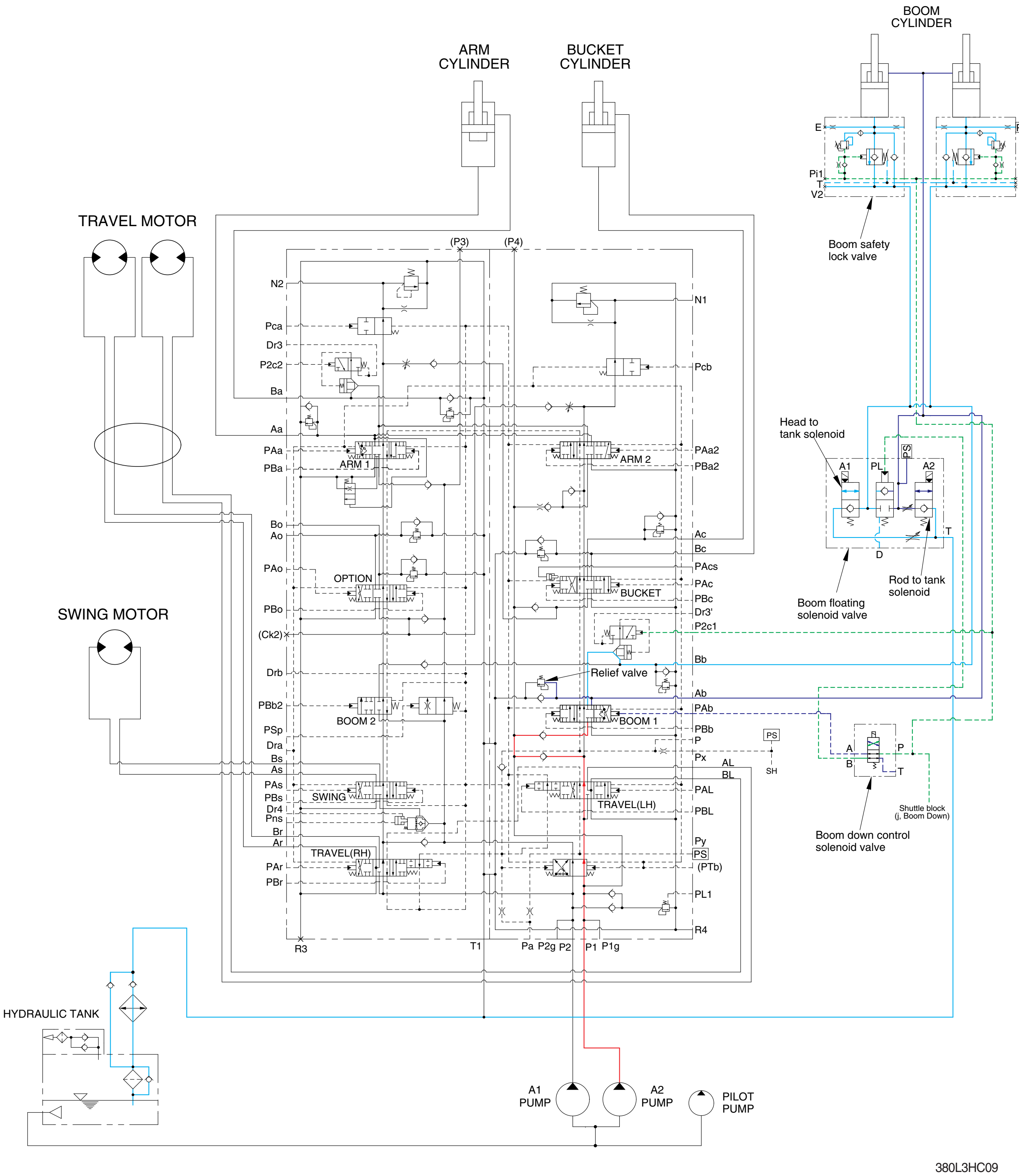


When carrying out the combined operation of swing and arm of the left control valve, the swing speed can be lowered than operating speed of arm.

PSp pressure from the swing shuttle block change the swing priority spool and decreases the oil flow rate to the next section to make the swing operation more preferential.

This is called the swing priority system. For details, refer to page 2-35.

8. BOOM FLOATING SYSTEM



Smooth and convenient boom movement is accomplished by only arm control lever operation.

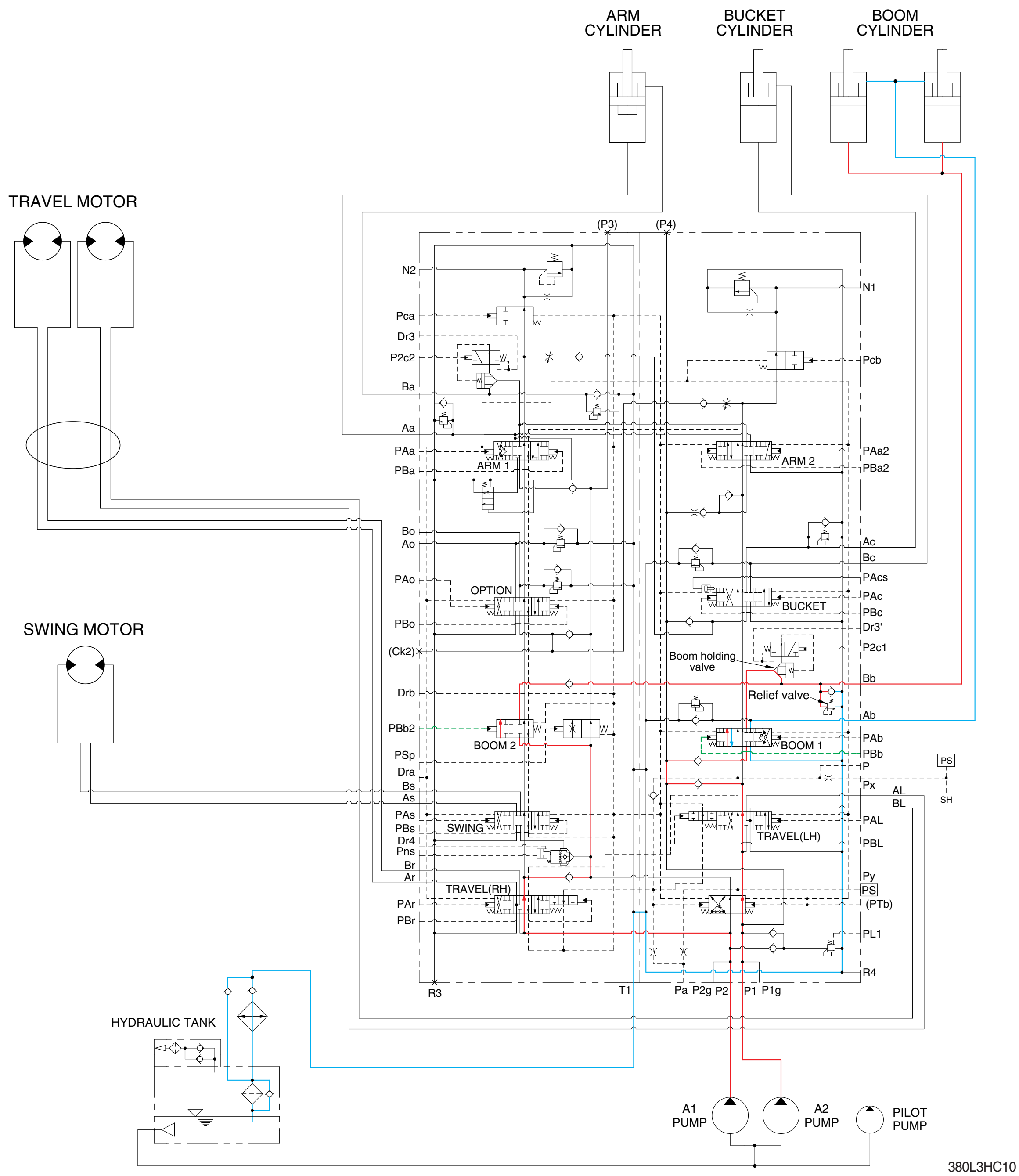
The boom floating solenoid values are equipped in the rod and head of boom cylinder that are controlled to act as floating mode.

"Head to tank solenoid" are active. So the hydraulic oil of head goes to tank, and floating is accomplished. In the mode, boom down cut-off solenoid is active so that boom down pilot pressure is cut.

For more details, refer to page 5-13.

GROUP 4 SINGLE OPERATION

1. BOOM UP OPERATION



When the RH control lever is pulled back, the boom spools in the main control valve are moved to the up position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the A1 and A2 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the large chamber of boom cylinders.

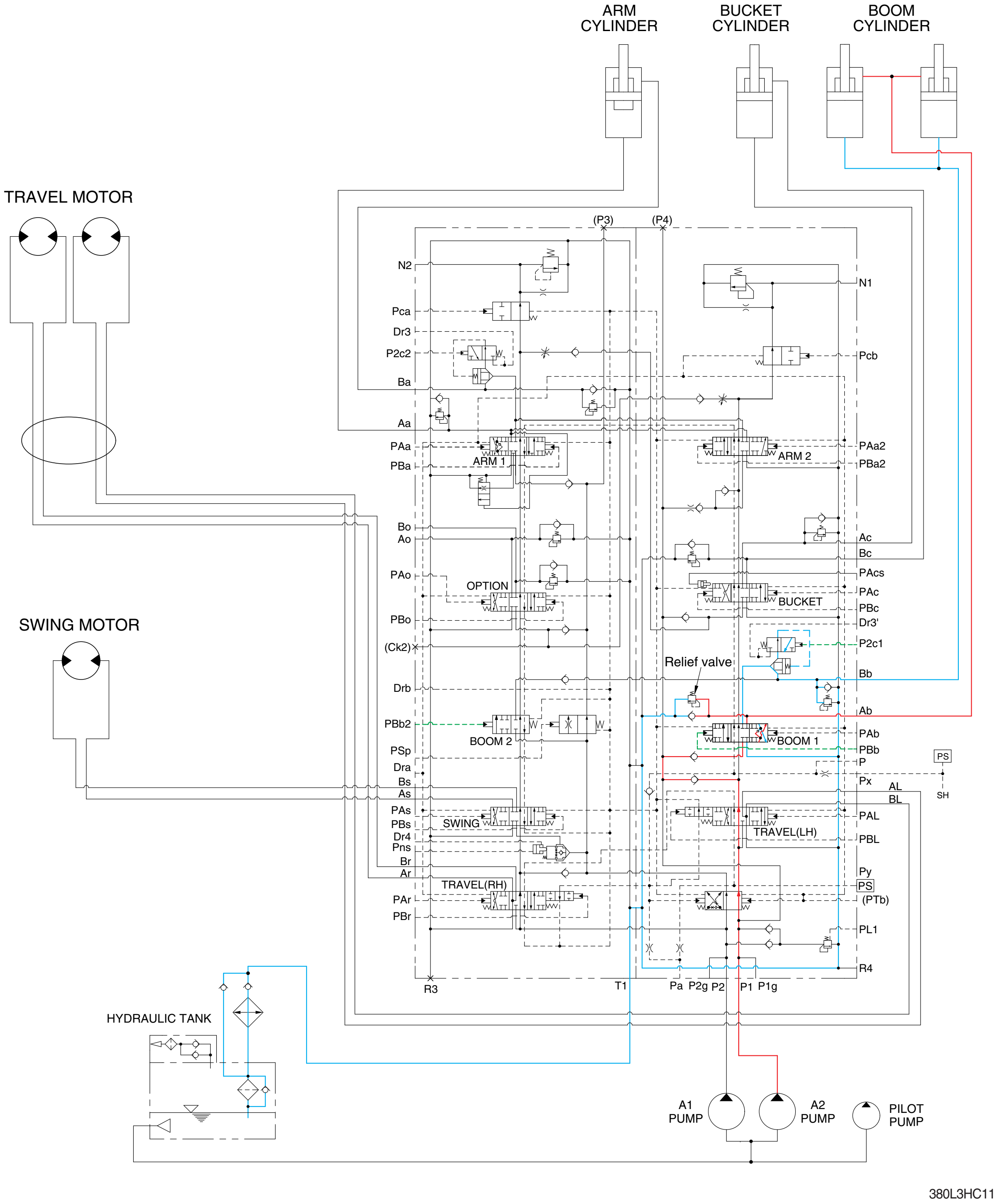
At the same time, the oil from the small chamber of boom cylinders returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the boom 1 spool in the main control valve. When this happens, the boom goes up.

The excessive pressure in the boom cylinder bottom end circuit is prevented by relief valve.

When the boom is up and the control lever is returned to neutral position, the circuit for the holding pressure at the bottom end of the boom cylinder is closed by the boom holding valve.

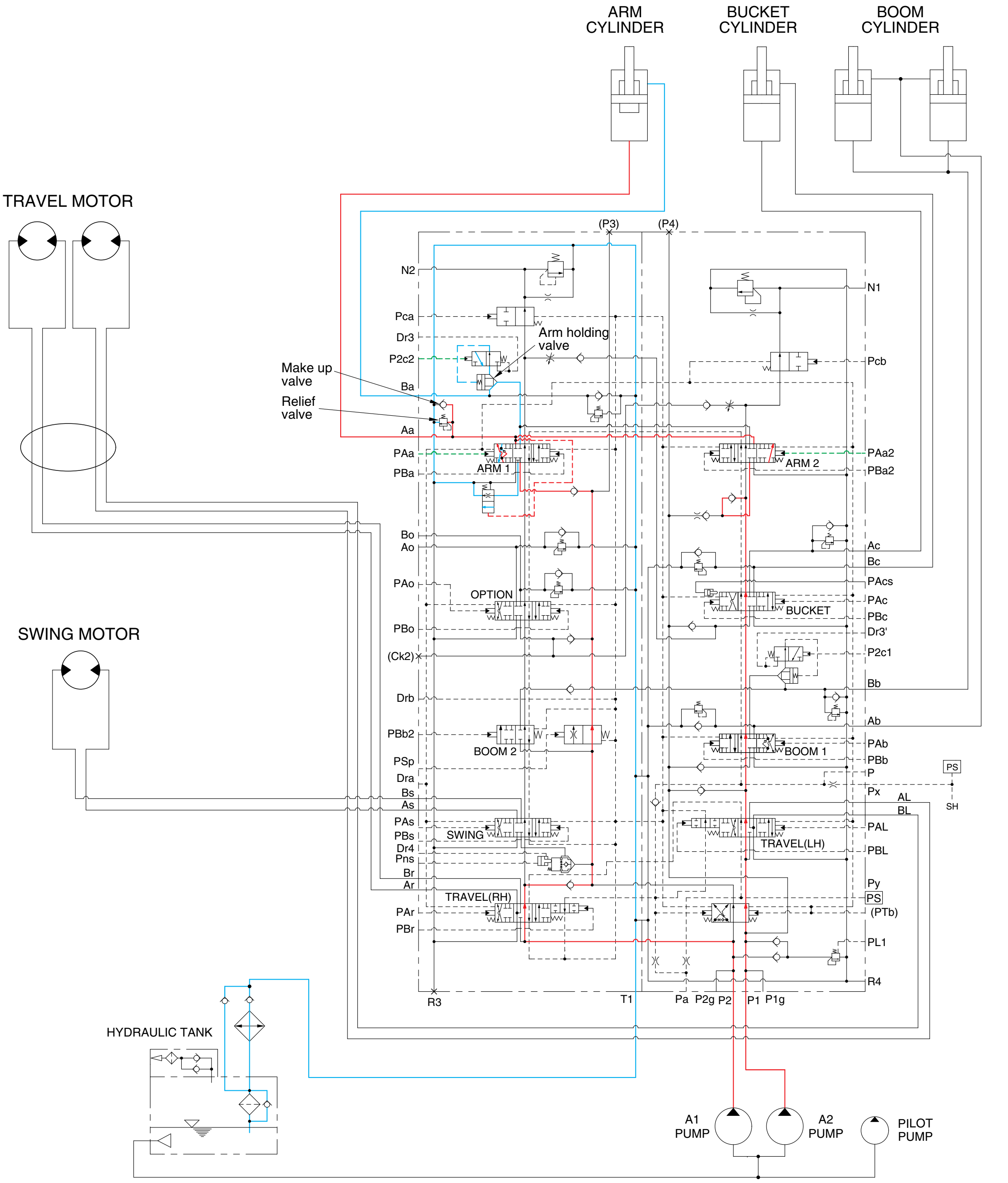
This prevents the hydraulic drift of boom cylinder.

2. BOOM DOWN OPERATION



When the RH control lever is pushed forward, the boom 1 spool in the main control valve is moved to the down position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.
The oil from the A2 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the small chamber of boom cylinders. At the same time, the oil from the large chamber of boom cylinders returns to the hydraulic tank through the boom 1 spool in the main control valve.
When the down speed of boom is faster, the oil returned from the large chamber of boom cylinder combines with the oil from the A2 pump, and flows into the small chamber of the boom cylinder.
This prevents cylinder cavitation by the negative pressure when the A2 pump flow can not match the boom down speed. And the excessive pressure in the boom cylinder rod end circuit is prevented by the relief valve.

3. ARM IN OPERATION



380L3HC12

When the LH control lever is pulled back, the arm spools in the main control valve are moved the to roll in position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

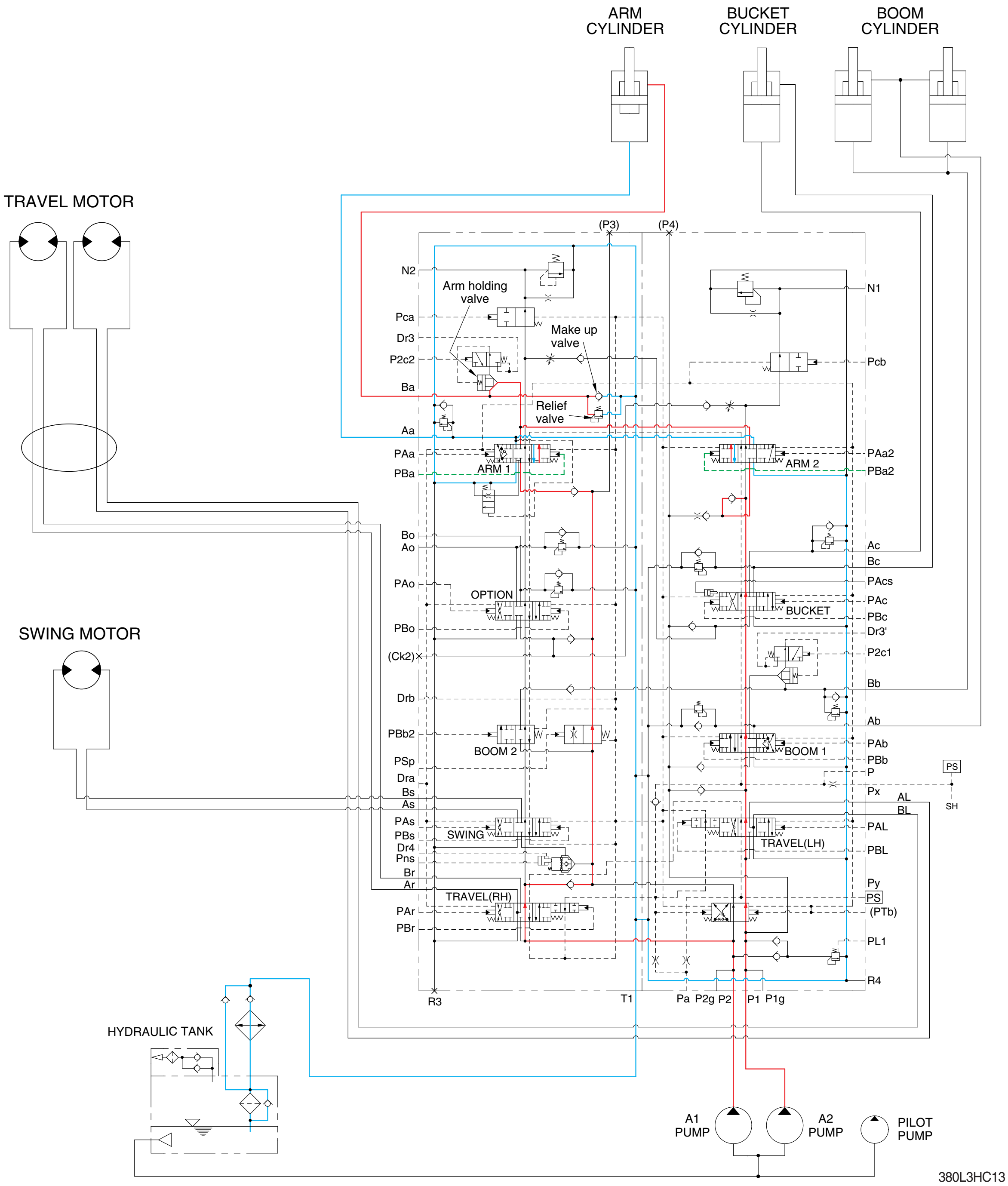
The oil from the A1 and A2 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the large chamber of arm cylinder.

At the same time, the oil from small chamber of arm cylinder returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the arm 1 spool in the main control valve. When this happens, the arm rolls in.

The excessive pressure in the arm cylinder head side is prevented by relief valve.

The cavitation which will happen to the head side of the arm cylinder is also prevented by the make-up valve in the main control valve.

4. ARM OUT OPERATION



When the LH control lever is pushed forward, the arm spools in the main control valve are moved to the roll out position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the A1 and A2 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the small chamber of arm cylinder.

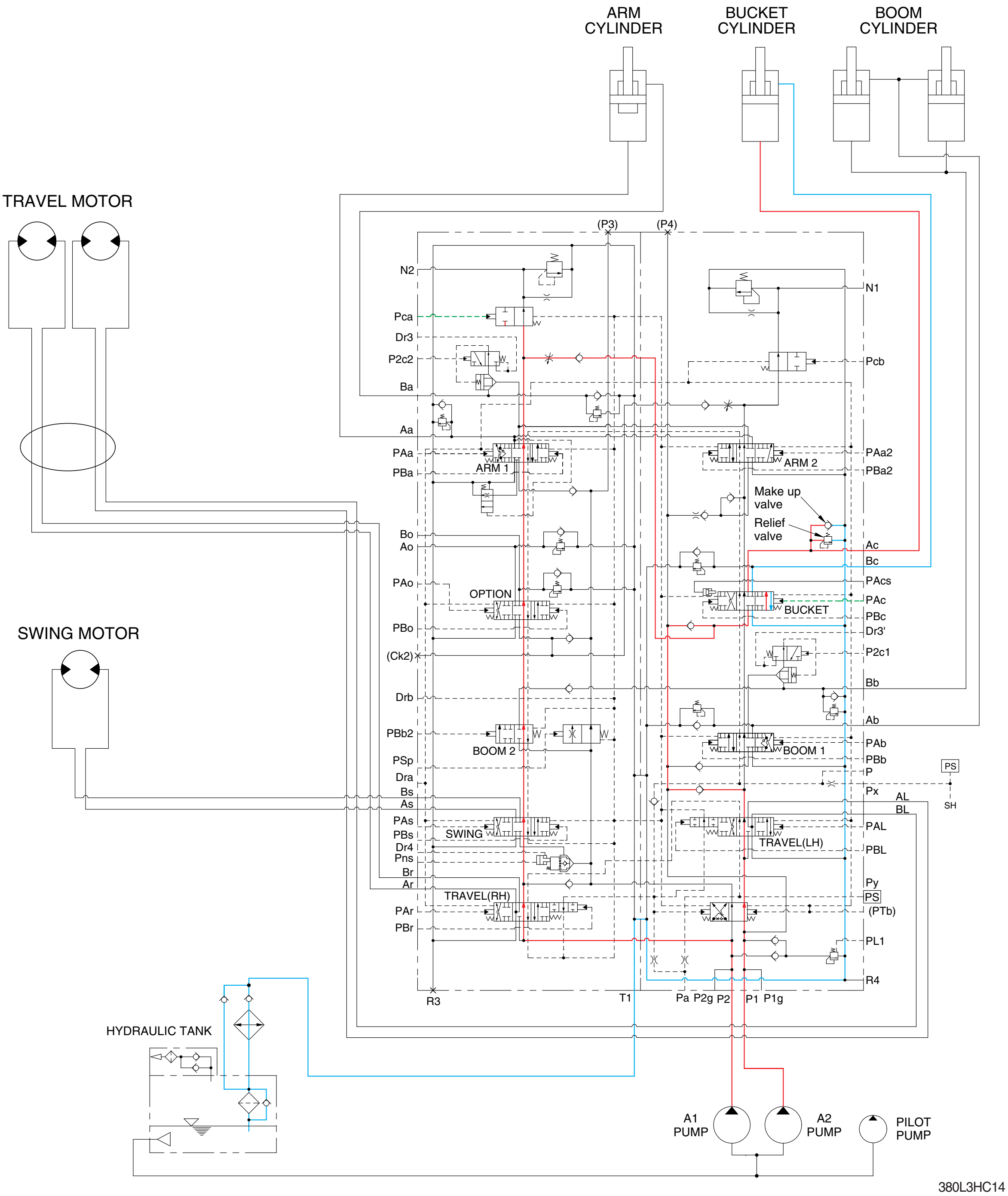
At the same time, the oil from the large chamber of arm cylinder returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the arm spools in the main control valve. When this happens, the arm rolls out.

The excessive pressure in the arm cylinder rod side is prevented by relief valve.

When the arm is roll out and the control lever is returned to neutral position, the circuit for the holding pressure at the rod side of the arm cylinder is closed by the arm holding valve.

The cavitation which will happen to the rod side of the arm cylinder is also prevented by the make-up valve in the main control valve.

5. BUCKET IN OPERATION



When the RH control lever is pulled left, the bucket spool in the main control valve is moved to the roll in position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

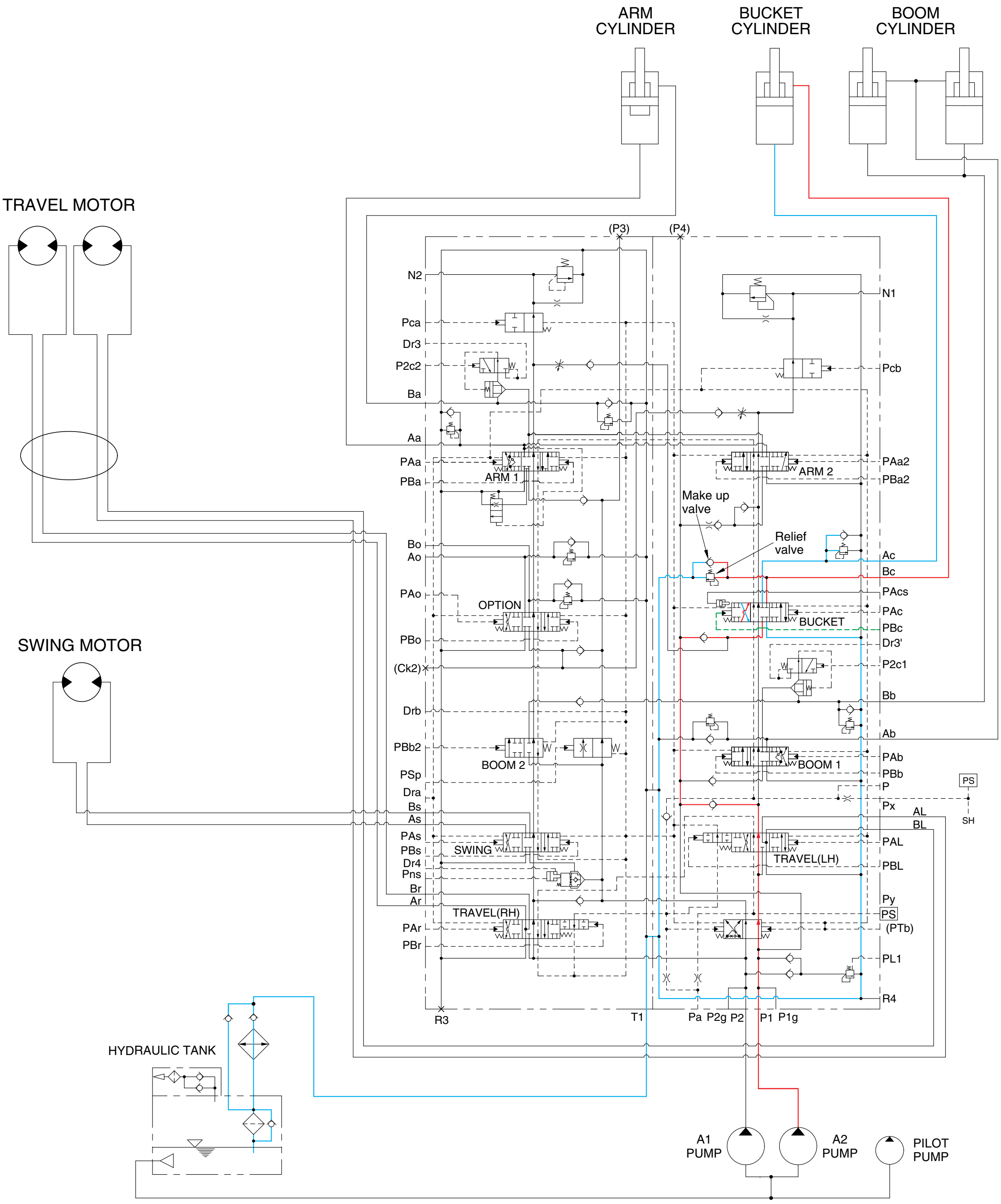
The oil from the A2 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the large chamber of bucket cylinder. The oil from the A1 pump flows into the large chamber of bucket cylinder through confluence oil passage in the main control valve by bypass cut pilot pressure (pca).

At the same time, the oil from the small chamber of bucket cylinder returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the bucket spool in the main control valve. When this happens, the bucket rolls in.

The excessive pressure in the bucket cylinder head side is prevented by relief valve.

The cavitation which will happen to the head side of the bucket cylinder is also prevented by the make-up valve in the main control valve.

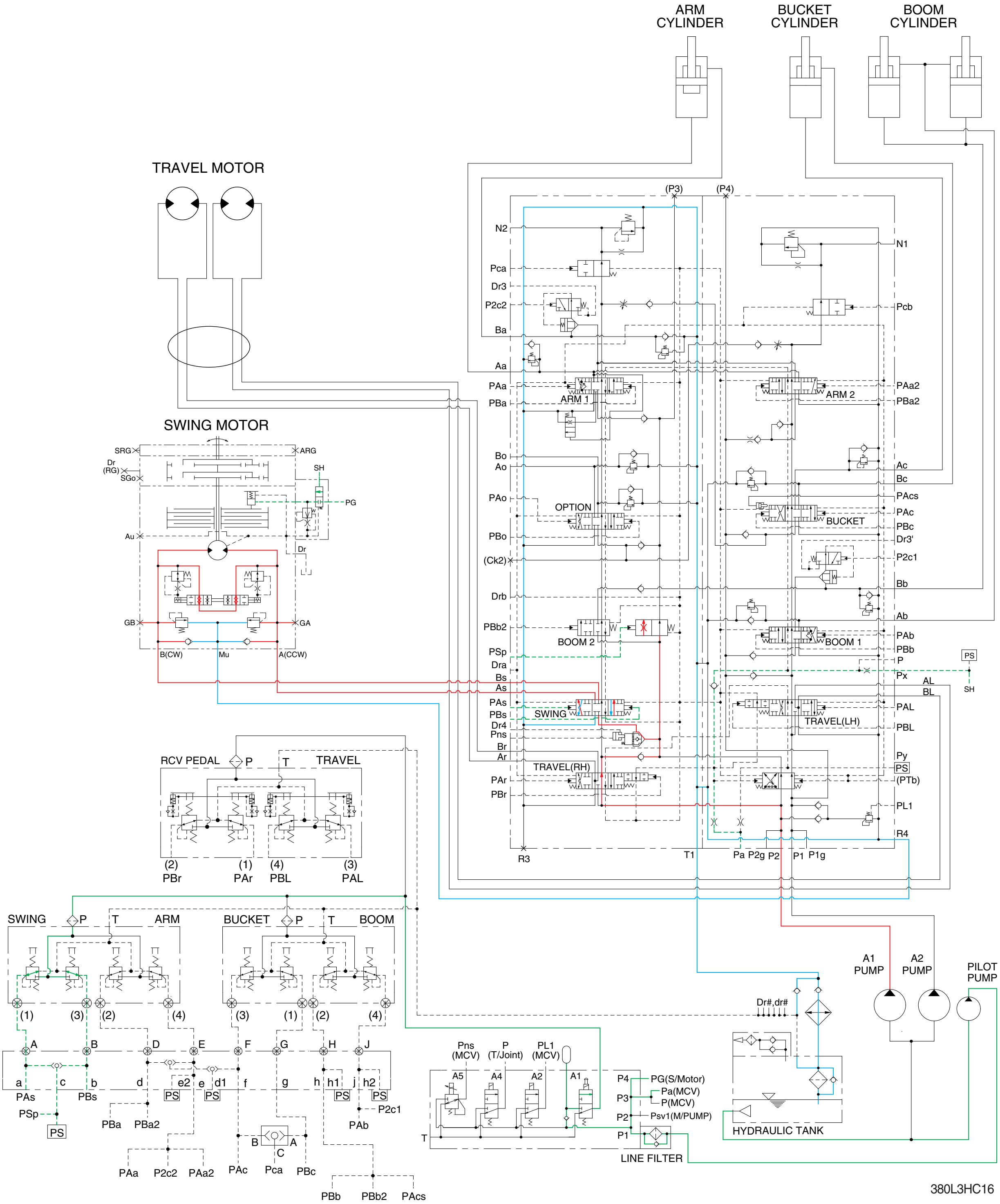
6. BUCKET OUT OPERATION



380L3HC15

When the RH control lever is pushed right, the bucket spool in the main control valve is moved to the roll out position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.
The oil from the A2 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the small chamber of bucket cylinder.
At the same time, the oil from the large chamber of bucket cylinder returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the bucket spool in the main control valve. When this happens, the bucket rolls out.
The excessive pressure in the bucket cylinder rod side is prevented by relief valve.
The cavitation which will happen to the rod side of the bucket cylinder is also prevented by the make-up valve in the main control valve.

7. SWING OPERATION



When the LH control lever is pushed left or right, the swing spool in the main control valve is moved to the left or right swing position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

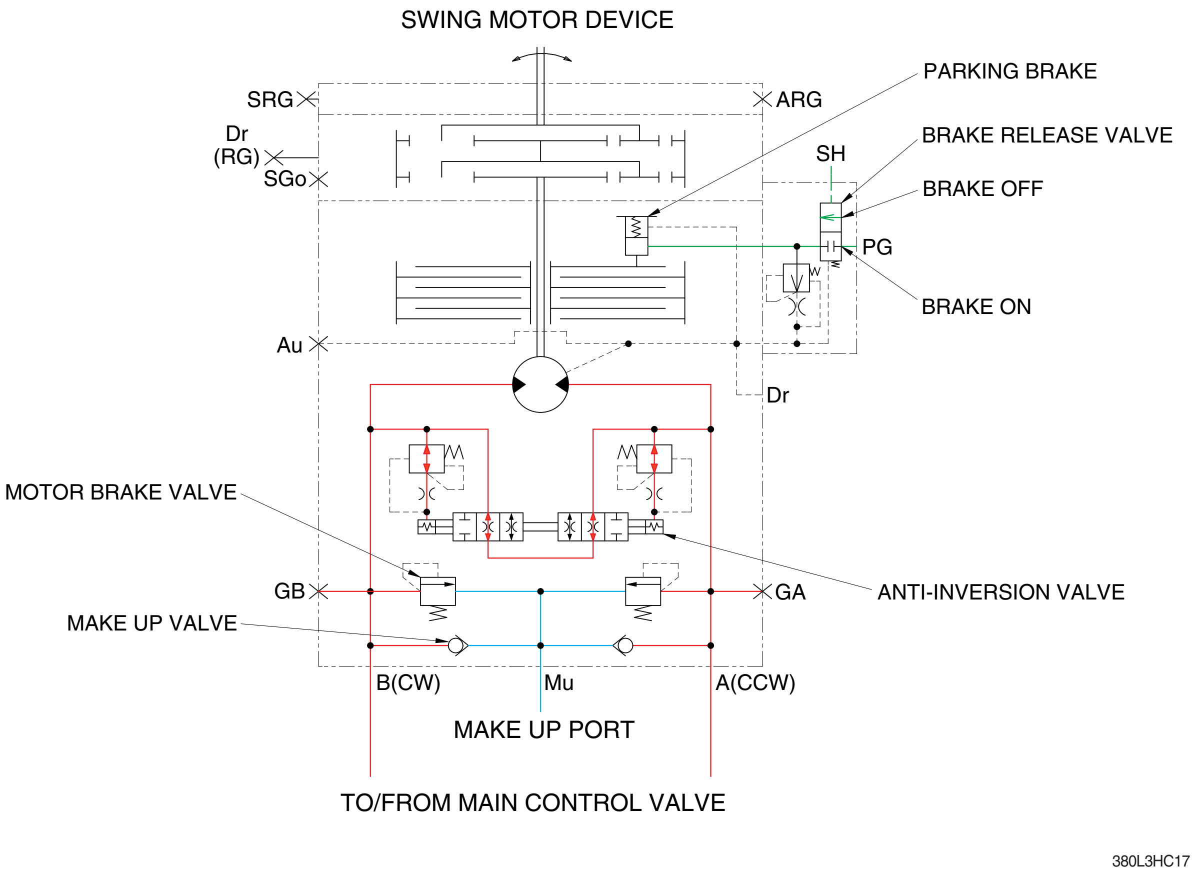
The oil from the A1 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the swing motor.

At the same time, the return oil from the swing motor returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the swing spool in the main control valve.

When this happens, the upper structure swings to the left or right.

The swing parking brake, make up valve and the motor brake valve are provided in the swing motor. The cavitation which will happen to the swing motor is also prevented by the make up valve in the swing motor itself. Also the swing operation preference function is operated by the pilot pressure **PSp** (refer to page 3-12).

SWING CIRCUIT OPERATION



1) MOTOR BRAKE VALVE

Motor brake valve for the swing motor limits to cushion the starting and stopping pressure of swing operation and controls the swing motor operating pressure.

2) MAKE UP VALVE

The make up valves prevent cavitation by supplying return oil to the vacuum side of the motor.

3) PARKING BRAKE

This is function as a parking brake only when all of the RCV lever (except travel pedal) are not operated.

PARKING BRAKE "OFF" OPERATION

The parking brake is released by the pilot pressure oil from the pilot pump.
When one of the RCV lever (except travel lever) placed in the operating position, the pilot oil flows into SH port through the MCV. This pressure transferred to the brake release valve and the brake release valve is change over. Then the pilot oil pressure PG lift the brake piston and release the parking brake.

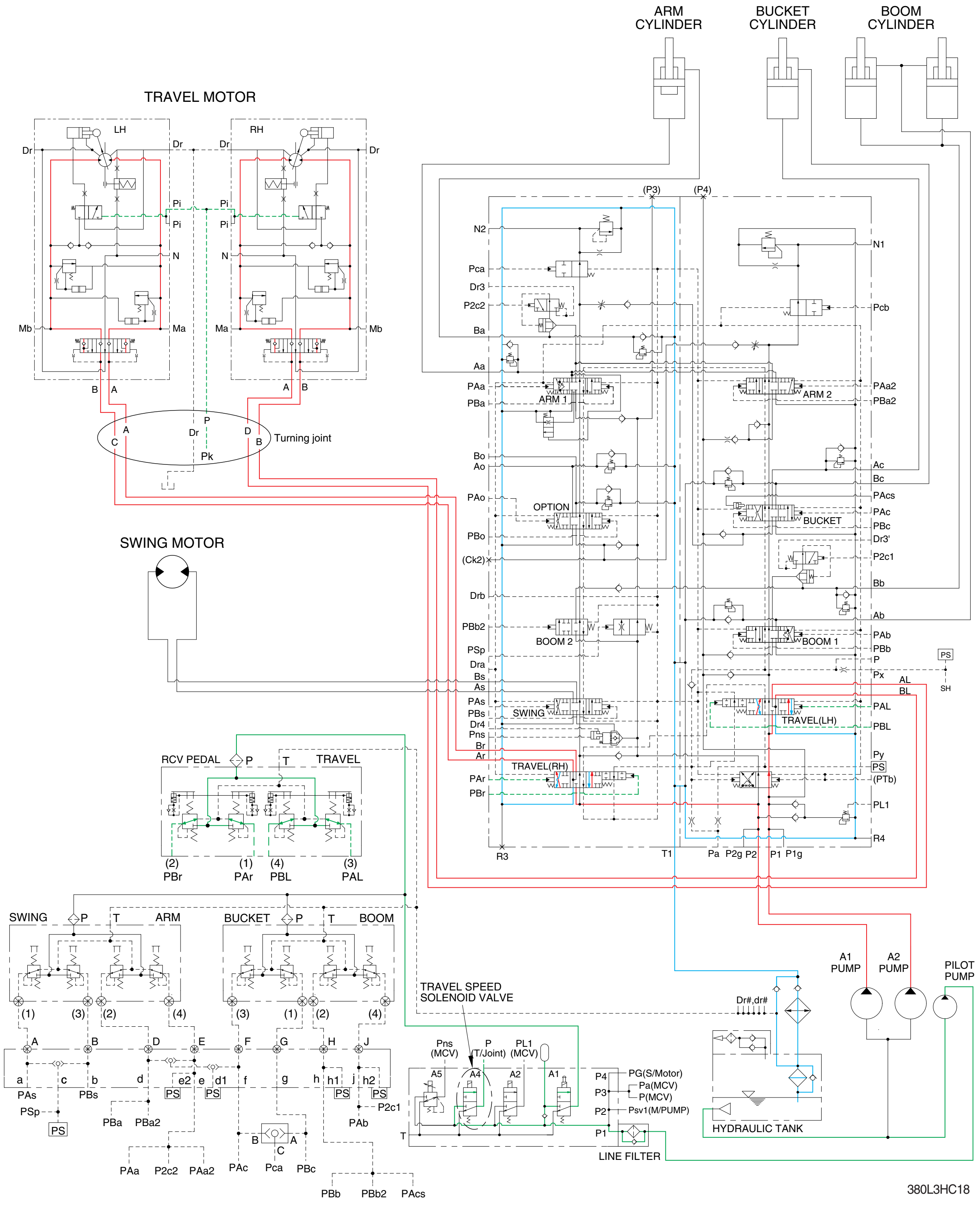
PARKING BRAKE "ON" OPERATION

When all of the RCV lever placed in the neutral position, the pressure of the pilot oil passage down. Then the brake release valve returned to the neutral position and the oil is returned from the brake piston to the tank. And the brake is set to 'ON".

4) ANTI-INVERSION VALVE

This anti-inversion valve absorbs shocks produced as swing motion stops and reduced oscillation cause by swing motion.

8. TRAVEL FORWARD AND REVERSE OPERATION



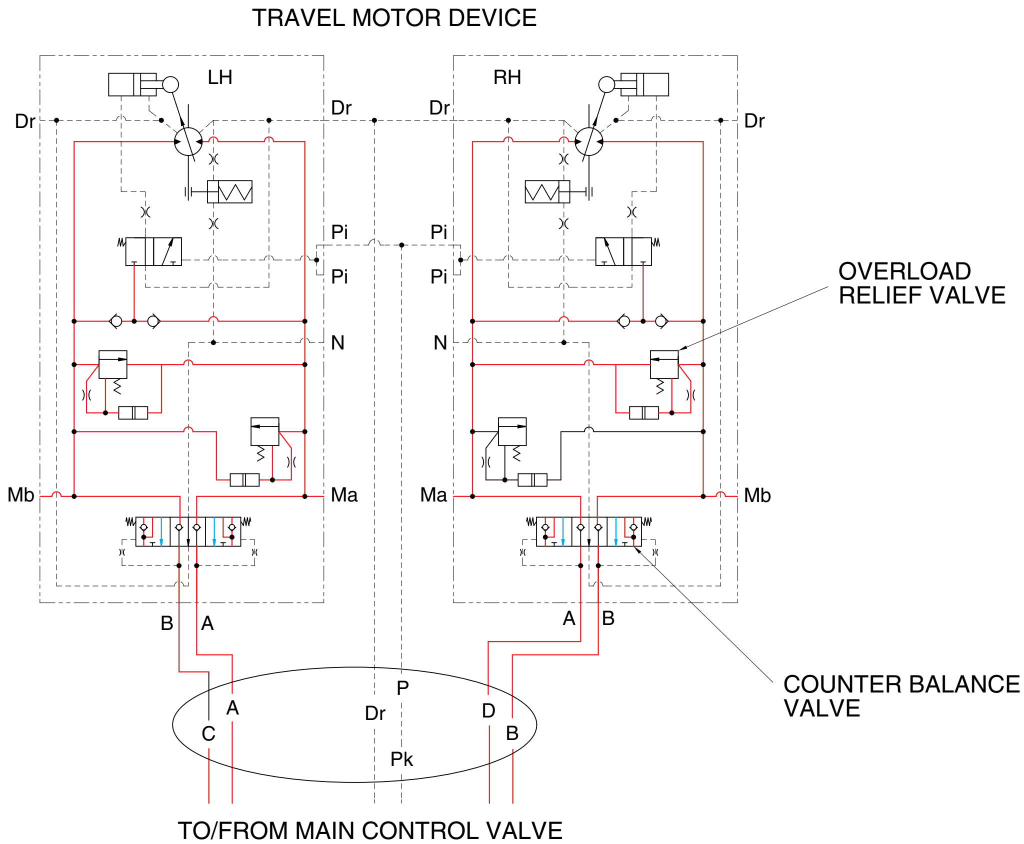
When the travel levers are pushed forward or reverse position, the travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the forward or reverse travel position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the each pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the each travel motor through the turning joint.

The return oil from both travel motors returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the turning joint and the travel spools in the main control valve.

When this happens, the machine moves to the forward or reverse.

TRAVEL CIRCUIT OPERATION



380L3HC19

Valves are provided on travel motors to offer the following functions.

1) COUNTER BALANCE VALVE

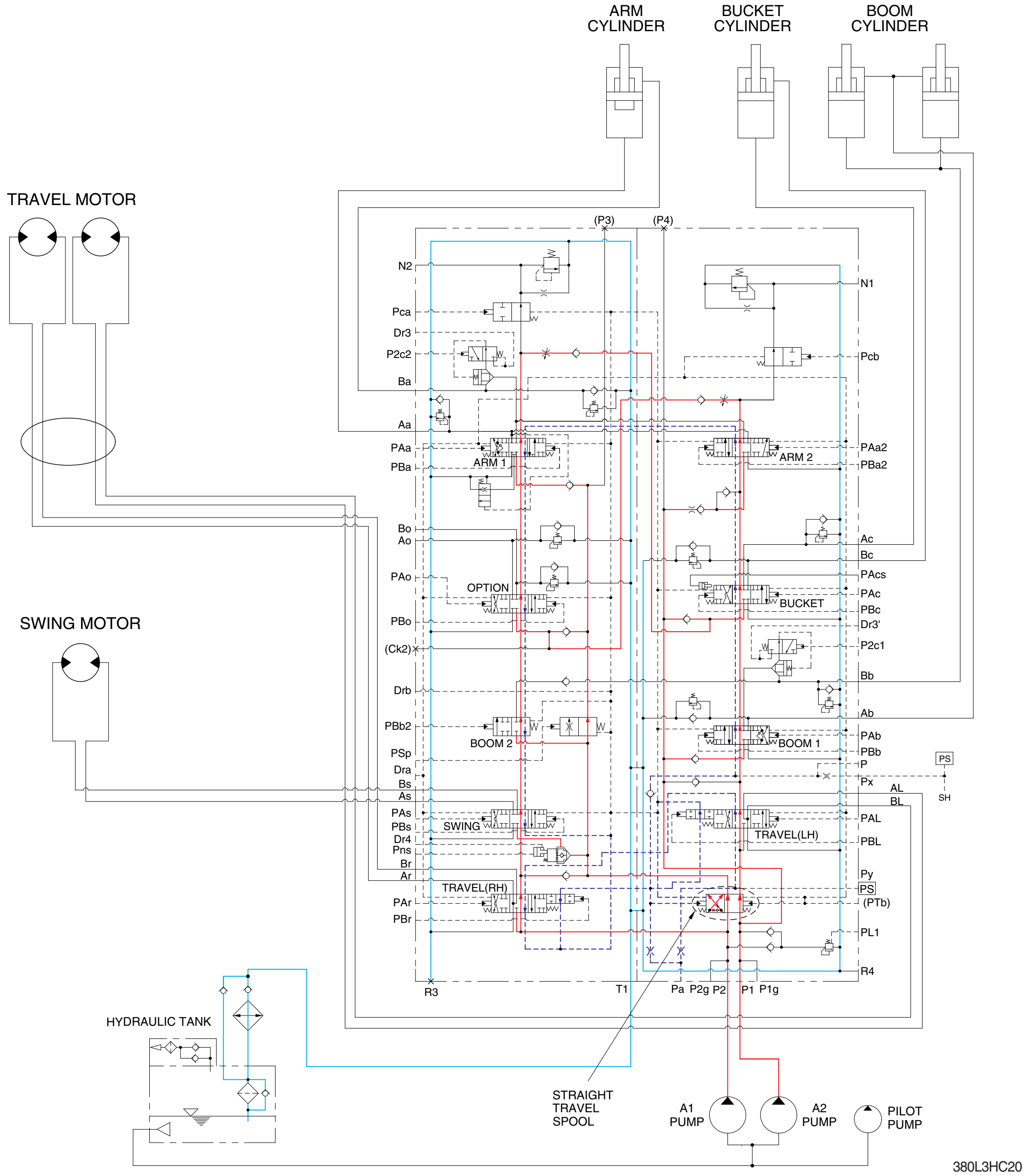
When stopping the motor of slope descending, this valve to prevent the motor over run.

2) OVERLOAD RELIEF VALVE

Relief valve limit the circuit pressure below 370 kgf/cm^2 (5260 psi) for the travel motor type 1 and 360 kgf/cm^2 (5120 psi) for the travel motor type 2 to prevent high pressure generated at a time of stopping the machine. Stopping the motor, this valve sucks the oil from lower pressure passage for preventing the negative pressure and the cavitation of the motor.

GROUP 5 COMBINED OPERATION

1. OUTLINE



The oil from the A1 and A2 pump flows through the neutral oil passage, bypass oil passage and confluence oil passage in the main control valve. Then the oil goes to each actuator and operates them. Check valves and orifices are located on these oil passage in the main control valve. These control the oil from the main pumps so as to correspond to the operation of each actuator and smooth the combined operation.

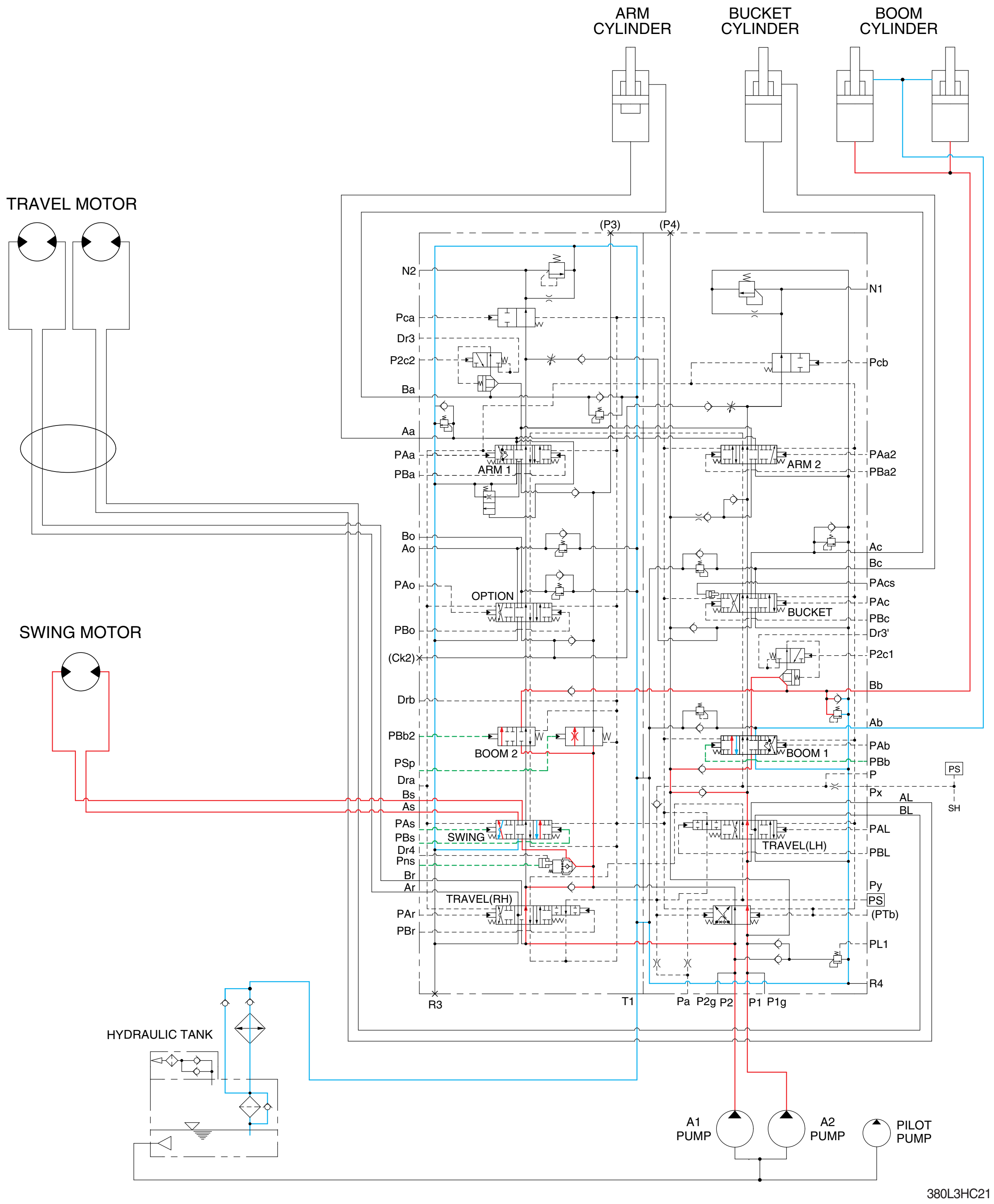
STRAIGHT TRAVEL SPOOL

This straight travel spool is provided in the main control valve.

If any actuator is operated when traveling, the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the pilot oil pressure from the pilot pump.

Consequently, the left and right travel oil supply passage are connected, and equivalent amount of oil flows into the left and right travel motors. This keeps the straight travel.

2. COMBINED SWING AND BOOM UP OPERATION



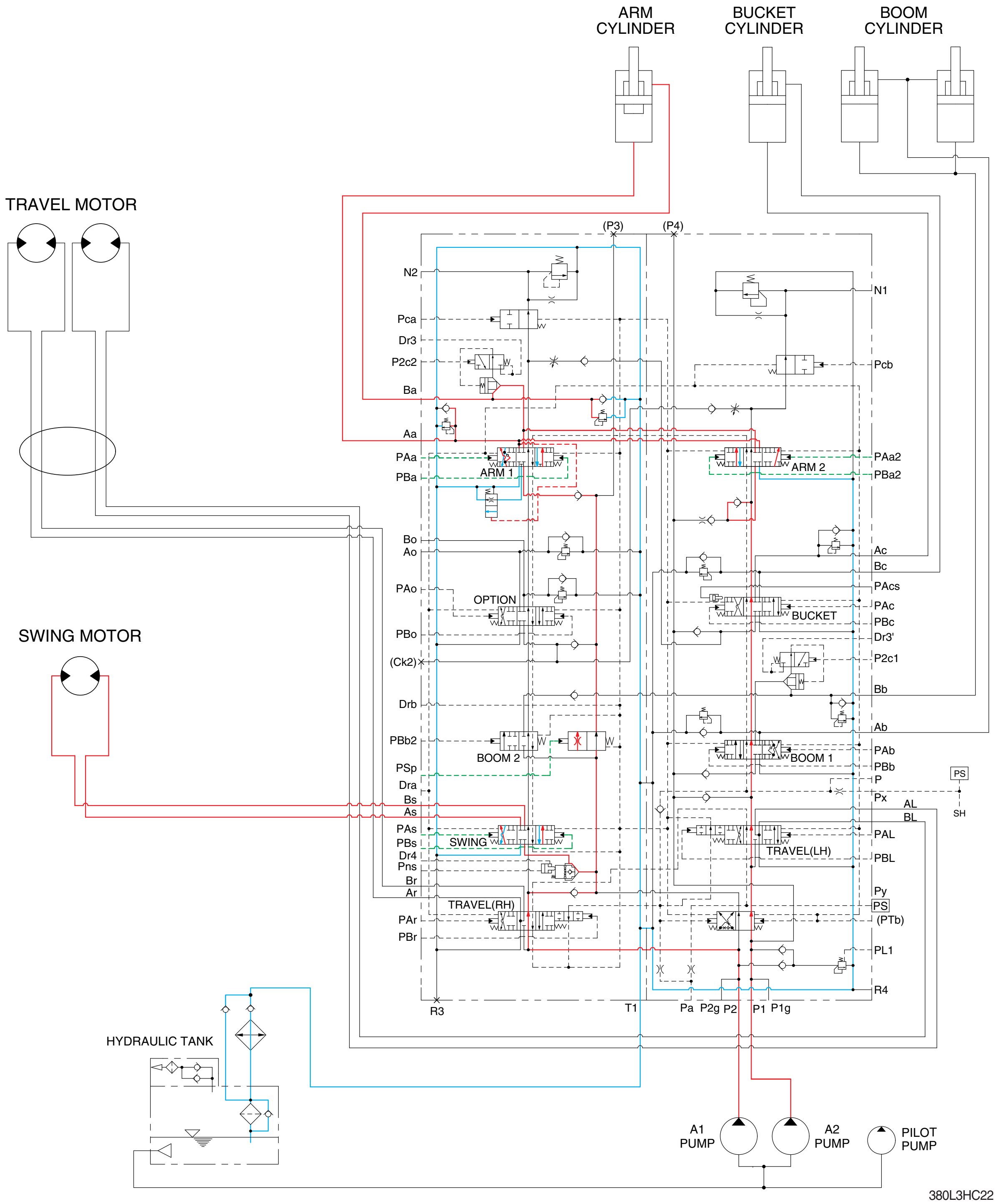
When the swing and boom up functions are operated simultaneously, the swing spool and boom spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the A1 pump flows into the swing motor through swing spool and the boom cylinder through boom 2 spool.

The oil from the A2 pump flows into the boom cylinders through the boom 1 spool in the right control valve. The upper structure swings and the boom is operated.

Refer to page 3-8 for the boom priority system.

3. COMBINED SWING AND ARM OPERATION



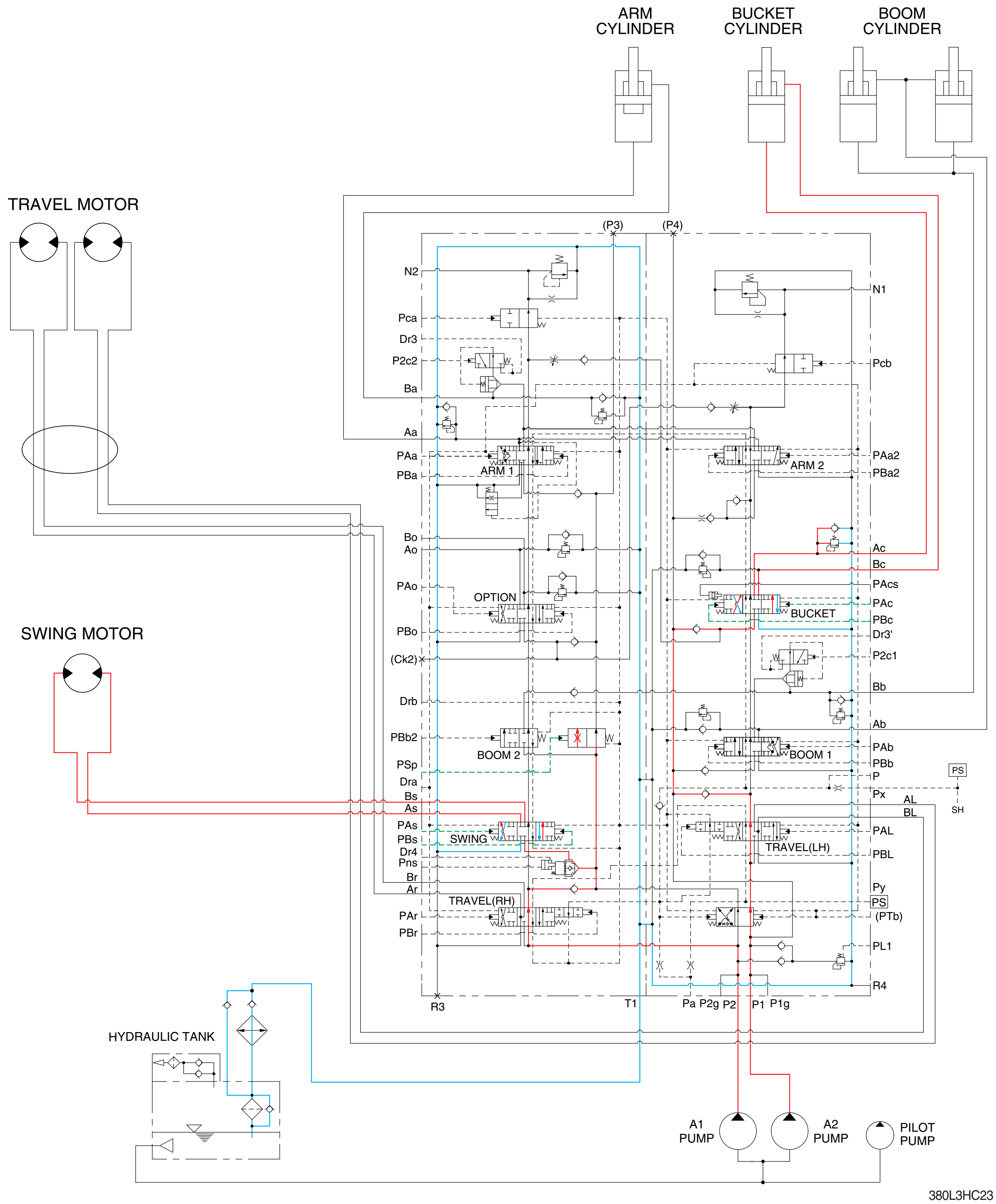
When the swing and arm functions are operated simultaneously, the swing spool and arm spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the A1 pump flows into the swing motor through swing spool and the arm cylinder through arm 1 spool.

The oil from the A2 pump flows into the arm cylinder through the arm 2 spool of the right control valve. The upper structure swings and the arm is operated.

Refer to page 2-35 for the swing operation preference function.

4. COMBINED SWING AND BUCKET OPERATION



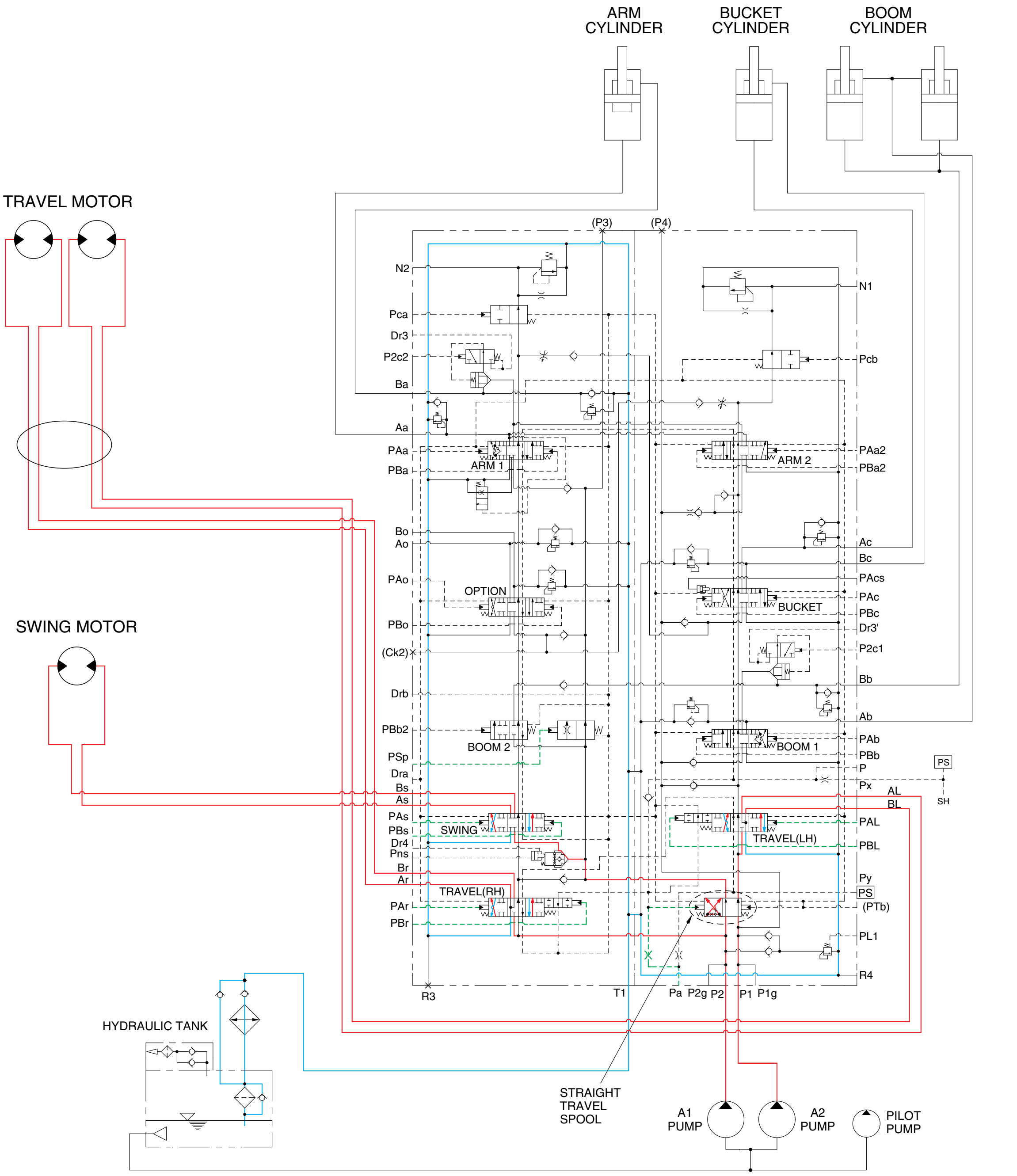
When the swing and bucket functions are operated simultaneously, the swing spool and bucket spool in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the A1 pump flows into the swing motor through the swing spool in the left control valve.

The oil from the A2 pump flows into the bucket cylinder through the bucket spool in the right control valve.

The upper structure swings and the bucket is operated.

5. COMBINED SWING AND TRAVEL OPERATION



When the swing and travel functions are operated simultaneously, the swing spool and travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve and straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the pilot oil pressure from the pilot pump.

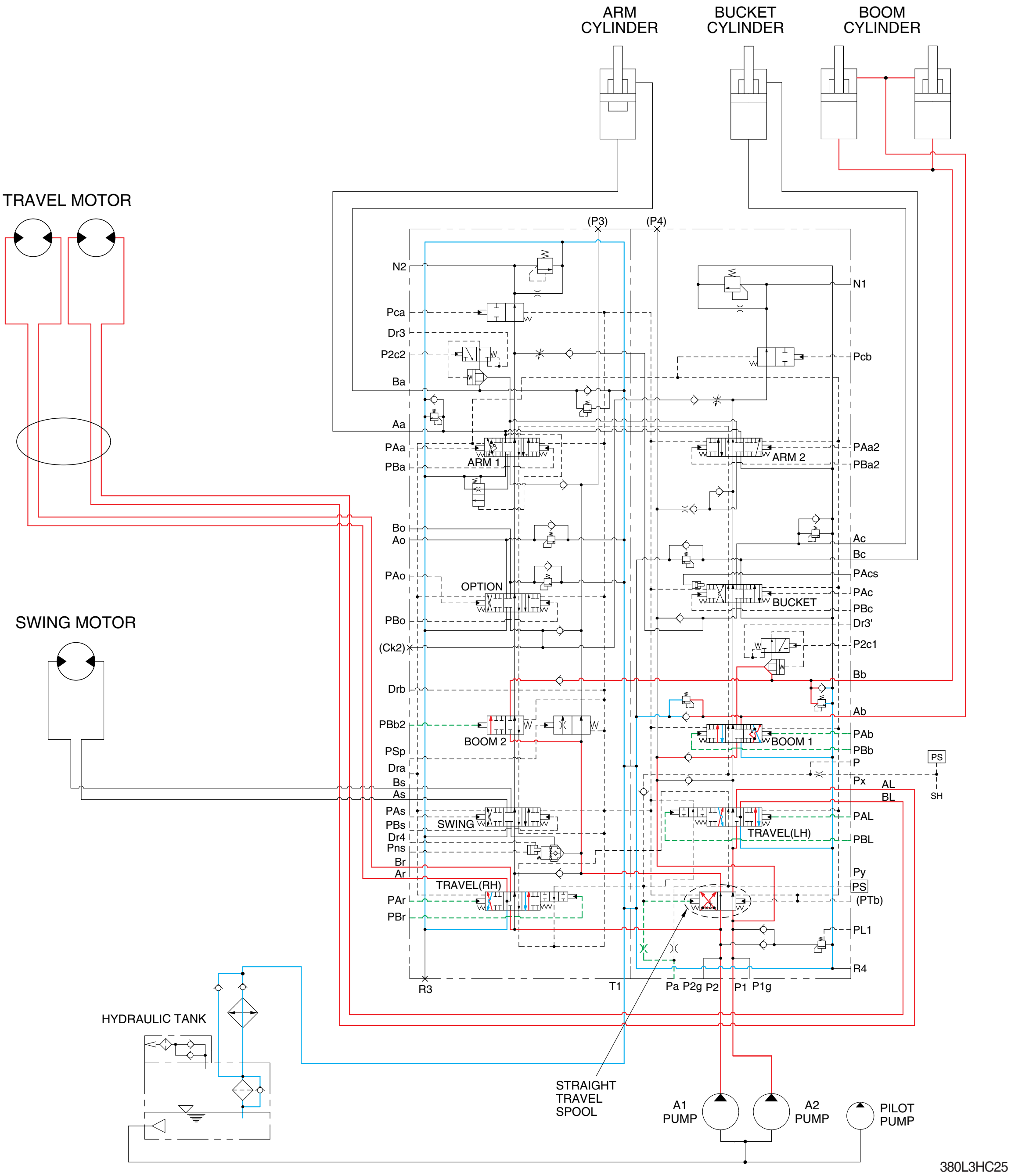
The oil from the A1 pump flows into the travel motors through the RH travel spool of the left control valve and the LH travel spool of the right control valve via the straight travel spool.

The oil from the A2 pump flows into the swing motor through the swing spool via the straight travel spool.

When the pressure of the travel motors is lower than the pressure of the swing motor, some oil from the A2 pump flows into the travel motors through the check valve and orifice in the straight travel spool. This prevents the rapid slowdown of the travel.

The upper structure swings and the machine travels straight.

6. COMBINED BOOM AND TRAVEL OPERATION



When the boom and travel functions are operated simultaneously, the boom spools and travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve and the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the oil pressure from pilot pump.

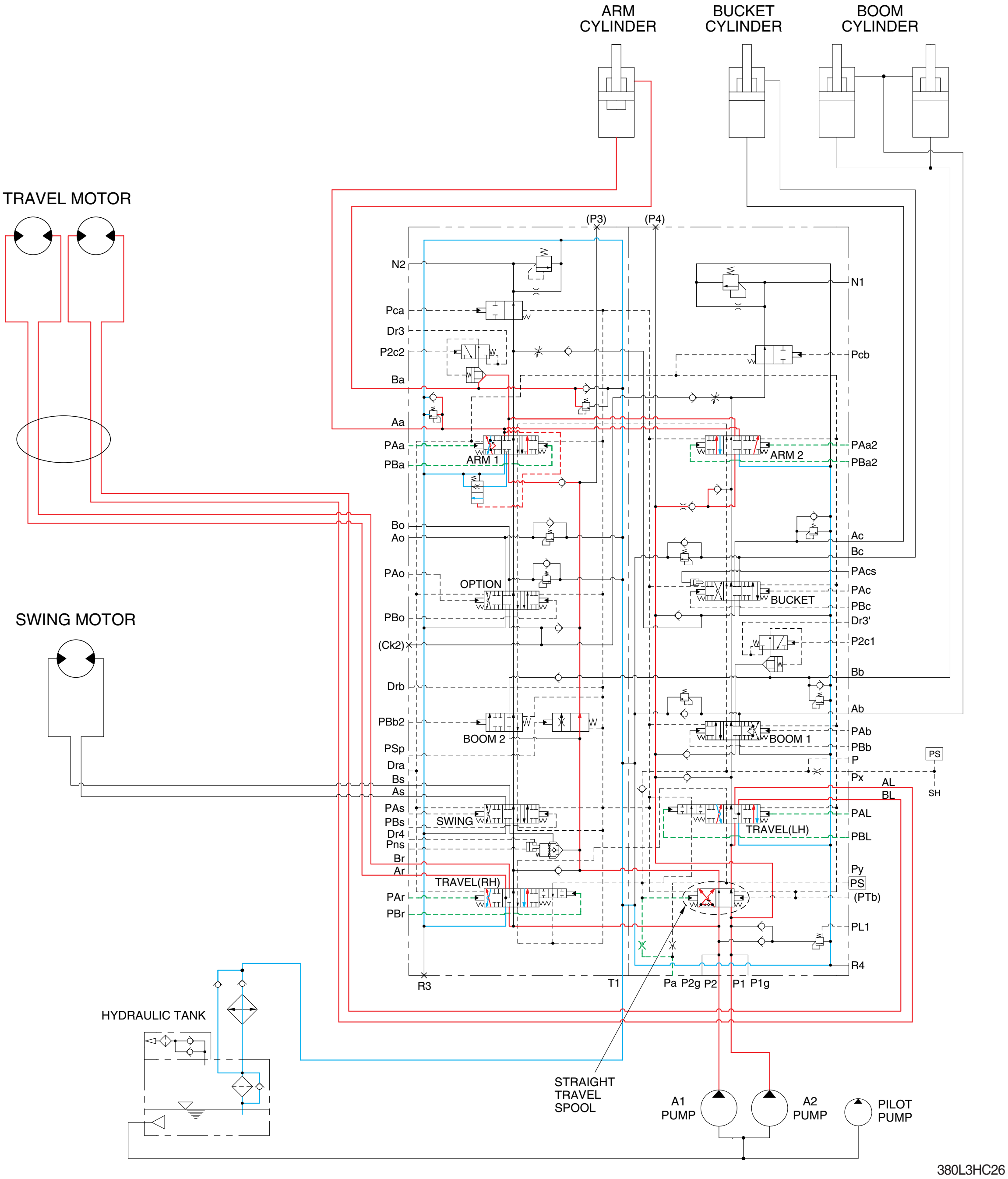
The oil from the A1 pump flows into the travel motors through the RH travel spool of the left control valve and the LH travel spool of the right control valve via the straight travel spool.

The oil from the A2 pump flows into the boom cylinders through the boom 2 spool and boom 1 spool via the parallel and confluence oil passage in case boom up operation.

When the pressure of the travel motors is lower than the pressure of the boom cylinders, some oil from the A2 pump flows into the travel motors through the check valve and orifice in the straight travel spool. This prevents the rapid slowdown of the travel.

The boom is operated and the machine travels straight.

7. COMBINED ARM AND TRAVEL OPERATION



When the arm and travel functions are operated simultaneously, the arm spools and travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve and the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the oil pressure from pilot pump.

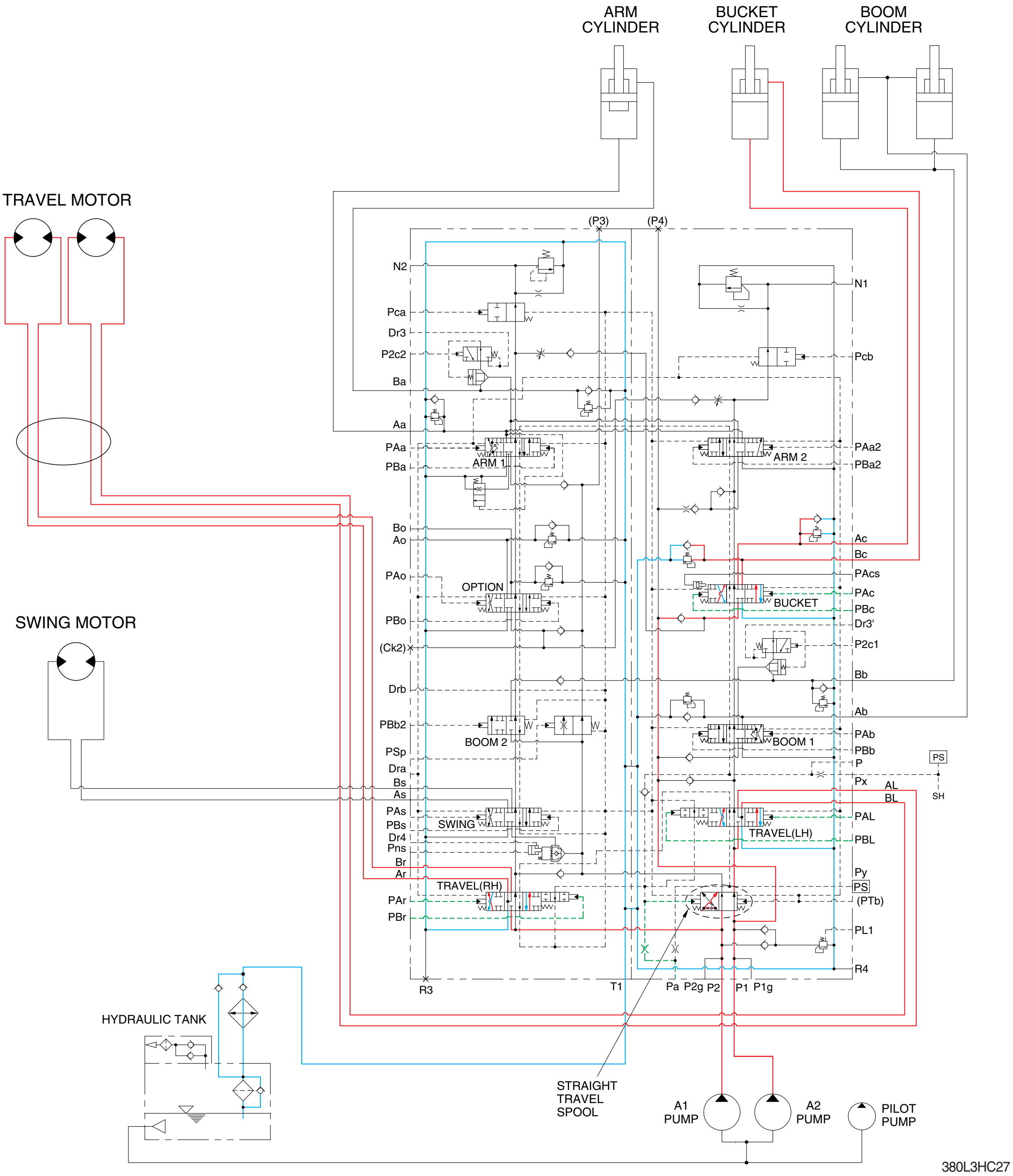
The oil from the A1 pump flows into the travel motors through the RH travel spool of the left control valve and the LH travel spool of the right control valve via the straight travel spool.

The oil from the A2 pump flows into the arm cylinders through the arm 1 spool and arm 2 spool via the parallel and confluence oil passage.

When the pressure of the travel motors is lower than the pressure of the arm cylinder, some oil from the A2 pump flows into the travel motors through the check valve and orifice in the straight travel spool. This prevents the rapid slowdown of the travel.

The arm is operated and the machine travels straight.

8. COMBINED BUCKET AND TRAVEL OPERATION



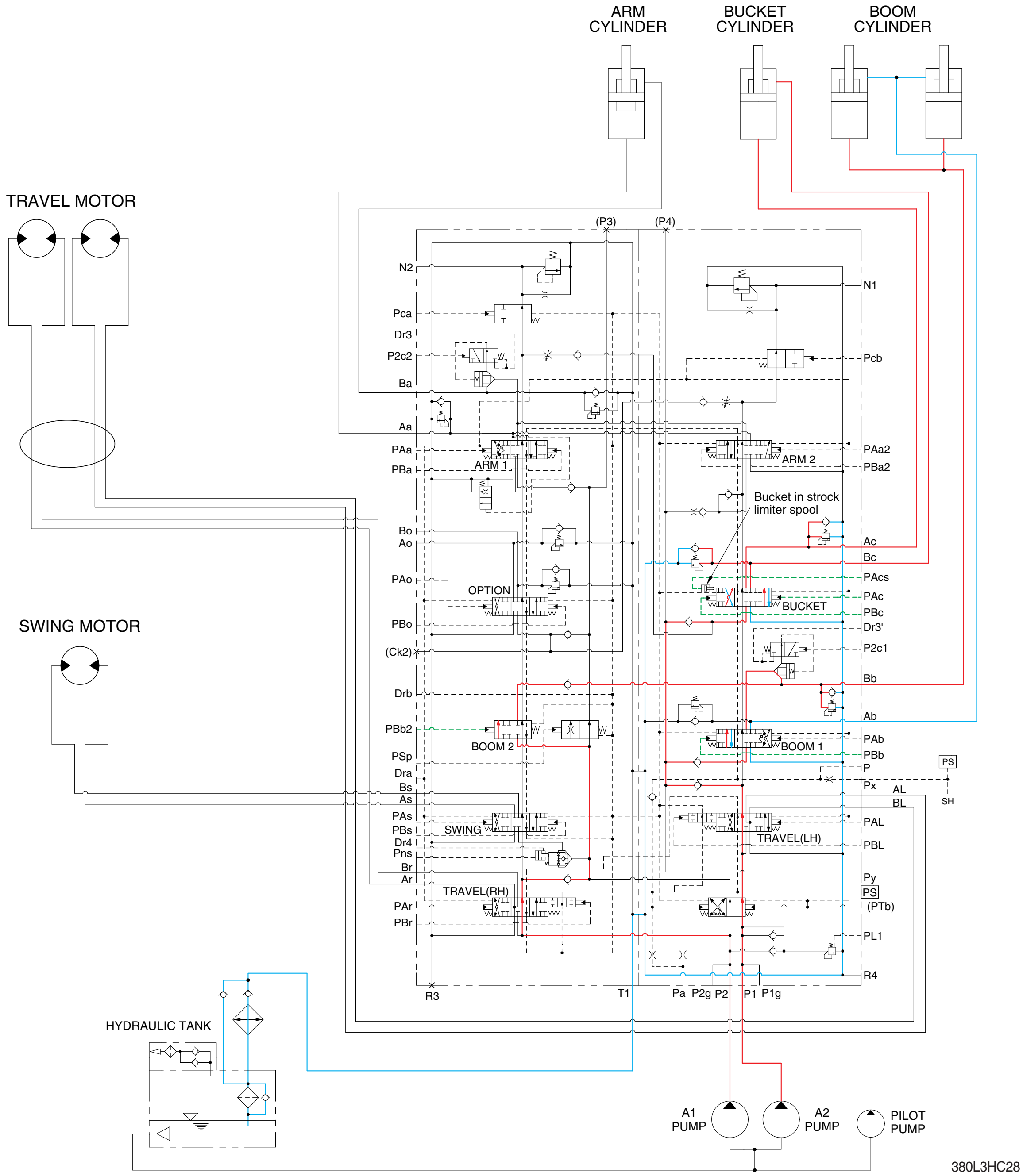
When the bucket and travel functions are operated simultaneously, the bucket spool and travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve, and the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the oil pressure from pilot pump. The oil from the A1 pump flows into the travel motors through the RH travel spool of the left control valve and the LH travel spool of the right control valve via the straight travel spool of the control valve.

The oil from the A2 pump flows into the bucket cylinder through the bucket spool via the confluence oil passage.

When the pressure of the travel motors is lower than the pressure of the bucket cylinder, some oil from the A2 pump flows into the travel motors through the check valve and orifice in the straight travel spool. This prevents the rapid slowdown of the travel.

The bucket is operated and the machine travels straight.

9. COMBINED BOOM UP AND BUCKET OPERATION



When the boom up and bucket functions are operated simultaneously, each spool in the main control valve is moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the A1 pump flows into the boom cylinders through the boom 2 spool in the left control valve. The oil from the A2 pump flows into the boom cylinders and bucket cylinder through the boom 1 spool, bucket spool and the parallel and confluence oil passage in the right control valve.

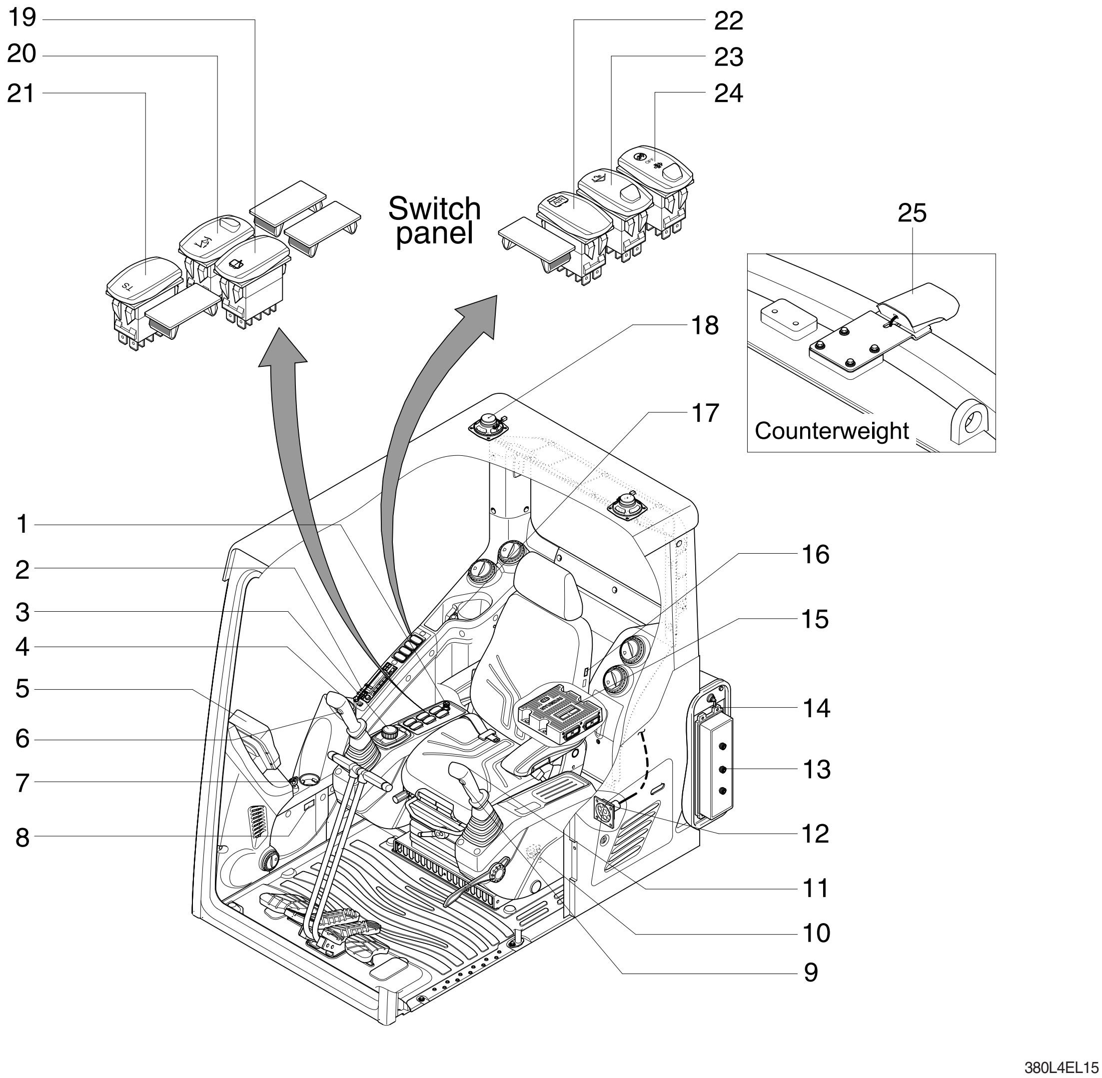
Also, when the boom up and bucket in functions are operated simultaneously, the boom up operation preference function is operated by the pilot pressure PAcs and then the bucket spool transfers in the half stroke not full stroke (Refer to page 2-33). Therefore, the most of pressurized oil flows into boom 1 spool than the bucket spool to make the boom up operation more preferential.

The boom and bucket are operated.

SECTION 4 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

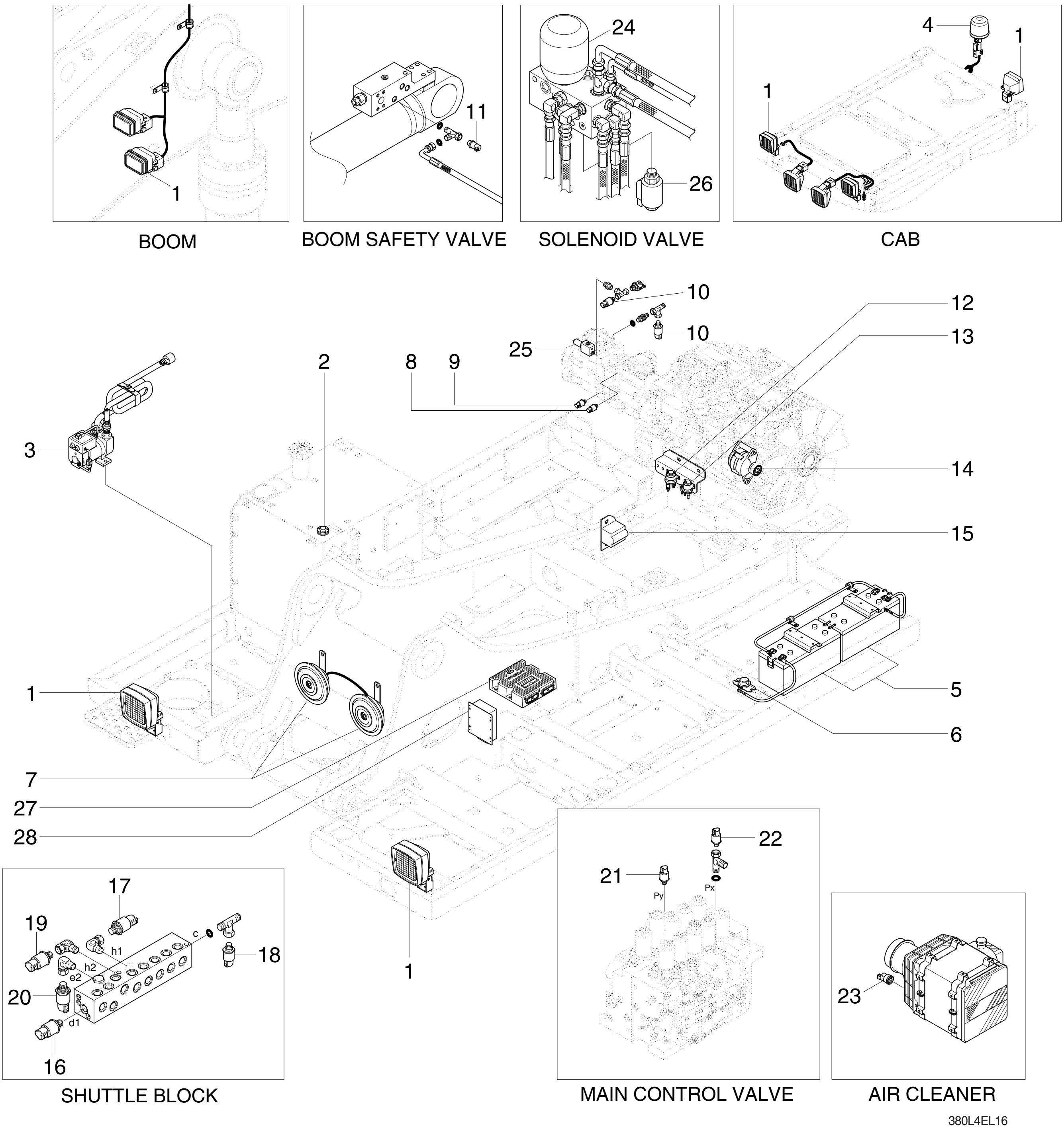
GROUP 1 COMPONENT LOCATION

1. LOCATION 1



1	Cigar lighter	10	Emergency engine stop switch	19	Lower wiper & washer switch
2	Radio & USB player	11	One touch decel switch	20	Boom floating switch
3	Haptic controller	12	RS232 & J1939 service socket	21	Travel straight switch
4	Horn switch	13	Fuse & relay box	22	Air compressor switch
5	Cluster	14	Master switch	23	Quick clamp switch
6	Breaker operation switch	15	Machine control unit	24	DPF switch
7	Starting switch	16	Seat heater switch	25	Rear view camera
8	Service meter	17	Service socket		
9	Power max switch	18	Speaker		

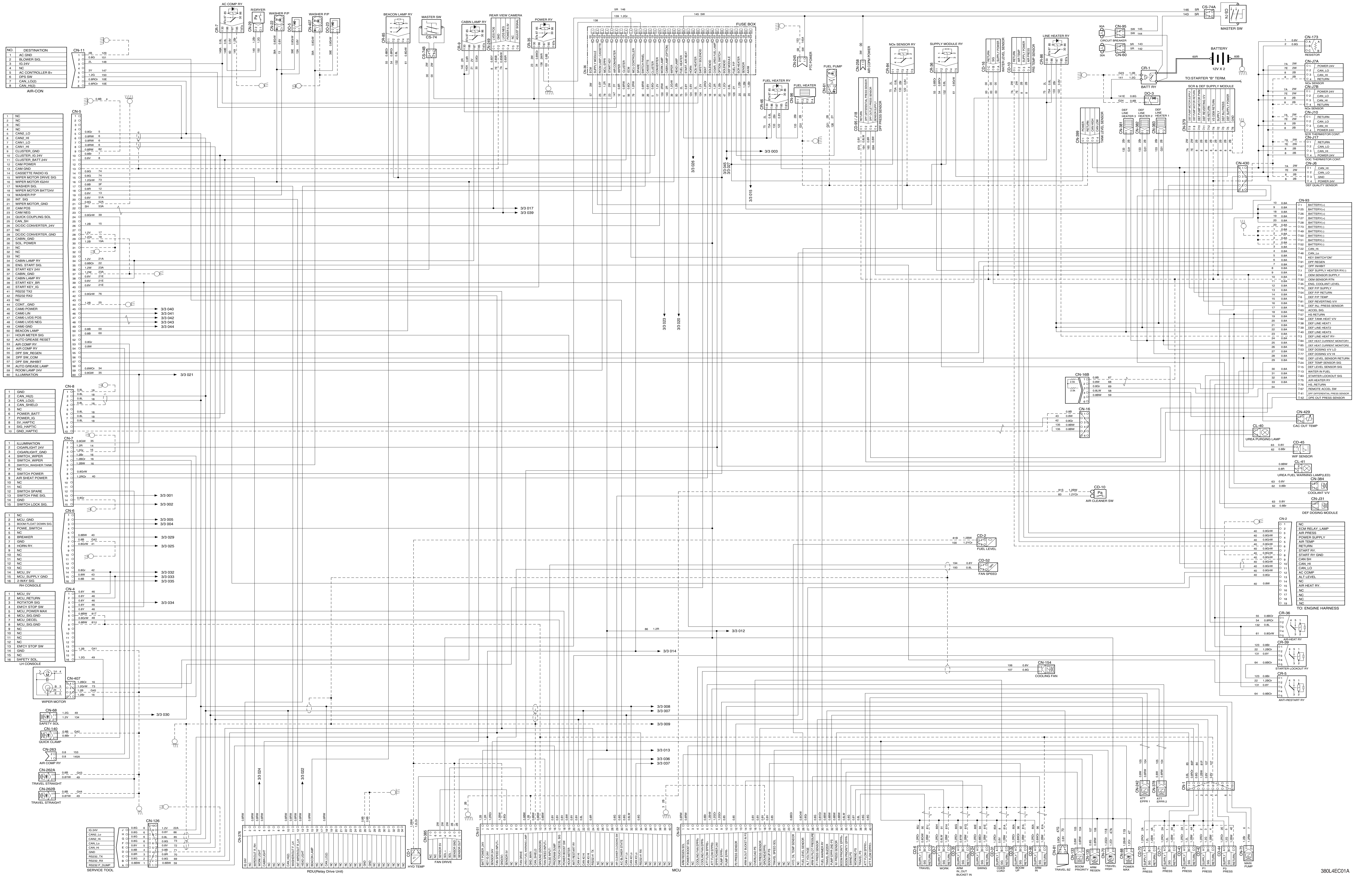
2. LOCATION 2



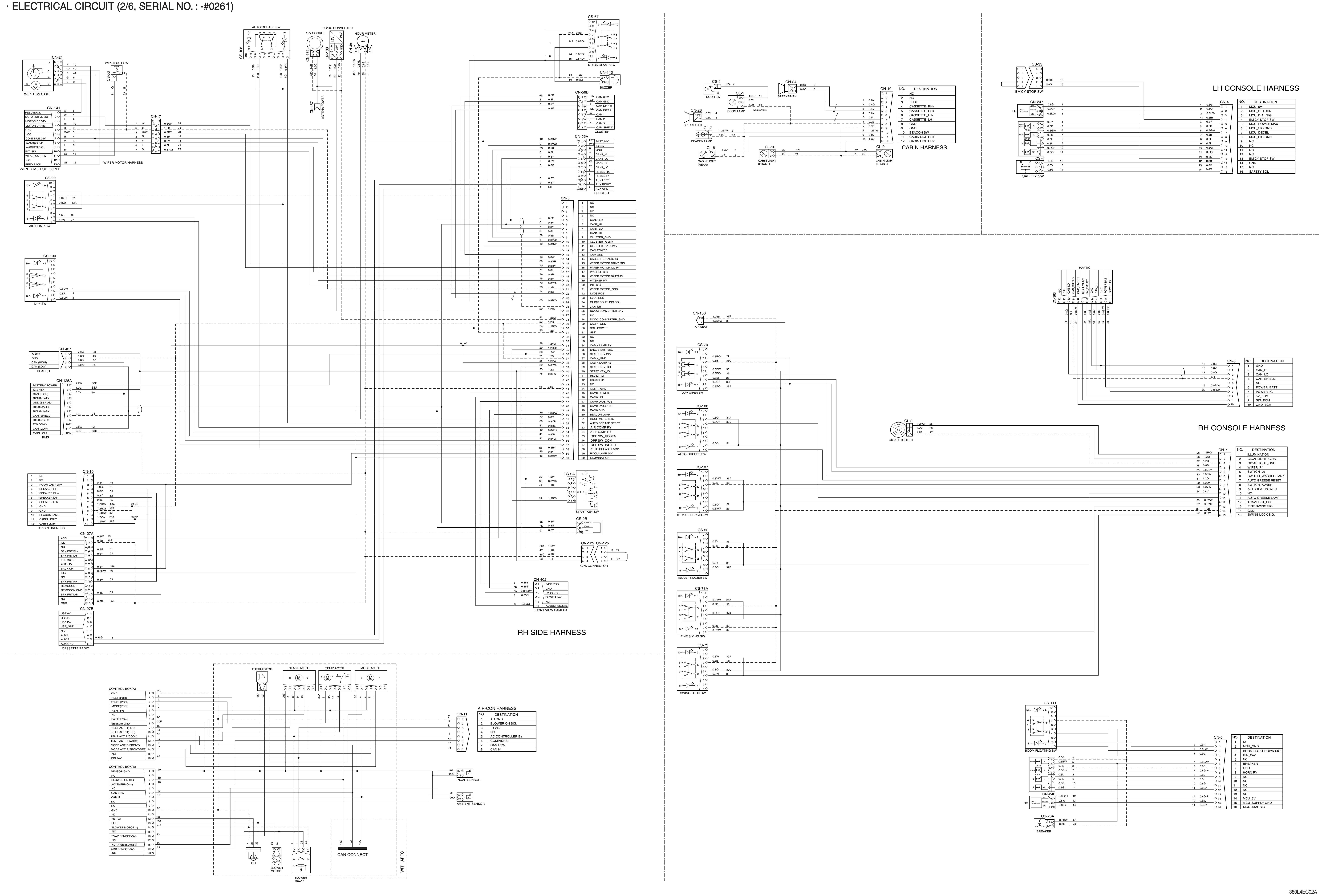
1	Lamp	11	Overload pressure sensor	21	Attach pressure sensor
2	Fuel sender	12	Start relay	22	Travel pressure sensor
3	Fuel filler pump	13	Heater relay	23	Air cleaner sensor
4	Beacon lamp	14	Alternator	24	4 cartridge valve
5	Battery	15	Travel alarm buzzer	25	Pump EPPR valve
6	Battery relay	16	Arm/Bucket in pressure sensor	26	Boom priority EPPR valve
7	Horn	17	Boom up pressure sensor	27	MCU 1
8	P1 pressure sensor	18	Swing pressure sensor	28	MCU 2
9	P2 pressure sensor	19	Boom down pressure sensor		
10	EPPR pressure sensor	20	Arm in/swing pressure sensor		

GROUP 2 ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT

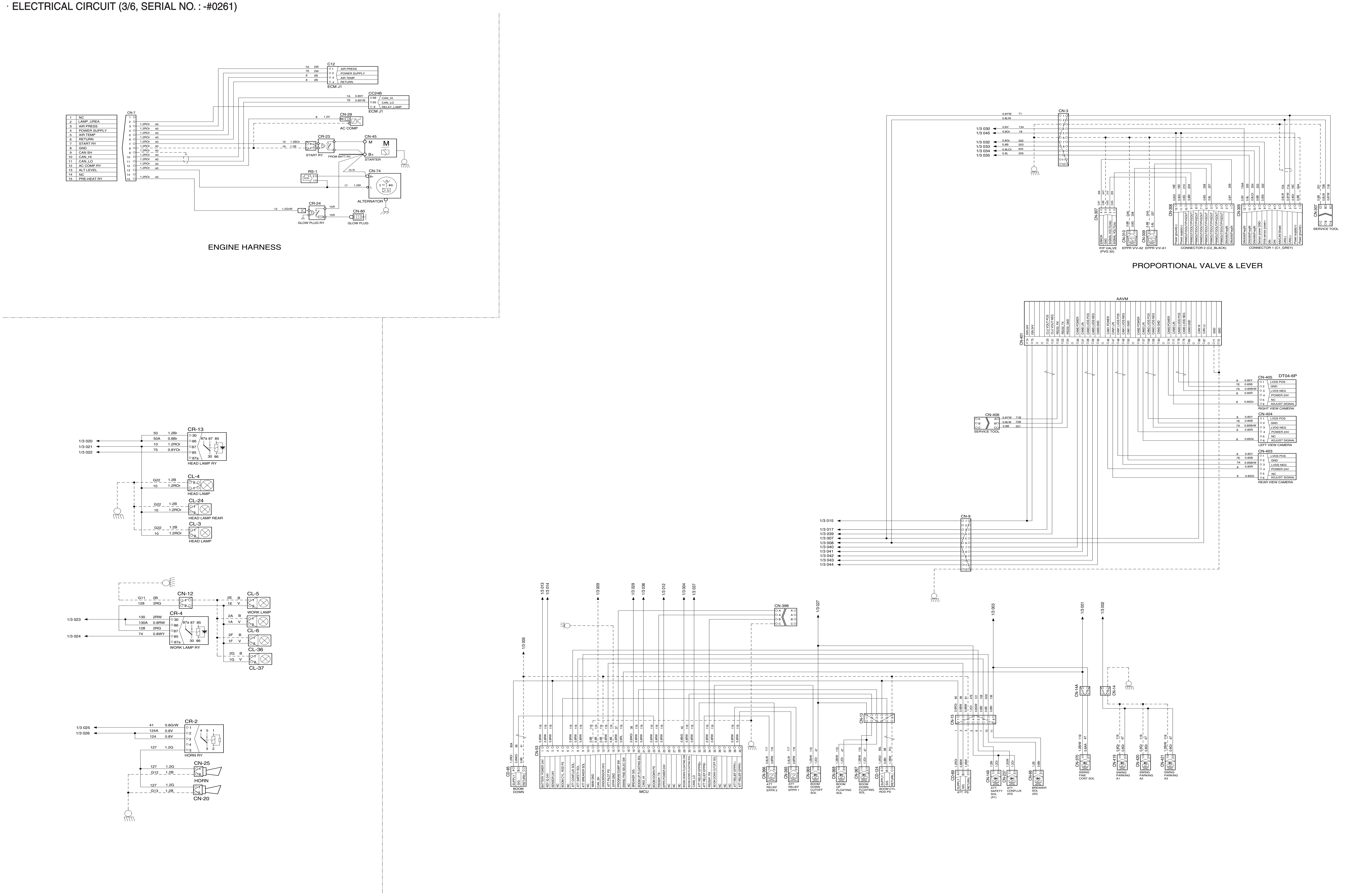
· ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (1/6, SERIAL NO. : -#0261)



· ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (2/6, SERIAL NO. : -#0261)

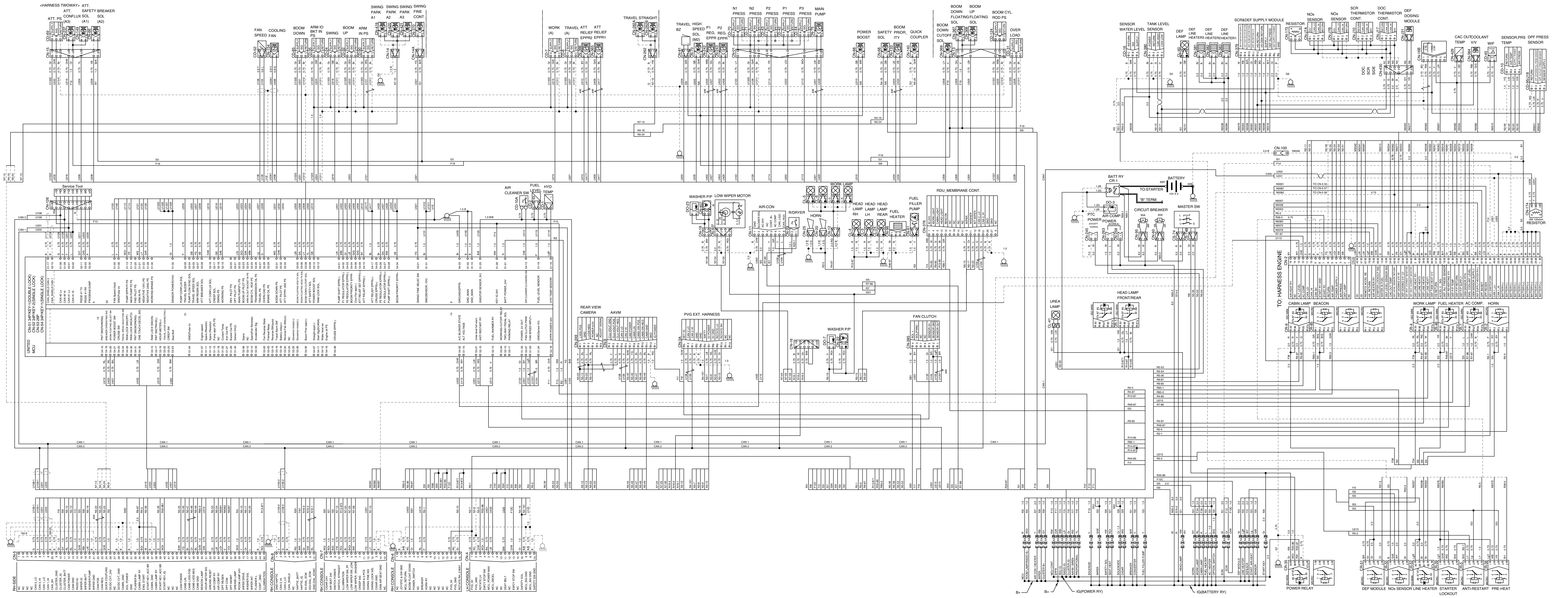


· ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (3/6, SERIAL NO. : -#0261)



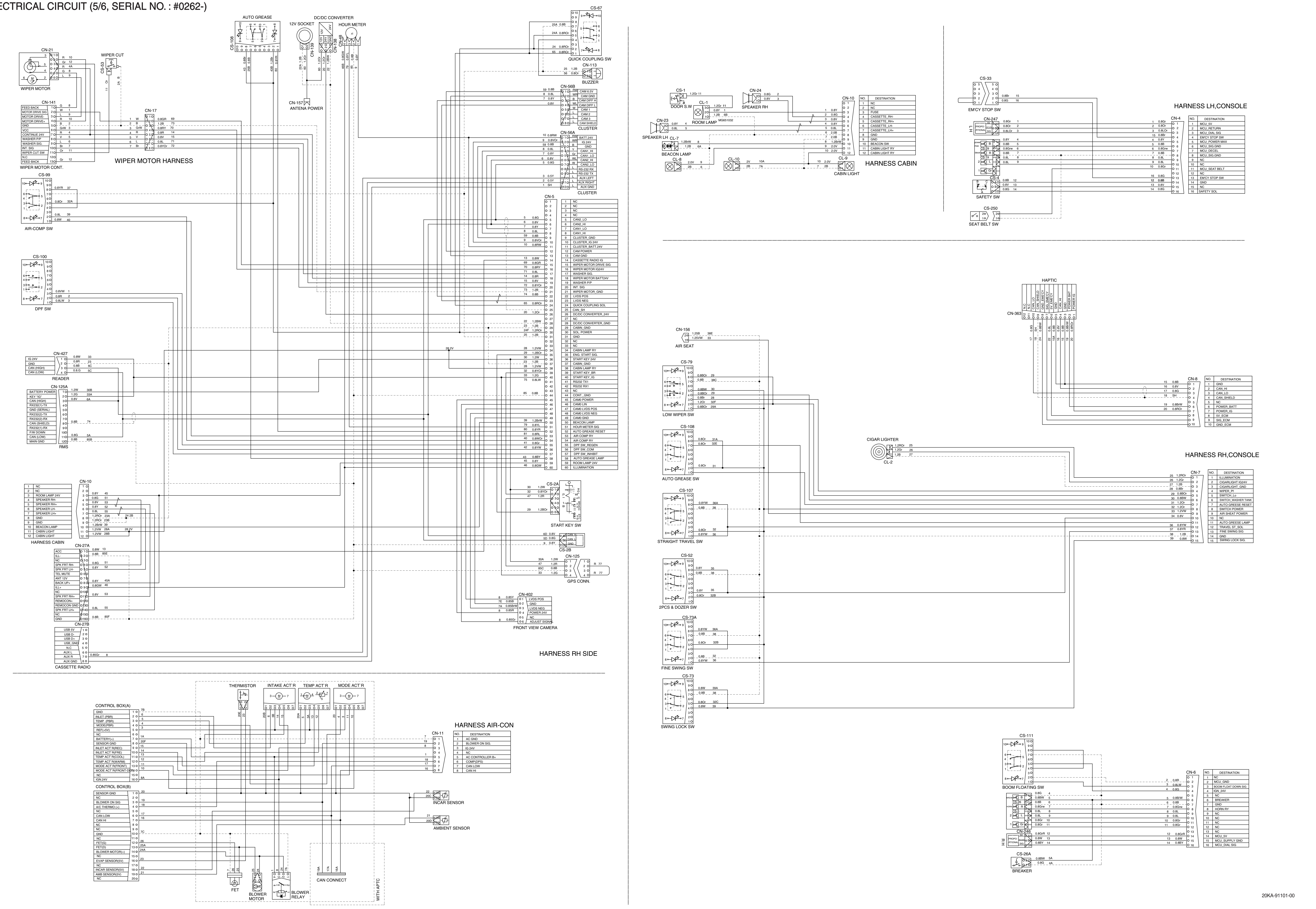
380L4EC03A

· ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (4/6, SERIAL NO. : #0262-)

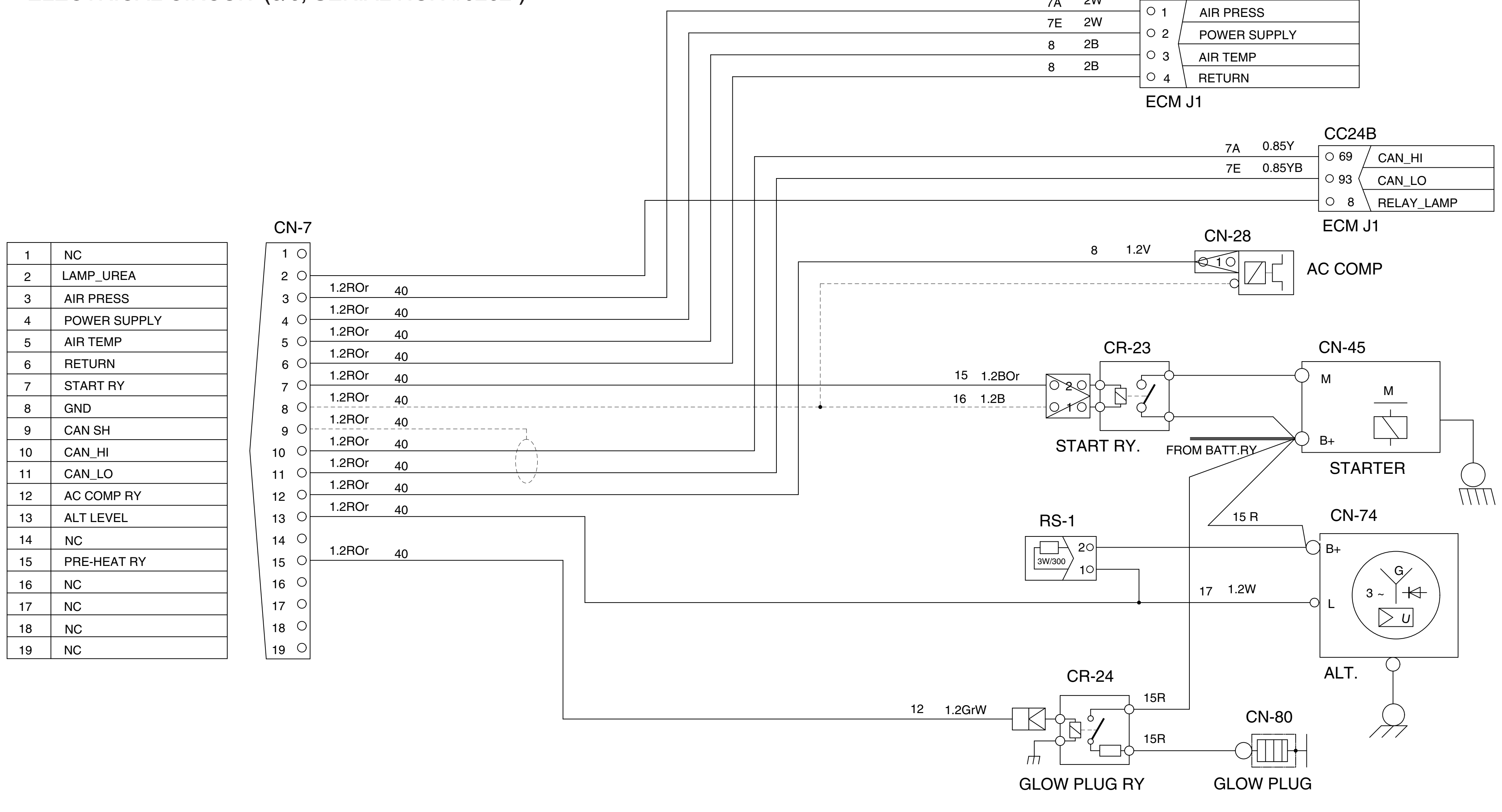


20KA-91500-00

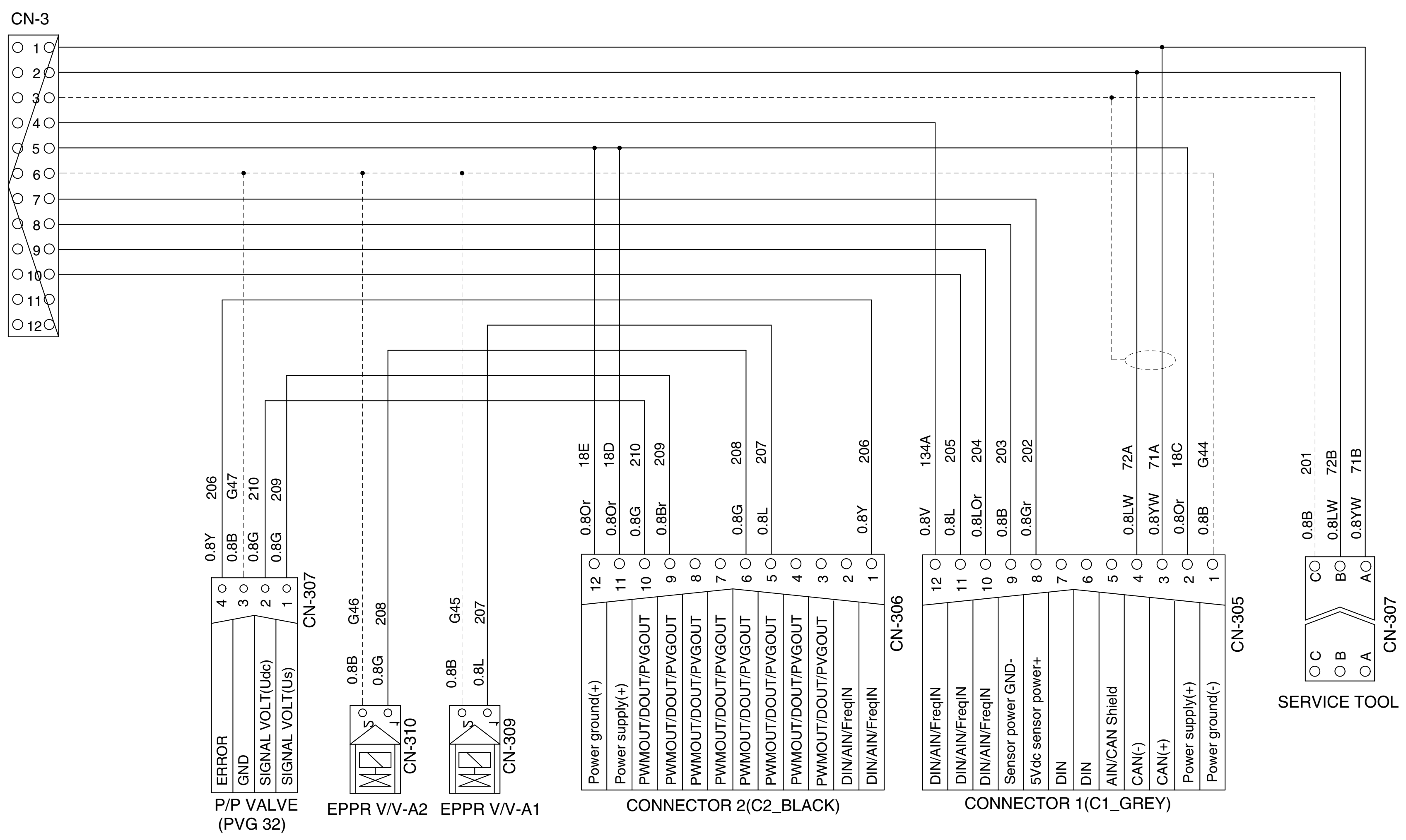
· ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (5/6, SERIAL NO. : #0262-)



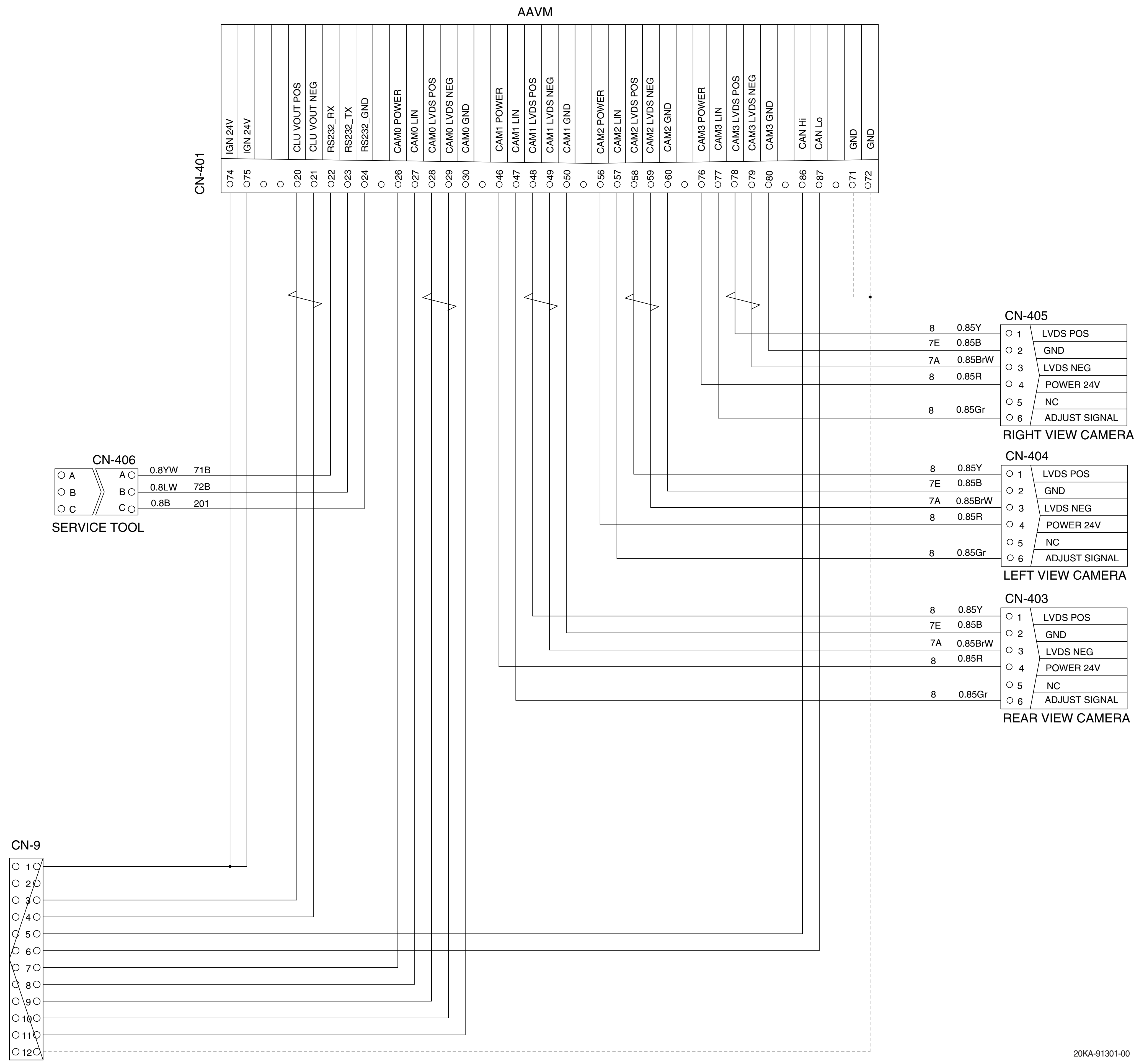
· ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (6/6, SERIAL NO. : #0262-)



ENGINE HARNESS



PROPORTIONAL VALVE & LEVER



MEMORANDUM

1. POWER CIRCUIT

The negative terminal of battery is grounded to the machine chassis.

When the start switch is in the OFF position, the current flows from the positive battery terminal as shown below.

1) OPERATING FLOW

Battery → Battery relay → Circuit breaker [CN-60] → Master switch [CS-74A]

- → Fuse box [No.1] → Engine ECM [CN-93 (1, 25, 26, 27, 28)]
- → Fuse box [No.2]
  - → DEF supply module [CR-51 (2, 3)]
  - → DEF purging lamp [CL-40 (1)]
- → Fuse box [No.3] → I/conn [CN-5 (59)]
  - → I/conn [CN-10 (3)] → Room lamp [CL-1 (2)]
    - → Door switch [CS-1]
  - → Radio & USB player [CN-27A (8)]
- → Fuse box [No.4]
  - → MCU [CN-51 (1)]
  - → MCU [CN-52 (8)]
  - → MCU [CN-53 (1, 25)]
- → Fuse box [No.5]
  - → Master switch [CS-74B] → I/conn [CN-5 (36)]
    - → Start switch [CS-2A (1)]
    - → RMS [CN-125A(1)]
    - → GPS connection [CN-125 (1)]
  - → Power relay [CR-35 (30)]
- → Fuse box [No.6] → I/conn [CN-11 (5)]
  - → AC & Heater control box A (7)
  - → Blower relay (4)
- → Fuse box [No.7] → I/conn [CN - 5 (18)] → I/conn [CN-17 (5)]
  - → Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (7)]
  - → Wiper motor [CN-21 (4)]
- → Fuse box [No.8]
  - → I/conn [CN - 5 (11)]
    - → Cluster [CN-56A (1)]
    - → Hour meter [CN-48 (1)]
  - → I/conn [CN - 8 (6)] → Haptic controller [CN-363 (2)]

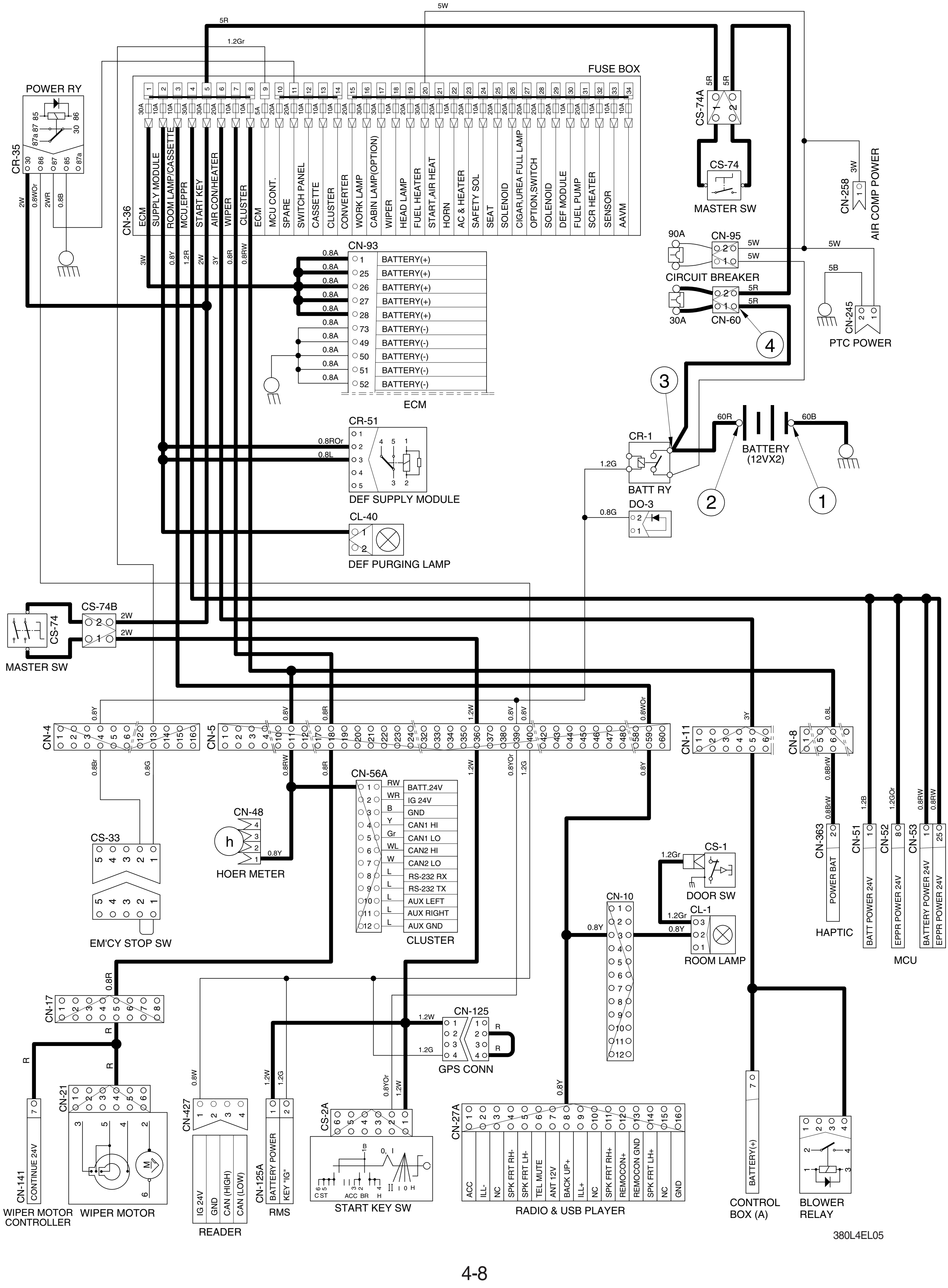
※ I/conn : Intermediate connector

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
OFF	OFF	① - GND (battery 1EA)	10~12.5V
		② - GND (battery 2EA)	20~25V
		③ - GND (battery relay 2EA)	20~25V
		④ - GND (circuit breaker)	20~25V

※ GND : Ground

POWER CIRCUIT



2. STARTING CIRCUIT

1) OPERATING FLOW

Battery(+) terminal → Battery relay [CR-1] → Circuit breaker [CN-60] → Master switch [CS-74A]
→ Fuse box [No.5] → Master switch [CS-74B] → I/conn [CN-5 (36)] → Start switch [CS-2A (1)]
→ Power relay [CR-35 (30)]

(1) When start key switch is in ON position

→ Start switch ON [CS-2A (2)] → I/conn [CN-5 (39)]
→ Battery relay [CR-1] → Battery relay operating (all power is supplied with the electric component)
→ I/conn [CN-4 (4)] → Emergency engine stop sw [CS-33 (2)→(1)] → I/conn [CN-4 (13)]
→ Fuse box [No. 9] → Engine ECM [CN-93 (5)]
→ Start switch ON [CS-2A (3)] → GPS conn [CN-125 (2)→(4)]
→ I/conn [CN-5 (40)] → Power relay [CR-35 (86)→(87)]
→ Fuse box [No.10] → MCU [CN-51 (2)]
→ Reader [CN-427 (1)]
→ RMS [CN-125A (2)]

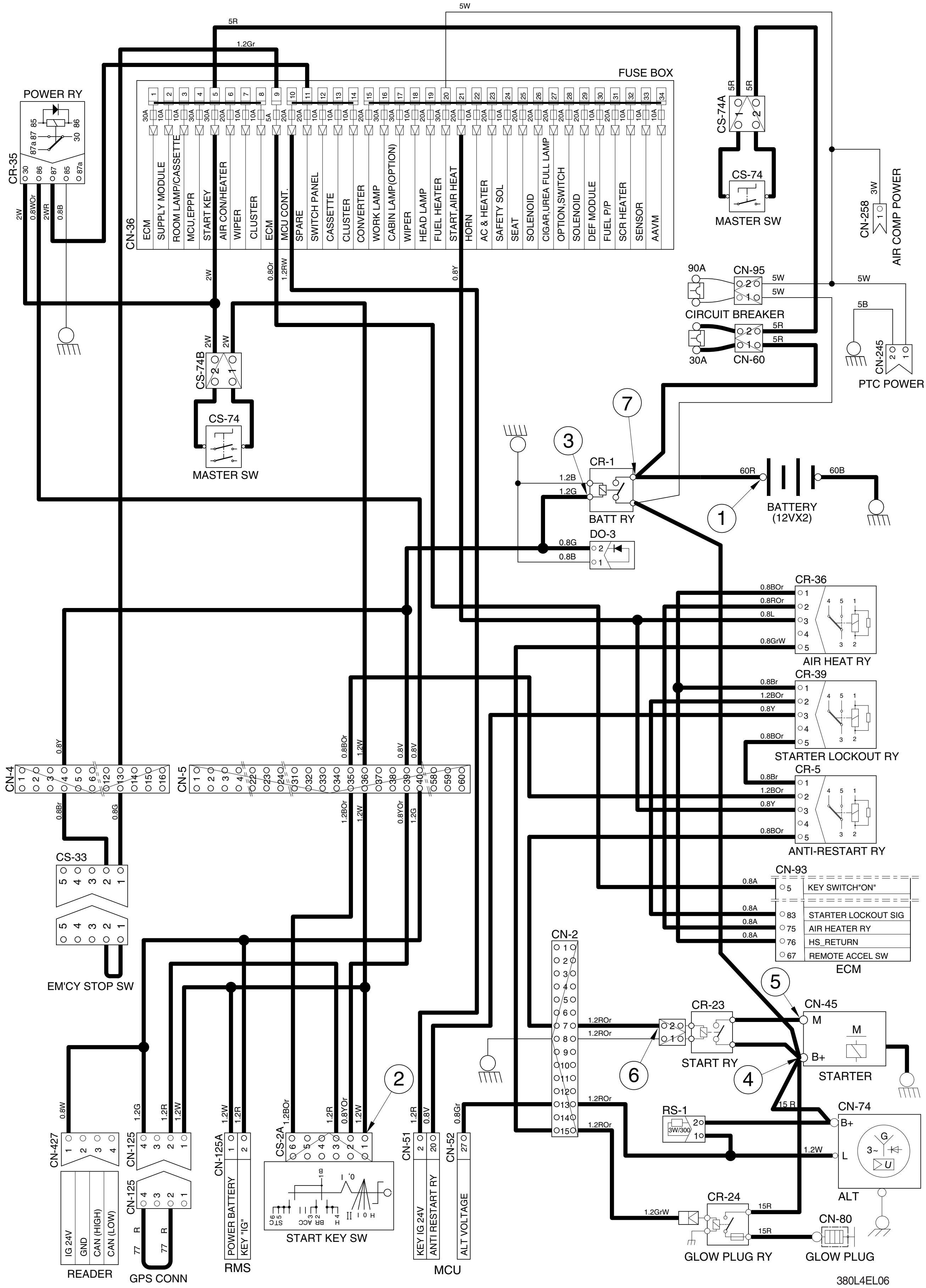
(2) When start key switch is in START position

Start switch START [CS-2A (6)] → I/conn [CN-5 (35)] → Anti-restart relay [CR-5 (2)→(5)]
→ I/conn [CN-2 (7)] → Start relay [CR-23 (2)] → Starter motor is activated.

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
OPERATING	START	① - GND (battery) ② - GND (start key) ③ - GND (battery relay M4) ④ - GND (starter B^+) ⑤ - GND (starter M) ⑥ - GND (start relay) ⑦ - GND (battery relay M8)	20~25V

STARTING CIRCUIT



3. CHARGING CIRCUIT

When the starter is activated and the engine is started, the operator releases the key switch to the ON position.

Charging current generated by operating alternator flows into the battery through the battery relay [CR-1].

The current also flows from alternator to each electrical component and controller through the fuse box.

1) OPERATING FLOW

(1) Warning flow

Alternator "L" terminal → I/conn [CN-2 (13)] → MCU alternator voltage [CN-52 (27)]
→ Cluster charging warning lamp (via CAN interface)

(2) Charging flow

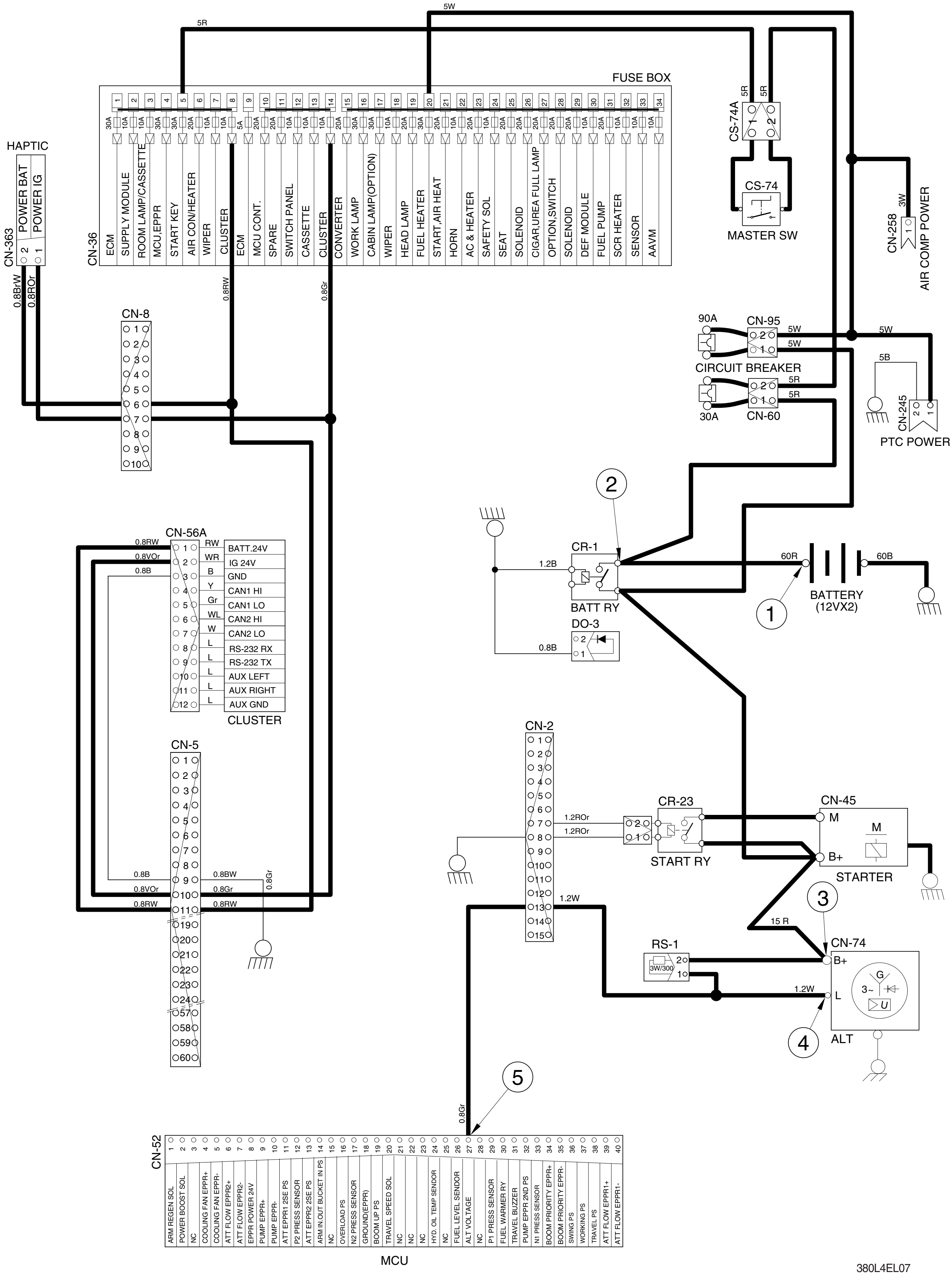
Alternator "B^+" terminal → Starter [CN-45 (B+)] → Battery relay
→ Battery (+) terminal
→ Circuit breaker [CN-60] → Master switch [CS-74A]
→ Fuse box [No. 1~8]
→ Circuit breaker [CN-95] → Fuse box [No. 15~34]

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
Run	ON	① - GND (battery voltage) ② - GND (battery relay) ③ - GND (alternator B^+ terminal) ④ - GND (alternator L terminal) ⑤ - GND (MCU)	20~25V

※ GND : Ground

CHARGING CIRCUIT



380L4EL07

4. HEAD AND WORK LIGHT CIRCUIT

1) OPERATING FLOW

Fuse box (No.19) → Head light relay [CR-13 (30, 86)]
Fuse box (No.16) → Work light relay [CR-4 (30, 86)]

(1) Head light switch ON

Head light switch ON [CN-376 (13)] → Head light relay [CR-13 (85) → (87)]
→ Head light ON [CL-3 (2), CL-4 (1), CL-24 (2)]
→ I/conn [CN-7 (1)] → Cigar light [CL-2]
→ I/conn [CN-5 (60)] → Radio & USB player illumination ON [CN-27A (9)]
→ Hour meter [CN-48 (4)]

(2) Work light switch ON

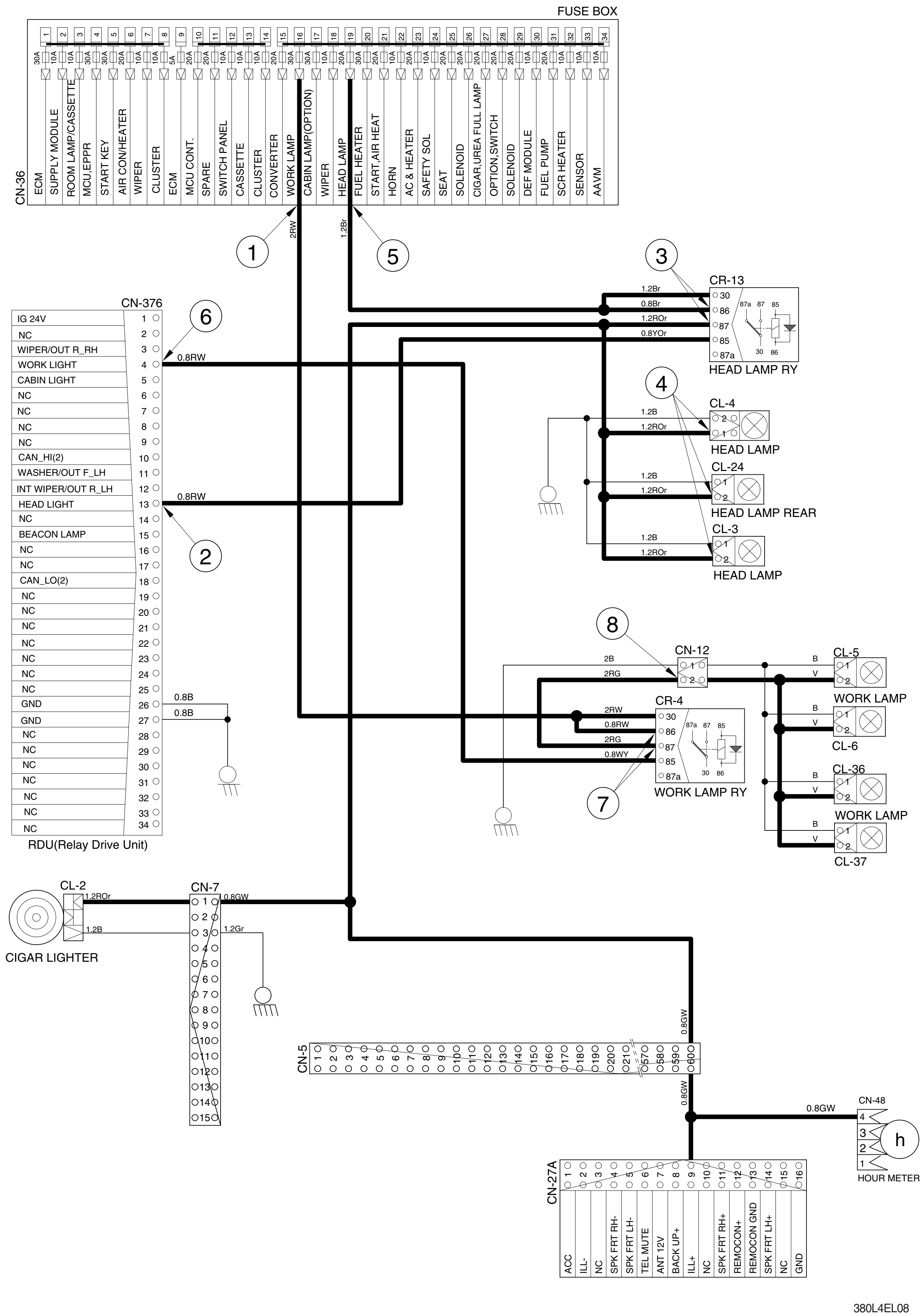
Work light switch ON [CN-376 (4)] → Work light relay [CR-4 (85) → (87)]
→ I/conn [CN-12 (2)] → Work light ON [CL-5 (2), CL-6 (2), CL-36 (2), CL-37 (2)]

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
STOP	ON	① - GND (fuse box) ② - GND (head light switch power output) ③ - GND (head light relay) ④ - GND (head light) ⑤ - GND (fuse box) ⑥ - GND (work light switch power output) ⑦ - GND (work light relay) ⑧ - GND (work light)	20~25V

※ GND : Ground

HEAD AND WORK LIGHT CIRCUIT



5. BEACON LAMP AND CAB LIGHT CIRCUIT

1) OPERATING FLOW

Fuse box (No.28) → Beacon lamp relay [CR-45 (2, 3)]
Fuse box (No.17) → Cab light relay [CR-9 (30, 86)]

(1) Beacon lamp switch ON

Beacon lamp switch ON [CN-376 (15)] → Beacon lamp relay [CR-45 (1)→(5)]
→ I/conn [CN-5 (50)] → I/conn [CN-10 (10)] → Beacon lamp ON [CL-7]

(2) Cab light switch ON

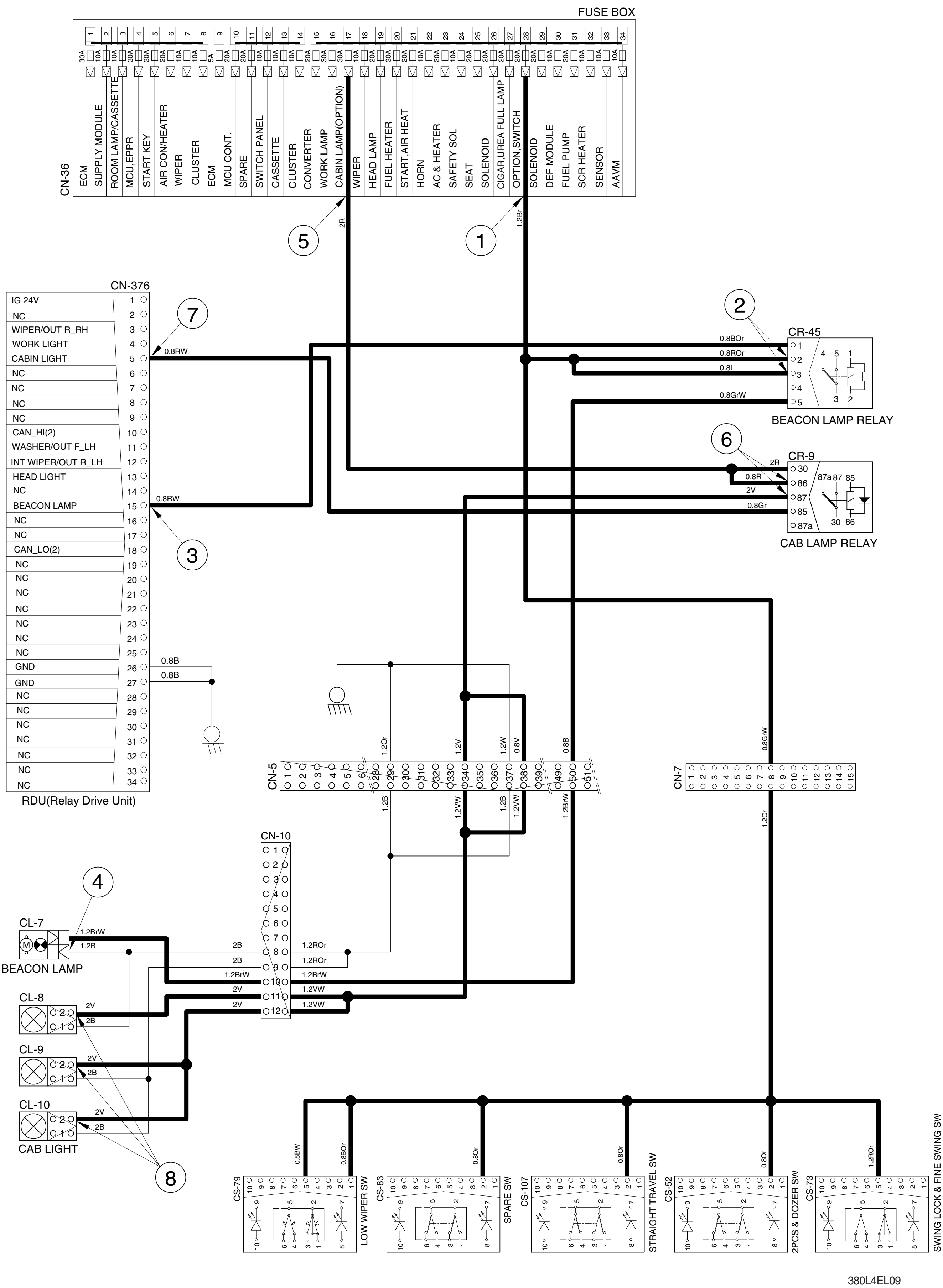
Cab light switch ON [CN-376 (5)] → Cab lamp relay [CR-9 (85)→(87)]
→ I/conn [CN-5 (34, 38)] → I/conn [CN-10 (11)] → Cab light ON [CL-8 (2)]
→ I/conn [CN-10 (12)] → Cab light ON [CL-9 (2), CL-10 (2)]

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
STOP	ON	① - GND (fuse box) ② - GND (beacon lamp relay) ③ - GND (beacon lamp switch power output) ④ - GND (beacon lamp) ⑤ - GND (fuse box) ⑥ - GND (cab light relay) ⑦ - GND (cab lamp switch power output) ⑧ - GND (cab light)	20~25V

※ GND : Ground

BEACON LAMP AND CAB LIGHT CIRCUIT



6. WIPER AND WASHER CIRCUIT

1) OPERATING FLOW

(1) Key switch ON

Fuse box (No.12) → Relay drive unit [CN-376 (1)]

Fuse box (No.7) → I/conn [CN-5 (18)] → I/conn [CN-17 (5)] → Wiper motor controller [CN-141(7)]
→ Wiper motor [CN-21(4)]

Fuse box (No.18) → I/conn [CN-5 (16)] → I/conn [CN-17 (4)] → Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (6)]
→ Low wiper motor [CN-407 (3)]
→ Washer pump [CN-22 (2)]

(2) Wiper switch ON (Intermittent)

Wiper switch ON [CN-376 (12)] → I/conn [CN-5 (20)] → I/conn [CN-17 (8)]
→ Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (10)→(3)] → Wiper motor [CN-21 (6)] → Intermittently operating

(3) Wiper switch ON (continual)

Wiper switch ON [CN-376 (3)] → I/conn[CN-5 (15)] → I/conn[CN-17 (2)]
→ Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (2) → (4)] → Wiper motor [CN-21 (2)] → Continual operating

(4) Washer switch ON

Washer switch ON [CN-376 (11)] → I/conn [CN-5 (17)] → I/conn [CN-17 (7)]
→ Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (9) → (8)] → I/conn [CN-17 (6)] → I/conn [CN-5 (19)]
→ Washer pump [CN-22 (1)] → Washer operating
Wiper switch ON [CN-376 (3)] → I/conn[CN-5 (15)] → I/conn[CN-17 (2)]
→ Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (2) → (4)] → Wiper motor [CN-21 (2)] → Continual operating

(5) Auto parking (when switch OFF)

Switch OFF [CN-376 (3, 12)] → Wiper motor parking position by wiper motor controller

2) OPERATING FLOW (LOW WIPER)

(1) Key switch ON

Fuse box (No. 28) → I/conn [CN-7 (8)] → Low wiper switch [CS-79 (1, 5)]

(2) Wiper switch ON (1st)

Wiper switch ON [CS-79 (2 → 3)] → I/conn [CN-7 (4)] → Wiper motor [CN-407 (1)] → Wiper operating

(3) Wiper switch ON (2nd)

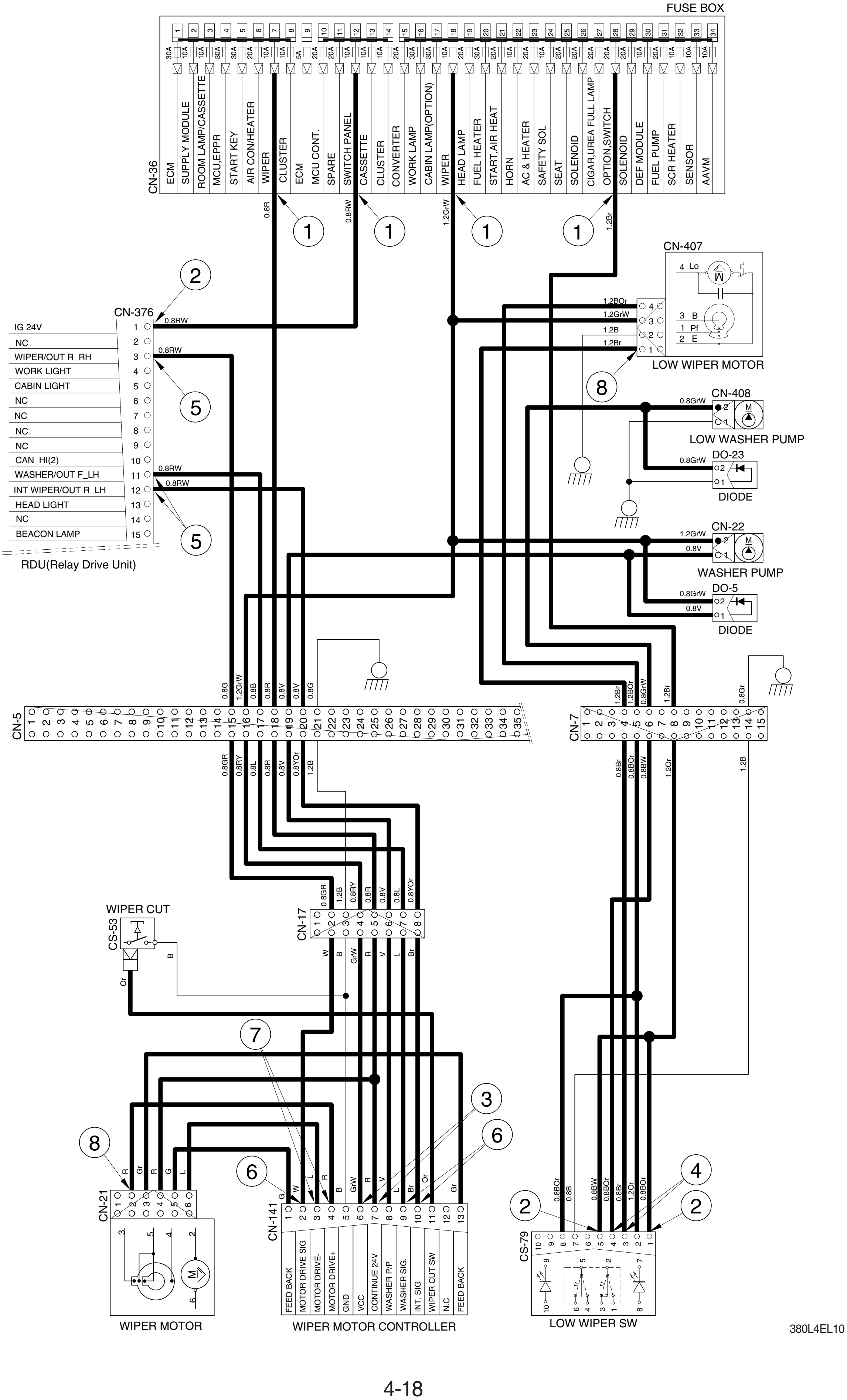
Wiper switch ON [CS-79 (5 → 4)] → I/conn [CN-7 (6)] → Washer pump [CN-407 (2)] → Washer operating
Wiper switch ON [CS-79 (2 → 3)] → I/conn [CN-7 (4)] → Wiper motor [CN-407 (1)] → Wiper operating

3) CHECK POINT

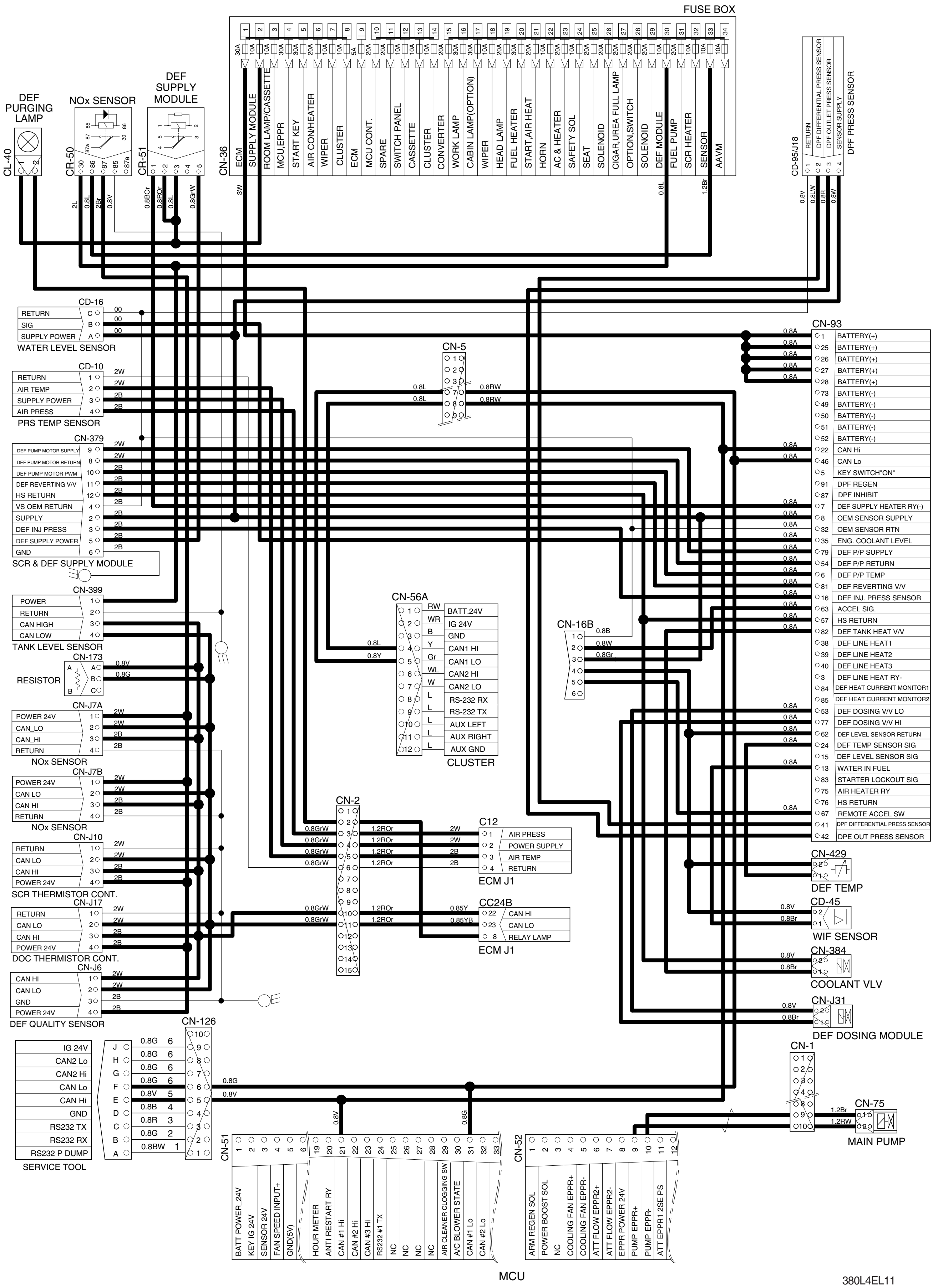
Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
STOP	ON	① - GND (fuse box) ② - GND (switch power input) ③ - GND (wiper power input) ④ - GND (switch power output)	20~25V
		⑤ - GND (switch power output) ⑥ - GND (wiper power input)	0 ~ 5V
		⑦ - GND (wiper power output) ⑧ - GND (low wiper motor)	24V

※ GND : Ground

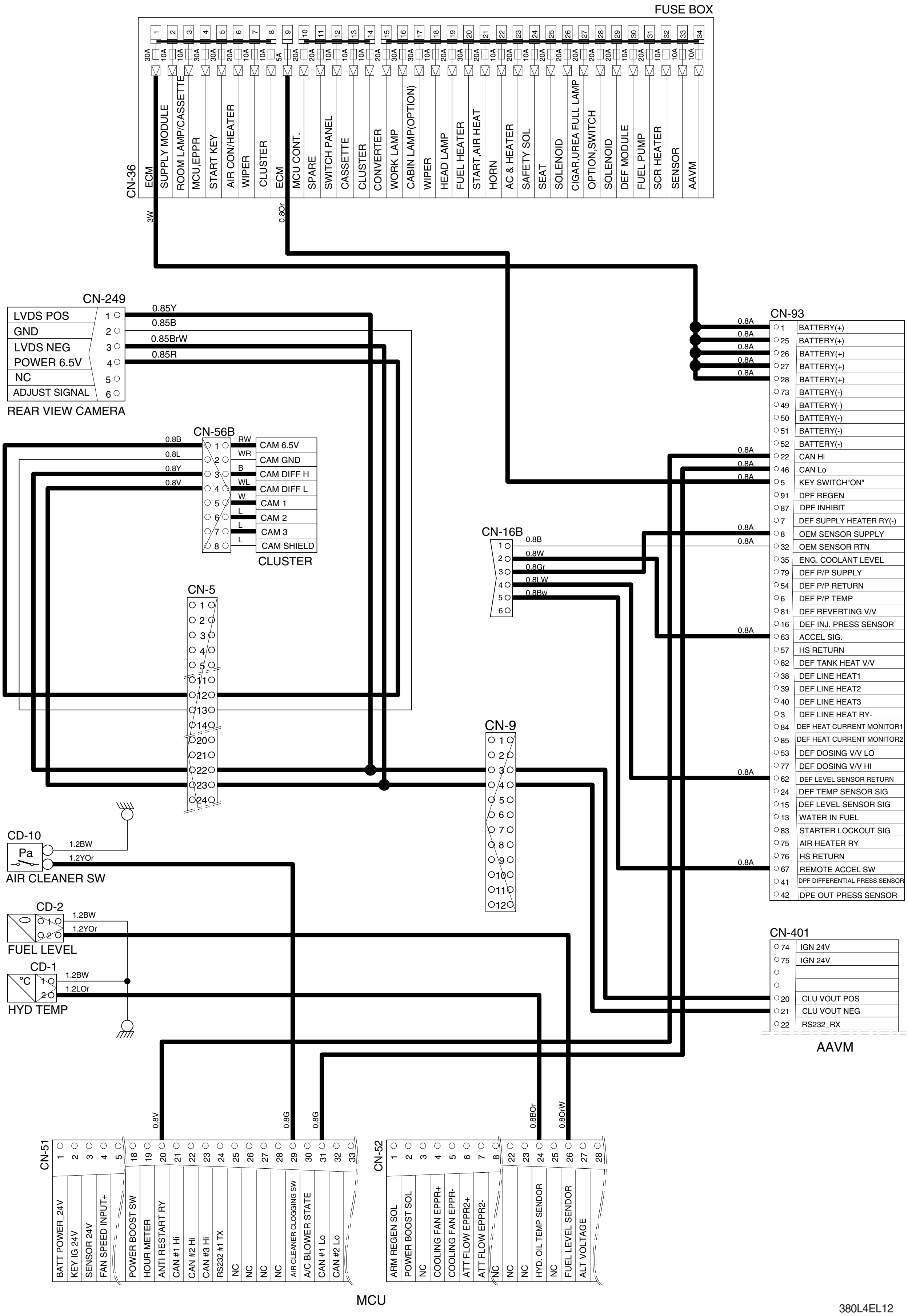
WIPER AND WASHER CIRCUIT



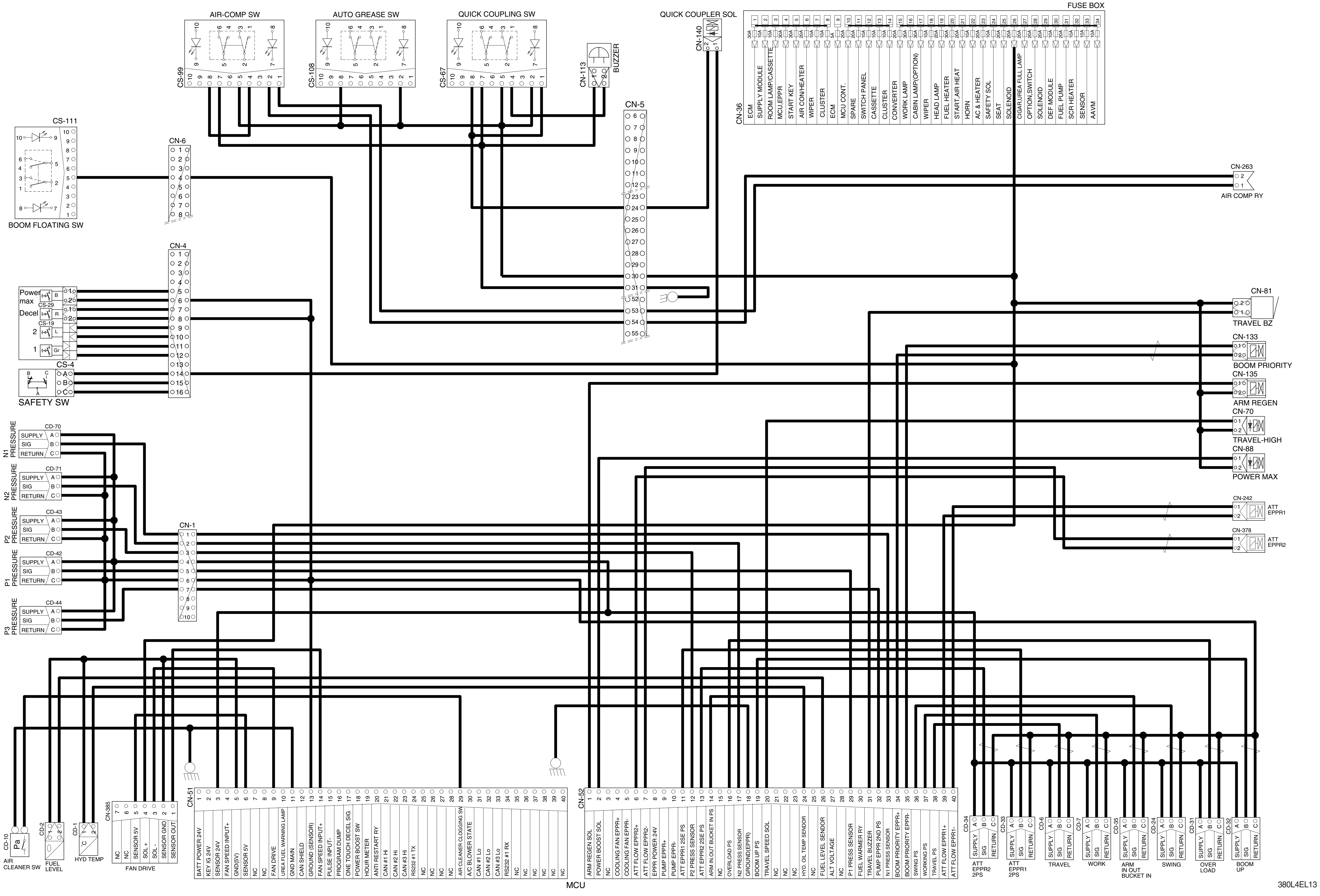
CONTROLLER CIRCUIT



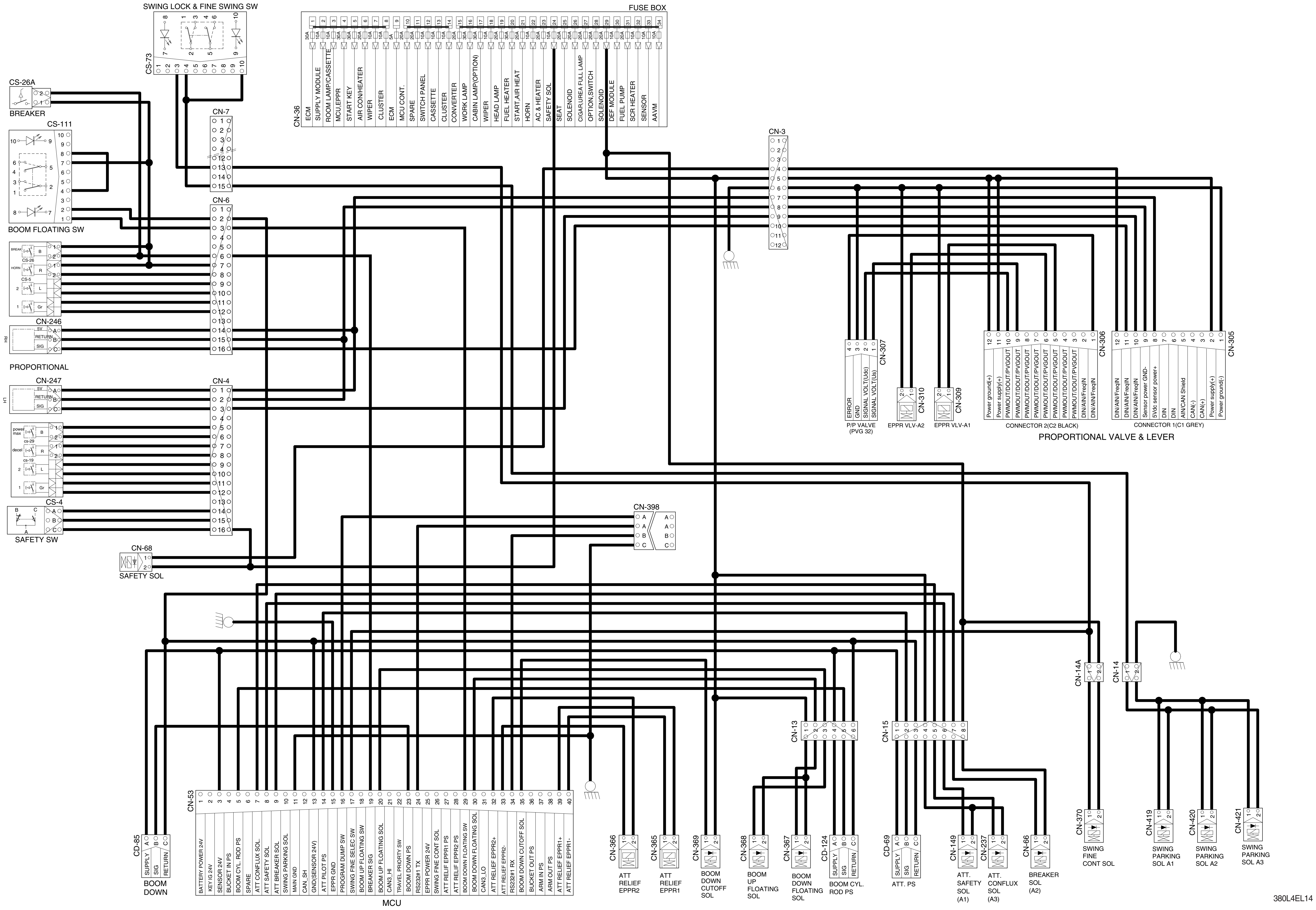
MONITORING CIRCUIT



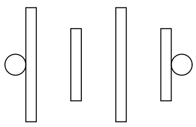
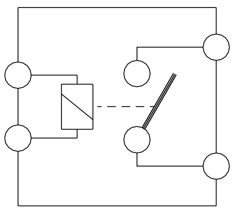
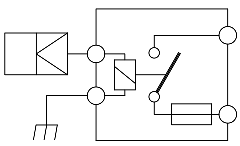
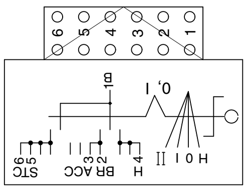
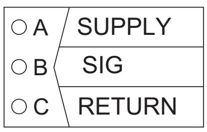
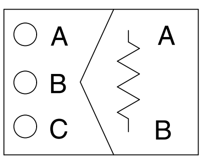
ELECTRIC CIRCUIT FOR HYDRAULIC (1/2)

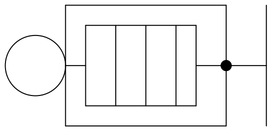
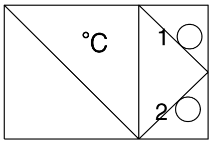
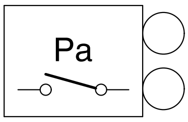
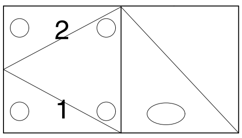
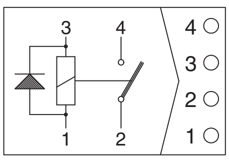
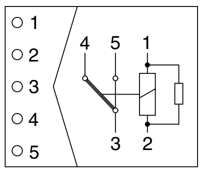


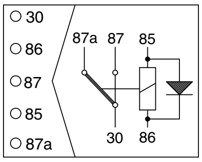
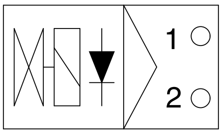
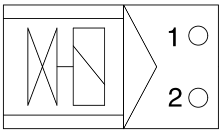
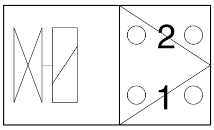
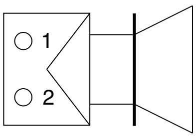
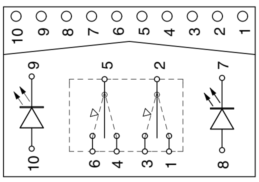
ELECTRIC CIRCUIT FOR HYDRAULIC (2/2)

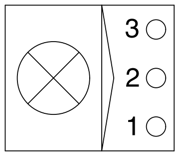
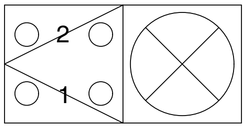
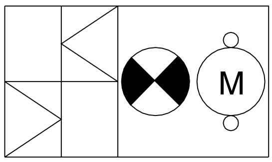
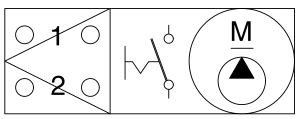
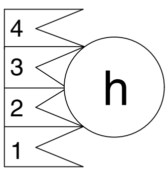
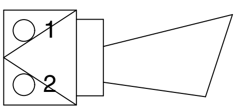


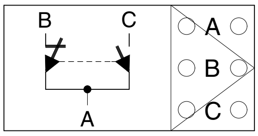
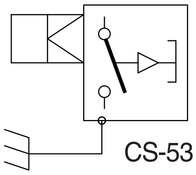
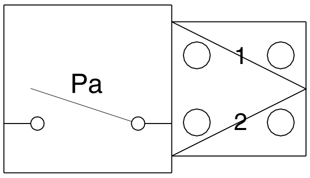
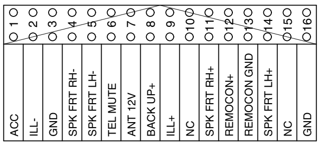
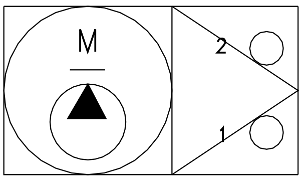
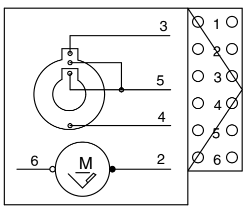
GROUP 3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT SPECIFICATION

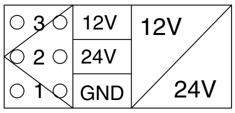
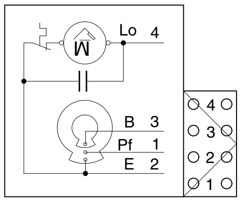
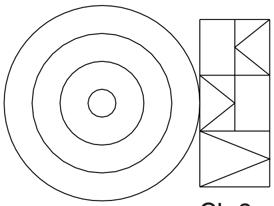
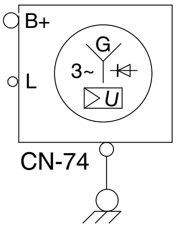
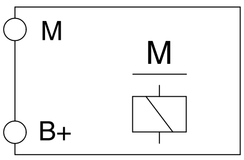
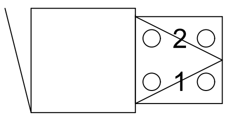
Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Battery		12V × 160Ah (2EA)	※ Check specific gravity 1.280 over : Over charged 1.280 ~ 1.250 : Normal 1.250 below : Recharging
Battery relay	 CR-1	Rated load : 24V 100A (continuity) 1000A (30seconds)	※ Check coil resistance(M4 to M4) Normal : About 50 Ω ※ Check contact Normal : ∞ Ω
Glow plug relay	 CR-24	24V 200A	※ Check contact Normal : 0.942 Ω (For terminal 1-GND)
Start key	 CS-2A	B-BR : 24V 1A B-ACC : 24V 10A B-ST : 24V 40A	※ Check contact OFF : ∞ Ω (for each terminal) ON : 0 Ω (for terminal 1-3 and 1-2) START : 0 Ω (for terminal 1-6)
Pressure sensor	 CD-6 CD-7 CD-24 CD-31 CD-32 CD-33 CD-34 CD-35 CD-42 CD-43 CD-44 CD-69 CD-70 CD-71 CD-85 CD-90 CD-124	8~30V	※ Check contact Normal : 0.1 Ω
Resistor	 CN-173 CN-174	4W	※ Check resistance A-B : 120 Ω

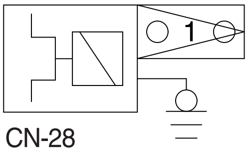
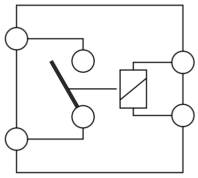
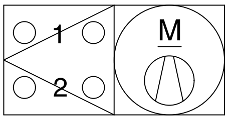
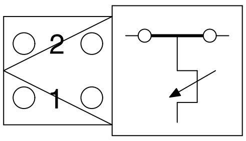
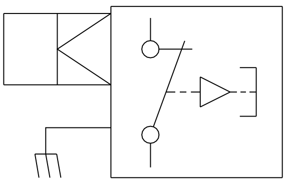
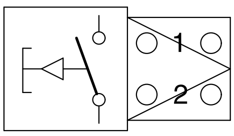
Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Glow plug	 CN-80	24V 200A	※ Check resistance 0.25~0.12 Ω
Temperature sensor (hydraulic)	 CD-1	-	※ Check resistance 50˚C : 804 Ω 80˚C : 310 Ω 100˚C : 180 Ω
Air cleaner pressure switch	 CD-10	N.O TYPE	※ Check contact High level : ∞ Ω Low level : 0 Ω
Fuel sender	 CD-2	-	※ Check resistance Full : 50 Ω 6/12 : 350 Ω 11/12 : 100 Ω 5/12 : 400 Ω 10/12 : 150 Ω 4/12 : 450 Ω 9/12 : 200 Ω 3/12 : 500 Ω 8/12 : 250 Ω 2/12 : 550 Ω 7/12 : 300 Ω 1/12 : 600 Ω Empty warning : 700 Ω
Relay (A/C blower)		24V 20A	※ Check resistance Normal : About 200 Ω (for terminal 1-3) 0 Ω (for terminal 2-4)
Relay	 CR-2 CR-5 CR-36 CR-39 CR-45 CR-51	24V 16A	※ Check resistance Normal : About 160 Ω (for terminal 1-2) 0 Ω (for terminal 3-4) ∞ Ω (for terminal 3-5)

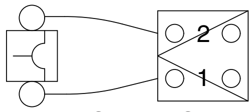
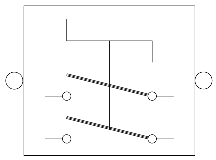
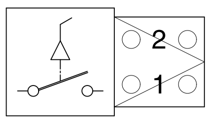
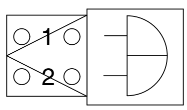
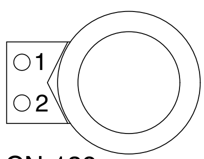
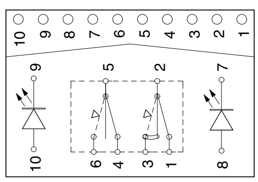
Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Relay	 CR-4 CR-7 CR-9 CR-13 CR-35 CR-46 CR-50 CR-52	24V 16A	※ Check resistance Normal : About 160 Ω (for terminal 85-86) 0 Ω (for terminal 30-87a) ∞ Ω (for terminal 30-87)
Solenoid valve	 CN-66 CN-68 CN-70 CN-88 CN-135 CN-140 CN-149 CN-237 CN-262A CN-262B CN-367 CN-368 CN-369 CN-370 CN-419 CN-420 CN-421	24V 1A	※ Check resistance Normal : 15~25 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
EPPR valve	 CN-75 CN-133 CN-154 CN-242 CN-309 CN-310 CN-365 CN-366 CN-378	700mA	※ Check resistance Normal : 15~25 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
EPPR valve	 CN-384 CN-J31	700mA	※ Check resistance Normal : 15~25 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
Speaker	 CN-23(LH) CN-24(RH)	20W	※ Check resistance Normal : A few Ω
Switch (locking type)	 CS-52 CS-67 CS-83 CS-99 CS-107 CS-108 CS-111	24V 1.5A	※ Check contact Normal ON : 0 Ω (for terminal 3-7, 4-8) ∞ Ω (for terminal 7-9, 8-10) OFF : ∞ Ω (for terminal 3-7, 4-8) 0 Ω (for terminal 7-9, 8-10)

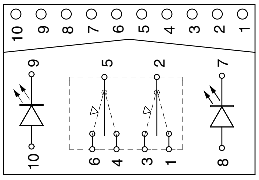
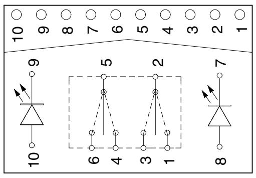
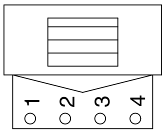
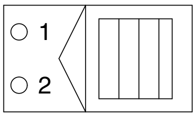
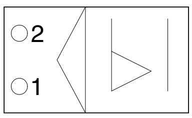
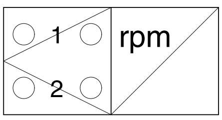
Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Room lamp	 CL-1	24V 10W	※ Check disconnection Normal : 1.0 Ω ON : 0 Ω (For terminal 1-2) ∞ Ω (For terminal 1-3) OFF : ∞ Ω (For terminal 1-2) 0 Ω (For terminal 1-3)
Head lamp, Work lamp, Cab lamp	 CL-3 CL-4 CL-5 CL-6 CL-8 CL-9 CL-10 CL-24 CL-36 CL-37	24V 65W (H3 Type)	※ Check disconnection Normal : 1.2 Ω
Beacon lamp	 CL	21V 70W (H1 Type)	※ Check disconnection Normal : A few Ω
Fuel filler pump	 CN-61	24V 10A 35 ℓ /min	※ Check resistance Normal : 1.0 Ω
Hour meter	 CN-48	16~32V	※ Check operation Supply power(24V) to terminal No.2 and connect terminal No.1 and ground
Horn	 CN-20 CN-25	DC22~28V 2A	※ Check operation Supply power(24V) to each terminal and connect ground.

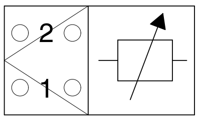
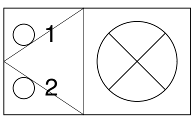
Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Safety switch	 CS-20	24V 15A (N.C TYPE)	※ Check contact Normal : 1.0 Ω ON : 0 Ω (for terminal A-B) ∞ Ω (for terminal A-C) OFF : ∞ Ω (for terminal A-B) 0 Ω (for terminal A-C)
Wiper cut switch	 CS-53	24V (N.O TYPE)	※ Check contact Normal : 0 Ω (one pin to ground)
Receiver dryer	 CN-29	24V 2.5A	※ Check contact Normal : ∞ Ω
Radio & USB player	 CN-27A	24V 2A	※ Check voltage 20~25V (for terminal 1-3, 3-8)
Washer pump	 CN-22 CN-408	24V 3.8A	※ Check contact Normal : 10.7 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
Wiper motor	 CN-21	24V 2A	※ Check disconnection Normal : 7 Ω (for terminal 2-6)

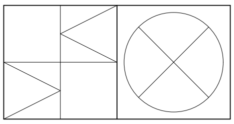
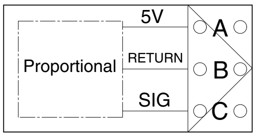
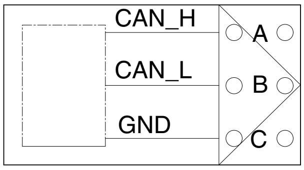
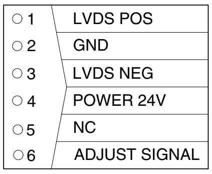
Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
DC/DC Converter	 CN-138	12V 3A	※ Check voltage 24V (for terminal 1-2) 12V (for terminal 1-3)
Low wiper motor	 CN-407	24V	-
Cigar lighter	 CL-2	24V 5A 1.4W	※ Check coil resistance Normal : About 1M Ω ※ Check contact Normal : ∞ Ω Operating time : 5~15sec
Alternator	 CN-74	Denso 24V 95A	※ Check contact Normal : 0 Ω (for terminal B^+-L) Normal : 24~27.5V
Starter	 CN-45	Denso 24V 7.8kW	※ Check contact Normal : 0.1 Ω
Travel alarm	 CN-81	24V 0.5A	※ Check contact Normal : 5.2 Ω

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Air conditioner compressor	 CN-28	24V 79W	※ Check contact Normal : 13.4 Ω
Start relay	 CR-23	24V 300A	※ Check contact Normal : 0.94 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
Blower motor	 	24V 9.5A	※ Check resistance Normal : 2.5 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
Duct sensor (switch)	 	1˚C OFF 4˚C ON	※ Check resistance Normal : 0 Ω (for terminal 1-2), the atmosphere temp : Over 4˚C
Door switch	 CS-1	24V 2W	※ Check resistance Normal : About 5M Ω
Switch (power max, one touch decel, horn, breaker)	 CS-5 CS-19 CS-26 CS-29	24V 6A	※ Check resistance Normal : ∞ Ω

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Circuit breaker	 CN-60 CN-95	CN-60 : 30A CN-95 : 90A	※ Check disconnection Normal : 0 Ω (connect ring terminal and check resist between terminal 1 and 2)
Master switch	 CS-74A, CS-74B	6-36V	※ Check disconnection Normal : 0.1 Ω
Breaker switch	 CS-26A	24V	※ Check resistance Normal : ∞ Ω
Quick clamp buzzer	 CN-113	24V 200mA 107±4dB	-
Socket	 CN-139	12V 10A	-
Switch	 CS-79	24V 8A	※ Check contact Normal ON : 0 Ω (for terminal 1-2, 4-5) ∞ Ω (for terminal 2-3, 5-6) OFF : ∞ Ω (for terminal 1-2, 4-5) 0 Ω (for terminal 2-3, 5-6)

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Switch	 CS-100	24V 8A	※ Check contact Normal OFF : ∞ Ω (for terminal 1-2, 1-3, 4-5, 5-6)
Switch	 CS-73	24V 8A	※ Check contact Normal OFF : ∞ Ω (for terminal 1-2, 1-3, 4-5, 5-6)
Fuel heater	 CN-96	-	-
DEF/AdBlue® line heater	 CN-381 CN-382 CN-383	-	-
WIF sensor	 CD-45	-	-
Fan speed sensor	 CD-52	-	-

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
DEF/AdBlue® sensor	1 POWER 24V 2 CAN LO 3 CAN HI 4 RETURN CN-399 CN-J6 CN-J7A CN-J7B CN-J10 CN-J17	-	
PRS temp sensor	1 RETURN 2 AIR TEMP 3 SUPPLY POWER 4 AIR PRESS CD-10	-	-
Water level sensor	C SIGNAL B RETURN(29) A SUPPLY POWER 5V(72) CD-16	-	-
Temperature sensor (A/C incar, A/C ambient, DEF/AdBlue®)	 CN-429	-	
Proportional valve sensor	1 SIG. V(Us) 2 SIG. V(Udc) 3 GND 4 ERROR CN-307	-	-
DEF/AdBlue® fill up warning lamp	 CL-40	-	

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
DEF/AdBlue® fill up warning lamp (LED)	 CL-41	-	-
Proportional valve sensor	 CN-246 CN-247	-	-
Start button	 CS-2B	-	-
Camera	 CN-249 CN-402 CN-403 CN-404 CN-405	-	-

GROUP 4 CONNECTORS

1. CONNECTOR DESTINATION

Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
CN-1	AMP	10	I/conn (Frame harness-Pump PS harness)	S816-010002	S816-110002
CN-2	-	15	I/conn (Frame harness-Engine harness)	121583-0135	368301-1
CN-3	TYCO	12	I/conn (Frame harness-Pro vlv harness)	174661-2	368537-1
CN-4	AMP	16	I/conn (Console harness LH-Frame harness)	368047-1	368050-1
CN-5	DEUTSCH	60	I/conn (Side harness RH-Frame harness)	DRB16-60SAE-L018	DRB12-60P-L018
CN-6	AMP	16	I/conn (Console harness RH-Frame harness)	368050-1	368047-1
CN-7	AMP	15	I/conn (Console harness RH-Frame harness)	2-85262-1	368301-1
CN-8	AMP	10	I/conn (Console harness RH-Frame harness)	S816-010002	174655-2
CN-9	DEUTSCH	12	I/conn (AAVM harness-Frame harness)	DT06-12SA-P021	DT04-12PA-P021
CN-10	DEUTSCH	12	I/conn (Side harness RH-Cab harness)	DT06-12S-EP06	DT04-12PA-P021
CN-11	DEUTSCH	8	I/conn (Frame harness-Aircon harness)	DT06-8S-EP06	-
CN-12	DEUTSCH	2	I/conn (Frame harness-Boom wire harness)	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E004
CN-13	AMP	8	Boom floating	174262-2	174264-2
CN-15	AMP	8	I/conn (Frame harness-2 way harness)	174982-2	174984-2
CN-16	AMP	6	Emergency engine start & speed control	S816-006002	S816-106002
CN-17	AMP	8	I/conn (Side harness RH-Wiper harness)	S816-008002	S816-108002
CN-18	AMP	2	Washer tank 2	174352-2	174354-2
CN-20	MOLEX	2	Horn	36825-0211	-
CN-21	AMP	6	Wiper motor	S810-006202	-
CN-22	KET	2	Washer tank 1	MG640605	-
CN-23	KET	2	Speaker-LH	MG610070	-
CN-24	KET	2	Speaker-RH	MG610070	-
CN-25	MOLEX	2	Horn	36825-0211	-
CN-27A	KUM	16	Radio & USB player	PK145-16017	-
CN-27B	AMP	8	Radio & USB player	-	174984-2
CN-28	KUM	1	Aircon compressor	NMWP01F-B	-
CN-29	KET	2	Receiver dryer	MG640795	-
CN-36	-	-	Fuse & relay box	21Q7-10910	-
CN-45	RING-TERM	-	Starter motor B^+	S820-108000	-
CN-48	KET	1	Hour meter	2-520193-2	-
CN-51	DEUTSCH	40	MCU	DRC26-40SA	-
CN-52	DEUTSCH	40	MCU	DRC26-40SB	-
CN-53	DEUTSCH	40	MCU	DRC26-40SC	-
CN-56A	AMP	12	Cluster	-	174663-2
CN-56B	AMP	8	Cluster	-	174984-2
CN-60	YAZAKI	2	Circuit breaker	-	7222-4220-30
CN-61	DEUTSCH	2	Fuel filler pump	DT06-2S-EP06	-

Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
CN-66	DEUTSCH	2	Breaker solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-68	DEUTSCH	2	Safety solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-70	DEUTSCH	2	Travel high solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-74	RING-TERM	1	Alternator "L" terminal	S820-105000	-
CN-74	RING-TERM	1	Alternator "B" terminal	S820-108000	-
CN-75	AMP	2	Pump EPPR valve	S816-002002	-
CN-80	RING-TERM	-	Glow plug	S820-306000	-
CN-81	DEUTSCH	2	Travel buzzer solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-88	DEUTSCH	2	Power max solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-93	DELPHI	60	ECM	13964577	-
CN-95	YAZAKI	2	Circuit breaker	-	7222-4220-30
CN-100	KET	1	ECM ground	MG640944-5	-
CN-113	KET	2	Buzzer	MG651205-5	-
CN-125	Econoseal J	4	GPS connector	S816-004002	S816-104002
CN-125A	DEUTSCH	12	GPS	DT06-12S-P021	DT04-12PA-P021
CN-126	AMP	10	I/conn (Frame harness-Service tool)	2-1418390-1	S816-110002
CN-126	DEUTSCH	4	RS232	DT06-4S	DT06-4P
CN-133	DEUTSCH	2	Boom priority solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-135	DEUTSCH	2	Arm regeneration solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-138	FASTEN	3	DC/DC Converter	S810-003202	-
CN-139	FASTEN	2	12V socket	172434-2	-
CN-140	DEUTSCH	2	Quick clamp solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-141	AMP	13	Wiper motor controller	172498-1	-
CN-147	AMP	4	Fuel heater	2-967325-3	-
CN-149	DEUTSCH	2	Attach safety solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-154	DEUTSCH	2	Cooling fan	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-156	DEUTSCH	2	Air seat heat	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CN-157	AMP	1	Antena power	S822-014002	-
CN-173	DEUTSCH	3	Resistor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CN-174	DEUTSCH	3	Resistor	DT06-3S-EP06	DT04-3P-EP10
CN-237	DEUTSCH	2	Attach conflux solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-242	DEUTSCH	2	Attach EPPR 1	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-245	FCI	4	PTC power	180900-0	-
CN-246	DEUTSCH	3	Proportional valve-RH	DT06-3S	DT04-3P
CN-247	DEUTSCH	3	Proportional valve-LH	DT06-3S	DT04-3P
CN-249	DEUTSCH	4	Rear view camera	DT06-4S-E005	DT04-4P-E005
CN-258	KET	1	Air compressor power	MG640944-5	MG650943-5
CN-262	DEUTSCH	2	Straight travel solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-262A	DEUTSCH	2	Straight travel solenoid 1	DT06-2S-EP06	-

Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
CN-262B	DEUTSCH	2	Straight travel solenoid 2	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-263	DEUTSCH	2	Air compressor relay	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-305	DEUTSCH	12	Proportional-Connector-1	DTM06-12SA	-
CN-306	DEUTSCH	12	Proportional-Connector-2	DTM06-12SB	-
CN-307	DEUTSCH	3	Proportional-Service tool	DT06-3S-EP06	DT04-3P-E005
CN-308	AMP	4	Proportional-PVG32	2-967059-1	-
CN-309	DEUTSCH	2	Proportional-EPPR valve A1	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-310	DEUTSCH	2	Proportional-EPPR valve A2	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-363	AMP	12	Haptic controller	174045-2	-
CN-365	DEUTSCH	2	Attach relief EPPR valve 1	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-366	DEUTSCH	2	Attach relief EPPR valve 2	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-367	AMP	2	Boom down floating solenoid	85202-1	-
CN-368	DEUTSCH	2	Boom up floating solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-369	DEUTSCH	2	Boom down cut off solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-376	TYCO	34	Relay drive unit	4-1437290-1	-
CN-378	DEUTSCH	2	Attach EPPR 2	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-379	TYCO	12	SCR supply module	1-1703639-1	-
CN-381	DELPHI	2	DEF/AdBlue® line heater 1	12162194	-
CN-382	DELPHI	2	DEF/AdBlue® line heater 2	12162194	-
CN-383	DELPHI	2	DEF/AdBlue® line heater 3	12162194	-
CN-384	AMP	2	Coolant valve	174352-2	-
CN-385	-	7	Fan clutch	965570	-
CN-398	DEUTSCH	4	RS232	DT06-4S-E005	DT04-4P-E005
CN-399	TYCO	4	DEF/AdBlue® tank level sensor	1-967325-1	-
CN-402	DEUTSCH	6	Front view camera	DT06-6S-P021	DT04-6P-P021
CN-403	DEUTSCH	6	Rear view camera	DT06-6S-EP06	DT04-6P-EP14
CN-404	DEUTSCH	6	LH view camera	DT06-6S-EP06	DT04-6P-EP14
CN-405	DEUTSCH	6	RH view camera	DT06-6S-EP06	DT04-6P-EP14
CN-406	DEUTSCH	3	RS-232 (AAVM)	DT06-3S-EP06	DT04-3P-E005
CN-407	FCI	4	Low wiper motor	180900-0	-
CN-408	KET	2	Washer tank 2	MG640605	-
CN-419	DEUTSCH	2	Swing parking-A1	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-420	DEUTSCH	2	Swing parking-A2	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-421	DEUTSCH	2	Swing parking-A3	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-427	MOLEX	4	Reader-RMS	039012040	026013096
CN-429	DELPHI	4	CAC Out temp	12162197	-
CN-J6	DEUTSCH	12	DEF/AdBlue® quality sensor	-	DT04-12PA-P021
CN-J7A	TYCO	4	DOC NOx sensor	4-1418390-1	-
CN-J7B	TYCO	4	SCR NOx sensor	1-1418390-1	-
CN-J10	TYCO	4	SCR Thermistor	3-1418390-1	-

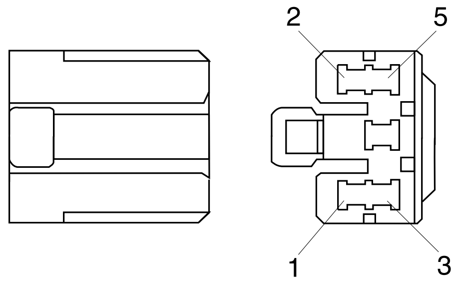
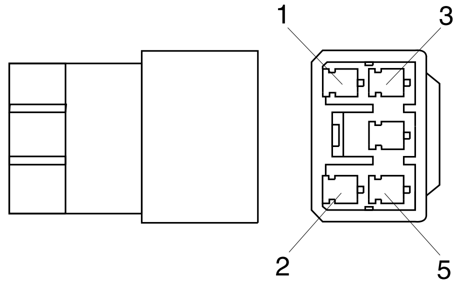
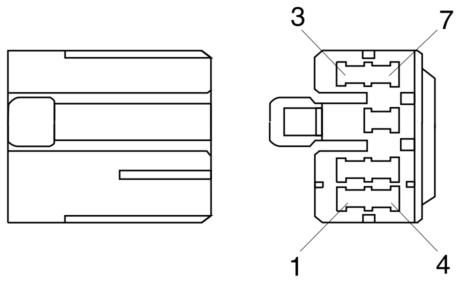
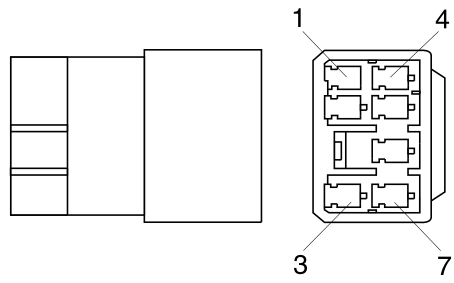
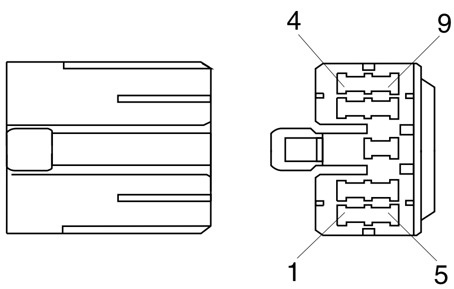
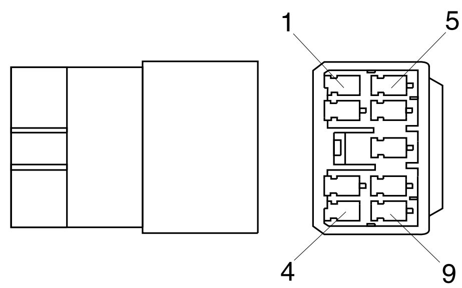
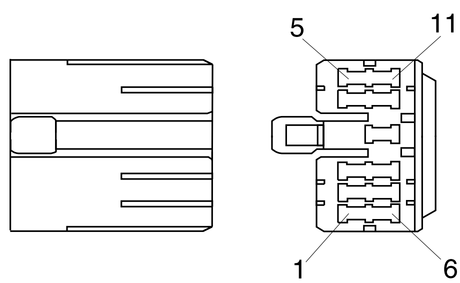
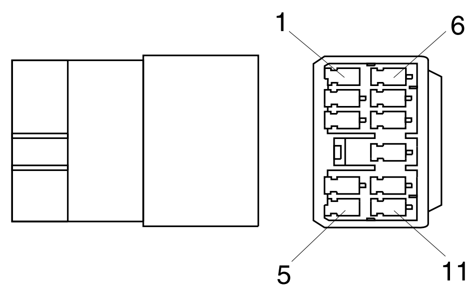
Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
CN-J17	TYCO	4	DOC Thermistor	2-1418390-1	-
CN-J31	BOSCH	2	DEF/AdBlue® dosing module	1_928_403_874	-
· Relay					
CR-1	RING-TERM	-	Battery relay	ST710289-2	-
CR-2	-	5	Horn relay	-	-
CR-4	-	5	Working lamp relay	-	-
CR-5	-	5	Anti restart relay	-	-
CR-7	-	5	Aircon compressor relay	-	-
CR-9	-	5	Cabin lamp relay	-	-
CR-12	FCI	4	Air cleaner relay	-	54200419
CR-13	-	5	Head lamp relay	-	-
CR-23	KET	2	Start relay	-	S814-102001
CR-24	RING TERM	1	Preheat relay	S822-014000	-
CR-35	-	5	Power relay	-	-
CR-36	-	5	Air preheat relay	-	-
CR-39	-	5	Starter lock out relay	-	-
CR-45	-	5	Beacon lamp relay	-	-
CR-46	-	5	Fuel warmer relay	-	-
CR-50	-	5	NO_x sensor relay	-	-
CR-51	-	5	DEF/AdBlue® module relay	-	-
CR-52	-	5	Line heater relay	-	-
· Switch					
CS-1	SHUR	1	Door switch	S822-014002	-
CS-2A	WP	6	Start key switch	S814-006100	-
CS-2B	DEUTSCH	3	Reader	DT06-3S-EP06	DT04-3P-E005
CS-4	DEUTSCH	3	Safety switch	DT06-3S	-
CS-5	DEUTSCH	2	Horn switch	-	DT04-2P
CS-19	DEUTSCH	2	One touch decel switch	-	DT04-2P
CS-26	DEUTSCH	2	Breaker switch	DT06-2S	-
CS-26A	AMP	2	Breaker pedal switch	S816-002002	S816-102002
CS-29	DEUTSCH	2	Power max switch	DT06-2S	-
CS-33	AMP	6	Emergency engine stop switch	S816-006002	S816-106002
CS-52	CARLING	10	Dozer & 2PCS boom switch	VC2-01	-
CS-53	AMP	1	Wiper cut switch	S822-014002	-
CS-67	CARLING	10	Quick clamp switch	VC2-01	-
CS-73	CARLING	10	Swing lock & fine switch	VC2-01	-
CS-74A	-	2	Master switch	4-1437290-1	S813-130201
CS-74B	DEUTSCH	2	Master switch	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CS-78	CARLING	10	Lower wiper switch	VC2-01	-
CS-83	CARLING	10	Spare switch	VC2-01	-

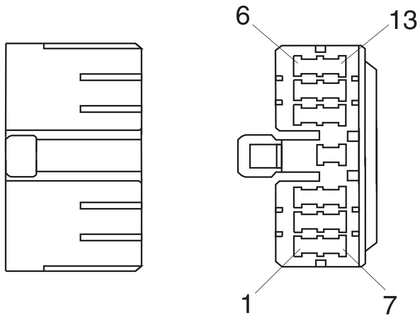
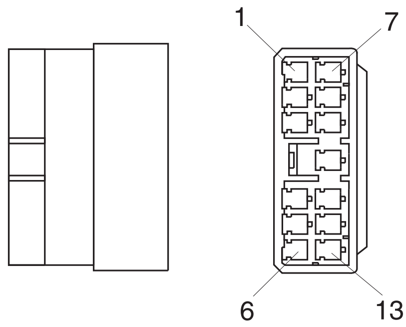
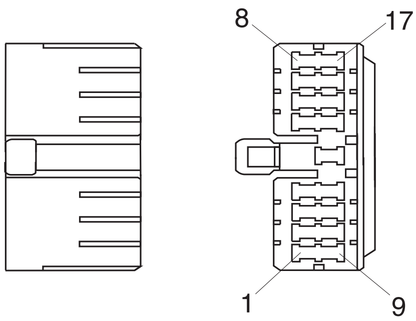
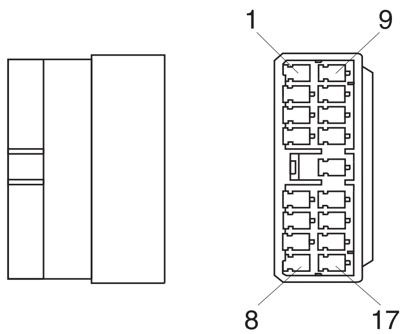
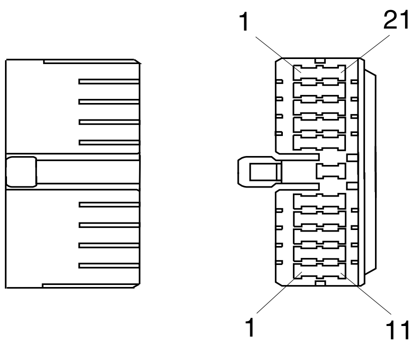
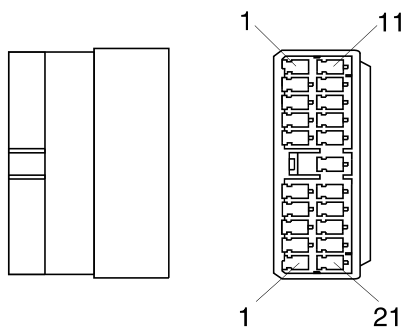
Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
CS-99	CARLING	10	Air compressor switch	VC2-01	-
CS-100	CARLING	10	SCR system cleaning switch	VC2-01	-
CS-107	CARLING	10	Travel straight switch	VC2-01	-
CS-108	CARLING	10	Auto grease switch	VC2-01	-
CS-111	CARLING	10	Boom floating switch	VC2-01	-
· Light					
CL-1	KET	3	Room lamp	MG651032	-
CL-2	AMP	1	Cigar lighter	S822-014002	S822-114002
CL-3	DEUTSCH	2	Head lamp-LH	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CL-4	DEUTSCH	2	Head lamp-RH	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CL-5	DEUTSCH	2	Work lamp-LH	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CL-6	DEUTSCH	2	Work lamp-RH	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CL-7	SHUR	1	Beacon lamp	S822-014002	S822-114002
CL-8	DEUTSCH	2	Cab light-LH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-9	DEUTSCH	2	Cab light-RH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-10	DEUTSCH	2	Cab light	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-24	DEUTSCH	2	Work lamp - rear	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CL-36	DEUTSCH	2	Work lamp - LH	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CL-37	DEUTSCH	2	Work lamp - RH	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CL-40	DEUTSCH	2	DEF/AdBlue® lamp	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CL-41	AMP	2	DEF/AdBlue® fill up warning lamp	S822-01400	-
· Sensor, sendor					
CD-1	AMP	2	Hydraulic oil temp sender	85202-1	-
CD-2	DEUTSCH	2	Fuel sender	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CD-6	DEUTSCH	3	Travel pressure switch	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-7	DEUTSCH	3	Working pressure switch	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-10	SUMITOMO	4	Air cleaner switch	6098-0144	-
CD-10	AMP	4	Air cleaner sensor	85202-1	-
CD-16	AMP	3	Water level sensor	12110293	-
CD-24	DEUTSCH	3	Swing sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-31	DEUTSCH	3	Overload sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	DT04-3P-E005
CD-32	DEUTSCH	3	Boom up sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-35	DEUTSCH	3	Arm in/out and bucket in sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-36	DEUTSCH	3	Arm out sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-42	DEUTSCH	3	Pump pressure 1	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-43	DEUTSCH	3	Pump pressure 2	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-44	DEUTSCH	3	Pump pressure 3	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-45	DEUTSCH	2	WIF sensor	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CD-52	AMP	1	Fan rpm sensor	ST730135-2	-

Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
CD-69	DEUTSCH	3	Attach pressure sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-70	DEUTSCH	3	N1 pressure sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-71	DEUTSCH	3	N2 pressure sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-85	DEUTSCH	3	Boom down sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-87	DEUTSCH	3	Bucket out sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-90	DEUTSCH	3	Arm in sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-91	DEUTSCH	3	Bucket in sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-124	DEUTSCH	3	Boom cylinder rod pressure snensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-

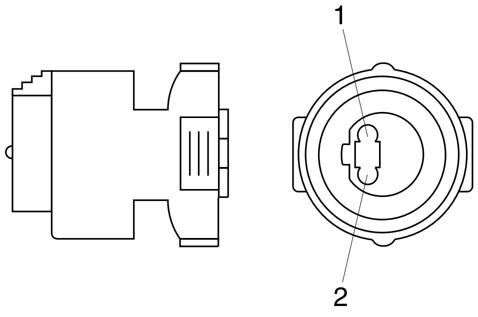
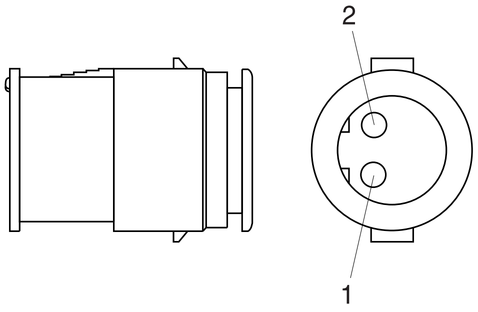
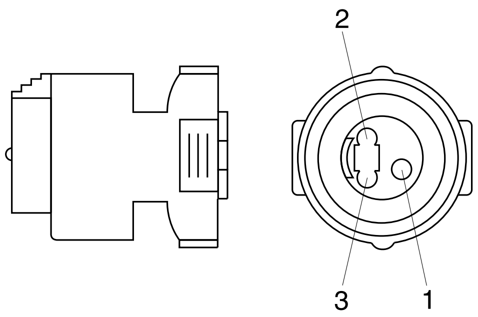
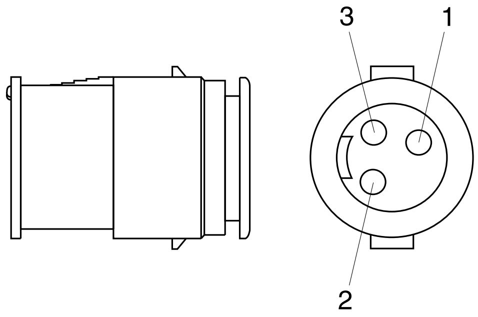
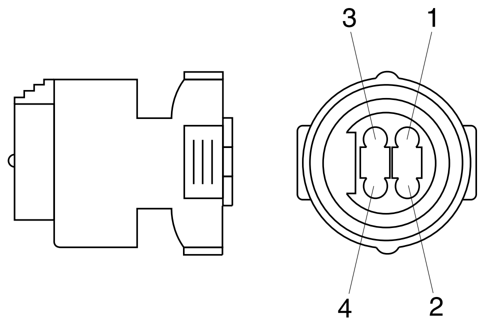
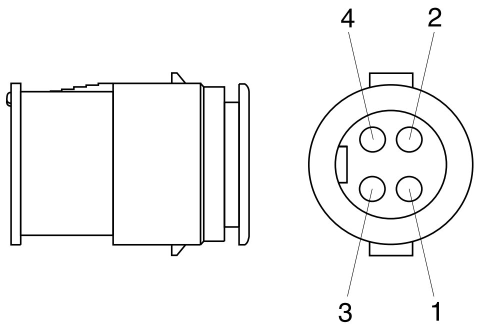
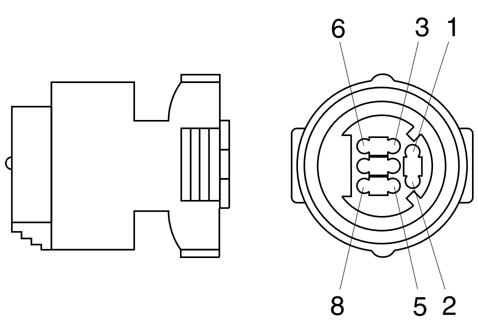
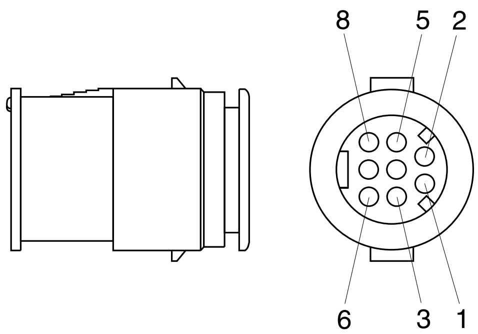
2. CONNECTION TABLE FOR CONNECTORS

1) PA TYPE CONNECTOR

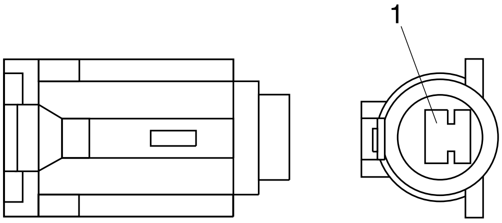
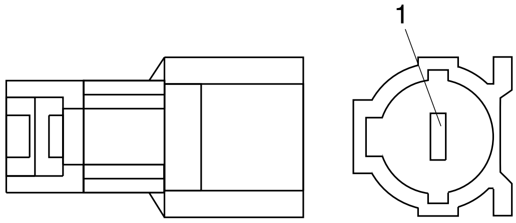
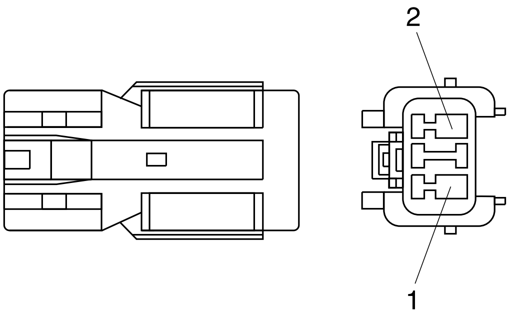
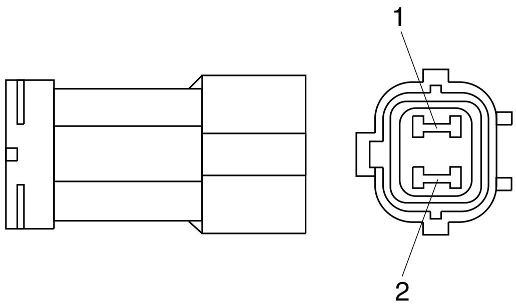
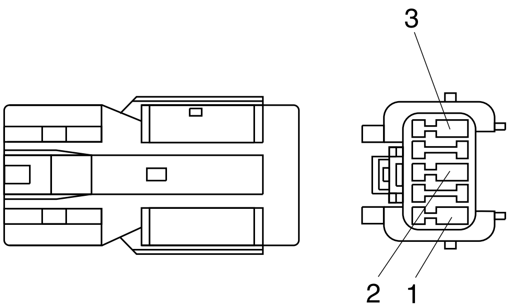
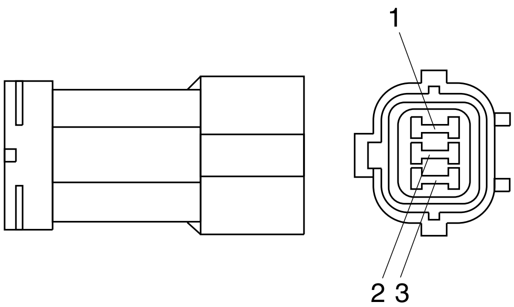
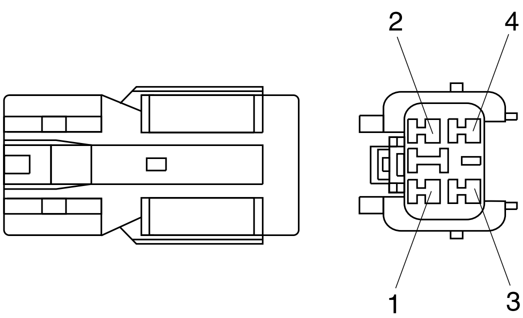
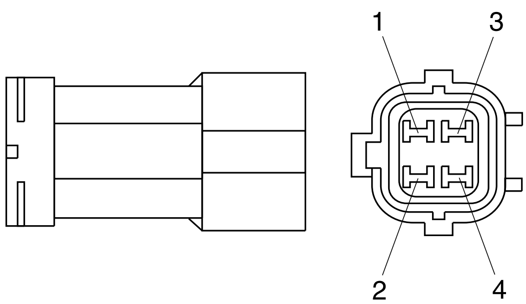
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
5	 S811-005002	 S811-105002
7	 S811-007002	 S811-107002
9	 S811-009002	 3S811-109002
11	 S811-011002	 S811-111002

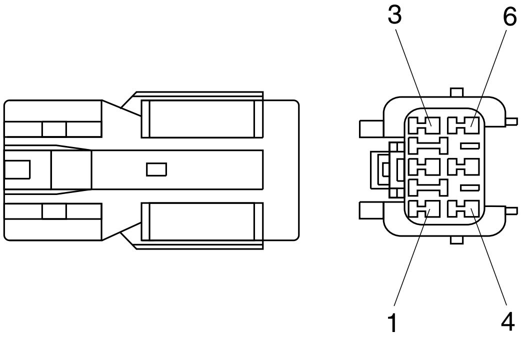
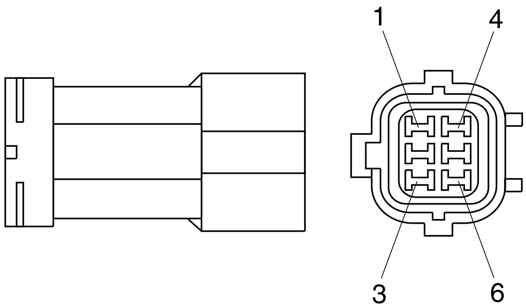
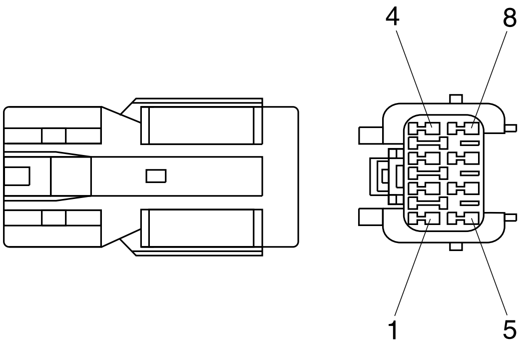
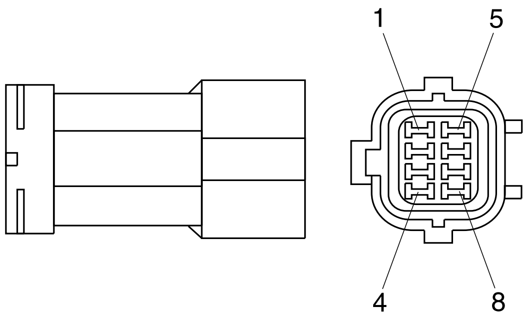
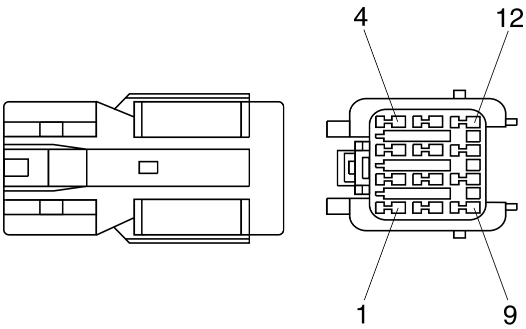
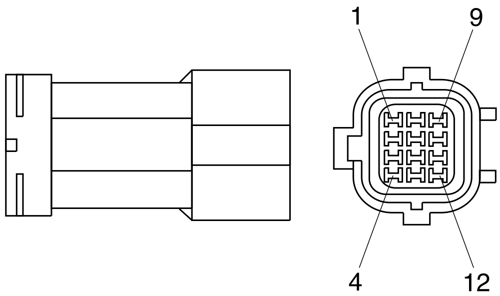
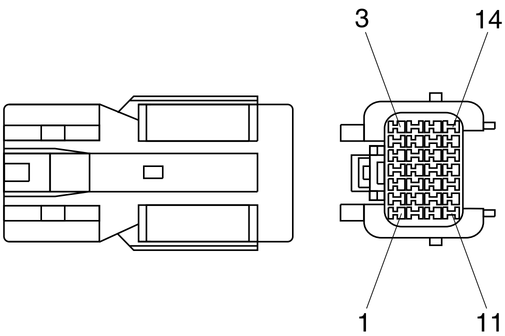
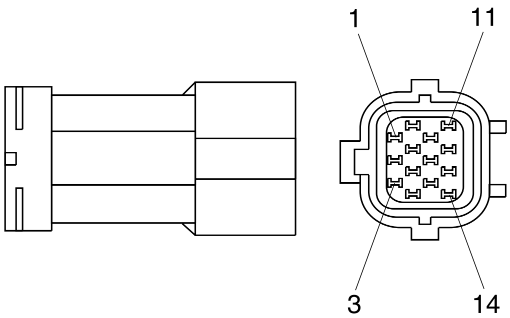
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
13	 S811-013002	 S811-113002
17	 S811-017002	 S811-117002
21	 S811-021002	 S811-121002

2) J TYPE CONNECTOR

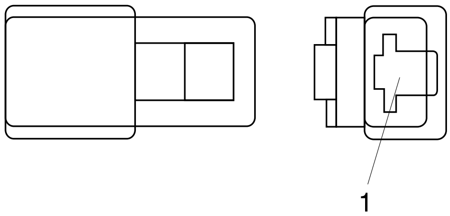
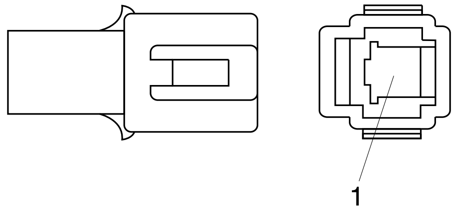
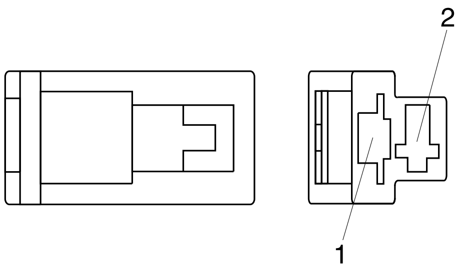
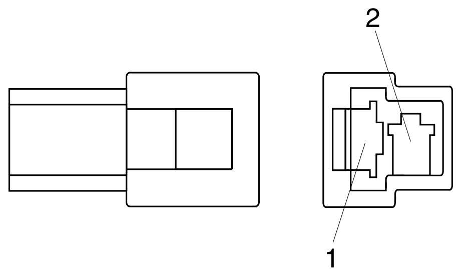
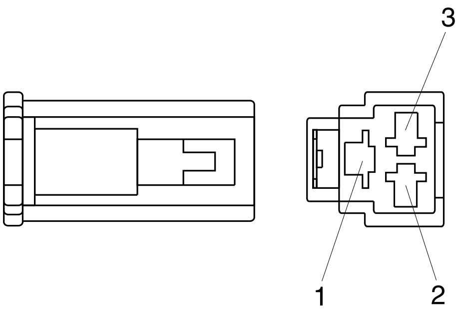
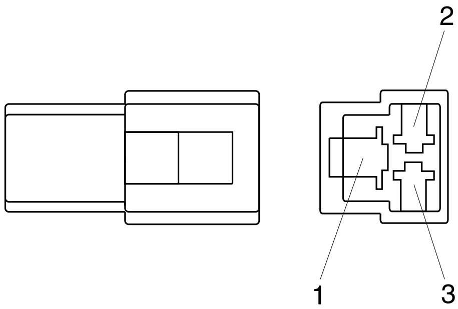
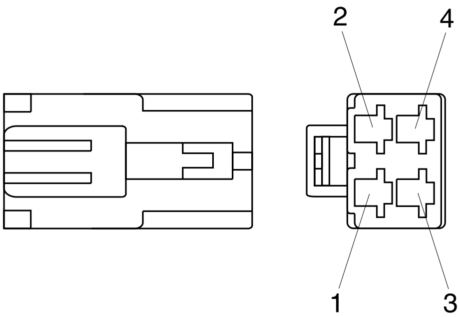
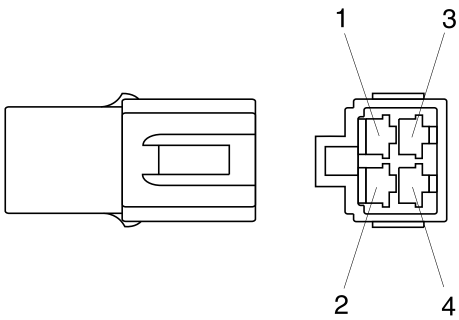
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 S816-002001	 S816-102001
3	 S816-003001	 S816-103001
4	 S816-004001	 S816-104001
8	 S816-008001	 S816-108001

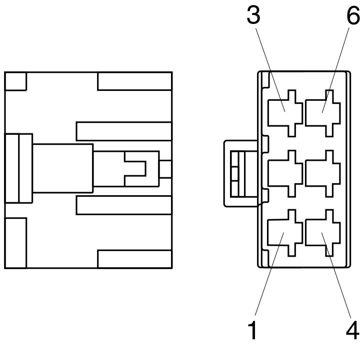
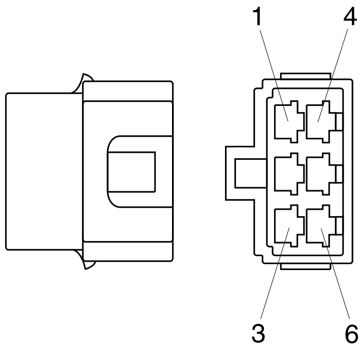
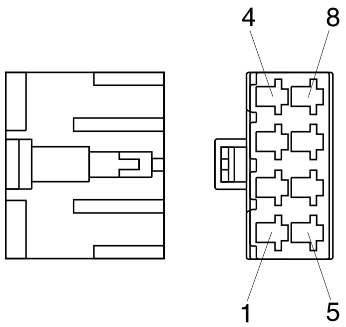
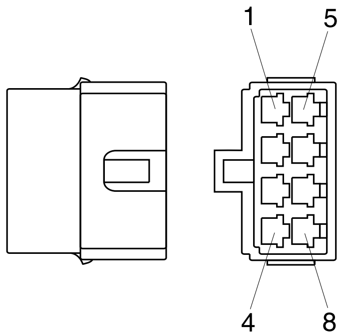
3) SWP TYPE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 S814-001000	 S814-101000
2	 S814-002000	 S814-102000
3	 S814-003000	 S814-103000
4	 S814-004000	 S814-104000

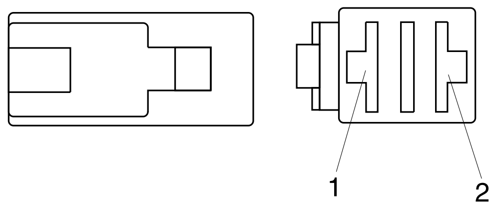
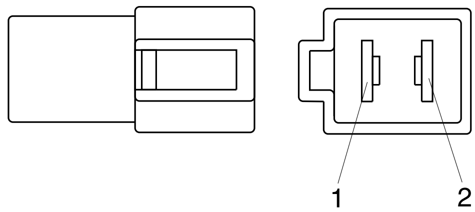
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 S814-006000	 S814-106000
8	 S814-008000	 S814-108000
12	 S814-012000	 S814-112000
14	 S814-014000	 S814-114000

4) CN TYPE CONNECTOR

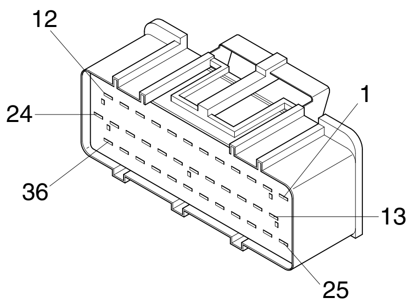
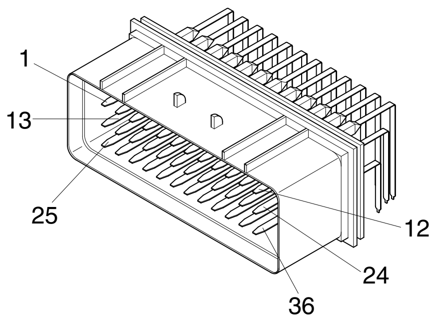
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 S810-001202	 S810-101202
2	 S810-002202	 S810-102202
3	 S810-003202	 S810-103202
4	 S810-004202	 S810-104202

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 S810-006202	 S810-106202
8	 S810-008202	 S810-108202

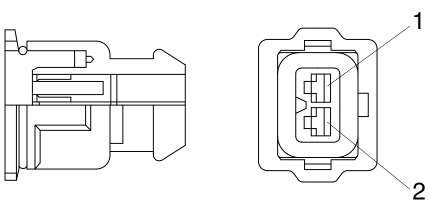
5) 375 FASTEN TYPE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 S810-002402	 S810-102402

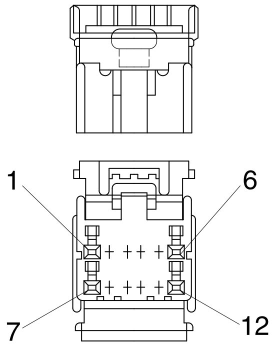
6) AMP ECONOSEAL CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
36	 344111-1	 344108-1

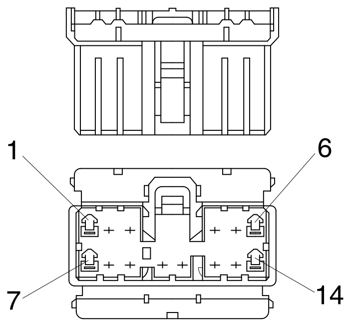
7) AMP TIMER CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 85202-1	

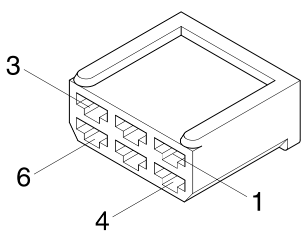
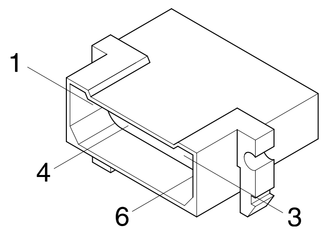
8) AMP 040 MULTILOCK CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
12	 174045-2	

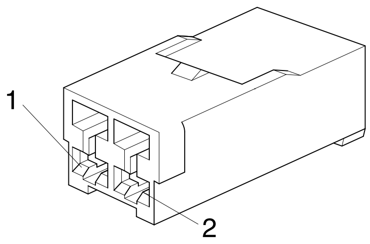
9) AMP 070 MULTILOCK CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
14	 173852	

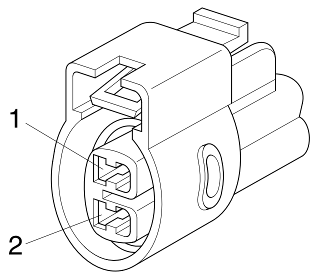
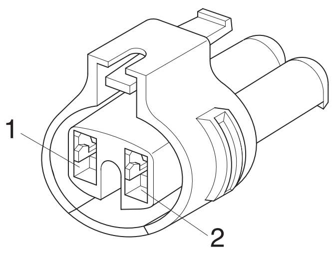
10) AMP FASTIN - FASTON CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 925276-0	 480003-9

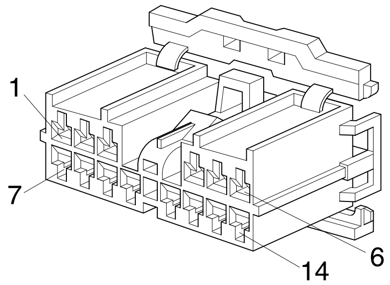
11) KET 090 CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 MG610070	

12) KET 090 WP CONNECTORS

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 MG640605	
2	 MG640795	

13) KET SDL CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
14	 MG610406	

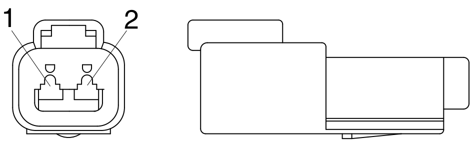
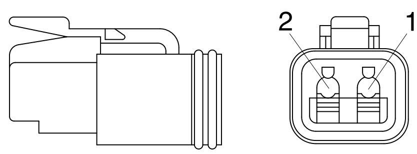
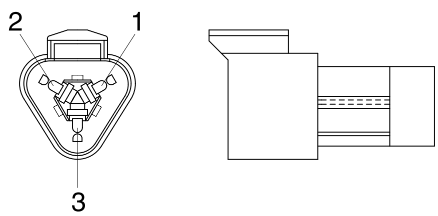
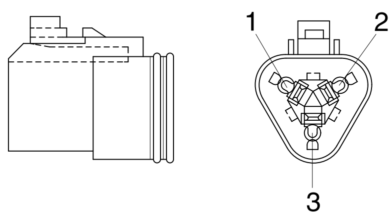
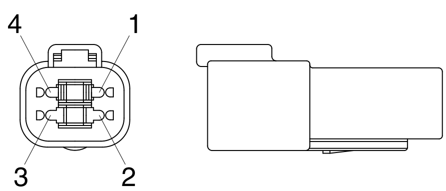
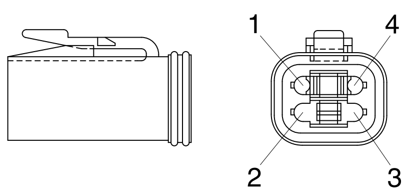
14) DEUTSCH DT CONNECTORS

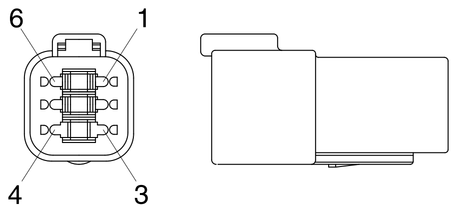
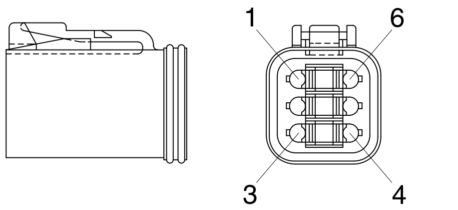
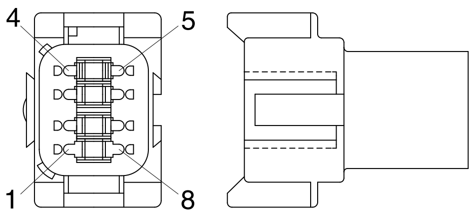
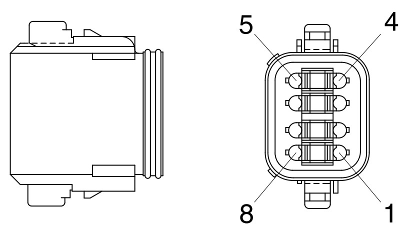
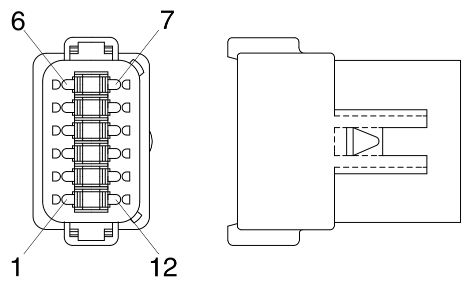
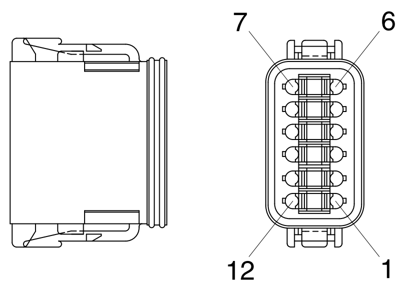
DT 06 - 3S - ★★★★

- ★★★★ : Modifications (see below)
- 3S : Number of contacts (P : Pin, S : Socket)
- 06 : 04 : Receptacle, 06 : Plug
- DT : Deutsch connectors

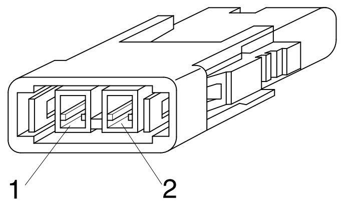
※ Modification

E003 : Standard end cap - gray
E004 : Color of connector to be black
E005 : Combination - E004 & E003
EP04 : End cap
EP06 : Combination P012 & EP04
P012 : Front seal enhancement - connectors color to black for 2, 3, 4 & 6pin

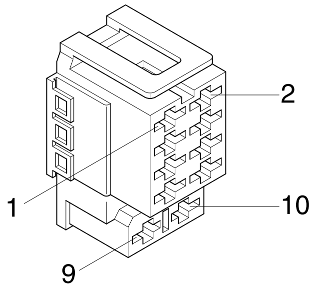
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 DT06-2S	 DT04-2P
3	 DT06-3S	 DT04-3P
4	 DT06-4S	 DT04-4P

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 DT06-6S	 DT04-6P
8	 DT06-8S	 DT04-8P
12	 DT06-12S	 DT04-12P

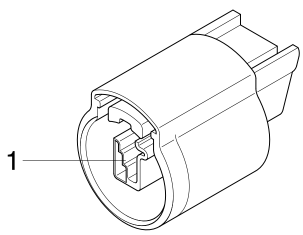
15) MOLEX 2CKTS CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 35215-0200	

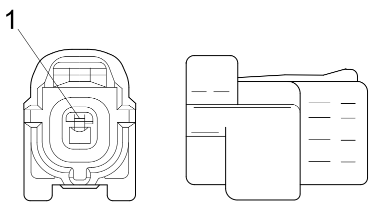
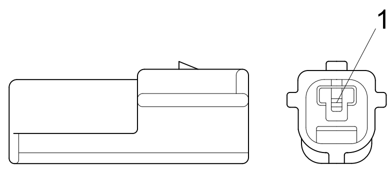
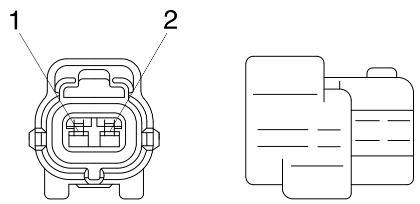
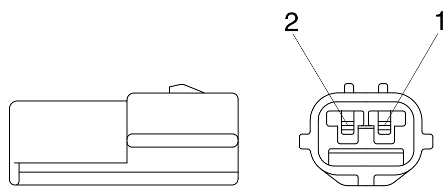
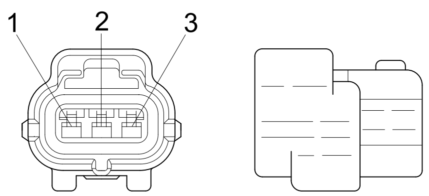
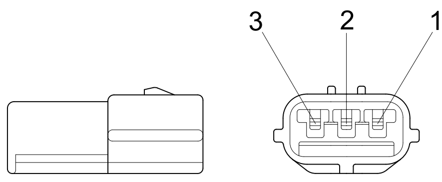
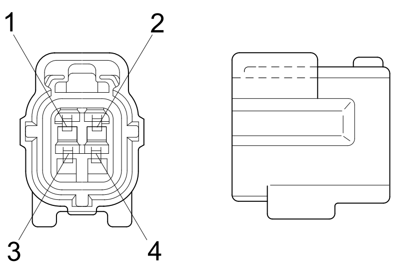
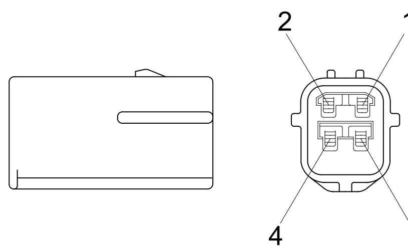
16) ITT SWF CONNECTOR

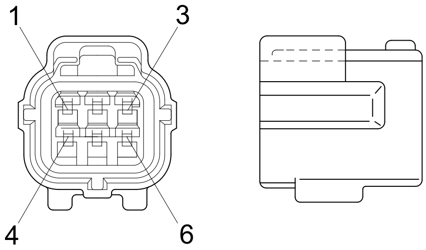
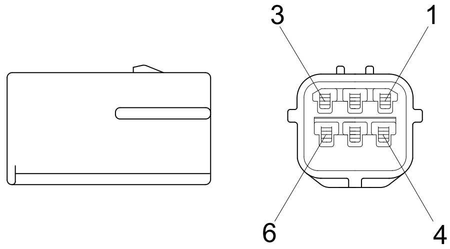
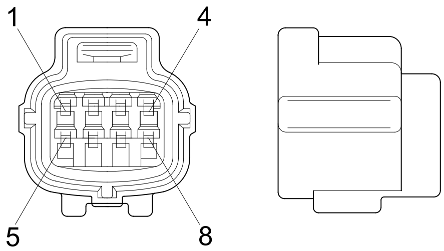
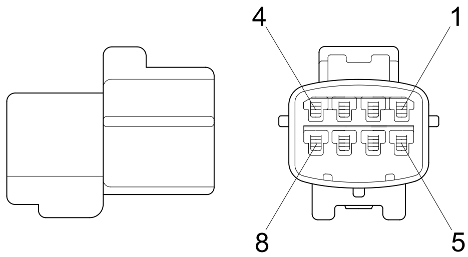
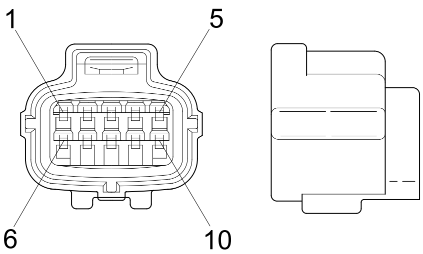
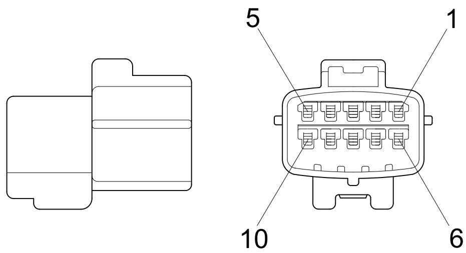
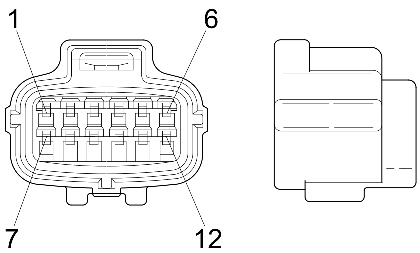
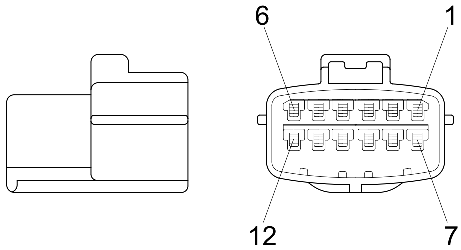
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
10	 SWF593757	

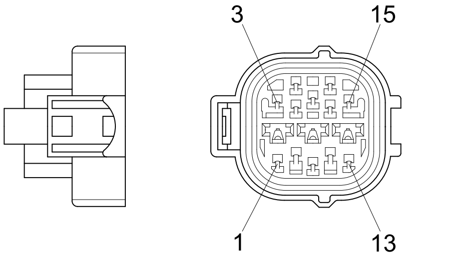
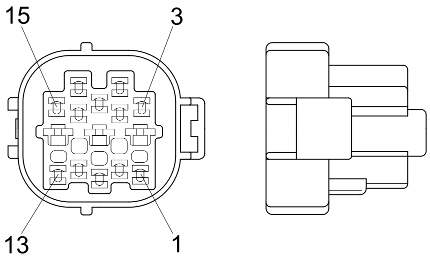
17) MWP NMWP CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 NMWP01F-B	

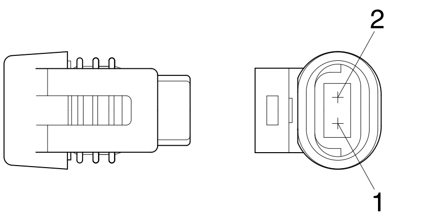
18) ECONOSEAL J TYPE CONNECTORS

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 S816-001002	 S816-101002
2	 S816-002002	 S816-102002
3	 S816-003002	 S816-103002
4	 S816-004002	 S816-104002

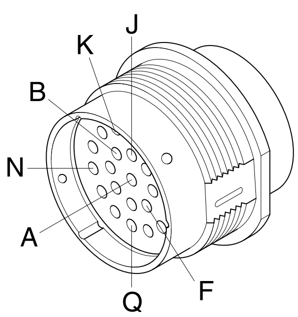
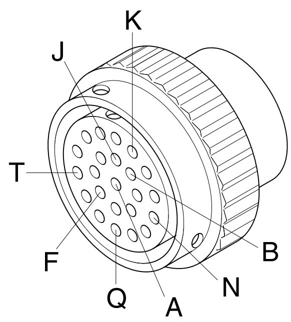
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 S816-006002	 S816-106002
8	 S816-008002	 S816-108002
10	 S816-010002	 S816-110002
12	 S816-012002	 S816-112002

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
15	 368301-1	 2-85262-1

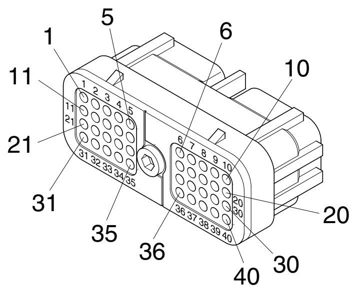
19) METRI-PACK TYPE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 12040753	

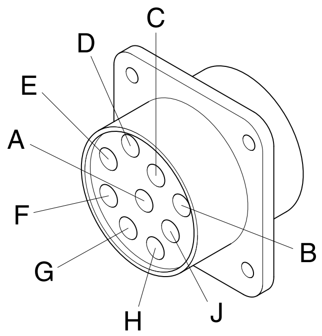
20) DEUTSCH HD30 CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
23	 HD36-24-23SN	 HD34-24-23PN

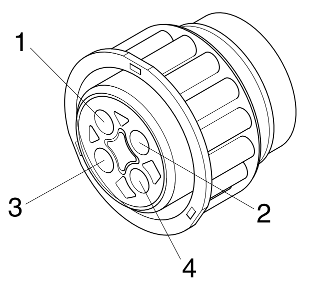
21) DEUTSCH MCU CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (Male)
40	 DRC26-40SA/B	

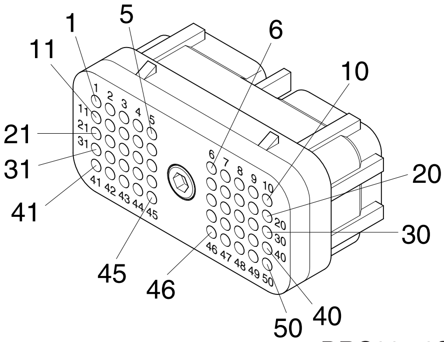
22) DEUTSCH SERVICE TOOL CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (Male)
9	 HD10-9-96P	

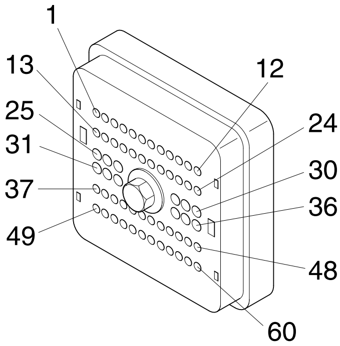
23) AMP FUEL WARMER CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (Male)
4	 2-967325-3	

24) DEUTSCH ENGINE ECM CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (Male)
50	 DRC26-50S-04	

25) DEUTSCH INTERMEDIATE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (Male)
60	 DRB16-60SAE-L018	

SECTION 5 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

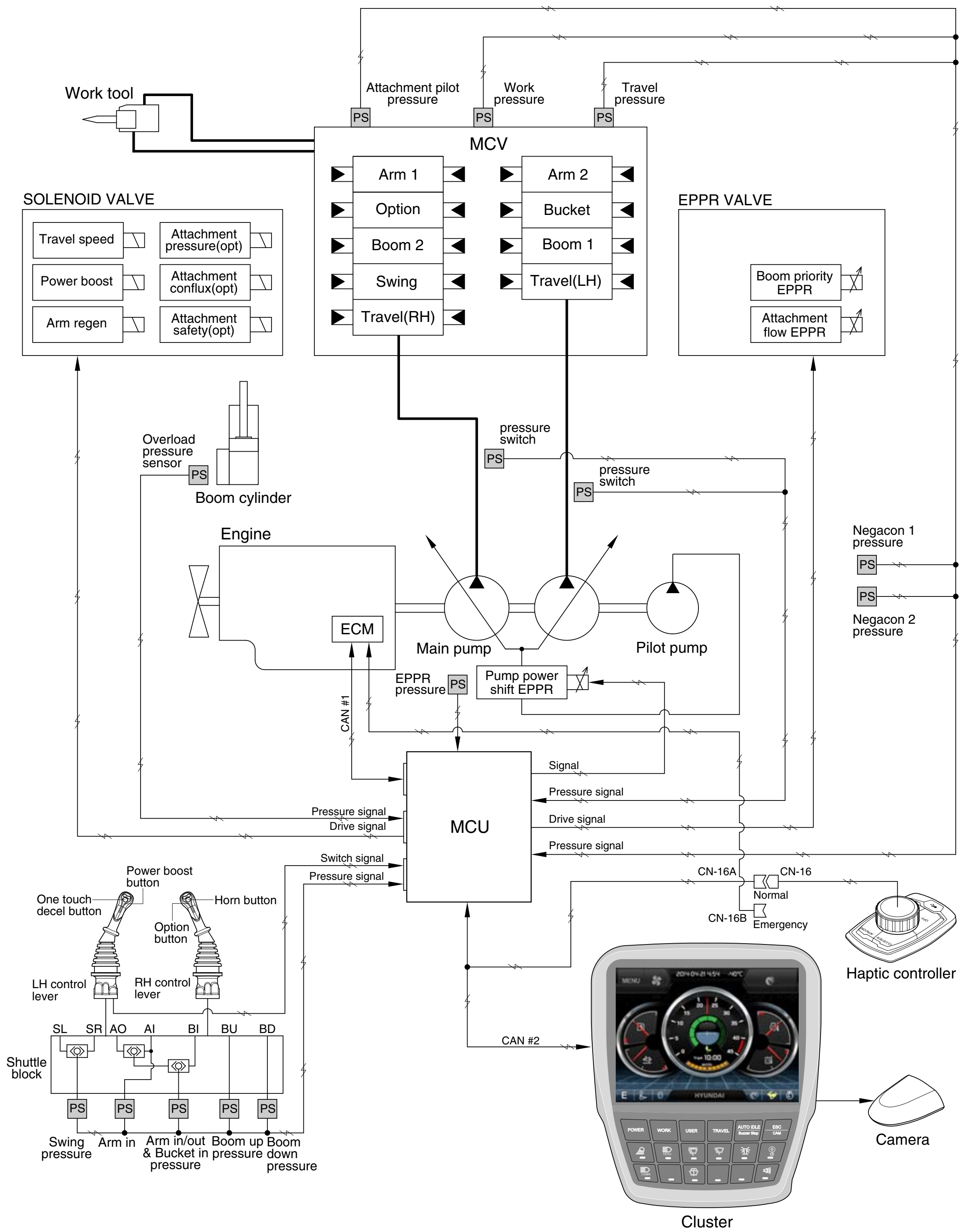
SECTION 5 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

GROUP 1 OUTLINE

The ADVANCED CAPO (Computer Aided Power Optimization) system controls engine and pump mutual power at an optimum and less fuel consuming state for the selected work by mode selection, auto-deceleration, power boost function, etc. It monitors machine conditions, for instance, engine speed, coolant temperature, hydraulic oil temperature, and hydraulic oil pressure, etc.
It consists of a MCU, a cluster, an ECM, EPPR valves, and other components. The MCU and the cluster protect themselves from over-current and high voltage input, and diagnose malfunctions caused by short or open circuit in electric system, and display error codes on the cluster.

- ADVANCED CAPO SYSTEM
  - Mode selection system
    - Power mode selection (P, S, E)
    - Work mode selection
    - User mode system (U)
  - Auto deceleration system
  - Power boost system
  - Travel speed control system
  - Automatic warming up system
  - Engine overheat prevention system
  - Variable power control system
  - Attachment flow control system
  - Boom floating control system
  - Intelligent pump control system
  - Anti-restart system
  - Self-diagnostic system
    - MCU & cluster protection
    - Open-short diagnosis & error code display
    - Machine error & ECM fault code display
  - Machine monitoring system
    - Machine condition monitoring
    - Electric signal monitoring
  - One touch deceleration system

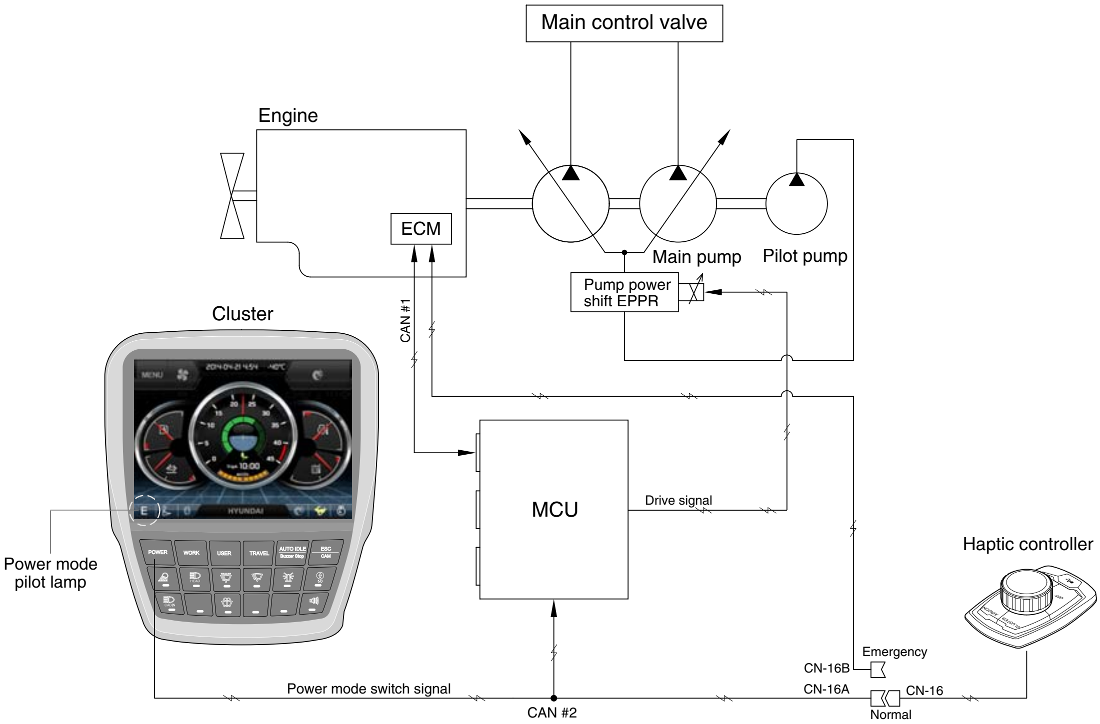
SYSTEM DIAGRAM



330L5MS01

GROUP 2 MODE SELECTION SYSTEM

1. POWER MODE SELECTION SYSTEM



300L5MS02

Mode selection system (micro computer based electro-hydraulic pump and engine mutual control system) optimizes the engine and pump performance.

The combination of 3 power modes (P, S, E) and acceleration mode (10 set) of haptic controller makes it possible to use the engine and pump power more effectively corresponding to the work conditions from a heavy and great power requesting work to a light and precise work.

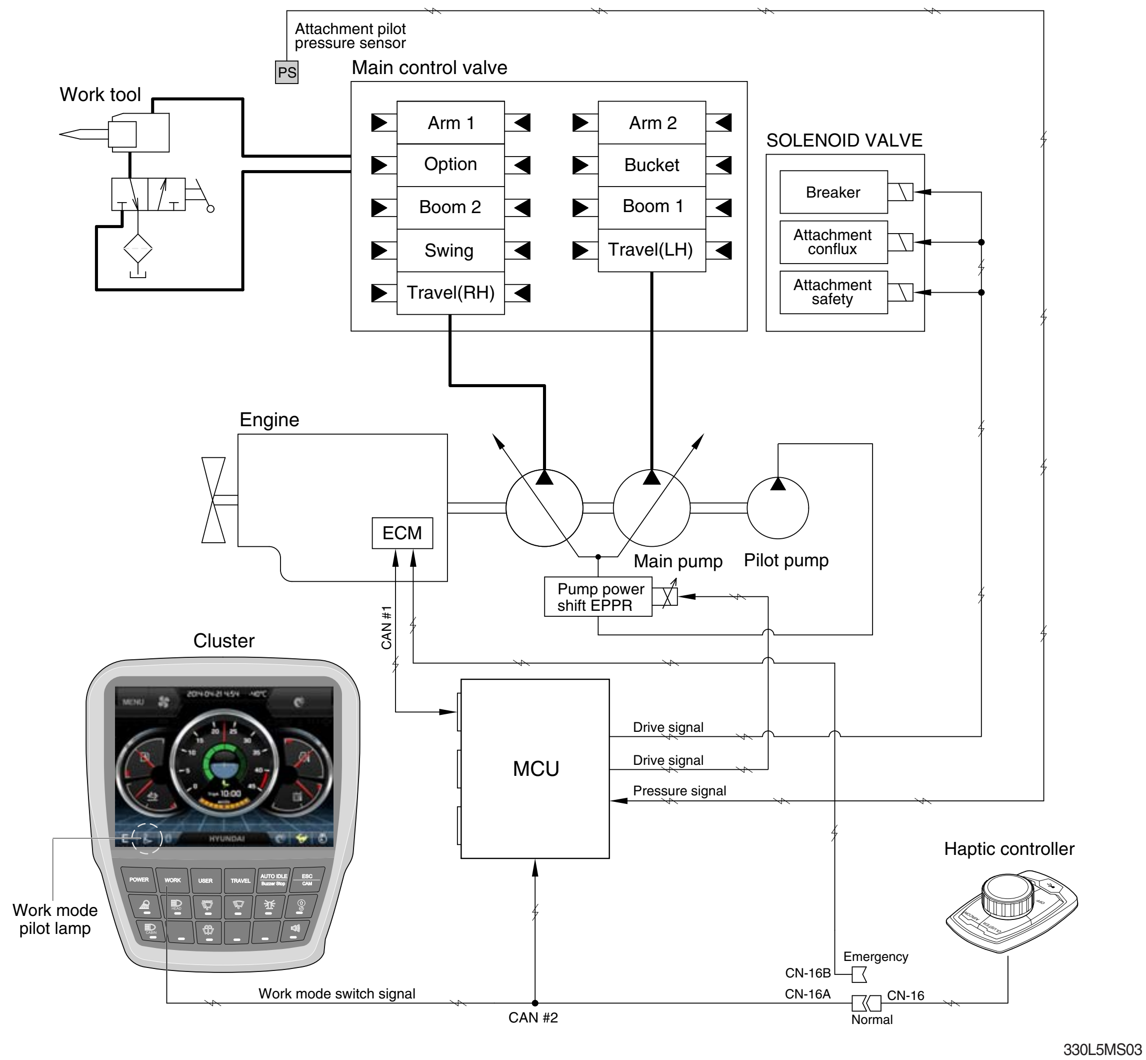
Power mode	Application	Engine rpm				Power shift by EPPR valve			
		Standard		Option		Standard		Option	
		Unload	Load	Unload	Load	Current (mA)	Pressure (kgf/cm^2)	Current (mA)	Pressure (kgf/cm^2)
P	Heavy duty power	1700±50	1650±50	1800±50	1750±50	280±30	5 (~5)	230±30	3 (~3)
S	Standard power	1600±50	1550±50	1700±50	1650±50	305±30	7 (~7)±3	260±30	5 (~5)±3
E	Economy operation	1500±50	1550±50	1600±50	1650±50	340±30	12 (~7)±3	340±30	10 (~5)±3
AUTO DECEL	Engine deceleration	1000±100	-	1000±100	-	700±30	38±3	700±30	38±3
One touch decel	Engine quick deceleration	900±100	-	900±100	-	700±30	38±3	700±30	38±3
KEY START	Key switch start position	900±100	-	900±100	-	700±30	38±3	700±30	38±3

※ Power shift (Standard/Option) can be changed by "Service menu" in "Management" on the cluster.

※ (~*) : Load

2. WORK MODE SELECTION SYSTEM

Work mode consists of the general operation (bucket) and the optional attachment (breaker, crusher).



1) GENERAL WORK MODE (bucket)

This mode is used to general digging work.

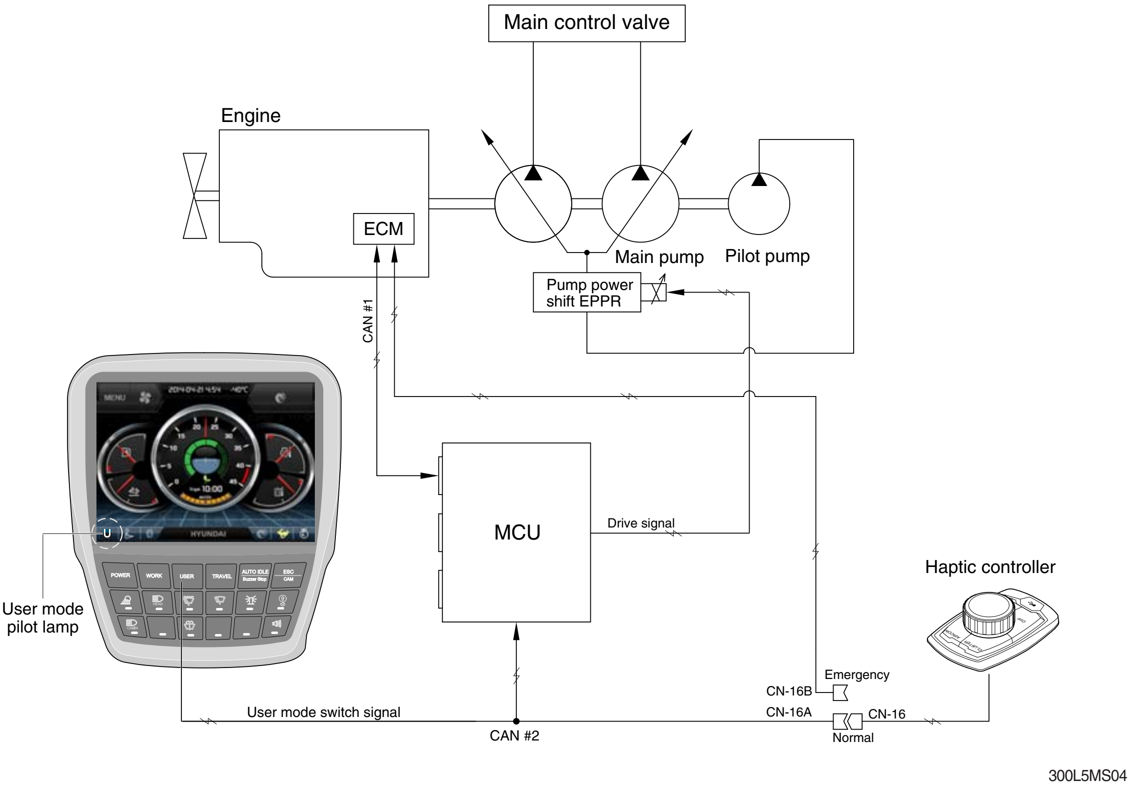
2) ATT WORK MODE (breaker, crusher)

It controls the pump flow and system pressure according to the operation of breaker or crusher.

Description	General mode	Work tool	
	Bucket	Breaker	Crusher
Attachment safety solenoid	OFF	-	ON
Attachment conflux solenoid	OFF	ON/OFF	ON/OFF
Attachment flow EPPR current	100 mA	100~700 mA	100~700 mA
Breaker solenoid★	OFF	ON	-

★ When breaker operating button is pushed.

3. USER MODE SELECTION SYSTEM

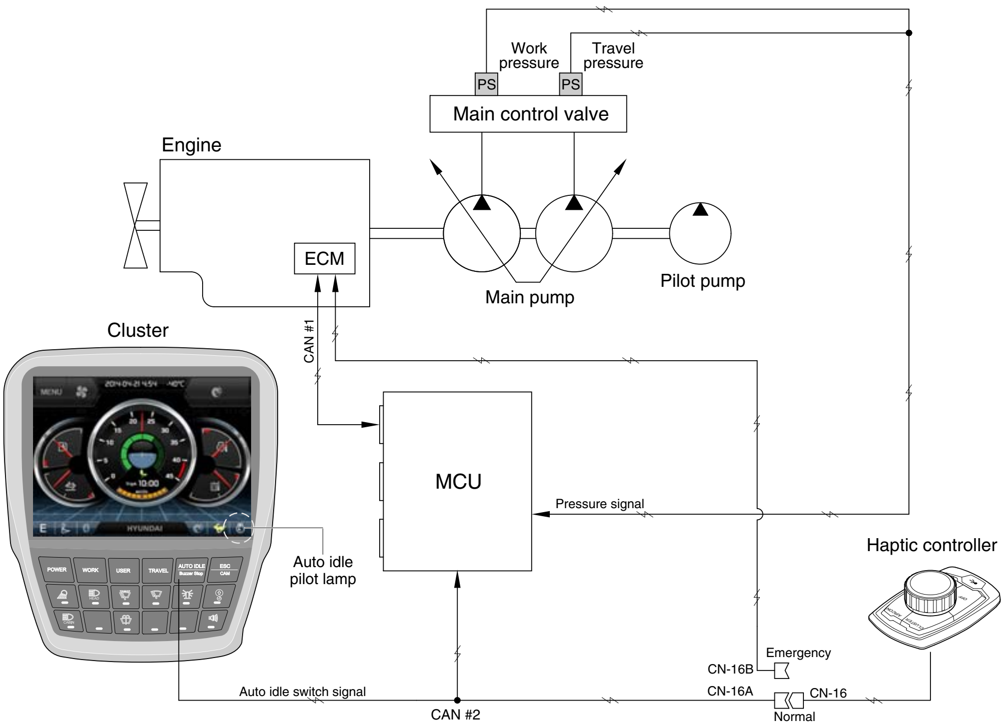


1) High idle rpm, auto idle rpm and EPPR pressure can be adjusted and memorized in the U-mode.

2) LCD segment vs parameter setting

Step (▮)	Engine speed (rpm)	Idle speed (rpm)	Power shift (bar)
1	1300	700	0
2	1400	800	3
3	1450	850	6
4	1500	900 (auto decel)	9
5	1550	950	12
6	1600	1000	16
7	1650	1050	20
8	1700	1100	26
9	1750	1150	32
10	1800	1200	38

GROUP 3 AUTOMATIC DECELERATION SYSTEM

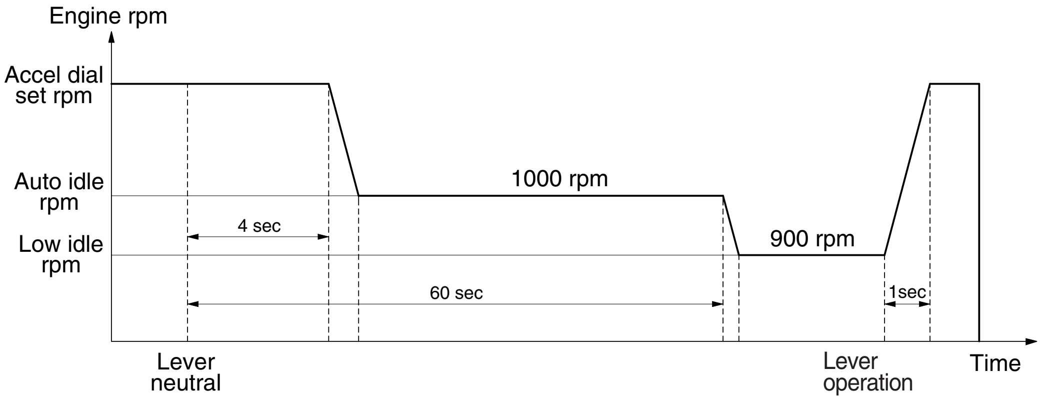


300L5MS05

1. WHEN AUTO IDLE PILOT LAMP ON

When all of the work equipment control levers including swing and travel levers are at neutral for 4 seconds, MCU sends throttle command to ECM to reduce the engine speed to 1000 rpm. If the control levers are at neutral for 1 minute, MCU reduces the engine speed to 900 rpm. As the result of reducing the engine speed, fuel consumption and noise are effectively cut down during non-operation of the control levers.

When the Auto idle pilot lamp is turned off by pressing the switch or any control lever is operated, the reduced engine speed rises upto the speed before deceleration in a second.



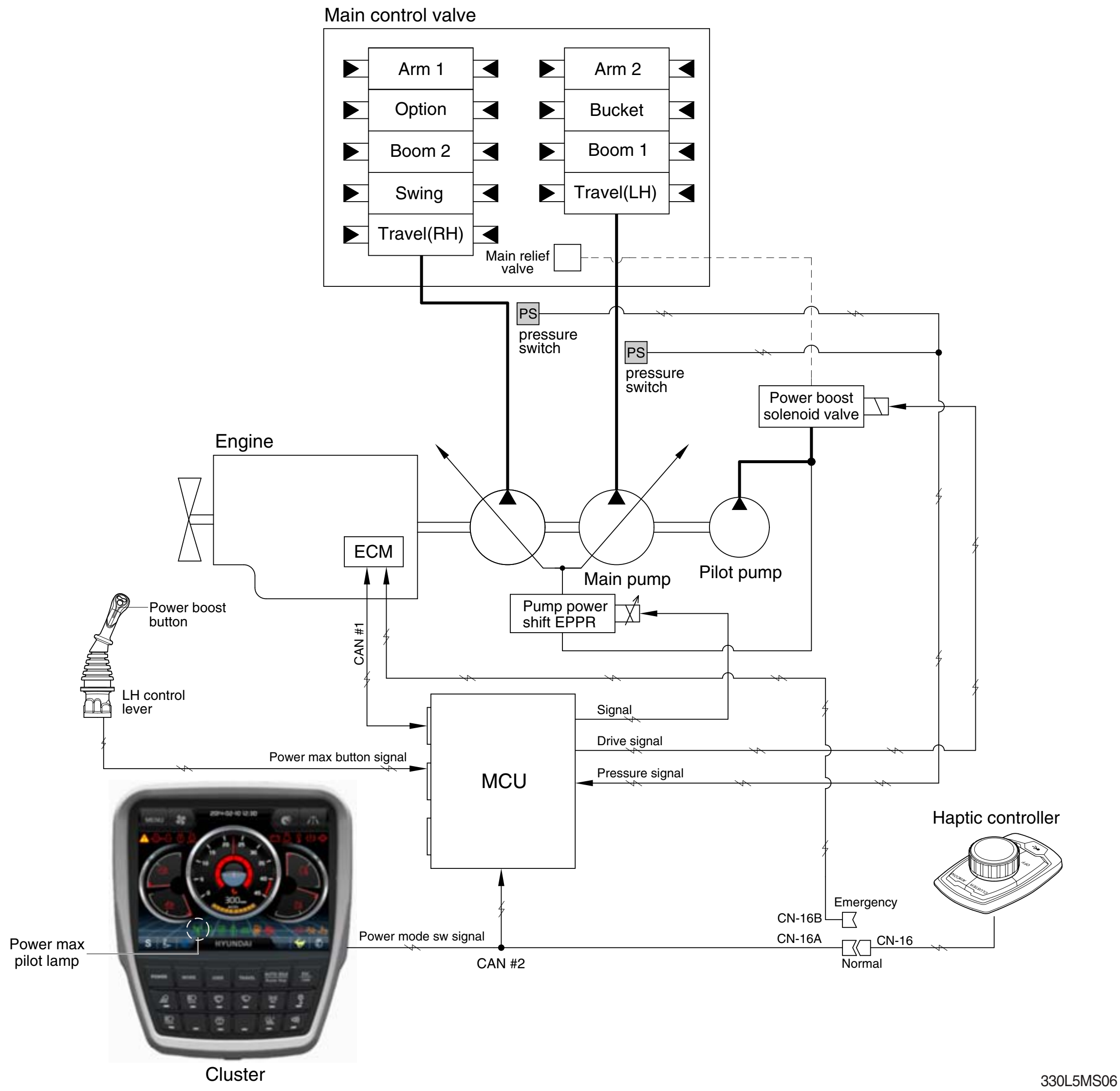
380L5MS05

2. WHEN AUTO IDLE PILOT LAMP OFF

The engine speed can be set as desired using the accel dial switch, and even if the control levers are neutral, the engine speed is not reduced.

※ Auto idle function can be activated when accel dial position is over 4.

GROUP 4 POWER BOOST SYSTEM



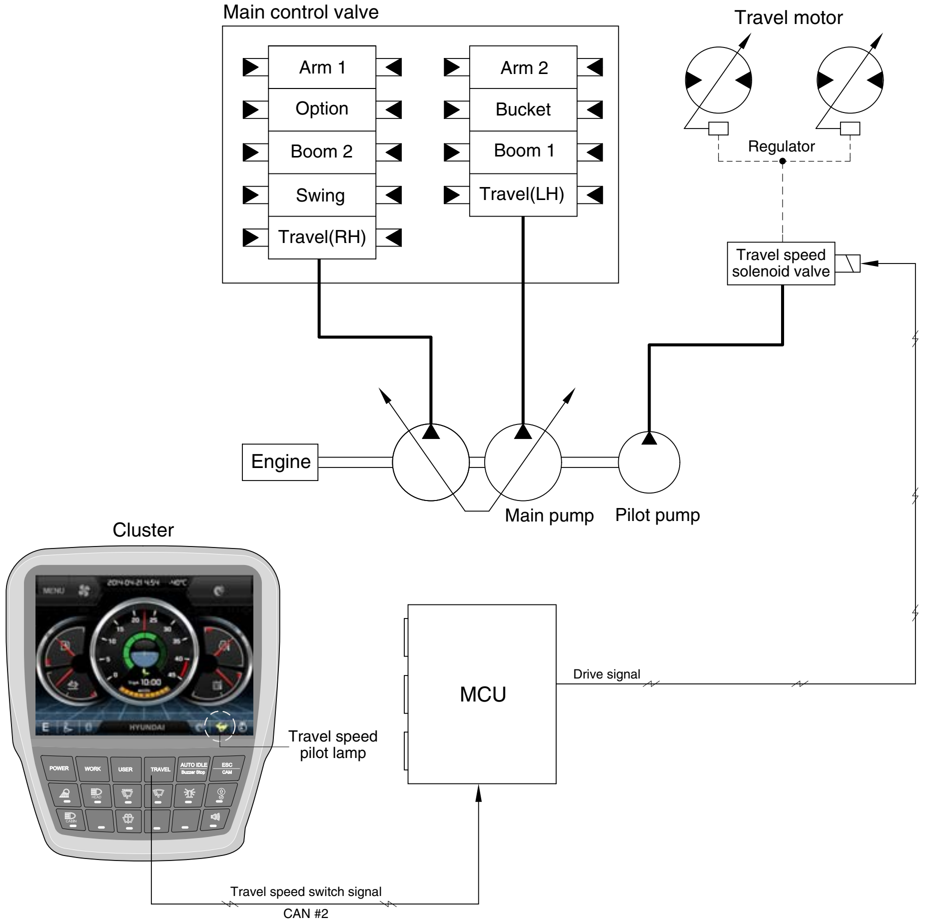
· When the power boost switch on the left control lever knob is pushed ON, the power mode is set P mode and maximum digging power is increased by 10 %.

· When the power boost function is activated, the power boost solenoid valve pilot pressure raises the set pressure of the main relief valve to increase the digging power.

Description	Condition	Function
Activated	Power boost switch : ON Accel dial : over 8	- Power mode : P - Accel dial power : 9 - Power boost solenoid : ON - Power boost pilot lmap : ON - Operating time : max 8 seconds
Canceled	Power boost switch : OFF	- Pre-set power mode - Power boost solenoid : OFF - Power boost pilot lamp : OFF

※ When the auto power boost is set to Enable and power mode is set to P mode on the cluster, the digging power is automatically increased as working conditions by the MCU. It is operated max 8 seconds.

GROUP 5 TRAVEL SPEED CONTROL SYSTEM



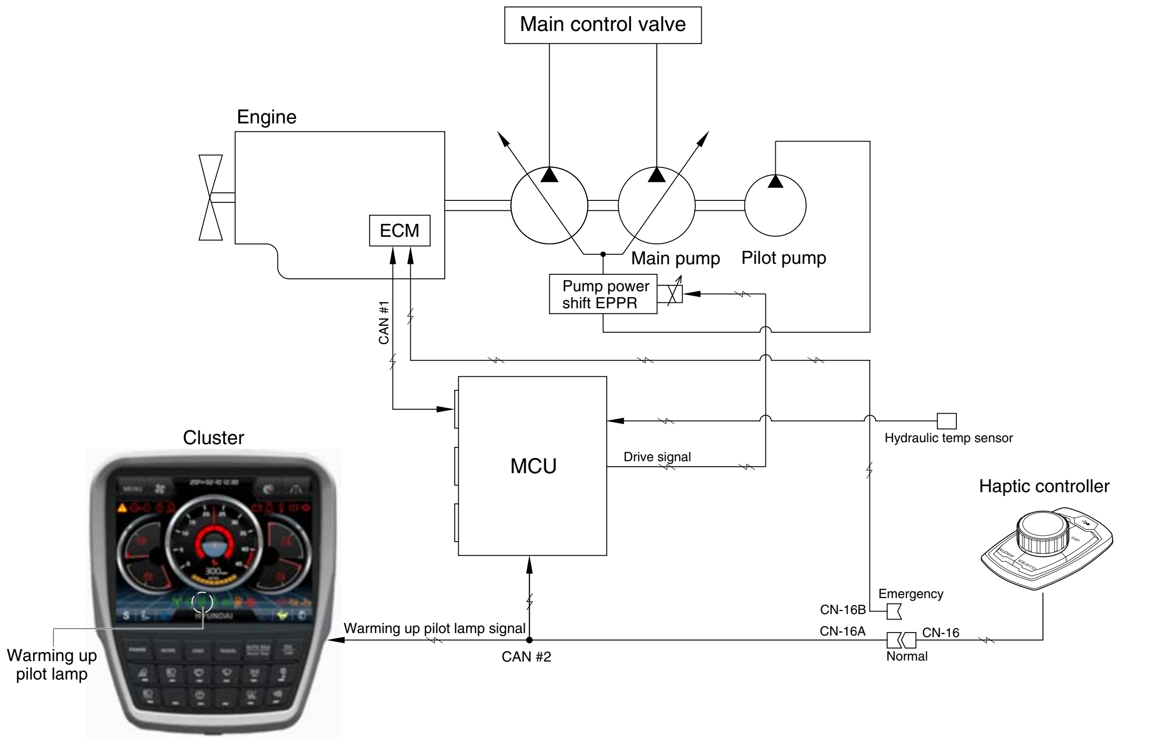
330L5MS07

Travel speed can be switched manually by pressing the travel speed switch on the cluster.

Speed	Travel speed solenoid valve	Lamp on cluster	Operation
Low	OFF	Turtle	Low speed, high driving torque in the travel motor
High	ON	Rabbit	High speed, low driving torque in the travel motor

※ Default : Turtle (Low)

GROUP 6 AUTOMATIC WARMING UP SYSTEM



300L5MS08

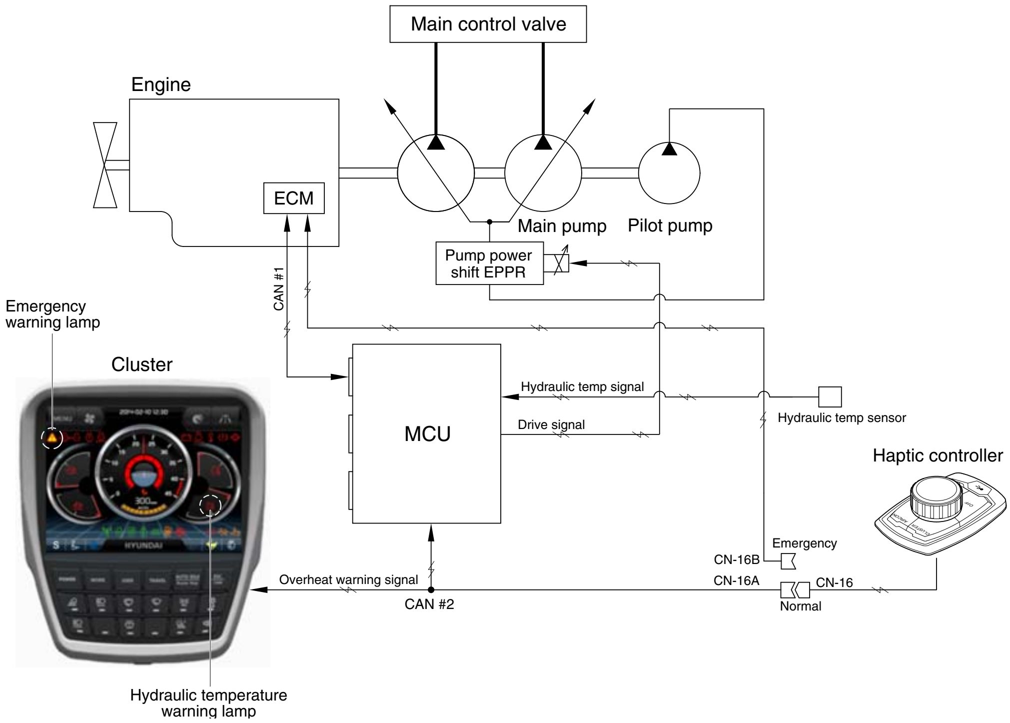
1. The MCU receives the engine coolant temperature from the ECM, and if the coolant temperature is below 30˚C, it increases the engine speed from key start rpm to 1000 rpm. At this time the mode does not change. If the coolant temperature sensor has fault, the hydraulic oil temperature signal is substituted.

2. In case of the coolant temperature increases up to 30˚C, the engine speed is decreased to key start speed. And if an operator changes power mode set during the warming up function, the MCU cancels the automatic warming up function.

3. LOGIC TABLE

Description	Condition	Function
Actuated	- Coolant temperature : below 30˚C (after engine run)	- Power mode : Default (E mode) - Warming up time : 10 minutes (max) - Warming up pilot lamp : ON
Canceled	- Coolant temperature : Above 30˚C - Warming up time : Above 10 minutes - Changed power mode set by operator - RCV lever or pedal operating - Auto idle cancel ※ If any of the above conditions is applicable, the automatic warming up function is canceled	- Power mode : set mode - Warming up pilot lamp : OFF

GROUP 7 ENGINE OVERHEAT PREVENTION SYSTEM



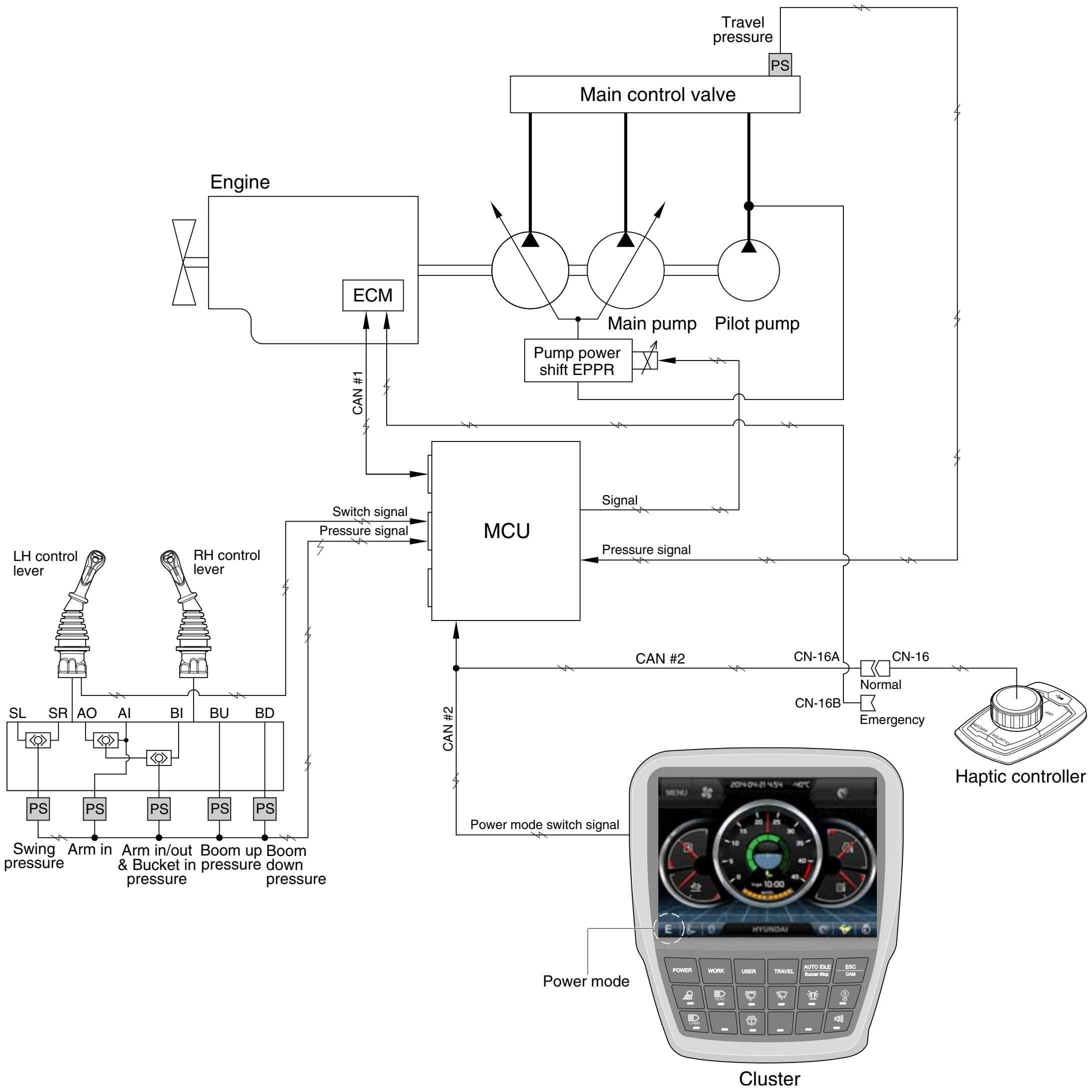
300L5MS09

1. If the engine coolant temperature or the hydraulic oil temperature is overheated over 100˚C, the warning lamp is ON and the pump input torque or the engine speed is reduced as below logic table.

2. LOGIC TABLE

Description		Condition	Function
First step warning	Activated	- Coolant temperature : Above 103˚C - Hydraulic oil temperature : Above 100˚C	- Warning lamp : ON , buzzer : OFF - Pump input torque is reduced. - Warning lamp & buzzer : ON - Pump input torque is reduced.
	Canceled	- Coolant temperature : Less than 100˚C - Hydraulic oil temperature : Less than 95˚C	- Return to pre-set the pump absorption torque.
Second step warning	Activated	- Coolant temperature : Above 107˚C - Hydraulic oil temperature : Above 105˚C	- Emergency warning lamp pops up on the center of LCD and the buzzer sounds. - Engine speed is reduced after 10 seconds.
	Canceled	- Coolant temperature : Less than 103˚C - Hydraulic oil temperature : Less than 100˚C	- Return to pre-set the engine speed. - Hold pump absorption torque on the first step warning.

GROUP 8 VARIABLE POWER CONTROL SYSTEM



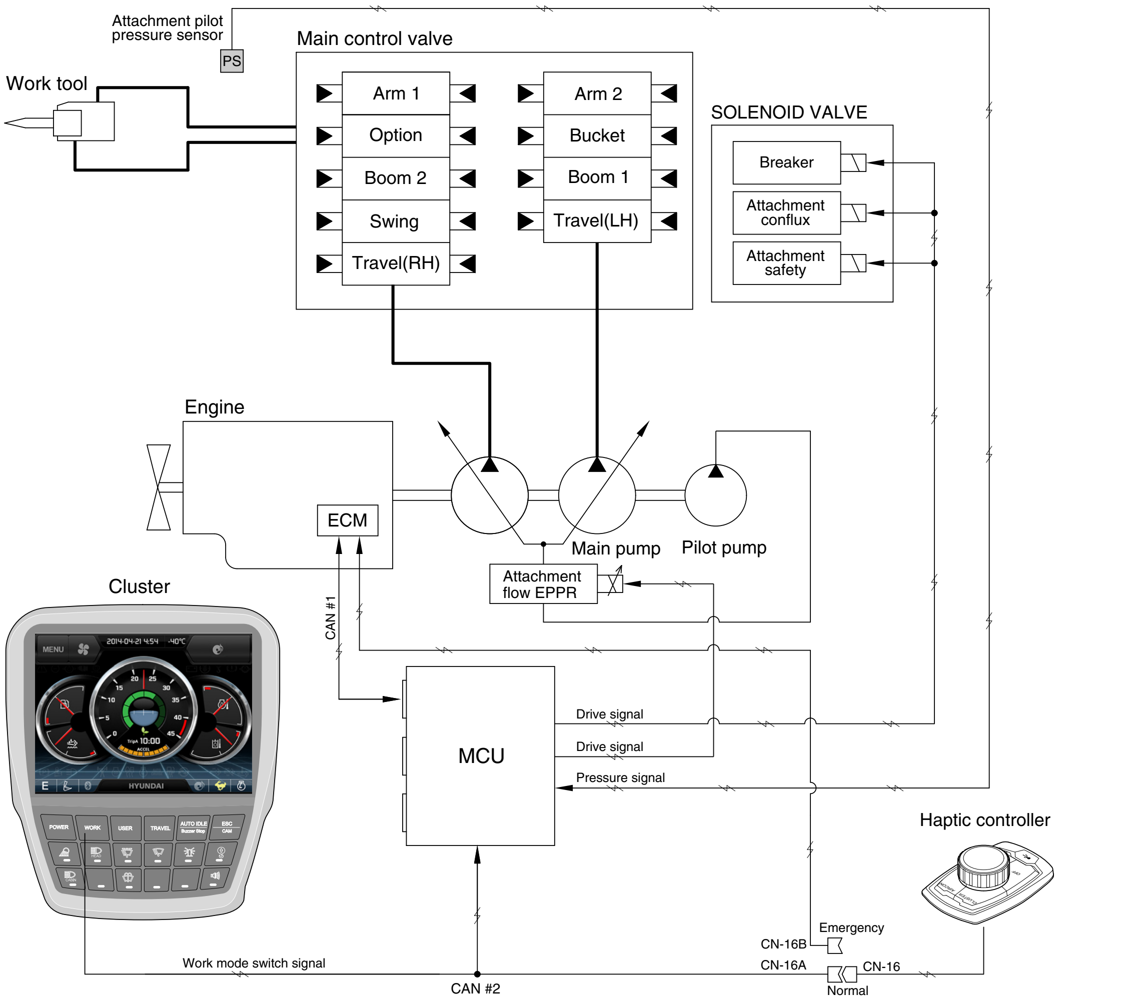
330L5MS10

· The variable power control system controls the engine and pump mutual power according to RCV lever stroke and pump load.
It makes fuel saving and smooth control at precise work.

Description	Working condition
Power mode	P, S, E
Work mode	General (bucket)
Pressure sensor	Normal

※ The variable power control function can be activated when the power mode is set to all power mode.

GROUP 9 ATTACHMENT FLOW CONTROL SYSTEM



330L5MS11

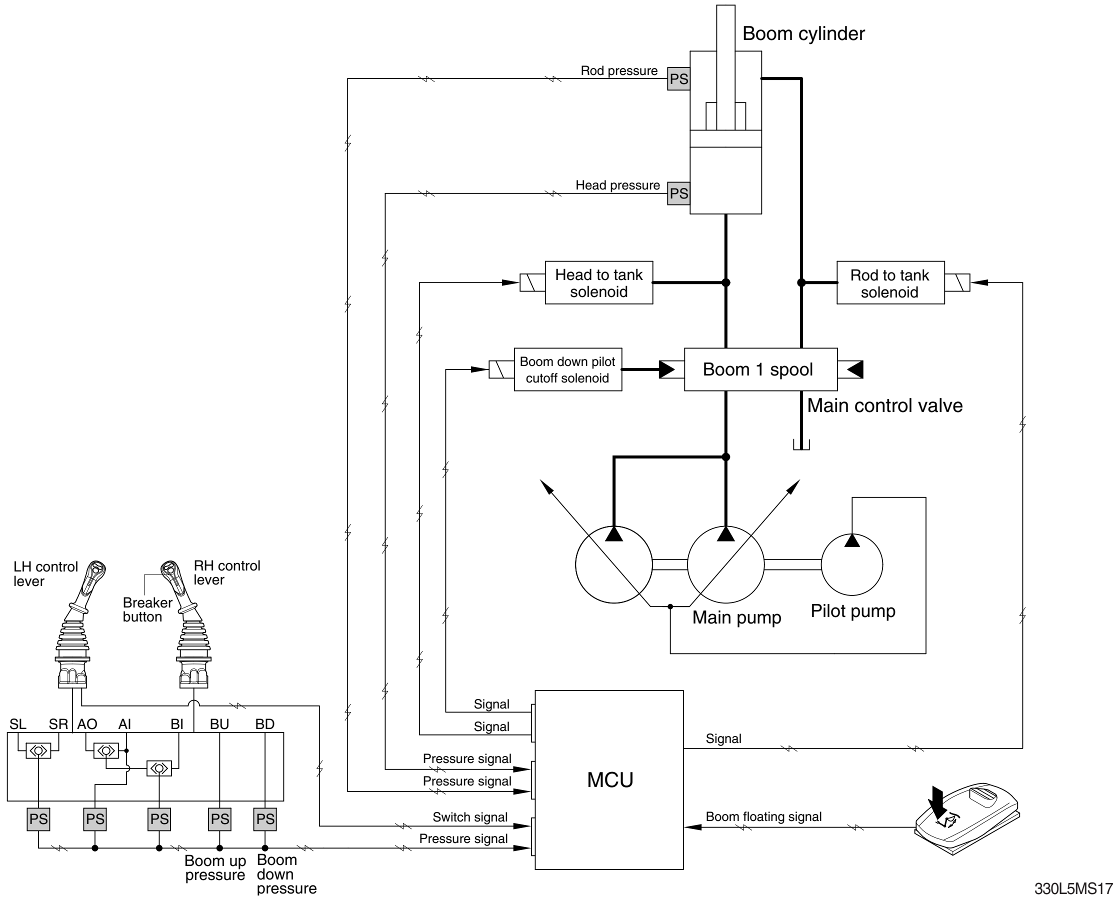
· The system is used to control the pump delivery flow according to set of the work tool on the cluster by the attachment flow EPPR valve.

Description	Work tool	
	Breaker	Crusher
Flow level	100 ~ 270 lpm	100 ~ 630 lpm
Attach safety solenoid	-	ON
Attach conflux solenoid	ON/OFF	ON/OFF
Breaker solenoid★	ON	-

※ Refer to the page 5-79 for the attachment kinds and max flow.

★ When breaker operating button is pushed.

GROUP 10 BOOM FLOATING CONTROL SYSTEM



330L5MS17

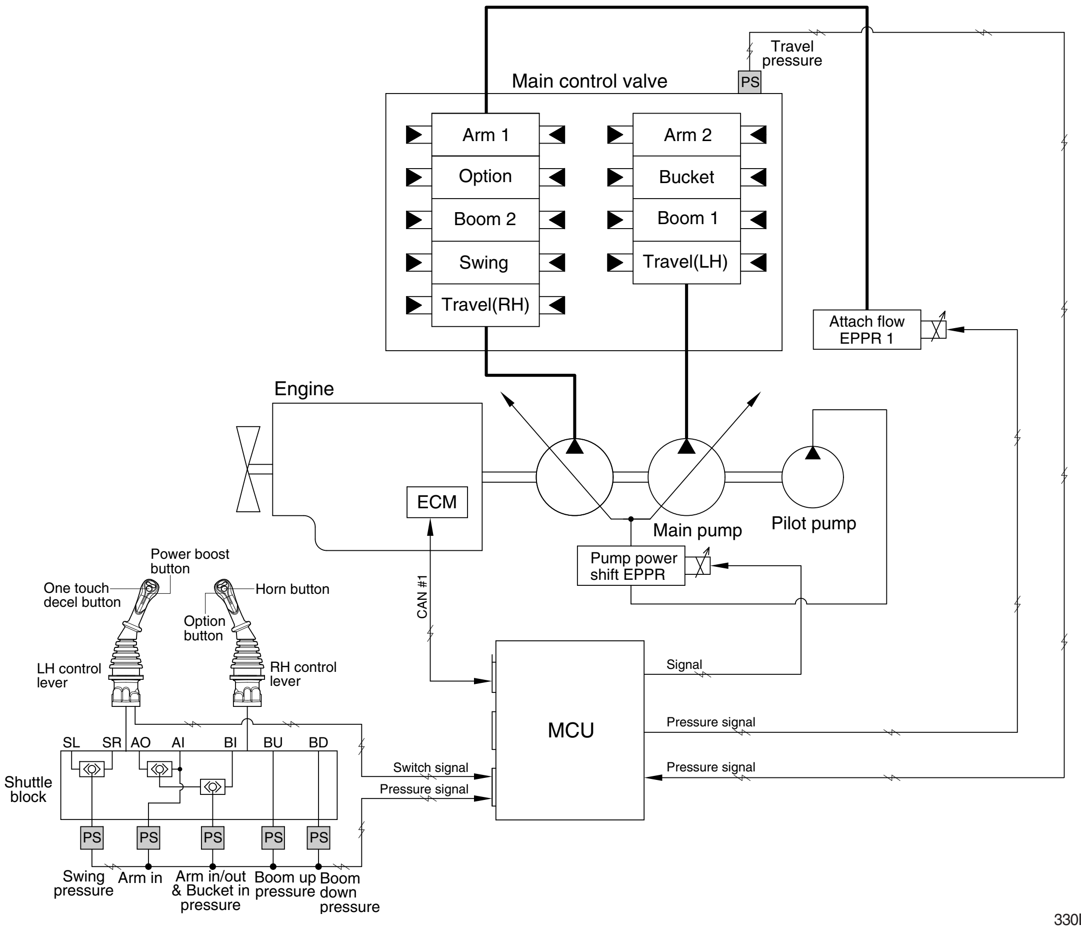
· Boom floating automatically controls boom cylinder along the ground by operating arm cylinder only.

Description		Condition	Function
Work mode★[1]	Floating mode		
General mode	Boom up floating★[2]	Floating mode sw : ON	Rod to tank solenoid : ON Head to tank solenoid : OFF Boom down cutoff solenoid : OFF
	Boom up/down floating★[2]	Floating mode sw : ON Breaker button : Pressed Boom down pilot pressure 〉25 bar Boom up pilot pressure 〈 5 bar	Rod to tank solenoid : ON Head to tank solenoid : ON Boom down cutoff solenoid : ON
Breaker mode	Boom down floating	Floating mode sw : ON Breaker button : Pressed Boom down pilot pressure 〉25 bar Boom up pilot pressure 〈 5 bar	Rod to tank solenoid : OFF Head to tank solenoid : ON Boom down cutoff solenoid : ON
Temporarily canceled		During operation of boom floating Boost sw : Pressed	Rod to tank solenoid : OFF Head to tank solenoid : OFF Boom down cutoff solenoid : OFF

★[1] Boom floating is not activated when work mode is crusher mode.

★[2] These functions are activated just in case the excavator is not in jack up status.

GROUP 11 INTELLIGENT POWER CONTROL SYSTEM



330L5MS18

1. When the requirement of pump flow rate is low, IPC mode controls pump flow rate to improve fuel efficiency.

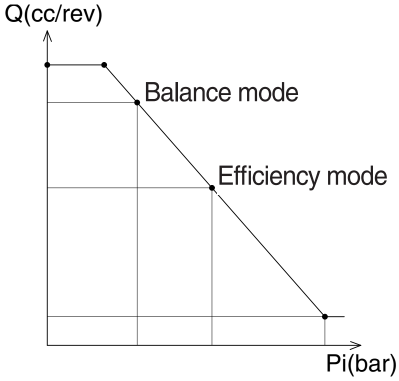
Condition★1	Function
IPC mode : ON★2 Boom up Arm in Not travel motion Not swing motion	Limitation of pump flow rate : Activated
None of upper condition	Limitation of pump flow rate : Canceled

★1 AND condition

★2 IPC mode ON/OFF is selected at "Mode setup > IPC mode". See next page.

2. IPC MODE SELECTION

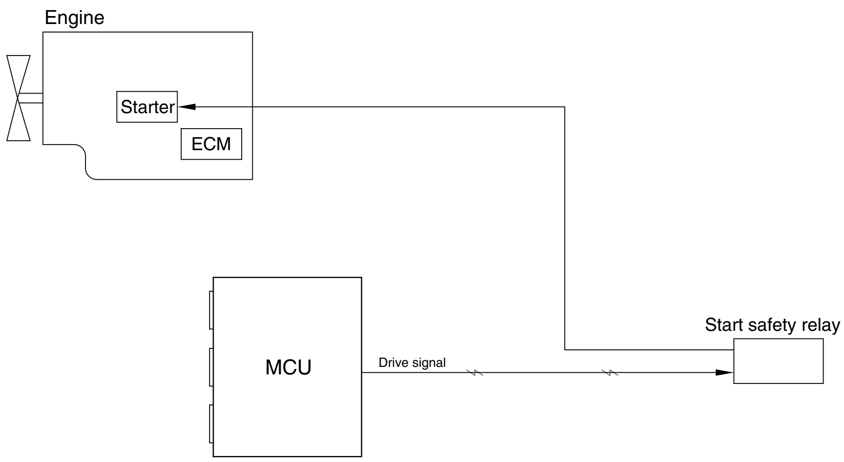
IPC mode ON/OFF and the levels of flow rate limit can be selected at "Mode setup > IPC mode"



290F3CD311

IPC mode	Description
Balance mode (default)	IPC mode ON, limit level 1
Efficiency mode	IPC mode ON, limit level 2
Speed mode	IPC mode OFF

GROUP 12 ANTI-RESTART SYSTEM



300L5MS12

1. ANTI-RESTART FUNCTION

After a few seconds from the engine starts to run, MCU turns off the start safety relay to protect the starter from inadvertent restarting.

1. OUTLINE

When any abnormality occurs in the ADVANCED CAPO system caused by electric parts malfunction and by open or short circuit, the MCU diagnoses the problem and sends the error codes to the cluster and also stores them in the memory.

2. MONITORING

1) Active fault

290F3CD120

290F3CD121

290F3CD125

· The active faults of the MCU or engine ECM can be checked by this menu.

2) Logged fault

290F3CD128

290F3CD123

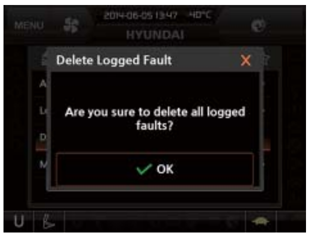
290F3CD124

· The logged faults of the MCU or engine ECM can be checked by this menu.

3) Delete logged fault

290F3CD134

290F3CD126



290F3CD127

· The logged faults of the MCU or engine ECM can be deleted by this menu.

3. MACHINE ERROR CODES TABLE

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">DTC</th><th rowspan="2">Diagnostic Criteria</th><th colspan="3">Application</th></tr>
<tr><th>HCESPN</th><th>FMI</th><th>G</th><th>C</th><th>W</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">101</td><td>3</td><td>10 seconds continuous, Hydraulic Oil Temp. Measurement Voltage > 3.8V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>10 seconds continuous, Hydraulic Oil Temp. Measurement Voltage < 0.3V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Monitor – Hydraulic oil temperature display failure
2. Control Function – Fan revolutions control failure
(Checking list)
1. CD-1 (#2), CN-52 (#24) Checking Open/Short
2. CD-1 (#1), CN-51 (#5) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">105</td><td>0</td><td>10 seconds continuous, Working Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Working Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>10 seconds continuous, Working Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Monitor – Working Press. display failure
2. Control Function – Auto Idle operation failure, Engine variable horse power control operation failure
(Checking list)
1. CD-7 (#B) – CN-52 (#37) Checking Open/Short
2. CD-7 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short
3. CD-7 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">108</td><td>0</td><td>10 seconds continuous, Travel Oil Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V</td><td></td><td>●</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>10 seconds continuous, 0.3V ≤ Travel Oil Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>10 seconds continuous, Travel Oil Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Monitor – Travel Oil Press. display failure
2. Control Function – Auto Idle operation failure, Engine variable horse power control operation failure, IPC operation failure, Driving alarm operation failure
(Checking list)
1. CD-6 (#B) – CN-52 (#38) Checking Open/Short
2. CD-6 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short
3. CD-6 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
</table>

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">DTC</th><th rowspan="2">Diagnostic Criteria</th><th colspan="3">Application</th></tr>
<tr><th>HCESPN</th><th>FMI</th><th>G</th><th>C</th><th>W</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">120</td><td>0</td><td>10 seconds continuous, Main Pump 1 (P1) Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>10 seconds continuous, 0.3V ≤ Main Pump 1 (P1) Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>10 seconds continuous, Main Pump 1 (P1) Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Monitor – Main Pump 1 (P1) Press. display failure
2. Control Function – Automatic voltage increase operation failure, Overload at compensation control failure
(Checking list)
1. CD-42 (#B) – CN-52 (#29) Checking Open/Short
2. CD-42 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short
3. CD-42 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">121</td><td>0</td><td>10 seconds continuous, Main Pump 2 (P2) Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Main Pump 2 (P2) Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>10 seconds continuous, Main Pump 2 (P2) Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Monitor – Main Pump 2 (P2) Press. display failure
2. Control Function – Automatic voltage increase operation failure, Overload at compensation control failure
(Checking list)
1. CD-43 (#B) – CN-52 (#12) Checking Open/Short
2. CD-43 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short
3. CD-43 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">122</td><td>1</td><td>(when you had conditions mounting pressure sensor)
10 seconds continuous, 0.3V ≤ Overload Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>(when you had conditions mounting pressure sensor)
10 seconds continuous, Overload Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Monitor – Overload Press. display failure
2. Control Function – Overload warning alarm failure
(Checking list)
1. CD-31 (#B) – CN-52 (#16) Checking Open/Short
2. CD-31 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short
3. CD-31 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
</table>

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General　　C : Crawler Type　　W : Wheel Type

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">DTC</th><th rowspan="2">Diagnostic Criteria</th><th colspan="3">Application</th></tr>
<tr><th>HCESPN</th><th>FMI</th><th>G</th><th>C</th><th>W</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">123</td><td>0</td><td>10 seconds continuous, Negative 1 Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Negative 1 Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>10 seconds continuous, Negative 1 Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Monitor – Negative 1 Press. display failure
2. Control Function – IPC operation failure, Option attachment flow control operation failure
(Checking list)
1. CD-70 (#B) – CN-52 (#33) Checking Open/Short
2. CD-70 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short
3. CD-70 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">124</td><td>0</td><td>10 seconds continuous, Negative 2 Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Negative 2 Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>10 seconds continuous, Negative 2 Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Monitor – Negative 2 Press. display failure
2. Control Function – Option attachment flow control operation failure
(Checking list)
1. CD-71 (#B) – CN-52 (#17) Checking Open/Short
2. CD-71 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short
3. CD-71 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">127</td><td>0</td><td>10 seconds continuous, Boom Up Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Boom Up Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>10 seconds continuous, Boom Up Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement < 0.3V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Monitor – Boom Up Pilot Press. display failure
2. Control Function – Engine/Pump variable horse power control operation failure, IPC operation failure, Boom first operation failure
(Checking list)
1. CD-32 (#B) – CN-52 (#19) Checking Open/Short
2. CD-32 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short
3. CD-32 (#C) – CN-5 1(#13) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
</table>

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

DTC		Diagnostic Criteria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI		G	C	W
128	0	(when you had conditions mounting pressure sensor) 10 seconds continuous, Boom Down Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V	●		
	1	(when you had conditions mounting pressure sensor) 10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Boom Down Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V	●		
	4	(when you had conditions mounting pressure sensor) 10 seconds continuous, Boom Down Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Boom Down Pilot Press. display failure 2. Control Function – Boom floating operation failure (Checking list) 1. CD-85 (#B) – CN-53 (#23) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-85 (#A) – CN-53 (#3) Checking Open/Short 3. CD-85 (#C) – CN-53 (#13) Checking Open/Short				
129	0	10 seconds continuous, Arm In Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 4.8V	●		
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Arm In Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V	●		
	4	10 seconds continuous, Arm In Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Arm In Pilot Press. display failure 2. Control Function – IPC operation failure (Checking list) 1. CD-90 (#B) – CN-52 (#28) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-90 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short 3. CD-90 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short				
133	0	10 seconds continuous, Arm In/Out & Bucket In Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V	●		
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Arm In/Out & Bucket In Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V	●		
	4	10 seconds continuous, Arm In/Out & Bucket In Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Arm In/Out & Bucket In Pilot Press. display failure 2. Control Function – Engine variable horse power control operation failure (Checking list) 1. CD-35 (#B) – CN-52 (#14) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-35 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short 3. CD-35 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short				

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

DTC		Diagnostic Criteria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI		G	C	W
135	0	10 seconds continuous, Swing Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V	●		
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Swing Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V	●		
	4	10 seconds continuous, Swing Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Swing Pilot Press. display failure 2. Control Function – IPC operation, Boom first operation failure (Checking list) 1. CD-24 (#B) – CN-52 (#36) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-24 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short 3. CD-24 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short				
138	0	Monitor – Select Attachment(breaker / crusher) 10 seconds continuous, Attachment Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V	●		
	1	Monitor – Select Attachment(breaker / crusher) 10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Attachment Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V	●		
	4	Monitor – Select Attachment(breaker / crusher) 10 seconds continuous, Attachment Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Attachment Pilot Press. display failure 2. Control Function – Option attachment flow control operation failure (Checking list) 1. CD-69 (#B) – CN-53 (#14) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-69 (#A) – CN-53 (#3) Checking Open/Short 3. CD-69 (#C) – CN-53 (#13) Checking Open/Short				
139	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Option Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V			●
	4	10 seconds continuous, Option Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V			●
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Option Pilot Press. display failure 2. Control Function – Auto Idle operation failure (Checking list) 1. CD-100 (#B) – CN-52 (#21) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-100 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short 3. CD-100 (#C) – CN-1 (#6) Checking Open/Short				

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">DTC</th><th rowspan="2">Diagnostic Criteria</th><th colspan="3">Application</th></tr>
<tr><th>HCESPN</th><th>FMI</th><th>G</th><th>C</th><th>W</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">140</td><td>5</td><td>(Detection)
(When Pump EPPR Current is more than 10 mA)
10 seconds continuous, Pump EPPR drive current < 0 mA
(Cancellation)
(When Pump EPPR Current is more than 10 mA)
3 seconds continuous, Pump EPPR drive current ≥10 mA</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>(Detection)
10 seconds continuous, Pump EPPR drive current > 1.0A
(Cancellation)
3 seconds continuous, Pump EPPR drive current ≤ 1.0 A</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Control Function – Pump horse power setting specification difference
(Fuel efficiency/speed specification failure)
(Checking list)
1. CN-75 (#2) – CN-52 (#9) Checking Open/Short
2. CN-75 (#1) – CN-52 (#10) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">141</td><td>5</td><td>(Model Parameter) mounting Boom Priority EPPR
(Detection)
(When Boom Priority EPPR Current is more than 10 mA)
10 seconds continuous, Boom Priority EPPR drive current < 0 mA
(Cancellation)
(When Boom Priority EPPR Current is more than 10 mA)
3 seconds continuous, Boom Priority EPPR drive current ≥ 10 mA</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>(Detection)
10 seconds continuous, Boom Priority EPPR drive current > 1.0 A
(Cancellation)
3 seconds continuous, Boom Priority EPPR drive current ≤ 1.0 A</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Control Function – Boom first control operation failure
(Checking list)
1. CN-133 (#2) – CN-52 (#34) Checking Open/Short
2. CN-133 (#1) – CN-52 (#35) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
</table>

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

DTC		Diagnostic Criteria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI		G	C	W
143	5	(Detection) (When Travel EPPR Current is more than 10 mA) 10 seconds continuous, Travel EPPR drive current = 0 mA (Cancellation) (When Travel EPPR Current is more than 100 mA) 3 seconds continuous, Travel EPPR drive current ≥ 10 mA			●
	6	(Detection) 10 seconds continuous, Travel EPPR drive current > 1.0 A (Cancellation) 3 seconds continuous, Travel EPPR drive current ≤ 1.0 A			●
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – cruise control operation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-246 (#2) – CN-54 (#39) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-246 (#1) – CN-51 (#40) Checking Open/Short				
145	5	(Model Parameter) mounting Remote Cooling Fan EPPR (Detection) (When Remote Cooling Fan EPPR Current is more than 10 mA) 10 seconds continuous, Remote Cooling Fan EPPR drive current = 0 mA (Cancellation) (When Remote Cooling Fan EPPR Current is more than 10 mA) 3 seconds continuous, Remote Cooling Fan EPPR drive current ≥ 10 mA	●		
	6	(Detection) 10 seconds continuous, Remote Cooling Fan EPPR drive current > 1.0 A (Cancellation) 3 seconds continuous, Remote Cooling Fan EPPR drive current ≤ 1.0 A	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Remote fan control operation failure (Checking list) 1. CD-52 (#1) – CN-51 (#9) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-52 (#2) – CN-51 (#14) Checking Open/Short				

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General　　C : Crawler Type　　W : Wheel Type

DTC HCESPN	DTC FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	Application G	Application C	Application W
164	4	(Detection) (When Working Cutoff Relay is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Working Cutoff Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Working Cutoff Relay is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Working Cutoff Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V			●
	6	(Detection) (When Working Cutoff Relay is On) 10 seconds continuous, Working Cutoff Relay drive current > 6.5 A (Cancellation) (When Working Cutoff Relay is On) 3 seconds continuous, Working Cutoff Relay drive current ≤ 6.5 A			●
		(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – (Wheel Excavator) In driving mode, attachment hydraulic pilot pressure cut off failure (Checking list) 1. CR-47 (#85) – CN-54 (#9) Checking Open/Short 2. CR-47 (#30, #86) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short			
166	4	(Detection) (When Power Max Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Power Max Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Power Max Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Power Max Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V	●		
	6	(Detection) (When Power Max Solenoid is On) 5 seconds continuous, Power Max Solenoid drive current > 4.5 A (Cancellation) (When Power Max Solenoid is On) 3 seconds continuous, Power Max Solenoid drive current ≤ 4.5 A	●		
		(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Voltage increase operation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-88 (#1) – CN-52 (#2) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-88 (#2) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short			

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

DTC		Diagnostic Criteria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI		G	C	W
167	4	(Detection) (When Travel Speed Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Travel Speed Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Travel Speed Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Travel Speed Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V		●	
		(When Parking mode is not) (Detection) (When Travel Speed Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Travel Speed Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Travel Speed Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Travel Speed Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V			●
	6	(Detection) (When Travel Speed Solenoid is On) 10 seconds continuous, Travel Speed Solenoid drive current > 4.5 A (Cancellation) (When Travel Speed Solenoid is On) 3 seconds continuous, Travel Speed Solenoid drive current ≤ 4.5 A	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – driving in 1/2 transmission operation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-70 (#1) – CN-52(#20) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-70 (#2) – CN-45(#B+ term) Checking Open/Short				

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">DTC</th><th rowspan="2">Diagnostic Criteria</th><th colspan="3">Application</th></tr>
<tr><th>HCESPN</th><th>FMI</th><th>G</th><th>C</th><th>W</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">169</td><td>4</td><td>Monitor – Selecting attachment(breaker / crusher)
(Detection)
(When Attachment Conflux Solenoid is Off)
10 seconds continuous, Attachment Conflux Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage $\leq$ 3.0V
(Cancellation)
(When Attachment Conflux Solenoid is Off)
3 seconds continuous, Attachment Conflux Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage $>$ 3.0V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>(Detection)
(When Attachment Conflux Solenoid is On)
10 seconds continuous, Attachment Conflux Solenoid drive Current $>$ 6.5 A
(Cancellation)
(When Attachment Conflux Solenoid is On)
3 seconds continuous, Attachment Conflux Solenoid drive Current $\leq$ 6.5 A</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / symptoms)
1. Control Function – Option attachment flow control – Joining operation failure
(Eco breaker mode, crusher mode)
(Checking list)
1. CD-237 (#1) – CN-53 (#7) Checking Open/Short
2. CD-237 (#2) – CR-35 (#87) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">170</td><td>4</td><td>(Model Parameter) mounting Arm Regenerating Solenoid
(Detection)
(When Arm Regeneration Solenoid is Off)
10 seconds continuous, Arm Regeneration Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage $\leq$ 3.0V
(Cancellation)
(When Arm Regeneration Solenoid is Off)
3 seconds continuous, Arm Regeneration Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage $>$ 3.0V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>(Detection)
(When Arm Regeneration Solenoid is On)
10 seconds continuous, Arm Regeneration Solenoid drive current $>$ 4.5 A
(Cancellation)
(When Arm Regeneration Solenoid is On)
3 seconds continuous, Arm Regeneration Solenoid drive current $\leq$ 4.5 A</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Detection)
(When Arm Regeneration Solenoid is On)
10 seconds continuous, Arm Regeneration Solenoid drive current $>$ 4.5 A
(Cancellation)
(When Arm Regeneration Solenoid is On)
3 seconds continuous, Arm Regeneration Solenoid drive current $\leq$ 4.5 A</td></tr>
</table>

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">DTC</th><th rowspan="2">Diagnostic Criteria</th><th colspan="3">Application</th></tr>
<tr><th>HCESPN</th><th>FMI</th><th>G</th><th>C</th><th>W</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">171</td><td>4</td><td>Monitor – Selecting attachment(crusher)
(Detection)
(When Attachment Safety Solenoid is Off)
10 seconds continuous, Attachment Safety Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V
(Cancellation)
(When Attachment Safety Solenoid is Off)
3 seconds continuous, Attachment Safety Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>(Detection)
(When Attachment Safety Solenoid is On)
10 seconds continuous, Attachment Safety Solenoid drive current > 6.5 A
(Cancellation)
(When Attachment Safety Solenoid is On)
3 seconds continuous, Attachment Safety Solenoid drive current ≤ 6.5 A</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Control Function – Option attachment flow control – Option spool pilot pressure cut off failure (crusher mode)
(Checking list)
1. CD-149 (#1) – CN-53 (#8) Checking Open/Short
2. CD-149 (#2) – CR-35 (#87) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">179</td><td>4</td><td>Monitor – Selecting attachment(breaker / crusher)
(Detection)
(When Breaker Operating Solenoid is Off)
10 seconds continuous, Attachment Safety Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V
(Cancellation)
(When Breaker Operating Solenoid is Off)
3 seconds continuous, Attachment Safety Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>(Detection)
(When Breaker Operating Solenoid is On)
10 seconds continuous, Attachment Safety Solenoid drive current > 6.5 A
(Cancellation)
(When Breaker Operating Solenoid is On)
3 seconds continuous, Attachment Safety Solenoid drive current ≤ 6.5 A</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Control Function – Option attachment flow control – Breaker operation failure (breaker mode)
(Checking list)
1. CD-66 (#1) – CN-53 (#9) Checking Open/Short
2. CD-66 (#2) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short
3. CD-66 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
</table>

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">DTC</th><th rowspan="2">Diagnostic Criteria</th><th colspan="3">Application</th></tr>
<tr><th>HCESPN</th><th>FMI</th><th>G</th><th>C</th><th>W</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">181</td><td>4</td><td>(Model Parameter) mounting Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid
(Detection)
(When Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid is Off)
10 seconds continuous, Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V
(Cancellation)
(When Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid is Off)
3 seconds continuous, Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>(Detection)
(When Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid is On)
10 seconds continuous, Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid drive current > 4.5 A
(Cancellation)
(When Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid is On)
3 seconds continuous, Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid drive current ≤ 4.5 A</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Control Function – Cooling Fan reverse control operation failure (not applicable)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">188</td><td>5</td><td>(Detection)
(When Attachment Flow EPPR 1 current is equal or more than 300 mA)
10 seconds continuous, Attachment Flow EPPR drive current < 100 mA
(Cancellation)
(When Attachment Flow EPPR 1 current is equal or more than 300 mA)
3 seconds continuous, Attachment Flow EPPR drive current ≥ 100 mA</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>(Detection)
10 seconds continuous, Attachment Flow EPPR 1 drive current > 1.0 A
(Cancellation)
3 seconds continuous, Attachment Flow EPPR 1 drive current ≤ 1.0 A</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Control Function – IPC operation failure, Option attachment flow control operation failure
(Checking list)
1. CN-242 (#2) – CN-52 (#39) Checking Open/Short
2. CN-242 (#1) – CN-52 (#40) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
</table>

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

DTC		Diagnostic Criteria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI		G	C	W
189	5	(Detection) (When Attachment Flow EPPR 2 current is equal or more than 300 mA) 10 seconds continuous, Attachment Flow EPPR drive current < 100 mA (Cancellation) (When Attachment Flow EPPR 2 current is equal or more than 300 mA) 3 seconds continuous, Attachment Flow EPPR drive current ≥ 100 mA	●		
	6	(Detection) 10 seconds continuous, Attachment Flow EPPR 2 drive current > 1.0 A (Cancellation) 3 seconds continuous, Attachment Flow EPPR 2 drive current ≤ 1.0 A	●		
		(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Option attachment flow control operation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-243 (#2) – CN-52 (#6) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-243 (#1) – CN-52 (#7) Checking Open/Short			
196	0	HW145 10 seconds continuous, Attachment flow control EPPR 1 press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V			
	1	HW145 10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Attachment flow control EPPR 1 press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V			
	4	HW145 10 seconds continuous, Attachment flow control EPPR 1 press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V			
		(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Driving second pump joining function operation failure (Checking list) 1. CD-33 (#B) – CN-52 (#11) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-33 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short 3. CD-33 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short			
200	0	10 seconds continuous, Pump EPPR Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V	●		
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Pump EPPR Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V	●		
	4	10 seconds continuous, Pump EPPR Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	●		
		(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Pump EPPR Press. display failure 2. Control Function – Pump input horse power control failure, Overload at compensation control operation failure (Fuel efficiency/speed performance failure) (Checking list) 1. CD-44 (#B) – CN-52 (#32) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-44 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short 3. CD-44 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short			

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">DTC</th><th rowspan="2">Diagnostic Criteria</th><th colspan="3">Application</th></tr>
<tr><th>HCESPN</th><th>FMI</th><th>G</th><th>C</th><th>W</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">205</td><td>0</td><td>(Mounting pressure sensor)
10 seconds continuous, Boom Cylinder Rod Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>(Mounting pressure sensor)
10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Boom Cylinder Rod Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>(Mounting pressure sensor)
10 seconds continuous, Boom Cylinder Rod Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Monitor – Boom Cylinder Rod Press. display failure
2. Control Function – Boom floating control operation failure
(Checking list)
1. CD-124 (#B) – CN-53 (#5) Checking Open/Short
2. CD-124 (#A) – CN-53 (#3) Checking Open/Short
3. CD-124 (#C) – CN-53 (#13) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">218</td><td>4</td><td>Mounting pressure sensor (HCESPN128 or HCESPN 205)
(Detection)
(When Boom Up Floating Solenoid is Off)
10 seconds continuous, Boom Up Floating Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V
(Cancellation)
(When Boom Up Floating Solenoid is Off)
3 seconds continuous, Boom Up Floating Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>(Detection)
(When Boom Up Floating Solenoid is On)
10 seconds continuous, Boom Up Floating Solenoid drive current > 6.5 A
(Cancellation)
(When Boom Up Floating Solenoid is On)
3 seconds continuous, Boom Up Floating Solenoid drive current ≤ 6.5 A</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Control Function – Boom floating control operation failure
(Checking list)
1. CD-368 (#1) – CN-53 (#20) Checking Open/Short
2. CD-368 (#2) – CR-35 (#87) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
</table>

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">DTC</th><th rowspan="2">Diagnostic Criteria</th><th colspan="3">Application</th></tr>
<tr><th>HCESPN</th><th>FMI</th><th>G</th><th>C</th><th>W</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">220</td><td>4</td><td>Mounting pressure sensor (HCESPN 128 or 205)
(Detection)
(When Boom Down Pilot Pressure Cutoff Solenoid is Off)
10 seconds continuous,
Boom Down Pilot Pressure Cutoff Solenoid drive unit
Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V
(Cancellation)
(When Boom Down Pilot Pressure Cutoff Solenoid is Off)
3 seconds continuous,
Boom Down Pilot Pressure Cutoff Solenoid drive unit
Measurement Voltage > 3.0V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>(Detection)
(When Boom Down Pilot Pressure Cutoff Solenoid is On)
10 seconds continuous, Boom Down Pilot Pressure Cutoff Solenoid drive current > 6.5 A
(Cancellation)
(When Boom Down Pilot Pressure Cutoff Solenoid is On)
3 seconds continuous, Boom Down Pilot Pressure Cutoff Solenoid drive current ≤ 6.5 A</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Control Function – Boom floating control operation failure
(Checking list)
1. CD-369 (#1) – CN-53 (#35) Checking Open/Short
2. CD-369 (#2) – CR-35 (#87) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">221</td><td>5</td><td>Monitor – Selecting attachment(breaker / crusher)
(Detection)
(When ATT Relief Setting EPPR 1 Current is equal or more than 10 mA)
10 seconds continuous, ATT Relief Setting EPPR 1 drive current = 0 mA
(Cancellation)
ATT Relief Setting EPPR 1 Current is equal or more than 10 mA)
3 seconds continuous, ATT Relief Setting EPPR 1 drive current ≥ 10 mA</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>(Detection)
10 seconds continuous, ATT Relief Setting EPPR 1 drive current > 1.0 A
(Cancellation)
3 seconds continuous, ATT Relief Setting EPPR 1 drive current ≤ 1.0 A</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Control Function – Option attachment flow control – P1 relief pressure setting failure
(Checking list)
1. CD-365 (#2) – CN-53 (#39) Checking Open/Short
2. CD-365 (#1) – CN-53 (#40) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
</table>

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

DTC		Diagnostic Criteria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI		G	C	W
222	5	Monitor – Selecting attachment(crusher) (Detection) (When ATT Relief Setting EPPR 2 Current is equal or more than 10 mA) 10 seconds continuous, ATT Relief Setting EPPR 2 drive current = 0 mA (Cancellation) (When ATT Relief Setting EPPR 2 Current is equal or more than 10 mA) 3 seconds continuous, ATT Relief Setting EPPR 2 drive current ≥ 10mA	●		
	6	(Detection) 10 seconds continuous, ATT Relief Setting EPPR 2 drive current > 1.0 A (Cancellation) 3 seconds continuous, ATT Relief Setting EPPR 2 drive current ≤ 1.0 A	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Option attachment flow control – P2 relief pressure setting failure (Checking list) 1. CD-366 (#2) – CN-53 (#32) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-366 (#1) – CN-53 (#33) Checking Open/Short				
301	3	10 seconds continuous, Fuel Level Measurement Voltage > 3.8V	●		
	4	10 seconds continuous, Fuel Level Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Fuel remaining display failure (Checking list) 1. CD-2 (#2) – CN-52 (#26) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-2 (#1) – CN-51 (#5) Checking Open/Short				
325	4	(Model Parameter) mounting Fuel Warmer Relay (Detection) (When Fuel Warmer Relay is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Fuel Warmer Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Fuel Warmer Relay is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Fuel Warmer Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V	●		
	6	(Detection) (When Fuel Warmer Relay is On) 10 seconds continuous, Fuel Warmer Relay drive current > 4.5 A (Cancellation) (When Fuel Warmer Relay is On) 3 seconds continuous, Fuel Warmer Relay drive current ≤ 4.5 A	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Fuel warmer operation failure (Checking list) 1. CR-46 (#85) – CN-52 (#30) Checking Open/Short 2. CR-46 (#86) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short				

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

DTC		Diagnostic Criteria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI		G	C	W
501	0	10 seconds continuous, Transmission Oil Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V			●
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Transmission Oil Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V			●
	4	10 seconds continuous, Transmission Oil Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V			●
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Transmission Oil Press. display failure, Transmission Oil low pressure warning failure (Checking list) 1. CD-5 (#B) – CN-54 (#27) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-5 (#A) – CN-54 (#3) Checking Open/Short 3. CD-5 (#C) – CN-54 (#13) Checking Open/Short				
503	0	10 seconds continuous, Brake Oil Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V			●
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Brake Oil Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V			●
	4	10 seconds continuous, Brake Oil Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V			●
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Brake Oil Press. display failure, Brake Oil low pressure warning failure (Checking list) 1. CD-3 (#B) – CN-54 (#4) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-3 (#A) – CN-54 (#3) Checking Open/Short 3. CD-3 (#C) – CN-54 (#13) Checking Open/Short				
505	0	10 seconds continuous, Working Brake Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V			●
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Working Brake Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V			●
	4	10 seconds continuous, Working Brake Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V			●
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Working Brake Oil Press. display failure, Working Brake Oil low pressure warning failure (Checking list) 1. CD-38 (#B) – CN-54 (#5) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-38 (#A) – CN-54 (#3) Checking Open/Short 3. CD-38 (#C) – CN-54 (#13) Checking Open/Short				

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

DTC		Diagnostic Criteria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI		G	C	W
514	4	(Detection) (When Parking Relay is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Parking Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Parking Relay is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Parking Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V			●
	6	(Detection) (When Parking Relay is On) 10 seconds continuous, Parking Relay drive current > 6.5 A (Cancellation) (When Parking Relay is On) 3 seconds continuous, Parking Relay drive current ≤ 6.5 A			●
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Parking Relay operation failure (Checking list) 1. CR-66 (#1) – CN-54 (#20) Checking Open/Short 2. CR-66 (#2) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short				
517	4	(Detection) (When Traveling Cutoff Relay is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Traveling Cutoff Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Traveling Cutoff Relay is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Traveling Cutoff Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V			●
	6	(Detection) (When Traveling Cutoff Relay is On) 10 seconds continuous, Traveling Cutoff Relay drive current > 6.5 A (Cancellation) (When Traveling Cutoff Relay is On) 3 seconds continuous, Traveling Cutoff Relay drive current ≤ 6.5 A			●
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Traveling Cutoff Relay operation failure (Checking list) 1. CR-47 (#85) – CN-54 (#9) Checking Open/Short 2. CR-47 (#86) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short				

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

DTC		Diagnostic Criteria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI		G	C	W
525	4	(Detection) (When Ram Lock Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Ram Lock Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Ram Lock Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Ram Lock Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V			●
	6	(Detection) (When Ram Lock Solenoid is On) 10 seconds continuous, Ram Lock Solenoid drive current > 6.5 A (Cancellation) (When Ram Lock Solenoid is On) 3 seconds continuous, Ram Lock Solenoid drive current ≤ 6.5 A			●
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Ram lock control operation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-69 (#1) – CN-54 (#8) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-69 (#2) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short				
527	4	(Detection) (When Creep Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Creep Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Creep Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Creep Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V			●
	6	(Detection) (When Creep Solenoid is On) 10 seconds continuous, Creep Solenoid drive current > 6.5 A (Cancellation) (When Creep Solenoid is On) 3 seconds continuous, Creep Solenoid drive current ≤ 6.5 A			●
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Creep mode operation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-206 (#1) – CN-54 (#7) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-206 (#2) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short				

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

DTC HCESPN	DTC FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	Application G	Application C	Application W
530	0	10 seconds continuous, Travel Forward Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V			●
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Travel Forward Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V			●
	4	10 seconds continuous, Travel Forward Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V			●
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Travel Forward Press. display failure 2. Control Function – Driving interoperability power control operation failure (Checking list) 1. CD-73 (#B) – CN-54 (#6) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-73 (#A) – CN-54 (#3) Checking Open/Short 3. CD-73 (#C) – CN-54 (#13) Checking Open/Short				
531	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Travel Reverse Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V			●
	4	10 seconds continuous, Travel Reverse Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V			●
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Travel Reverse Press. display failure 2. Control Function – Driving interoperability power control operation failure (Checking list) 1. CD-74 (#B) – CN-54 (#23) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-74 (#A) – CN-54 (#3) Checking Open/Short 3. CD-74 (#C) – CN-54 (#13) Checking Open/Short				
705	0	10 seconds continuous, Battery input Voltage > 35V	●		
	1	10 seconds continuous, Battery input Voltage < 18V	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Startup impossibility (Checking list) 1. CS-74A (#1) – CN-51 (#1) Checking Open/Short				
707	1	(When Engine is equal or more than 400 rpm) 10 seconds continuous, Alternator Node L Measurement Voltage < 18V (In case 12v goods, Alternator Node L Measurement Voltage < 9V)	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Battery charging circuit failure (Checking list) 1. CS-74A (#1) – CN-51 (#2) Checking Open/Short				

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General　　C : Crawler Type　　W : Wheel Type

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">DTC</th><th rowspan="2">Diagnostic Criteria</th><th colspan="3">Application</th></tr>
<tr><th>HCESPN</th><th>FMI</th><th>G</th><th>C</th><th>W</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">714</td><td>3</td><td>(Model Parameter) Mounting Acc. Dial
10 seconds continuous, Acc. Dial Measurement Voltage > 5.2V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>(Model Parameter) Mounting Acc. Dial
10 seconds continuous, Acc. Dial Measurement Voltage < 0.3V</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Monitor – Acc. Dial Voltage display failure
2. Control Function – Engine rpm control failure
(Checking list)
1. CN-7 (#15) – CN-52 (#23) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">722</td><td>4</td><td>(Detection)
(When Travel Alarm (Buzzer) Sound is Off)
10 seconds continuous, Travel Alarm (Buzzer) Sound Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V
(Cancellation)
(When Travel Alarm (Buzzer) Sound Relay is Off)
3 seconds continuous, Travel Alarm (Buzzer) Sound Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V</td><td></td><td>●</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>(Detection)
(When Travel Alarm (Buzzer) Sound is On)
10 seconds continuous, Travel Alarm (Buzzer) Sound Relay drive current > 4.5 A
(Cancellation)
(When Travel Alarm (Buzzer) Sound is On)
3 seconds continuous, Travel Alarm (Buzzer) Sound Relay drive current ≤ 4.5 A</td><td></td><td>●</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Control Function – Driving alarm operation failure
(Checking list)
1. CN-81 (#1) – CN-52 (#31) Checking Open/Short
2. CN-81 (#2) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">831</td><td>2</td><td>(When mounting the A/C Controller)
60 seconds continuous, A/C Controller Communication Data Error</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Control Function – A/C Controller operation failure
(Checking list)
1. CN-11 (#8) – CN-51 (#22) Checking Open/Short
2. CN-11 (#7) – CN-51 (#32) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">840</td><td>2</td><td>60 seconds continuous, Cluster Communication Data Error</td><td>●</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">(Results / Symptoms)
1. Control Function – Cluster operation failure
(Checking list)
1. CN-56A (#7) – CN-51 (#22) Checking Open/Short
2. CN-56A (#6) – CN-51 (#32) Checking Open/Short</td></tr>
</table>

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	C	W
841	2	10 seconds continuous, ECM Communication Data Error	●		
		(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – ECM operation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-93 (#22) – CN-51 (#21) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-93 (#46) – CN-51 (#31) Checking Open/Short			
845	2	(When mounting the I/O Controller 1) 60 seconds continuous, I/O Controller 1 Communication Data Error	●		
		(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – I/O Controller 1 operation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-53 (#21) – CN-51 (#23) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-53 (#31) – CN-51 (#33) Checking Open/Short			
848	2	(When mounting the Haptic Controller) 60 seconds continuous, Haptic Controller Communication Data Error	●		
		(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Haptic Controller operation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-8 (#2) – CN-51 (#22) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-8 (#3) – CN-51 (#32) Checking Open/Short			
850	2	(When mounting the RMCU) 60 seconds continuous, RMCU communication Data Error	●		
		(Resuluts / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – RMCU operation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-125 (#3) – CN-51 (#22) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-125 (#11) – CN-51 (#32) Checking Open/Short			
861	2	(When mounting the I/O Controller 2) 60 seconds continuous, I/O Controller 2 communication Data Error	●		
		(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – I/O Controller 2 operation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-54 (#21) – CN-51 (#23) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-54 (#31) – CN-51 (#33) Checking Open/Short			

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

DTC		Diagnostic Criteria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI		G	C	W
866	2	(When mounting the AAVM) 60 seconds continuous, AAVM communication Data Error	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – AAVM operation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-401 (#86) – CN-51 (#22) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-401 (#87) – CN-51 (#32) Checking Open/Short				
867	2	60 seconds continuous, RDU communication Data Error	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – RDU operation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-376 (#10) – CN-51 (#22) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-376 (#18) – CN-51 (#32) Checking Open/Short				
868	2	60 seconds continuous, Switch Controller communication Data Error	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Switch Controller operation failure (Checking list) 1. CN-56A (#7) – CN-51 (#22) Checking Open/Short 2. CN-56A (#6) – CN-51 (#32) Checking Open/Short				
869	2	(When mounting the BKCU) 60 seconds continuous, BKCU communication Data Error	●		
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – BKCU operation failure (Checking list) 1. CS-2B (#A) – CN-51 (#22) Checking Open/Short 2. CS-2B (#B) – CN-51 (#32) Checking Open/Short				

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

4. ENGINE FAULT CODE

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
111 629 12	Engine control module critical internal failure - Bad intelligent device or component. Error internal to the ECM related to memory hardware failures or internal ECM voltage supply circuits.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.
115 612 2	Engine magnetic crankshaft speed/position lost both of two signals - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected the primary and backup speed sensor signals are connected backwards.	The engine will shut down or will not start.
122 102 3	Intake manifold 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the intake manifold pressure circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
123 102 4	Intake manifold 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low Source. Low signal voltage or open circuit detected at the intake manifold pressure circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
124 102 16	Intake manifold 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Intake manifold pressure is above the maximum operating limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
125 102 18	Intake Manifold 1 Pressure - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Intake manifold pressure is below the minimum operating limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
131 91 3	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at accelerator pedal position number 1 circuit.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
132 91 4	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at accelerator pedal position number 1 signal circuit.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
133 974 3	Remote accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at remote accelerator pedal position signal circuit.	Remote accelerator will not operate.
134 974 4	Remote accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at remote accelerator pedal position signal circuit.	Remote accelerator will not operate.
135 100 3	Engine oil rifle pressure 1 sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the engine oil pressure circuit.	None on performance.
141 100 4	Engine oil rifle pressure 1 sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage or open circuit detected at the engine oil pressure circuit.	None on performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
143 100 18	Engine oil rifle pressure - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Engine oil pressure signal indicates engine oil pressure is below the engine protection warning limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
144 110 3	Engine coolant temperature 1 sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at engine coolant temperature circuit.	Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM.
145 110 4	Engine coolant temperature 1 sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at engine coolant temperature circuit.	Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM.
146 110 16	Engine coolant temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Engine coolant temperature is above engine protection warning limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red stop lamp starts flashing.
151 110 0	Engine coolant temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. Engine coolant temperature signal indicates engine coolant temperature above engine protection critical limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red stop lamp starts flashing.
153 105 3	Intake manifold 1 temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at intake manifold air temperature circuit.	Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM.
154 105 4	Intake manifold 1 temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at intake manifold air temperature circuit.	Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM.
155 105 0	Intake manifold 1 temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. Intake manifold air temperature signal indicates intake manifold air temperature above engine protection critical limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red stop lamp starts flashing.
175 3464 3	Electronic throttle control actuator driver circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. A short circuit to battery or open circuit has been detected in the engine intake air throttle actuator signal circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
176 3464 4	Electronic throttle control actuator driver circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. A short circuit to ground has been detected in the engine intake air throttle actuator signal circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
177 3464 7	Electronic throttle control actuator - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The engine intake air throttle actuator has failed the auto zero span check.	Possible reduced engine performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
187 3510 4	Sensor supply 2 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the sensor supply number 2 circuit.	Engine power derate.
195 111 3	Coolant level sensor 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at engine coolant level circuit.	None on performance.
196 111 4	Coolant level sensor 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at engine coolant level circuit.	None on performance.
197 111 18	Coolant level - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Low coolant level has been detected.	Engine power derate.
221 108 3	Barometric pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at barometric pressure circuit.	Engine power derate.
222 108 4	Barometric pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at barometric pressure circuit.	Engine power derate.
227 3510 3	Sensor supply 2 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at sensor supply number 2 circuit.	Engine power derate.
234 190 0	Engine crankshaft speed/position - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. Engine speed signal indicates engine speed above engine protection limit.	Engine power derate.
238 3511 4	Sensor supply 3 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected on the +5 volt sensor supply circuit to the engine speed sensor.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
239 3511 3	Sensor supply 3 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High voltage detected on the 5 volt sensor supply circuit to the engine speed sensor.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
241 84 2	Wheel-based vehicle speed - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM lost the vehicle speed signal or is reading an erratic value.	Engine speed limited to ,maximum engine speed without VSS parameter value. Cruise control, gear-down protection, and road speed governor will not work.
245 647 4	Fan control circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the fan control circuit when commanded on.	The fan may stay on continuously or not run at all.
249 171 3	Ambient air temperature sensor 1 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at ambient air temperature circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
256 171 4	Ambient air temperature sensor 1 circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at ambient air temperature circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
271 1347 4	Fuel pump pressurizing assembly 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the fuel pump actuator circuit.	Engine power derate.
272 1347 3	Fuel pump pressurizing assembly 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at the fuel pump actuator circuit.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
285 639 9	SAE J1939 multiplexing PGN timeout error - Abnormal update rate. The ECM expected information from a multiplexed device but did not receive it soon enough or did not receive it at all.	At least one multiplexed device will not operate properly.
286 639 13	SAE J1939 multiplexing configuration error - Out of calibration. The ECM expected information from a multiplexed device but only received a portion of the necessary information.	At least one multiplexed device will not operate properly.
288 974 19	Sae J1939 multiplexing remote accelerator pedal or lever position sensor circuit - Received network data in error. The oem vehicle electronic control unit (VECM) detected a fault with the remote accelerator.	Remote accelerator will not operate.
295 108 2	Barometric pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. An error in the barometric pressure sensor signal was detected by the ECM.	Engine power derate.
322 651 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 1 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 1 when voltage is turned OFF.	Engine power derate.
323 655 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 5 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 5 when voltage is turned OFF.	The current to the injector is shut OFF. Engine power derate.
324 653 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 3 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 3 when voltage is turned OFF.	The current to the injector is shut OFF. Engine power derate.
325 656 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 6 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 6 when voltage is turned OFF.	The current to the injector is shut OFF. Engine power derate.
331 652 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 2 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 2 when voltage is turned OFF.	The current to the injector is shut OFF. Engine power derate.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
332 654 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 4 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 4 when voltage is turned OFF.	The current to the injector is shut OFF. Engine power derate.
334 110 2	Engine coolant temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The engine coolant temperature sensor is reading an erratic value at initial key ON.	None on performance.
338 1267 3	Idle shutdown vehicle accessories relay driver circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or short to voltage source detected at the idle shutdown vehicle accessory/ignition bus relay circuit.	Vehicle accessories or ignition bus loads controlled by the idle shutdown relay will not power up.
339 1267 4	Idle shutdown vehicle accessories relay driver circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the idle shutdown vehicle accessory or ignition bus relay circuit when commanded ON.	Vehicle accessories or ignition bus loads controlled by the idle shutdown relay will not power up.
343 629 12	Engine control module warning internal hardware failure - Bad intelligent device or component. ECM power supply errors have been detected.	Engine power derate.
346 630 12	Engine control module calibration memory software - Bad intelligent device or component. Invalid switch configuration adjustable parameter setting have been detected by the engine control module (ECM).	Various optional switch inputs to the ECM may not operate correctly.
351 627 12	Injector power supply - Bad intelligent device or component. The ECM measured injector boost voltage is low.	Engine power derate.
352 3509 4	Sensor supply 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at sensor supply number 1 circuit.	Engine power derate.
383 729 5	Engine intake air heater 1 circuit - Current below normal or open circuit. A malfunctioning engine intake air heater circuit has been detected.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.
386 3509 3	Sensor supply 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at sensor supply number 1 circuit.	Engine power derate.
415 100 1	Engine oil rifle pressure - Data valid but below normal operational range - Most severe level. Oil pressure signal indicates oil pressure below the engine protection critical limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, engine will shut down 30 seconds after red stop lamp starts flashing.
418 97 15	Water in fuel indicator - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. water has been detected in the fuel filter.	None on performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
427 639 9	J1939 data link - Abnormal update rate. Communication between the engine control module (ECM) and another device on the SAE J1939 data link has been lost.	Engine will only idle.
428 97 3	Water in fuel indicator sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at the water in fuel circuit.	None on performance. No water in fuel warning available.
435 100 2	Engine oil rifle pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The engine oil pressure sensor is reading an erratic value.	None on performance.
436 105 2	Intake manifold 1 temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The intake manifold temperature sensor is reading an erratic value at initial key on or while the engine is running.	Possible reduced engine performance.
441 168 18	Battery 1 voltage - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. ECM supply voltage is below the minimum system voltage level.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
442 168 16	Battery 1 Voltage - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. ECM supply voltage is above the maximum system voltage level.	None on performance.
449 157 0	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. The ECM has detected that fuel pressure in the fuel rail is higher than the normal operating fuel system pressure.	Possible reduced engine performance.
451 157 3	Injector metering rail 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the rail fuel pressure sensor circuit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
452 157 4	Injector metering rail 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the rail fuel pressure sensor circuit.	Power and/or speed derate.
483 1349 3	Injector metering rail 2 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the fuel rail 2 pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
484 1349 4	Injector metering rail 2 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the fuel rail 2 pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
515 3514 3	Sensor supply 6 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High voltage detected on the +5 volt sensor supply circuit to the fuel rail pressure sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
516 3514 4	Sensor supply 6 circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected on the +5 volt sensor supply circuit to the fuel rail pressure sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
553 157 16	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. The ECM has detected that fuel pressure is higher than commanded pressure.	Possible reduced engine performance.
555 101 16	Crankcase pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. The crankcase breather filter requires maintenance.	None on performance.
556 101 0	Crankcase pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. The crankcase breather filter requires maintenance.	None on performance.
559 157 18	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. The ECM has detected that fuel pressure is lower than commanded pressure.	Possibly hard to start or low power. Engine could possibly not start.
584 677 3	Starter relay driver circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or high voltage detected at starter lockout circuit.	Either the engine will not start or the engine will not have starter lockout protection.
585 677 4	Starter relay driver circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at starter lockout circuit.	Either the engine will not start or the engine will not have starter lockout protection.
595 103 16	Turbocharger 1 speed - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High turbocharger speed has been detected by the ECM.	Possible reduced engine performance.
596 167 16	Electrical charging system voltage - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. High battery voltage detected by the battery voltage monitor feature.	None on performance.
597 167 18	Electrical charging system voltage - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Low battery voltage detected by the battery voltage monitor feature.	None on performance.
649 1378 31	Engine oil change interval - Condition exists. Change engine oil and filter.	None on performance.
687 103 18	Turbocharger 1 speed - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Low turbocharger speed detected by the ECM.	Possible reduced engine performance.
689 190 2	Engine crankshaft speed/position - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected an error in the engine speed signal.	Possible reduced engine performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
691 1172 3	Turbocharger 1 compressor inlet temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at turbocharger compressor inlet air temperature circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
692 1172 4	Turbocharger 1 compressor inlet temperature circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at turbocharger compressor inlet air temperature circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
693 1172 2	Turbocharger 1 compressor intake temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. A temperature too high or low for the operating conditions has been detected by the turbocharger compressor intake temperature sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
731 723 7	Engine speed / position camshaft and crankshaft misalignment - Mechanical system not responding properly or out of adjustment. Engine position signal from the crankshaft position sensor and camshaft position sensor do not match.	Possible reduced engine performance.
755 157 7	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected a difference in the 2 fuel rail pressure signals.	Possible reduced engine performance.
778 723 2	Engine camshaft speed / position sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected a loss of signal from the camshaft position sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
784 1590 2	Adaptive cruise control mode - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Loss of communication with adaptive cruise control.	Adaptive cruise control will not operate. Standard cruise control may not operate.
1117 627 2	Power supply lost with ignition on - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Supply voltage to the ECM fell below 6.2 volts momentarily, or the ECM was not allowed to power down correctly (retain battery voltage for 30 seconds after key OFF).	Possible reduced engine performance.
1139 651 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 1 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1141 652 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 2 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1142 653 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 3 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1143 654 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 4 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1144 655 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 5 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1145 656 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 6 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1228 27 2	EGR valve position - Data erratic, intermittent, or Incorrect. The EGR valve is unable to meet commanded position.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1239 2623 3	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 2 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at accelerator pedal position number 2 signal circuit.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
1241 2623 4	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 2 circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at accelerator pedal position number 2 signal circuit.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
1242 91 2	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 and 2 - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Accelerator position sensor number 1 and number 2 are reading different values.	The engine will only idle.
1515 91 19	Sae J1939 multiplexed accelerator pedal or lever sensor system - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the multiplexed accelerator pedal.	The engine will only idle.
1654 1323 31	Engine misfire cylinder 1- Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 1.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1655 1324 31	Engine misfire cylinder 2 - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 2.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1656 1325 31	Engine misfire cylinder 3 - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 3.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1657 1326 31	Engine misfire cylinder 4 - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 4.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1658 1327 31	Engine misfire cylinder 5 - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 5.	Possible reduced engine performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1659 1328 31	Engine misfire cylinder 6 - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 6.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1668 1761 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1669 1761 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the catalyst tank level sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1673 1761 1	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level - Data valid but below normal operating range - Most severe level. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level has fallen below the critical warning level.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1677 3031 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1678 3031 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at the diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1679 3031 2	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor has indicated a tank temperature too high or too low for the ambient conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1682 3362 31	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit input lines - Condition exists. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit is unable to prime.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1683 3363 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1684 3363 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1691 5298 18	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst conversion efficiency - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The temperature increase across the aftertreatment catalyst is lower than expected.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
1695 3513 3	Sensor supply 5 - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at sensor supply 5 circuit in the oem harness.	the engine will operate in limp home mode.
1696 3513 4	Sensor supply 5 - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at sensor supply number 5 circuit in the oem harness.	the engine will operate in limp home mode.
1712 3363 18	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater is unable to thaw the frozen diesel exhaust fluid.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1713 3363 16	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The diesel exhaust fluid tank heater is continuously in the on position.	None on performance.
1718 1322 31	Engine misfire for multiple cylinders - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in multiple cylinder numbers.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1776 2634 3	Power relay driver circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at power relay driver circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1777 2634 4	Power relay driver circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. An open circuit or low voltage has been detected at the power relay circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1843 101 3	Crankcase pressure circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the crankcase pressure circuit.	None on performance.
1844 101 4	Crankcase pressure circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the crankcase pressure circuit.	None on performance.
1866 411 2	Exhaust gas recirculation valve delta pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. An error in the EGR delta pressure signal was detected at initial key on or the sensor failed the autozero test.	possible reduced engine performance.
1867 412 2	Engine gas recircuilation temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Engine misfire has been detected in multiple cylinder numbers.	Possible reduced engine performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1879 3251 3	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment differential pressure sensor circuit.	possible reduced engine performance.
1881 3251 4	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage or open circuit detected at the aftertreatment differential pressure sensor circuit.	possible reduced engine performance.
1883 3251 2	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure sensor is reading an erratic value at initial key on or during engine operation.	possible reduced engine performance.
1885 3216 4	Aftertreatment intake NOx sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. An internal circuit error has been detected by the aftertreatment intake NOx sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1887 3226 4	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. An internal circuit error has been detected by the aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1896 2791 13	EGR valve controller - Out of calibration. The EGR valve has failed the automatic calibration procedure at initial key ON.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1921 3251 0	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The soot load of the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter has exceeded the recommended limits.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1922 3251 0	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure - Data valid but above normal operating range - Most severe level. The soot load of the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter has exceeded the recommended limits. Engine protection derate is enabled.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1938 3597 1	Ecu power output supply voltage 1 - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Low battery voltage detected by the VGT actuator.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1942 101 2	Crankcase pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected that the crankcase pressure signal is reading an erratic value at initial key ON or during engine operation.	None on performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1961 2791 0	EGR valve control circuit calculated over temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. High EGR valve driver temperature has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1962 641 0	VGT Actuator driver over temperature (calculated) - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. High internal VGT actuator temperature has been detected.	None on performance.
1974 101 16	Crankcase pressure - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The crankcase breather filter requires maintenance.	None on performance.
1993 4795 31	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter missing - Condition exists. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter in the exhaust system is not present.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2182 1072 3	Engine brake actuator driver 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage or an open circuit detected at the engine brake solenoid number 1 signal circuit.	Possible reduced engine braking performance.
2183 1072 4	Engine brake actuator driver 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the engine brake solenoid number 1 signal circuit.	Possible reduced engine braking performance.
2185 3512 3	Sensor supply 4 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at 5 VDC sensor supply circuit to the accelerator pedal position sensor.	Engine will only idle.
2186 3512 4	Sensor supply 4 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at 5 VDC sensor supply circuit to the accelerator pedal position sensor.	Engine will only idle.
2198 641 11	VGT Actuator driver circuit - Root cause not known. Intermittent communication between the smart VGT controller and the ECM has been detected. The VGT controller is not interpreting the J1939 message from the ECM correctly.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2265 1075 3	Electric lift pump for engine fuel supply circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage or an open circuit detected at the fuel lift pump signal circuit.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.
2266 1075 4	Electric lift pump for engine fuel supply circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage or an open circuit detected at the fuel lift pump signal circuit.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
2272 27 4	EGR Valve position circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage has been detected at the EGR valve position sensor circuit	Possible reduced engine performance.
2273 411 3	Exhaust gas recirculation valve delta pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the EGR differential pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2274 411 4	Exhaust gas recirculation valve delta pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the EGR differential pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2288 103 15	Turbocharger 1 speed - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. High turbocharger speed has been detected by the ECM.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2311 633 31	Electronic fuel injection control valve circuit - Condition exists. Fuel pump actuator circuit resistance too high or too low, or an intermittent connection has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2321 190 2	Engine crankshaft speed / position - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Crankshaft engine speed sensor intermittent synchronization.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2322 723 2	Engine camshaft speed / position sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Camshaft engine speed sensor intermittent synchronization.	None on performance.
2349 2791 5	EGR Valve control circuit - Current below normal or open circuit. Motor terminal or motor coil open circuit has been detected by the ECM.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2353 2791 6	EGR Valve control circuit - Current above normal or grounded circuit. A short circuit to ground has been detected in the EGR valve motor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2363 1073 4	Engine brake actuator driver output 2 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the engine brake solenoid number 2 signal circuit.	Possible reduced engine braking performance.
2367 1073 3	Engine brake actuator driver output 2 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or high voltage detected at the engine brake solenoid number 2 signal circuit.	Possible reduced engine braking performance.
2372 95 16	Fuel filter differential pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Excessive fuel flow restriction to the high pressure fuel pump has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
2373 1209 3	Exhaust gas pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the exhaust gas pressure circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2374 1209 4	Exhaust gas pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the exhaust gas pressure circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2375 412 3	Exhaust gas recirculation temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at EGR temperature circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2376 412 4	Exhaust gas recirculation temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at EGR temperature circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2377 647 3	Fan control circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or high voltage detected at the fan control circuit.	The fan can stay on continuously or **not** run at all.
2387 641 7	VGT Actuator driver circuit (motor) - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The smart VGT controller has detected incorrect stop limits, or the VGT is unable to move to the closed position.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2398 171 2	Ambient air temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ambient air temperature sensor is reading an erratic value.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2448 111 17	Coolant level - Data valid but below normal operational range - Least severe level. Low engine coolant level detected.	none on performance.
2449 641 13	Vgt actuator controller - Out of calibration. The VGT actuator has been installed incorrectly.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2468 102 3	Engine crankshaft speed/position - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The engine speed has exceeded a critical limit.	Engine will be shut down.
2554 1209 2	Exhaust gas pressure - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The exhaust gas pressure sensor is reading an erratic value.	possible reduced engine performance.
2555 729 3	Intake air heater 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at the intake air heater signal circuit.	The intake air heaters may be ON or OFF all the time.
2556 729 4	Intake air heater 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the intake air heater signal circuit.	The intake air heaters may be ON or OFF all the time.
2634 641 12	VGT Actuator controller - Bad intelligent device or component. An internal error has been detected by the smart VGT controller.	Possible reduced engine performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
2636 641 9	VGT Actuator driver circuit - abnormal update rate. No communications on the J1939 data link between the engine ECM and the smart VGT controller.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2638 5298 17	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst conversion efficiency - Data valid but below normal operating range - Least severe level. The temperature increase across the aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst is lower than expected.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
2639 3251 15	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. The soot load of the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter has exceeded the recommended limits.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2646 110 32	Engine coolant temperature - Condition exists. The EGR valve was closed to reduce engine coolant temperature.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2718 520325 31	Brake switch and accelerator pedal position incompatible - Condition exists. The ECM has detected the brake pedal and accelerator pedal were depressed simultaneously.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
2771 3226 9	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor - Abnormal update rate. No communications or an invalid data transfer rate detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2777 3703 31	Particulate trap active regeneration inhibited due to inhibit switch - Condition exists. Regeneration of the diesel particulate filter has been prevented due to the permit switch being disabled.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
2961 412 15	Exhaust gas recirculation temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. EGR temperature has exceeded the engine protection limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2962 412 16	Exhaust gas recirculation temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. EGR temperature has exceeded the engine protection limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2963 110 15	Engine coolant temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. Engine coolant temperature is above the engine protection warning limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the Engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
2964 105 15	Intake manifold 1 temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. Intake manifold air temperature signal indicates intake manifold air temperature is above engine protection warning limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the Engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
2973 102 2	Intake manifold 1 pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The intake manifold pressure sensor is reading an erratic value.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2976 3361 2	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. An internal error has been detected in the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3133 3610 3	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3134 3610 4	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3135 3610 2	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure sensor is reading an erratic value at initial key ON or during engine operation.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3146 4363 3	Aftertreatment SCR outlet temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the SCR outlet temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3147 4363 4	Aftertreatment SCR outlet temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the SCR outlet temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3148 4363 2	Aftertreatment SCR outlet temperature sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The SCR outlet temperature sensor is not changing with engine operating conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3151 4794 31	Aftertreatment SCR catalyst system missing - Condition exists. The aftertreatment SCR catalyst in the exhaust system is not present.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3165 4363 0	Aftertreatment SCR outlet temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. The SCR outlet temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3168 3936 16	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter system - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The system has detected a malfunction in the filtering capability of the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter.	None on performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3186 1623 9	Tachograph output shaft speed - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the tachograph output shaft speed sensor.	None on performance.
3213 1623 19	Tachograph output shaft speed - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the tachograph output shaft speed sensor.	None on performance.
3228 3216 2	Aftertreatment Intake NOx sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. An incorrect NOx sensor reading has been detected by the aftertreatment intake NOx sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3232 3216 9	Aftertreatment Intake NOx sensor - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the aftertreatment intake NOx sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3235 4363 16	Aftertreatment SCR outlet temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The SCR outlet temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum temperature limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3237 4340 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3238 4340 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3239 4342 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3241 4342 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3242 3363 7	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid temperature did not increase when the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater was commanded ON.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3243 3060 18	Engine cooling system monitor - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The engine is not warming up as expected.	None on performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3251 4765 16	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum temperature limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the Engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
3253 3242 16	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the Engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
3254 3242 15	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3255 3246 16	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
3256 3246 15	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3258 4340 5	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1 circuit - Current below normal or open circuit. Open circuit detected in the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3261 4342 5	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2 circuit - Current below normal or open circuit. Open circuit detected in the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3311 3242 0	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Most severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
3312 3246 0	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Most severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3313 4765 4	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the catalyst intake sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3314 4765 3	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the catalyst intake temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3315 4765 2	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature sensor is not changing with engine operating conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3316 3242 4	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3317 3242 3	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3318 3242 2	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature is not changing with engine operating conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3319 3246 3	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3321 3246 4	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3322 3246 2	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature is not changing with engine operating conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3326 91 9	SAE J1939 Multiplexed accelerator pedal or lever sensor system - Abnormal update rate. The ECM expected information from a multiplexed accelerator pedal or lever sensor but did not receive it soon enough or did not receive it at all.	Engine will only idle.
3328 191 9	Transmission output shaft speed - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the transmission output shaft speed sensor.	None on performance.
3338 5395 18	Engine idle fuel quantity - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The fueling quantity at idle is lower than expected.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
3342 4752 18	Engine exhaust gas recirculation cooler efficiency - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The EGR cooler is not cooling the recirculated exhaust gas sufficiently.	None on performance.
3343 5285 18	Engine charge-air cooler efficiency - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The engine charge air cooler is not cooling the intake air flow sufficiently.	None on performance.
3361 102 10	Intake manifold 1 pressure - Abnormal rate of change. The VGT position reading is stuck.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3366 111 18	Coolant level - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Very low engine coolant level detected.	None on performance.
3374 1818 31	Roll over protection brake control active - Condition exists. The ECM received a message from the anti-lock braking (ABS) controller, inhibiting cruise control operation.	Cruise control could possibly not operate.
3375 5397 31	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter regeneration too frequent - Condition exists. The system has detected the need for an active regeneration has occurred too soon following the last active regeneration.	None on performance.
3376 5319 31	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter incomplete regeneration - Condition exists. The system has detected that the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure is too high following an active regeneration.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
3382 3058 18	Engine exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) system - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Measured egr flow is lower than commanded.	Possible reduced engine performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3383 3058 16	Engine exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) system - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe Level. Measured EGR flow is higher than commanded.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3394 4766 18	Aftertreatment 1 diesel oxidation catalyst outlet gas temperature - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The diesel oxidation catalyst outlet Temperature is below the operating limit	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
3396 3750 31	Diesel particulate filter 1 conditions not met for active regeneration - Condition exists. The aftertreatment temperatures are not warm enough for aftertreatment injection.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
3418 191 19	Transmission output shaft speed - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the transmission output shaft speed sensor.	None on performance.
3422 4344 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3423 4344 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3425 4344 5	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3 circuit - Current below normal or open circuit. Open circuit detected in the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3488 563 9	Anti-lock braking (ABS) controller - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the anti-lock braking (ABS) controller.	None on performance.
3492 251 10	Real time clock - Abnormal rate of change. The real time clock indicates a stuck engine off timer.	None on performance.
3494 1081 7	Engine wait to start lamp - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. Wait to Start lamp has malfunction.	None on performance.
3497 1761 17	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level - Data valid but below normal operating range - Least severe level. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level is low.	None on performance.
3498 1761 18	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level is very low.	None on performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3525 84 19	Wheel-based vehicle speed - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the wheel-based vehicle speed sensor.	Engine speed limited to maximum engine speed without VSS parameter value. Cruise control, gear-down protection, and road speed governor will not work.
3526 84 9	Wheel-Based vehicle speed - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the wheel-based vehicle speed sensor.	Engine speed limited to maximum engine speed without VSS parameter value. Cruise control, gear-down protection, and road speed governor will not work.
3527 558 19	Accelerator pedal or lever idle validation switch - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the accelerator pedal or lever idle validation switch.	The engine will only idle.
3528 558 9	Accelerator pedal or lever idle validation switch - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the accelerator pedal or lever idle validation switch.	Engine will only idle.
3531 171 9	Ambient air temperature - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the ambient air temperature sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3532 171 19	Ambient air temperature - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the ambient air temperature sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3539 51 3	Engine intake throttle actuator position sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the engine intake air throttle position sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3541 51 4	Engine intake throttle actuator position sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the engine intake air throttle position sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3542 51 2	Engine intake throttle actuator position sensor - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The engine intake air throttle posistion feedback is erratic or incorrect.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3545 3226 10	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor circuit - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor reading is not valid.	None on performance.
3547 4096 31	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank empty - Condition exists. The diesel exhaust fluid tank is empty.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3555 1081 9	Engine wait to start lamp - Abnormal update rate. A loss of communication has been detected.	None on performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3556 1081 19	Engine wait to start lamp - Received network data in error. The ECM received an invalid signal on the SAE J1939 datalink.	None on performance.
3558 3361 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3559 3361 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3562 5491 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater relay - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater relay.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3563 5491 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater relay - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater relay.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3567 5394 5	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing valve - Current below normal or open circuit. A circuit error has been detected in the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing valve circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3568 5394 7	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) Dosing valve - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. A mechanical malfunction has been detected in the DEF dosing valve.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3571 4334 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3572 4334 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3574 4334 18	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Low diesel exhaust fluid pressure has been detected in the dosing unit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3575 4334 16	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit has detected a blockage in the diesel exhaust fluid return flow.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3577 4376 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid return valve - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid return valve.	Possible reduced engine performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3578 4376 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid return valve - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid return valve.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3582 4364 18	Aftertreatment SCR catalyst conversion efficiency - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. NOx conversion across the SCR catalyst is too low.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3583 5031 10	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor heater - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor heater is unable to maintain its normal operating temperature.	None on performance.
3596 4334 2	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor has reported a reading too high or low for the operating conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3649 5024 10	Aftertreatment Intake NOx sensor heater - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment intake NOx sensor heater is unable to maintain its normal operating temperature.	None on performance.
3681 3228 2	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor power supply - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor indicates that the power supply to the sensor is incorrect.	None on performance.
3682 3218 2	Aftertreatment Intake NOx sensor power supply - Data erratic, entermittent or encorrect. The aftertreatment intake NOx sensor indicates that the power supply to the sensor is incorrect.	None on performance.
3697 630 12	Engine control module calibration memory - Bad intelligent device or component. Error internal to the ECM related to engine software failures.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.
3712 5246 0	Aftertreatment SCR operator inducement - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. Critical SCR related fault codes have been active for an extended period of time and require immediate attention.	Vehicle speed will be limited to 8 ㎞ [5 miles] per hour.
3714 1569 31	Engine protection torque derate - Condition exists. Critical fault codes related to engine operation are active.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3715 188 16	Engine speed at idle - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The engine speed at idle has exceeded the governed idle speed.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3716 188 18	Engine speed at idle - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Engine is not maintaining the governed idle speed.	None on performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3717 3226 13	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor - Out of calibration. A calibration mismatch between the aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor and the ECM has been detected.	None on performance.
3718 3216 13	Aftertreatment intake NOx - Out of calibration. A calibration mismatch between the aftertreatment intake NOx sensor and the ECM has been detected.	None on performance.
3724 168 17	Battery 1 voltage - Data valid but below normal operating range - Least severe level. Low voltage to the EGR valve device driver has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3725 3216 10	Aftertreatment Intake NOx sensor - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment intake NOx sensor reading is not valid.	None on performance.
3727 5571 7	High pressure common rail fuel pressure relief valve - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The fuel rail high-pressure relief valve has opened at a lower than expected pressure.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3737 1675 31	Engine starter mode overcrank protection - Condition exists. The starter motor has been temporarily disabled in order to prevent starter damage.	Starter operation is prohibited until the starter motor has adequately cooled.
3741 5571 0	High pressure common rail fuel pressure relief valve - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. The fuel rail pressure relief valve has opened due to high fuel rail pressure.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
3748 3216 20	Aftertreatment intake NOx sensor - Data not rational - Drifted high. An offset in the intake NOx sensor reading has been detected.	None on performance.
3749 3226 20	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor - Data not rational - Drifted high. An offset in the outlet NOx sensor reading has been detected.	None on performance.
3838 2978 9	Estimated engine parasitic losses - Percent torque - Abnormal update rate. A loss of communication has been detected.	None on performance.
3843 5603 9	Cruise control disable command - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the cruise control.	None on performance.
3844 5605 31	Cruise control pause command - Condition exists. The adaptive cruise control has dropped out and must be manually engaged.	Cruise control could possibly not operate.
3845 5603 31	Cruise control disable command - Condition exists. The adaptive cruise control has dropped out and must be manually engaged.	Cruise control could possibly not operate.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3899 5848 4	Aftertreatment 1 SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. A circuit error has been detected in the NH3 sensor.	None on performance.
3911 5848 9	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor - Abnormal update rate. Loss of communication with the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3912 5853 10	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor heater - Abnormal rate of change. A malfunction of the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor heater has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3932 5851 16	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 gas sensor power supply - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High battery voltage supply detected at the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3933 5851 18	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 gas sensor power supply - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Low battery voltage supply detected at the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3934 5851 2	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 gas sensor power supply - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. Intermittent battery voltage supply detected at the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3935 5848 13	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor - Out of calibration. Incorrect trim resistance has been detected in the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3936 5848 12	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor - Bad intelligent device or component. An internal error of the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3937 5848 10	Aftertreatment 1 SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor reading is NOT valid.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4149 2623 8	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 2 circuit frequency - Abnormal frequency or pulse width or period. The accelerator pedal position sensor reading is out of range.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
4151 5742 9	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module - Abnormal update rate. No communications on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
4152 5743 9	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Abnormal update rate. No communications on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4155 5746 3	Aftertreatment 1 diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater relay - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater relay circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4156 5746 4	Aftertreatment 1 diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater relay - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater relay circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4157 4376 7	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid return valve - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. A stuck aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid return valve has been detected.	None on performance.
4158 5742 12	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module - Bad intelligent device or component. An internal error has been detected in the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4159 5743 12	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Bad intelligent device or component. An internal error has been detected in the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4161 5742 3	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High battery supply voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4162 5742 4	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low battery supply voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4163 5742 16	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module- Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High internal temperature detected in the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
4164 5743 3	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High battery supply voltage detected at the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4165 5743 4	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low battery supply voltage detected at the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4166 5743 16	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High internal temperature detected in the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4168 5745 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. The aftertreatment diesel exhasut fluid dosing unit heater is detected to be stuck on.	None on performance.
4169 5745 5	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. The aftertreatment diesel exhasut fluid dosing unit heater is detected to be stuck off.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4171 5745 18	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit failed to thaw.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4213 3695 2	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter regeneration inhibit switch - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The diesel particulate filter regeneration permit switch is stuck in the OFF or INHIBIT position.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
4215 563 31	Anti-lock braking (ABS) Active - Condition exists. Cruise control was paused due to an anti-wheel slip message from teh ABS controller.	Adaptive cruise control will not operate. Standard cruise control may not operate.
4244 4337 2	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing temperature - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing temperature is irrational.	None on performance.
4245 5798 2	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater temperature - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater temperature is irrational.	None on performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
4249 4337 10	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing temperature - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit temperature is stuck.	None on performance.
4251 5798 10	Aftertreatment 1 diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater temperature - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater temperature sensor reading is stuck.	None on performance.
4252 1081 31	Engine wait to start lamp - Condition exists. The received signal does not match the commanded signal.	None on performance.
4259 5742 11	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module - Root cause not known. Intermittent battery voltage supply detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4261 5743 11	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Root cause not known. Intermittent battery voltage supply detected at the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4279 5848 21	Aftertreatment 1 SCR Intermediate NH3 - Data not rational - Drifted low. An in range low failure has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4281 5848 2	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor reading is stuck.	None on performance.
4284 5793 9	Desired engine fueling state - Abnormal update rate. A valid message from the transmission ECU has NOT been received.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.
4289 91 8	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit frequency - Abnormal frequency or pulse width or period. The accelerator pedal position sensor reading is out of range.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
4293 5097 3	Engine brake active lamp - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the brake lamp relay driver circuit.	None on performance.
4294 5097 4	Engine brake active lamp - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the brake lamp relay driver circuit.	None on performance.
4452 520668 31	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor closed loop operation - Condition exists. The maximum dosing adjustment has been reached.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4453 520669 31	Aftertreatment intermediate NH3 sensor closed loop operation - Condition exists. The maximum dosing adjustment has been reached.	None on performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
4517 237 13	Vehicle Identification number - Out of calibration. The vehicle identification number has not been programmed into the ECM.	None on performance.
4518 5862 3	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate gas temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftreatment SCR intermediate temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4519 5862 4	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate gas temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment SCR intermediate temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4521 5862 2	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate gas temperature sensor - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The aftertreatment SCR intermediate temperature sensor reading is irrational.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4524 5862 0	Aftertreatment SCR intermediate gas temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. The aftertreatment SCR intermediate temperature sensor reading is above the engine protection limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
4525 5862 16	Aftertreatment 1 SCR intermediate gas temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High SCR Intermediate temperature detected.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
4526 521 2	Brake pedal position - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The values of the 2 brake switch signals do not match.	None on performance.
4572 3031 9	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature - Abnormal update rate. The ECM lost communication with the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4584 3936 14	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter system - Special instructions. The incorrect aftertreatment diesel particulate filter system has been installed with the engine.	Engine will be shut down.
4585 4792 14	Aftertreatment 1 SCR catalyst system - Special instructions. The incorrect SCR system has been Installed.	Engine will be shut down.
4612 520701 31	Engine intake manifold pressure system monitor - Condition exists. The engine is unable to meet the air handling system commands.	Possible reduced engine performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
4658 4331 18	Aftertreatment SCR actual dosing reagent quantity - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Low aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid flow detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4691 5585 18	Engine injector metering rail 1 cranking pressure - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The fuel rail pressure during cranking is too low for the engine to start.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.
4713 5357 31	Engine fuel injection quantity error for multiple cylinders - Condition exists. A malfunction of all fuel injectors has been detected.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
4726 1239 16	Engine fuel leakage - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Fuel rail pressure decay has been detected.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
4727 157 15	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. A self pumping condition has been detected in the fuel system.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4728 1209 18	Exhaust gas pressure - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The commanded VGT position and exhaust pressure were not met.	None on performance.
4731 3031 13	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor - Out of calibration. The received datalink message was not valid.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4732 1761 13	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor - Out of calibration. The received datalink message was not valid.	None on performance.
4739 1761 11	Aftertreatment 1 diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor - Root cause not known. An unknown error has been detected with the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4769 1761 10	Aftertreatment 1 diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor - Abnormal rate of change. A valid diesel exhaust fluid tank level reading has NOT been received.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4841 520728 16	Cold start injector metering rail 1 pressure- Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High fuel rail pressure detected.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
4865 6303 3	Engine coolant level 2 sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the engine coolant level 2 circuit.	None on performance.

※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
4866 6303 4	Engine coolant level 2 sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the engine coolant level 2 circuit.	None on performance.
4956 520750 13	Engine variable geometry turbo (VGT) software - Out of calibration. VGT software does not match application.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4957 520750 31	Engine variable geometry turbo (VGT) software - Condition exists. The VGT actuator and ECM software is not compatible.	Possible reduced engine performance.

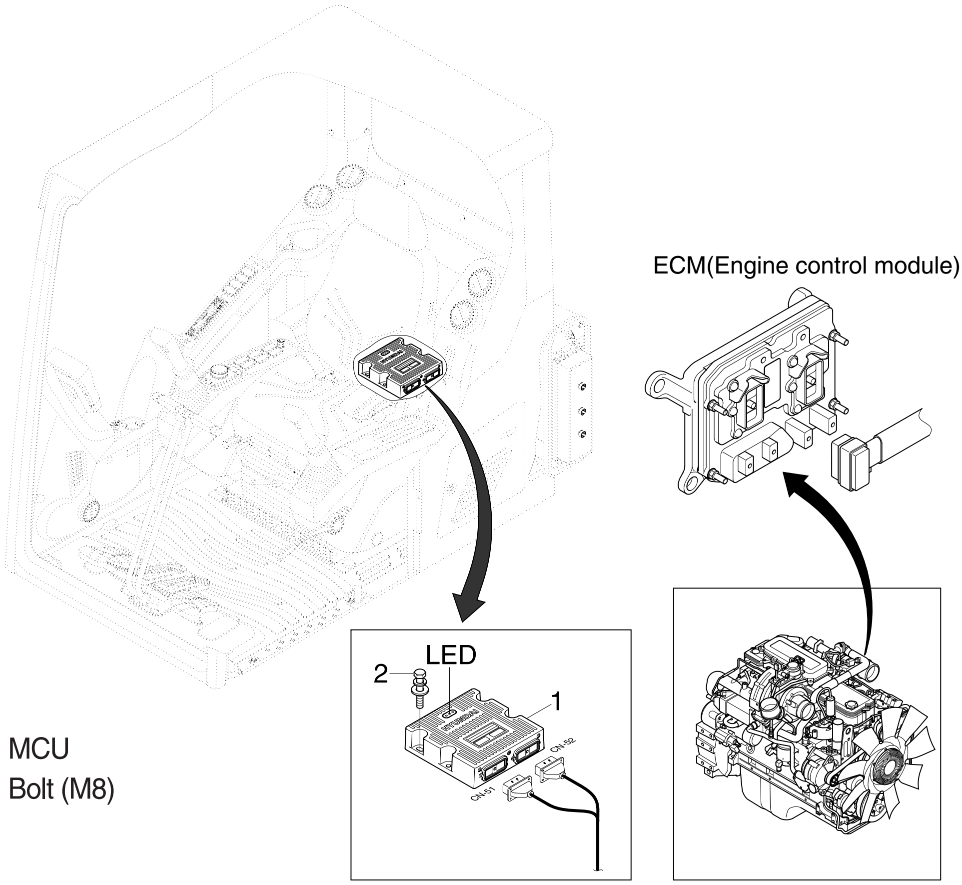
※ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

5. AAVM FAULT CODE

Fault Code	Description
A01	AAVM Communication Error -AAVM
A02	AAVM Communication Error -Front Camera
A03	AAVM Communication Error -Rear Camera
A04	AAVM Communication Error -Left Camera
A05	AAVM Communication Error -Right Camera
A06	Manual Setting Fail
A07	No MCU CID
A08	MCU CID Format Error
A09	AAVM Hardware Error -AAVM
A10	AAVM Hardware Error -Front Camera
A11	AAVM Hardware Error -Rear Camera
A12	AAVM Hardware Error -Left Camera
A13	AAVM Hardware Error -Right Camera
A14	MCU CID Model is not registered
A15	MCU CID Model can’t be applied

GROUP 14 ENGINE CONTROL SYSTEM

1. MCU and Engine ECM (Electronic Control Module)



1 MCU
2 Bolt (M8)

330L5MS13

2. MCU ASSEMBLY

1) To match the pump absorption torque with the engine torque, MCU varies EPPR valve output pressure, which control pump discharge amount whenever feedbacked engine speed drops under the reference rpm of each mode set.

2) Three LED lamps on the MCU display as below.

LED lamp	Trouble	Service
G is turned ON	Normal	-
G and R are turned ON	Trouble on MCU	· Change the MCU
G and Y are turned ON	Trouble on serial communication line	· Check if serial communication lines between MCU and cluster are disconnected
Three LED are turned OFF	Trouble on MCU power	· Check if the input power wire (24 V, GND) of MCU is disconnected · Check the fuse

G : green, R : red, Y : yellow

GROUP 15 EPPR VALVE

1. PUMP EPPR VALVE

1) COMPOSITION

EPPR (Electro Proportional Pressure Reducing) valve consists of electro magnet and spool valve installed at main pump.

(1) Electro magnet valve

Receive electric current from MCU and move the spool proportionally according to the specific amount of electric current value.

(2) Spool valve

Is the two way direction control valve for pilot pressure to reduce main pump flow.
When the electro magnet valve is activated, pilot pressure enters into flow regulator of main pump.

(3) Pressure and electric current value for each mode

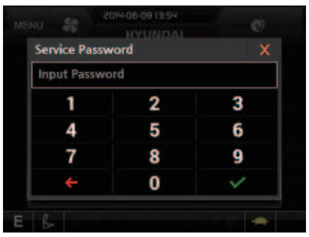
Mode		Pressure		Electric current (mA)	Engine rpm (at accel dial 10)
		kgf/cm²	psi		
Standard	P	5	71	280 ± 30	1700 ± 50
	S	7 ± 3	100 ± 40	305 ± 30	1600 ± 50
	E	12 ± 3	171 ± 40	340 ± 30	1500 ± 50
Option	P	3	43	230 ± 30	1800 ± 50
	S	5 ± 3	71 ± 40	260 ± 30	1700 ± 50
	E	10 ± 3	142 ± 40	340 ± 30	1600 ± 50

2) HOW TO SWITCH THE POWER SHIFT (STANDARD ↔ OPTION) ON THE CLUSTER

You can switch the EPPR valve pressure set by selecting the power shift (standard ↔ option).

- Management
  · Service menu

290F3CD149



Enter the password

290F3CD126

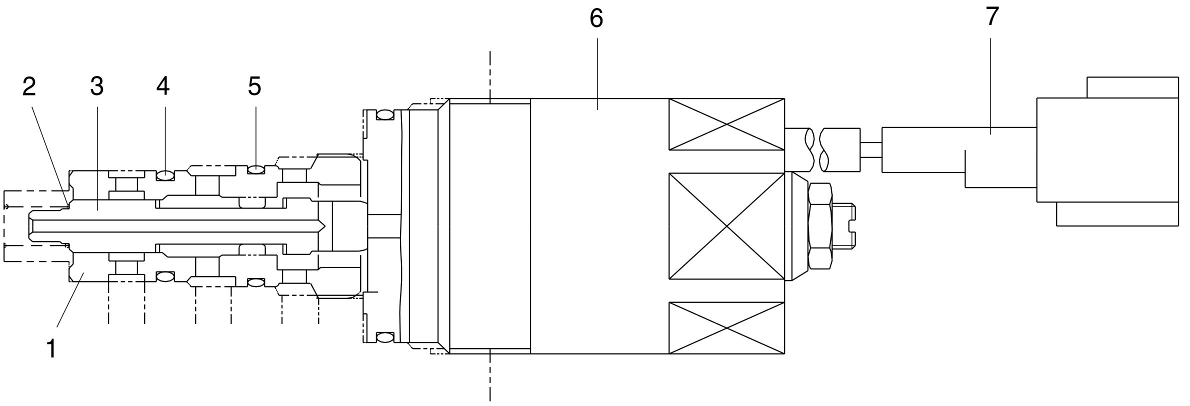
290F3CD150

290F3CD151

· Power shift (standard/option) : Power shift pressure can be set by option menu.

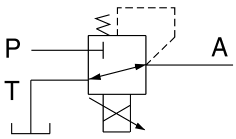
3) OPERATING PRINCIPLE (pump EPPR valve)

(1) Structure



5-22(1)

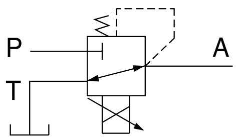
1	Sleeve	4	O-ring	6	Solenoid valve
2	Spring	5	O-ring	7	Connector
3	Spool				

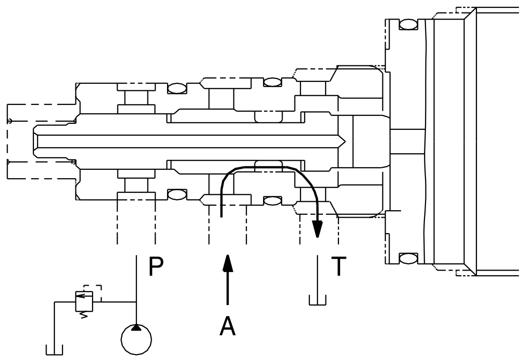


P Pilot oil supply line (pilot pressure)
T Return to tank
A Secondary pressure to flow regulator at main pump

(2) Neutral

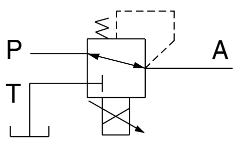
Pressure line is blocked and A oil returns to tank.

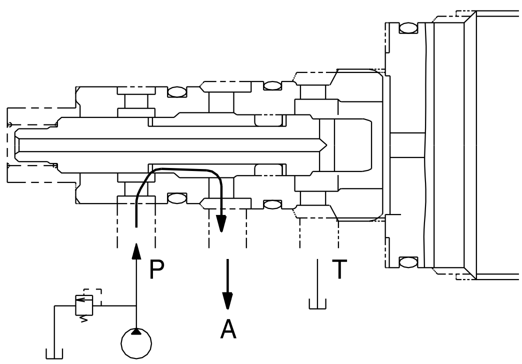




(3) Operating

Secondary pressure enters into A.





5-22(2)

4) EPPR VALVE CHECK PROCEDURE

(1) Check electric current value at EPPR valve

① Disconnect connector CN-75 from EPPR valve.

② Insert the adapter to CN-75 and install multimeter as figure.

③ Start engine.

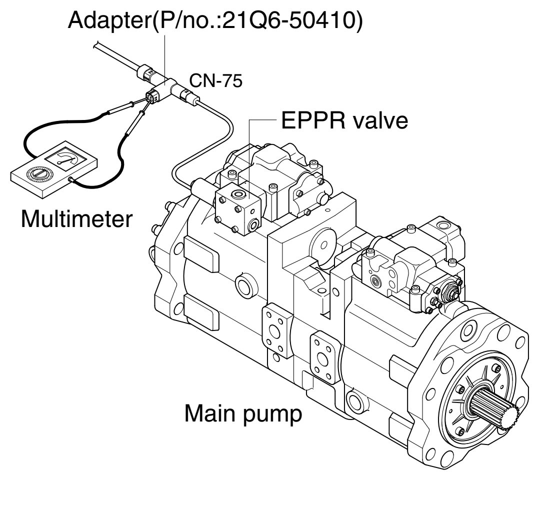
④ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.

⑤ Position the multimodal dial at 10.

⑥ If rpm display show approx 1600±50 rpm check electric current at bucket circuit relief position.

⑦ Check electric current at bucket circuit relief position.

Spec : 100~700 mA



480F5MS11

(2) Check pressure at EPPR valve

① Remove plug and connect pressure gauge as figure.

· Gauge capacity : 0 to 50 kgf/cm2 (0 to 725 psi)

② Start engine.

③ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.

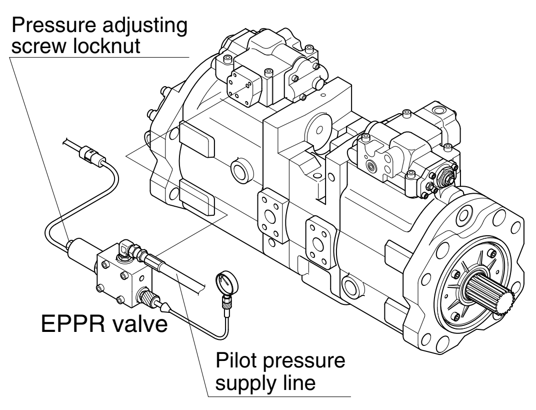
④ Position the multimodal dial at 10.

⑤ If tachometer show approx 1600±50 rpm check pressure at relief position of bucket circuit by operating bucket control lever.

⑥ If pressure is not correct, adjust it.

⑦ After adjust, test the machine.

Spec : 2~25 kgf/cm2 (30~350 psi)



480F5MS12

2. BOOM PRIORITY EPPR VALVE

1) COMPOSITION

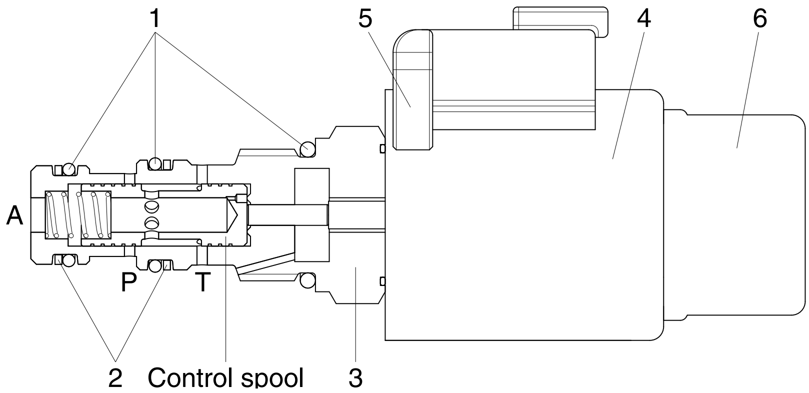
The boom priority EPPR valve is built in a manifold and mainly consisting of valve body and coil. This EPPR valve installed under the solenoid valve.

2) CONTROL

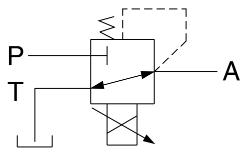
The boom priority EPPR valve has to be controlled by a specific electronic amplifier card, which is supplying the coil with a current 580 mA at 30 Ω and 24 V.

3) OPERATING PRINCIPLE

(1) Structure



21095MS14



P : Pilot supply line
T : Return to tank
A : Secondary pressure to flow MCV

1	O-ring	3	Valve body	5	Connector
2	Support ring	4	Coil	6	Cover cap

(2) Operation

In de-energized mode the inlet port (P) is closed and the outlet port (A) is connected to tank port (T).

In energized mode the solenoid armature presses onto the control spool with a force corresponding to the amount of current. This will set a reduced pressure at port A. The setting is proportional to the amount of current applied.

(3) Maximum pressure relief

If a pressure from outside is applied on port A the valve may directly switch to tank port (T) and protect the system before overload.

2) EPPR VALVE CHECK PROCEDURE

(1) Check electric current value at EPPR valve

① Disconnect connector CN-133 from EPPR valve.

② Insert the adapter to CN-133 and install multimeter as figure.

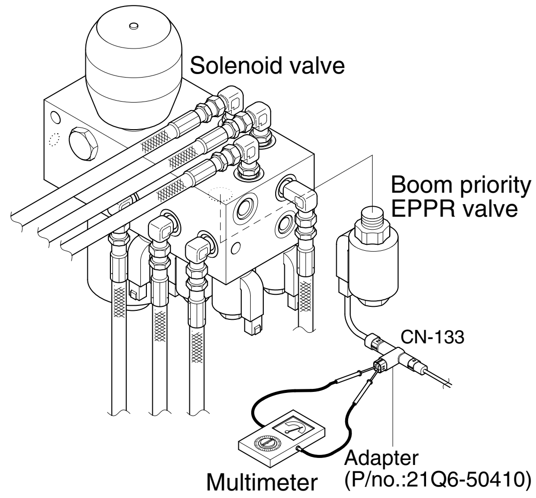
③ Start engine.

④ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.

⑤ If rpm display approx 1600±50 rpm disconnect one wire harness from EPPR valve.

⑥ Check electric current in case of combined boom up and swing operation.

Spec : 400~600 mA
(combined boom up and swing operation)



21095MS15

(2) Check pressure at EPPR valve

① Remove hose from A5 port and connect pressure gauge as figure.

· Gauge capacity : 0 to 50 kgf/cm^2 (0 to 725 psi)

② Start engine.

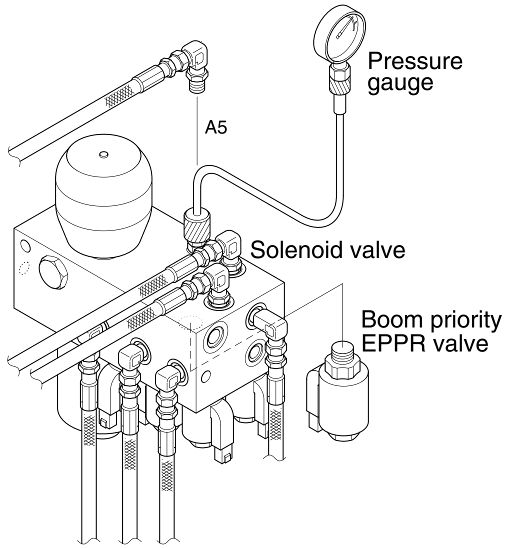
③ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.

④ If rpm display approx 1600±50 rpm check pressure (In case of combined boom up and swing operation).

⑤ If pressure is not correct, adjust it.

⑥ After adjust, test the machine.

Spec : 12~37 kgf/cm^2 (170~530 psi)
(combined boom up and swing operation)



21095MS16

1. OUTLINE

Monitoring system consists of the monitor part and switch part.

The monitor part gives warnings when any abnormality occurs in the machine and informs the condition of the machine.

Various select switches are built into the monitor panel, which act as the control portion of the machine control system.

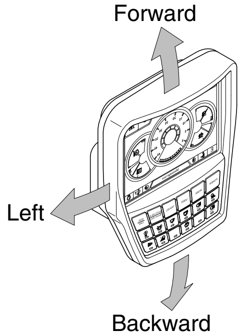
2. CLUSTER

1) MONITOR PANEL

220F3CD02

※ The warning lamp pops up and/or blinks and the buzzer sounds when the machine has a problem.
The warning lamp blinks until the problem is cleared. Refer to page 5-65 for details.

※ This cluster is adjustable.
· Vertical (forward/backward) : each 15°
· Horizontal (left only) : 8°



290F3CD47

2) CLUSTER CHECK PROCEDURE

(1) Start key : ON

① Check monitor

a. Buzzer sounding for 4 seconds with HYUNDAI logo on cluster.

※ If the ESL mode is set to the enable, enter the password to start engine.

② After initialization of cluster, the operating screen is displayed on the LCD. Also, self diagnostic function is carried out.

a. Engine rpm display : 0 rpm

b. Engine coolant temperature gauge : White range

c. Hydraulic oil temperature gauge : White range

d. Fuel level gauge : White range

③ Indicating lamp state

a. Power mode pilot lamp : E mode or U mode

b. Work mode pilot lamp : General operation mode (bucket)

c. Travel speed pilot lamp : Low (turtle)

(2) Start of engine

① Check machine condition

a. RPM display indicates at present rpm

b. Gauge and warning lamp : Indicate at present condition.

※ When normal condition : All warning lamp OFF

c. Work mode selection : General work

d. Power mode selection : E mode or U mode

e. Travel speed pilot lamp : Low (turtle)

② When warming up operation

a. Warming up pilot lamp : ON

b. After engine started, engine speed increases to1000 rpm.

※ Others same as above.

③ When abnormal condition

a. The warning lamp lights up and the buzzer sounds.

b. If BUZZER STOP switch is pressed, buzzer sound is canceled but the lamp warning lights up until normal condition.

※ The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and blink when the buzzer stop switch is pushed. Also the buzzer stops.

3. CLUSTER CONNECTOR

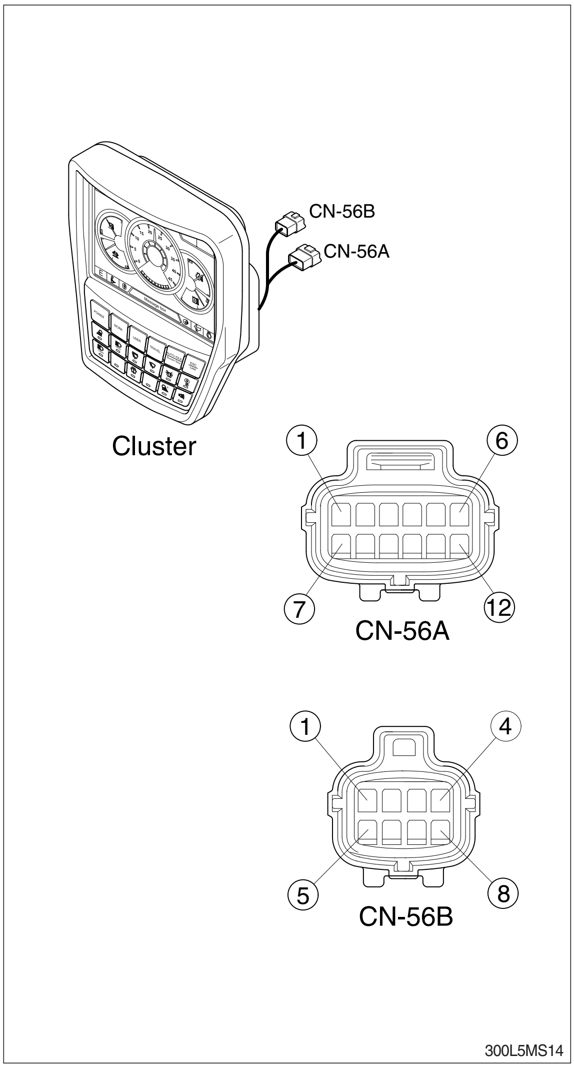
1) CN-56A

No.	Name	Signal
1	Battery 24V	20~32V
2	Power IG (24V)	20~32V
3	GND	-
4	CAN 1 (H)	0~5V
5	CAN 1 (L)	0~5V
6	CAN 2 (H)	20~32V
7	CAN 2 (L)	20~32V
8	RS-232 (RX)	±15V
9	RS-232 (TX)	±15V
10	Aux left	0~5V
11	Aux right	0~5V
12	Aux GND	-

2) CN-56B

No.	Name	Signal
1	CAM 6.5V	6.3~6.7V
2	CAM GND	-
3	CAM DIFF (H)	0~5V
4	CAM DIFF (L)	0~5V
5	CAM 1	NTSC signal
6	CAM 2	NTSC signal
7	CAM 3	NTSC signal
8	CAM shield	-

NTSC : National Television System Committee



2) GAUGE

(1) Operation screen

When you first turn starting switch ON, the operation screen will appear.

290F3CD51

1	RPM / Speed gauge	5	DEF/AdBlue® level gauge
2	Engine coolant temperature gauge	6	Tripmeter display
3	Hydraulic oil temperature gauge	7	Eco guage
4	Fuel level gauge	8	Accel dial gauge

※ Operation screen type can be set by the screen type menu of the display.
Refer to page 5-86 for details.

(2) RPM / Speed gauge

290F3CD49

① This display the engine speed.

(3) Engine coolant temperature gauge

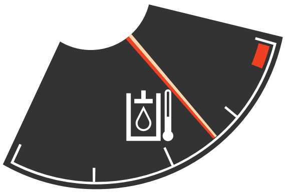
290F3CD53

① This gauge indicates the temperature of coolant.
 · White range : 40-107˚C (104-225˚F)
 · Red range : Above 107˚C (225˚F)

② If the indicator is in the red range or lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds turn OFF the engine and check the engine cooling system.

※ If the gauge indicates the red range or lamp blinks in red even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.

(4) Hydraulic oil temperature gauge



290F3CD54

① This gauge indicates the temperature of hydraulic oil.
- White range : 40-105˚C(104-221˚F)
- Red range : Above 105˚C(221˚F)

② If the indicator is in the red range or lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds reduce the load on the system. If the gauge stays in the red range, stop the machine and check the cause of the problem.

※ If the gauge indicates the red range or lamp blinks in red even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.

(5) Fuel level gauge

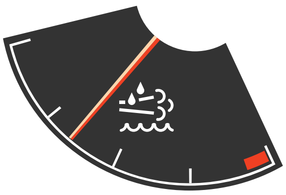
290F3CD55

① This gauge indicates the amount of fuel in the fuel tank.

② Fill the fuel when the red range, or lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds.

※ If the gauge indicates the red range or lamp blinks in red even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.

(6) DEF/AdBlue® Level gauge



290F3CD57

① This gauge indicates the amount of liquid in the DEF/AdBlue® tank.

② Fill the DEF/AdBlue® when the red range, or lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds.

③ Do not pour DEF/AdBlue® any more when the DEF/AdBlue® fill up warning lamp lights ON.

※ Refer to page 5-70.

※ If the gauge indicates the red range or lamp blinks in red even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.

(7) Tripmeter display

290F3CD56

① This displays the engine the tripmeter.

※ Refer to page 5-88 for details.

(8) Eco gauge

290F3CD58

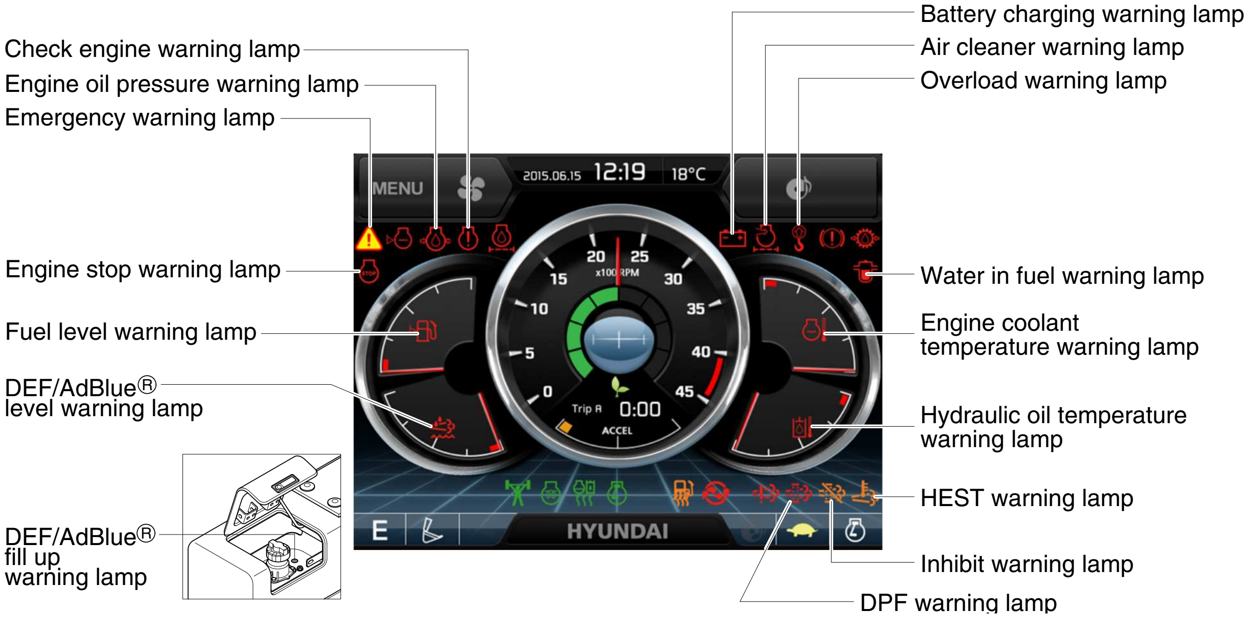
① This gauge indicates the fuel consumption rate and machine load status. So that operators can be careful with fuel economy.
② The fuel consumption rate or machine load is higher, the number of segment is increased.
③ The color of Eco gauge indicates operation status.
- White : Idle operation
- Green : Economy operation
- Yellow : Non-economy operation at a medium level.
- Red : Non-economy operation at a high level.

(9) Accel dial gauge

290F3CD59

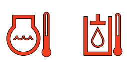
① This gauge indicates the level of accel dial.

3) WARNING LAMPS



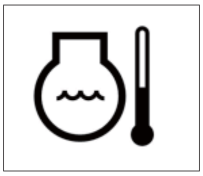
380F3CD08

※ Warning lamps and buzzer

Warnings	When error happened	Lamps and buzzer
All warning lamps except below	Warning lamp pops up on the center of the LCD and the buzzer sounds	· The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and blinks, and the buzzer stops when ; - the buzzer stop switch [AUTO IDLE Buzzer Stop] is pushed - the knob of the haptic controller is pushed - the lamp of the LCD is touched
	Warning lamp pops up on the center of the LCD and the buzzer sounds	· The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and light ON or blinks, and the buzzer stops when ; - the buzzer stop switch [AUTO IDLE Buzzer Stop] is pushed - the knob of the haptic controller is pushed - the lamp of the LCD is touched ※ **Refer to page 5-70 for details.**
	Warning lamp pops up on the center of the LCD and the buzzer sounds	· The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and lights ON, and the buzzer stops when 2 seconds elapsed.
	Warning lamp pops up on the center of the LCD and the buzzer sounds	· The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and blinks, and the buzzer stops when 2 seconds elapsed.
	Warning lamp pops up on the center of the LCD and the buzzer sounds	※ **Refer to page 5-66 for details.**

※ Refer to page 5-75 for the buzzer stop switch [AUTO IDLE Buzzer Stop] and operator's manual page 3-57 for the haptic controller.

(1) Engine coolant temperature warning lamp



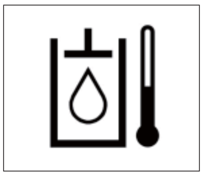
290F3CD61

① Engine coolant temperature warning is indicated two steps.
- 103˚C over : The lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds.
- 107˚C over : The lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds.

② The pop-up , lamps move to the original position and blinks when the buzzer stop switch AUTO IDLE Buzzer Stop is pushed. And the buzzer stops and , lamps keep blink.

③ Check the cooling system when the lamps keep blink.

(2) Hydraulic oil temperature warning lamp



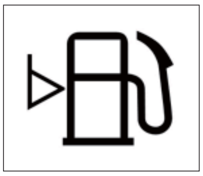
290F3CD62

① Hydraulic oil temperature warning is indicated two steps.
- 100˚C over : The lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds.
- 105˚C over : The lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds.

② The pop-up , lamps move to the original position and blinks when the buzzer stop switch AUTO IDLE Buzzer Stop is pushed. And the buzzer stops and , lamps keep blink.

③ Check the hydraulic oil level and hydraulic oil cooling system.

(3) Fuel level warning lamp



290F3CD63

① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when the level of fuel is below 61 ℓ (16.1 U.S. gal).

② Fill the fuel immediately when the lamp blinks.

(4) Emergency warning lamp

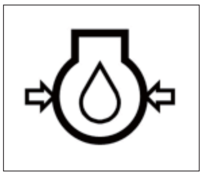
290F3CD64

① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when each of the below warnings is happened.
- Engine coolant overheating (over 107˚C)
- Hydraulic oil overheating (over 105˚C)
- MCU input voltage abnormal
- Cluster communication data error
- Engine ECM communication data error

※ **The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and blinks when the buzzer stop switch AUTO IDLE Buzzer Stop is pushed. And the buzzer stops.**

② When this warning lamp blinks, machine must be checked and serviced immediately.

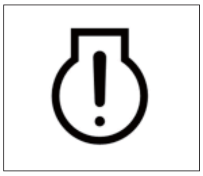
(5) Engine oil pressure warning lamp



290F3CD65

① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when the engine oil pressure is low.
② If the lamp blinks, shut OFF the engine immediately. Check oil level.

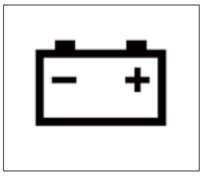
(6) Check engine warning lamp



290F3CD66

① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when the communication between MCU and engine ECM on the engine is abnormal, or if the cluster received specific fault code from engine ECM.
② Check the communication line between them.
If the communication line is OK, then check the fault codes on the cluster.

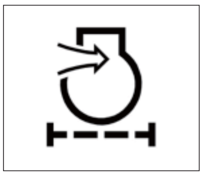
(7) Battery charging warning lamp



290F3CD67

① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when the battery charging voltage is low.
② Check the battery charging circuit when this lamp blinks.

(8) Air cleaner warning lamp



290F3CD68

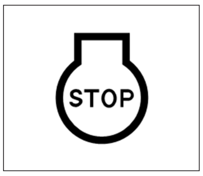
① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when the filter of air cleaner is clogged.
② Check the filter and clean or replace it.

(9) Overload warning lamp (opt)

290F3CD69

① When the machine is overload, the overload warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds during the overload switch is ON. (if equipped)
② Reduce the machine load.

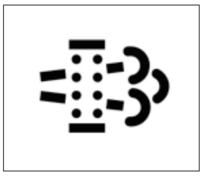
(10) Engine stop warning lamp



290F3CD252

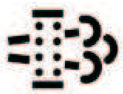
① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when 30 minutes elapsed with empty condition of the DEF/AdBlue® tank, stop the engine immediately and check the DEF/AdBlue® tank.
② Fill the DEF/AdBlue® immediately in the DEF/AdBlue® tank.
※ Refer to page 5-70.
③ This lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when the stationary regeneration system is not performed.
※ Refer to page 5-68.
※ Please contact your Hyundai service center or local dealer.

(11) DPF (diesel particulate filter) warning lamp

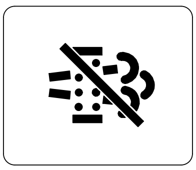


290F3CD70

① This warning lamp lights ON or blinks when the regeneration is needed as table below.
※ Consequences of delaying regeneration
- Poor performance caused by increasing exhaust gas pressure.
- Higher fuel consumption
- Shorter filter lifetime

Condition	Warning lamp			Remedy
	DPF 	Check engine  (pop up)	Stop engine  (pop up)	
Normal	Off	Off	Off	· Automatic regeneration
Soot low	On	Off	Off	· Increase engine load/speed and allow engine to run until regeneration is completed (DPF lamp : OFF)
Soot midium	On	Off	Off	· Initiate a manual regeneration as following page · Engine power may be reduced automatically (soot medium)
Soot high	On	On	Off	· Initiate a manual regeneration · Engine power and speed will be reduced automatically
Stop	Off	On	On	· Stop the engine immediatary. · Please contact your Hyundai service center or local dealer.

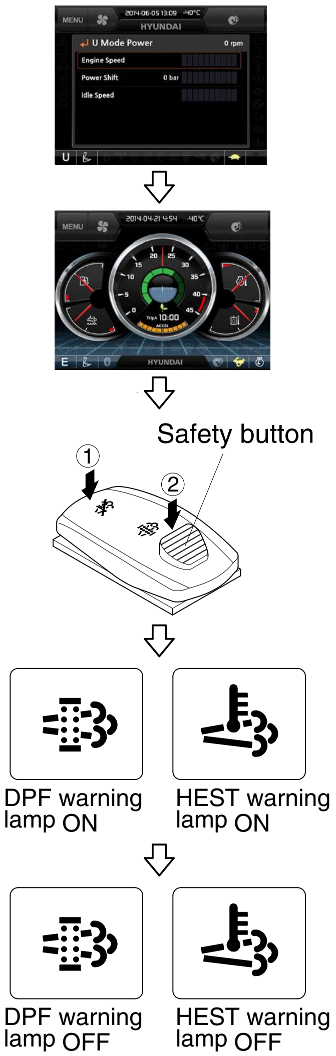
(12) DPF regeneration inhibit warning lamp



2609A3CD20

① This warning lamp indicates, when illuminated, the DPF regeneration switch is pushed inhibit position, therefore automatic and manual regeneration can not occur.
※ Refer to the operator's manual page 3-36 for the DPF switch.

※ Manual regeneration method of DPF



380F3CD07

※ **Manual regeneration applies if the machine is in a fireproof area and there is no plan to turn off the maching during the regeneration.**

① Stop and park the machine.

② Select user mode and set the engine speed to minimum speed.

③ Return to the operation screen.

④ Pull the safety button and push the switch to position ② to initiate the manual regeneration of DPF.

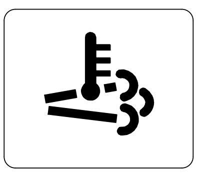
※ **Refer to the operator's manual page 3-31 for the switch operation.**

※ **The engine speed may increase to 950~1050 rpm and DPF regeneration begins and it will take approximately 20~30 minutes.**

⑤ The DPF and HEST warning lamp will light ON during the regeneration function is operating.

⑥ The DPF and/or HEST warning lamp will light OFF when the regeneration function is completed.

(13) HEST (High exhaust system temperature) warning lamp



2609A3CD21

① This warning lamp indicates, when illuminated, that exhaust temperatures are high due to regeneration of the DPF.

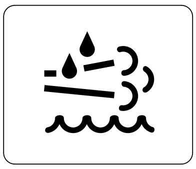
② The lamp will also illuminate during a manual regeneration.

③ When this lamp is illuminated, be sure the exhaust pipe outlet is not directed at any surface or material that can melt, burn, or explode.

⚠ **When this lamp is illuminated, the exhaust gas temperature could reach 800˚C [1500˚F], which is hot enough to ignite or melt common materials, and to burn people.**

※ **The lamp does not signify the need for any kind of equipment or engine service; It merely alerts the equipment operator to high exhaust temperatures. It will be common for the lamp to illuminate on and off during normal equipment operation as the engine completes regeneration.**

(14) DEF/AdBlue® level warning lamp



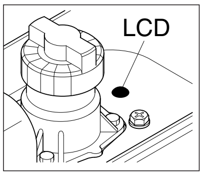
290F3CD257

① This warning lamp indicates when ON or blinking, that the DEF/AdBlue® level is low as table below.

※ It is recommended that the DEF/AdBlue® tank be filled completely full of the DEF/AdBlue® in order to correct any fault conditions.

Warning lamp			Description
DEF/AdBlue® level 	Check engine 	Stop engine 	
On	Off	Off	· The DEF/AdBlue® level has fallen below the initial warning level (10%).
Blink	Off	Off	· The DEF/AdBlue® level has fallen below the critical warning level (5%).
Blink	On	Off	· The DEF/AdBlue® level has fallen below the initial derate level (2.5%). · The engine power will be limited automatically.
Blink	On	On	· This is happened when 30 minutes elapsed with empty conditions (0%) of the DEF/AdBlue® tank. · The engine will enter the final derate level which may include low idle lock or engine shutdown with restart limitations. · In order to remove the final derate, the DEF/AdBlue® tank must be filled to above 10 persent gauge reading.

(15) DEF/AdBlue® fill up warning lamp



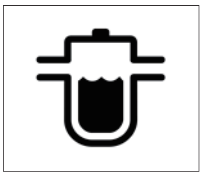
290F3CD272

① This lamp lights ON when the DEF/AdBlue® tank is completely filled with DEF/AdBlue®.

※ Fill the tank with the DEF/AdBlue® after start switch ON and then turn OFF the start switch.

※ Do not pour DEF/AdBlue® any more when this lamp lights ON. Otherwise DEF/AdBlue® tank may freeze and burst in winter season.

(16) Water in fuel warning lamp



210WF3CD02

① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when the water separator is full of water or malfunctioning.

※ When this lamp blinks, stop the machine and spill water out of the separator.

4) PILOT LAMPS

290F3CD74

(1) Mode pilot lamps

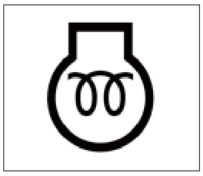
No	Mode	Pilot lamp	Selected mode
1	Power mode		Heavy duty power work mode
			Standard power mode
			Economy power mode
2	User mode		User preferable power mode
3	Work tool mode		General operation - IPC speed mode
			General operation - IPC balance mode
			General operation - IPC efficiency mode
			Breaker operation mode
			Crusher operation mode
4	Travel mode		Low speed traveling
			High speed traveling
5	Auto idle mode		Auto idle

(2) Power max pilot lamp

290F3CD78

① The lamp will be ON when pushing power max switch on the LH RCV lever.
② The power max function is operated maximum 8 seconds.
※ **Refer to the operator's manual page 3-38 for power max function.**

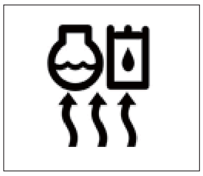
(3) Preheat pilot lamp



290F3CD79

① Turning the start key switch ON position starts preheating in cold weather.
② Start the engine after this lamp is OFF.

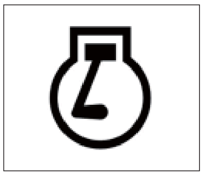
(4) Warming up pilot lamp



290F3CD80

① This lamp is turned ON when the coolant temperature is below 30˚C (86˚F).
② The automatic warming up is cancelled when the engine coolant temperature is above 30˚C, or when 10 minutes have passed since starting the engine.

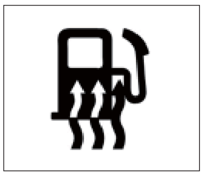
(5) Decel pilot lamp



290F3CD81

① Operating one touch decel switch on the RCV lever makes the lamp ON.
② Also, the lamp will be ON and engine speed will be lowered automatically to save fuel consumption when all levers and pedals are at neutral position, and the auto idle function is selected.
※ **One touch decel is not available when the auto idle pilot lamp is turned ON.**
※ **Refer to the operator's manual page 3-38.**

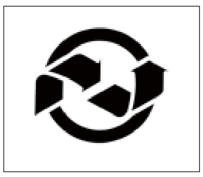
(6) Fuel warmer pilot lamp



290F3CD82

① This lamp is turned ON when the coolant temperature is below 10˚C (50˚F) or the hydraulic oil temperature 20˚C (68˚F).
② The automatic fuel warming is cancelled when the engine coolant temperature is above 60˚C, and the hydraulic oil temperature is above 45˚C since the start switch was ON position.

(7) Maintenance pilot lamp



290F3CD83

① This lamp will be ON when the consuming parts are needed to change or replace. It means that the change or replacement interval of the consuming parts remains below 30 hours.
② Check the message in maintenance information of main menu. Also, this lamp lights ON for 3 minutes when the start switch is ON position.
※ **Refer to the page 5-82.**

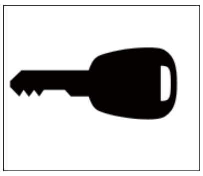
(8) Entertainment pilot lamp

290F3CD84

① This lamp is on when audio or video files are playing.

※ Refer to the page 5-87.

(9) Smart key pilot lamp (opt)



290F3CD214

① This lamp is ON when the engine is started by the start button.

② This lamp is red when the a authentication fails, green when succeeds.

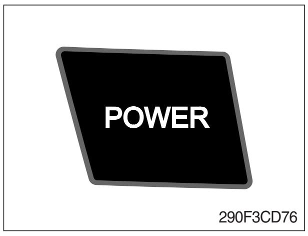
※ Refer to the page 5-83

5) SWITCHES

290F3CD86

※ When some of the switches are selected, the pilot lamps are displayed on the LCD. Refer to the page 5-71 for details.

(1) Power mode switch



290F3CD76

① This switch is to select the machine power mode and selected power mode pilot lamp is displayed on the pilot lamp position.
- · P : Heavy duty power work.
- · S : Standard power work.
- · E : Economy power work.

② The pilot lamp changes E → S → P → E in order.

(2) Work mode switch

290F3CD88

① This switch is to select the machine work mode, which shifts from general operation mode to optional attachment operation mode.
- · : General operation mode
- · : Breaker operation mode (if equipped)
- · : Crusher operation mode (if equipped)
- · Not installed : Breaker or crusher is not installed.

※ Refer to the operator's manual page 4-7 for details.

(3) User mode switch

290F3CD89

① This switch is used to memorize the current machine operating status in the MCU and activate the memorized user mode.
- · Memory : Push more than 2 seconds.
- · Action : Push within 2 seconds.
- · Cancel : Push this switch once more within 2 seconds.

② Refer to the page 5-79 for another set of user mode.

(4) Travel speed switch

290F3CD91

① This switch is used to select the travel speed alternatively.
- · : Low speed
- · : High speed

※ Do not change the setting of the travel speed switch. Machine stability may be adversely affected.

⚠ Personal injury can result from sudden changes in machine stability.

(5) Auto idle/ buzzer stop switch

290F3CD90

① This switch is used to activate or cancel the auto idle function.
- · Pilot lamp ON : Auto idle function is activated.
- · Pilot lamp OFF : Auto idle function is cancelled.

② The buzzer sounds when the machine has a problem.
In this case, push this switch and buzzer stops, but the warning lamp blinks until the problem is cleared.

(6) Escape/Camera switch

290F3CD92

① This switch is used to return to the previous menu or parent menu.

② In the operation screen, pushing this switch will display the view of the camera on the machine (if equipped).
Please refer to page 5-88 for the camera.

③ If the camera is not installed, this switch is used only ESC function.

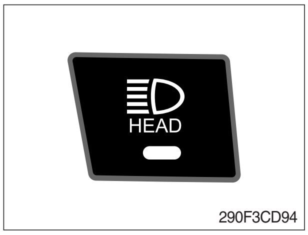
(7) Work light switch


290F3CD93

① This switch is used to operate the work light.

② The pilot lamp is turned ON when operating the switch.

(8) Head light switch



① This switch is used to operate the head light.
② The pilot lamp is turned ON when operating the switch.

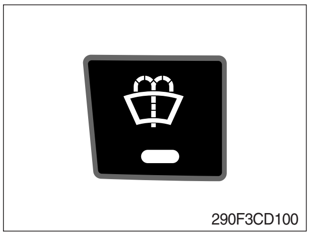
(9) Intermittent wiper switch

① This switch is used to wipe operates intermittently.
② The pilot lamp is turned ON when operating the switch.

(10) Wiper switch

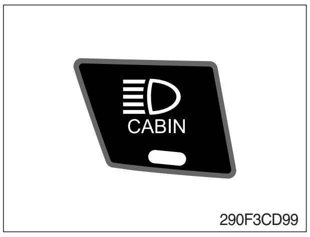
① This switch is used to operate the window wiper.
② Note that the wiper will self-park when switched off.
③ The pilot lamp is turned ON when operating the switch.
※ **If the wiper does not operate with the switch in ON position, turn the switch OFF immediately. Check the cause. If the switch remains ON, motor failure can result.**

(11) Washer switch



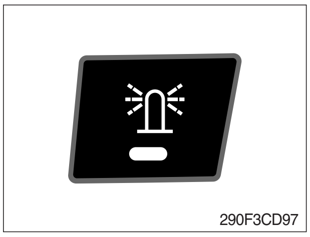
① The washer liquid is sprayed and the wiper is operated only while pressing this switch.
② The pilot lamp is turned ON when operating the switch.

(12) Cab light switch



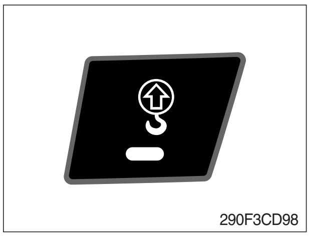
① This switch turns ON the cab light on the cab.
② The pilot lamp is turned ON when operating the switch.

(13) Beacon switch


290F3CD97

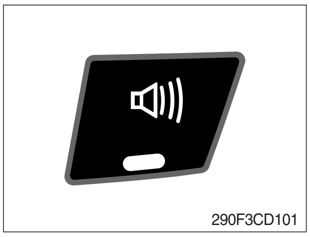
① This switch turns ON the rotary light on the cab.
② The pilot lamp is turned ON when operating the switch.

(14) Overload switch


290F3CD98

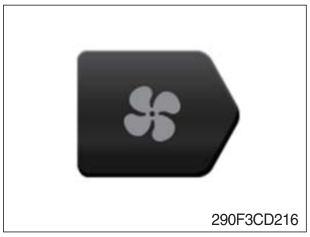
① When this switch turned ON, buzzer makes sound and overload warning lamp comes ON in case that the machine is overload.
② When it turned OFF, buzzer stops and warning lamp goes out.
⚠ **Overloading the machine could impact the machines stability which could result in tipover hazard. A tipover hazard could result in serious injury or death. Always activate the overload warning device before you handle or lift objects.**

(15) Travel alarm switch


290F3CD101

① This switch is to activate travel alarm function surrounding when the machine travels to forward and backward.
② On pressing this switch, the alarm operates only when the machine is traveling.
③ The pilot lamp is turned ON when operating the switch.

(16) Air conditioner quick touch switch


290F3CD216

① This switch used to select air conditioner control mode.
※ Refer to the page 5-90.

(17) Main menu quick touch switch

290F3CD217

① This switch is to activate the main menu in the cluster.
※ Refer to the page 5-78.

(18) Entertainment quick touch switch

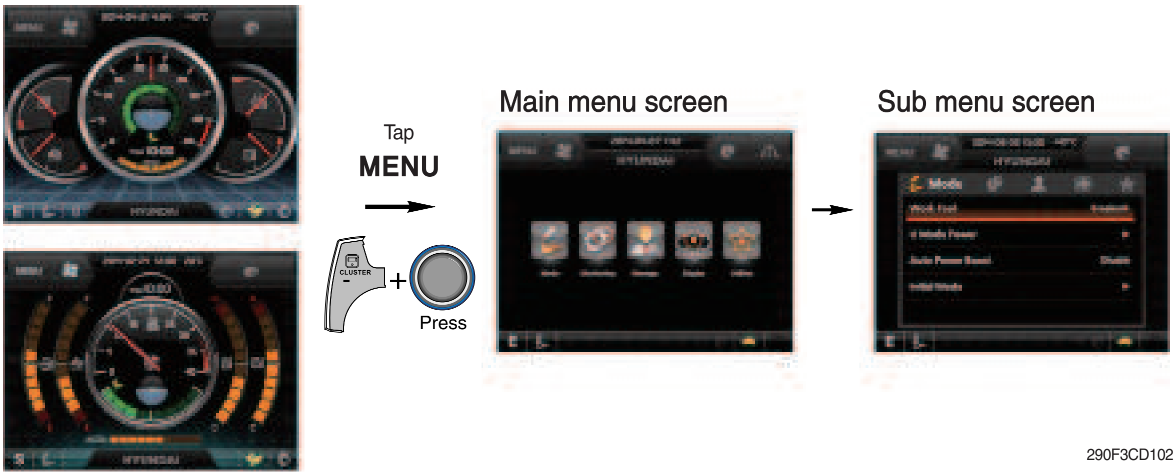

290F3CD218

① This switch is to activate the entertainment control menu in the cluster.
※ Refer to the page 5-87.

6) MAIN MENU

※ You can select or set the menu by the haptic controller or touch screen.
On the operation screen, tap MENU to access the main menu screen.
On the sub menu screen, you can tap the menu bar to access functions or applications.

· Operation screen



290F3CD102

※ Please refer to the haptic controller, operator's manual page 3-57 for selection and change of menu and input value.

(1) Structure

No	Main menu	Sub menu	Description
1	 Mode 290F3CD103	Work tool U mode power Boom/Arm speed Auto power boost IPC mode Auto engine shutdown (option) Initial mode Emergency mode	Breaker, Crusher, Not installed User mode only Boom speed, Arm speed Enable, Disable Speed mode, Balance mode, Efficiency mode One time, Always, Disable Key on initial mode, Accel initial mode / step Switch function
2	 Monitoring 290F3CD104	Active fault Logged fault Delete logged fault Monitoring	MCU, Engine ECM MCU, Engine ECM All logged fault delete, Initialization canceled Machine information, Switch status, Output status,
3	 Management 290F3CD105	Fuel rate information Maintenance information Machine security Machine information Contact Service menu Clinometer Update	General record, Hourly, Daily, Mode record Replacement, Change interval oils and filters ESL mode setting, Password change Model, MCU, Monitor, Haptic / switch controller, RMCU, Relay drive unit, FATC, AAVM (opt) A/S phone number, A/S phone number change Power shift, Operating hour, Breaker mode pump acting, EPPR current level, Overload pressure Clinometer setting Cluster, ETC device
4	 Display 290F3CD106	Display item Clock Brightness Unit setup Language selection Screen type	Engine speed, Tripmeter A, Tripmeter B, Tripmeter C Clock Manual, Auto Temperature, Pressure, Flow, Distance, Date format Korean, English, Chinese, ETC A type, B type
5	 Utilities 290F3CD107	Entertainment Tripmeter Camera	Play Video, Audio, Smart terminal. 3 kinds (A, B, C) Number of active, Display order, AAVM (opt)

(2) Mode setup

① Work tool

210WF3CD108

290F3CD253

A

290F3CD254

B

- Select on installed optional attachment
  - A : It can set the user's attachment.
    It is available in setting #1~#10.
  - B : Max flow - Set the maximum flow for the attachment.
    Relief pressure - Set the relief pressure.

② U mode power

210WF3CD111

290F3CD112

Step (▮)	Engine speed (rpm)	Idle speed (rpm)	Power shift (bar)
1	1300	700	0
2	1400	800	3
3	1450	850	6
4	1500	900	9
5	1550	950	12
6	1600	1000 (auto decel)	16
7	1650	1050	20
8	1700	1100	26
9	1750	1150	32
10	1800	1200	38

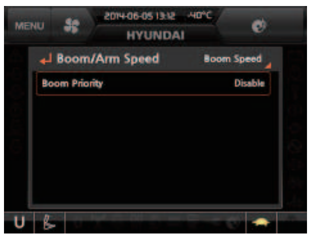
※One touch decel & low idle : 900 rpm

- Engine high idle rpm, auto idle rpm and pump torque (power shift) can be modulated and memorized separately in U-mode.
- U-mode can be activated by user mode switch.

③ Boom speed

210WF3CD113

290F3CD114



290F3CD115

- Boom speed
  - Boom priority function can be activated or cancelled
    Enable - Boom up speed is automatically adjusted as working conditions by the MCU.
    Disable - Normal operation

④ Auto power boost

210WF3CD118

290F3CD117

· The power boost function can be activated or cancelled.

Enable - The digging power is automatically increased as working conditions by the MCU.
It is operated max 8 seconds.

Disable - Not operated.

⑤ IPC mode

290F3CD310

290F3CD311

290F3CD304

290F3CD312

290F3CD305

290F3CD313

290F3CD306

· The IPC mode can be selected by this menu.
- Speed mode
- Balance mode (default)
- Efficiency mode

· This mode is applied only general operation mode of the work tool mode.

※ Please update the cluster programs if this mode is not displayed in the mode setup menu. Refer to the operator's manual page 3-25-1.

⑥ Automatic engine shutdown (option)


210WF3CD11

210WF3CD12

210WF3CD13

· The automatic engine shutdown function can be set by this menu.
  - One time
  - Always
  - Disable
  - Wait time setting : Max 40 minutes, min 2 minutes

⑦ Initial mode


290F3CD122

290F3CD119

· Key on initial mode
  - Selected the power mode is activated when the engine is started.

· Accel initial mode
  - Last setting value
  - User setting value

· Accel initial step
  - 0~9 step

⑧ Emergency mode

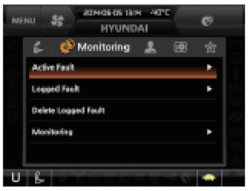

290F3CD248

290F3CD249

· This mode can be use when the switches are abnormal on the cluster.
· The cluster switches will be selected by touched each icon.

(3) Monitoring

① Active fault



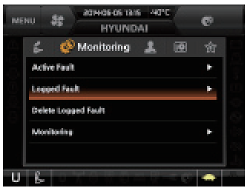
290F3CD120

290F3CD121

290F3CD125

· The active faults of the MCU, engine ECM, air conditioner or AAVM can be checked by this menu.

② Logged fault



290F3CD128

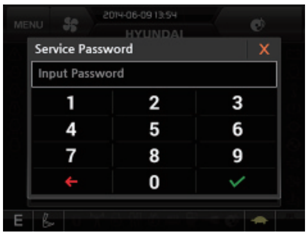
290F3CD123

290F3CD124

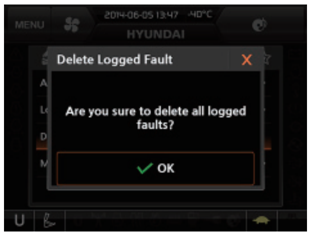
· The logged faults of the MCU, engine ECM, air conditioner or AAVM can be checked by this menu.

③ Delete logged fault

290F3CD134



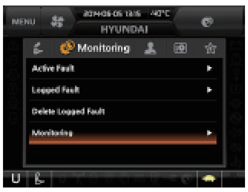
290F3CD126



290F3CD127

· The logged faults of the MCU, engine ECM, air conditioner or AAVM can be deleted by this menu.

④ Monitoring



290F3CD172

290F3CD188

290F3CD189

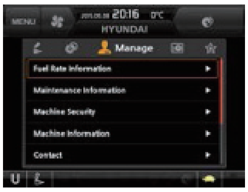
· The machine status such as the engine rpm, oil temperature, voltage and pressure etc. can be checked by this menu (Analog input).

· The switch status or output status can be confirmed by this menu (Digital input & Digital output).

· The activated switch or output pilot lamps ● are light ON.

(4) Management

① Fuel rate information



210WF3CD14

210WF3CD15

A

· General record (A)

- Average fuel rate (left) (from "Reset" to now)
  Fuel consumption devided by engine run time (service meter time).
- A days fuel used (right)
  Fuel consumption from 24:00 (or "Reset" time) to now (MCU real time).

B

· Hourly record (B)

- Hourly fuel rates for past 12 hours (service meter time).
- No record during key-off time.
- One step shift to the right for every one hour.
- Automatic deletion for 12 hours earlier data.
- All hourly records deletion by "Reset".

C

· Daily record (C)

- Daily fuel consumption for past seven days (MCU real time).
- No record during key-off time.
- One step shift to the right at 24:00 for every day.
- Automatic deletion for 7 days earlier data.
- All daily records deletion by "Reset".

D

210WF3CD16

· Mode record (D)

- Average fuel rate for each power mode/accel dial (at least 7) from "Reset" to now.
- No record during idle.
- All mode records deletion by "Reset".

② Maintenance information

210WF3CD131

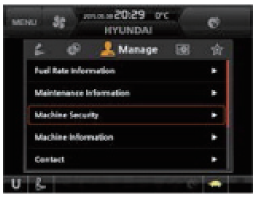
290F3CD132

290F3CD133

· Alarm lamp (●) is ON when oil or filter needs to be changed or replaced.
· Replacement : The elapsed time will be reset to zero (0).
· Change interval : The change or replace interval can be changed in the unit of 50 hours.
· **Change or relpace interval**

No	Item	Interval
1	Engine oil	500
2	Final gear oil	1000
3	Swing gear oil	1000
4	Hydraulic oil	5000
5	Pilot line filter	1000
6	Drain filter	1000
7	Hydraulic oil return filter	1000
8	Engine oil filter	500
9	Fuel filter	500
10	Pre-filter	500
11	Hydraulic tank breather	1000
12	Air cleaner (inner & outer)	4000
13	Radiator coolant	2000
14	Swing gear pinion grease	1000
15	DEF/AdBlue® supply module filter	4500
16	DEF (diesel particulate filter)	5000
17	Crankcase Breather Filter	2000
18	DEF/AdBlue® Tank Filter	4000

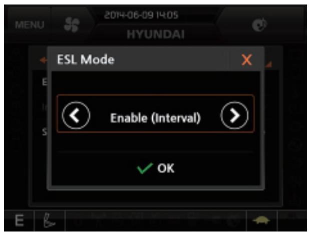
③ Machine security



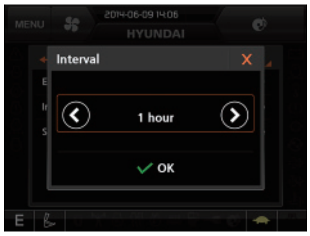
210WF3CD190

290F3CD135

290F3CD136



290F3CD137



290F3CD138

· ESL mode setting

- ESL : Engine Starting Limit
- ESL mode is desingned to be a theft deterrent or will prevent the unauthorized operation of the machine.
- If the ESL mode was selected Enable, the password will be required when the start switch is turned ON.
- Machine security

  Disable : Not used ESL function

  Enable (always) : The password is required whenever the operator starts engine.
- Interval : The password is required when the operator starts engine first. But the operator can restart the engine within the interval time without inputting the password.

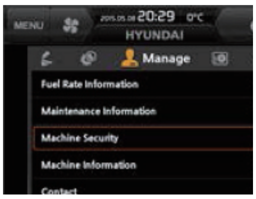
  The interval time can be set maximum 4 hours.

  ※Default password : 00000 + ☑

  ※Password length : (5~10 digit) + ☑
- Smart key (option) : Smart key is registered when equipped with optional smart key. If smart key is not inside of the cabin, authentication process fails and the password entering is needed.

· Password change

- The password is 5~10 digits.

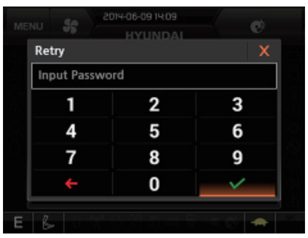


210WF3CD190

290F3CD140

290F3CD135

Enter the current password



290F3CD143

Enter the new password again

290F3CD142

Enter the new password

④ Machine Information

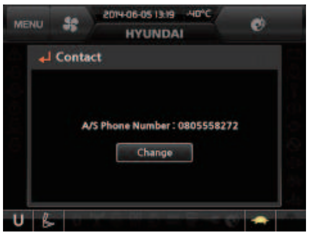
290F3CD144

290F3CD145

· This can confirm the identification of the model information (ECU), MCU, monitor, haptic controller, switch controller, RMCU, relay driver unit, FATC (air conditioner controller), AAVM (opt).

⑤ Contact (A/S phone number)

290F3CD146



290F3CD147

290F3CD148

Enter the new A/S phone number

⑥ Service menu

290F3CD149

290F3CD250

290F3CD151

· Power shift (standard/option) : Power shift pressure can be set by option menu.
· Operating hours : Operating hours since the machine line out can be checked by this menu.
· Breaker mode pump acting (1 pump/2 pump)
· EPPR current level (attach flow EPPR 1 & 2, boom priority EPPR, attach relief pressure EPPR 1& 2)
· Overload pressure : 100 ~ 350 bar

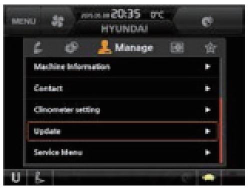
⑦ Clinometer

290F3CD152

290F3CD153

· When the machine is on the flatland, if tap the "initialization", the values of X, Y reset "0".
· You can confirm tilt of machine in cluster's operating screen.

⑧ Update (cluster & ETC devices)

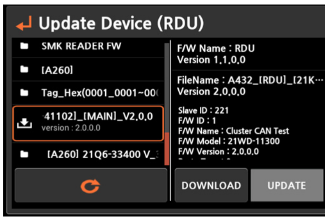


210WF3CD17

210WF3CD18

210WF3CD19

380F3CD04

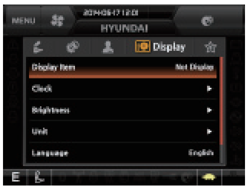


380F3CD05

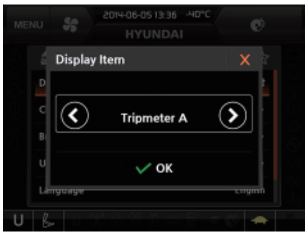
· ETC devices and cluster can be updated through CAN 2 network.
· Insert USB memory stick which includes program files, start download.

(5) Display

① Display item



290F3CD154

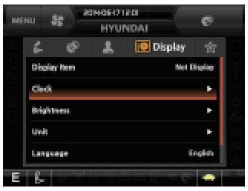


290F3CD155

290F3CD156

- The center display type of the LCD can be selected by this menu.
- The engine speed or each of the tripmeter (A,B,C) is displayed on the center display.

② Clock

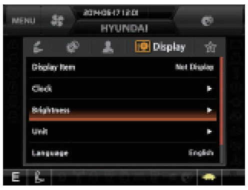


290F3CD157

290F3CD158

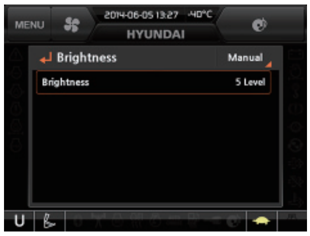
- The first line's three spots "**/**/****" represent Month/Day/Year each.
- The second line shows the current time. (0:00~23:59)

③ Brightness



290F3CD159

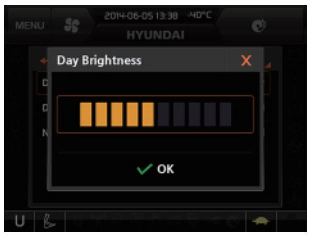
290F3CD160



290F3CD139

290F3CD141

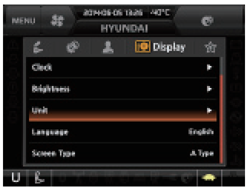
290F3CD191



290F3CD192

- If "Auto" is chosen, brightness for day and night can be differently set up. Also by using the bar in lower side, users can define which time interval belongs to day and night.
  (in bar figure, white area represents night time while orange shows day time)

④ Unit



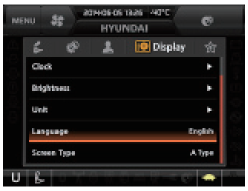
290F3CD161

210WF3CD162

290F3CD193

- Temperature : ˚C ↔ ˚F
- Pressure : bar ↔ MPa ↔ kgf/cm²
- Volume : ℓ ↔ gal
- Flow : lpm ↔ gpm
- Distance : km ↔ mile
- Date format : yy/mm/dd ↔ mm/dd/yy ↔ dd-mm-yy

⑤ Language

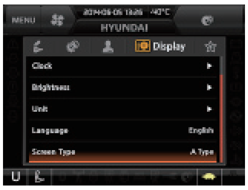


290F3CD163

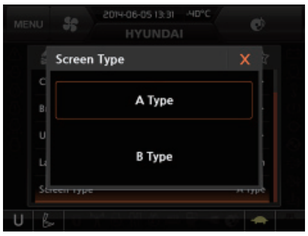
290F3CD164

- User can select preferable language and all displays are changed the selected language.

⑥ Screen type

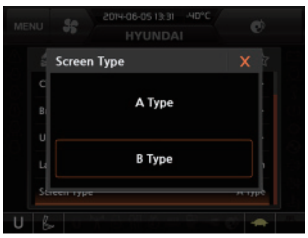


290F3CD165



A Type (Default) 290F3CD166

290F3CD156A

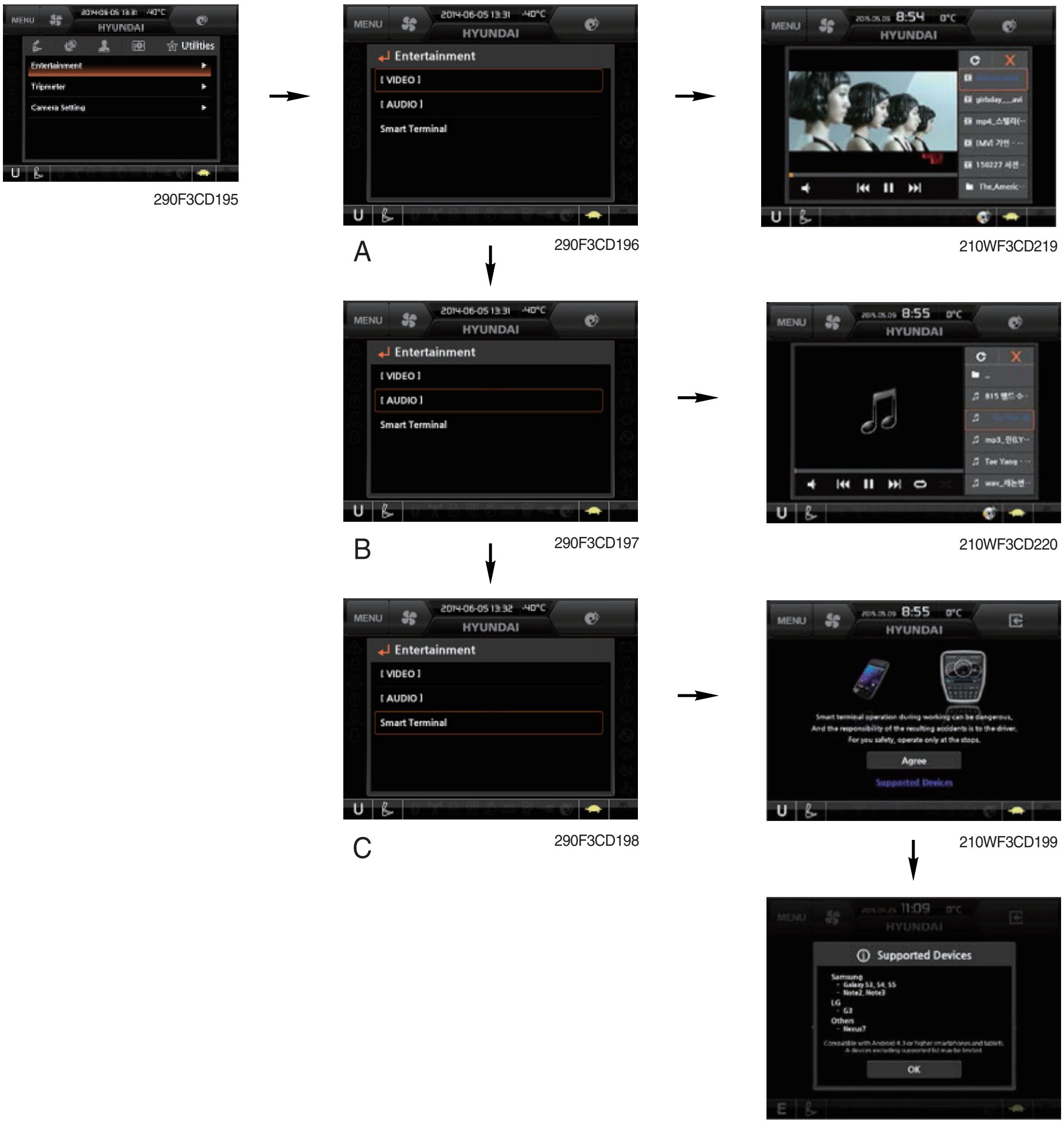


B Type (Option) 290F3CD194

290F3CD167A

(6) Utilities

① Entertainment



290F3CD195

A 290F3CD196

210WF3CD219

B 290F3CD197

210WF3CD220

C 290F3CD198

210WF3CD199

210WF3CD22

- Video (A) : This menu operates the video play function.
  mp4, mkv, avi files and so on.
- Audio (B) : This menu operates the play music.
  mp3, mp4 files and so on.
- Smart terminal (C) : The menu features a smartphone and operates the miracast.

② Tripmeter

290F3CD168

290F3CD169

· Maximum 3 kinds of tripmeters can be used at the same time.
· Each tripmeter can be turned on by choosing "Start" while it also can be turned off by choosing "Stop".
· If the tripmeter icon is activated in the operation screen, it can be controlled directly there.

③ Camera setting

· If the rear camera is not installed on the machine, set disable.
· If the rear camera installed on the machine, set enable.

290F3CD200

290F3CD255

290F3CD256

· In the operation screen, rear camera screen show up when ESC/CAM button is pushed.


290F3CD156


290F3CD221

④ **AAVM** (All Around View Monitoring, option)

· The AAVM buttons of the cluster consist of ESC/CAM and AUTO IDLE/Buzzer stop.

290F3CD244

- **Escape button**

· It will enter into the AAVM mode from the beginning screen if the AAVM is installed.

· While in the AAVM mode, select the ESC button to return to the beginning screen.

290F3CD156

The beginning screen

AAVM mode 290F3CD222

- **Buzzer stop button**

· In AAVM mode, it detects surrounding pedestrians or objects and the warning buzzer sounds.

· User can turn OFF the warning sound by pressing buzzer stop button.

290F3CD246

· When the worker or pedestrian go to the blue line (radius 5 m), an external danger area of equipping on the cluster screen, the warning buzzer sounds and it displays the blue rectangular box for the recognition of the worker and pedestrian.
At this time, the operator should stop work immediately, and stop the buzzer by pressing the buzzer stop button. And then, please work after you check whether the danger factors are solved.

290F3CD247

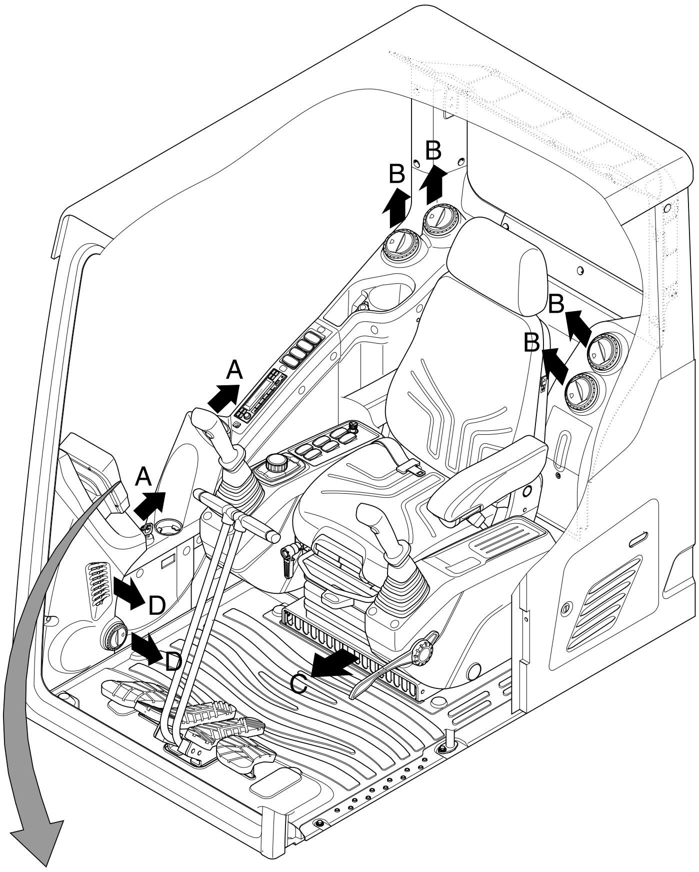
· When the worker or pedestrian go inside of red line (radius 3 m), an internal danger area of equipping on the cluster screen, the warning buzzer sounds and it displays the red rectangular box for the recognition of the worker and pedestrian.
At this time, the operator should stop work immediately, and stop the buzzer by pressing the buzzer stop button. And then, please work after you check whether the danger factors are solved.

※ In AAVM mode, a touch screen of the LCD is available only. The multimodal dial of the haptic controller is not available.

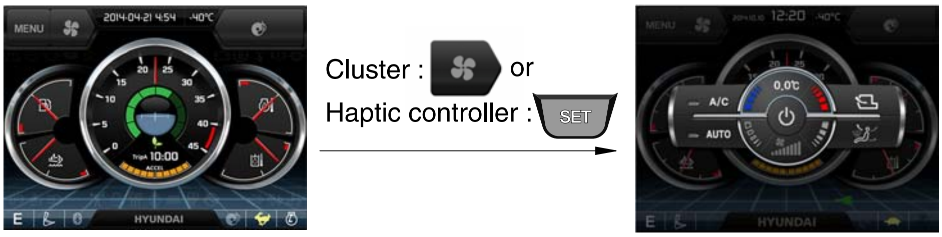
7) AIR CONDITIONER AND HEATER

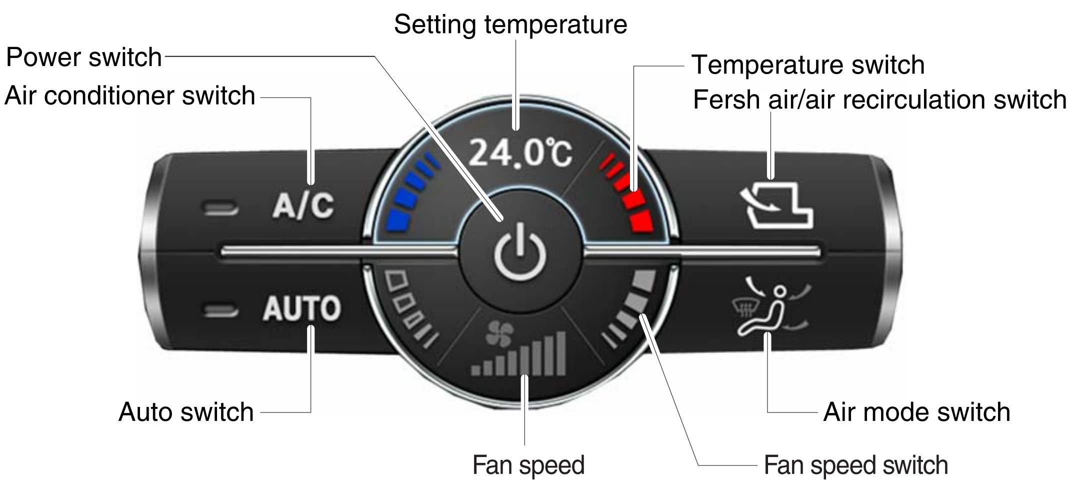
Full auto air conditioner and heater system automatically keeps the optimum condition in accordance with operator's temperature configuration sensing ambient and cabin inside temperature.

· Location of air flow ducts



Cluster LCD





290F3CD201

※ Haptic controller : Refer to the operator's manual page 3-57.

(1) Power switch

290F3CD251

① This switch makes the system ON/OFF.
Just before the power OFF, set values are stored.

② Default setting values

Function	Air conditioner	In/outlet	LCD	Temperature	Mode
Value	OFF	Inlet	OFF	Previous sw OFF	Previous sw OFF

(2) Air conditioner switch

290F3CD203

① This switch turns the compressor ON/OFF.

※ Air conditioner operates to remove vapor and drains water through a drain hose. Water can be sprayed into the cab in case that the drain cock at the ending point of drain hose has a problem.
In this case, exchange the drain cock.

(3) Auto switch

290F3CD223

① Auto air conditiner and heater system automatically keeps the optimum condition in accordance with operator's temperature configuration sensing ambient and cabin inside temperature.

(4) Setting temperature

290F3CD224

① Display the temperature setting out.

(5) Temperature switch

290F3CD225

① Setting temperature indication
· Lo (17˚C), 17.5~31.5˚C, Hi (32˚C)

② Max cool and max warm beeps 5 times.

③ The max cool or the max warm position operates as following table.

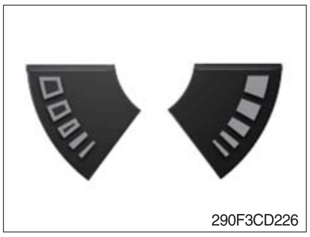
Temperature	Compressor	Fan speed	In/outlet	Mode
Max cool	ON	Hi (8 step)	Recirculation	Face
Max warm	OFF	Hi (7 step)	Fresh	Def/Foot

④ Temperature unit can be changed between celsius (˚C) and fahrenheit (˚F)

a. Default status (˚C)

b. Push Up/Down temperature switch simultaneously more than 5 second displayed temperature unit change (˚C → ˚F)

(6) Fan speed switch



290F3CD226

① Fan speed is controlled automatically by setted temperature.
② This switch controls fan speed manually.
- There are 8 up/down steps to control fan speed.
- The maximum step or the minimum step beeps 5 times.

(7) Fan speed

290F3CD227

① Steps 1 through 8 to display the amount of wind.

(8) Fresh air/air recirculation switch

290F3CD228

① It is possible to change the air-inlet method.
a. Fresh air ( )
Inhaling air from the outside.
b. Air recirculation ( )
It recycles the heated or cooled air to increase the energy efficiency.
※ Change air occasionally when using recirculation for a long time.
※ Check out the fresh air filter and the recirculation filter periodically to keep a good efficiency.

(9) Air mode switch

290F3CD229

① Operating this switch, it beeps and displays symbol of each mode in order. (Face → Face/Rear → Face/Rear/Foot → Foot → Def/Foot)

Mode switch		Face	Face/Rear	Face/Rear/Foot	Foot	Def/Foot
Outlet	A	●	●	●		
	B		●	●		
	C			●	●	●
	D					●

② When defroster mode operating, FRESH AIR/AIR RECIRCULATION switch turns to FRESH AIR mode and air conditioner switch turns ON.

8) SELF DIAGNOSIS FUNCTION

(1) Diagnostic methods : Diagnostic information window, select

(2) Diagnostic indication (Displays fault)

Fault code	Description	Fail safe function
F01	Ambient temperature sensor open	20˚C alternate value control
F02	Ambient temperature sensor short	
F03	Cab inside temperature sensor open	25˚C alternate value control
F04	Cab inside temperature sensor short	
F05	Evaporate temperature sensor open	0˚C alternate value control
F06	Evaporate temperature sensor short	
F07	Null	-
F08	Null	-
F09	Mode 1 actuator open/short	The alternate value is face
F10	Mode 1 actuator drive circuit malfunction	If not, the alternate value is Def/Foot
F11	Intake actuator open/short	The alternate value is air recirculation
F12	Intake actuator drive circuit malfunction	The alternate fresh air
F13	Temperature actuator open/short	If opening amount is 0 %, the alternate value is 0 %
F14	Temperature actuator drive circuit malfunction	If not, the alternate value is 100 %
F15	Null	-
F16	Null	-

GROUP 17 FUEL WARMER SYSTEM

1. SPECIFICATION

1) Operating voltage : 24±4 V

2) Power : 350±50 W

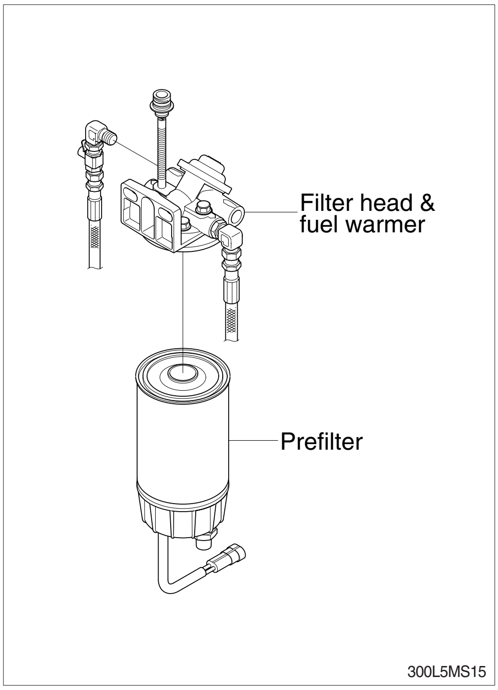
3) Current : 15 A

2. OPERATION

1) The current of fuel warmer system is automatically controlled without thermostat according to fuel temperature.

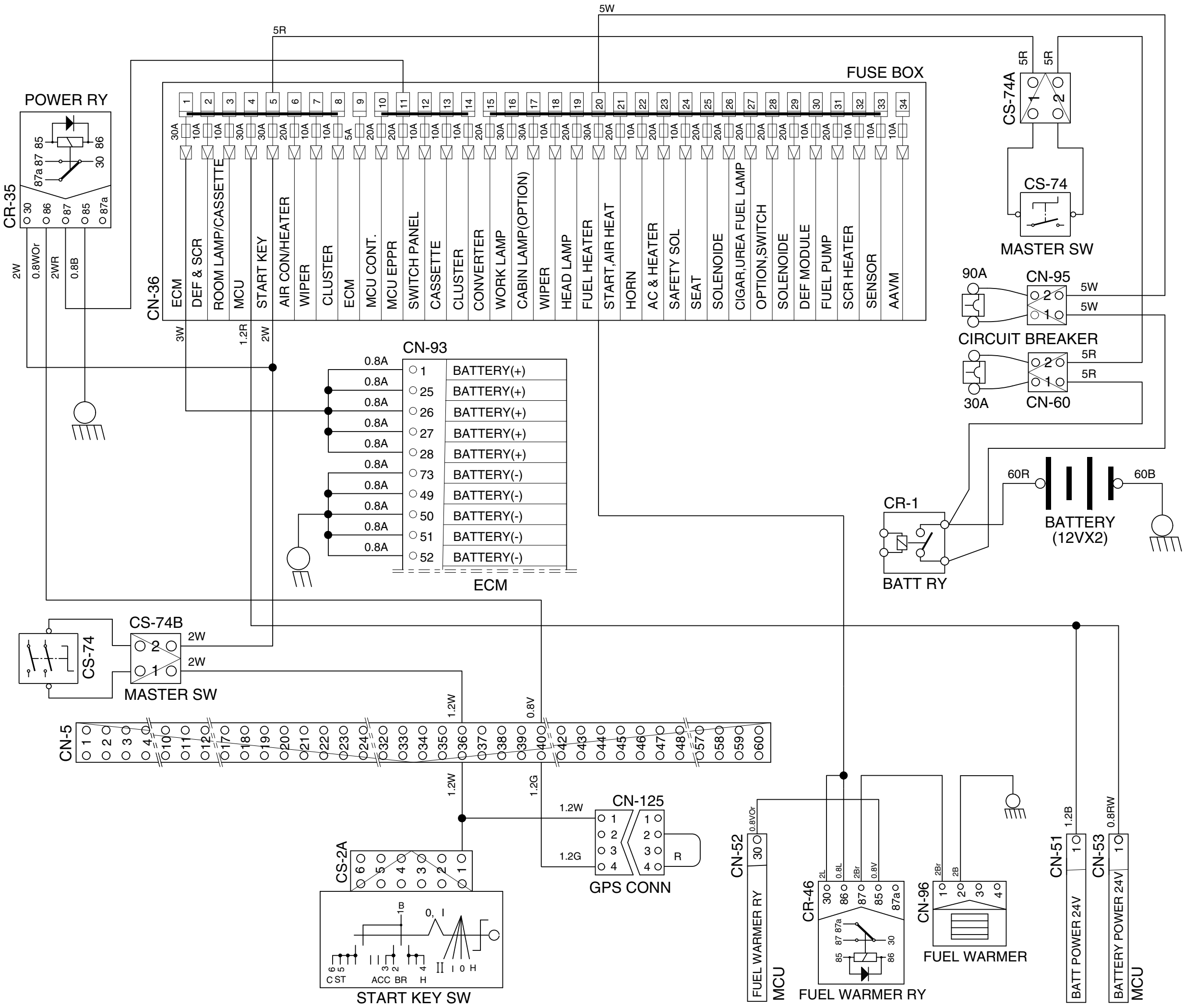
2) At the first state, the 15 A current flows to the fuel warmer and engine may be started in 1~2 minutes.

3) If the fuel starts to flow, ceramic-disk in the fuel warmer heater senses the fuel temperature to reduce the current as low as 1.5 A.
So, fuel is protected from overheating by this mechanism.



300L5MS15

3. ELECTRIC CIRCUIT



380L5MS16

SECTION 6 TROUBLESHOOTING

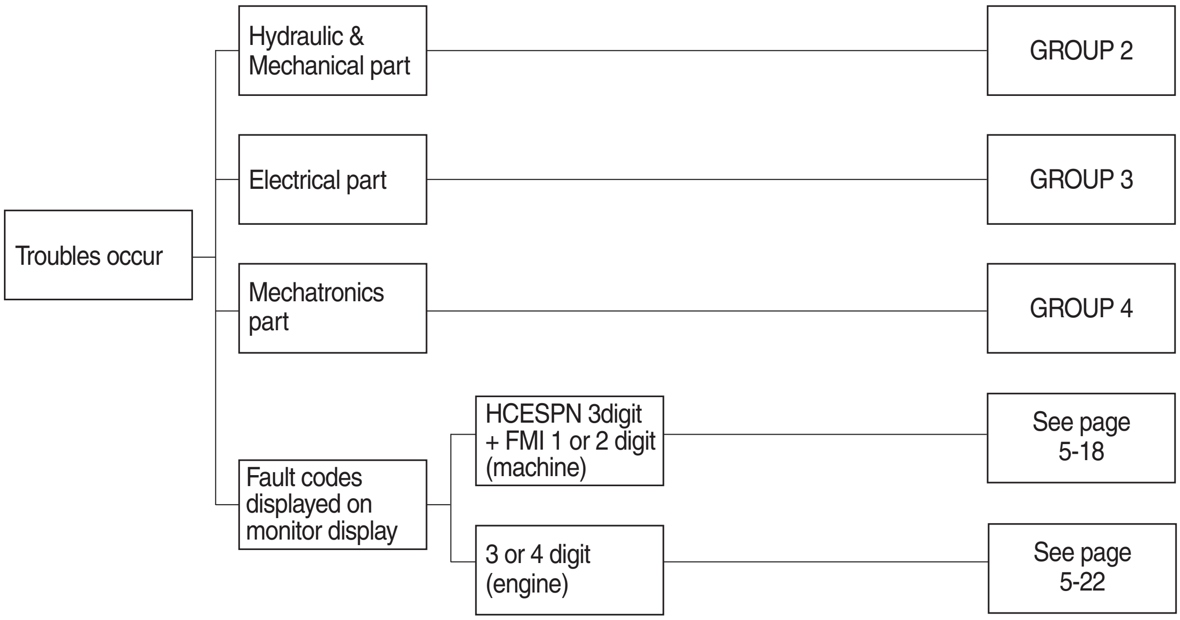
GROUP 1 BEFORE TROUBLESHOOTING

1. INTRODUCTION

When a trouble is occurred in the machine, this section will help a service man to repair to maintain the machine with easy.

The trouble of machine is parted Hydraulic & Mechanical system, Electrical system and Mechatronics system. (fault codes displayed on monitor display) At each system part, a service man can check the machine according to the troubleshooting process diagram.

※ **Before carring out troubleshooting procedure, check monitoring menu in the cluster.**

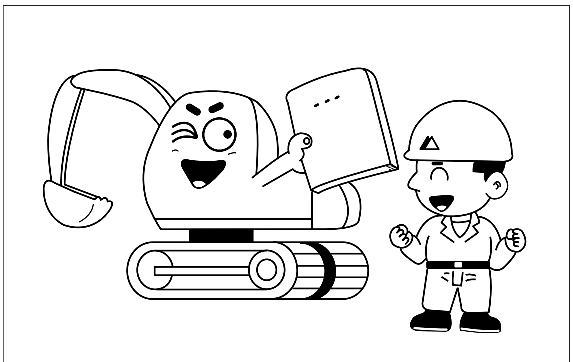


2. DIAGNOSING PROCEDURE

To carry out troubleshooting efficiently, the following steps must be observed.

STEP 1. Study the machine system

Study and know how the machine is operating, how the system is composing, what kinds of function are installed in the machine and what are specifications of the system components by the machine service manual.
Especially, deepen the knowledge for the related parts of the trouble.

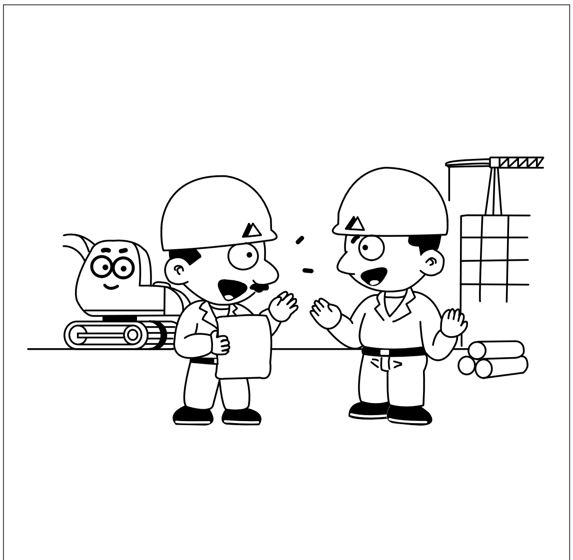


13031SH02

STEP 2. Ask the operator

Before inspecting, get the full story of malfunctions from a witness --- the operator.

1) How the machine is used and when it is serviced?
2) When the trouble was noticed and what work the machine was doing at that time?
3) What is the phenomenon of the trouble? Was the trouble getting worse, or did it come out suddenly for the first time?
4) Did the machine have any troubles previously? If so, which parts were repaired before.

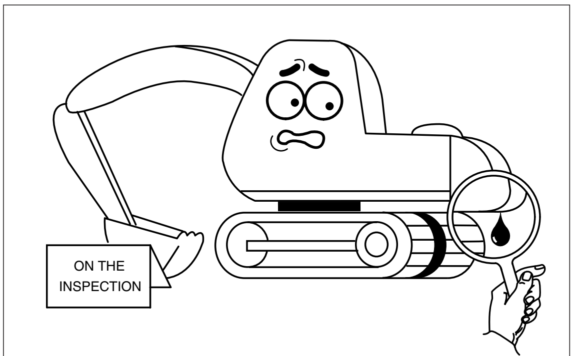


13031SH03

STEP 3. Inspect the machine

Before starting troubleshooting, check the machine for the daily maintenance points as shown in the operator's manual.

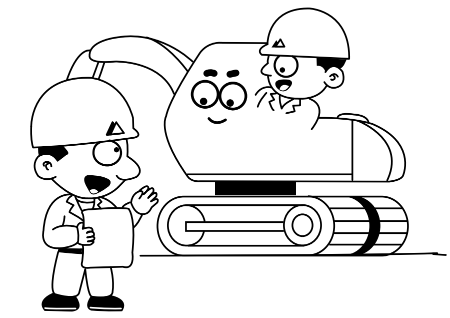
And also check the electrical system including batteries, as the troubles in the electrical system such as low battery voltage, loose connections and blown out fuses will result in malfunction of the controllers causing total operational failures of the machine.



(210-7) 6-2(3)

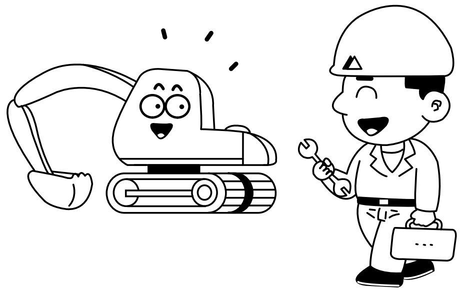
STEP 4. Inspect the trouble actually on the machine

In case that some trouble cannot be confirmed, obtain the details of the malfunction from the operator.
Also, check if there are any in complete connections of the wire harnesses are or not.


(210-7) 6-3(1)

STEP 5. Perform troubleshooting

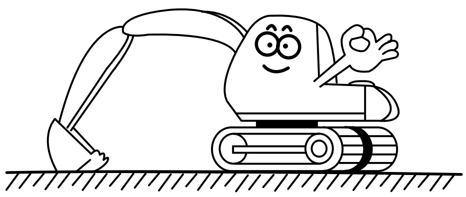
According to where the trouble parts are located, hydraulic & mechanical system part or electrical system part or mechatronics system part, perform troubleshooting the machine refer to the each system part's troubleshooting process diagram.


13031SH05

STEP 6. Trace a cause

Before reaching a conclusion, check the most suspectible causes again. Try to trace what the real cause of the trouble is.

Make a plan of the appropriate repairing procedure to avoid consequential malfunctions.


(210-7) 6-3(3)

GROUP 2 HYDRAULIC AND MECHANICAL SYSTEM

1. INTRODUCTION

1) MACHINE IN GENERAL

(1) If even a minor fault is left intact and operation is continued, a fatal failure may be caused, entailing a large sum of expenses and long hours of restoration.
Therefore when even a small trouble occurs, do not rely on your intuition and experience, but look for the cause based on the troubleshooting principle and perform maintenance and adjustment to prevent major failure from occurring. Keep in mind that a fault results from a combination of different causes.

(2) The following lists up commonly occurring faults and possible causes with this machine. For the troubleshooting of the engine, refer to the coming troubleshooting and repair.

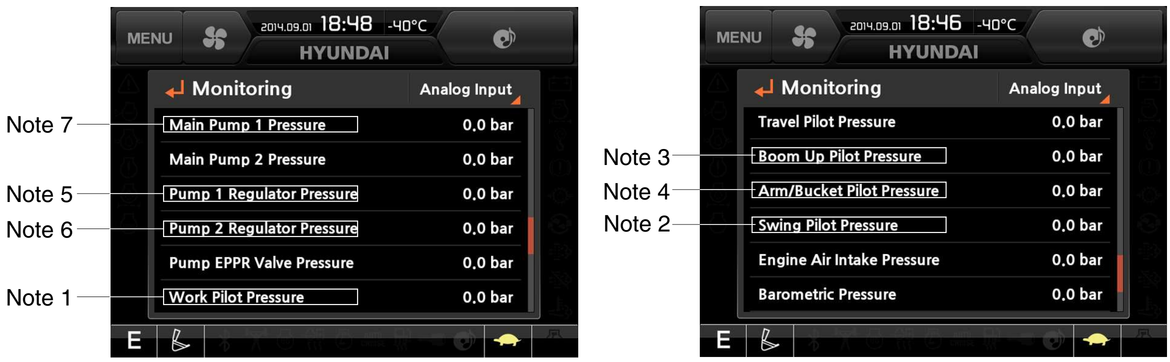
(3) When carrying out troubleshooting, do not hurry to disassemble the components.
It will become impossible to find the cause of the problem.

(4) Ask user or operator the following.
① Was there any strange thing about machine before failure occurred?
② Under what conditions did the failure occur?
③ Have any repairs been carried out before the failure?

(5) Check before troubleshooting.
① Check oil and fuel level.
② Check for any external leakage of oil from components.
③ Check for loose or damage of wiring and connections.

2) MACHINE STATUS MONITORING ON THE CLUSTER

(1) The machine status such as the engine rpm, oil temperature, voltage and pressure etc. can be checked by this menu.



Analog 1　　Analog 2

300L6HS01

(2) Specification

No.	Description	Specification
Note 1	Work pilot pressure	40^{+2}_{0} bar
Note 2	Swing pilot pressure	0~40 bar
Note 3	Boom up pilot pressure	0~40 bar
Note 4	Arm/bucket pilot pressure	0~40 bar
Note 5	Pump 1 regulator pressure	0~50 bar
Note 6	Pump 2 regulator pressure	0~50 bar
Note 7	Pump 1 pressure	350 bar

2. DRIVE SYSTEM

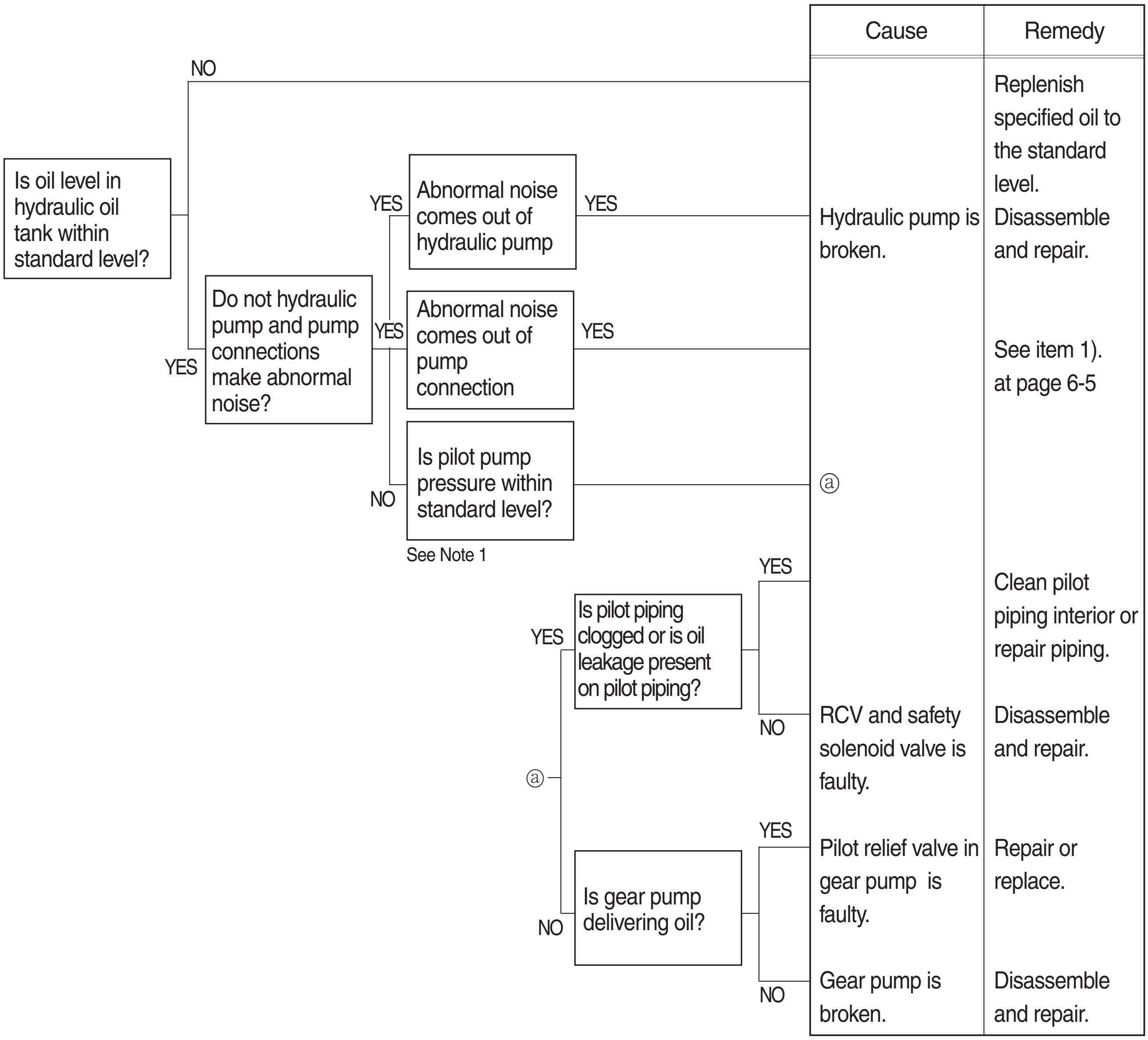
1) UNUSUAL NOISE COMES OUT OF PUMP CONNECTION

Remove dust plug under engine flywheel and check if rubber pieces or particles are not present.

- YES → Coupling element is broken. → Disassemble and repair.
- NO → Coupling hub spline is worn or hub fastening setscrew is slack.
  - YES → Replace hub or retighten setscrew.
  - NO → If hydraulic pump or engine is suspected as a culprit refer to this manual "Structure and function".

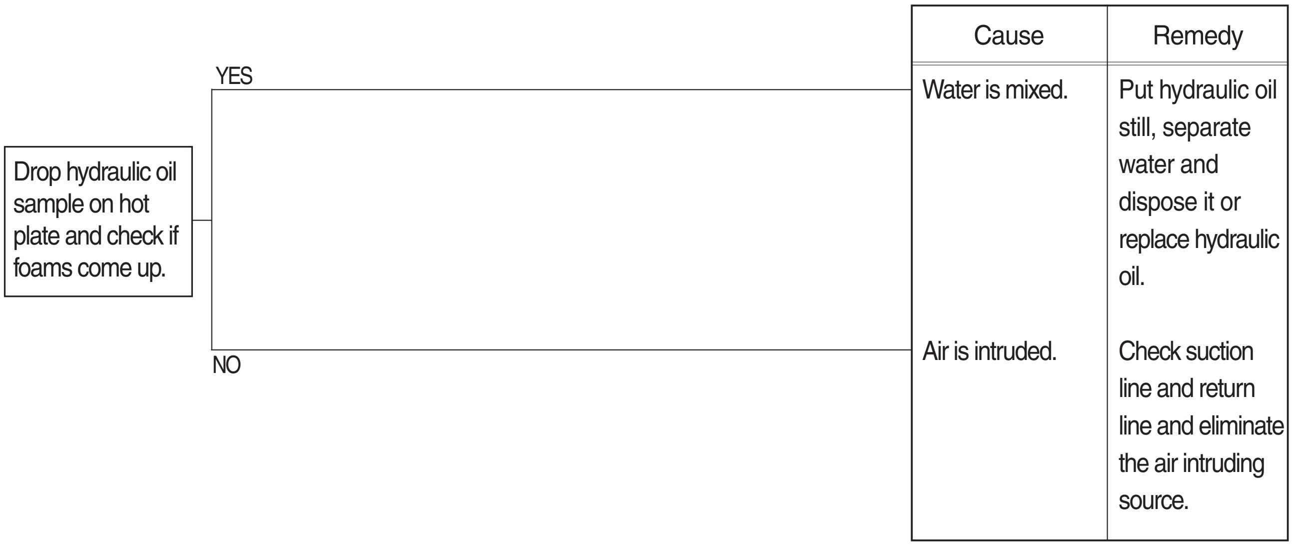
Cause	Remedy
Coupling element is broken.	Disassemble and repair.
	Replace hub or retighten setscrew.

2) ENGINE STARTS BUT MACHINE DOES NOT OPERATE AT ALL

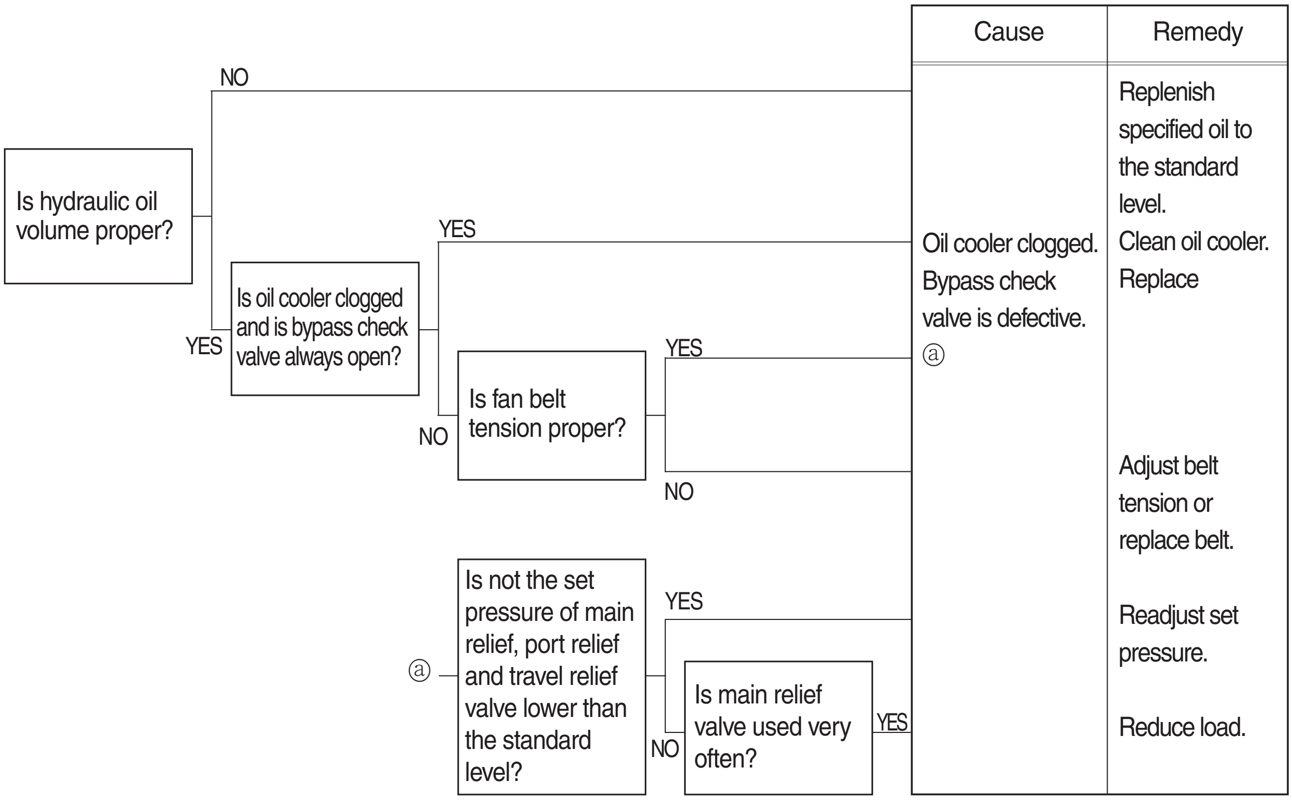


3. HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

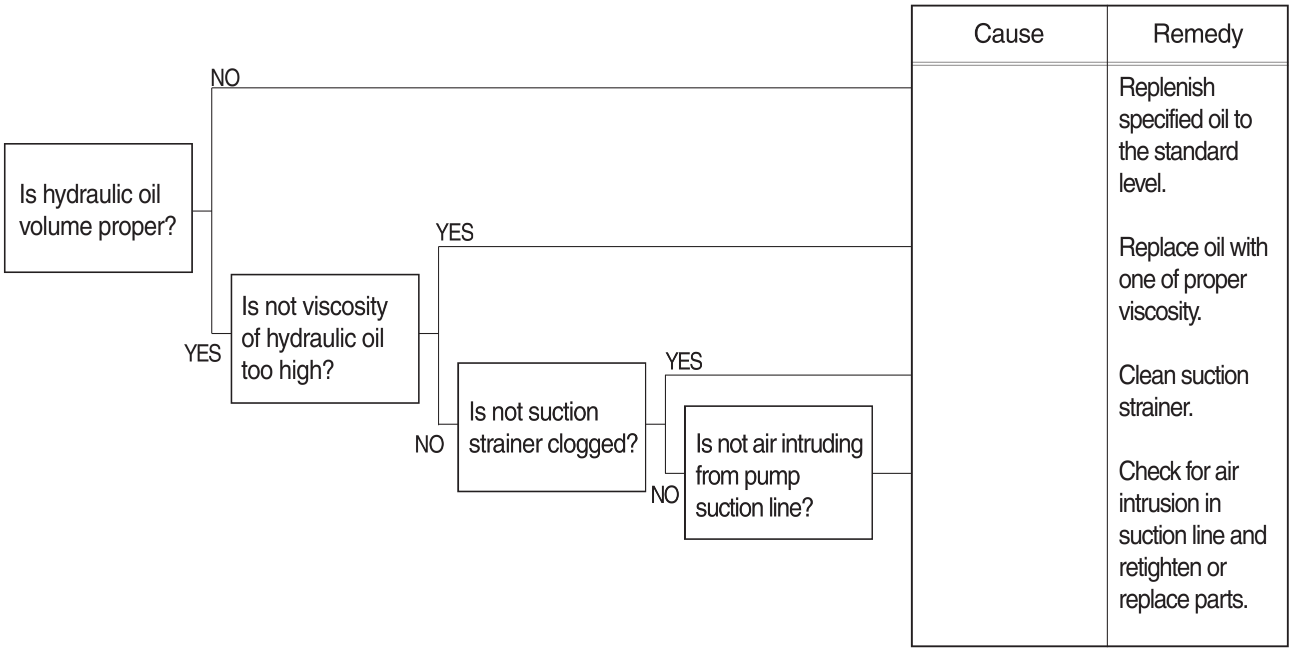
1) HYDRAULIC OIL IS CLOUDY



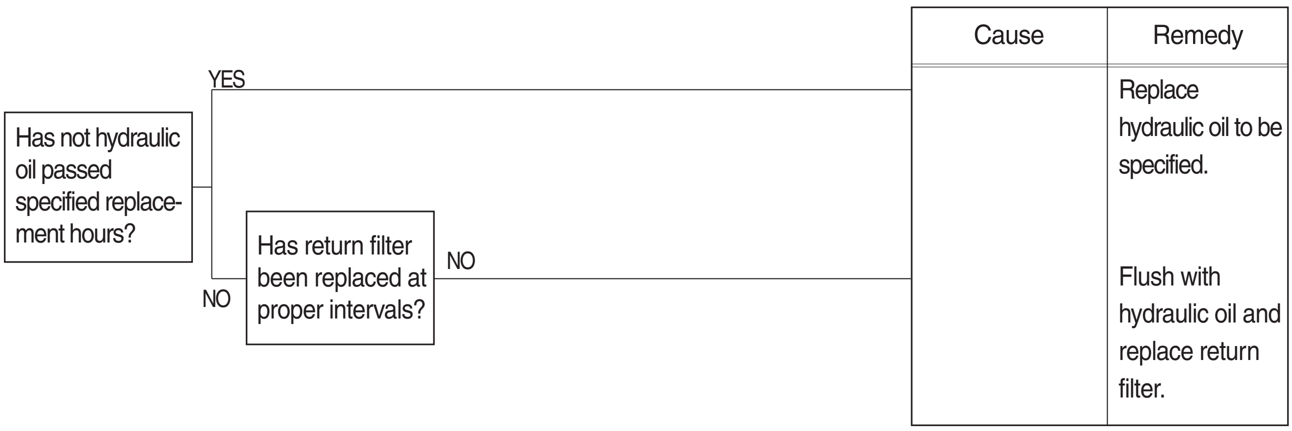
2) HYDRAULIC OIL TEMPERATURE HAS RISEN ABNORMALLY



3) CAVITATION OCCURS WITH PUMP

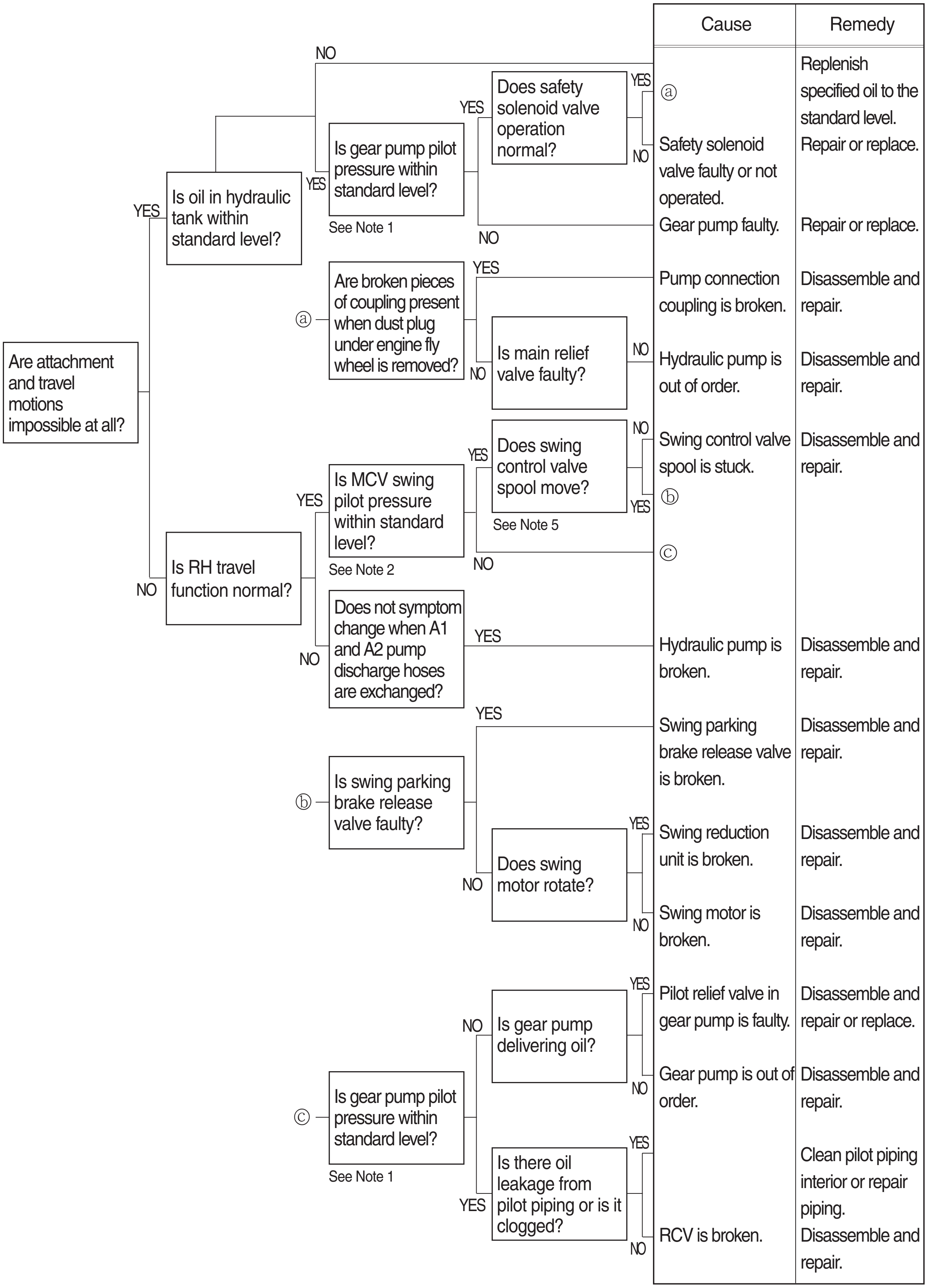


4) HYDRAULIC OIL IS CONTAMINATED

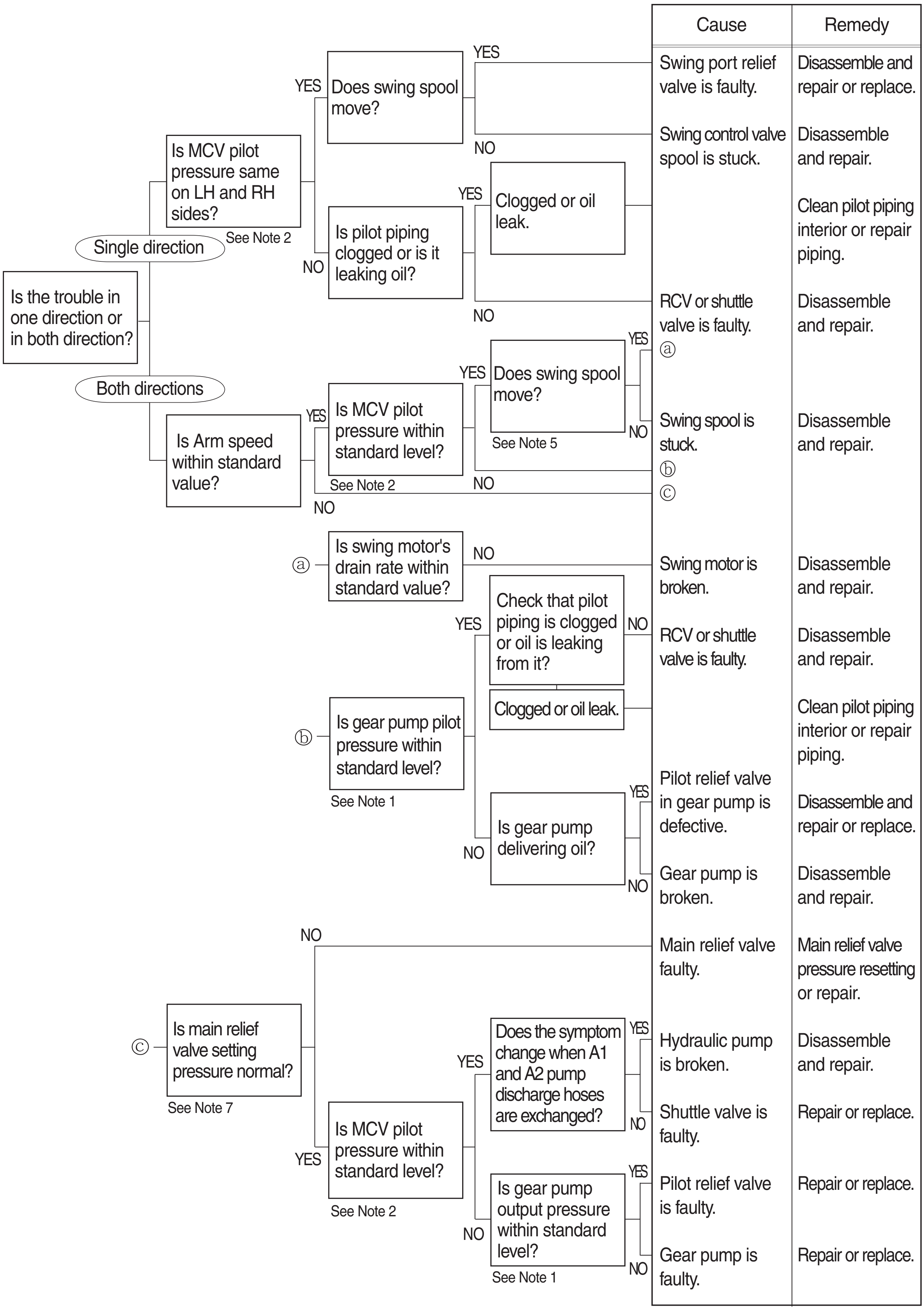


4. SWING SYSTEM

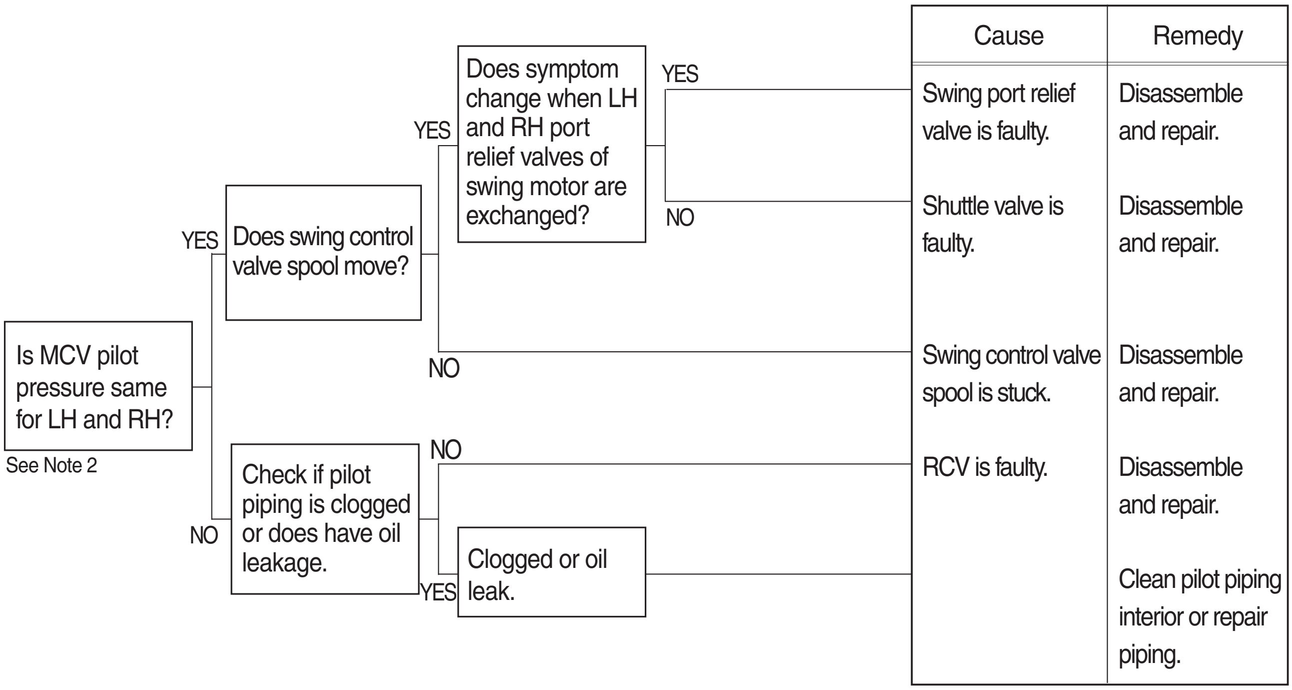
1) BOTH LH AND RH SWING ACTIONS ARE IMPOSSIBLE



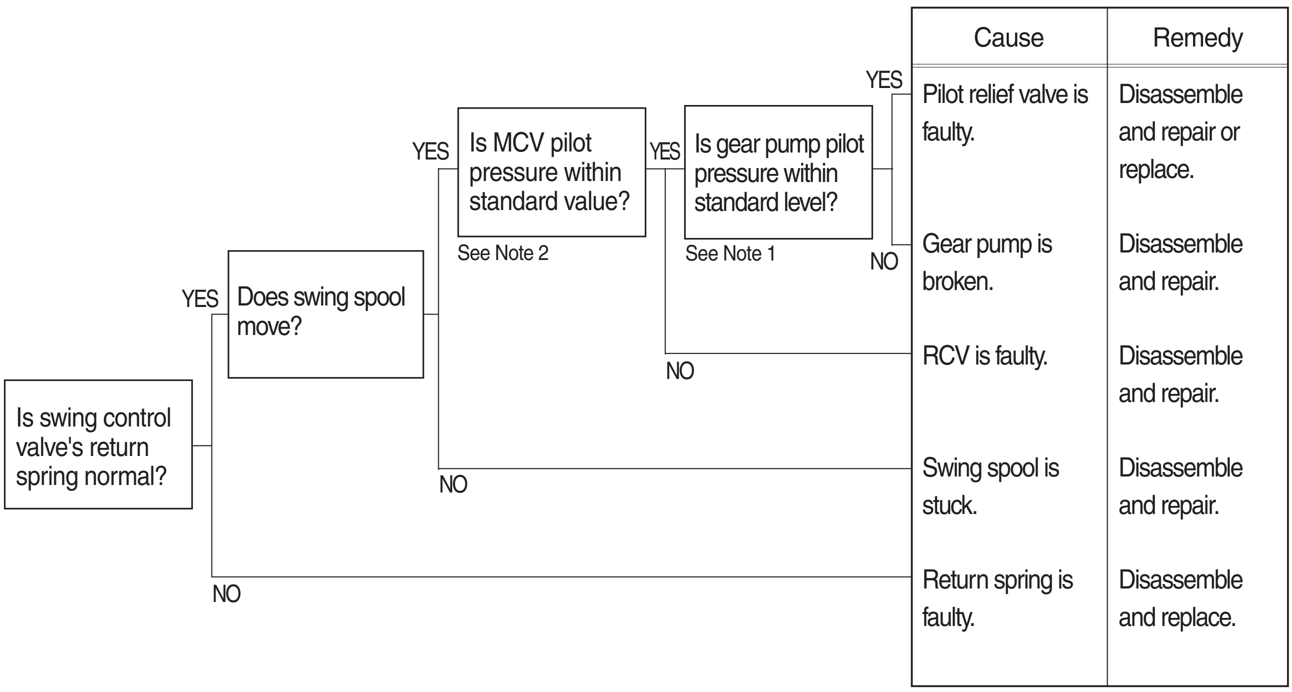
2) SWING SPEED IS LOW



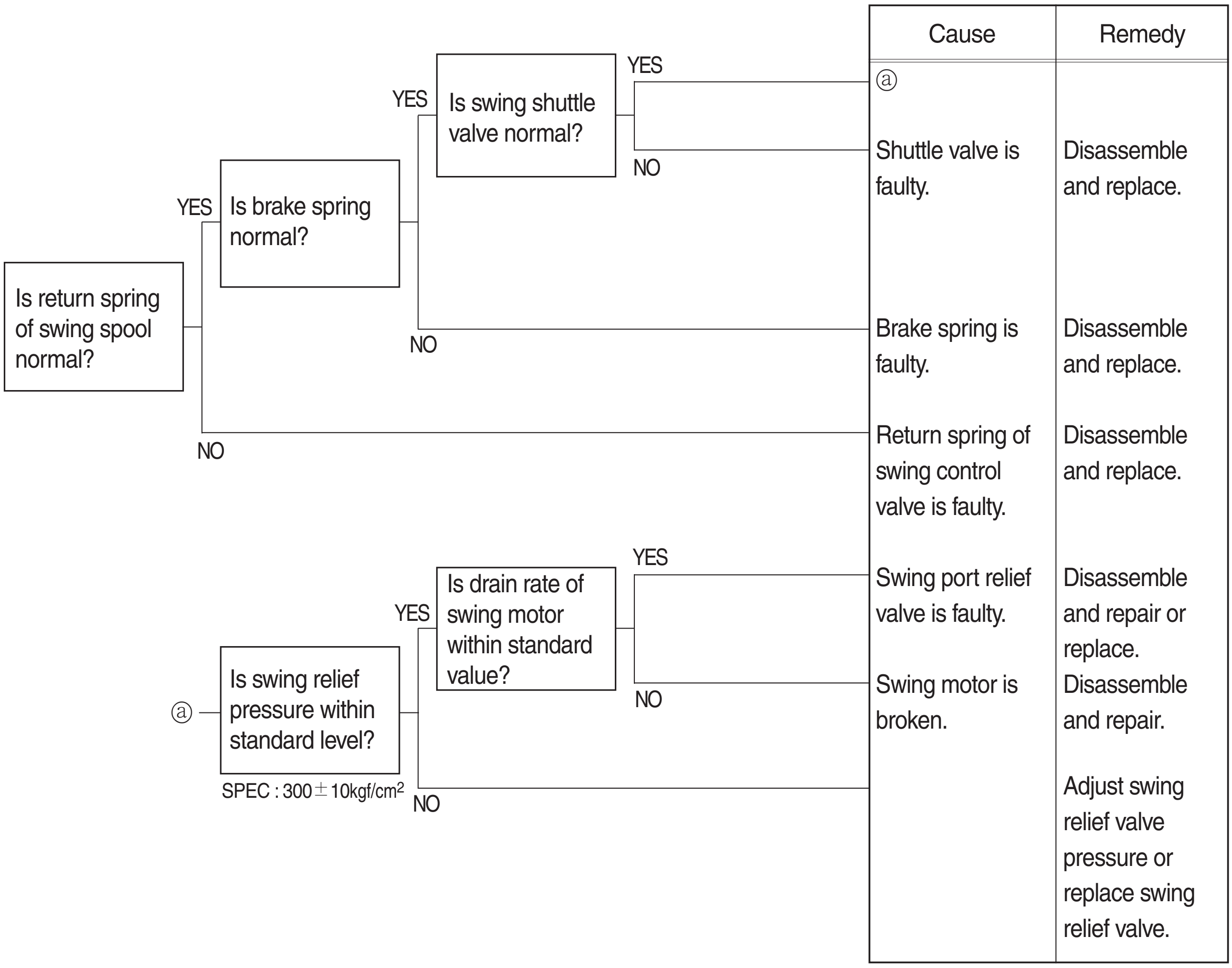
3) SWING MOTION IS IMPOSSIBLE IN ONE DIRECTION



4) MACHINE SWINGS BUT DOES NOT STOP

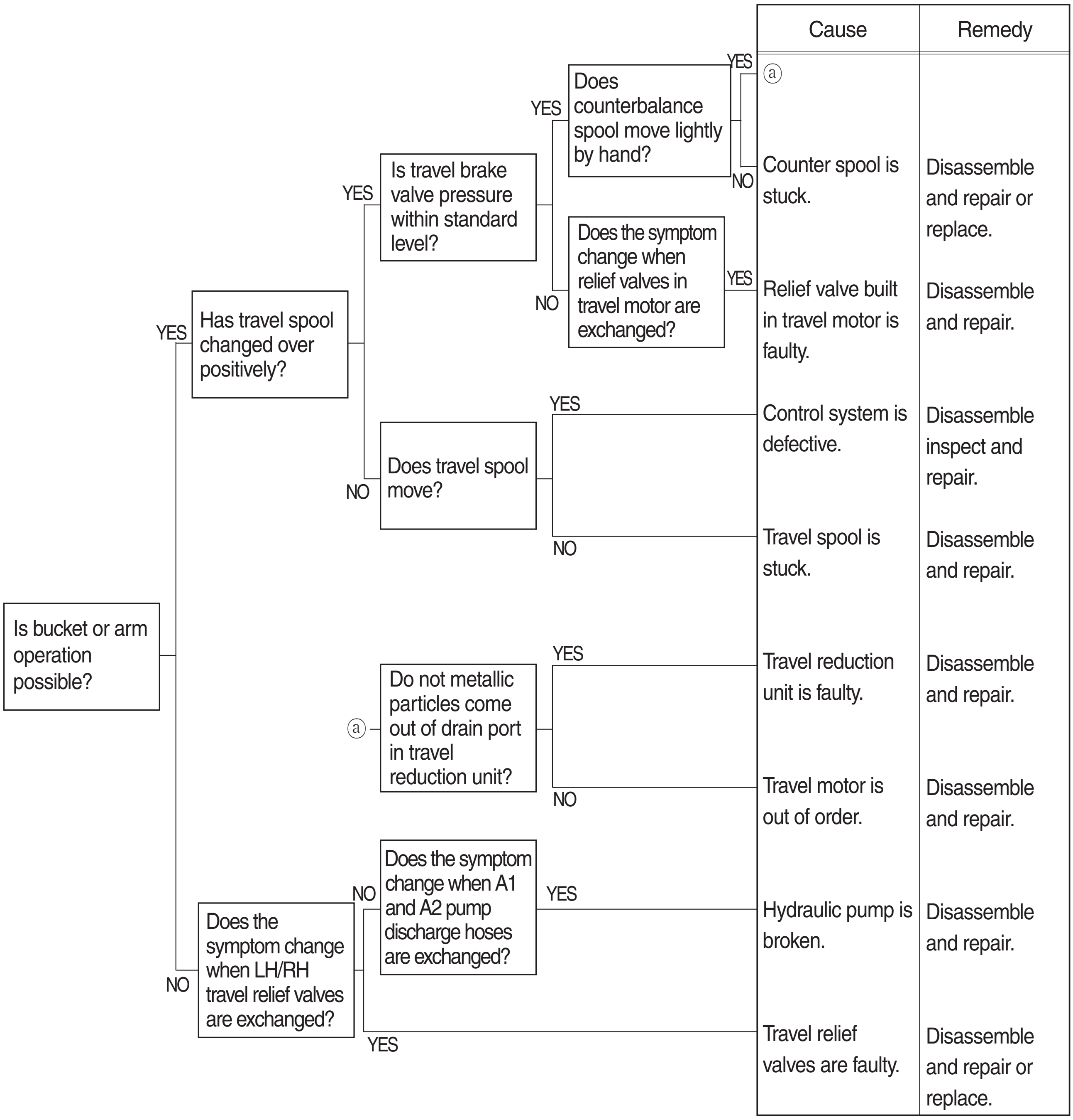


5) THE SWING UNIT DRIFTS WHEN THE MACHINE IS AT REST ON A SLOPE

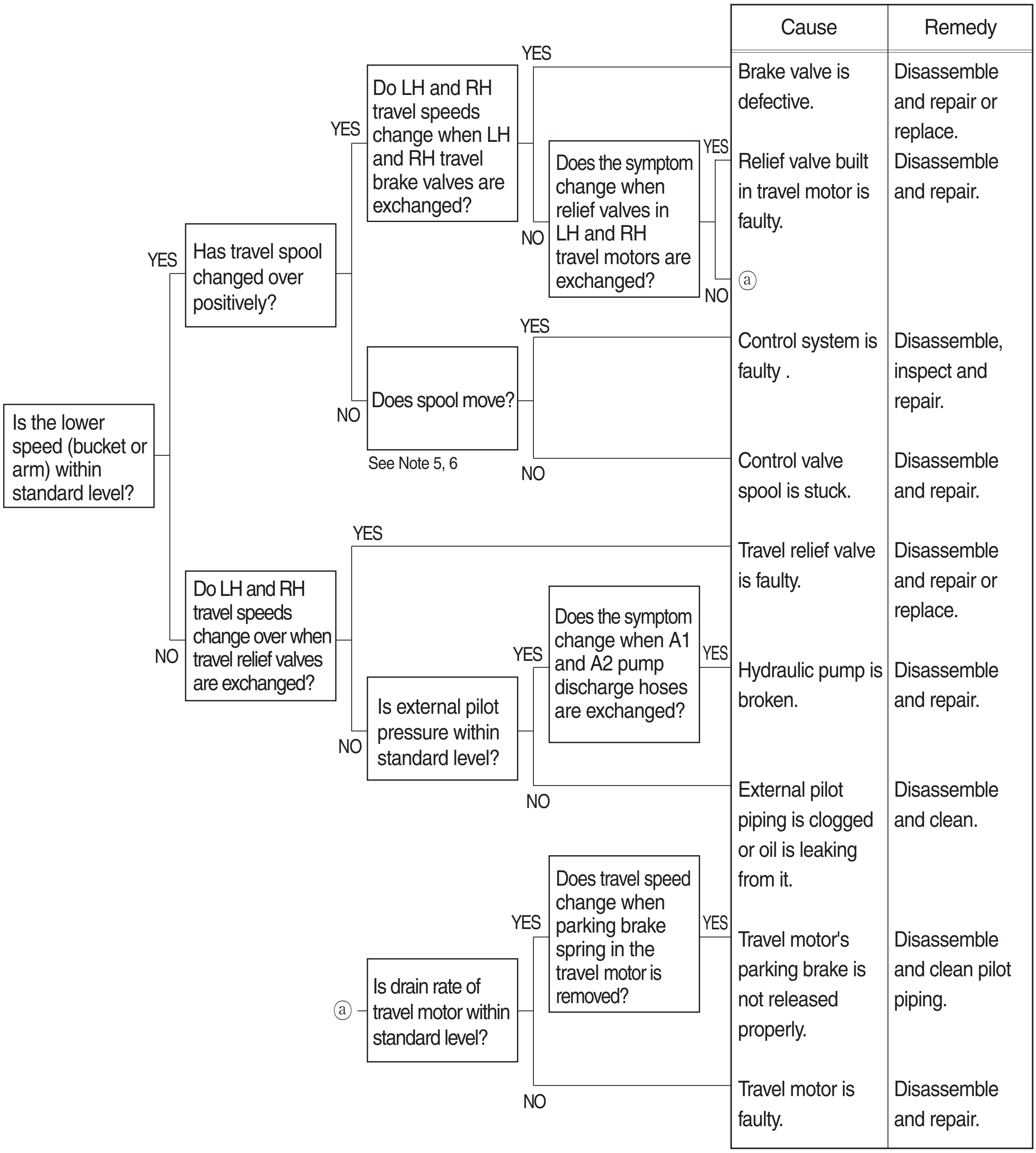


5. TRAVEL SYSTEM

1) TRAVEL DOES NOT FUNCTION AT ALL ON ONE SIDE

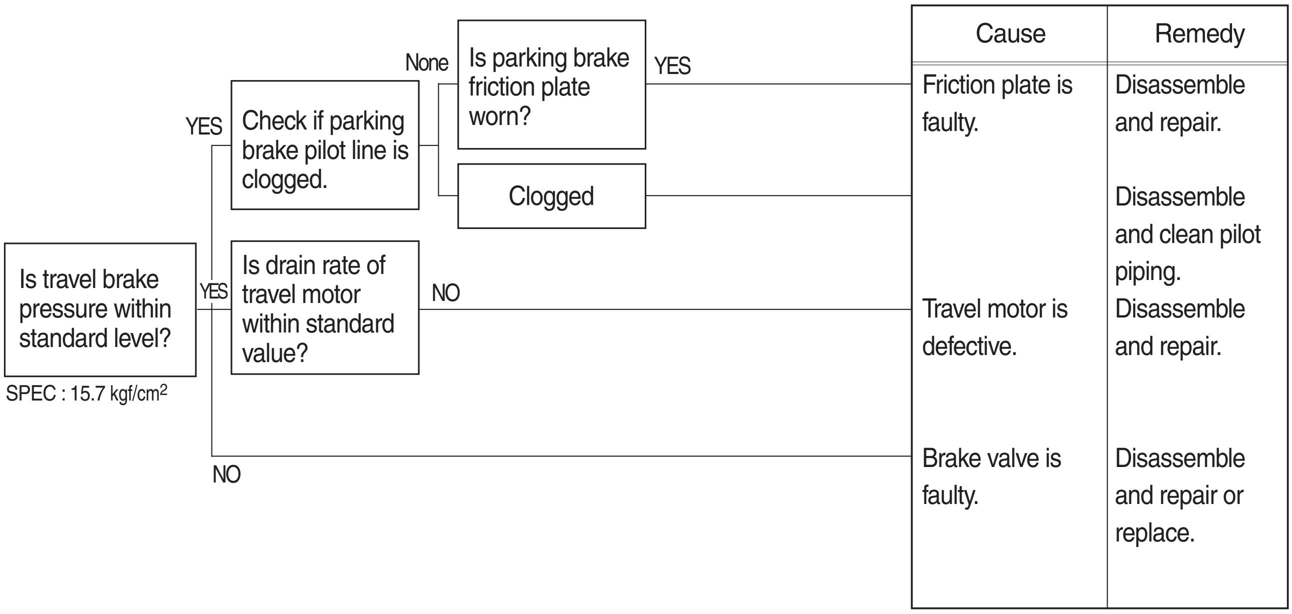


2) SPEED ON ONE SIDE FALLS AND THE MACHINE CURVES

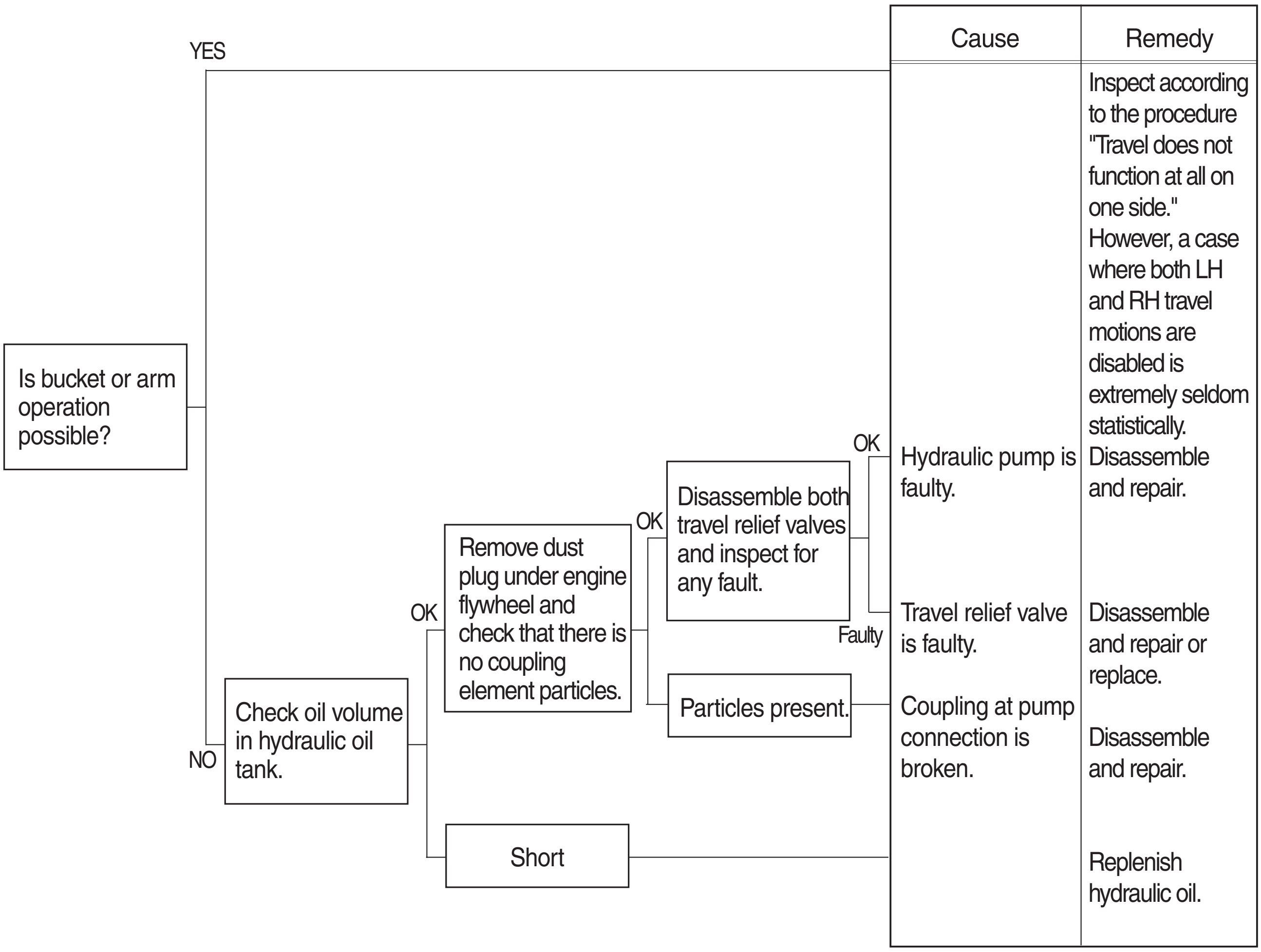


3) MACHINE DOES NOT STOP ON A SLOPE

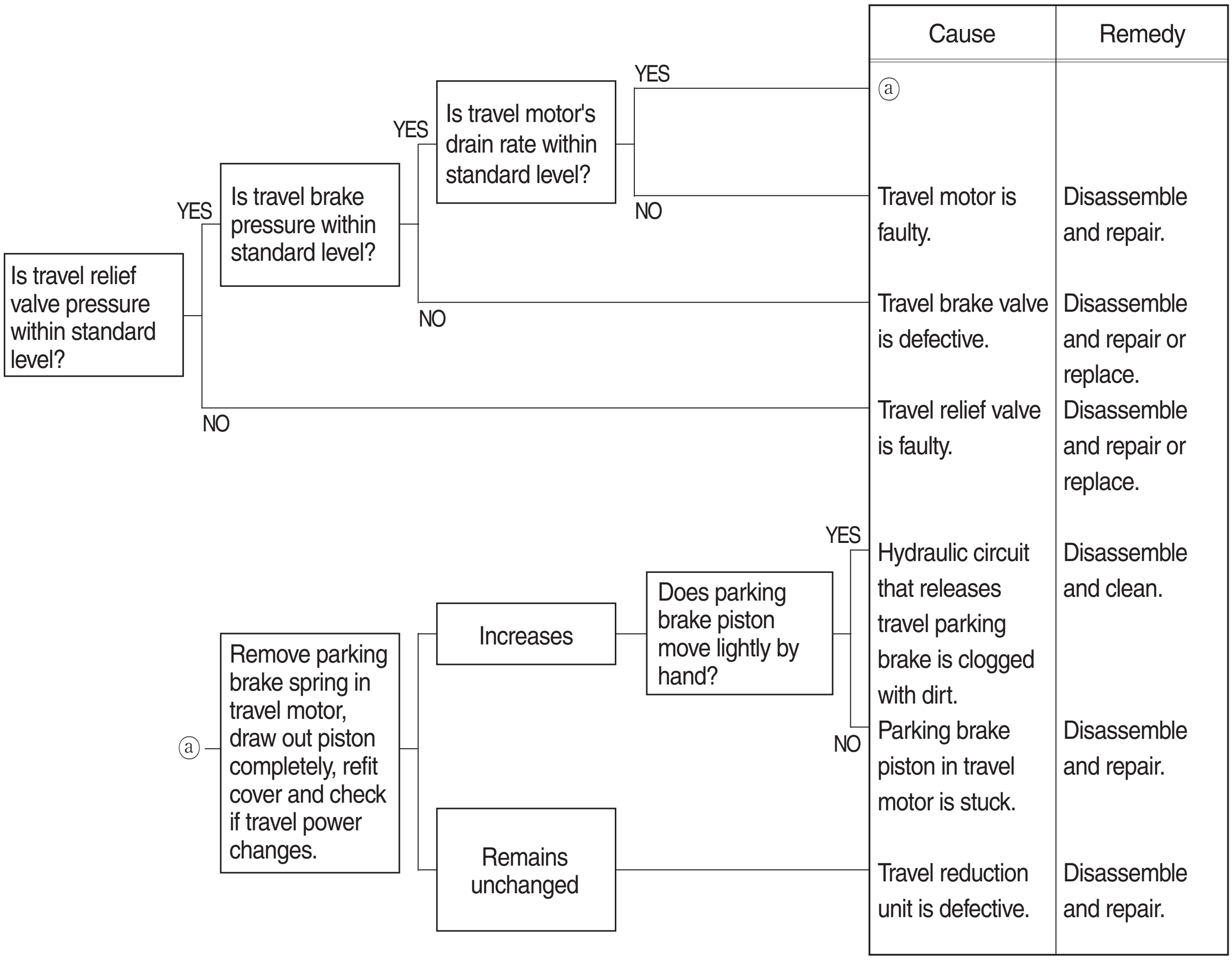
Machine is pulled forward as sprocket rotates during digging operation.



4) LH AND RH TRAVEL MOTIONS ARE IMPOSSIBLE

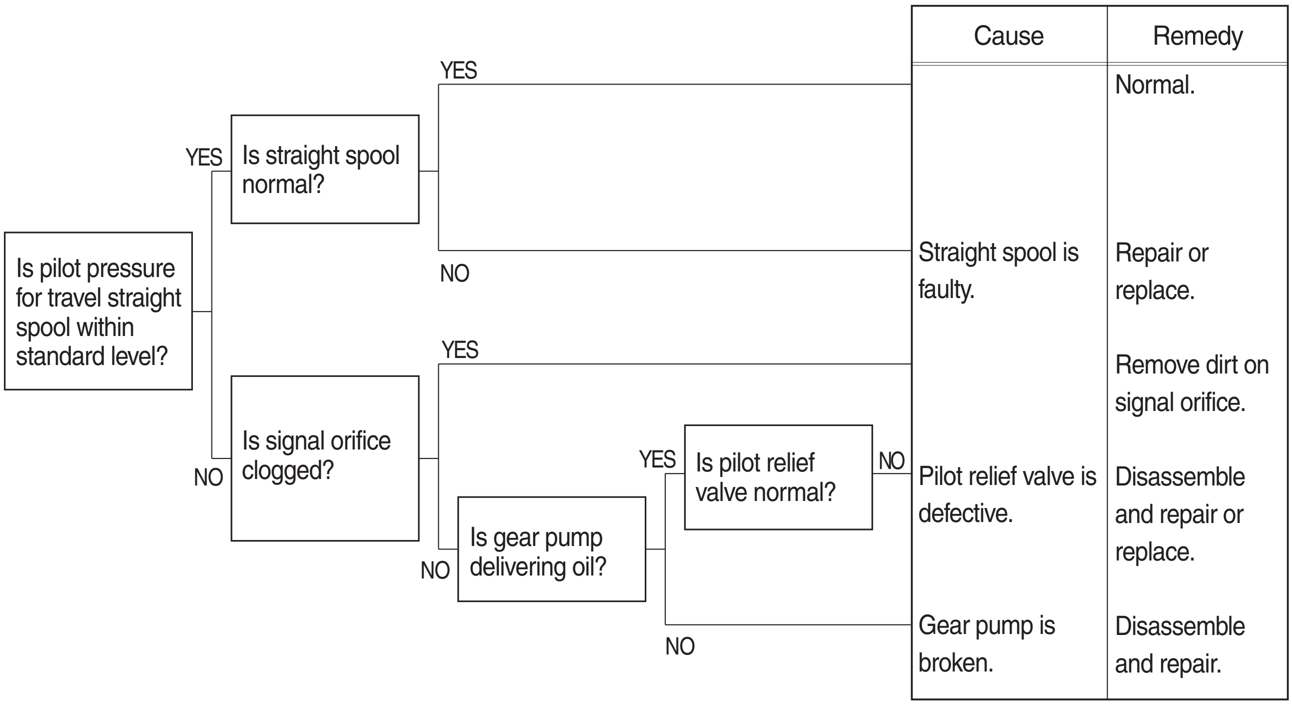


5) TRAVEL ACTION IS POWERLESS (travel only)



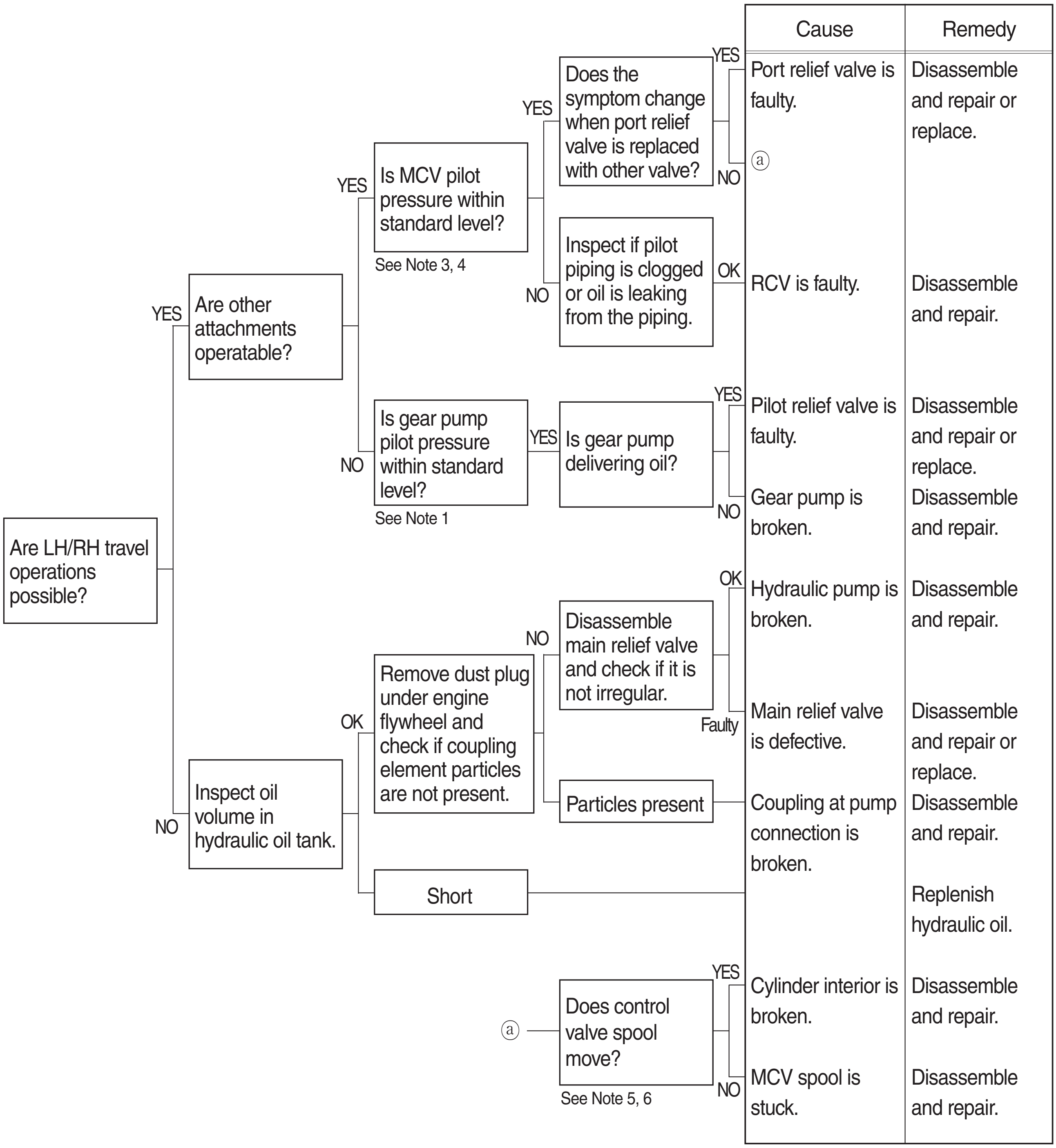
6) MACHINE RUNS RECKLESSLY ON A SLOPE

7) MACHINE MAKES A CURVED TRAVEL OR DOES NOT TRAVEL AT ALL WHEN TRAVEL AND ATTACHMENT OPERATIONS ARE EXECUTED AT THE SAME TIME

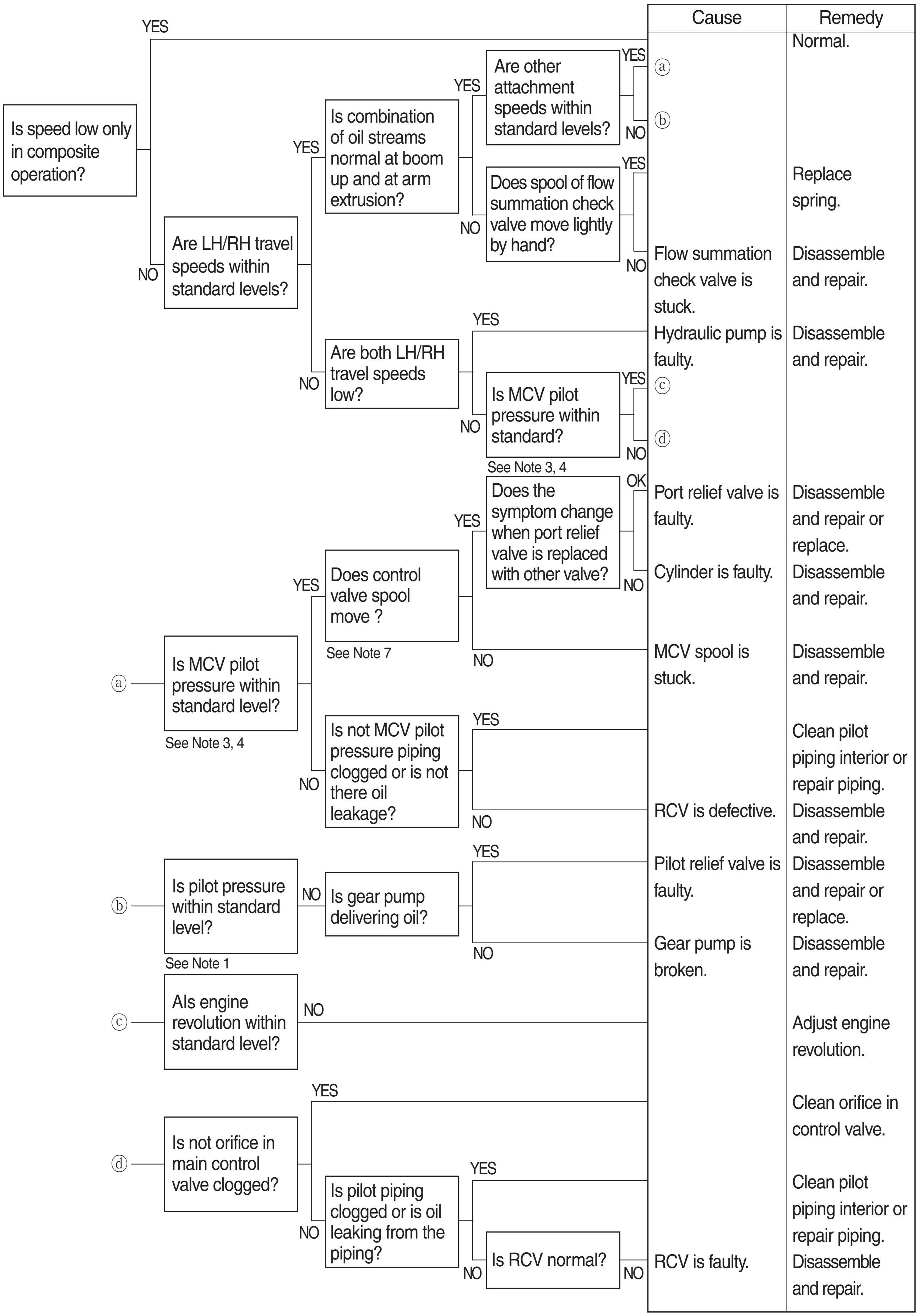


6. ATTACHMENT SYSTEM

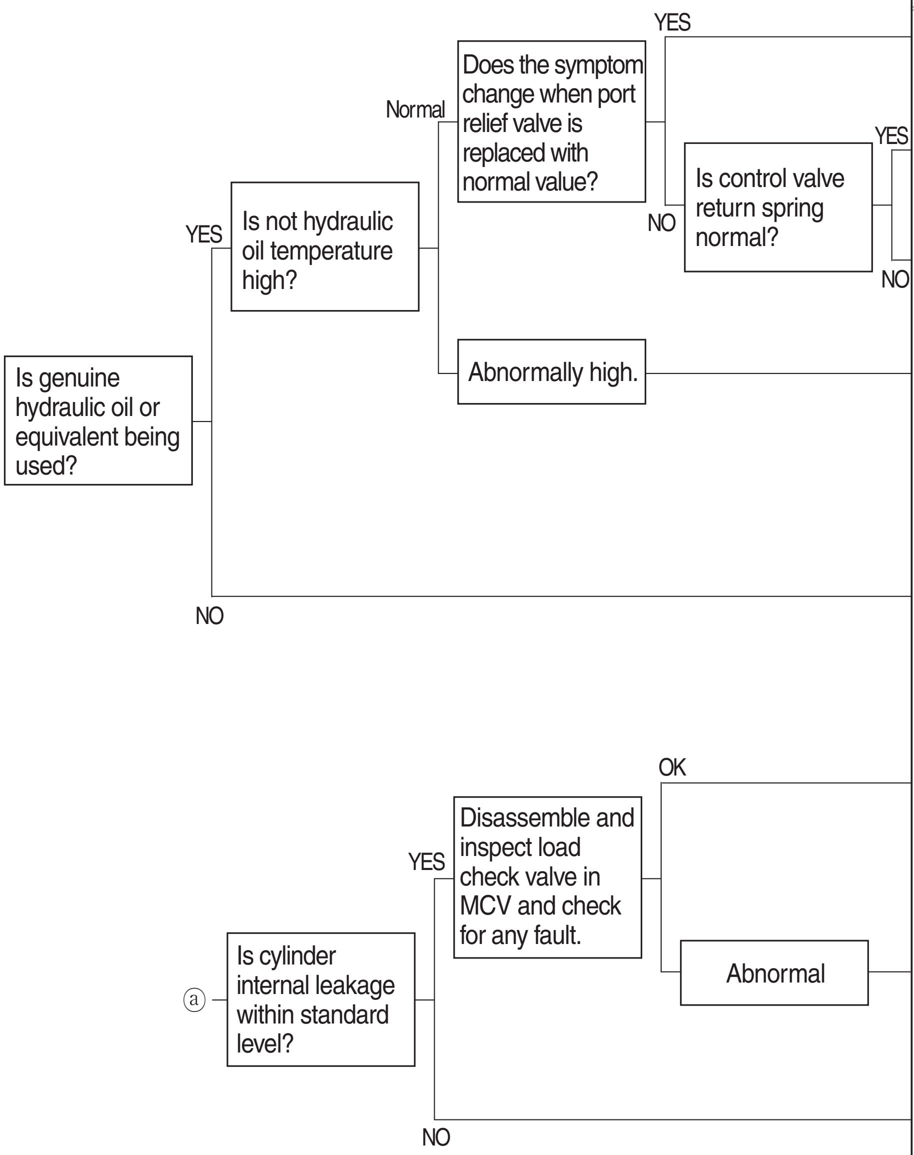
1) BOOM OR ARM ACTION IS IMPOSSIBLE AT ALL



2) BOOM, ARM OR BUCKET SPEED IS LOW

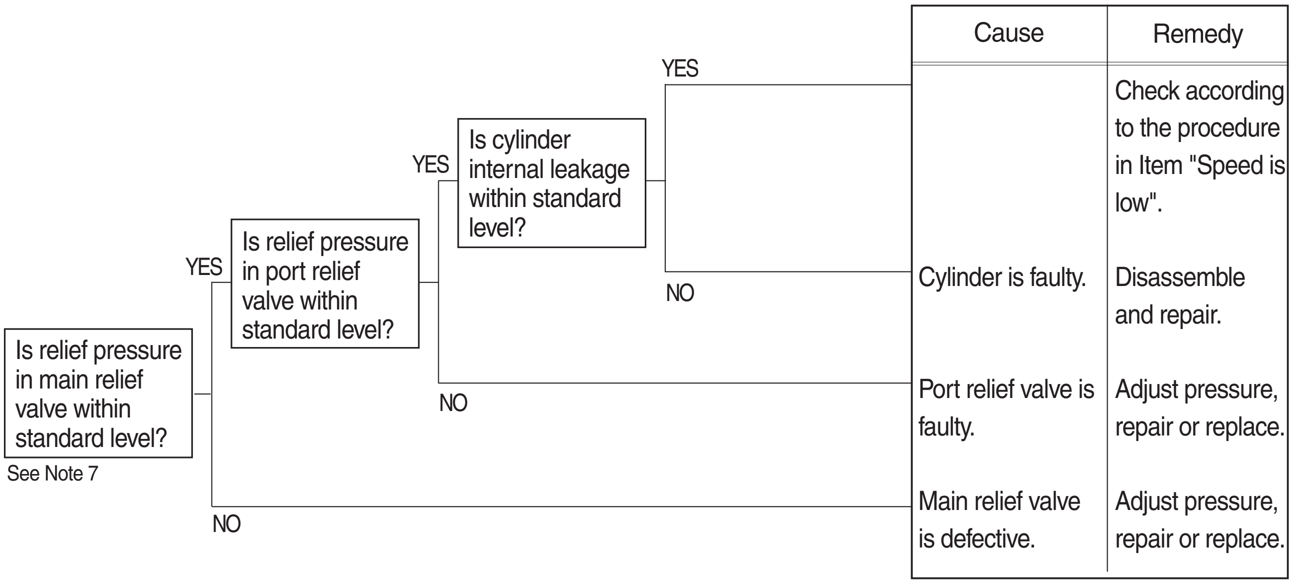


3) BOOM, ARM OR BUCKET CYLINDER EXTENDS OR CONTRACTS ITSELF AND ATTACHMENT FALLS

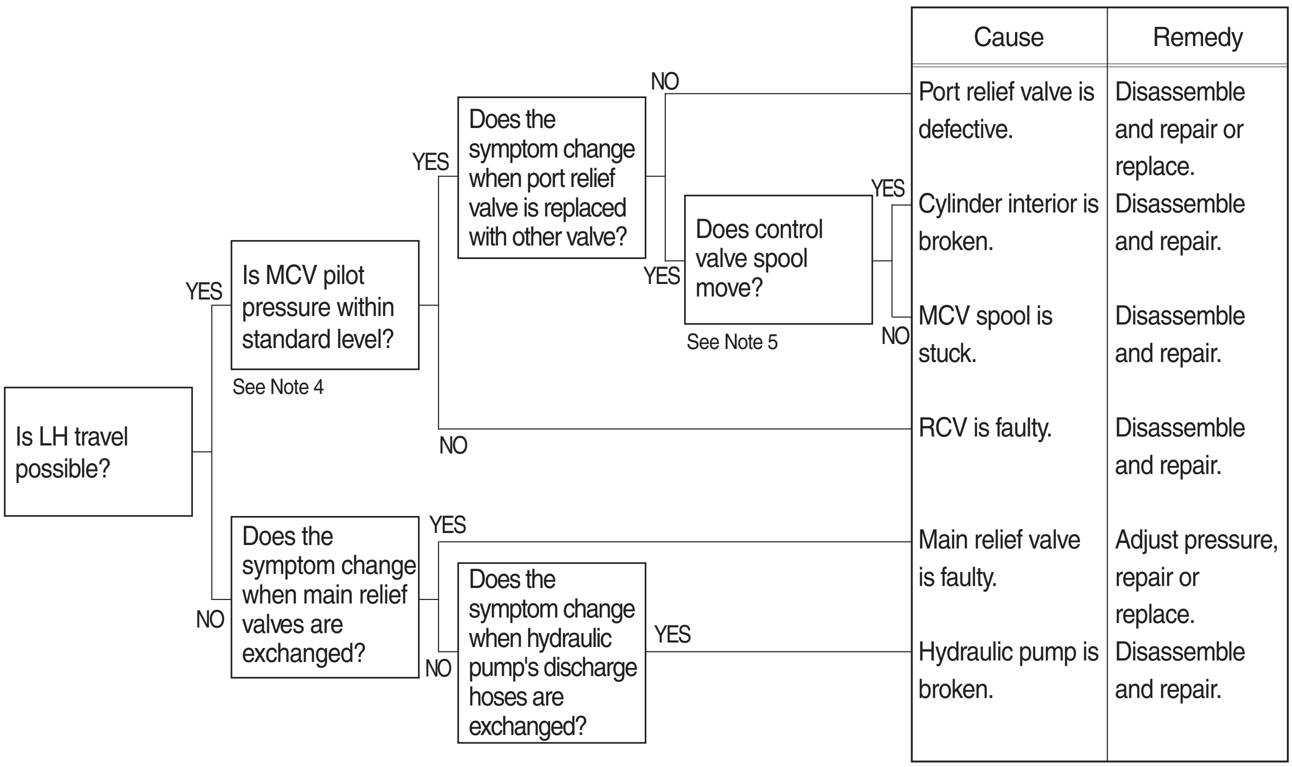


Cause	Remedy
Port relief valve is faulty.	Disassemble and repair or replace.
ⓐ	
Control valve's return spring is faulty.	Disassemble and replace.
	Locate the cause of hydraulic oil temperature rise and lower it to proper level.
	Replace with genuine hydraulic oil or equivalent.
Pressure tightness between control valve casing and spool is poor.	Disassemble and repair.
Contact surface between poppet and seat is poor.	Disassemble and repair.
Cylinder is faulty.	Disassemble and repair.

4) BOOM, ARM OR BUCKET POWER IS WEAK



5) ONLY BUCKET OPERATION IS TOTALLY IMPOSSIBLE



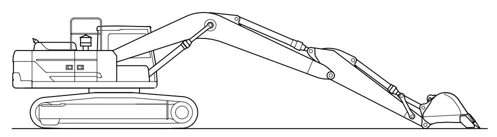
6) BOOM MAKES A SQUEAKING NOISE WHEN BOOM IS OPERATED

Is boom foot pin greased sufficiently?

	Cause	Remedy
YES		Frictional noise occurs between the sliding faces of boom cylinder's oil seal and boom proper. ※ Frictional noise will disappear if they are kept used.
NO	Boom foot pin has run out of grease.	Supply grease to it. ※ If seizure is in an initial stage, supply sufficient grease. If seizure is in a grown state, correct it by paper lapping or with an oil stone.

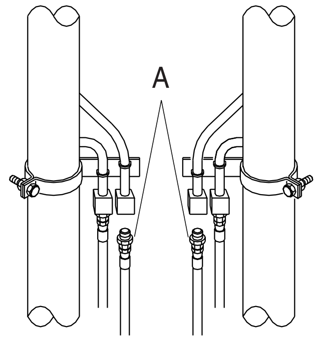
※ HOW TO CHECK INTERNAL BOOM CYLINDER LEAKAGE

1. Lower the bucket teeth to the ground with bucket cylinder fully retracted and arm cylinder rod retracted almost in full.



300L6TS01

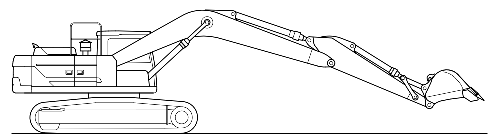
2. Disconnect hose (A) from rod side of boom cylinder and drain oil from cylinders and hose. (put cups on piping and hose ends)



(210-7) 6-20(2)

3. Raise bucket OFF the ground by retracting the arm cylinder rod.

   If oil leaks from piping side and boom cylinder rod is retracted there is an internal leak in the cylinder.
   If no oil leaks from piping side and boom cylinder rod is retracted, there is an internal leak in the control valve.



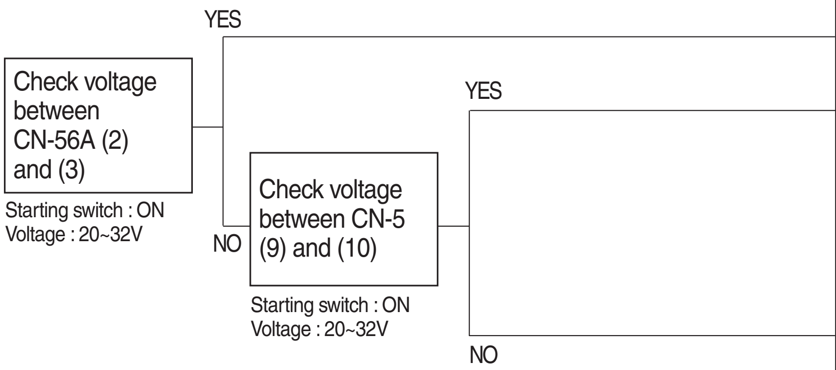
300L6TS02

1. WHEN STARTING SWITCH IS TURNED ON, MONITOR PANEL DISPLAY DOES NOT APPEAR

· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.

· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No. 8, 14.

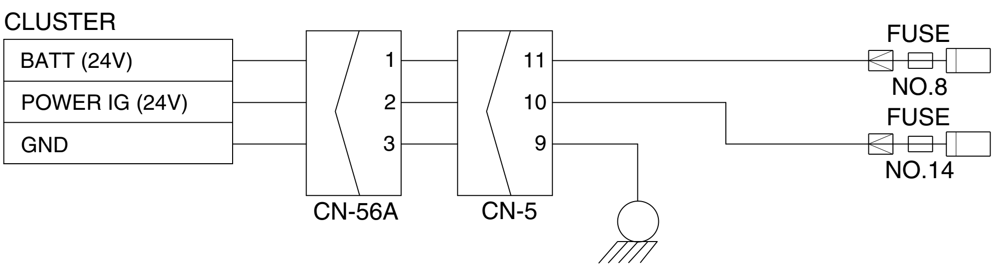
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



Cause	Remedy
Defective cluster	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-5-CN-56A	Repair or replace (after clean)
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-5 (9) -GND or fuse No. 8, 14	Repair or replace (after clean)

Check voltage

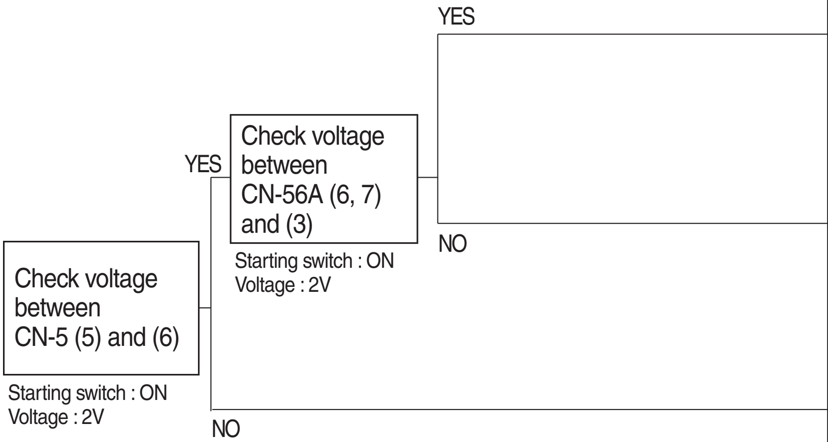
YES	20~32V
NO	0V



380L6ES01

2. ⚠ COMMUNICATION ERROR FLASHES ON THE CLUSTER (HCESPN 840, FMI 2)

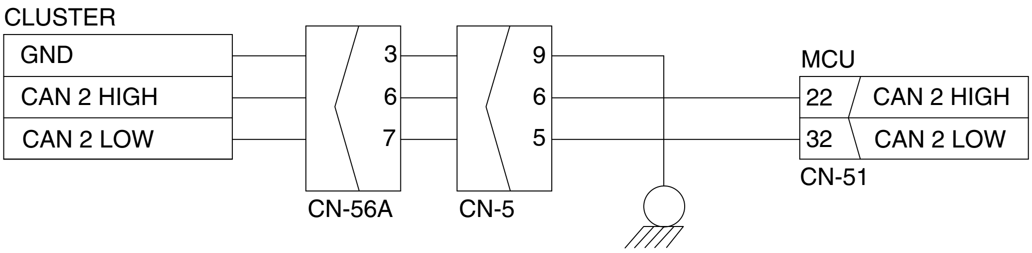
· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



Cause	Remedy
Defective cluster	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-56A (6, 7)-CN-5 (5, 6)	Repair or replace (after clean)
Defective MCU Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-5 (5, 6)- CN-51(22, 32)	Replace Repair or replace (after clean)

Check voltage

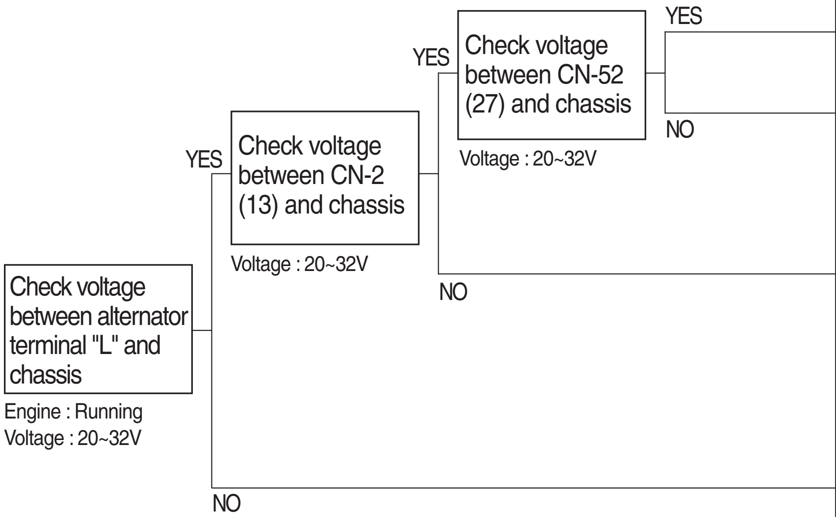
YES	2V
NO	0V



300L6ES02

3. BATTERY CHARGING WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (Starting switch : ON)

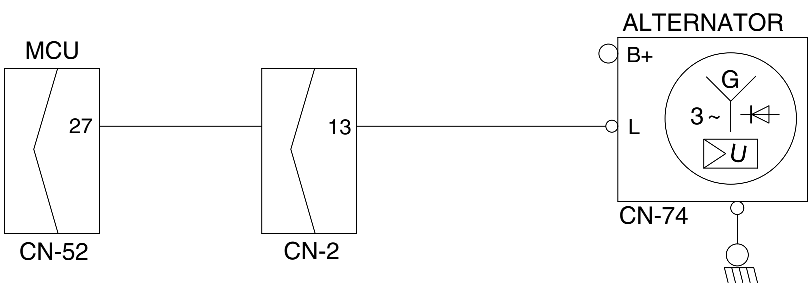
· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-52 (27)-CN-2 (13)	Repair or replace (after clean)
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-2 (13) alternator terminal "L"	Repair or replace (after clean)
Defective alternator	Replace

Check voltage

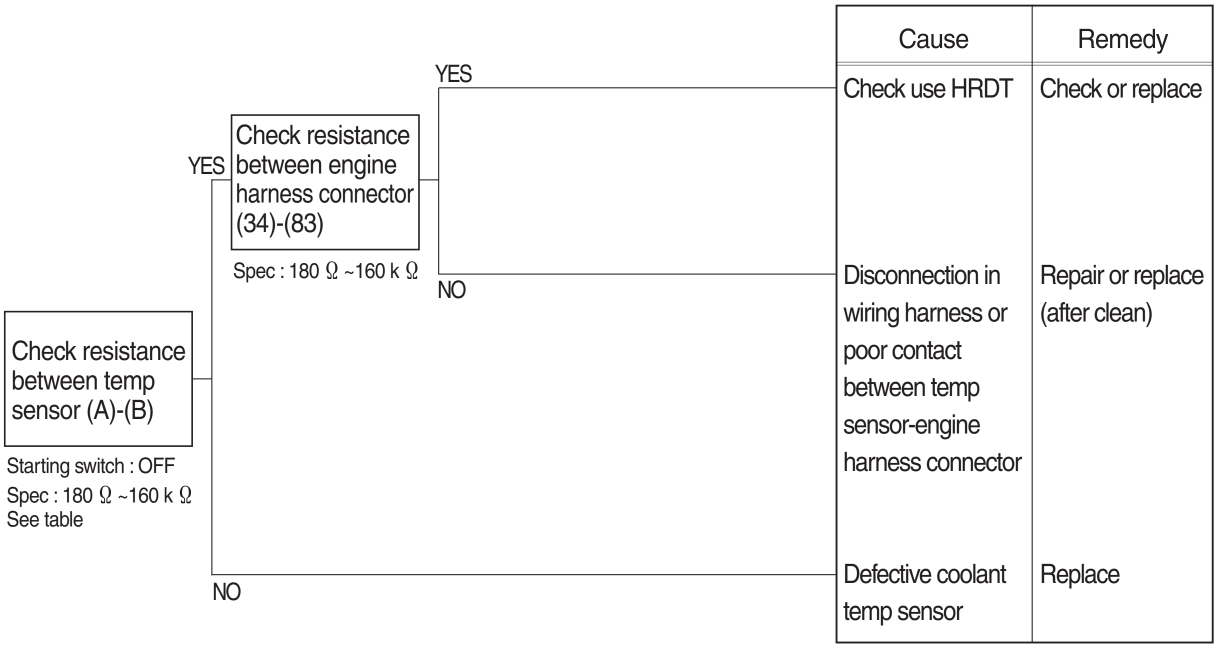
YES	20~32V
NO	0V



300L6ES03

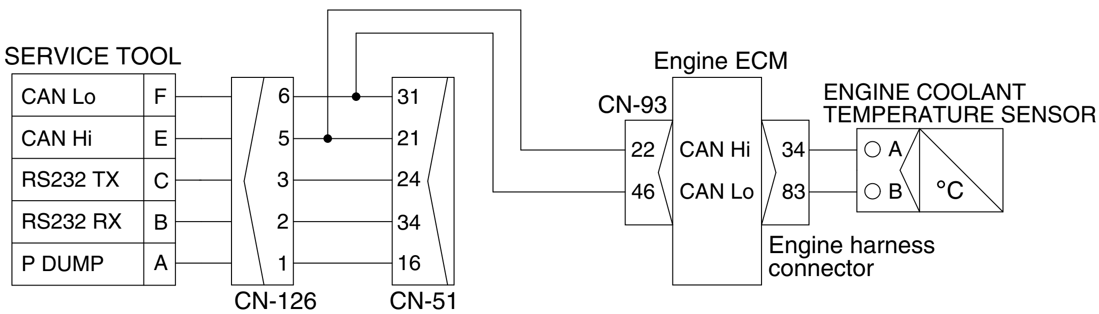
4. WHEN COOLANT OVERHEAT WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



Check Table

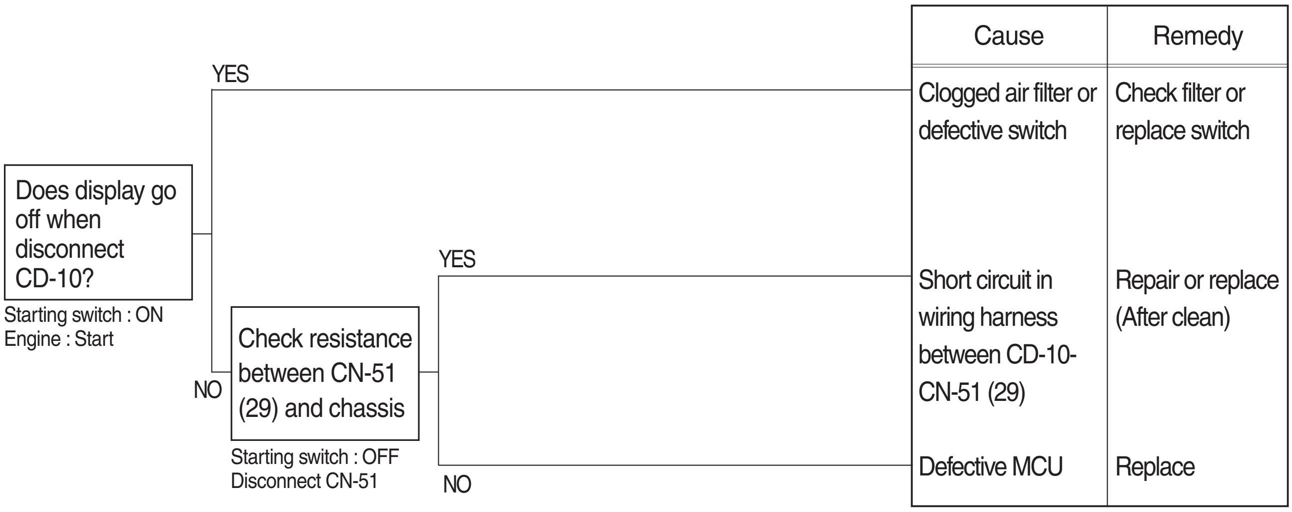
Temperature (˚C)	0	25	50	80	95
Resistance (kΩ)	30~37	9.3~10.7	3.2~3.8	1.0~1.3	0.7~0.8



300L6ES04

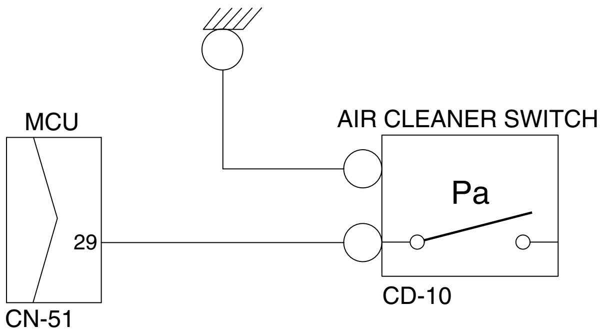
5. WHEN AIR CLEANER WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



Check resistance

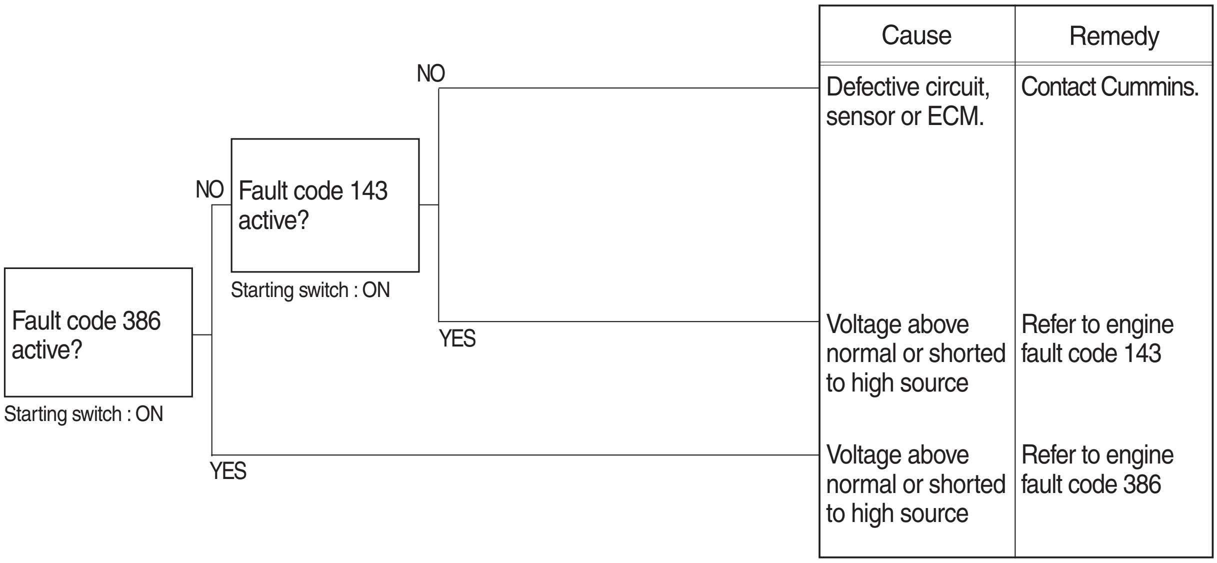
YES	MAX 1Ω
NO	MIN 1MΩ

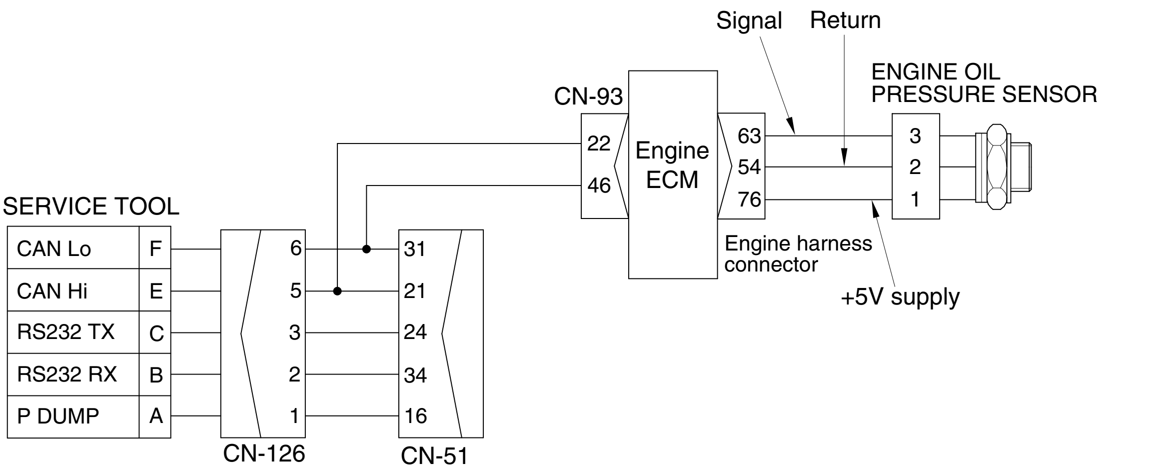


300L6ES06

6. WHEN ENGINE OIL PRESSURE WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

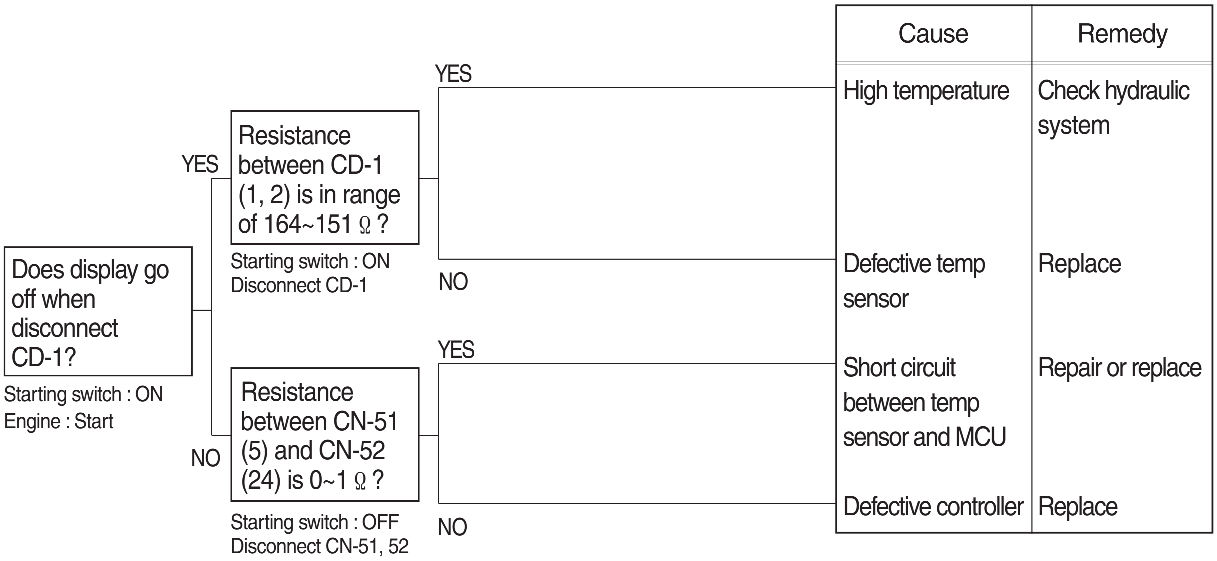


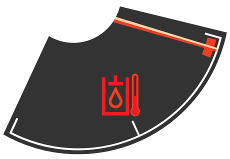


300L6ES07

7. WHEN HYDRAULIC OIL TEMPERATURE WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

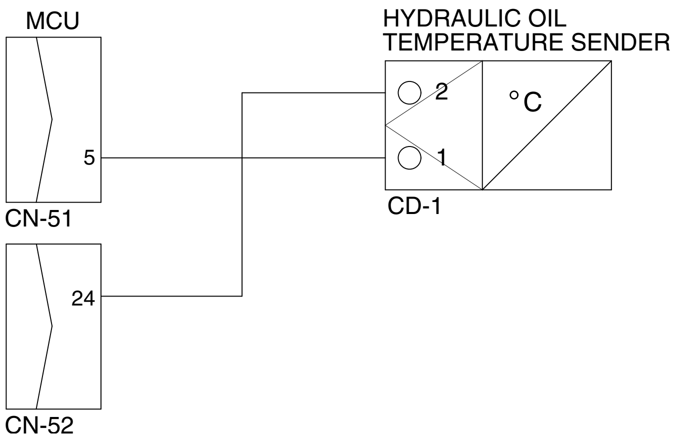
· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.





Check Table

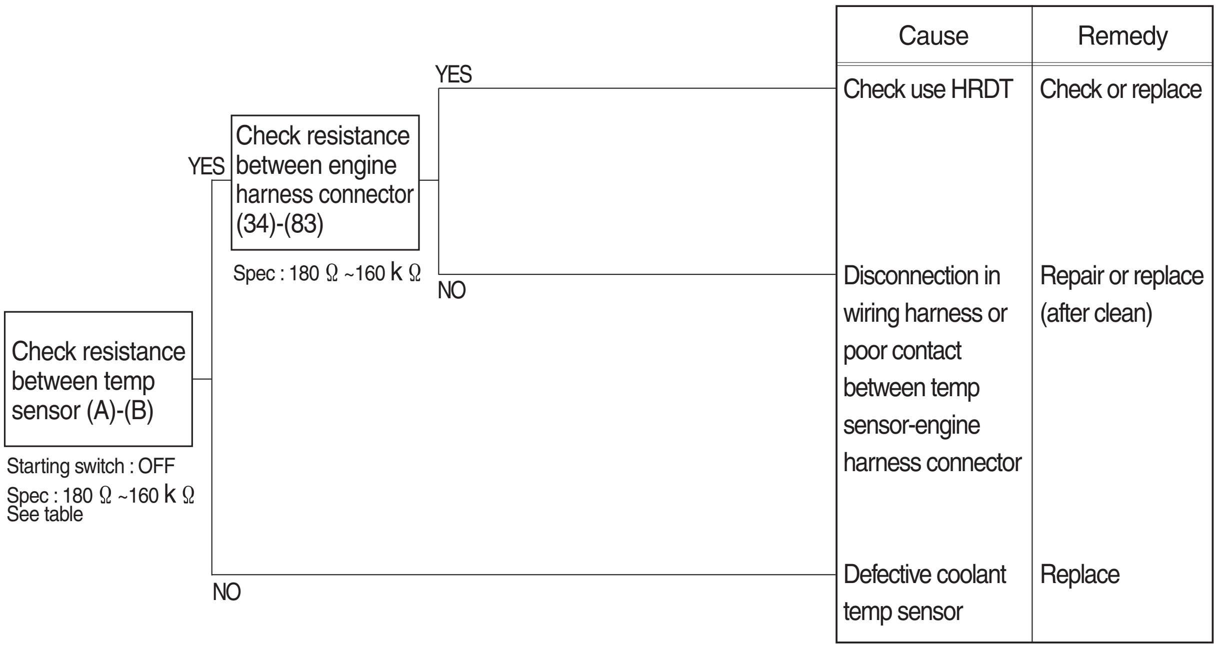
Temperature (˚C)	~ -30	~ -10	~ 0	~ 40	~ 70	~ 80	~ 90	~ 100	105~
Resistance (kΩ)	22.22 ~31.78	8.16 ~10.74	5.18 ~ 6.6	1.06 ~1.28	0.39 ~0.476	0.322 ~0.298	0.243 ~0.219	0.185 ~0.167	0.164 0.151



300L6ES08

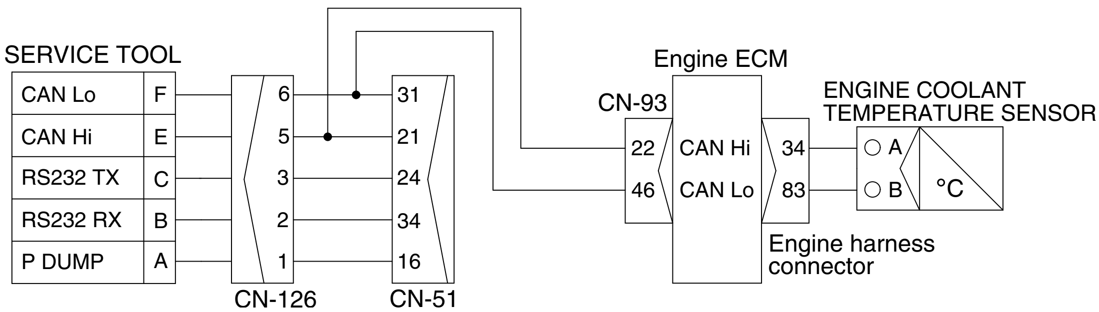
8. WHEN COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE DOES NOT OPERATE

· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



Check Table

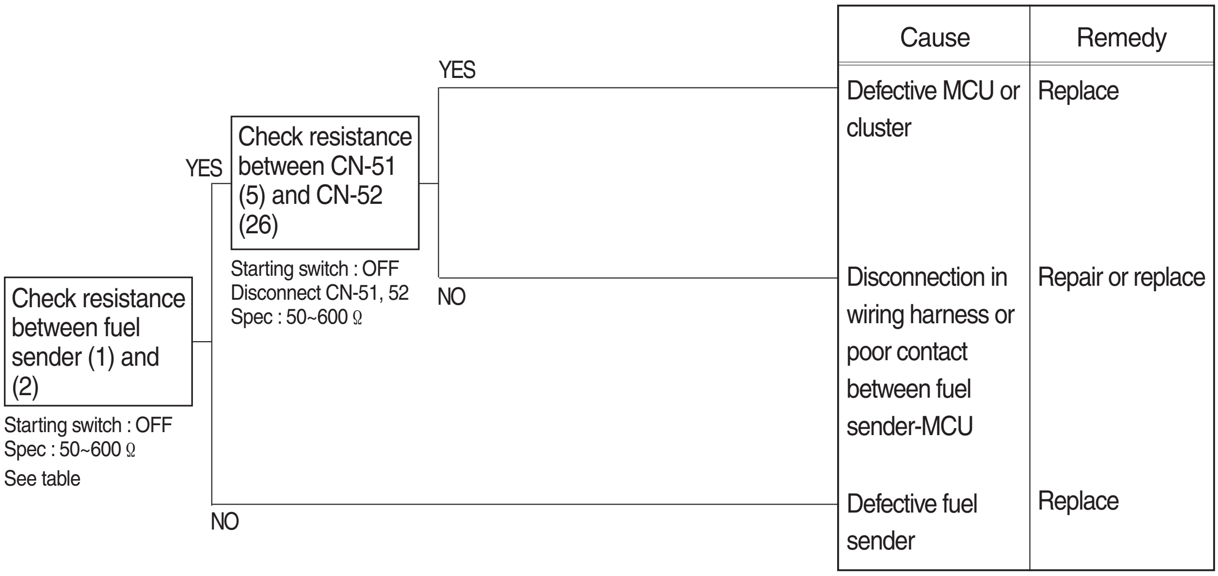
Temperature (˚C)	0	25	50	80	95
Resistance (kΩ)	30~37	9.3~10.7	3.2~3.8	1.0~1.3	0.7~0.8

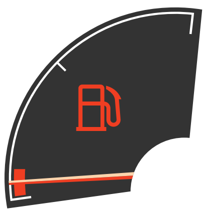


300L6ES04

9. WHEN FUEL GAUGE DOES NOT OPERATE (HCESPN 301, FMI 3 or 4)

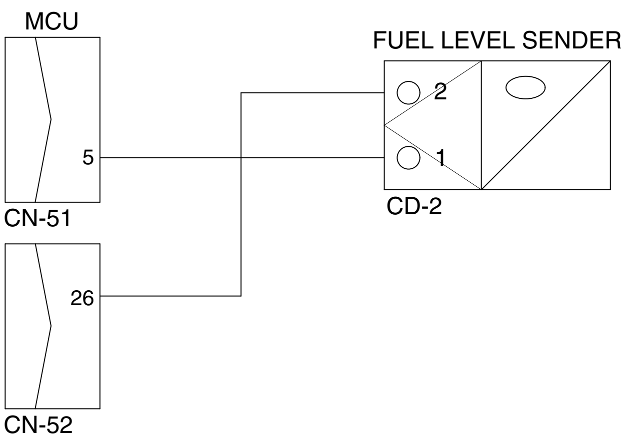
· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.





Check Table

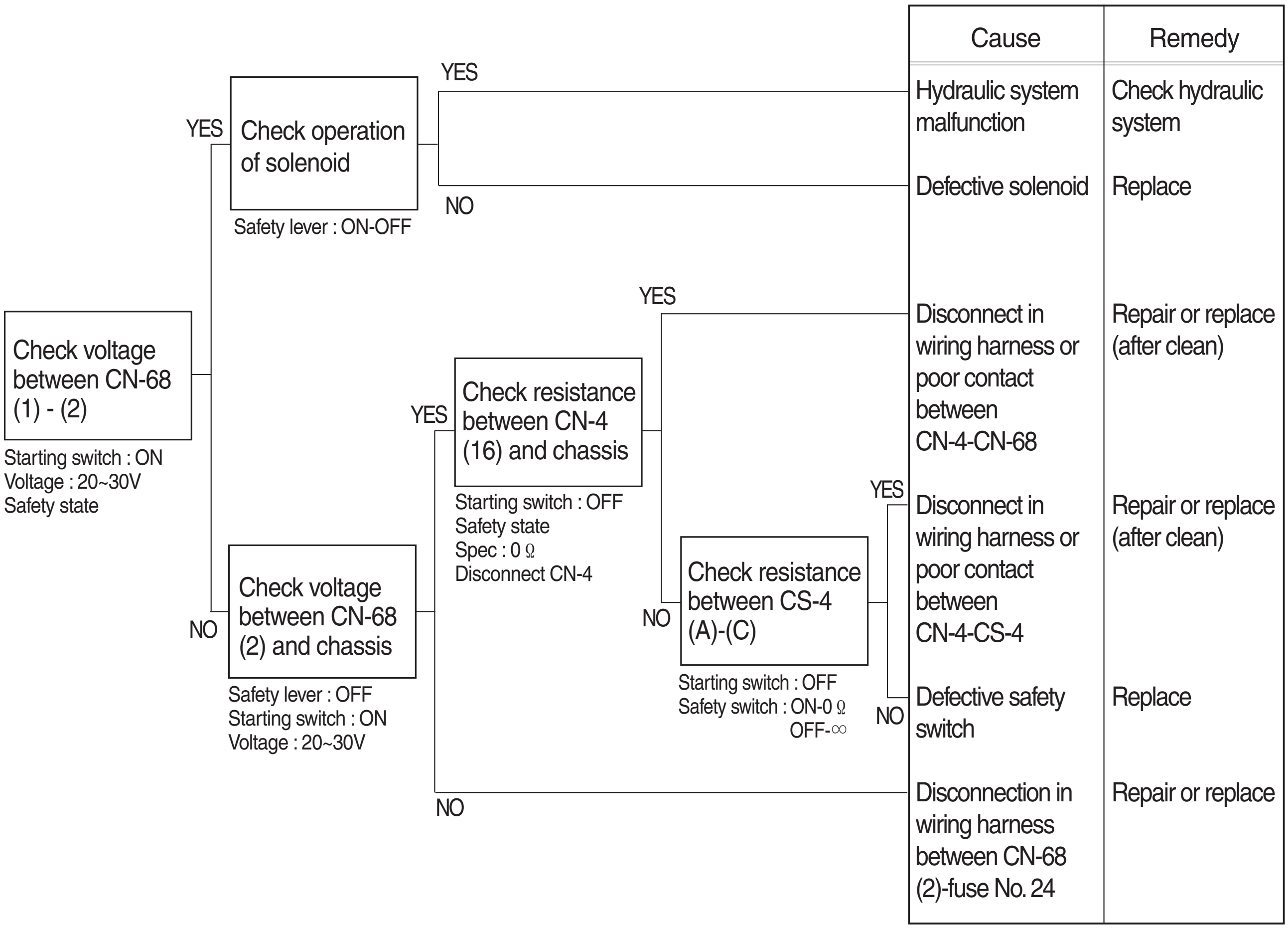
Range	Resistance (Ω)	Range	Resistance (Ω)
Full	50	5/12	400
11/12	100	4/12	450
10/12	150	3/12	500
9/12	200	2/12	550
8/12	250	1/12	600
7/12	300	Empty warning	700
6/12	350	-	-

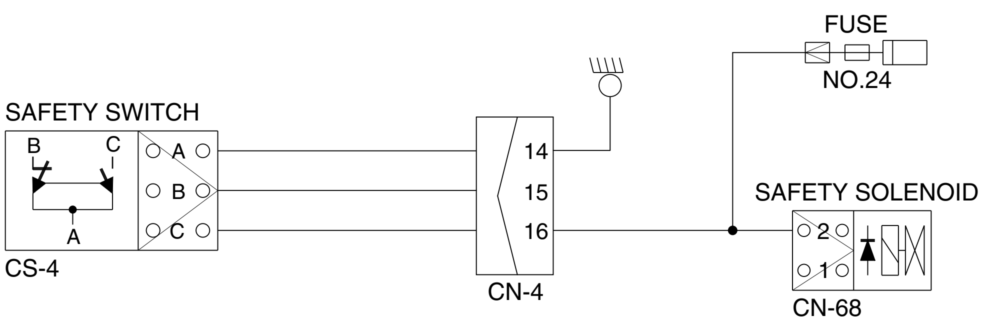


300L6ES10

10. WHEN SAFETY SOLENOID DOES NOT OPERATE

· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No. 24.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

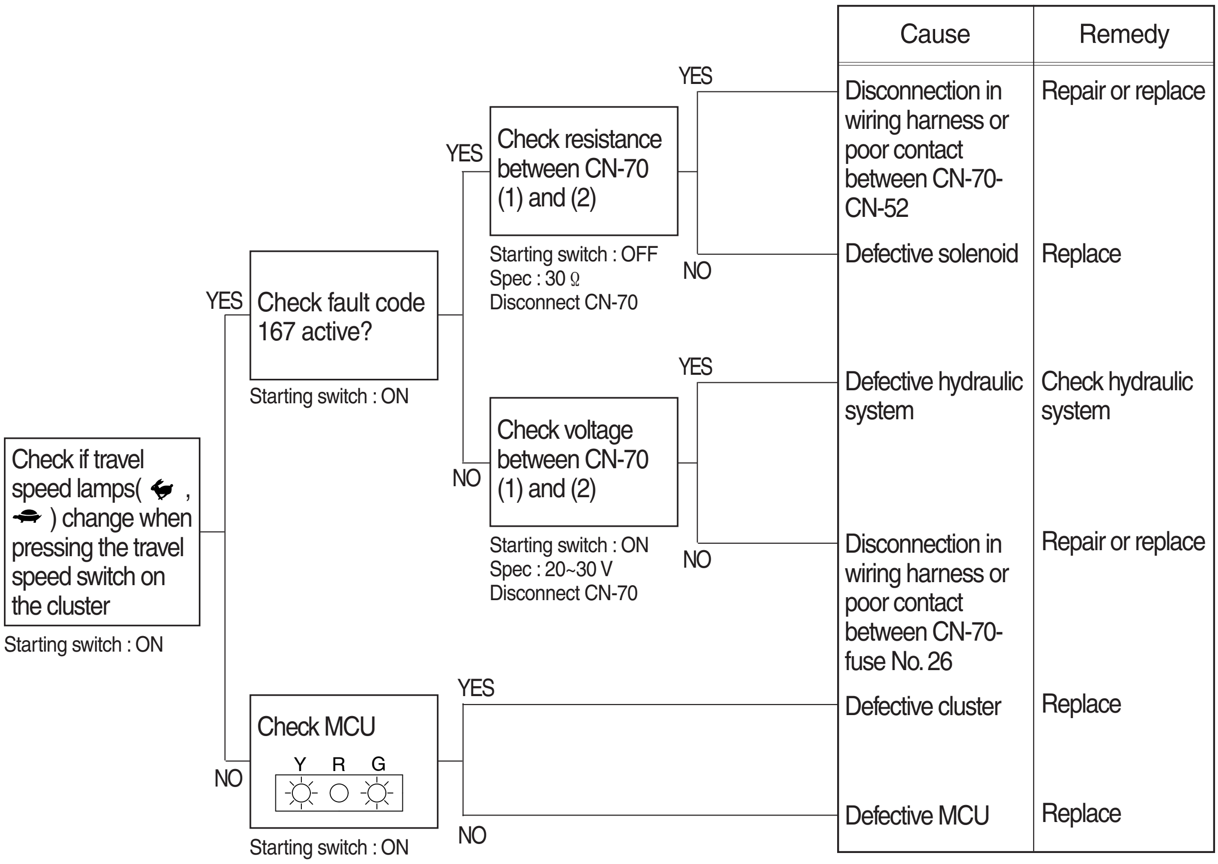


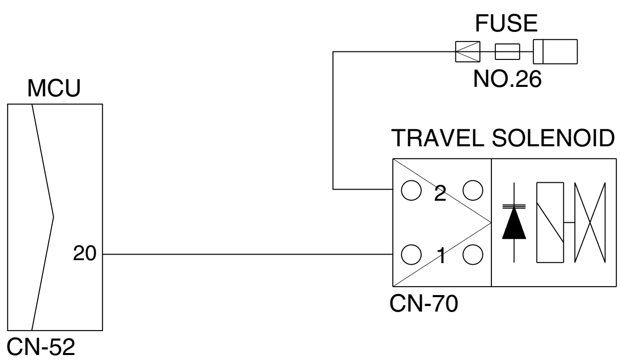


380L6ES02

11. WHEN TRAVEL SPEED 1, 2 DOES NOT OPERATE (HCESPN 167, FMI 4 or 6)

· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No. 26.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.





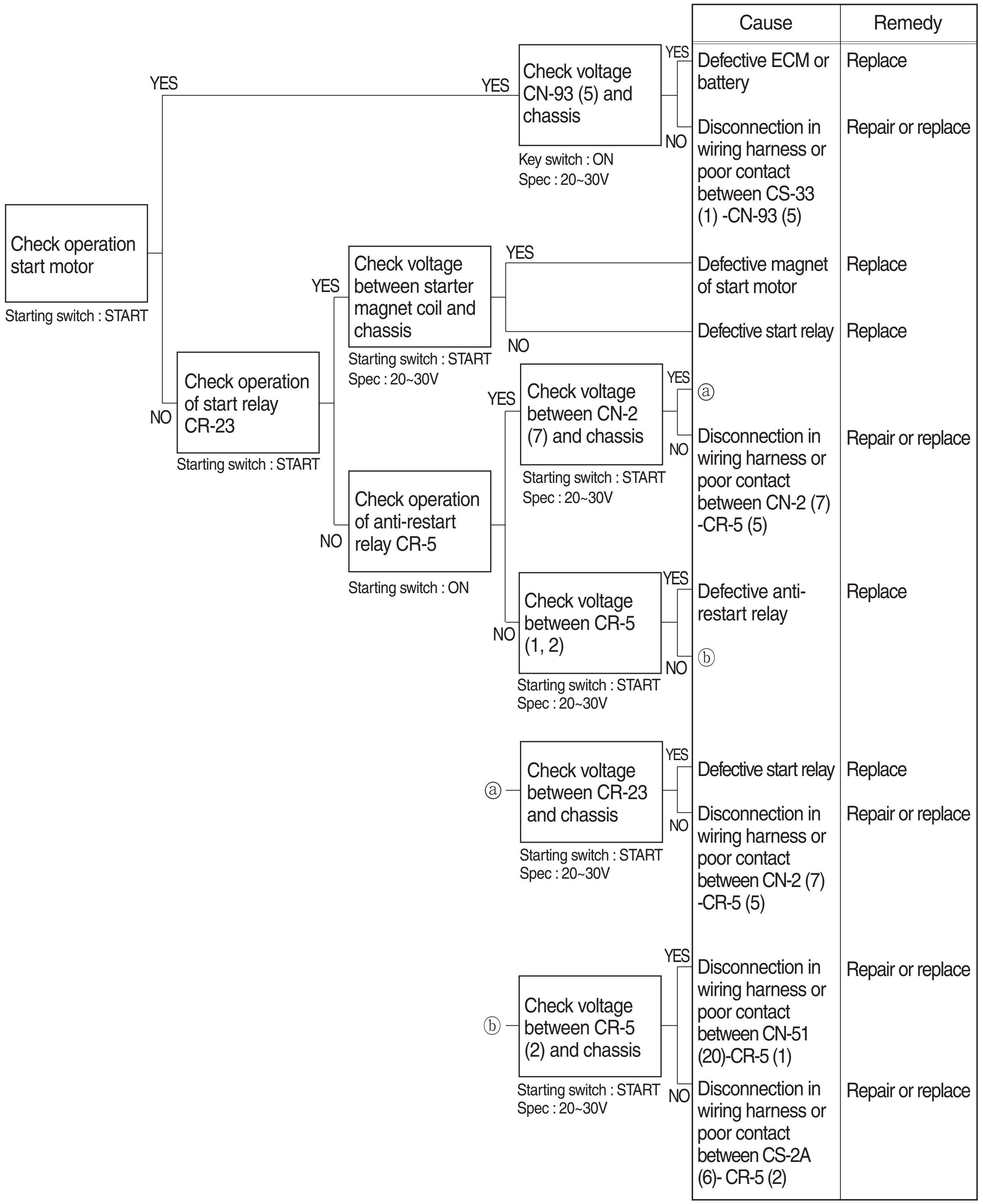
380L6ES03

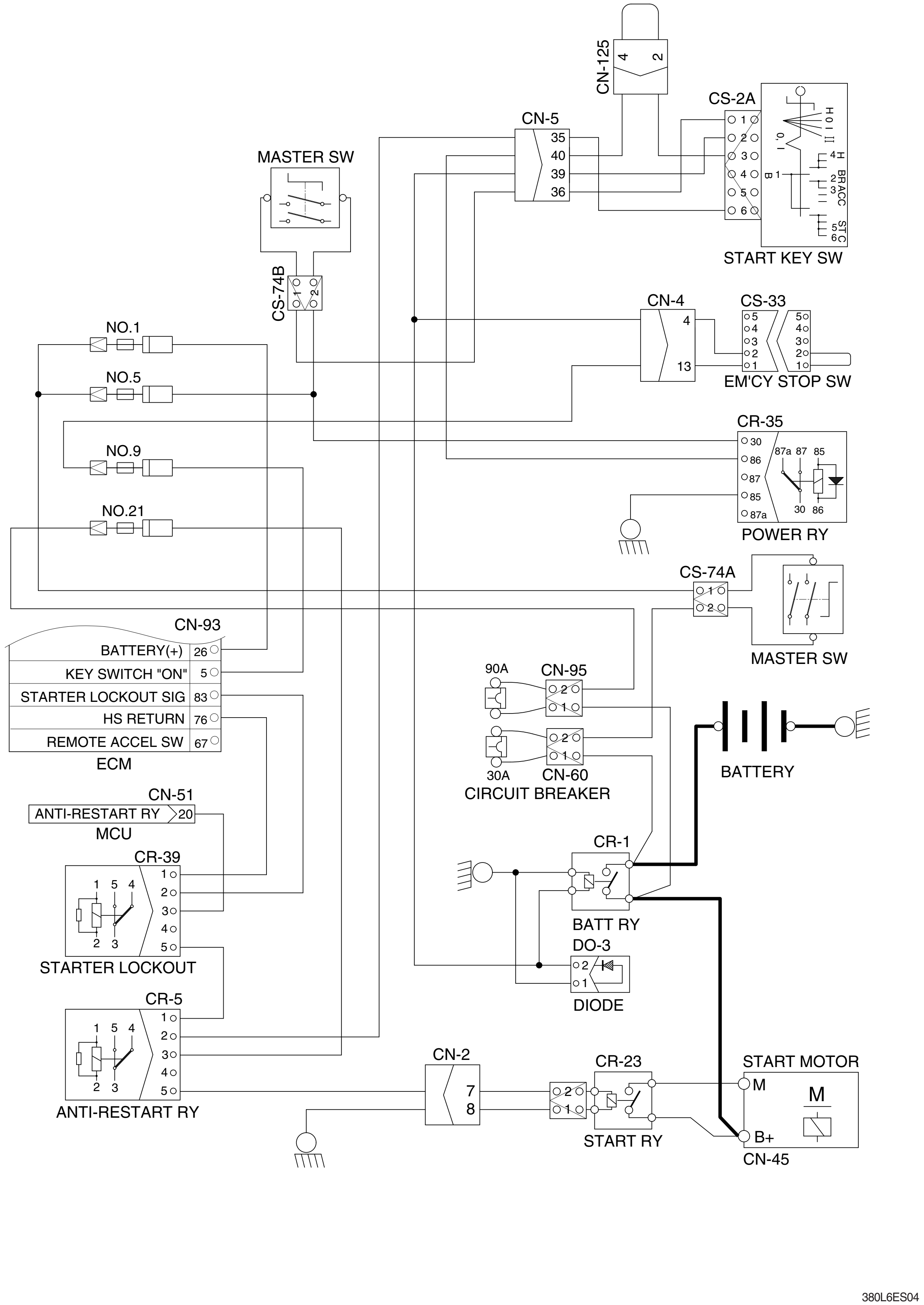
12. WHEN ENGINE DOES NOT START (lights up condition)

· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.

· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No. 1, 5, 9, 21.

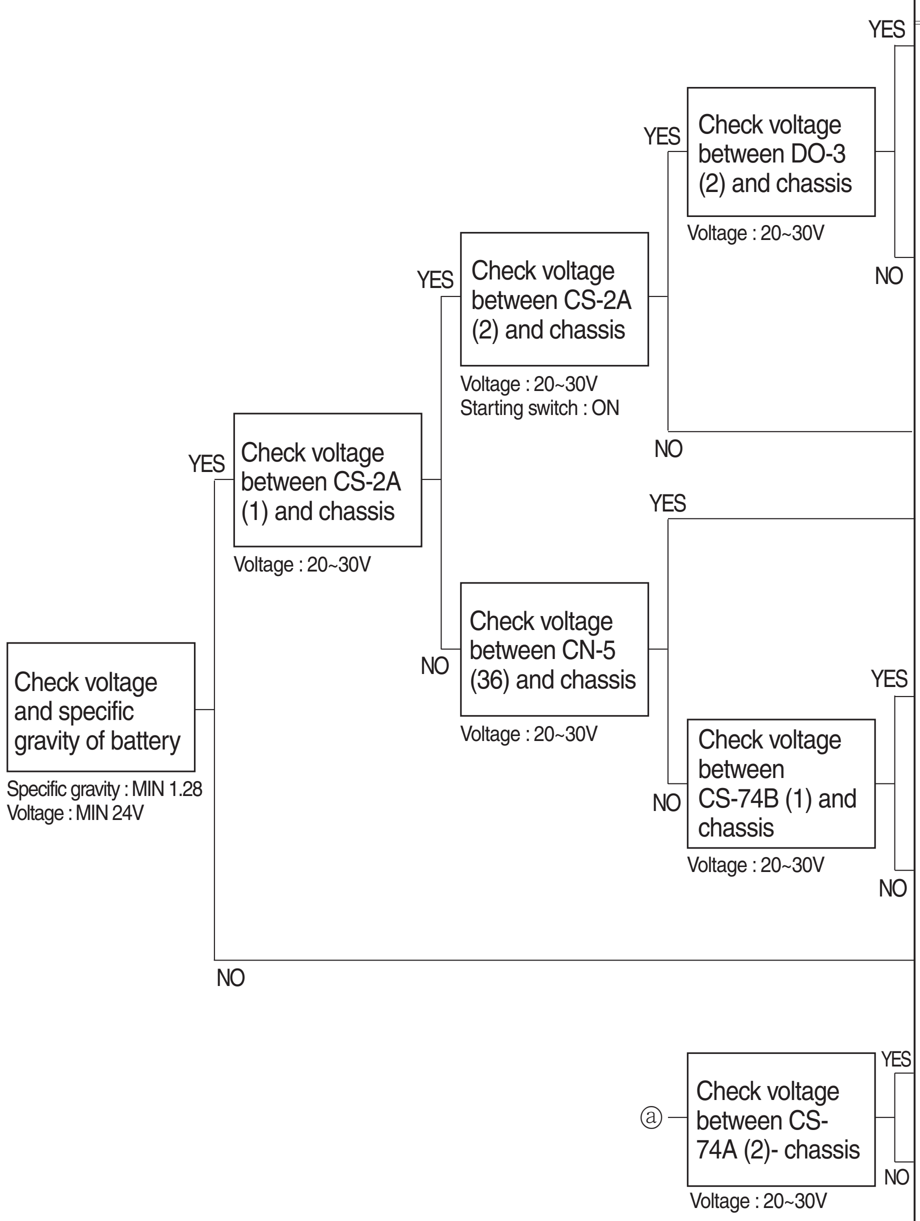
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



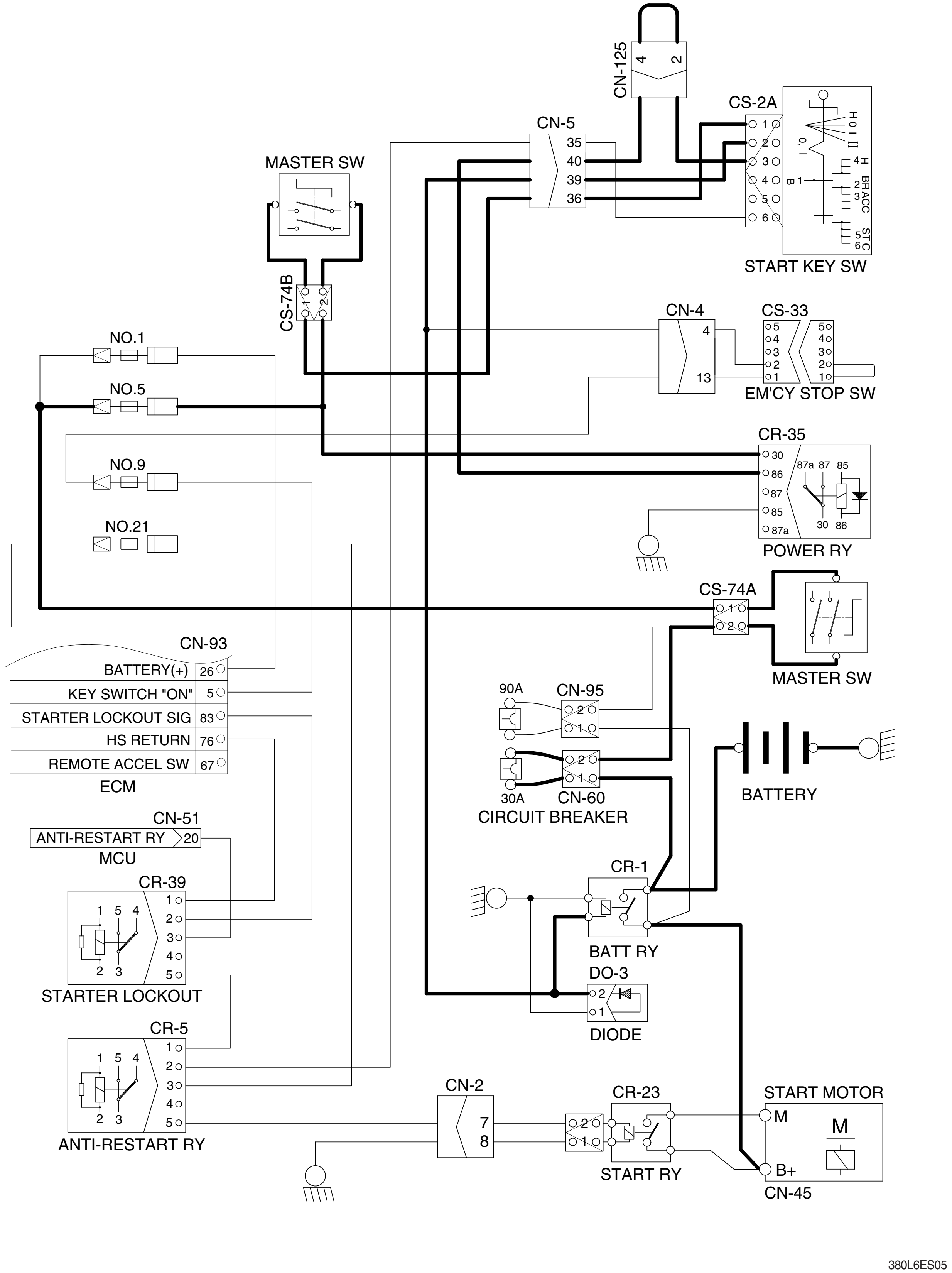


13. WHEN STARTING SWITCH ON DOES NOT OPERATE

- Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted, master switch ON and check open circuit of circuit breaker (CN-60).
- After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

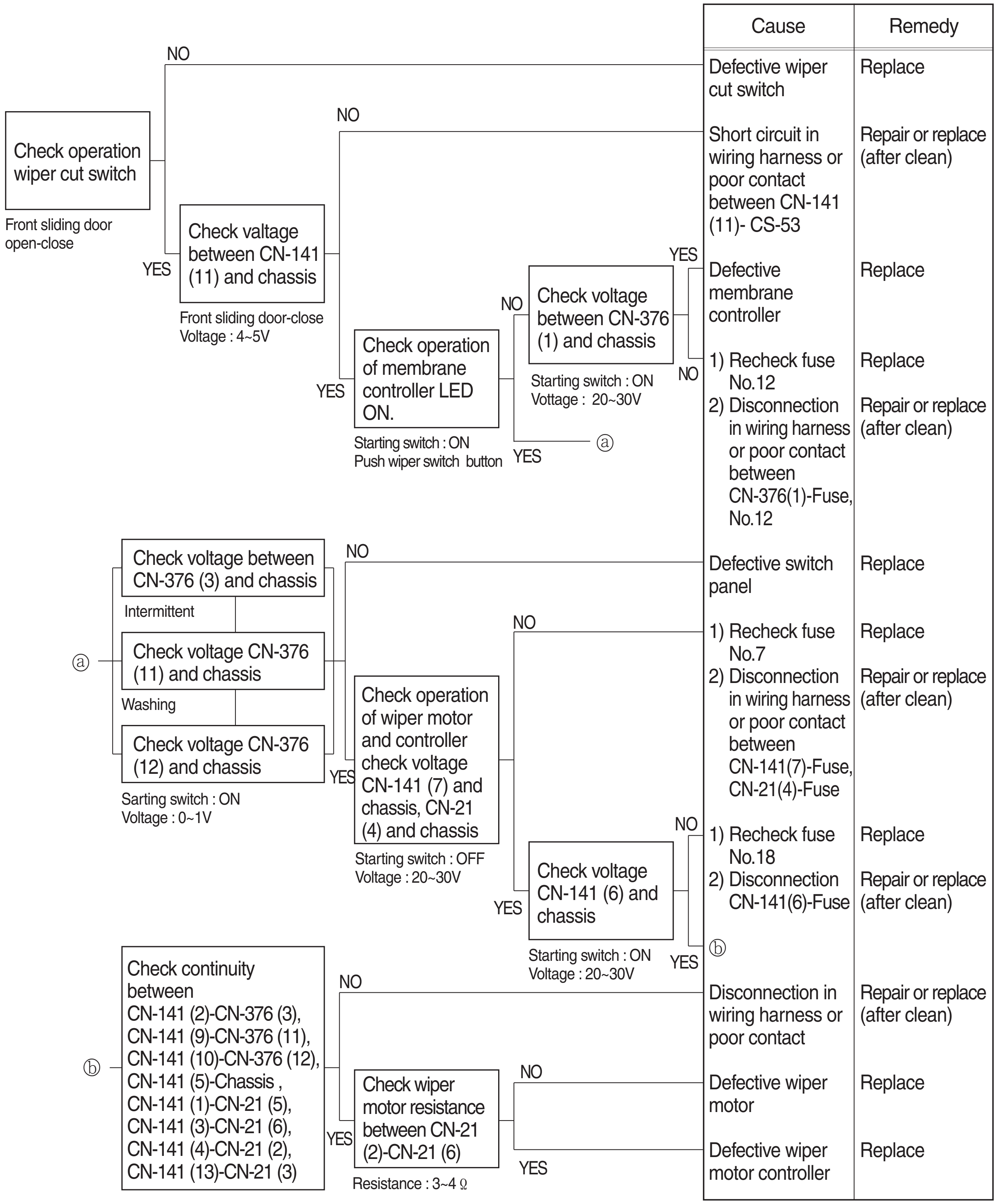


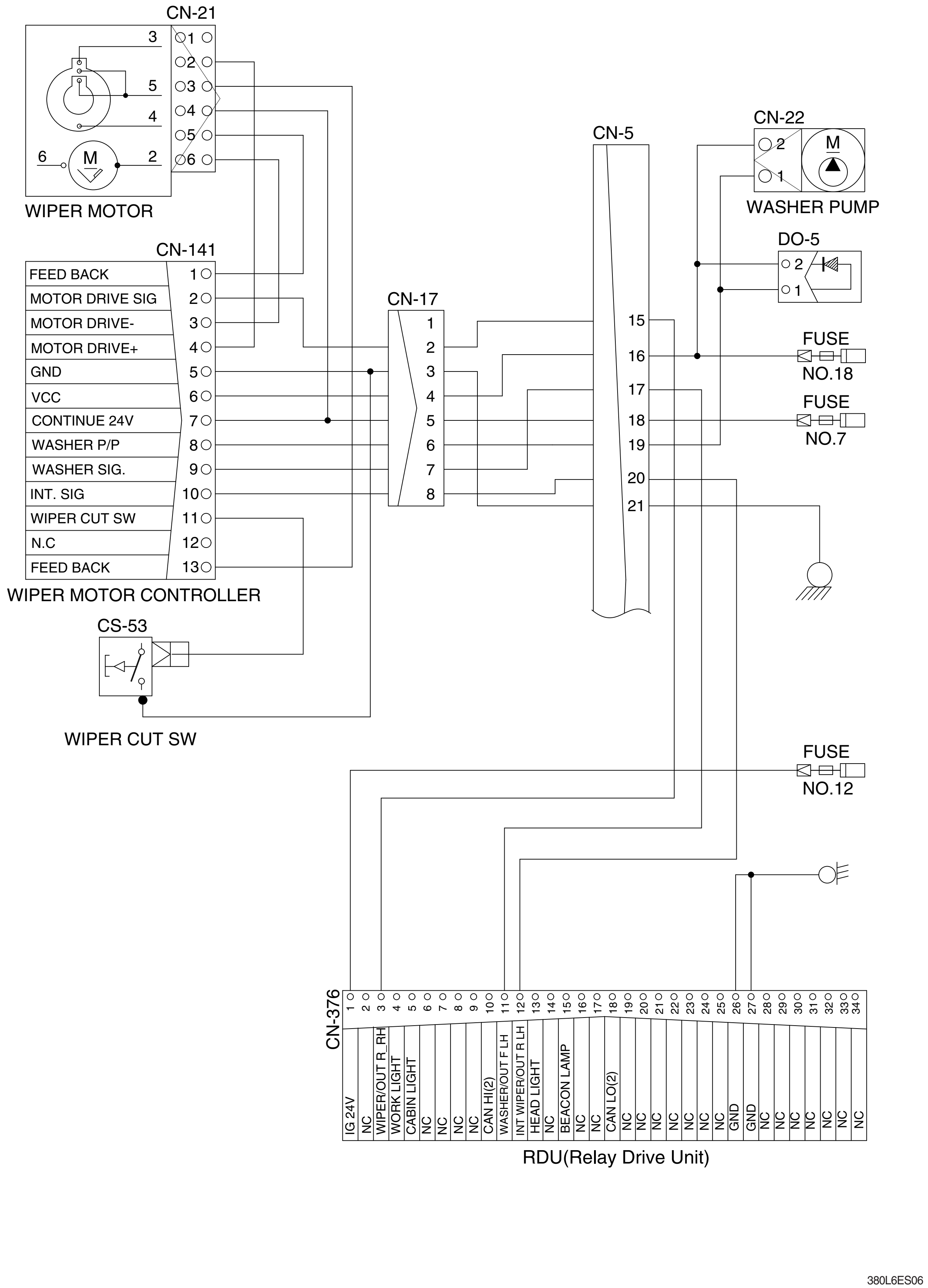
Cause	Remedy
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between DO-3 (2)-CR-1 or defective battery relay	Repair or replace (after clean)
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CS-2A (2)- CN-5(39)-DO-3 (2)	Repair or replace (after clean)
Defective start switch	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CS-2A (1)-CN-5 (36)	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CS-74B (1) -CN-5 (36)	Charge or replace (after clean)
ⓐ	
Battery capacity too low	Charge or replace (after clean)
Defective master switch	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CS-74A	Charge or replace (after clean)



14. WHEN STARTING SWITCH IS TURNED ON, WIPER MOTOR DOES NOT OPERATE

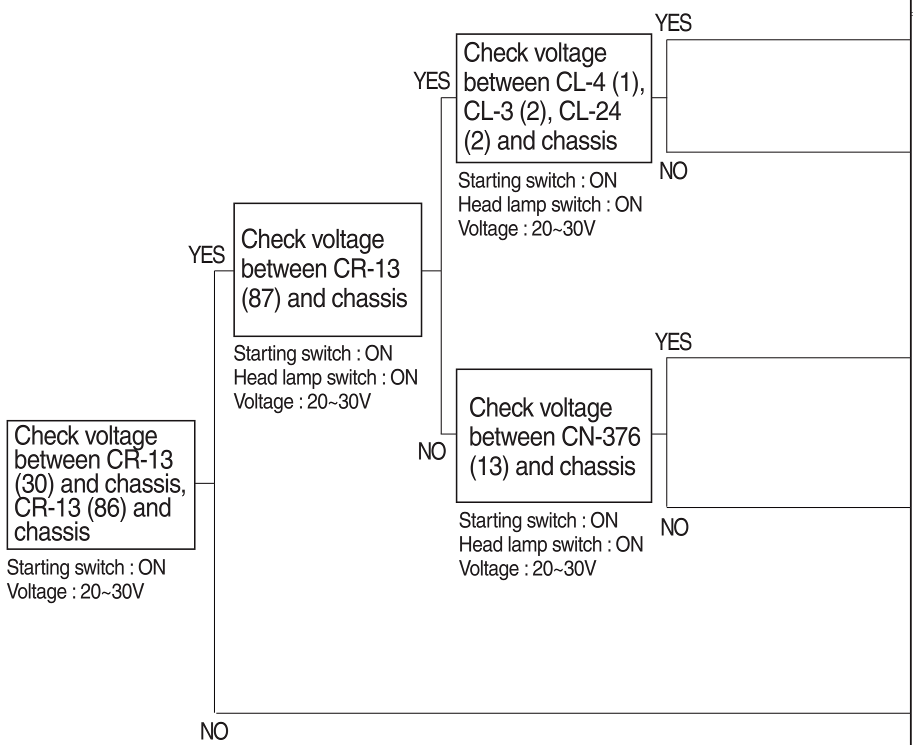
· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and the fuse No. 7, 12 and 18 are not blown out.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



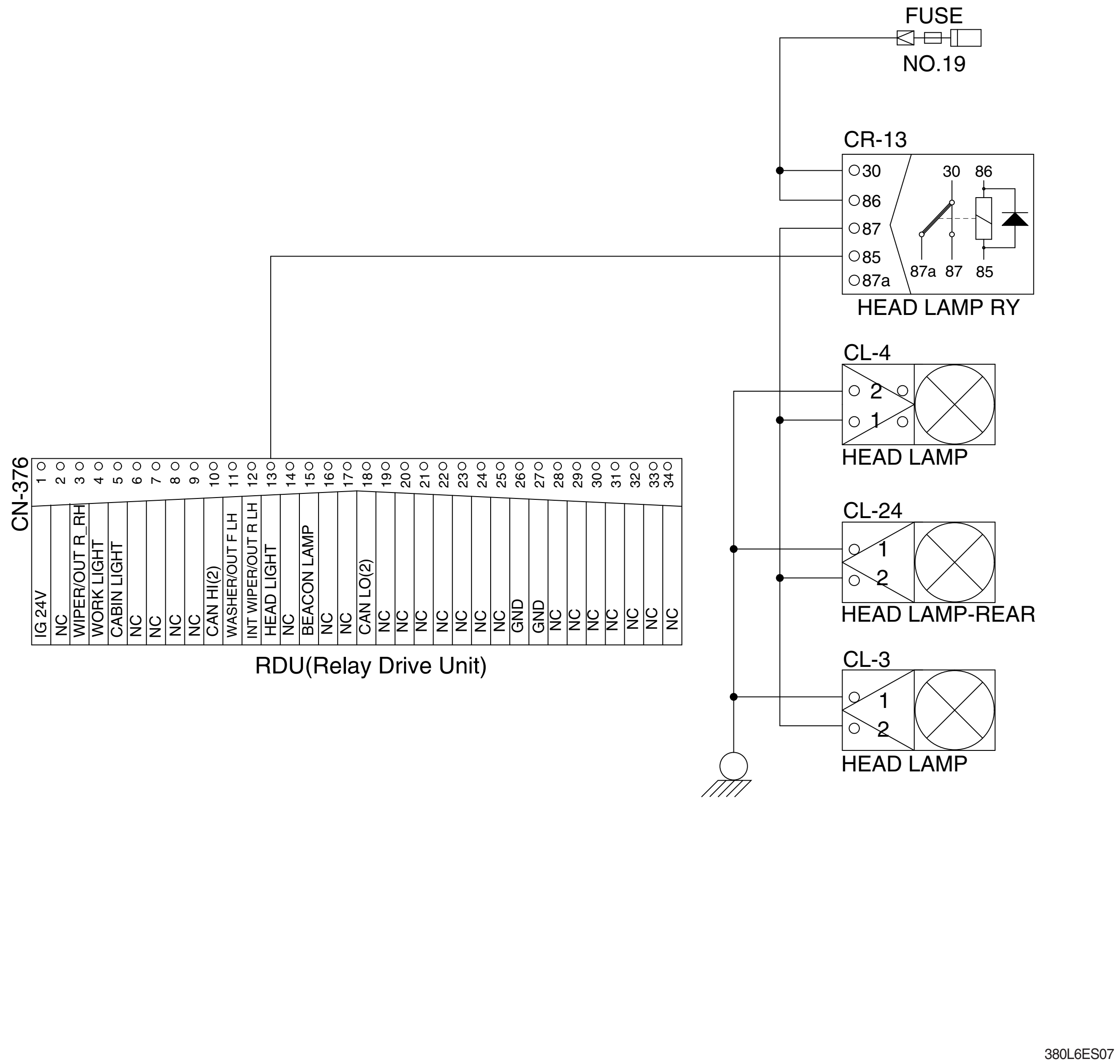


15. WHEN STARTING SWITCH IS TURNED ON, HEAD LAMP DOES NOT LIGHTS UP

· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No. 19.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

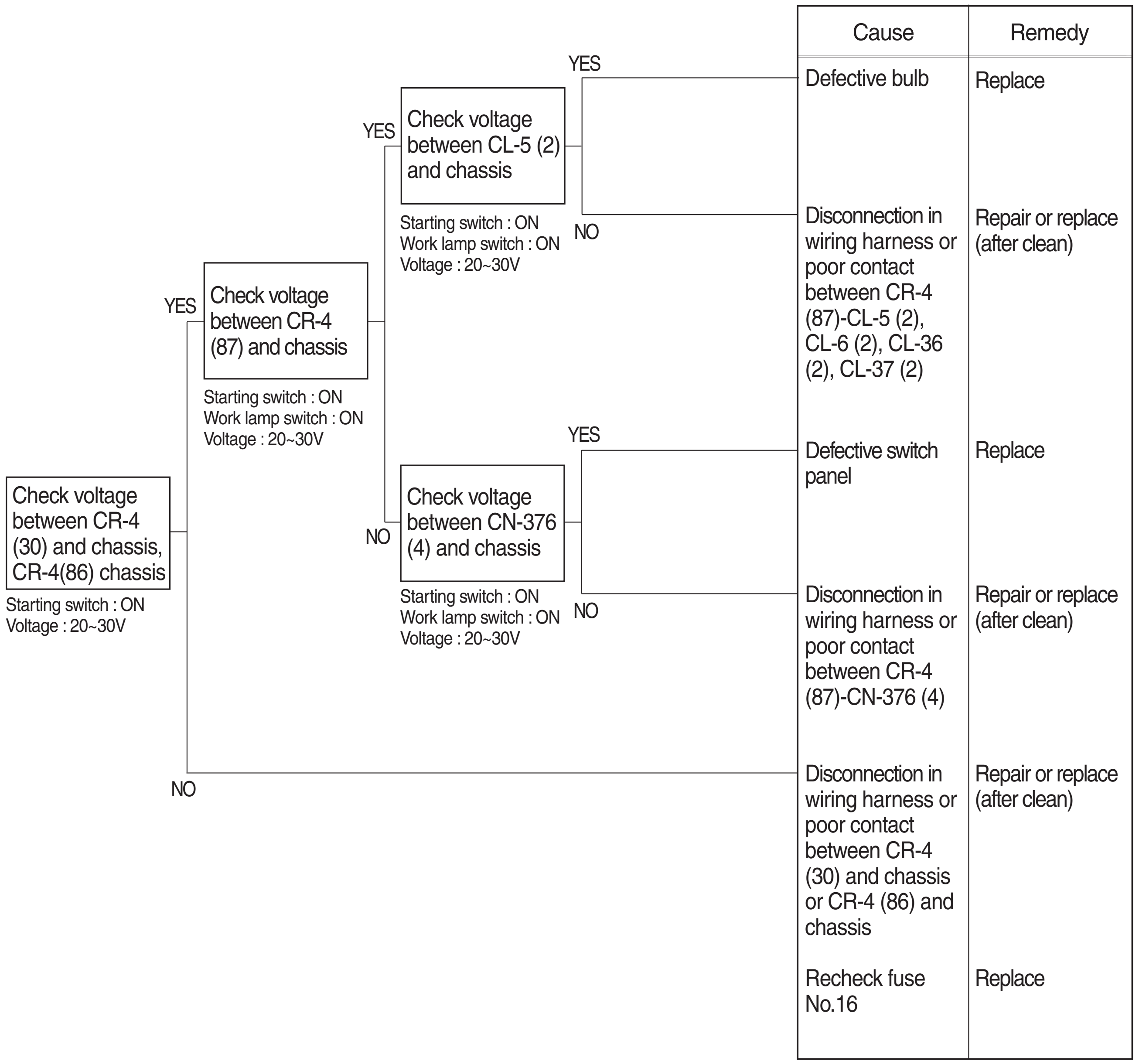


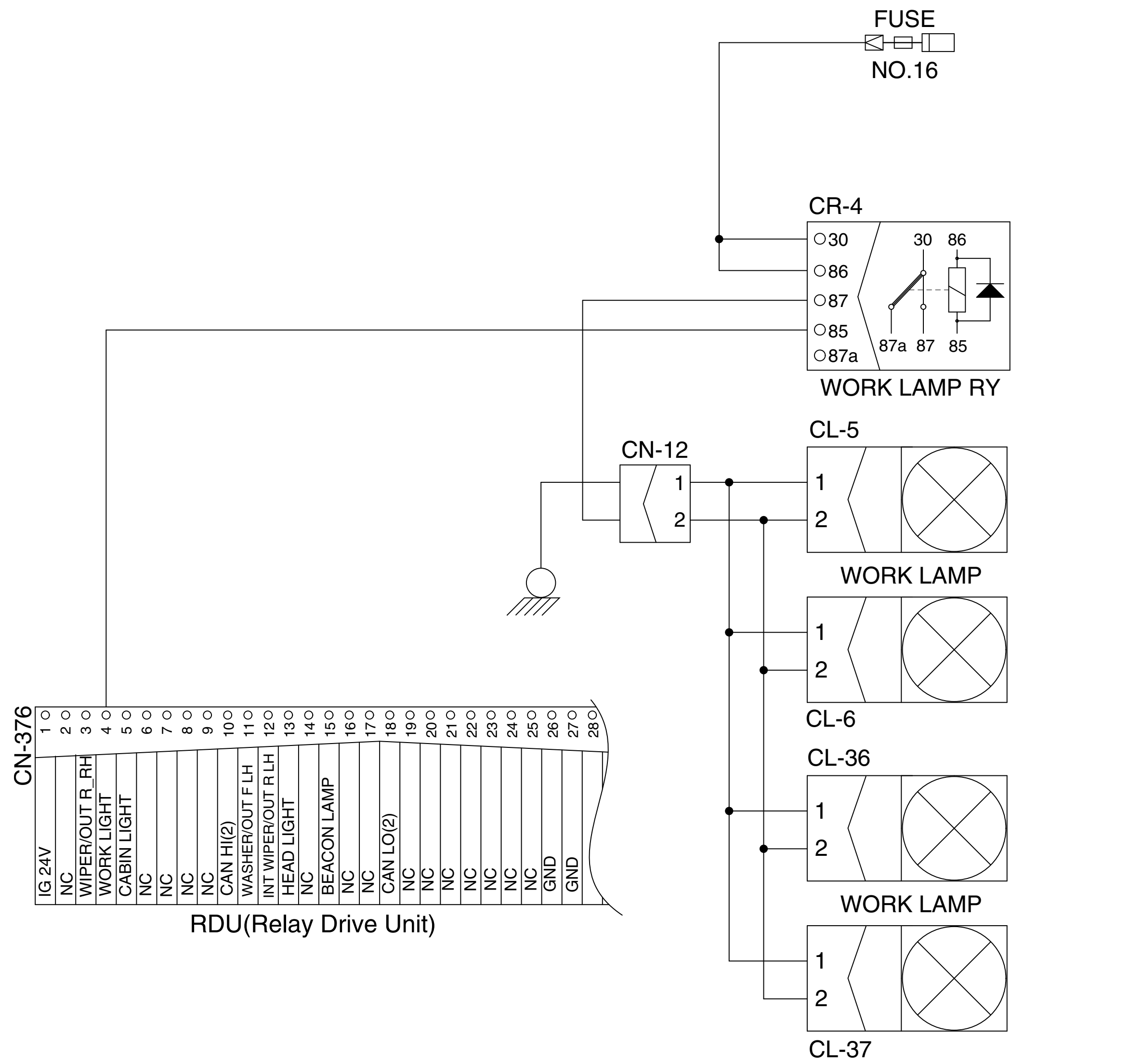
Cause	Remedy
Defective bulb	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CR-13 (87)-CL-4 (1) or CR-13 (87)-CL-3 (1)	Repair or replace (after clean)
Defective switch panel	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-376 (13)-CR-13 (87)	Repair or replace (after clean)
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CR-13 (30) and chassis or CR-13 (86) - chassis	Repair or replace (after clean)
Recheck fuse No. 19	Replace



16. WHEN STARTING SWITCH IS TURNED ON, WORK LAMP DOES NOT LIGHTS UP

· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No.16.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.





380L6ES08

GROUP 4 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

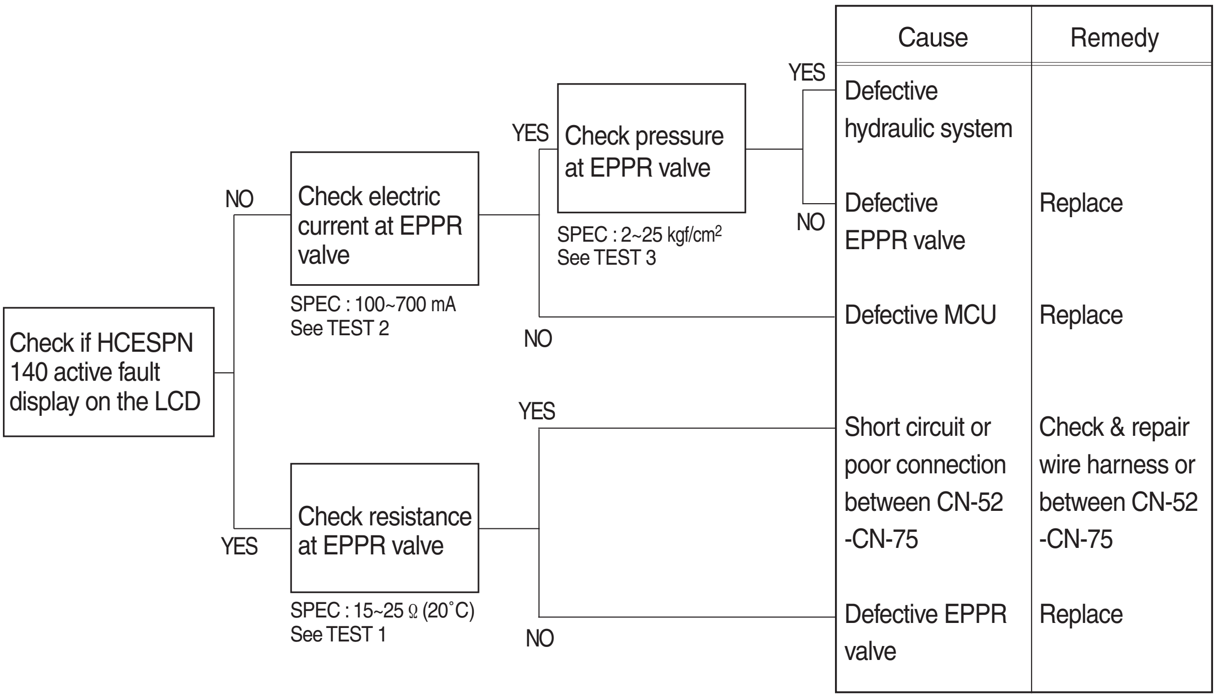
1. ALL ACTUATORS SPEED ARE SLOW

※ Boom, Arm, Bucket, Swing and travel speed are slow, but engine speed is good.

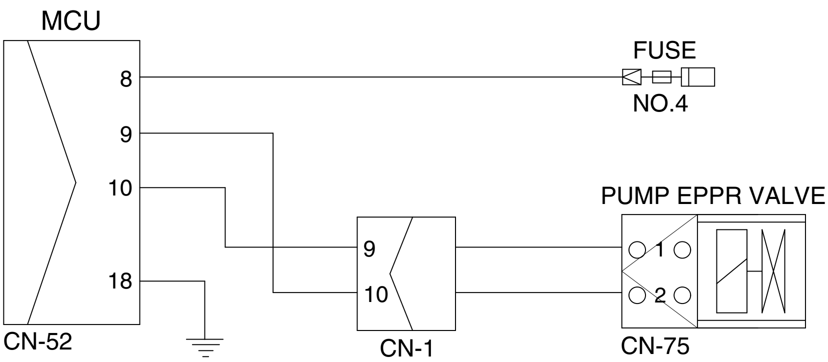
※ Spec : P-mode 1700 ± 50 rpm S -mode 1600 ± 50 rpm E-mode 1500 ± 50 rpm

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and fault code on the cluster.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Wiring diagram



380L6MS01

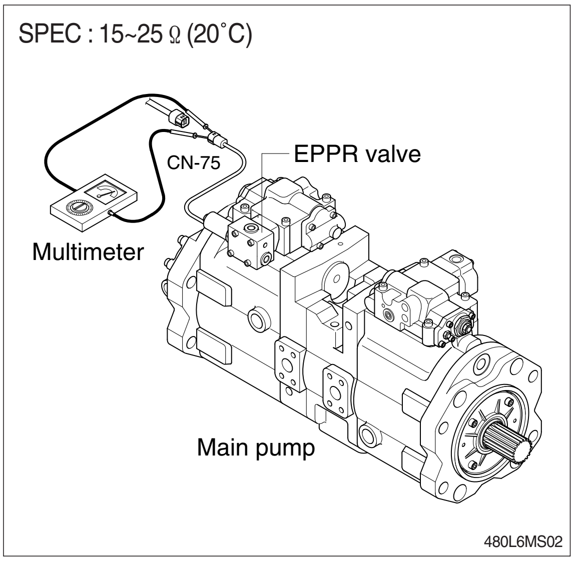
2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 1 : Check resistance at connector CN-75.

① Starting key OFF.

② Disconnect connector CN-75 from EPPR valve at main hydraulic pump.

③ Check resistance between 2 lines as figure.



(2) Test 2 : Check electric current at EPPR valve.

① Disconnect connector CN-75 from EPPR valve.

② Insert the adapter to CN-75 and install multimeter as figure.

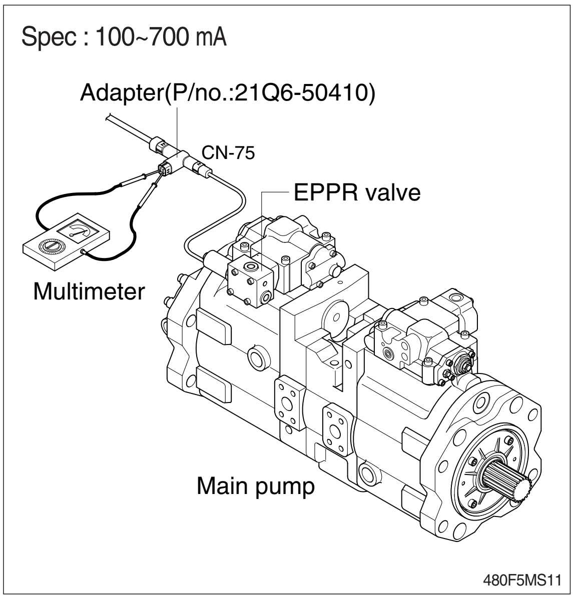
③ Start engine.

④ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.

⑤ Position the multimodal dial at 10.

⑥ If tachometer show approx 1600±50 rpm disconnect one wire harness from EPPR valve.

⑦ Check electric current at bucket circuit relief position.



(3) Test 3 : Check pressure at EPPR valve.

① Remove plug and connect pressure gauge as figure.

· Gauge capacity : 0 to 50 kgf/cm^2 (0 to 725 psi)

② Start engine.

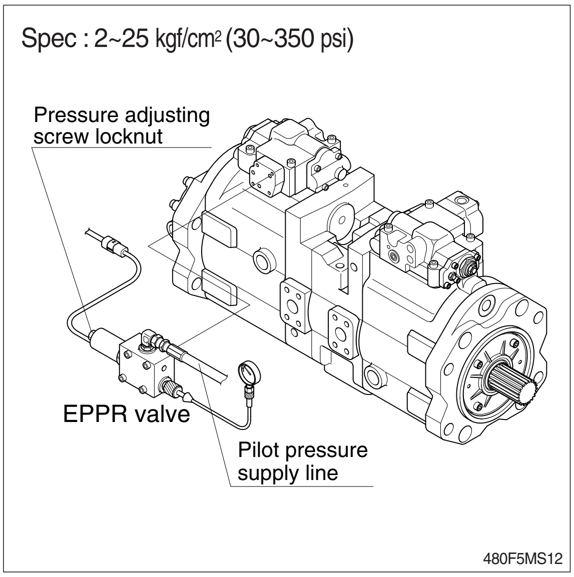
③ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.

④ Position the multimodal dial at 10.

⑤ If tachometer show approx 1600±50 rpm check pressure at relief position of bucket circuit by operating bucket control lever.

⑥ If pressure is not correct, adjust it.

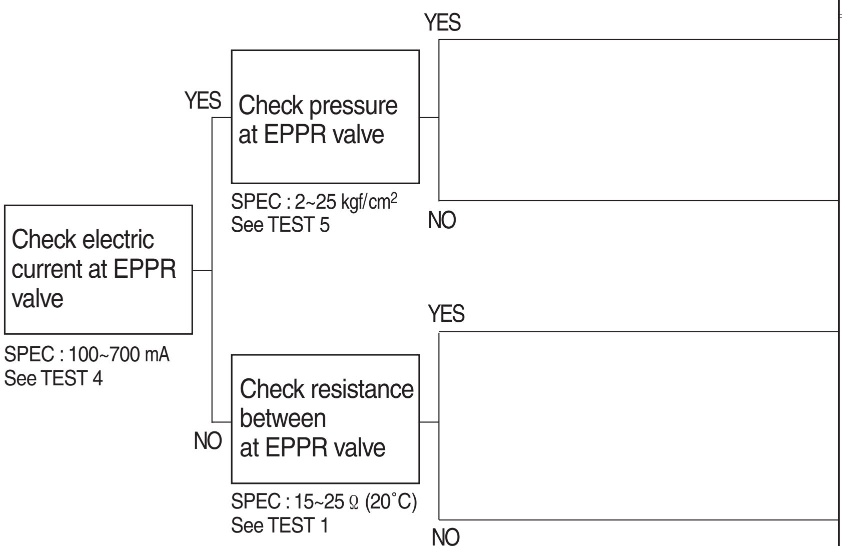
⑦ After adjust, test the machine.



2. ENGINE STALL

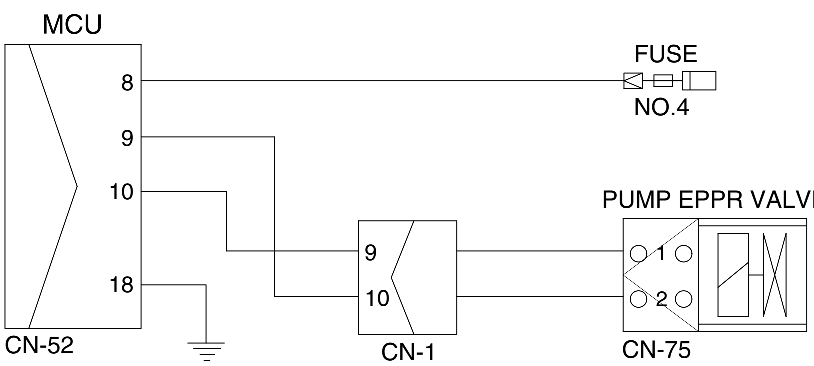
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Not enough engine power	Check engine fault Contact cummins
Defective EPPR valve	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52 - CN-75	Check and repair wire harness
Defective EPPR valve	Replace

Wiring diagram



380L6MS01

2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 4 : Check electric current at EPPR valve.

① Disconnect connector CN-75 from EPPR valve.

② Insert the adapter to CN-75 and install multimeter as figure.

③ Start engine.

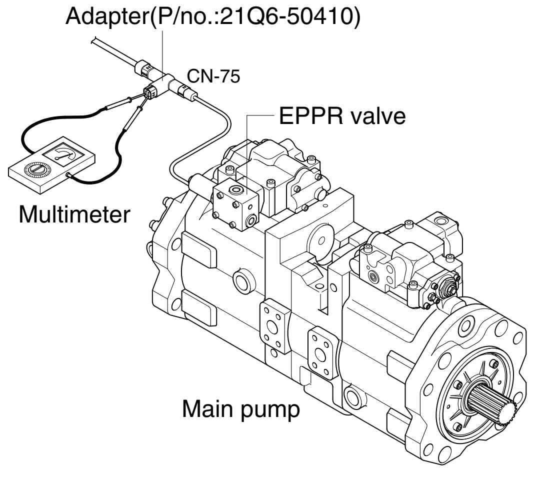
④ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.

⑤ Position the multimodal dial at 10.

⑥ If rpm show approx 1600±50 rpm disconnect one wire harness from EPPR valve.

⑦ Check electric current at bucket circuit relief position.

Spec : 100~700 mA



480F5MS11

(2) Test 5 : Check pressure at EPPR valve.

① Remove plug and connect pressure gauge as figure.

· Gauge capacity : 0 to 50 kgf/cm^2 (0 to 725 psi)

② Start engine.

③ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.

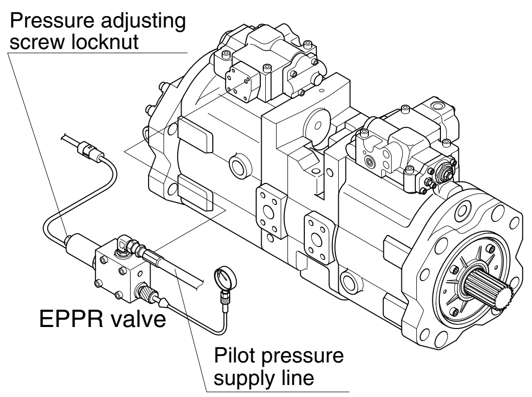
④ Position the multimodal dial at 10.

⑤ If rpm show approx 1600±50 rpm check pressure at relief position of bucket circuit by operating bucket control lever.

⑥ If pressure is not correct, adjust it.

⑦ After adjust, test the machine.

Spec : 2~25 kgf/cm^2 (30~350 psi)

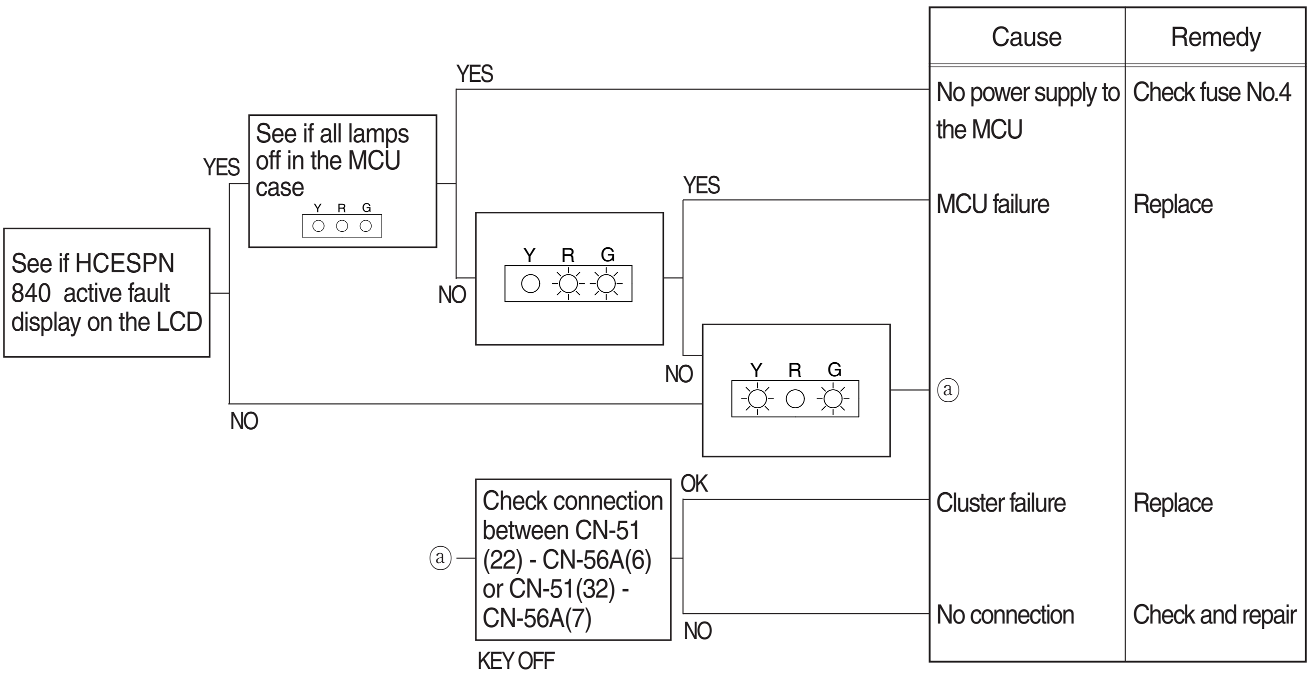


480F5MS12

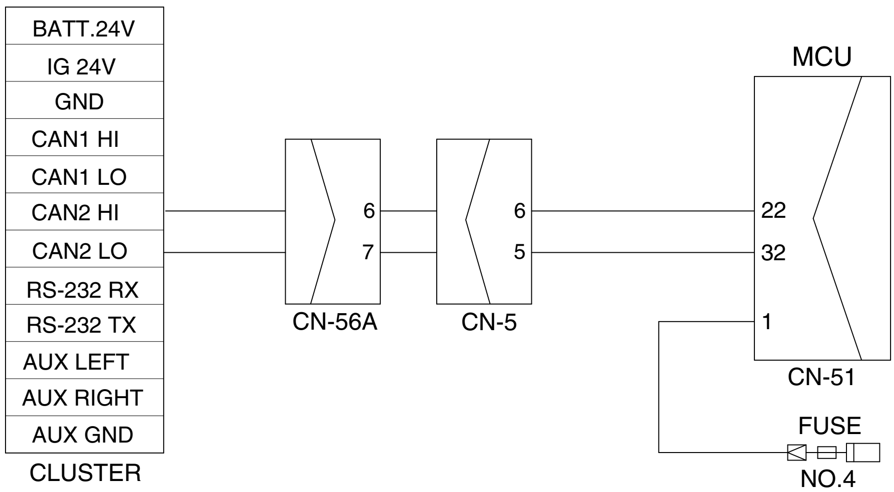
3. MALFUNCTION OF CLUSTER OR MODE SELECTION SYSTEM

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Wiring diagram



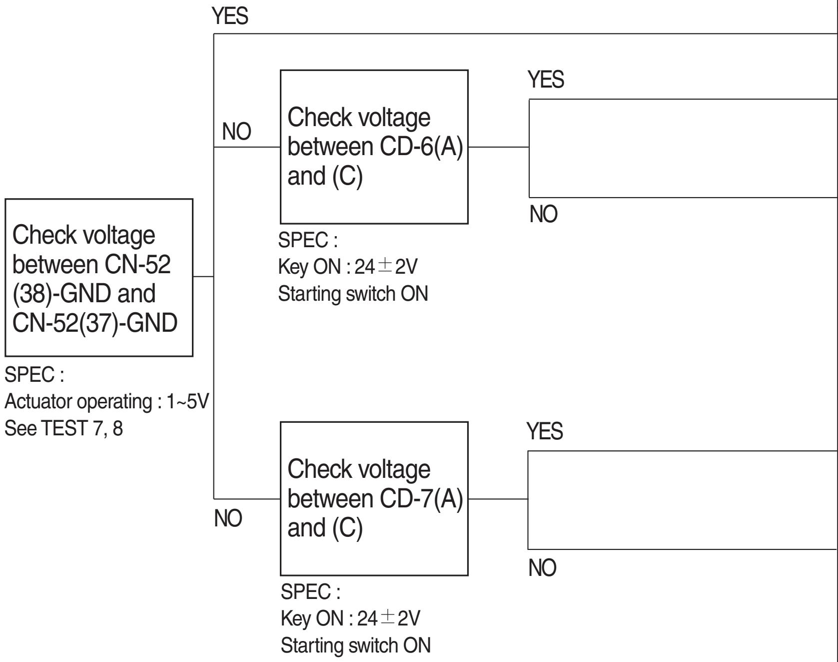
380L6MS03

4. AUTO DECEL SYSTEM DOES NOT WORK

· Fault code : HCESPN 105, FMI 0~4 (work pressure sensor)
HCESPN 108, FMI 0~4 (travel oil pressure sensor)

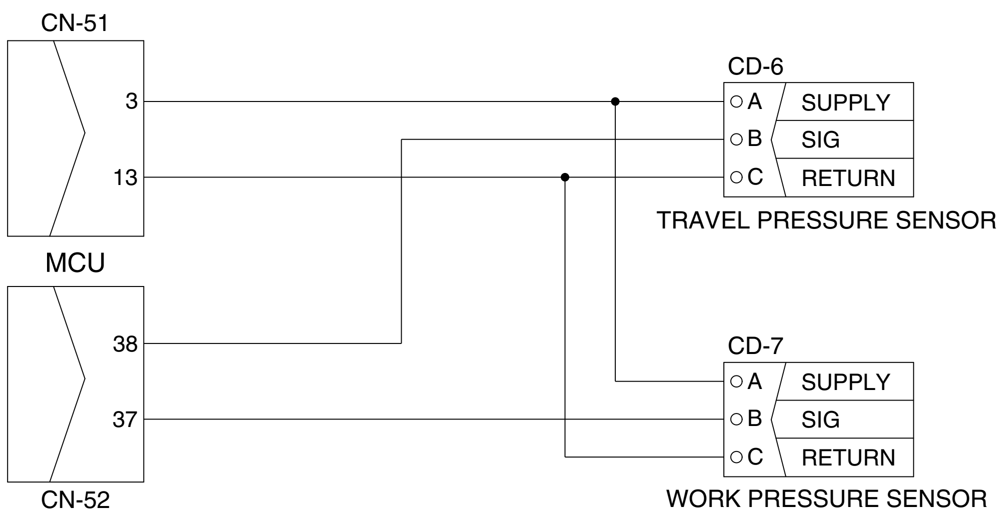
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Defective travel pressure switch	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-51(3)-CD-6(A) and / or CN-51(13)-CD-6 (C) (fault code 108 displayed)	Replace or repair
Defective work pressure sensor	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-51(3)-CD-7(A) and / or CN-51(13)-CD-7 (C) (fault code 105 displayed)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



300L6MS03

2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 7 : Check voltage at CN-52 (38) and ground.

① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (38) of CN-52.

③ Starting switch ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

(2) Test 8 : Check voltage at CN-52 (37) and ground.

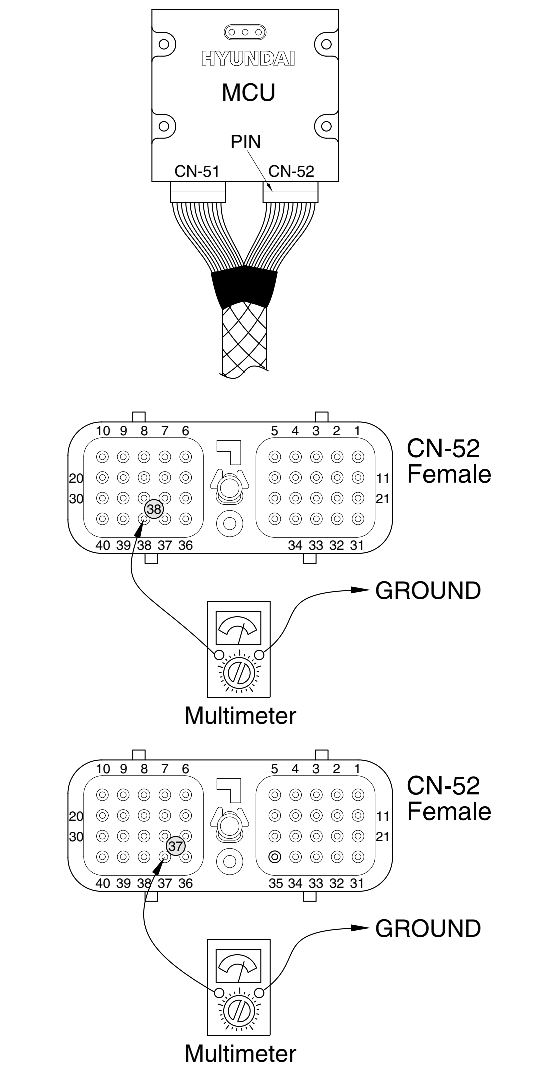
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (37) of CN-52.

③ Starting switch ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V



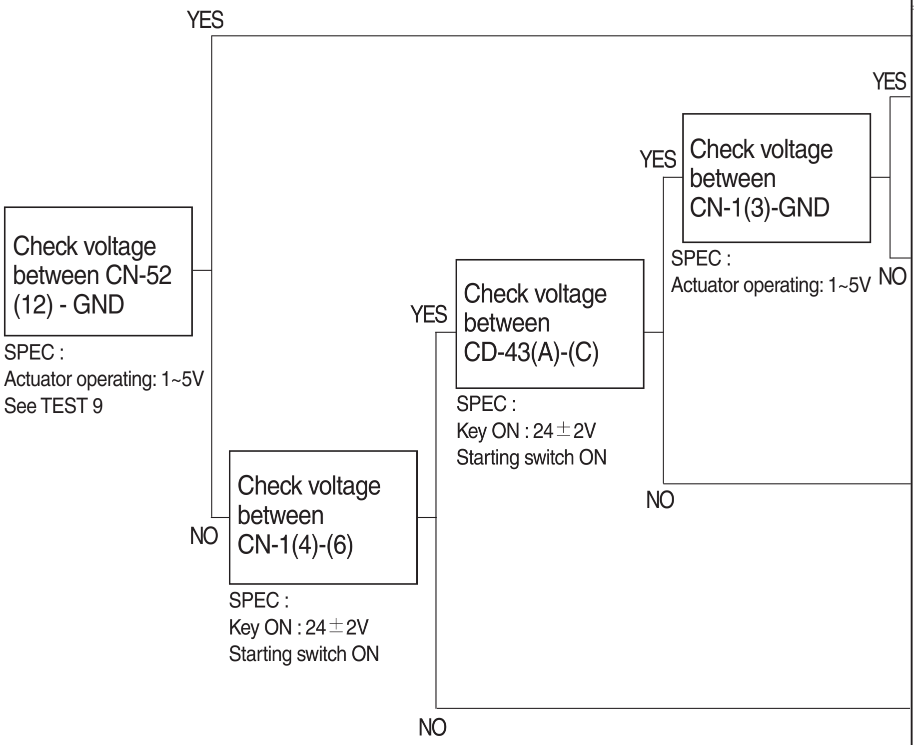
300L6MS04

5. MALFUNCTION OF PUMP 1 PRESSURE SENSOR

· Fault code : HCESPN 121, FMI 0~4

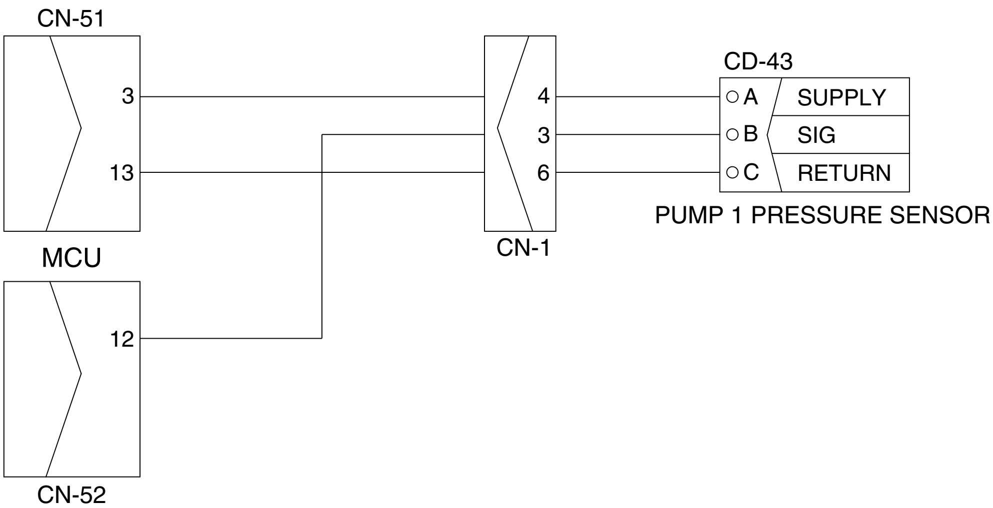
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52 (12)-CN-1(3)	Replace or repair
Detective P1 pressure sensor	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(3)-CD-43(B)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CD-43(A)-CN-1(4) or CD-43(C)-CN-1 (6)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(4)-CN-51(3) or CN-1 (6) - CN-51(13)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



380L6MS07

2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 9 : Check voltage at CN-52 (12) and ground.

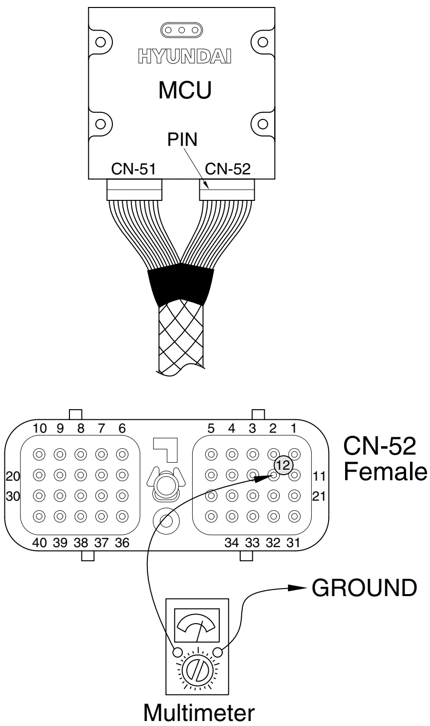
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (12) of CN-52.

③ Starting switch ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V



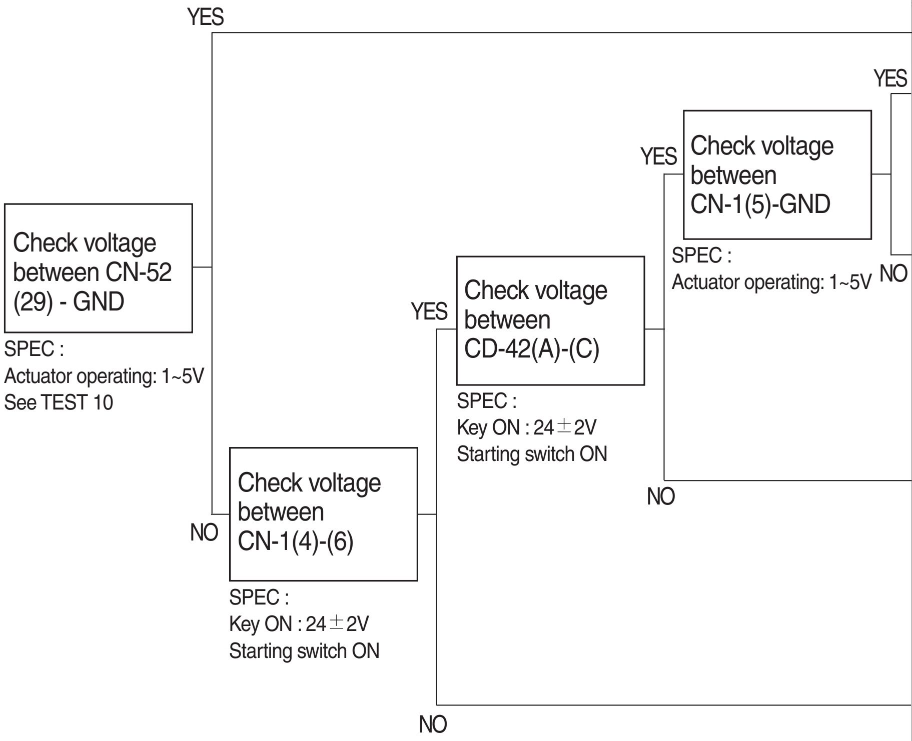
300L6MS08

6. MALFUNCTION OF PUMP 2 PRESSURE SENSOR

· Fault code : HCESPN 120, FMI 0~4

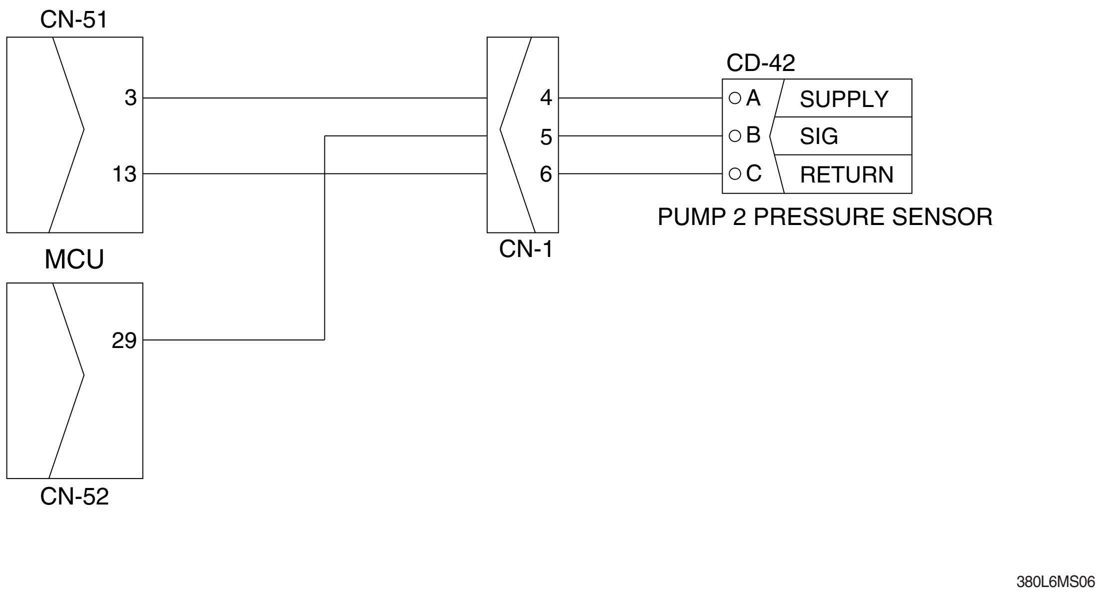
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52-(29)-CN-1(5)	Replace or repair
Detective P2 pressure sensor	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(5)-CD-42(B)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CD-42(A)-CN-1(4) or CD-42(C)-CN-1(6)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(4)-CN-51(3) or CN-1(6) - CN-51(13)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram

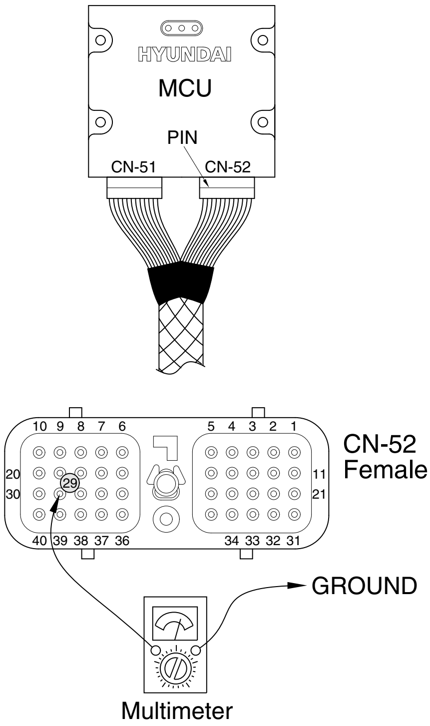


2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 10 : Check voltage at CN-52 (29) and ground.

① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (29) of CN-52.
③ Starting switch ON.
④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

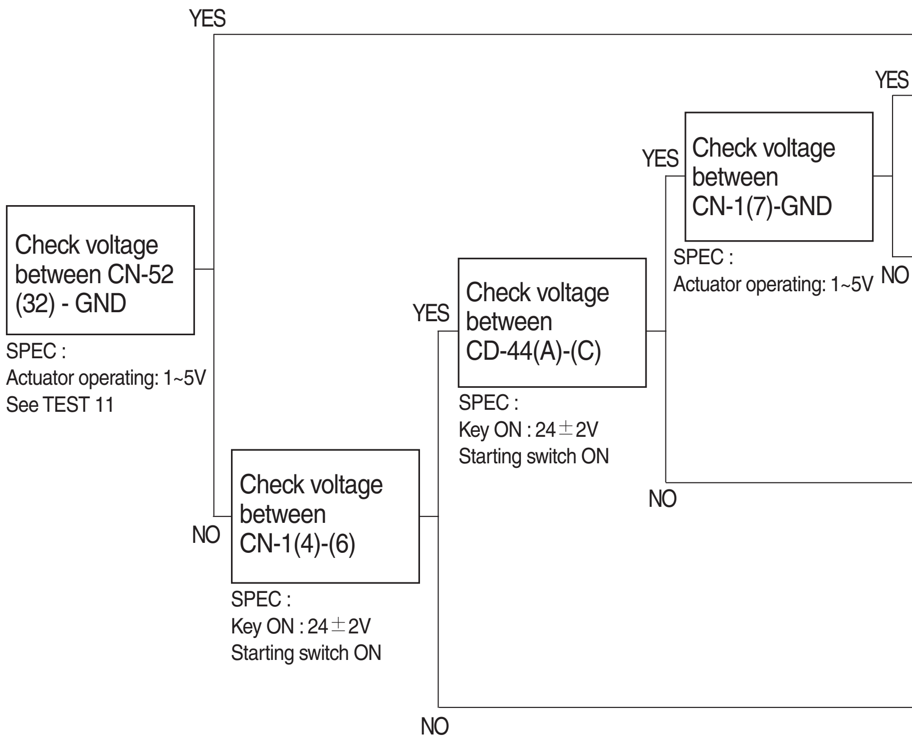


300L6MS06

7. MALFUNCTION OF PUMP 3 PRESSURE SENSOR

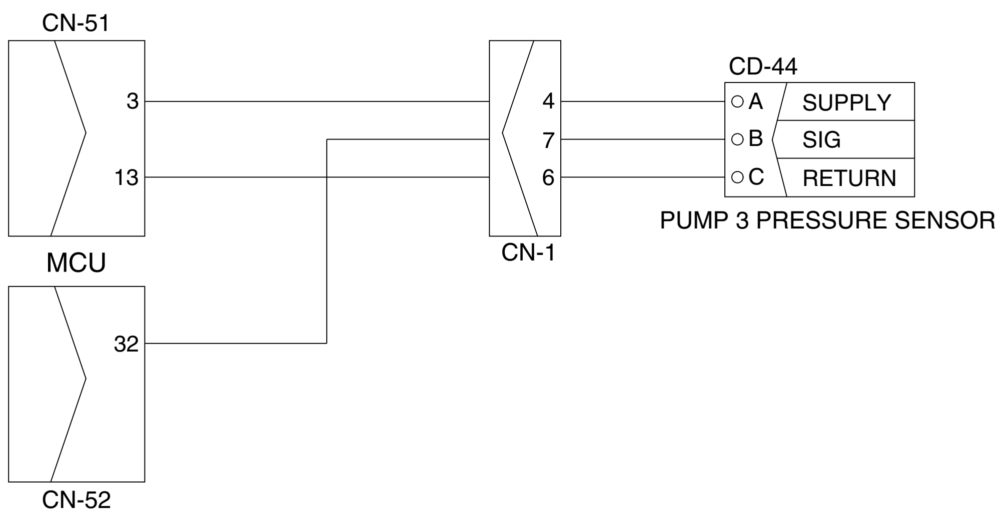
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52-(32)-CN-1(7)	Replace or repair
Detective P3 pressure sensor	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(7)-CD-44(B)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CD-44(A)-CN-1(4) or CD-44(C)-CN-1(6)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(4)-CN-51(3) or CN-1(6) - CN-51(13)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



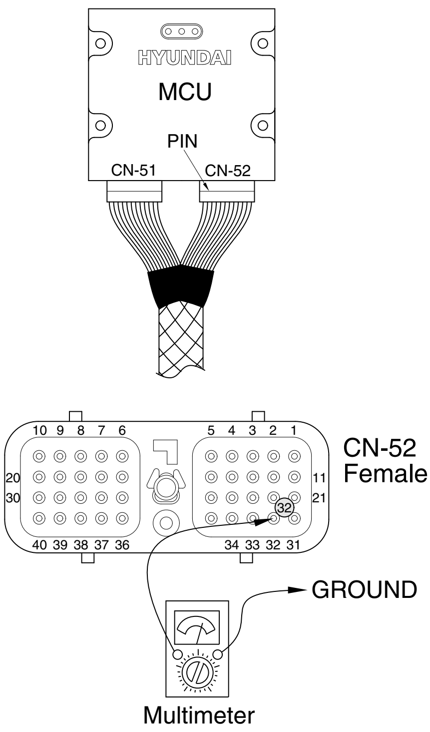
300L6MS09

2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 11 : Check voltage at CN-52 (32) and ground.

① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (32) of CN-52.
③ Starting switch ON.
④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V



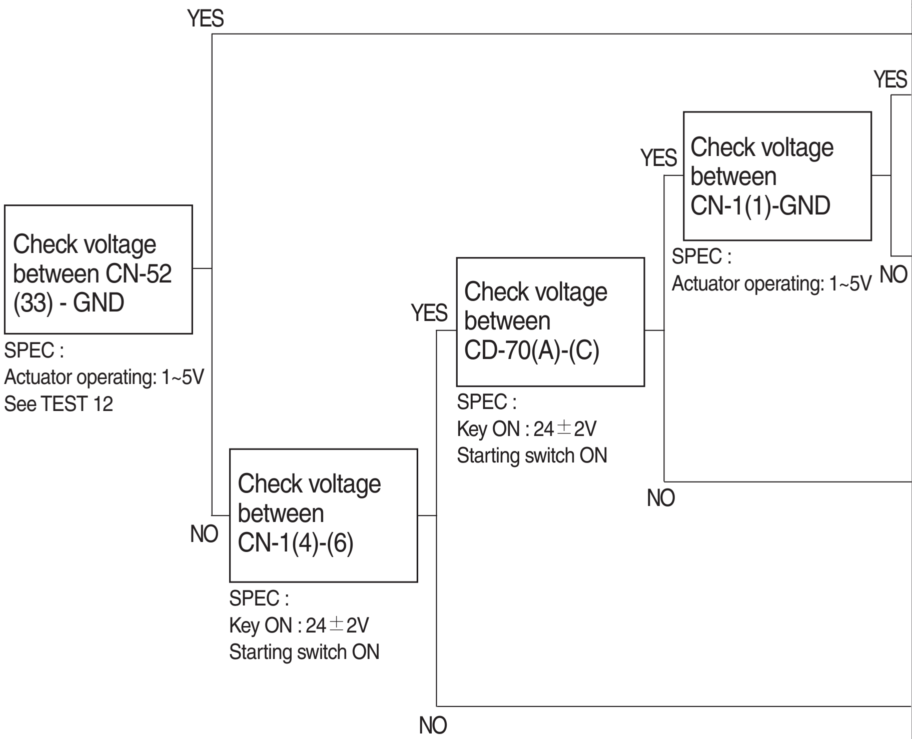
300L6MS10

8. MALFUNCTION OF NEGATIVE 1 PRESSURE SENSOR

· Fault code : HCESPN 123, FMI 0~4

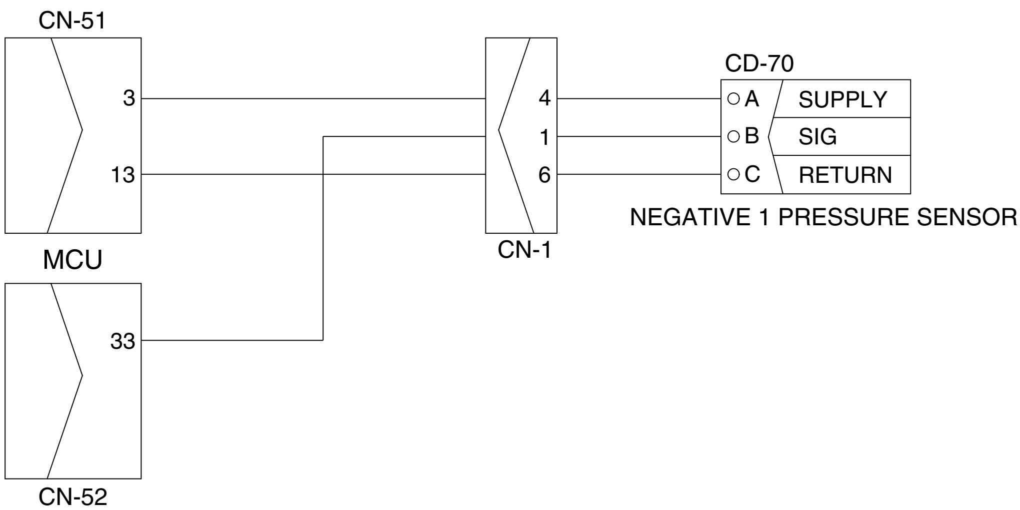
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52-(33)-CN-1(1)	Replace or repair
Detective N1 pressure sensor	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(1)-CD-70(B)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CD-70(A)-CN-1(4) or CD-70(C)-CN-1 (6)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(4)-CN-51(3) or CN-1 (6) - CN-51(13)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



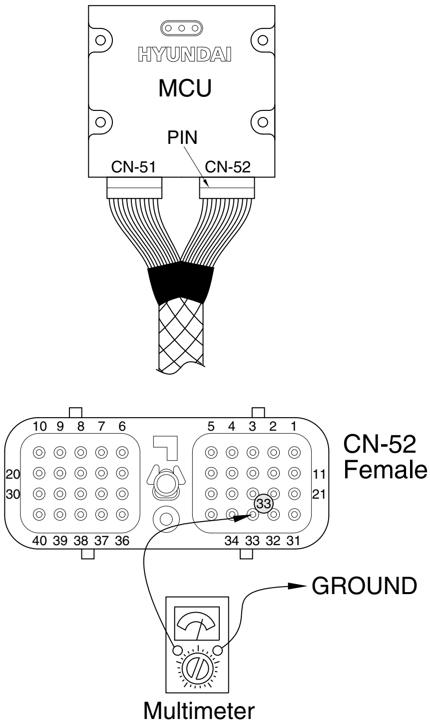
300L6MS11

2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 12 : Check voltage at CN-52 (33) and ground.

① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (33) of CN-52.
③ Starting switch ON.
④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V



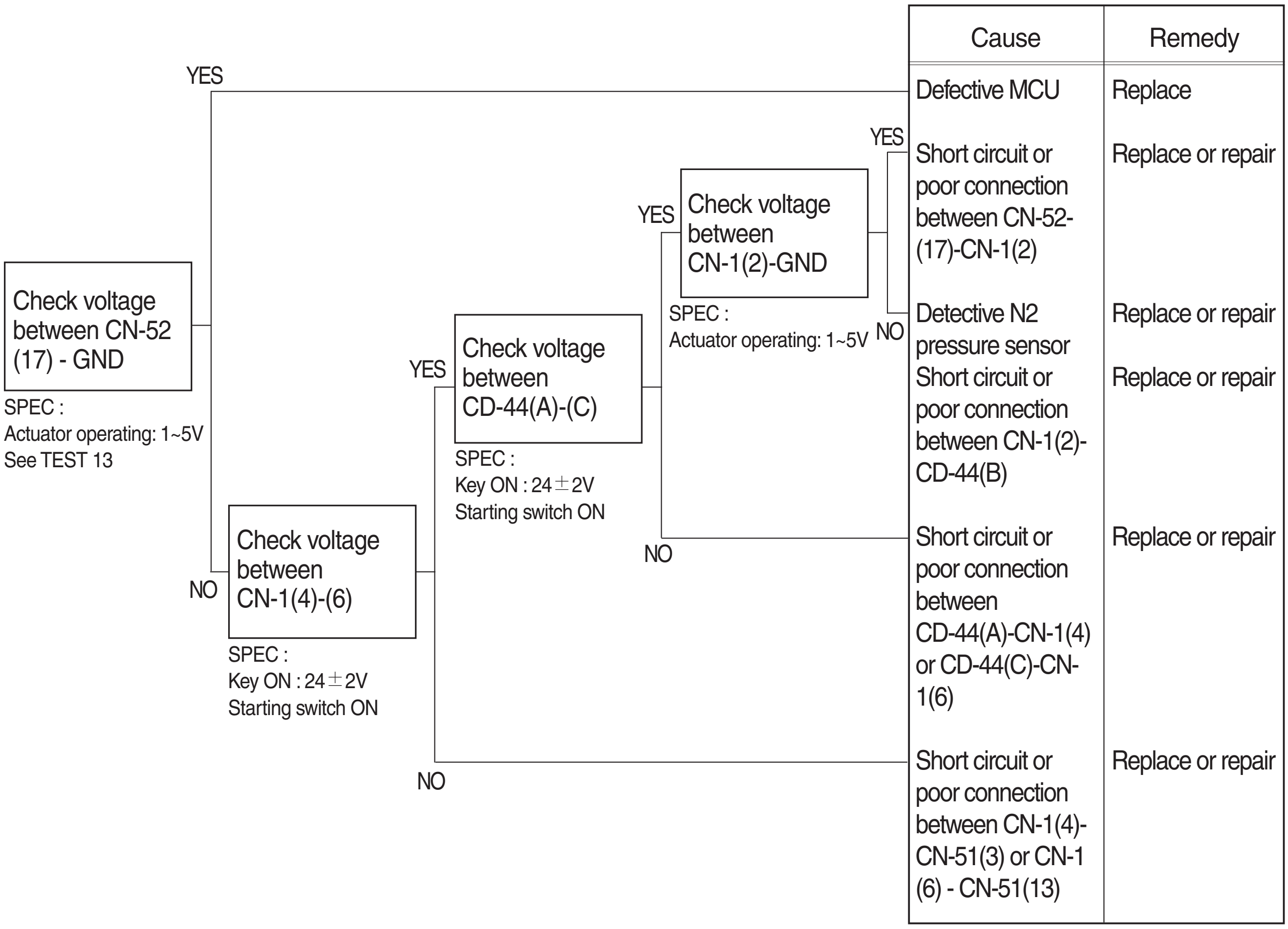
300L6MS12

9. MALFUNCTION OF NEGATIVE 2 PRESSURE SENSOR

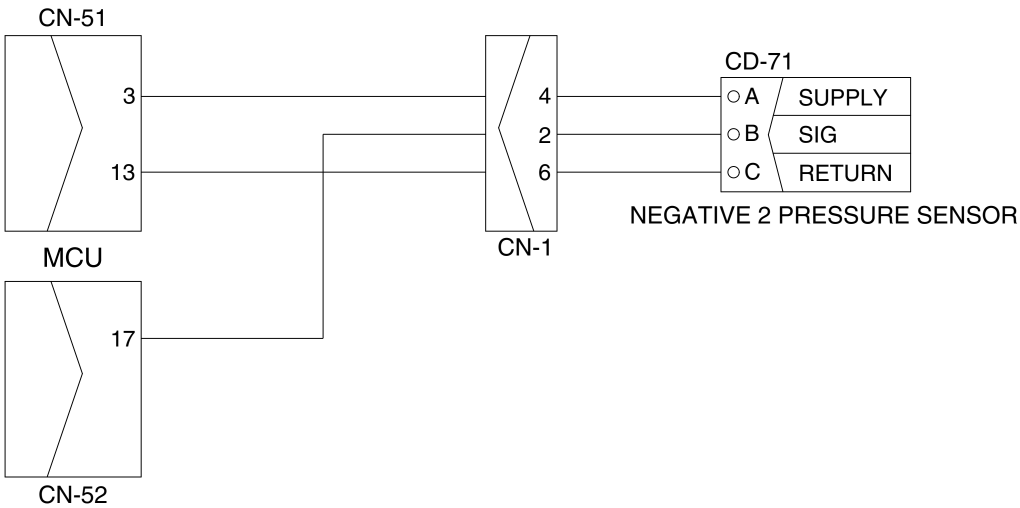
· Fault code : HCESPN 124, FMI 0~4

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Wiring diagram



300L6MS13

2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 13 : Check voltage at CN-52 (17) and ground.

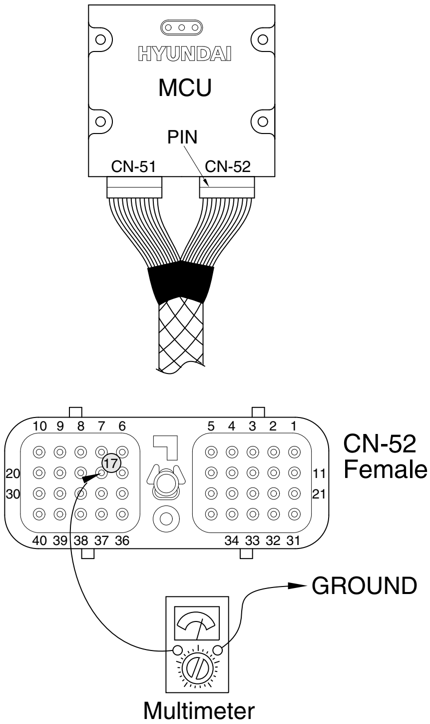
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (17) of CN-52.

③ Starting switch ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V



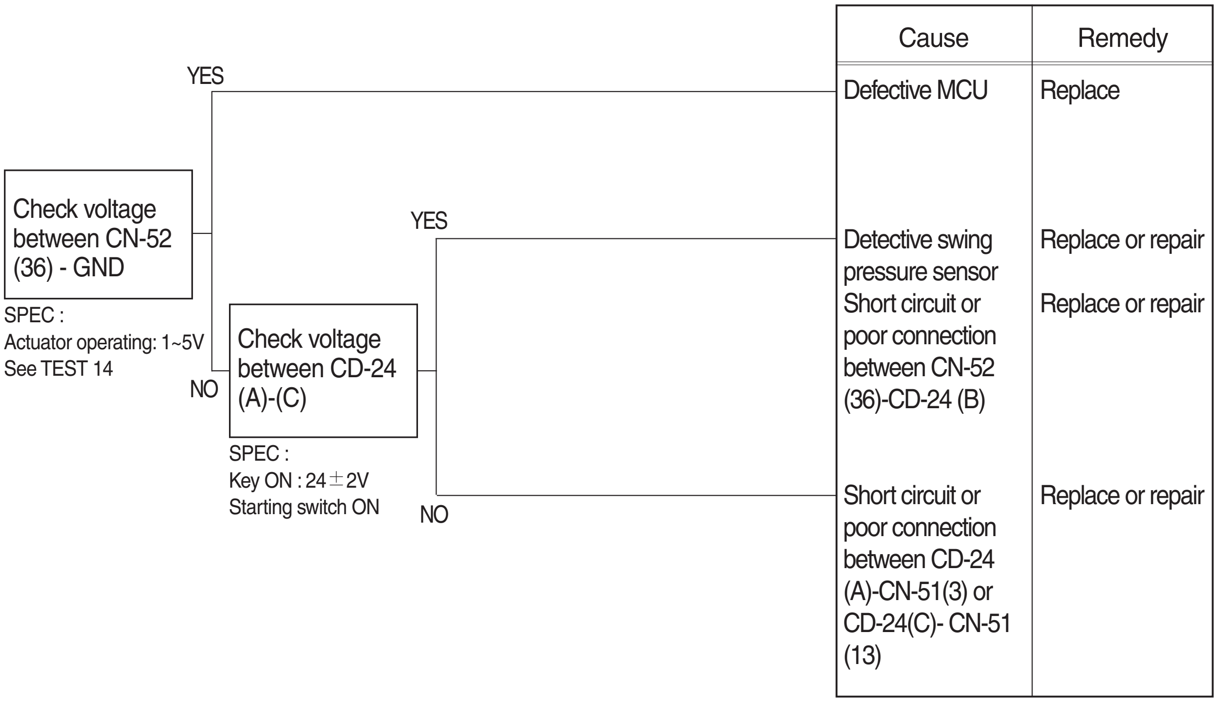
300L6MS14

10. MALFUNCTION OF SWING PRESSURE SENSOR

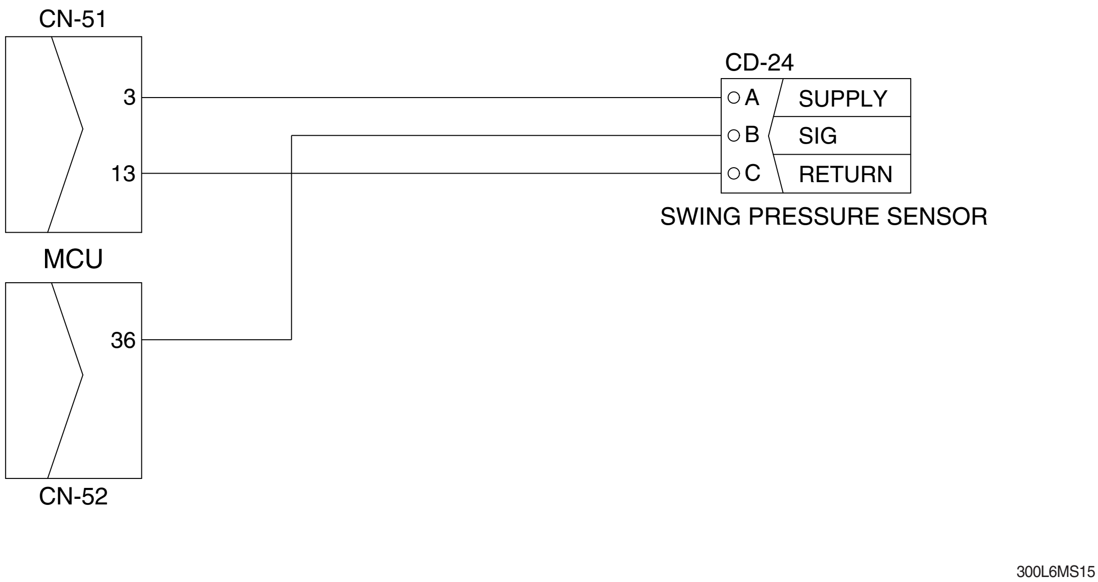
· Fault code : HCESPN 135, FMI 0~4

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 14 : Check voltage at CN-52 (36) and ground.

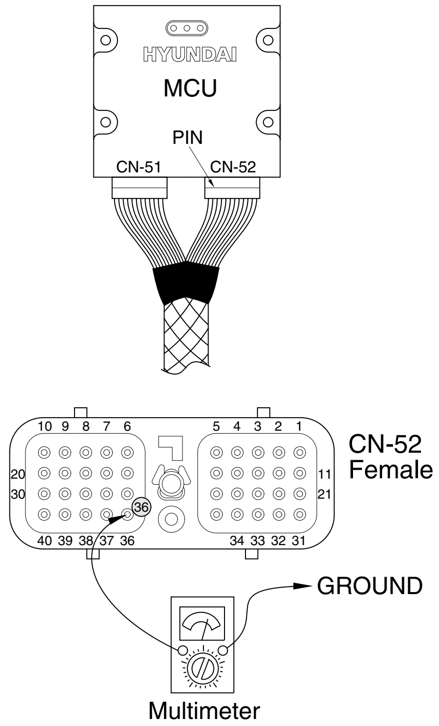
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (36) of CN-52.

③ Starting switch ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V



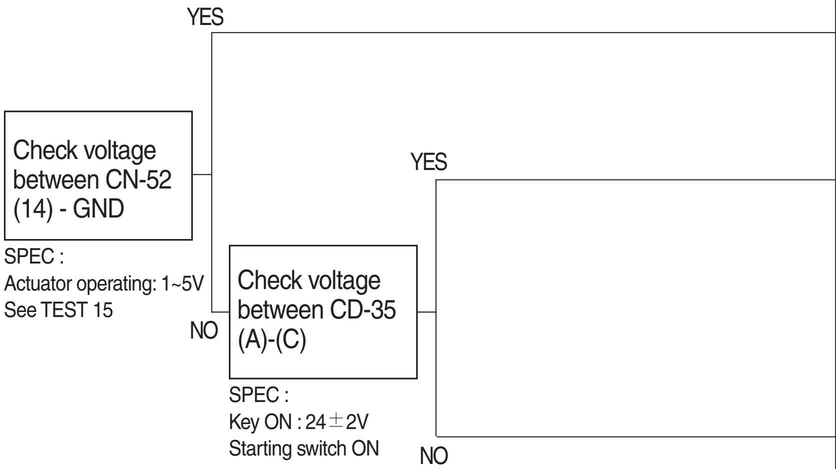
300L6MS16

11. MALFUNCTION OF ARM IN/OUT & BUCKET IN PRESSURE SENSOR

· Fault code : HCESPN 133, FMI 0~4

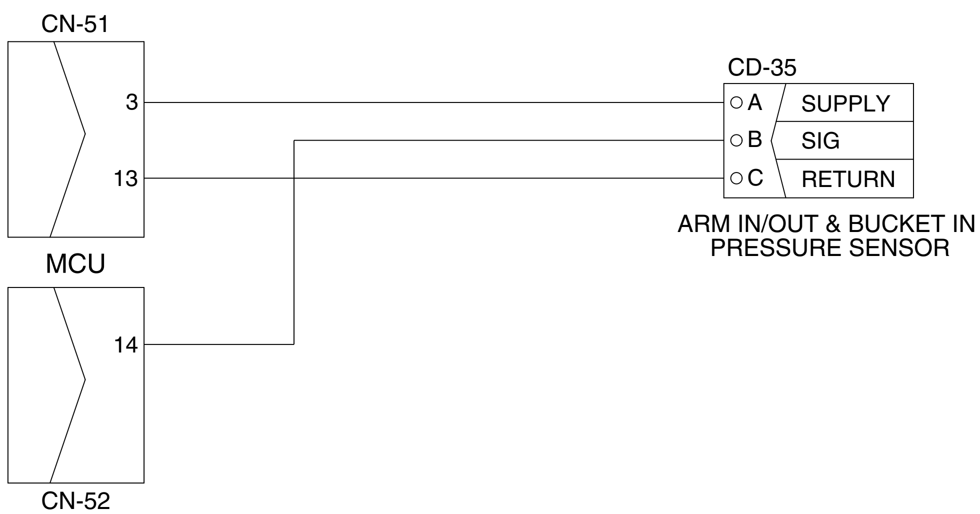
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Detective arm in/out & bucket in pressure sensor	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52 (14)-CD-35 (B)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CD-35 (A)-CN-51(3) or CD-35(C)- CN-51 (13)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



300L6MS17

2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 15 : Check voltage at CN-52 (14) and ground.

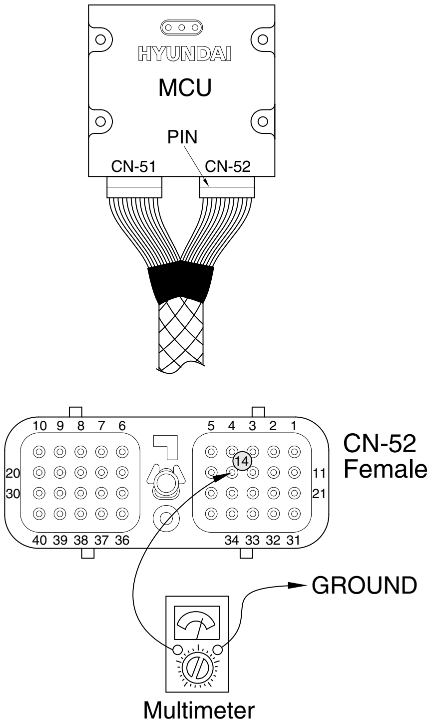
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (14) of CN-52.

③ Starting switch ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V



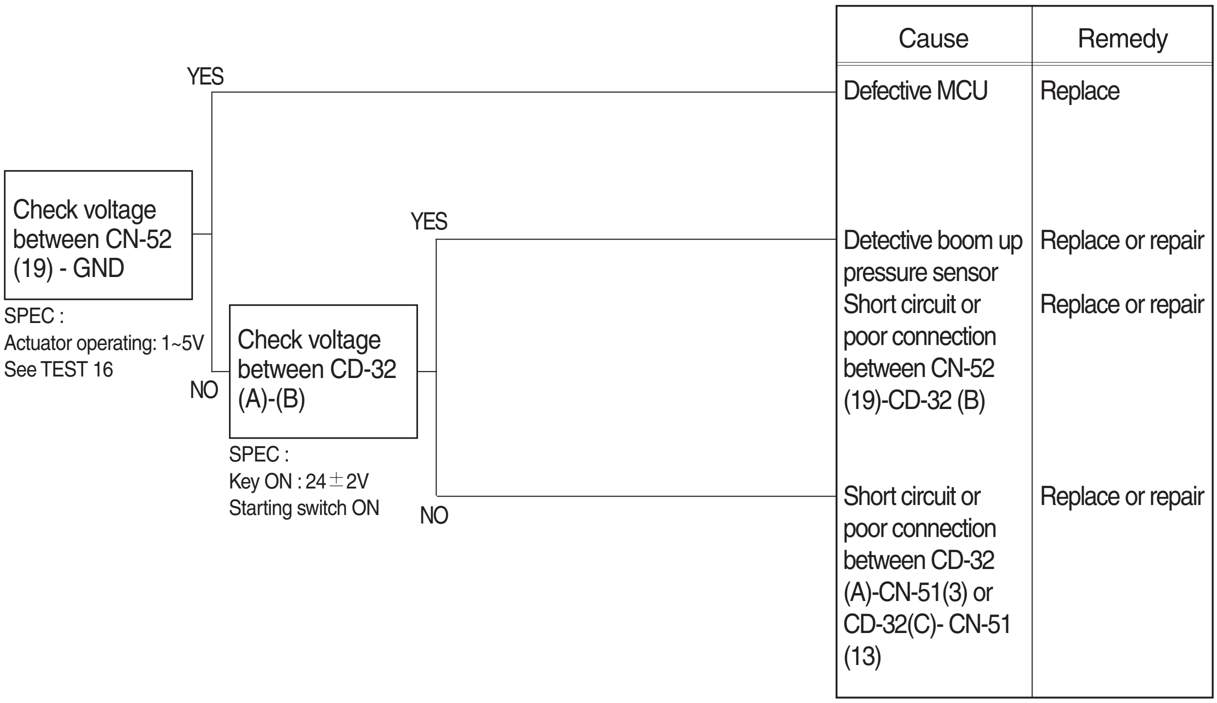
300L6MS18

12. MALFUNCTION OF BOOM UP PRESSURE SENSOR

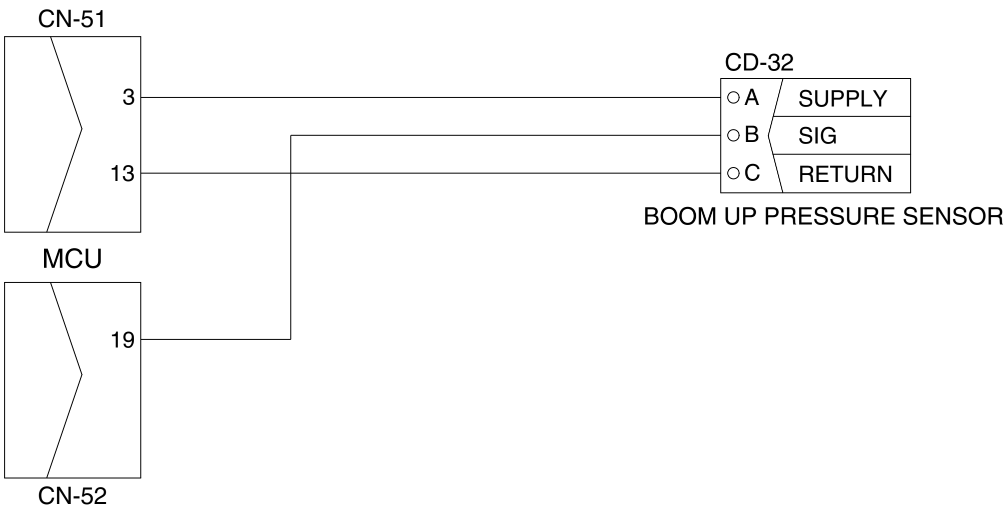
· Fault code : HCESPN 127, FMI 0~4

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Wiring diagram



300L6MS19

2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 16 : Check voltage at CN-52 (19) and ground.

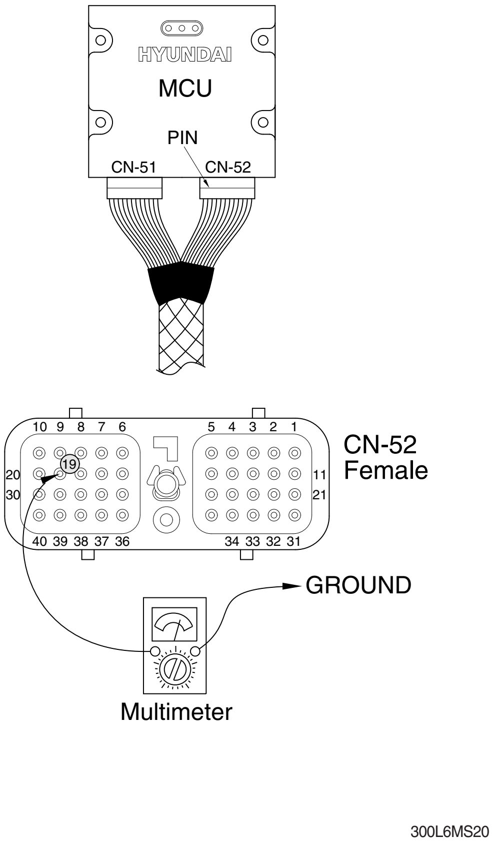
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (19) of CN-52.

③ Starting switch ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

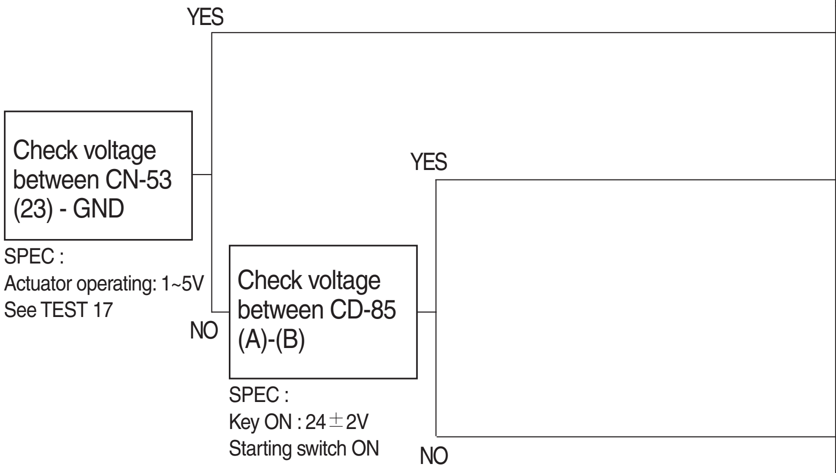


13. MALFUNCTION OF BOOM DOWN PRESSURE SENSOR

· Fault code : HCESPN 128, FMI 0~4

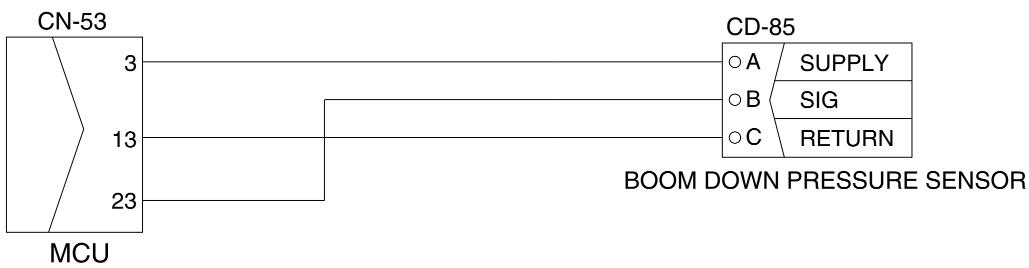
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Detective boom up pressure sensor	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-53 (23)-CD-85 (B)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CD-85 (A)-CN-53(3) or CD-85(C)- CN-51 (13)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



300L6MS25

2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 17 : Check voltage at CN-53 (23) and ground.

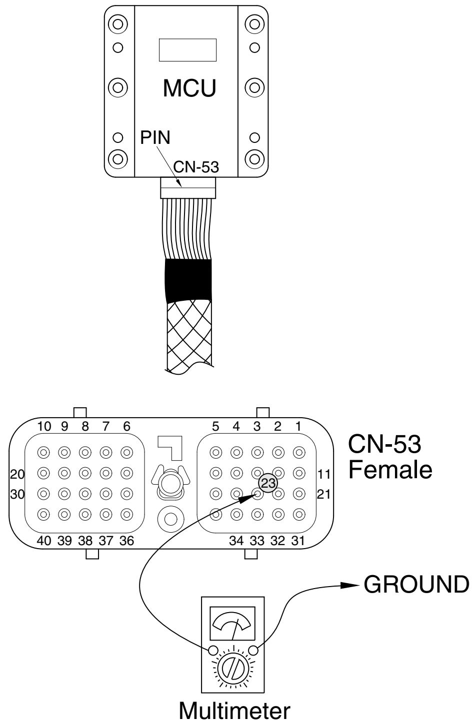
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (23) of CN-53.

③ Starting switch ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V



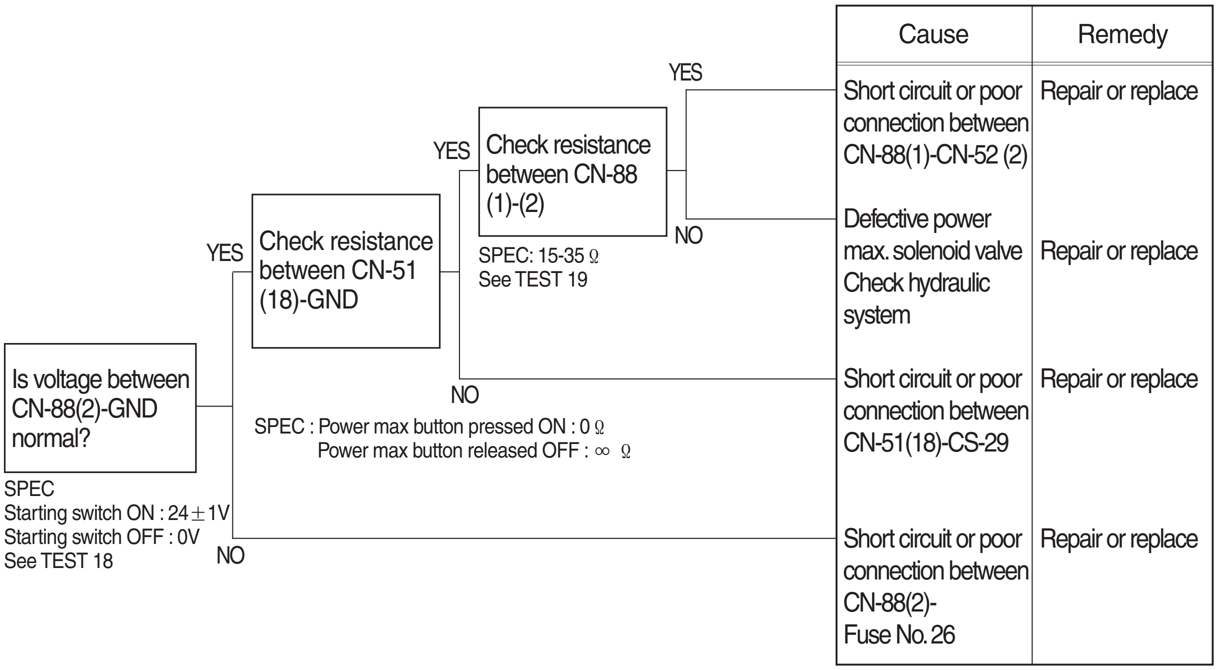
300L6MS26

14. MALFUNCTION OF POWER MAX

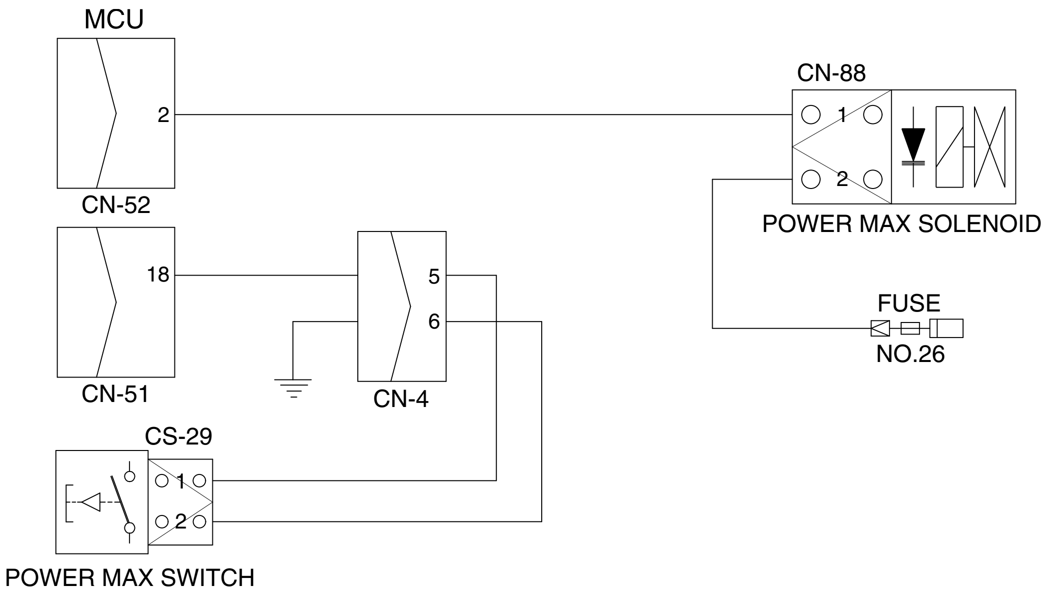
· Fault code : HCESPN 166, FMI 4 or 6

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Wiring diagram

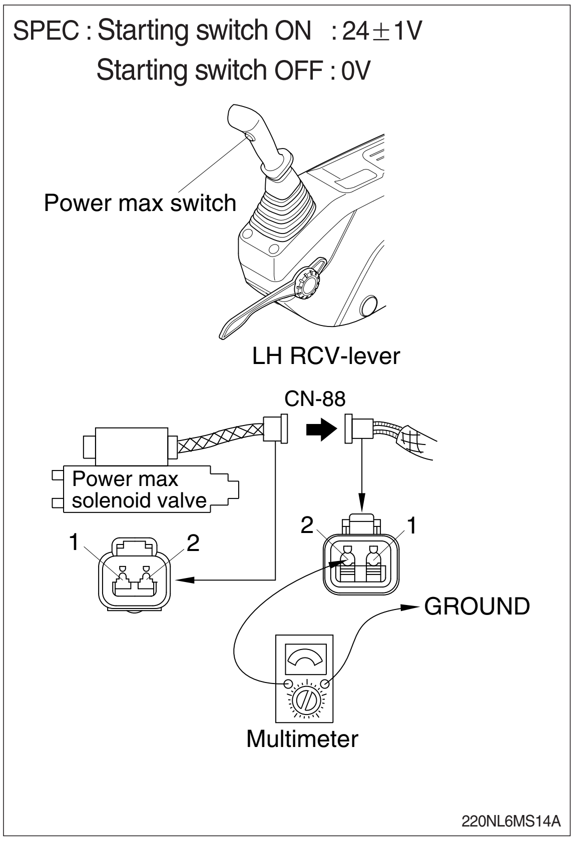


380L6MS04

2) TEST PROCEDURE

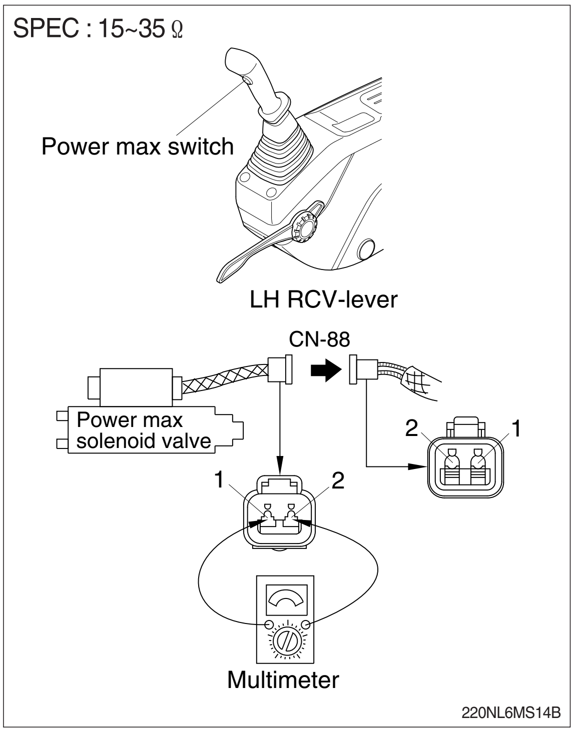
(1) Test 18: Check voltage between connector CN-88 (2) - GND.

① Disconnect connector CN-88 from power max solenoid valve.
② Starting switch ON.
③ Check voltage as figure.



(2) Test 19: Check resistance of the solenoid valve between CN-88 (1)-(2).

① Starting switch OFF.
② Disconnect connector CN-88 from power max solenoid valve.
③ Check resistance as figure.



15. MALFUNCTION OF BOOM PRIORITY EPPR VALVE

· Fault code : HCESPN 141, FMI 5 or 6

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

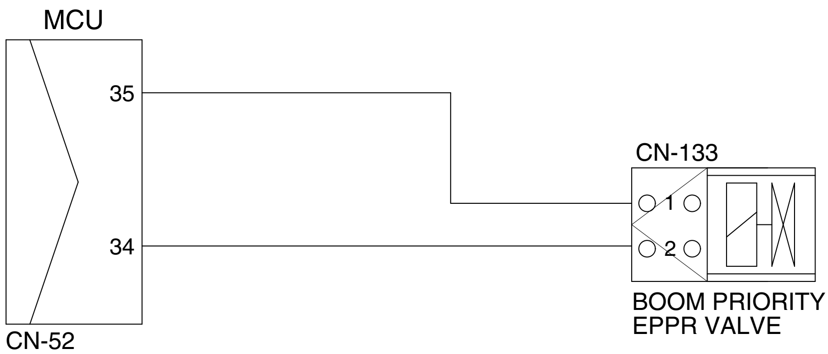
1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE

Check resistance between CN-133(1)-(2)

SPEC : 20~30V
Starting switch ON

	Cause	Remedy
YES	Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52(35)-CN-133 (1) or CN-52(34)-CN-133(2)	Repair or replace
NO	Defective EPPR valve	Repair or replace

Wiring diagram



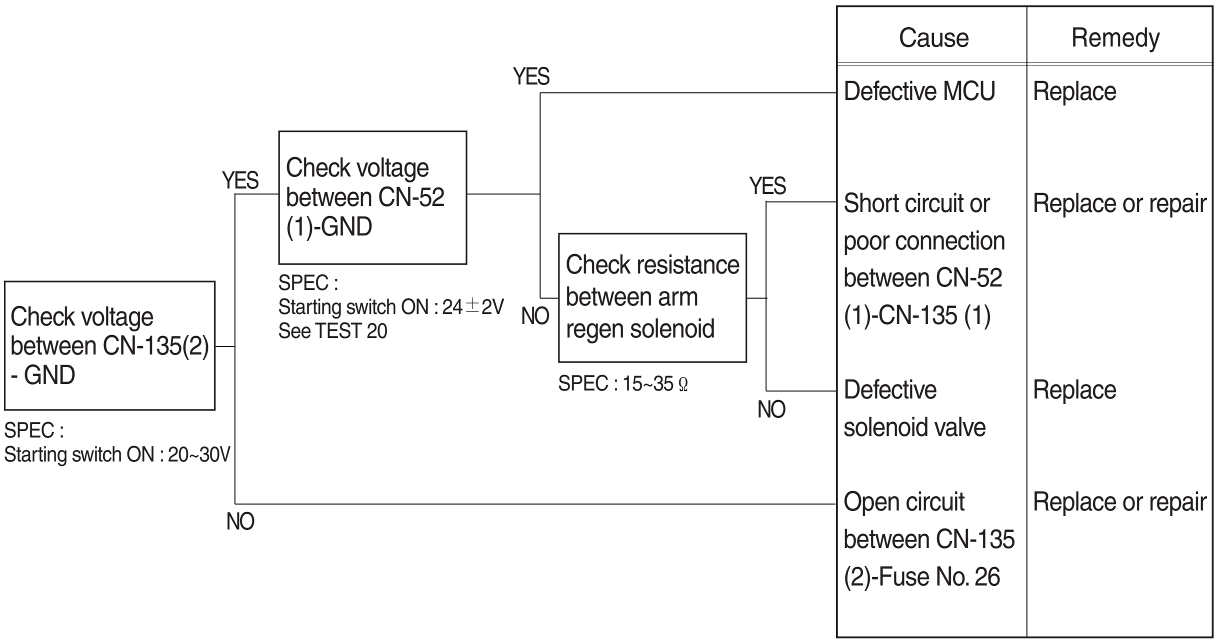
300L6MS23

16. MALFUNCTION OF ARM REGENERATION SOLENOID

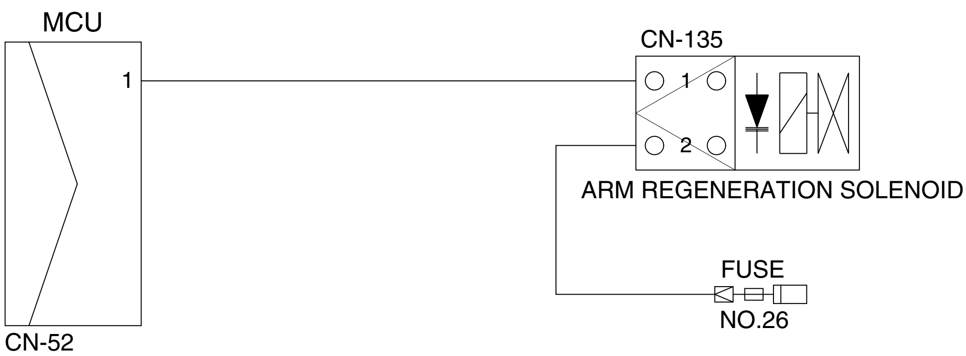
· Fault code : HCESPN 170, FMI 4 or 6

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Wiring diagram



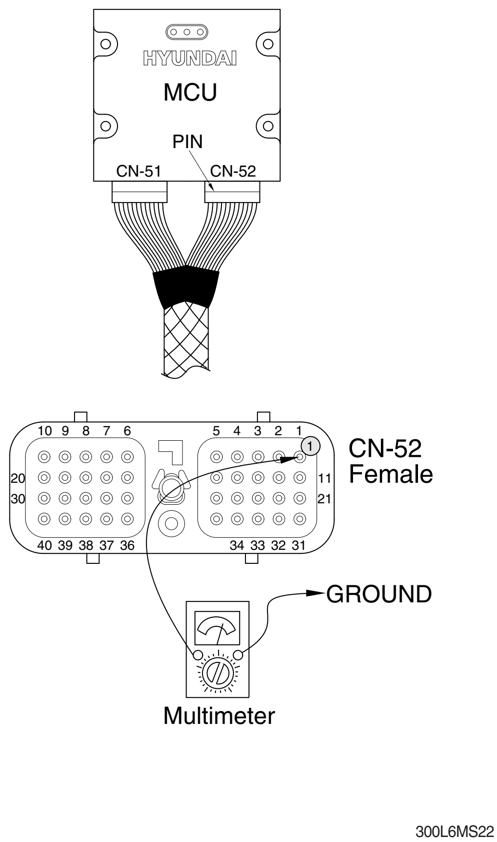
380L6MS05

2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 20 : Check voltage at CN-52 (1) and ground.

① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (1) of CN-52.
③ Starting switch ON.
④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Starting switch ON : 24±2 V



SECTION 7 MAINTENANCE STANDARD

GROUP 1 OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE TEST

1. PURPOSE

Performance tests are used to check :

1) OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE OF A NEW MACHINE

Whenever a new machine is delivered in parts and reassembled at a customer's site, it must be tested to confirm that the operational performance of the machine meets Hyundai spec.

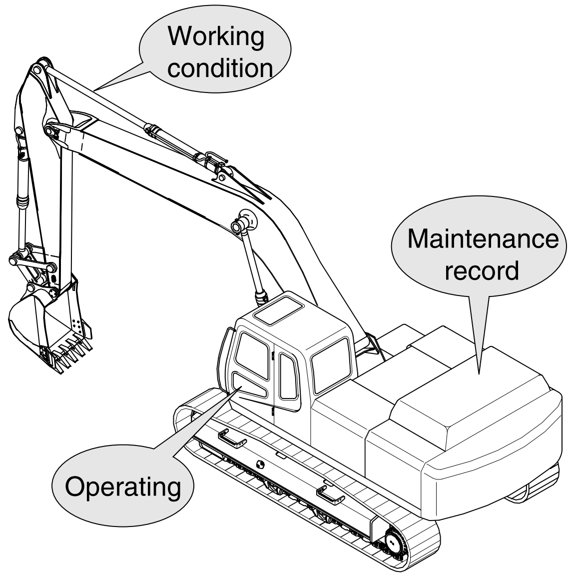
2) OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE OF A WORKING MACHINE

With the passage of time, the machine's operational performance deteriorates, so that the machine needs to be serviced periodically to restore it to its original performance level.

Before servicing the machine, conduct performance tests to check the extent of deterioration, and to decide what kind of service needs to be done(by referring to the "Service Limits" in this manual).

3) OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE OF A REPAIRED MACHINE

After the machine is repaired or serviced, it must be tested to confirm that its operational performance was restored by the repair and/or service work done.

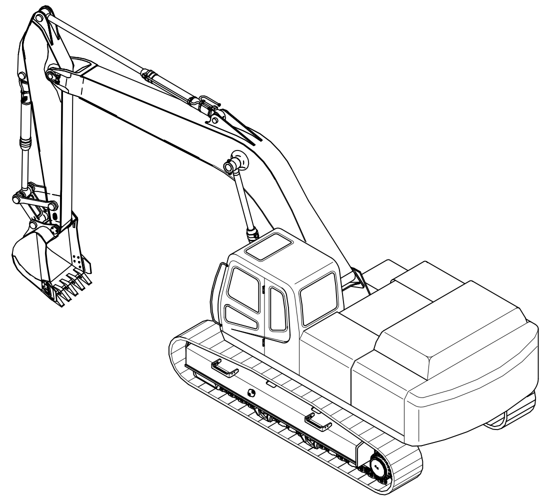


21077MS01

2. TERMINOLOGY

1) STANDARD

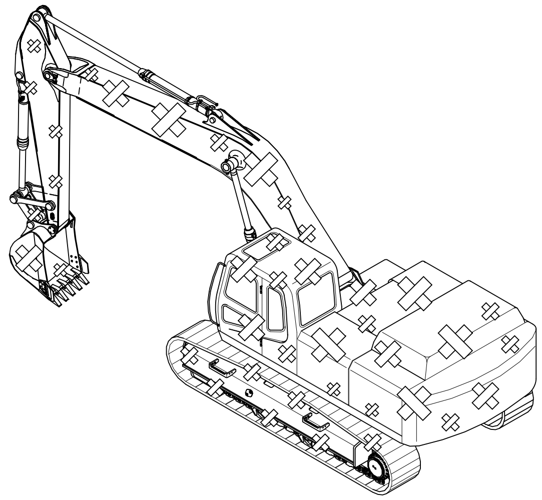
Specifications applied to the brand-new machine, components and parts.



21077MS02

2) SERVICE LIMIT

The lowest acceptable performance level. When the performance level of the machine falls below this level, the machine must be removed from work and repaired. Necessary parts and components must be replaced.



21077MS03

3. OPERATION FOR PERFORMANCE TESTS

1) Observe the following rules in order to carry out performance tests accurately and safely.

(1) The machine

Repair any defects and damage found, such as oil or water leaks, loose bolts, cracks and so on, before starting to test.

(2) Test area

① Select a hard, flat surface.

② Secure enough space to allow the machine to run straight more than 20 m, and to make a full swing with the front attachment extended.

③ If required, rope off the test area and provide signboards to keep unauthorized personnel away.

(3) Precautions

① Before starting to test, agree upon the signals to be employed for communication among coworkers. Once the test is started, be sure to communicate with each other using these signals, and to follow them without fail.

② Operate the machine carefully and always give first priority to safety.

③ While testing, always take care to avoid accidents due to landslides or contact with high voltage power lines. Always confirm that there is sufficient space for full swings.

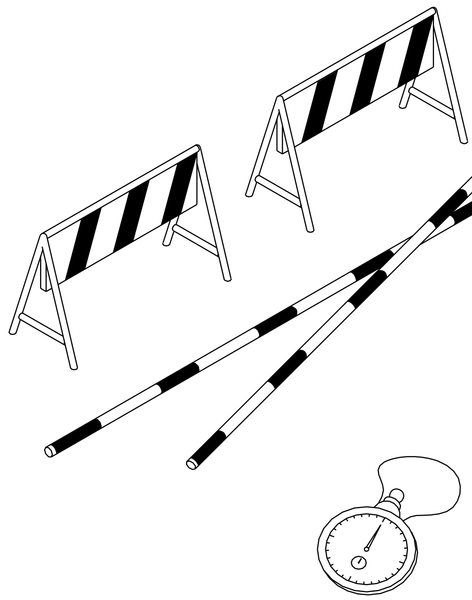
④ Avoid polluting the machine and the ground with leaking oil. Use oil pans to catch escaping oil. Pay special attention to this when removing hydraulic pipings.

(4) Make precise measurements

① Accurately calibrate test instruments in advance to obtain correct data.

② Carry out tests under the exact test conditions prescribed for each test item.

③ Repeat the same test and confirm that the test data obtained can be procured repeatedly. Use mean values of measurements if necessary.



(210-7) 7-3

2) ENGINE SPEED

(1) Measure the engine speed at each power mode

※ The engine speed at each power mode must meet standard RPM; if not, all other operational performance data will be unreliable. It is essential to perform this test first.

(2) Preparation

① Warm up the machine, until the engine coolant temperature reaches 50˚C or more, and the hydraulic oil is 50±5˚C.

② Set the accel dial at 10 (Max) position.

③ Measure the engine RPM.

(3) Measurement

① Start the engine. The engine will run at start idle speed. Measure engine speed with a engine rpm display.

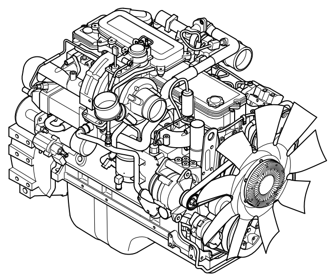
② Measure and record the engine speed at each mode (P, S, E).

③ Select the P-mode.

④ Lightly operate the bucket control lever a few times, then return the control lever to neutral; The engine will automatically enter the auto-idle speed after 4 seconds.

⑤ Measure and record the auto deceleration speed.

CLUSTER



330F7MS01

(4) Evaluation

The measured speeds should meet the following specifications.

Unit : rpm

Model	Engine speed	Standard	Remarks
HX380 L	Start idle	900±100	
	P mode	1700±50	
	S mode	1600±50	
	E mode	1500±50	
	Auto decel	1000±100	
	One touch decel	900±100	

Condition : Set the accel dial at 10 (Max) position.

3) TRAVEL SPEED

(1) Measure the time required for the excavator to travel a 20 ㎧ test track.

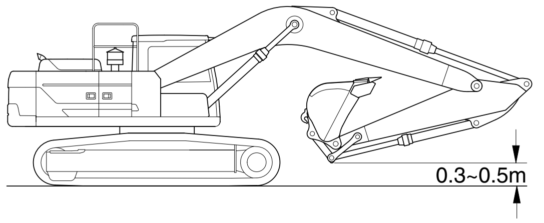
(2) Preparation

① Adjust the tension of both tracks to be equal.

② Prepare a flat and solid test track 20㎧ in length, with extra length of 3 to 5 ㎧ on both ends for machine acceleration and deceleration.

③ Hold the bucket 0.3 to 0.5 ㎧ above the ground with the arm and bucket rolled in.

④ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



300L7MS02

(3) Measurement

① Measure both the low and high speeds of the machine.

② Before starting either the low or high speed tests, adjust the travel mode switch to the speed to be tested, then select the following switch positions.

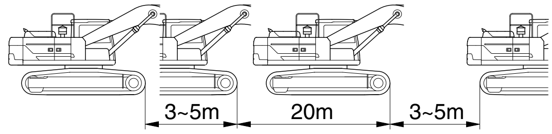
· Power mode switch : P mode

③ Start traveling the machine in the acceleration zone with the travel levers at full stroke.

④ Measure the time required to travel 20 m.

⑤ After measuring the forward travel speed, turn the upperstructure 180° and measure the reverse travel speed.

⑥ Repeat steps ④ and ⑤ three times in each direction and calculate the average values.



300L7MS03

(4) Evaluation

The average measured time should meet the following specifications.

Unit : Seconds / 20 ㎧

Model	Travel speed	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
HX380 L	1 Speed	23.2±2.0	27.3	
	2 Speed	14.4±1.0	16.4	

4) TRACK REVOLUTION SPEED

(1) Measure the track revolution cycle time with the track raised off ground.

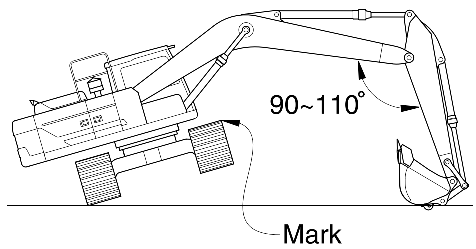
(2) Preparation

① Adjust the tension of both side tracks to be equal.

② On the track to be measured, mark one shoe with chalk.

③ Swing the upperstructure 90° and lower the bucket to raise the track off ground. Keep the boom-arm angle between 90 to 110° as shown. Place blocks under machine frame.

④ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5°C.



300L7MS04

(3) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.

· Travel mode switch : 1 or 2 speed
· Power mode switch : P mode
· Auto idle switch : OFF

② Operate the travel control lever of the raised track in full forward and reverse.

③ Rotate 1 turn, then measure time taken for next 3 revolutions.

④ Raise the other side of machine and repeat the procedure.

⑤ Repeat steps ③ and ④ three times and calculate the average values.

(4) Evaluation

The revolution cycle time of each track should meet the following specifications.

Unit : Seconds / 3 revolutions

Model	Travel speed	Standard	Maximum allowable
HX380 L	1 Speed	33±2.0	42.5
	2 Speed	25.5±2.0	25.5

5) TRAVEL DEVIATION

(1) Measure the deviation by the tracks from a 20 m straight line.

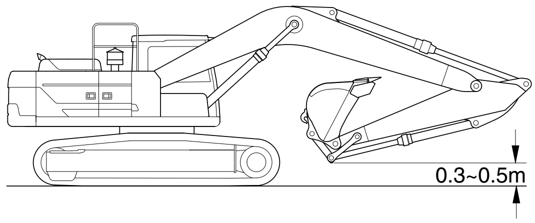
(2) Preparation

① Adjust the tension of both tracks to be equal.

② Provide a flat, solid test yard 20 m in length, with extra length of 3 to 5 m on both ends for machine acceleration and deceleration.

③ Hold the bucket 0.3 to 0.5 m above the ground with the arm and bucket rolled in.

④ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



300L7MS02

(3) Measurement

① Measure the amount of mistracking at high and low travel speeds.

② Before beginning each test, select the following switch positions.

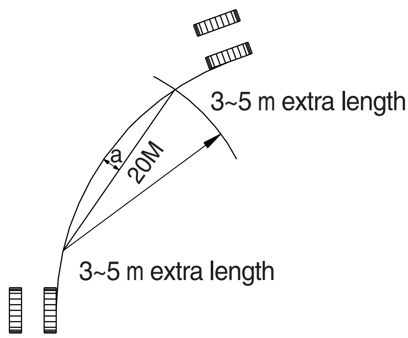
· Power mode switch : P mode

③ Start traveling the machine in the acceleration zone with the travel levers at full stroke.

④ Measure the distance between a straight 20 m line and the track made by the machine. (Dimension a)

⑤ After measuring the tracking in forward travel, turn the upperstructure 180° and measure that in reverse travel.

⑥ Repeat steps ④ and ⑤ three times and calculate the average values.



(210-7) 7-7(2)

(4) Evaluation

Mistrack should be within the following specifications.

Unit : mm / 20 m

Model	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
HX380 L	200 below	250	-

6) SWING SPEED

(1) Measure the time required to swing three complete turns.

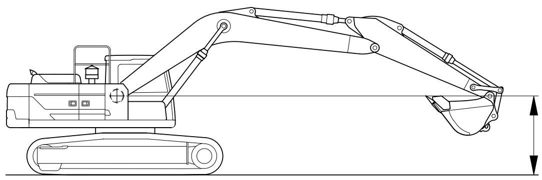
(2) Preparation

① Check the lubrication of the swing gear and swing bearing.

② Place the machine on flat, solid ground with ample space for swinging. Do not conduct this test on slopes.

③ With the arm rolled out and bucket rolled in, hold the bucket so that the height of the bucket pin is the same as the boom foot pin. The bucket must be empty.

④ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



300L7MS05

(3) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.

· Power mode switch : P mode

② Operate swing control lever fully.

③ Swing 1 turn and measure time taken to swing next 3 revolutions.

④ Repeat steps ② and ③ three time and calculate the average values.

(4) Evaluation

The time required for 3 swings should meet the following specifications.

Unit : Seconds / 3 revolutions

Model	Power mode switch	Standard	Maximum allowable
HX380 L	P mode	19.0±1.5	23.9

7) SWING FUNCTION DRIFT CHECK

(1) Measure the swing drift on the bearing outer circumference when stopping after a 360˚ full speed swing.

(2) Preparation

① Check the lubrication of the swing gear and swing bearing.

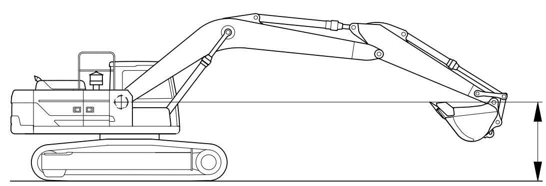
② Place the machine on flat, solid ground with ample space for swinging. Do not conduct this test on slopes.

③ With the arm rolled out and bucket rolled in, hold the bucket so that the height of the bucket pin is the same as the boom foot pin. The bucket must be empty.

④ Make two chalk marks: one on the swing bearing and one directly below it on the track frame.

⑤ Swing the upperstructure 360˚.

⑥ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



300L7MS05

(3) Measurement

① Conduct this test in the M mode.

② Select the following switch positions.

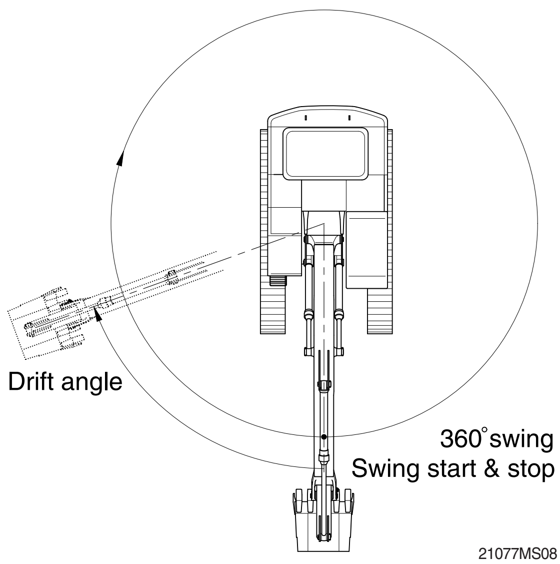
· Power mode switch : P mode

③ Operate the swing control lever fully and return it to the neutral position when the mark on the upperstructure aligns with that on track frame after swinging 360°

④ Measure the distance between the two marks.

⑤ Align the marks again, swing 360° , then test the opposite direction.

⑥ Repeat steps ④ and ⑤ three times each and calculate the average values.



21077MS08

(4) Evaluation

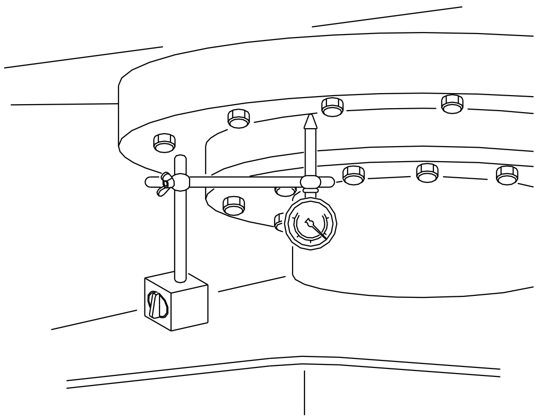
The measured drift angle should be within the following specifications.

Unit : Degree

Model	Power mode switch	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
HX380 L	P mode	90 below	112.5	

8) SWING BEARING PLAY

(1) Measure the swing bearing play using a dial gauge to check the wear of bearing races and balls.



(210-7) 7-10(1)

(2) Preparation

① Check swing bearing mounting cap screws for loosening.

② Check the lubrication of the swing bearing. Confirm that bearing rotation is smooth and without noise.

③ Install a dial gauge on the track frame as shown, using a magnetic base.

④ Position the upperstructure so that the boom aligns with the tracks facing towards the front idlers.

⑤ Position the dial gauge so that its needle point comes into contact with the bottom face of the bearing outer race.

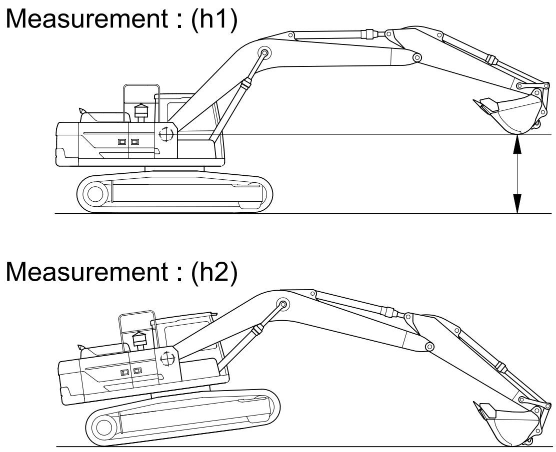
⑥ Bucket should be empty.

(3) Measurement

① With the arm rolled out and bucket rolled in, hold the bottom face of the bucket to the same height of the boom foot pin.
Record the dial gauge reading (h1).

② Lower the bucket to the ground and use it to raise the front idler 50 cm.
Record the dial gauge reading (h2).

③ Calculate bearing play (H) from this data (h1 and h2) as follows.
H=h2-h1



300L7MS06

(4) Evaluation

The measured drift should be within the following specifications.

Unit : mm

Model	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
HX380 L	0.5 ~ 1.5	3.0	

9) HYDRAULIC CYLINDER CYCLE TIME

(1) Measure the cycle time of the boom, standard arm, and standard bucket cylinders.

(2) Preparation

① To measure the cycle time of the boom cylinders:
With the arm rolled out and the empty bucket rolled out, lower the bucket to the ground, as shown.

② To measure the cycle time of the arm cylinder.
With the empty bucket rolled in, position the arm so that it is vertical to the ground. Lower the boom until the bucket is 0.5 m above the ground.

③ To measure the cycle time of the bucket cylinder.
The empty bucket should be positioned at midstroke between roll-in and roll-out, so that the sideplate edges are vertical to the ground.

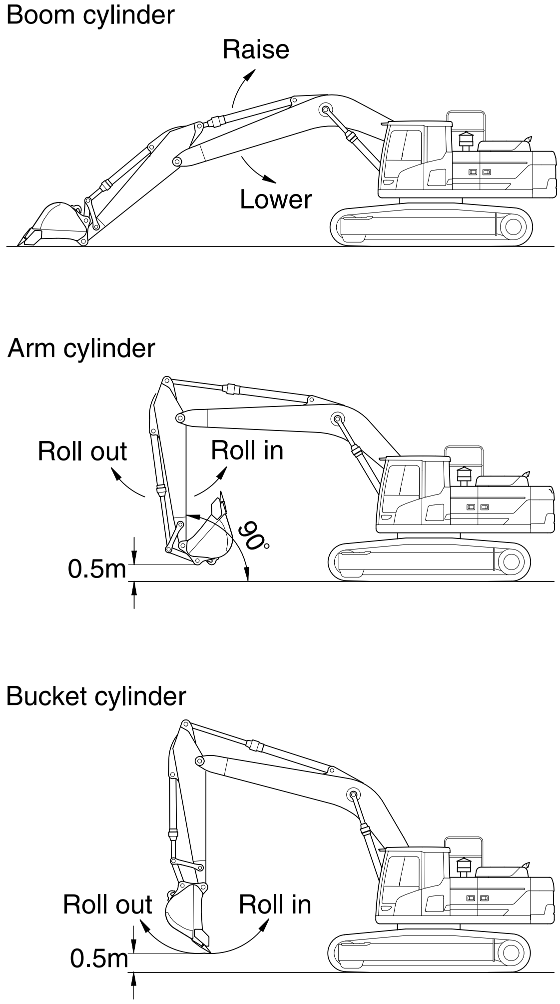
④ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.

(3) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.
· Power mode switch : P mode

② To measure cylinder cycle times.

- Boom cylinders.
Measure the time it takes to raise the boom, and the time it takes to lower the boom. To do so, position the boom at one stroke end then move the control lever to the other stroke end as quickly as possible.
- Arm cylinder.
Measure the time it takes to roll in the arm, and the time it takes to roll out the arm. To do so, position the bucket at one stroke end, then move the control lever to the other stroke end as quickly as possible.



300L7MS07

- Bucket cylinders
  Measure the time it takes to roll in the bucket, and the time it takes to roll out the bucket. To do so, position the bucket at one stroke end, then move the control lever to the other stroke end as quickly as possible.
- Repeat each measurement 3 times and calculate the average values.

(4) Evaluation

The average measured time should meet the following specifications.

Unit : Seconds

Model	Function	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
HX380 L	Boom raise	3.9±0.4	4.8	
	Boom lower	2.5±0.4	3.6	
	Arm in	3.2±0.4	3.9	
	Arm out	3.1±0.3	3.4	
	Bucket load	2.8±0.4	3.6	
	Bucket dump	2.4±0.3	3.5	

10) DIG FUNCTION DRIFT CHECK

(1) Measure dig function drift, which can be caused by oil leakage in the control valve and boom, standard arm, and standard bucket cylinders, with the loaded bucket. When testing the dig function drift just after cylinder replacement, slowly operate each cylinder to its stroke end to purge air.

(2) Preparation

① Load bucket fully. Instead of loading the bucket, weight(W) of the following specification can be used.

· $W = M^3 \times 1.5$

Where :

M^3 = Bucket heaped capacity (m^3)

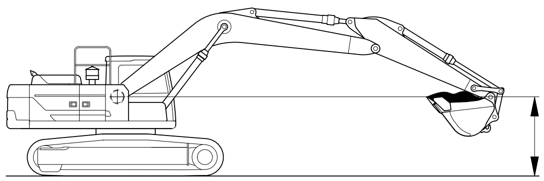
1.5 = Soil specific gravity

② Position the arm cylinder with the rod 20 to 30 mm extended from the fully retracted position.

③ Position the bucket cylinder with the rod 20 to 30 mm retracted from the fully extended position.

④ With the arm rolled out and bucket rolled in, hold the bucket so that the height of the bucket pin is the same as the boom foot pin.

⑤ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



300L7MS08

(3) Measurement

① Stop the engine.

② Five minutes after the engine has been stopped, measure the changes in the positions of the boom, arm and bucket cylinders.

③ Repeat step ② three times and calculate the average values.

(4) The measured drift should be within the following specifications.

Unit : mm / 5min

Model	Drift to be measured	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
HX380 L	Boom cylinder	10 below	15	
	Arm cylinder	10 below	15	
	Bucket cylinder	40 below	50	

11) CONTROL LEVER OPERATING FORCE

(1) Use a spring scale to measure the maximum resistance of each control lever at the middle of the grip.

(2) Preparation

① Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.

(3) Measurement

① Start the engine.

② Select the following switch positions.

· Power mode switch : P mode

③ Operate each boom, arm, bucket and swing lever at full stroke and measure the maximum operating force for each.

④ Lower the bucket to the ground to raise one track off the ground. Operate the travel lever at full stroke and measure the maximum operating force required. When finished, lower the track and then jack-up the other track.

⑤ Repeat steps ③ and ④ three times and calculate the average values.

(4) Evaluation

The measured operating force should be within the following specifications.

Unit : kgf

Model	Kind of lever	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
HX380 L	Boom lever	1.3 or below	1.7	
	Arm lever	1.3 or below	1.7	
	Bucket lever	1.3 or below	1.7	
	Swing lever	1.3 or below	1.7	
	Travel lever	2.1 or below	3.15	

12) CONTROL LEVER STROKE

(1) Measure each lever stroke at the lever top using a ruler.

※ When the lever has play, take a half of this value and add it to the measured stroke.

(2) Preparation

Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.

(3) Measurement

① Stop the engine.

② Measure each lever stroke at the lever top from neutral to the stroke end using a ruler.

③ Repeat step ② three times and calculate the average values.

(4) Evaluation

The measured drift should be within the following specifications.

Unit : mm

Model	Kind of lever	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
HX380 L	Boom lever	90±10	115	
	Arm lever	90±10	115	
	Bucket lever	90±10	115	
	Swing lever	90±10	115	
	Travel lever	142±10	178	

13) PILOT PRIMARY PRESSURE

(1) Preparation

① Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.

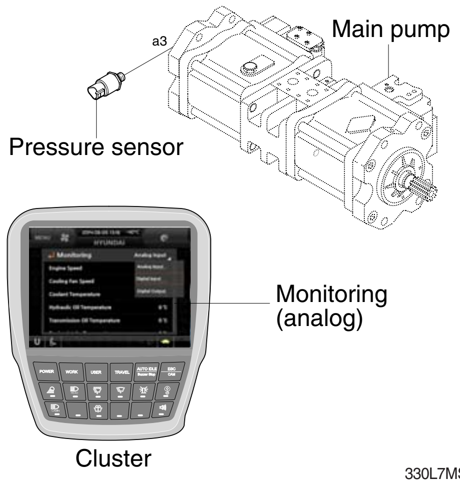
(2) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.

· Power mode switch : P mode

· Auto decel switch : OFF

② Measure the primary pilot pressure by the monitoring menu of the cluster.



330L7MS02

(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should meet the following specifications:

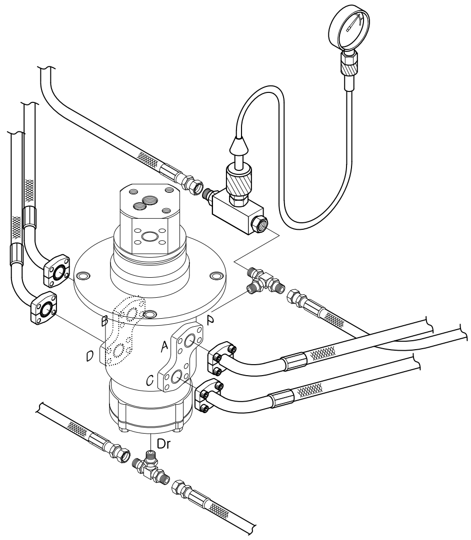
Unit : kgf / cm2

Model	Engine speed	Standard	Allowable limits	Remarks
HX380 L	P mode	40^{+2}_{0}	-	

14) FOR TRAVEL SPEED SELECTING PRESSURE:

(1) Preparation

① Stop the engine.
② Loosen the cap and relieve the pressure in the tank by pushing the top of the air breather.
③ To measure the speed selecting pressure: Install a connector and pressure gauge assembly to turning joint P port as shown.
④ Start the engine and check for on leakage from the adapter.
⑤ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



21077MS13

(2) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.
 · Power mode switch : P mode
 · Travel mode switch : 1 speed
  2 speed
② Measure the travel speed selecting pressure in the Hi or Lo mode.
③ Lower the bucket to the ground to raise the track off the ground. Operate the travel lever at full stroke and measure the fast speed pressure.
④ Repeat steps ② and ③ three times and calculate the average values.

(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should be within the following specifications.

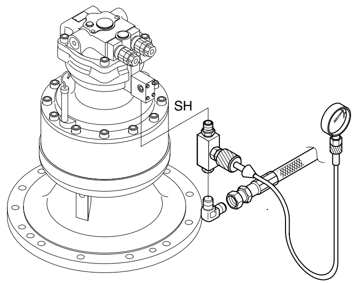
Unit : kgf / cm^2

Model	Travel speed mode	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
HX380 L	1 Speed	0	-	
	2 Speed	40±5	-	

15) SWING PARKING BRAKE RELEASING PRESSURE

(1) Preparation

① Stop the engine.
② Loosen the cap and relieve the pressure in the tank by pushing the top of the air breather.
③ The pressure release L wrench to bleed air.
④ Install a connector and pressure gauge assembly to swing motor SH port, as shown.
⑤ Start the engine and check for oil leakage from the adapter.
⑥ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



32097MS02

(2) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.
· Power mode switch : P mode
② Operate the swing function or arm roll in function and measure the swing brake control pressure with the brake disengaged. Release the control lever to return to neutral and measure the control pressure when the brake is applied.
Repeat step ② three times and calculate the average values.

(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should be within the following specifications.

Unit : kgf / cm^2

Model	Description	Standard	Allowable limits	Remarks
HX380 L	Brake disengaged	40	31~49	
	Brake applied	0	-	

16) MAIN PUMP DELIVERY PRESSURE

(1) Preparation

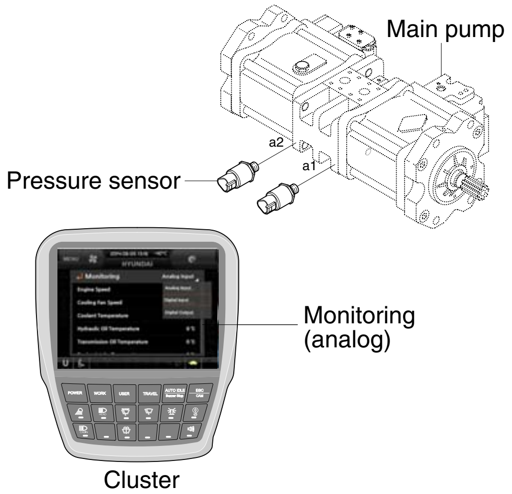
① Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.

(2) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.

· Power mode switch : P mode

② Measure the main pump delivery pressure in the P mode (high idle).



330L7MS03

(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should meet the following specifications.

Unit : kgf / cm^2

Model	Engine speed	Standard	Allowable limits	Remarks
HX380 L	High idle	40±5	-	

17) SYSTEM PRESSURE REGULATOR RELIEF SETTING

(1) Preparation

① Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.

(2) Measurement

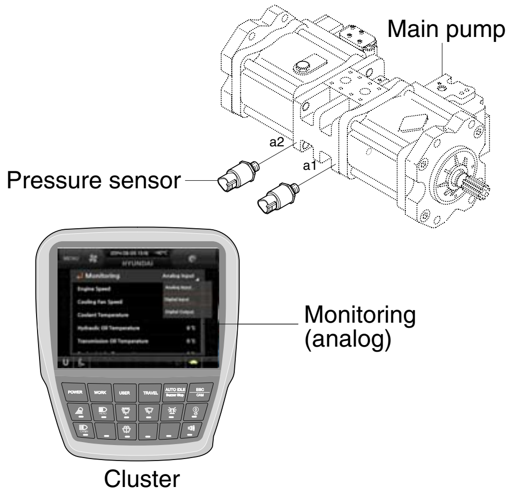
① Select the following switch positions.

· Power mode switch : P mode

② Slowly operate each control lever of boom, arm and bucket functions at full stroke over relief and measure the pressure.

③ In the swing function, place bucket against an immovable object and measure the relief pressure.

④ In the travel function, lock undercarriage with an immovable object and measure the relief pressure.



330L7MS03

(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should be within the following specifications.

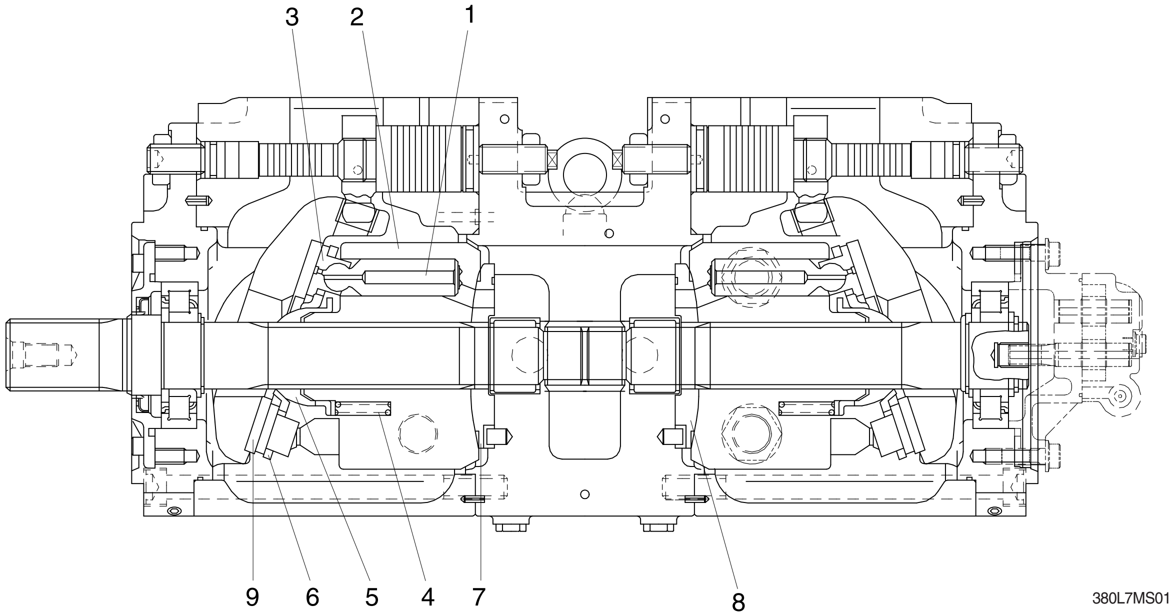
Unit : kgf / cm^2

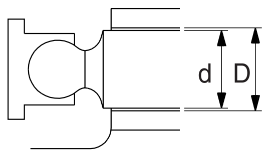
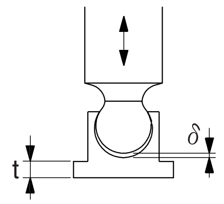
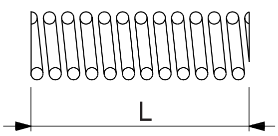
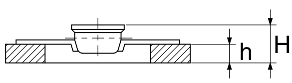
Model	Function to be tested	Standard	Port relief setting
HX380 L	Boom, Arm, Bucket	350 (380)±10	390±10
	Travel	360±10	-
	Swing	300±10	-

(　) : Power boost

GROUP 2 MAJOR COMPONENT

1. MAIN PUMP



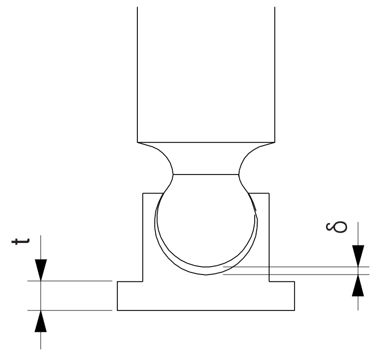
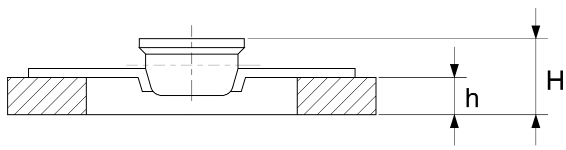
Part name & inspection item		Standard dimension	Recommended replacement value	Counter measures
Clearance between piston(1) & cylinder bore(2) (D-d)		0.043	0.070	Replace piston or cylinder.
Play between piston(1) & shoe caulking section(3) (δ)		0-0.1	0.3	Replace assembly of piston & shoe.
Thickness of shoe (t)		5.4	5.0	
Free height of cylinder spring(4) (L)		47.9	47.1	Replace cylinder spring.
Combined height of set plate(5) & spherical bushing(6) (H-h)		23.8	22.8	Replace retainer or set plate.
Surface roughness for valve plate (sliding face) (7,8), swash plate (shoe plate area) (9), & cylinder(2) (sliding face)	Surface roughness necessary to be corrected	3z		Lapping
	Standard surface roughness (corrected value)	0.4z or lower		

2. MAIN CONTROL VALVE

Part name	Inspection item	Criteria & measure
Casing	· Existence of scratches, rust or corrosion.	· In case of damage in following section, replace casing. - Sliding sections of casing hole and spool, especially land sections applied with held pressure. - Seal pocket section where spool is inserted. - Sealing section of port where O-ring contacts. - Sealing section of each relief valve for main and port. - Sealing section of plug. - Other damages that may damage normal function.
Spool	· Existence of scratch, gnawing, rusting or corrosion. · O-ring seal sections at both ends. · Insert spool into casing hole, rotate and reciprocate it.	· Replacement when its outside sliding section has scratch (especially on seals-contacting section). · Replacement when its sliding section has scratch. · Correction or replacement when O-ring is damaged or when spool does not move smoothly.
Poppet	· Damage of spring · Damage of poppet · Insert poppet into casing and function it.	· Replacement. · Correction or replacement when sealing is incomplete. · Normal when it can function lightly and smoothly without sticking.
Spring and related parts	· Rusting, corrosion, deformation or breakage of spring, spring seat, plug or cover.	· Replacement for significant damage.
Around seal for spool	· External oil leakage. · Rusting, corrosion or deformation of seal plate.	· Correction or replacement. · Correction or replacement.
Main relief valve, port relief valve & negative control relief valve	· External rusting or damage. · Contacting face of valve seat. · Contacting face of poppet. · O-rings and back up rings.	· Replacement. · Replacement when damaged. · Replacement when damaged. · Replacement in principle.

3. SWING DEVICE

1) WEARING PARTS

Inspection item	Standard dimension	Recommended replacement value	Counter measures
Clearance between piston and cylinder block bore	0.028	0.058	Replace piston or cylinder block
Play between piston and shoe caulking section (δ)	0	0.3	Replace assembly of piston and shoe
Thickness of shoe (t)	5.5	5.3	Replace assembly of piston and shoe
Combined height of retainer plate and spherical bushing (H-h)	6.5	6.0	Replace set of retainer plate and sperical bushing
Thickness of friction plate	4.0	3.6	Replace
			

2) SLIDING PARTS

Part name	Standard roughness	Allowable roughness	Remark
Shoe	0.8-Z (Ra=0.2) (LAPPING)	3-Z (Ra=0.8)	
Shoe plate	0.4-Z (Ra=0.1) (LAPPING)	3-Z (Ra=0.8)	
Cylinder	1.6-Z (Ra=0.4) (LAPPING)	12.5-Z (Ra=3.2)	
Valve plate	0.8-Z (Ra=0.2) (LAPPING)	6.3-Z (Ra=1.6)	

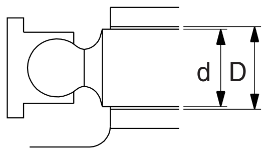
4. TRAVEL MOTOR

Replace parts in accordance with the following standards. However, if a part is damaged significantly in terms of its appearance, replace it irrespective of the standards.

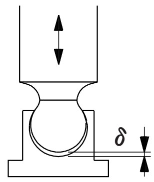
1) WEARING PARTS (TYPE 1)

Part name & inspection item	Standard dimension	Recommended value for replacement	Remedy
Clearance between piston & cylinder bore (D-d)	0.052 mm	0.077 mm	Replacement
Clearance caulked part between piston and shoe (δ)	0.1 mm	0.3 mm	Replacement
Thickness of shoe	5.5 mm	5.3 mm	Replacement
Assembled height of spherical bush and set plate (H-h)	23.8 mm	23.3 mm	Replacement as a set
Free length of cylinder spring	40.9 mm	40.3 mm	Replacement
Shaft over pin dia. Output spline Cylinder spline	43.91 (ø 5) 49.06 (ø 5)	43.31 mm 48.46 mm	Replacement if either one reaches replacement value.
Spline over dia. Spline in cylinder Spline in spherical bushing	35.25 (ø 5)	35.75 mm	Replacement
Thickness of separation plate Thickness of friction plate	1.5 mm 3.9 mm	1.3 mm 3.7 mm	Replacement
Free length of brake spring	42.4 mm	41.4 mm	Replacement
Displacement over teeth Over pin dia. of friction plate internal teeth	50.02 (7teeth) 152.97 (ø 5)	49.42 mm 153.57 mm	Replacement Replacement
Roughness of sliding surfaces Swash plate/shoe Cylinder block/valve plate	0.4 - z 0.4 - z	3 - z 3 - z	Each independent lapping Mutual lapping
Roller bearing Needle bearing	-	-	Replacement if flaking is found on rolling surface.
O-ring Oil seal	-	-	Replacement at every disassembly, in principle.

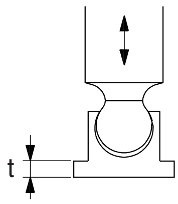
Part name & inspection item	Standard dimension	Recommended value for replacement	Remedy
Bolt	-	-	Replacement if elongation is found.



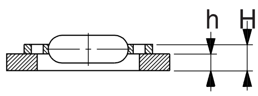
clearance between piston
and cylinder bore : D-d



Play at caulking between piston and shoe : δ



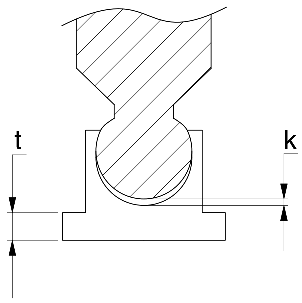
Thickness of shoe : t

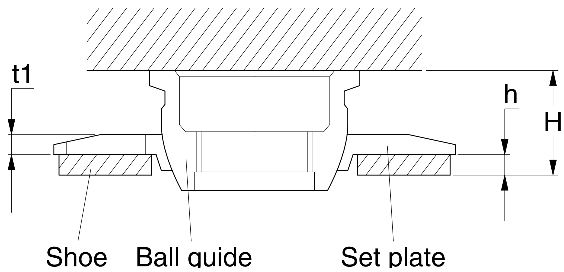


Assembled height of set plate
and spherical bushing : H-h

2) WEARING PARTS (TYPE 2)

Part name & inspection item	Standard dimension	Recommended value for replacement	Remedy
Clearance between piston and cylinder block bore	0.05 mm	0.065 mm	Replace piston or cylinder block
Play between piston and shoe caulking section (k)	0	0.3 mm	Replace assembly of piston and shoe
Thickness of shoe (t)	5.5 mm	5.2 mm	Replace assembly of piston and shoe
Combined height of set plate and ball guide (H-h)	13.5 mm	13.3 mm	Replace set of set plate and ball guide
Thickness of set plate (t1)	6 mm	5.8 mm	If the plate thickness is below 5.8 mm, change the set plate and ball guide at the same time



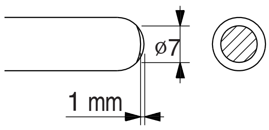


3) REDUCTION GEAR

Part name & inspection item		Standard dimension	Recommended value for replacement	Remedy
Pitting or crack of gear		-	Pitting area rate : 10%	Replacement pitting or crack is found
Motor driving gear external spline		Overpin 43.91 (ø5)	43.31 mm	(Z=14)
No. 1 sun gar internal spline		Overpin 30.25 (ø5)	30.85 mm	Replacement (Z=14)
Reduction ratio i = 70.145	No. 1 sun gear	Displacement 42.22 (4teeth)	41.92 mm	Do. (Z=23)
	No. 1 planetary gear	Displacement 43.98 (4teeth)	43.68 mm	Do. (Z=26)
No. 1 carrier internal spline		Overpin 81.562 (ø5)	82.162 mm	Do. (Z=23)
No. 2 sun gear		Displacement 31.40 (3teeth)	31.10 mm	Do. (Z=23)
No. 2 planetary gear		Displacement 43.67 (4teeth)	43.37 mm	Do. (Z=26)
No. 2 carrier internal spline		Overpin 112.24 (ø10)	112.84 mm	Do. (Z=25)
No. 3 sun gear		Displacement 54.92 (4teeth)	54.62 mm	Do. (Z=25)
No. 3 planetary gear		Displacement 54.93 (3teeth)	54.63 mm	Do. (Z=22)
Ring gear (3rd stages)		Overpin 348.74 (ø8.5)	349.34 mm	Do. (Z=71)
Crack and flaking of bearing inner/outer races and rollers		-	-	Replacement if crack or flaking is found.
Crack and flaking of 1st/2nd/3rd planetary gears and pins		-	-	Replacement if crack or flaking is found.

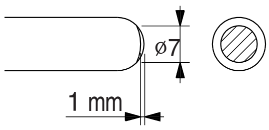
Part name & inspection item	Standard dimension	Recommended value for replacement	Remedy
Radial clearance of needle bearing	0.01-0.04 mm	0.07 mm	Replacement of abnormal parts as a set.
Crack of spline contact part	-	-	Replacement if such damage as crack, crevice of chipping is found.
Backlash of spline contact part	0.1-0.3 mm	0.5 mm	Dimension check and replacement according to following standards.
Thrust ring (026)	7 mm thick	6.6 mm	Replacement if severe wear or seizure is found on sliding surface.
Thrust ring (027)	8 mm thick	7.6 mm	
Floating seal	-	-	Replacement of scratch or rust is found in sliding surface. Replacement if O-ring is deformed of damaged.
Gear oil	SAE 85W-140 (API GL-5)	-	1st time : 500hr 2nd time and later : Every 2000hr After disassembling, fill with new oil without fail. The above times are measured with engine hour meter.

5. RCV LEVER

Maintenance check item	Criteria	Remark
Leakage	The valve is to be replaced when the leakage becomes more than 1000 cc/m at neutral handle position, or more than 2000 cc/m during operation.	Conditions : Primary pressure : 40 kgf/cm^2 Oil viscosity : 23 cSt
Spool	This is to be replaced when the sliding surface has worn more than 10 μ m, compared with the non-sliding surface.	The leakage at the left condition is estimated to be nearly equal to the above leakage.
Push rod	 This is to be replaced when the top end has worn more than 1 mm.	
Play at operating section	The pin, shaft, and joint of the operating section are to be replaced when their plays become more than 2 mm due to wears or so on.	When a play is due to looseness of a tightened section, adjust it.
Operation stability	When abnormal noises, hunting, primary pressure drop, etc. are generated during operation, and these cannot be remedied, referring to section 6. Troubleshooting, replace the related parts.	

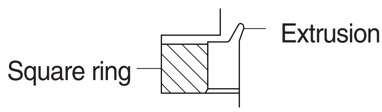
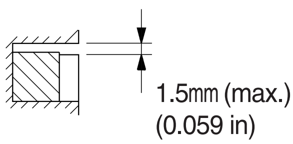
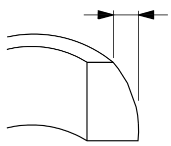
Notes 1. It is desirable to replace seal materials, such as O-rings, every disassembling. However, they may be reused, after being confirmed to be free of damage.

6. RCV PEDAL

Maintenance check item	Criteria	Remark
Leakage	The valve is to be replaced when the leakage effect to the system. For example, the primary pressure drop.	Conditions : Primary pressure : 40 kgf/cm^2 Oil viscosity : 23 cSt
Spool	This is to be replaced when the sliding surface has worn more than 10 μ m, compared with the non-sliding surface.	The leakage at the left condition is estimated to be nearly equal to the above leakage.
Push rod	 This is to be replaced when the top end has worn more than 1 mm.	
Play at operating section	The pin, shaft, and joint of the operating section are to be replaced when their plays become more than 2 mm due to wears or so on.	When a play is due to looseness of a tightened section, adjust it.
Operation stability	When abnormal noises, hunting, primary pressure drop, etc. are generated during operation, and these cannot be remedied, referring to section 6. Troubleshooting, replace the related parts.	

Notes 1. It is desirable to replace seal materials, such as O-rings, every disassembling. However, they may be reused, after being confirmed to be free of damage.

7. TURNING JOINT

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Part name</th><th>Maintenance standards</th><th>Remedy</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="7">Body, Stem</td><td>Sliding surface with sealing sections.</td><td>Plating worn or peeled due to seizure or contamination.</td><td>Replace</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Sliding surface between body and stem other than sealing section.</td><td>· Worn abnormality or damaged more than 0.1 mm (0.0039 in) in depth due to seizure contamination.</td><td>Replace</td></tr>
<tr><td>· Damaged more than 0.1 mm (0.0039 in) in depth.</td><td>Smooth with oilstone.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Sliding surface with thrust plate.</td><td>· Worn more than 0.5 mm (0.02 in) or abnormality.</td><td>Replace</td></tr>
<tr><td>· Worn less than 0.5 mm (0.02 in).</td><td>Smooth</td></tr>
<tr><td>· Damage due to seizure or contamination remediable within wear limit (0.5 mm) (0.02 in).</td><td>Smooth</td></tr>
<tr style="display:none"></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Cover</td><td rowspan="3">Sliding surface with thrust plate.</td><td>· Worn more than 0.5 mm (0.02 in) or abnormality.</td><td>Replace</td></tr>
<tr><td>· Worn less than 0.5 mm (0.02 in).</td><td>Smooth</td></tr>
<tr><td>· Damage due to seizure or contamination remediable within wear limit (0.5 mm) (0.02 in).</td><td>Replace</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Seal set</td><td>-</td><td>· Extruded excessively from seal groove square ring.

</td><td>Replace</td></tr>
<tr><td>-</td><td>· Slipper ring 1.5 mm (0.059 in) narrower than seal groove, or narrower than back ring.

</td><td>Replace</td></tr>
<tr><td>-</td><td>· Worn more than 0.5 mm (0.02 in) ~ 1.5 mm (MAX.) (0.059 in)
</td><td>Replace</td></tr>
</table>

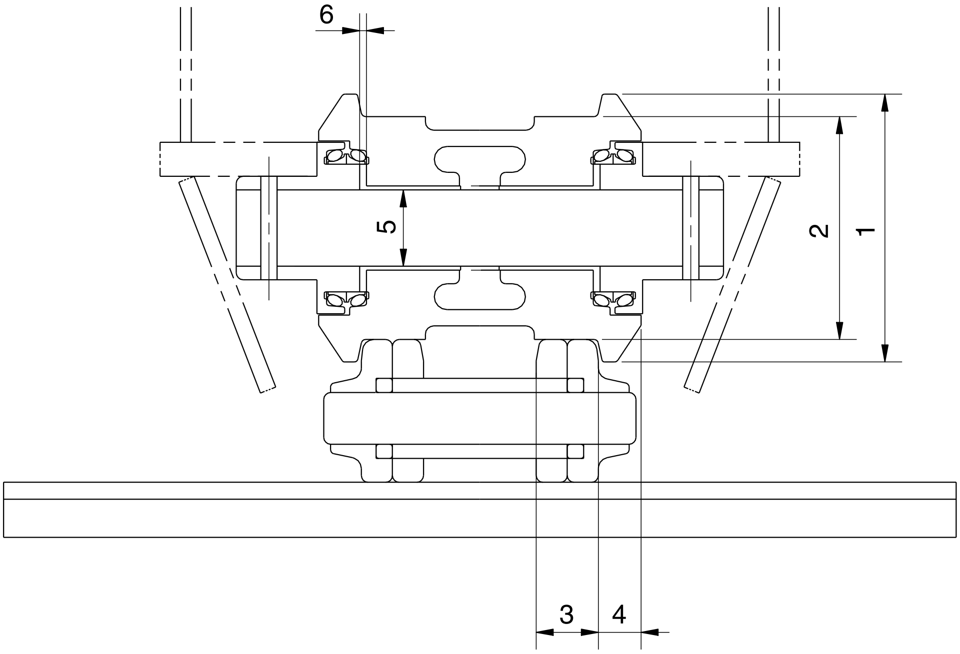
8. CYLINDER

Part name	Inspecting section	Inspection item	Remedy
Piston rod	· Neck of rod pin	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Weld on rod hub	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Stepped part to which piston is attached.	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Threads	· Presence of crack	· Recondition or replace
	· Plated surface	· Plating is not worn off to base metal. · Rust is not present on plating. · Scratches are not present.	· Replace or replate · Replace or replate · Recondition, replate or replace
	· Rod	· Wear of O.D.	· Recondition, replate or replace
	· Bushing at mounting part	· Wear of I.D.	· Replace
Cylinder tube	· Weld on bottom	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Weld on head	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Weld on hub	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Tube interior	· Presence of faults	· Replace if oil leak is seen
	· Bushing at mounting part	· Wear on inner surface	· Replace
Gland	· Bushing	· Flaw on inner surface	· Replace if flaw is deeper than coating

GROUP 3 TRACK AND WORK EQUIPMENT

1. TRACK

1) TRACK ROLLER

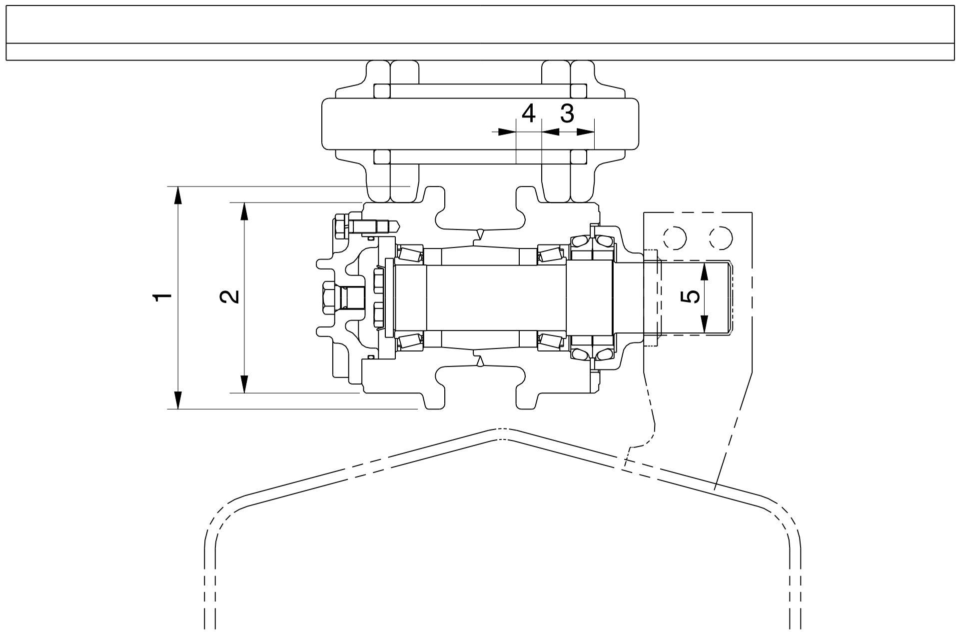


21037MS01

Unit : ㎜

No.	Check item	Criteria				Remedy
1	Outside diameter of flange	Standard size		Repair limit		Rebuild or replace
		ø 250		-		
2	Outside diameter of tread	ø 200		ø 188		
3	Width of tread	54.6		60.6		
4	Width of flange	34.4		-		
5	Clearance between shaft and bushin	Standard size & tolerance		Standard clearance	Clearance limit	Replace bushing
		Shaft	Hole			
		ø 85 $^{-0.25}_{-0.35}$	ø 85 $^{+0.176}_{+0.029}$	0.279 to 0.526	2.0	
6	Side clearance of roller (Both side)	Standard clearance		Clearance limit		Replace
		0.12~1.3		2.0		

2) CARRIER ROLLER

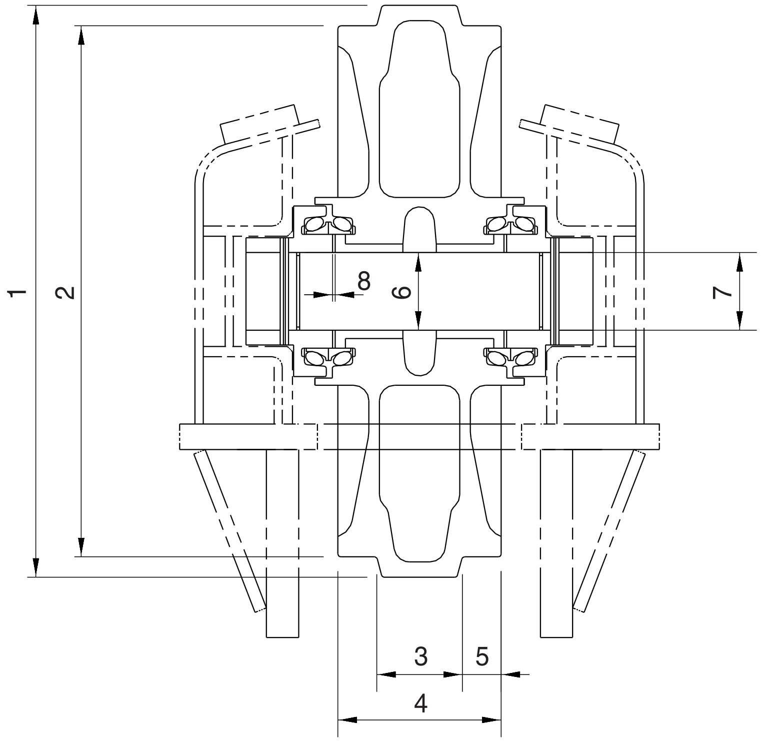


21037MS02

Unit : mm

No.	Check item	Criteria				Remedy
1	Outside diameter of flange	Standard size		Repair limit		Rebuild or replace
		ø 200		-		
2	Outside diameter of tread	ø 191		ø 181		
3	Width of tread	51		56		
4	Width of flange	20		-		
5	Clearance between shaft and support	Standard size & tolerance		Standard clearance	Clearance limit	Replace bushing
		Shaft	Hole			
		ø 57.15 $^{0}_{-0.1}$	ø 57.15 $^{+0.3}_{+0.1}$	0.1 to 0.4	1.2	

3) IDLER

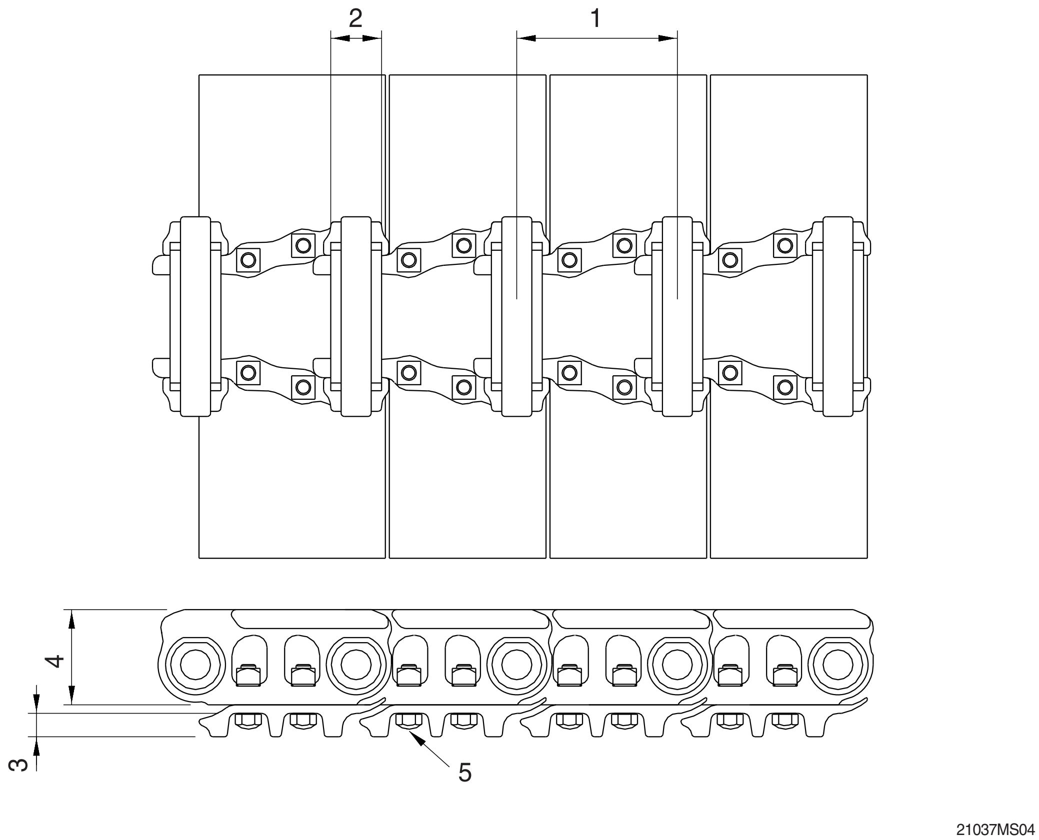


21037MS03

Unit : mm

<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Check item</th><th colspan="4">Criteria</th><th>Remedy</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">1</td><td rowspan="2">Outside diameter of protrusion</td><td colspan="2">Standard size</td><td colspan="2">Repair limit</td><td rowspan="4">Rebuild or replace</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Ø646</td><td colspan="2">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>Outside diameter of tread</td><td colspan="2">Ø594</td><td colspan="2">Ø580</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>Width of protrusion</td><td colspan="2">102</td><td colspan="2">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>Total width</td><td colspan="2">203</td><td colspan="2">-</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>Width of tread</td><td colspan="2">50.5</td><td colspan="2">57.5</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">6</td><td rowspan="3">Clearance between shaft and bushing</td><td colspan="2">Standard size & tolerance</td><td rowspan="2">Standard clearance</td><td rowspan="2">Clearance limit</td><td rowspan="3">Replace bushing</td></tr>
<tr><td>Shaft</td><td>Hole</td></tr>
<tr><td>Ø85 $^{0}_{-0.035}$</td><td>Ø85.35 $^{+0.05}_{0}$</td><td>0.35 to 0.435</td><td>2.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>Clearance between shaft and support</td><td>Ø85 $^{0}_{-0.035}$</td><td>Ø85 $^{+0.09}_{+0.036}$</td><td>0.036 to 0.125</td><td>1.2</td><td>Replace</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">8</td><td rowspan="2">Side clearance of idler
(Both side)</td><td colspan="2">Standard clearance</td><td colspan="2">Clearance limit</td><td rowspan="2">Replace</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">0.25 to 1.2</td><td colspan="2">2.0</td></tr>
</table>

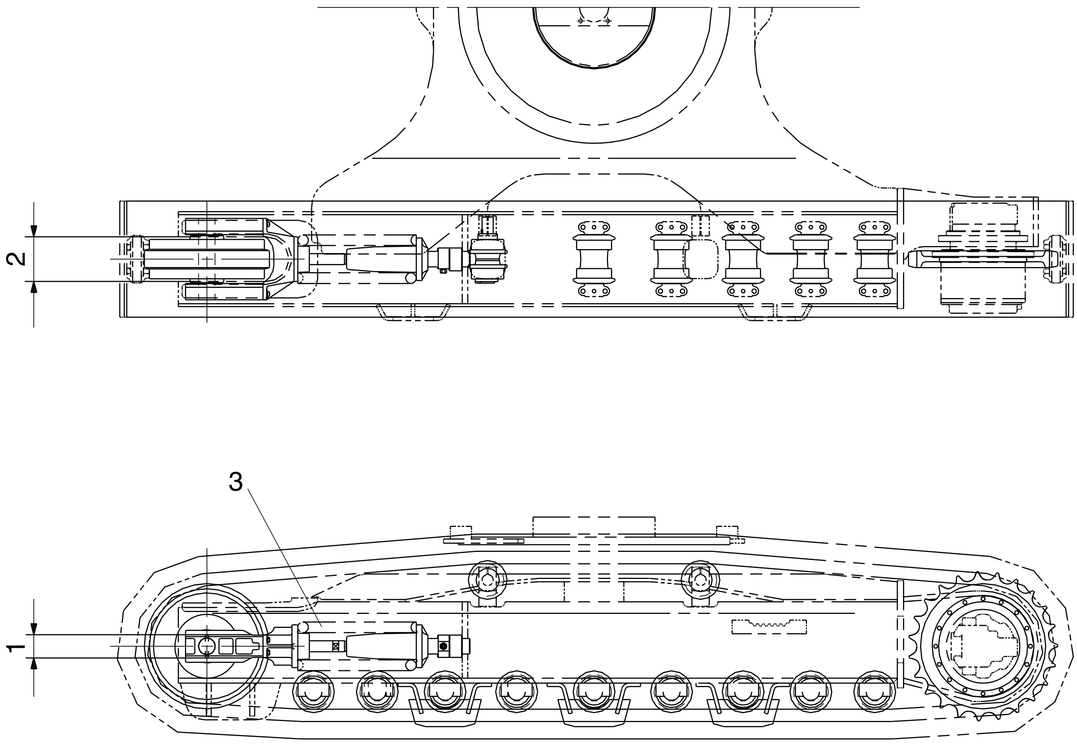
4) TRACK



Unit : mm

No.	Check item	Criteria		Remedy
1	Link pitch	Standard size	Repair limit	Turn or replace
		215.9	220.9	
2	Outside diameter of bushing	ø 71	ø 60.4	Rebuild or replace
3	Height of grouser	36	21	
4	Height of link	129	115	
5	Tightening torque	Initial tightening torque : 140 ± 14 kgf · m		Retighten

5) TRACK FRAME AND RECOIL SPRING

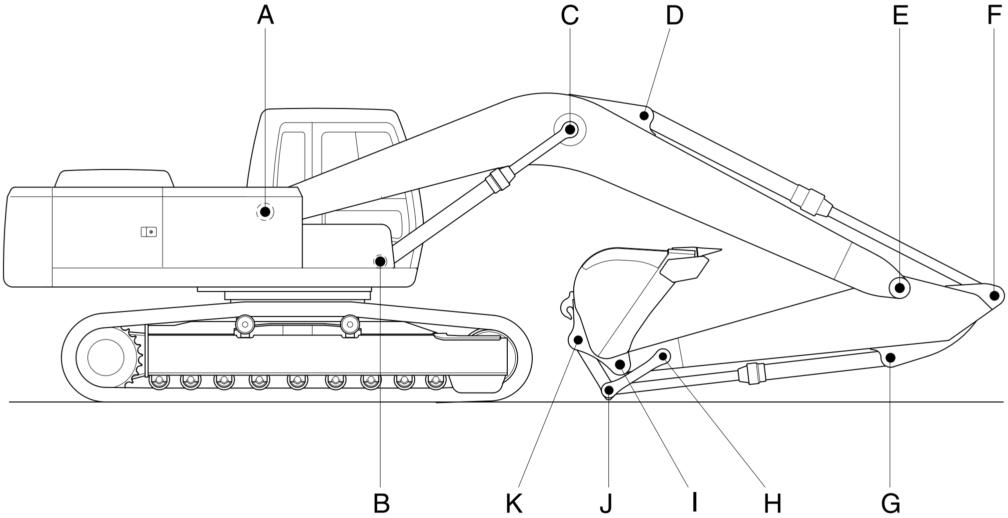


21037MS05

Unit : mm

<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Check item</th><th colspan="5">Criteria</th><th>Remedy</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">1</td><td rowspan="3">Vertical width of idler guide</td><td></td><td colspan="1">Standard size</td><td colspan="2">Tolerance</td><td>Repair limit</td><td rowspan="5">Rebuild or replace</td></tr>
<tr><td>Track frame</td><td>123</td><td colspan="2">+2
-1</td><td>127</td></tr>
<tr><td>Idler support</td><td>120</td><td colspan="2">0
- 1.5</td><td>116</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">2</td><td rowspan="2">Horizontal width of idler guide</td><td>Track frame</td><td>292</td><td colspan="2">+2
-1</td><td>296</td></tr>
<tr><td>Idler support</td><td>290</td><td colspan="2">-</td><td>287</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">3</td><td rowspan="3">Recoil spring</td><td colspan="3">Standard size</td><td colspan="2">Repair limit</td><td rowspan="3">Replace</td></tr>
<tr><td>Free length</td><td>Installation length</td><td>Installation load</td><td>Free length</td><td>Installation load</td></tr>
<tr><td>ø 254 × 740</td><td>595</td><td>24500 kg</td><td>-</td><td>19600 kg</td></tr>
</table>

2. WORK EQUIPMENT



21077MS20

Unit : ㎜

Mark	Measuring point (Pin and Bushing)	Normal value	Pin		Bushing		Remedy & Remark
			Recomm. service limit	Limit of use	Recomm. service limit	Limit of use	
A	Boom Rear	120	119	118.5	120.5	121	Replacement
B	Boom Cylinder Head	100	99	98.5	100.5	101	〃
C	Boom Cylinder Rod	110	109	108.5	110.5	111	〃
D	Arm Cylinder Head	110	109	108.5	110.5	111	〃
E	Boom Front	110	109	108.5	110.5	111	〃
F	Arm Cylinder Rod	110	109	108.5	110.5	111	〃
G	Bucket Cylinder Head	90	89	88.5	90.5	91	〃
H	Arm Link	90	89	88.5	90.5	91	〃
I	Bucket and Arm Link	100	99	98.5	100.5	101	〃
J	Bucket Cylinder Rod	90	89	88.5	90.5	91	〃
K	Bucket Link	100	99	98.5	100.5	101	〃

SECTION 8 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

SECTION 8 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

GROUP 1 PRECAUTIONS

1. REMOVAL WORK

1) Lower the work equipment completely to the ground.
   If the coolant contains antifreeze, dispose of it correctly.

2) After disconnecting hoses or tubes, cover them or fit blind plugs to prevent dirt or dust from entering.

3) When draining oil, prepare a container of adequate size to catch the oil.

4) Confirm the match marks showing the installation position, and make match marks in the necessary places before removal to prevent any mistake when assembling.

5) To prevent any excessive force from being applied to the wiring, always hold the connectors when disconnecting the connectors.

6) Fit wires and hoses with tags to show their installation position to prevent any mistake when installing.

7) Check the number and thickness of the shims, and keep in a safe place.

8) When raising components, be sure to use lifting equipment of ample strength.

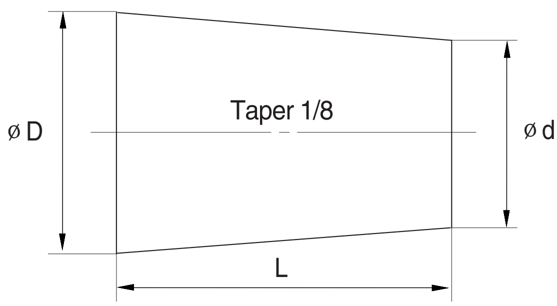
9) When using forcing screws to remove any components, tighten the forcing screws alternately.

10) Before removing any unit, clean the surrounding area and fit a cover to prevent any dust or dirt from entering after removal.

11) When removing hydraulic equipment, first release the remaining pressure inside the hydraulic tank and the hydraulic piping.

12) If the part is not under hydraulic pressure, the following corks can be used.

Nominal number	Dimensions		
	D	d	L
06	6	5	8
08	8	6.5	11
10	10	8.5	12
12	12	10	15
14	14	11.5	18
16	16	13.5	20
18	18	15	22
20	20	17	25
22	22	18.5	28
24	24	20	30
27	27	22.5	34



2. INSTALL WORK

1) Tighten all bolts and nuts (sleeve nuts) to the specified torque.

2) Install the hoses without twisting or interference.

3) Replace all gaskets, O-rings, cotter pins, and lock plates with new parts.

4) Bend the cotter pin or lock plate securely.

5) When coating with adhesive, clean the part and remove all oil and grease, then coat the threaded portion with 2-3 drops of adhesive.

6) When coating with gasket sealant, clean the surface and remove all oil and grease, check that there is no dirt or damage, then coat uniformly with gasket sealant.

7) Clean all parts, and correct any damage, dents, burrs, or rust.

8) Coat rotating parts and sliding parts with engine oil.

9) When press fitting parts, coat the surface with antifriction compound (LM-P).

10) After installing snap rings, check that the snap ring is fitted securely in the ring groove (check that the snap ring moves in the direction of rotation).

11) When connecting wiring connectors, clean the connector to remove all oil, dirt, or water, then connect securely.

12) When using eyebolts, check that there is no deformation or deterioration, and screw them in fully.

13) When tightening split flanges, tighten uniformly in turn to prevent excessive tightening on one side.

14) When operating the hydraulic cylinders for the first time after repairing and reassembling the hydraulic cylinders, pumps, or other hydraulic equipment or piping, always bleed the air from the hydraulic cylinders as follows:

(1) Start the engine and run at low idling.

(2) Operate the control lever and actuate the hydraulic cylinder 4-5 times, stopping 100mm before the end of the stroke.

(3) Next, operate the piston rod to the end of its stroke to relieve the circuit. (The air bleed valve is actuated to bleed the air.)

(4) After completing this operation, raise the engine speed to the normal operating condition.

※ If the hydraulic cylinder has been replaced, carry out this procedure before assembling the rod to the work equipment.

※ Carry out the same operation on machines that have been in storage for a long time after completion of repairs.

3. COMPLETING WORK

1) If the coolant has been drained, tighten the drain valve, and add water to the specified level. Run the engine to circulate the water through the system. Then check the water level again.

2) If the hydraulic equipment has been removed and installed again, add engine oil to the specified level. Run the engine to circulate the oil through the system. Then check the oil level again.

3) If the piping or hydraulic equipment, such as hydraulic cylinders, pumps, or motors, have been removed for repair, always bleed the air from the system after reassembling the parts.

4) Add the specified amount of grease (molybdenum disulphied grease) to the work equipment related parts.

GROUP 2 TIGHTENING TORQUE

1. MAJOR COMPONENTS

No.	Descriptions		Bolt size	Torque	
				kgf·m	lbf·ft
1	Engine	Engine mounting bolt (engine-bracket)	M12 × 1.75	10 ± 1.0	72.3 ± 7.2
2		Engine mounting bolt (bracket-frame)	M24 × 3.0	90 ± 9.0	651 ± 65
3		Radiator, oil cooler mounting bolt	M16 × 2.0	29.7 ± 4.5	215 ± 32.5
4		Coupling mounting socket bolt	M20 × 2.5	46.5 ±2.5	336 ±18.1
5		Fuel tank mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	46 ± 5.1	333 ± 36.9
6	Hydraulic system	Main pump housing mounting bolt	M10 × 1.5	4.8 ± 0.3	34.7 ± 2.2
7		Main pump mounting socket bolt	M20 × 2.5	46.5 ± 2.5	336 ± 18.1
8		Main control valve mounting bolt	M16 × 2.0	29.7 ± 4.5	215 ± 32.5
9		Hydraulic oil tank mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	57.9 ± 5.8	419 ± 42
10		Turning joint mounting bolt, nut	M12 × 1.75	12.3 ± 1.2	89.0 ± 8.7
11	Power train system	Swing motor mounting bolt	M24 × 3.0	97.8 ± 15	707 ± 108
12		Swing bearing upper part mounting bolt	M24 × 3.0	100 ± 10	723 ± 72.3
13		Swing bearing lower part mounting bolt	M24 × 3.0	100 ± 10	723 ± 72.3
14		Travel motor mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	57.9 ± 8.7	419 ± 62.9
15		Sprocket mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	57.9 ± 6.0	419 ± 43.4
16	Under carriage	Carrier roller mounting bolt, nut	M16 × 2.0	29.7 ± 3.0	215 ± 21.7
17		Track roller mounting bolt	M24 × 3.0	100 ± 10	723 ± 72.3
18		Track tension cylinder mounting bolt	M16 × 2.0	29.7 ± 4.5	215 ± 32.5
19		Track shoe mounting bolt, nut	M24 × 1.5	140 ± 5.0	1010 ± 36.2
20		Track guard mounting bolt	M24 × 3.0	77.4 ± 11	560 ± 80
21	Others	Counterweight mounting bolt	M36 × 3.0	337 ± 33	2440 ± 239
22		Cab mounting bolt	M12 × 1.75	12.8 ± 3.0	92.6 ± 21.7
23		Operator's seat mounting bolt	M 8 × 1.25	4.05 ± 0.8	29.3 ± 5.8

※ For tightening torque of engine and hydraulic components, see each component disassembly and assembly.

2. TORQUE CHART

Use following table for unspecified torque.

1) BOLT AND NUT

(1) Coarse thread

Bolt size	8.8T		10.9T		12.9T	
	kgf · m	lbf · ft	kgf · m	lbf · ft	kgf · m	lbf · ft
M 6×1.0	0.8 ~ 1.2	5.8 ~ 8.6	1.2 ~ 1.8	8.7 ~ 13.0	1.5 ~ 2.1	10.9 ~ 15.1
M 8×1.25	2.0 ~ 3.0	14.5 ~ 21.6	2.8 ~ 4.2	20.3 ~ 30.4	3.4 ~ 5.0	24.6 ~ 36.1
M10×1.5	4.0 ~ 6.0	29.0 ~ 43.3	5.6 ~ 8.4	40.5 ~ 60.8	6.8 ~ 10.0	49.2 ~ 72.3
M12×1.75	6.8 ~ 10.2	50.0 ~ 73.7	9.6 ~ 14.4	69.5 ~ 104	12.3 ~ 16.5	89.0 ~ 119
M14×2.0	10.9 ~ 16.3	78.9 ~ 117	16.3 ~ 21.9	118 ~ 158	19.5 ~ 26.3	141 ~ 190
M16×2.0	17.9 ~ 24.1	130 ~ 174	25.1 ~ 33.9	182 ~ 245	30.2 ~ 40.8	141 ~ 295
M18×2.5	24.8 ~ 33.4	180 ~ 241	34.8 ~ 47.0	252 ~ 340	41.8 ~ 56.4	302 ~ 407
M20×2.5	34.9 ~ 47.1	253 ~ 340	49.1 ~ 66.3	355 ~ 479	58.9 ~ 79.5	426 ~ 575
M22×2.5	46.8 ~ 63.2	339 ~ 457	65.8 ~ 88.8	476 ~ 642	78.9 ~ 106	570 ~ 766
M24×3.0	60.2 ~ 81.4	436 ~ 588	84.6 ~ 114	612 ~ 824	102 ~ 137	738 ~ 991
M30×3.5	120 ~161	868 ~ 1164	168 ~ 227	1216 ~ 1641	202 ~ 272	1461 ~ 1967

(2) Fine thread

Bolt size	8.8T		10.9T		12.9T	
	kgf · m	lbf · ft	kgf · m	lbf · ft	kgf · m	lbf · ft
M 8×1.0	2.1 ~ 3.1	15.2 ~ 22.4	3.0 ~ 4.4	21.7 ~ 31.8	3.6 ~ 5.4	26.1 ~ 39.0
M10×1.25	4.2 ~ 6.2	30.4 ~ 44.9	5.9 ~ 8.7	42.7 ~ 62.9	7.0 ~ 10.4	50.1 ~ 75.2
M12×1.25	7.3 ~ 10.9	52.8 ~ 78.8	10.3 ~ 15.3	74.5 ~ 110	13.1 ~ 17.7	94.8 ~ 128
M14×1.5	12.4 ~ 16.6	89.7 ~ 120	17.4 ~ 23.4	126 ~ 169	20.8 ~ 28.0	151 ~ 202
M16×1.5	18.7 ~ 25.3	136 ~ 182	26.3 ~ 35.5	191 ~ 256	31.6 ~ 42.6	229 ~ 308
M18×1.5	27.1 ~ 36.5	196 ~ 264	38.0 ~ 51.4	275 ~ 371	45.7 ~ 61.7	331 ~ 446
M20×1.5	37.7 ~ 50.9	273 ~ 368	53.1 ~ 71.7	384 ~ 518	63.6 ~ 86.0	460 ~ 622
M22×1.5	51.2 ~ 69.2	370 ~ 500	72.0 ~ 97.2	521 ~ 703	86.4 ~ 116	625 ~ 839
M24×2.0	64.1 ~ 86.5	464 ~ 625	90.1 ~ 121	652 ~ 875	108 ~ 146	782 ~ 1056
M30×2.0	129 ~ 174	933 ~ 1258	181 ~ 245	1310 ~ 1772	217 ~ 294	1570 ~ 2126

2) PIPE AND HOSE (FLARE TYPE)

Thread size (PF)	Width across flat (mm)	kgf·m	lbf·ft
1/4"	19	4	28.9
3/8"	22	5	36.2
1/2"	27	9.5	68.7
3/4"	36	18	130.2
1"	41	21	151.9
1-1/4"	50	35	253.2

3) PIPE AND HOSE (ORFS TYPE)

Thread size (UNF)	Width across flat (mm)	kgf·m	lbf·ft
9/16-18	19	4	28.9
11/16-16	22	5	36.2
13/16-16	27	9.5	68.7
1-3/16-12	36	18	130.2
1-7/16-12	41	21	151.9
1-11/16-12	50	35	253.2

4) FITTING

Thread size	Width across flat(mm)	kgf·m	lbf·ft
1/4"	19	4	28.9
3/8"	22	5	36.2
1/2"	27	9.5	68.7
3/4"	36	18	130.2
1"	41	21	151.9
1-1/4"	50	35	253.2

GROUP 3 PUMP DEVICE

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) REMOVAL

(1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping

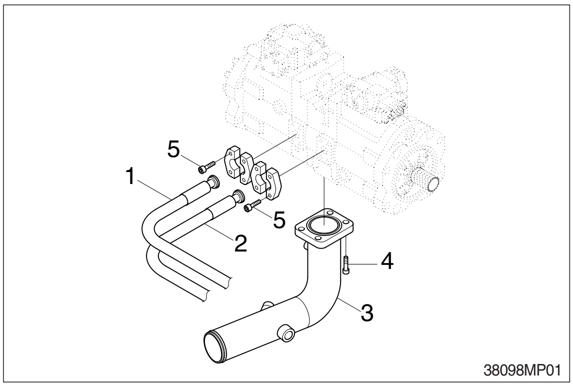
(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.**

13031GE18

(4) Loosen the drain plug under the hydraulic tank and drain the oil from the hydraulic tank.
· Hydraulic tank quantity : 230 ℓ

(5) Remove socket bolts (5) and disconnect pipes (1, 2).

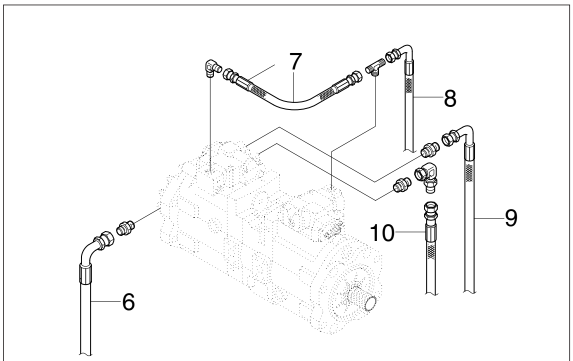


38098MP01

(6) Disconnect pilot line hoses (6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13).

(7) Remove socket bolts (4) and disconnect pump suction tube (3).

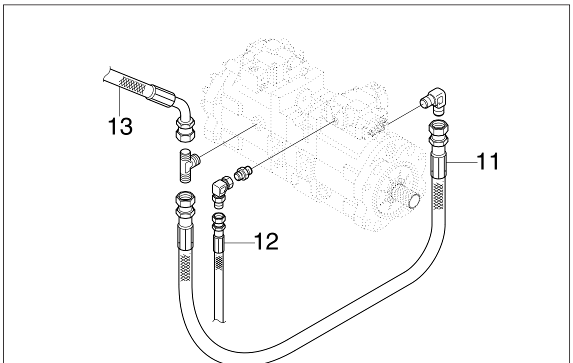
※ When pump suction tube is disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.



38098MP02

(8) Sling the pump assembly and remove the pump mounting bolts.
· Weight : 190 kg (420 lb)

※ Pull out the pump assembly from housing. When removing the pump assembly, check that all the hoses have been disconnected.



38098MP03

2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

(2) Remove the suction strainer and clean it.

(3) Replace return filter with new one.

(4) Remove breather and clean it.

(5) After adding oil to the hydraulic tank to the specified level.

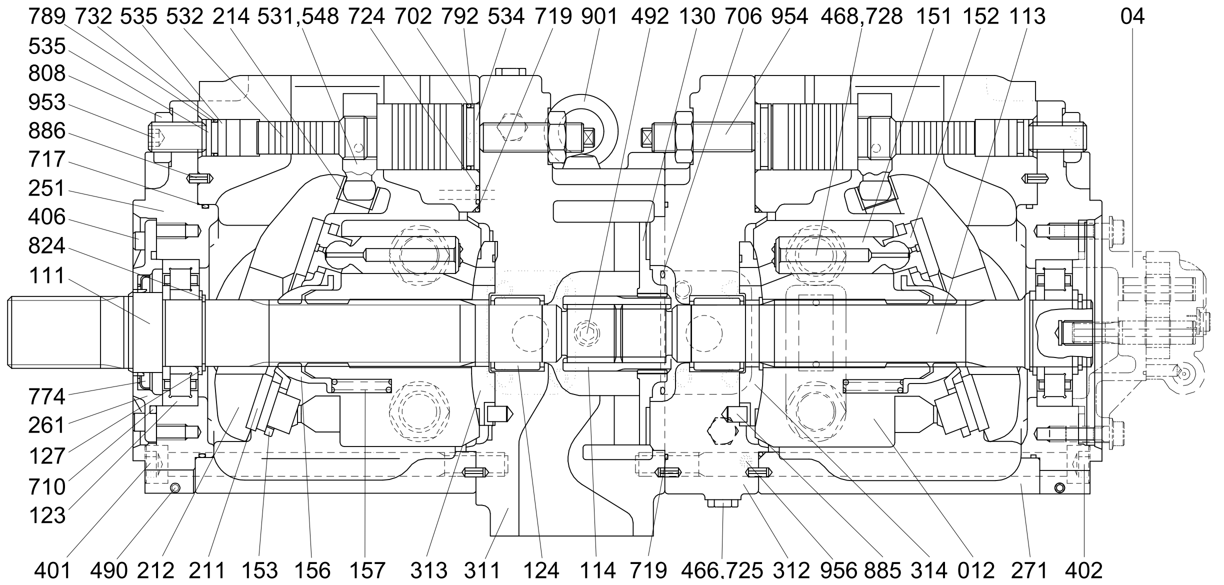
(6) Bleed the air from the hydraulic pump.
① Remove the air vent plug (2EA).
② Tighten plug lightly.
③ Start the engine, run at low idling, and check oil come out from plug.
④ Tighten plug.

(7) Start the engine, run at low idling (3~5 minutes) to circulate the oil through the system.

(8) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2. MAIN PUMP (1/2)

1) STRUCTURE



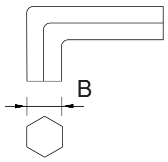
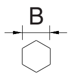
380F2MP02

04	Gear pump	271	Pump casing	710	O-ring
111	Drive shaft (F)	311	Valve cove r(F)	717	O-ring
113	Drive shaft (R)	312	Valve cover (R)	719	O-ring
114	Spline coupling	313	Valve plate (R)	724	Square ring
123	Roller bearing	314	Valve plate (L)	725	O-ring
124	Needle bearing	401	Hexagon socket bolt	728	O-ring
127	Bearing spacer	402	Hexagon socket bolt	732	O-ring
130	Booster	406	Hexagon socket bolt	774	Oil seal
012	Cylinder block	466	VP Plug	789	Back up ring
151	Piston	468	VP Plug	792	Back up ring
152	Shoe	490	Plug	808	Hexagon head nut
153	Set plate	492	Plug	824	Snap ring
156	Bushing	531	Tilting pin	885	Pin
157	Cylinder spring	532	Servo piston	886	Spring pin
211	Shoe plate	534	Stopper (L)	901	Eye bolt
212	Swash plate	535	Stopper (S)	953	Set screw
214	Bushing	548	Feedback pin	954	Adjust screw
251	Support plate	702	O-ring	956	Set screw
261	Seal cover (F)	706	O-ring		

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

The tools necessary to disassemble/reassemble the pump are shown in the follow list.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Tool name & size</th><th colspan="12">Part name</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">Allen wrench
</td><td>B</td><td colspan="3">Hexagon socket head bolt</td><td colspan="3">PT plug (PT thread)</td><td colspan="3">PO plug (PF thread)</td><td colspan="3">Hexagon socket head setscrew</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="3">M 5</td><td colspan="3">BP-1/16</td><td colspan="3">-</td><td colspan="3">M 8</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="3">M 6</td><td colspan="3">BP1/ 8</td><td colspan="3">-</td><td colspan="3">M10</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="3">M 8</td><td colspan="3">BP-1/ 4</td><td colspan="3">PO-1/4</td><td colspan="3">M12, M14</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="3">M10</td><td colspan="3">BP-3/ 8</td><td colspan="3">PO-3/8</td><td colspan="3">M16, M18</td></tr>
<tr><td>17</td><td colspan="3">M20, M22</td><td colspan="3">BP-1</td><td colspan="3">PO-1, 1 1/4, 1 1/2</td><td colspan="3">-</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">Double ring spanner, socket wrench, double (single) open end spanner
</td><td>-</td><td colspan="4">Hexagon head bolt</td><td colspan="4">Hexagon head bolt</td><td colspan="4">VP plug (PF thread)</td></tr>
<tr><td>19</td><td colspan="4">M12</td><td colspan="4">M12</td><td colspan="4">VP-1/4</td></tr>
<tr><td>24</td><td colspan="4">M16</td><td colspan="4">M16</td><td colspan="4">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>27</td><td colspan="4">M18</td><td colspan="4">M18</td><td colspan="4">VP-1/2</td></tr>
<tr><td>30</td><td colspan="4">M20</td><td colspan="4">M20</td><td colspan="4">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>36</td><td colspan="4">-</td><td colspan="4">-</td><td colspan="4">VP-3/4</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Adjustable angle wrench</td><td colspan="12">Medium size, 1 set</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Screw driver</td><td colspan="12">Minus type screw driver, Medium size, 2 sets</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Hammer</td><td colspan="12">Plastic hammer, 1 set</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Pliers</td><td colspan="12">For snap ring, TSR-160</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Steel bar</td><td colspan="12">Steel bar of key material approx. 10×8×200</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Torque wrench</td><td colspan="12">Capable of tightening with the specified torques</td></tr>
</table>

(2) Tightening torque

Part name	Bolt size	Torque		Wrench size	
		kgf · m	lbf · ft	in	mm
Hexagon socket head bolt (material : SCM435)	M 5	0.7	5.1	0.16	4
	M 6	1.2	8.7	0.20	5
	M 8	3.0	21.7	0.24	6
	M10	5.8	42.0	0.31	8
	M12	10.0	72.3	0.39	10
	M14	16.0	116	0.47	12
	M16	24.0	174	0.55	14
	M18	34.0	246	0.55	14
	M20	44.0	318	0.67	17
PT plug (material : S45C) ※ Wind a seal tape 1 1/2 to 2 turns round the plug	PT1/16	0.7	5.1	0.16	4
	PT 1/8	1.05	7.59	0.20	5
	PT 1/4	1.75	12.7	0.24	6
	PT 3/8	3.5	25.3	0.31	8
	PT 1/2	5.0	36.2	0.39	10
PF plug (material : S45C)	PF 1/4	3.0	21.7	0.24	6
	PF 1/2	10.0	72.3	0.39	10
	PF 3/4	15.0	109	0.55	14
	PF 1	19.0	137	0.67	17
	PF 1 1/4	27.0	195	0.67	17
	PF 1 1/2	28.0	203	0.67	17

3) DISASSEMBLY

(1) Select place suitable to disassembling.

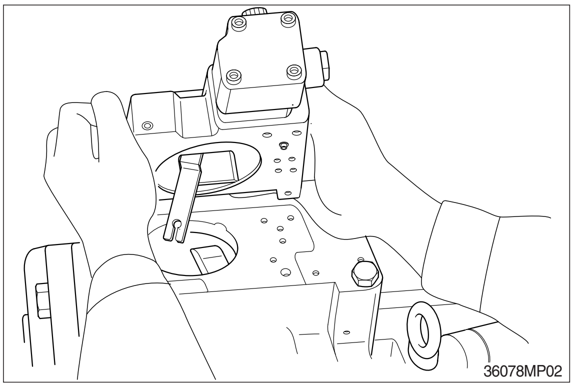
※ Select clean place.

※ Spread rubber sheet, cloth or so on on overhaul workbench top to prevent parts from being damaged.

(2) Remove dust, rust, etc, from pump surfaces with cleaning oil or so on.

(3) Remove drain port plug (468) and let oil out of pump casing (front and rear pump).

(4) Remove hexagon socket head bolts (412, 413) and remove regulator.



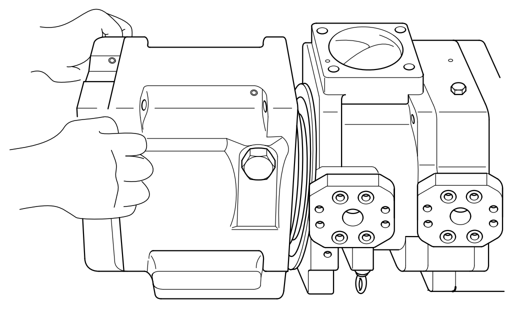
(5) Loosen hexagon socket head bolts (401) which tighten swash plate support (251), pump casing (271) and valve cover (F, 311).

※ If gear pump and so on are fitted to rear face of pump, remove them before starting this work.

(6) Loosen hexagon socket head bolts (402) which tighten swash plate support (251), pump casing (271) and valve cover (R, 312).

(7) Place pump horizontally on workbench with its regulator-fitting surface down, and separate pump casing (271) from valve cover (F, 311).

※ Before bringing this surface down, spread rubber sheet on workbench without fail to prevent this surface from being damaged.

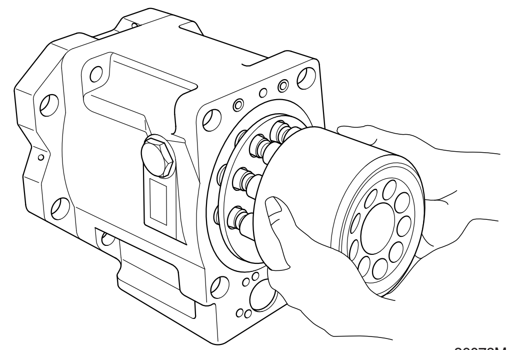


36078MP03

(8) Separate valve cover (F, 311) from valve cover (R, 312) and pull out booster (130), spline coupling (114).

(9) Separate valve cover (R, 312) from pump casing and then pull out the cylinder block (012) of pump casing (271) straightly over drive shaft(R, 113). Pull out also pistons (151), set plate (153), spherical bush (156) and cylinder springs (157) simultaneously.

※ Take care not to damage sliding surfaces of cylinder, spherical bushing, shoes, swash plate, etc.

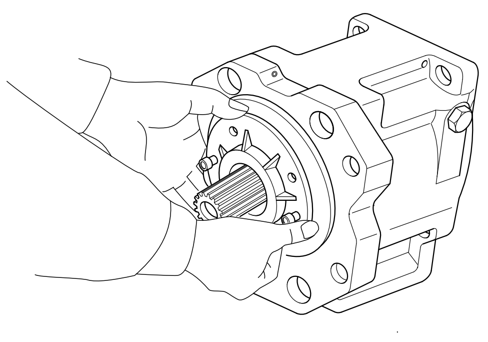


36078MP04

(10) Remove hexagon socket head bolts (406) and then seal cover (F, 261).

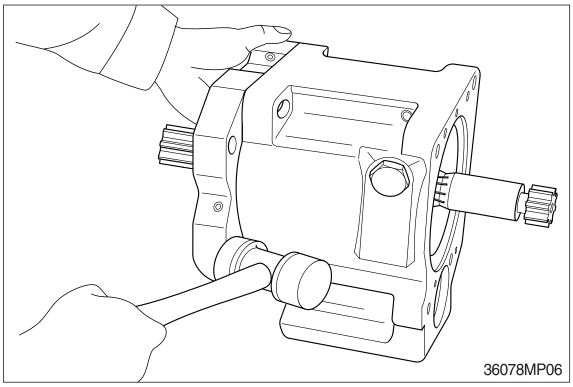
※ Fit bolt into pulling-out tapped hole of seal cover (F), and cover can be removed easily.

※ Since oil seal is fitted on seal cover (F), take care not to damage it when removing cover.

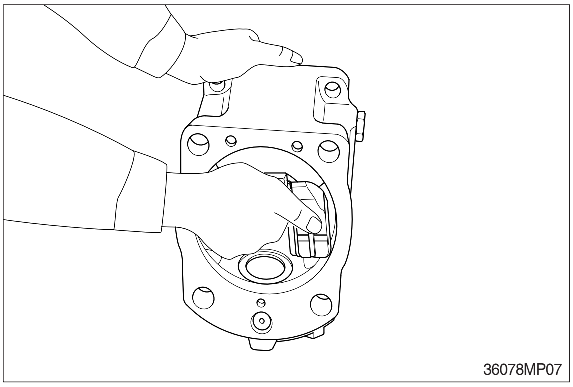


36078MP05

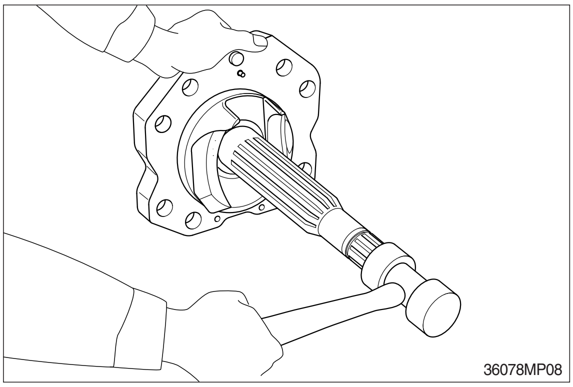
(11) Tapping lightly fitting flange section of swash plate support (251) on its pump casing side, separate swash plate support from pump casing.



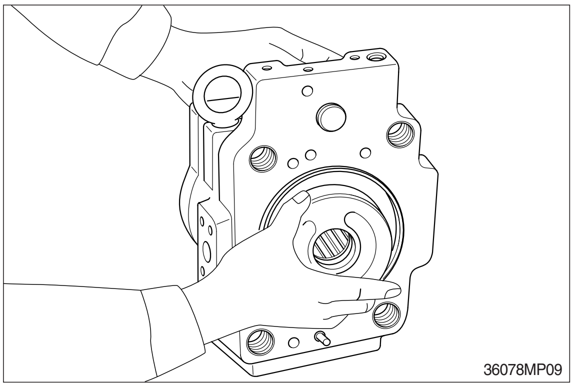
(12) Remove shoe plate (211) and swash plate (212) from pump casing (271).



(13) Tapping lightly shaft ends of drive shafts (111, 113) with plastic hammer, take out drive shafts from swash plate supports.



(14) Remove valve plates (313, 314) from valve cover (311, 312).
※ These may be removed in work 7, 9.



36078MP09

(15) If necessary, remove stopper (L, 534), stopper (S, 535), servo piston (532) and tilting pin (531) from pump casing (271), and needle bearing (124) from valve cover (311, 312).
※ In removing tilting pin, use a protector to prevent pin head from being damaged.
※ Since loctite is applied to fitting areas of tilting pin and servo piston, take care not to damage servo piston.
※ Do not remove needle bearing as far as possible, except when it is considered to be out of its life span.
※ Do not loosen hexagon nuts of valve cover and swash plate support.
If loosened, flow setting will be changed.

(16) This is the end of disassembling procedures.

4) ASSEMBLY

(1) For reassembling reverse the disassembling procedures, paying attention to the following items.

① Do not fail to repair the parts damaged during disassembling, and prepare replacement parts in advance.

② Clean each part fully with cleaning oil and dry it with compressed air.

③ Do not fail to apply clean working oil to sliding sections, bearings, etc. before assembling them.

④ In principle, replace seal parts, such as O-rings, oil seals, etc.

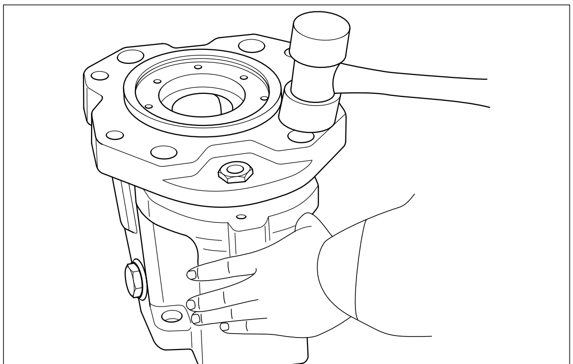
⑤ For fitting bolts, plug, etc., prepare a torque wrench or so on, and tighten them with torques shown in page 8-10, 11.

⑥ For the double-pump, take care not to mix up parts of the front pump with those of the rear pump.

(2) Fit swash plate support (251) to pump casing (271), tapping the former lightly with a hammer.

※ After servo piston, tilting pin, stopper (L) and stopper (S) are removed, fit them soon to pump casing in advance for reassembling.

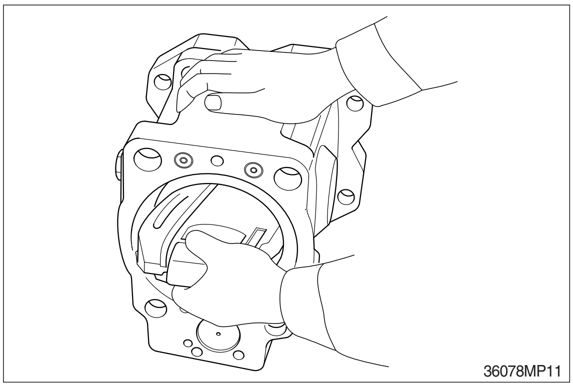
※ In tightening servo piston and tilting pin, use a protector to prevent tilting pin head and feedback pin from being damaged. In addition, apply loctite (medium strength) to their threaded sections.


36078MP10

(3) Place pump casing with its regulator fitting surface down, fit tilting bush of swash plate to tilting pin (531) and fit swash plate (212) to swash plate support (251) correctly.

※ Confirm with fingers of both hands that swash plate can be removed smoothly.

※ Apply grease to sliding sections of swash plate and swash plate support, and drive shaft can be fitted easily.



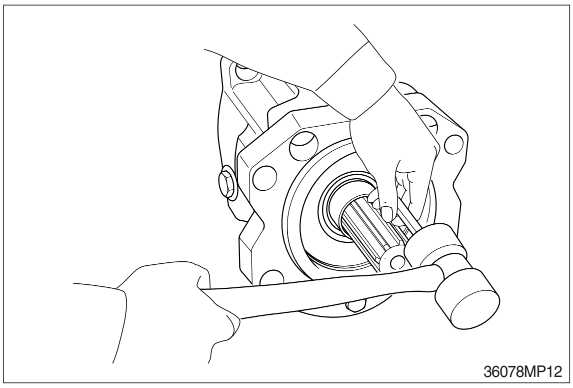
36078MP11

(4) To swash plate support (251), fit drive shaft (111) set with bearing (123), bearing spacer (127) and snap ring (824).

※ Do not tap drive shaft with hammer or so on.

※ Assemble them into support, tapping outer race of bearing lightly with plastic hammer.

Fit them fully, using steel bar or so on.



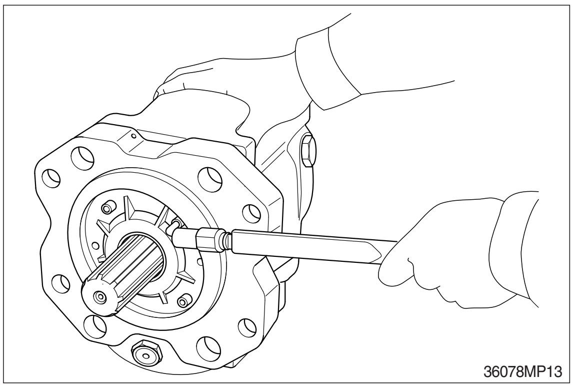
36078MP12

(5) Assemble seal cover(F, 261) to pump casing(271) and fix it with hexagon socket head bolts(406).

※ Apply grease lightly to oil seal in seal cover(F).

※ Assemble oil seal, taking full care not to damage it.

※ For tandem type pump, fit rear cover(263) and seal cover(262) similarly.

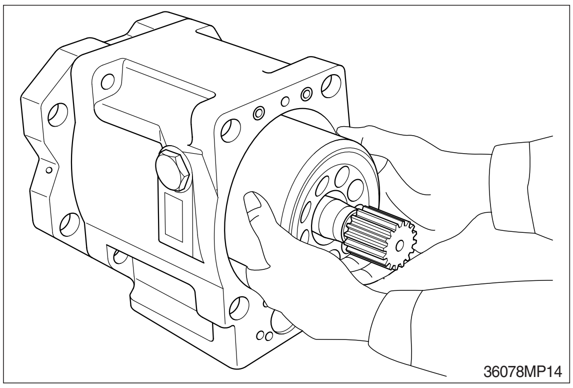


36078MP13

(6) Assemble piston cylinder subassembly [cylinder block (012), piston subassembly (151, 152), set plate (153), spherical bushing (156) and cylinder spring (157)].

Fit spline phases of retainer and cylinder.

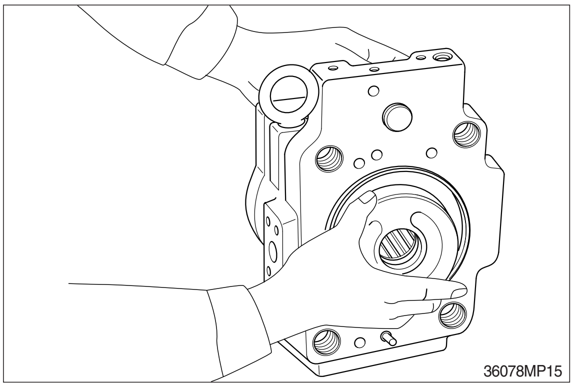
Then, insert piston cylinder subassembly into pump casing (271).



36078MP14

(7) Fit valve plate (313) to valve cover (F, 311), and fit valve plate (314) to valve cover (R, 312), entering pin into pin hole.

※ Take care not to mistake suction / delivery directions of valve plate.

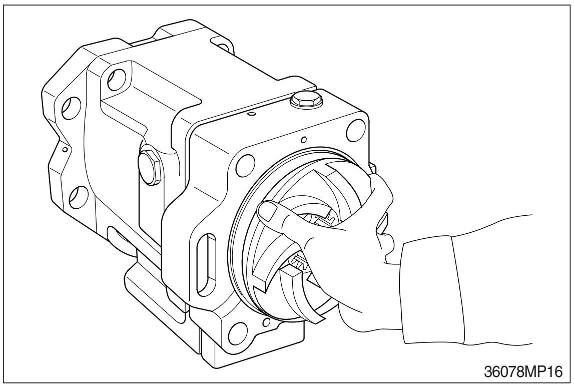


36078MP15

(8) Fit valve block (R, 312) to pump casing (271) and fit spline coupling (114) and booster(130) to shaft (R, 113).

※ Take care not to mistake direction of valve cover.

※ Fit valve cover with regulator up and with delivery flange left, viewed from front side. Take care not to mistake direction of booster (130).
(Refer to the sectional drawing)

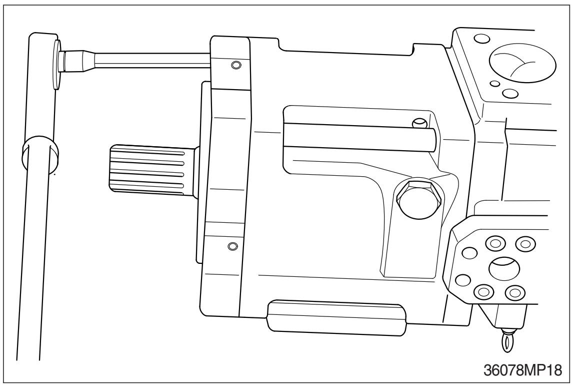


36078MP16

(9) Fit valve cover (F, 311) to valve cover (R) and tighten hexagon socket head bolts (402).

(10) Fit pump casing (271) with shaft (F, 111) to valve cover (F, 311) and tighten hexagon socket head bolts (401).

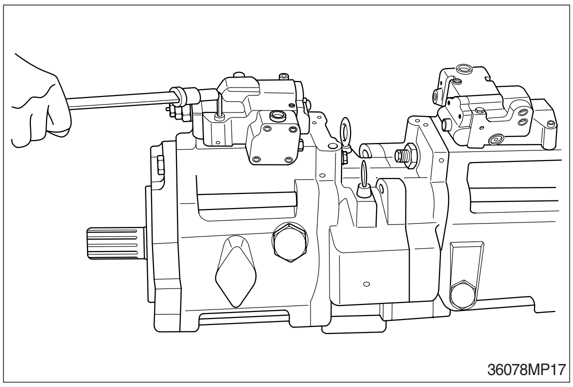
※ Mate spline phases of shaft (F) and spline coupling, with shaft (F) been rotating.



36078MP18

(11) Putting feedback pin of tilting pin into feedback lever of regulator, fit regulator and tighten hexagon socket head bolts (412,413).

※ Take care not to mistake regulator of front pump for that of rear pump.

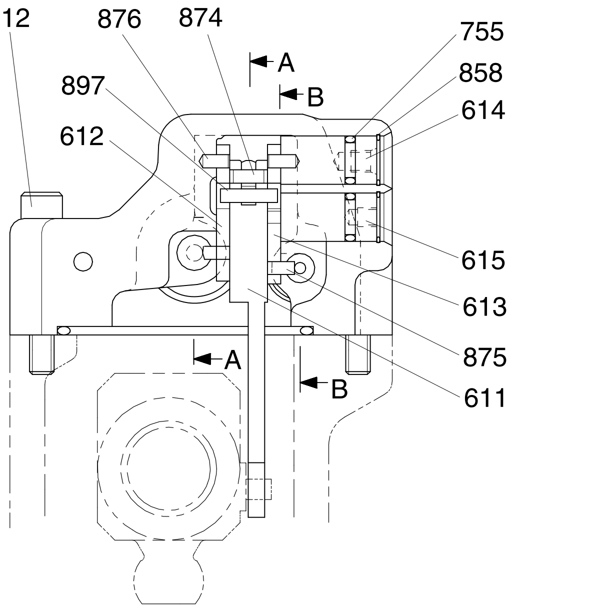


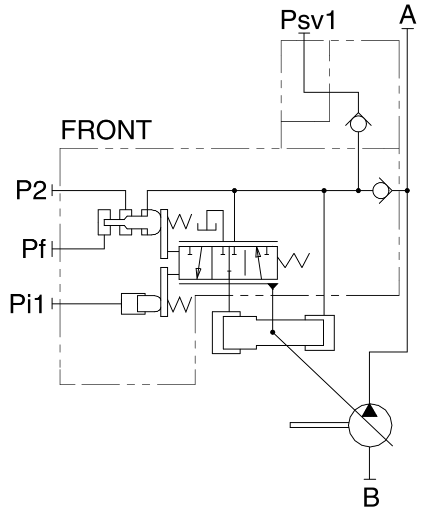
(12) Fit drain port plug (468).

This is the end of reassembling procedures.

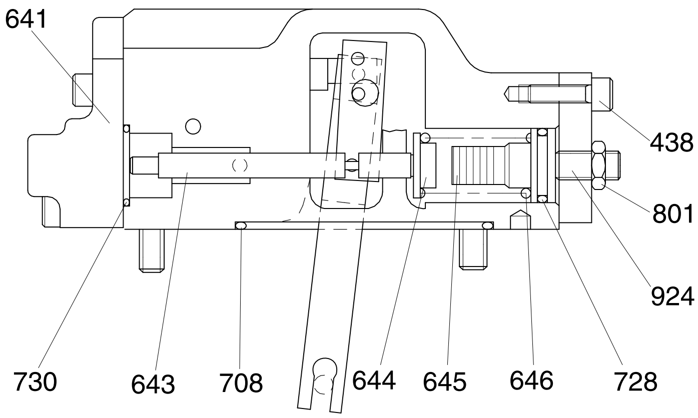
3. REGULATOR

1) STRUCTURE(1/2)

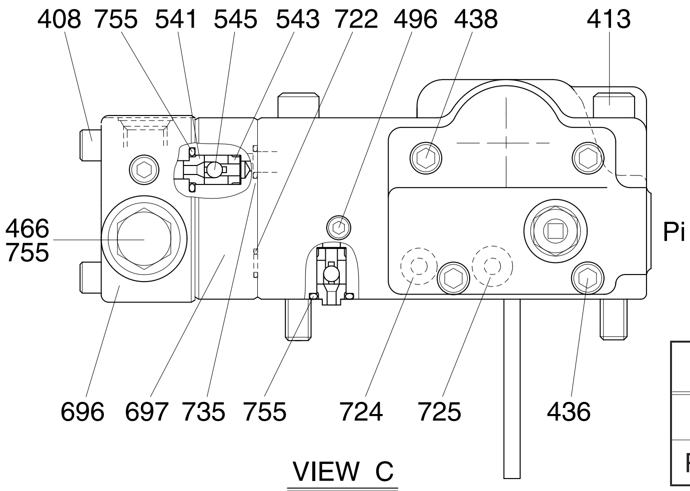




Hydraulic circuit



SECTION B-B

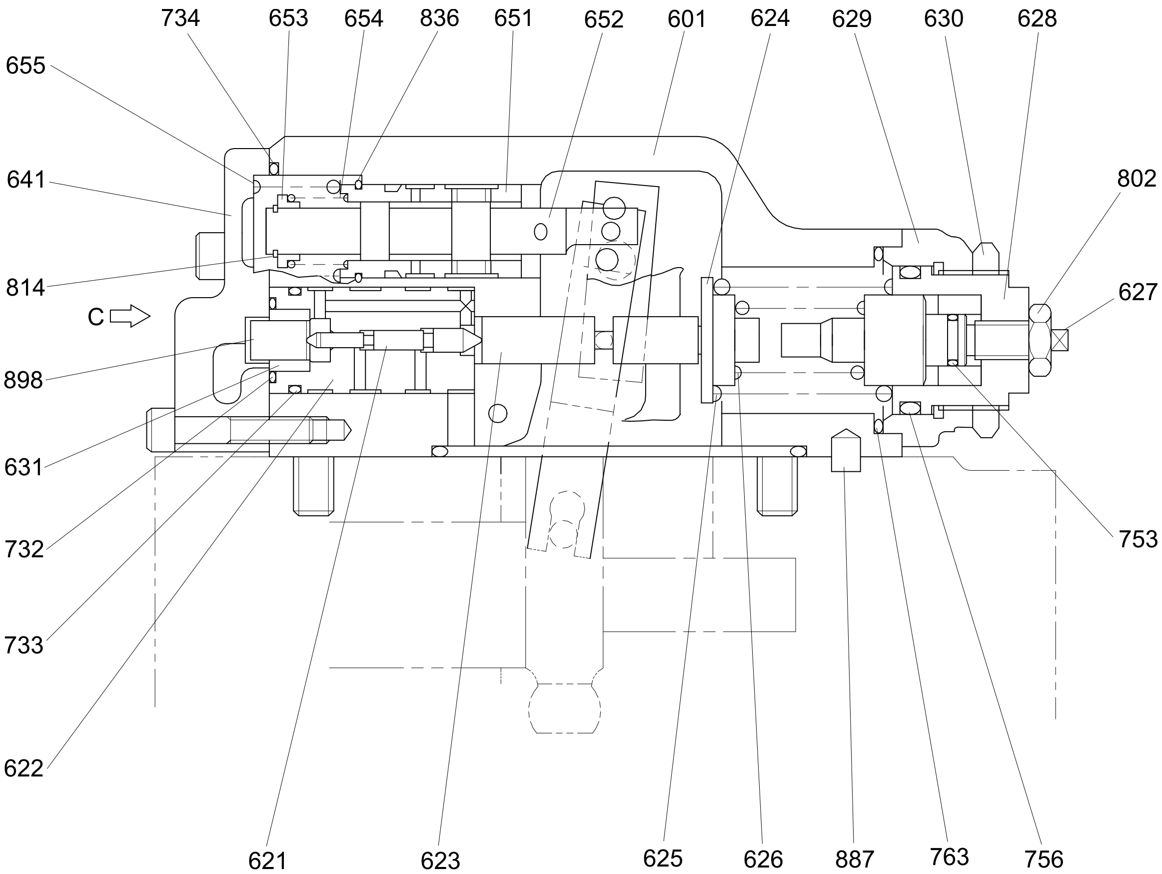


VIEW C

Port	Port name	Port size
Pi1,Pi2	Pilot port	PF 1/4-15
Psv1,Psv2	Servo assist port	PF 1/4-15

38092RG01

2) STRUCTURE (2/2)



SECTION A-A

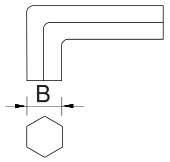
38092RG03

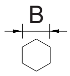
407	Hexagon socket bolt	626	Inner spring	728	O-ring
408	Hexagon socket bolt	627	Adjust stem (C)	730	O-ring
412	Hexagon socket bolt	628	Adjust screw (C)	732	O-ring
413	Hexagon socket bolt	629	Cover (C)	733	O-ring
436	Hexagon socket bolt	630	Lock nut	734	O-ring
438	Hexagon socket bolt	631	Sleeve, pf	735	O-ring
466	Plug	641	Pilot cover	753	O-ring
482	Plug	643	Pilot piston	755	O-ring
496	Plug	644	Spring seat (Q)	756	O-ring
541	Seat	645	Adjust stem (Q)	763	O-ring
543	Stopper	646	Pilot spring	801	Hexagon nut
545	Steel ball	651	Sleeve	802	Nut
601	Casing	652	Spool	814	Snap ring
611	Feedback lever	653	Spring seat	836	Stop ring
612	Lever (1)	654	Return spring	858	Snap ring
613	Lever (2)	655	Set spring	874	Pin
614	Center plug	696	Port cover	875	Pin
615	Adjust plug	697	Check valve plate	876	Pin
621	Compensator piston	699	Valve casing	887	Pin
622	Piston case	708	O-ring	897	Pin
623	Compensator rod	722	O-ring	898	Pin
624	Spring seat (C)	724	Square ring	924	Set screw
625	Outer spring	725	O-ring		

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

The tools necessary to disassemble/reassemble the pump are shown in the follow list.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Tool name & size</th><th colspan="4">Part name</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Allen wrench
</td><td>B</td><td>Hexagon socket head bolt</td><td>PT plug (PT thread)</td><td>PO plug (PF thread)</td><td>Hexagon socket head setscrew</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>M 5</td><td>BP-1/16</td><td>-</td><td>M 8</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>M 6</td><td>BP1/ 8</td><td>-</td><td>M10</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>M 8</td><td>BP-1/ 4</td><td>PO-1/4</td><td>M12, M14</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Double ring spanner, socket wrench, double (single) open end spanner
</td><td>-</td><td>Hexagon head bolt</td><td>Hexagon head nut</td><td>VP plug (PF thread)</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>M8</td><td>M8</td><td>-</td></tr>
</table>

Adjustable angle wrench	Small size, Max 36 mm
Screw driver	Minus type screw driver, Medium size, 2 sets
Hammer	Plastic hammer, 1 set
Pliers	For snap ring, TSR-160
Steel bar	4×100 mm
Torque wrench	Capable of tightening with the specified torques
Pincers	-
Bolt	M4, Length : 50mm

(2) Tightening torque

Part name	Bolt size	Torque		Wrench size	
		kgf · m	lbf · ft	in	mm
Hexagon socket head bolt (material : SCM435)	M 5	0.7	5.1	0.16	4
	M 6	1.2	8.7	0.20	5
	M 8	3.0	21.7	0.24	6
	M10	5.8	42.0	0.31	8
	M12	10.0	72.3	0.39	10
	M14	16.0	116	0.47	12
	M16	24.0	174	0.55	14
	M18	34.0	246	0.55	14
	M20	44.0	318	0.67	17
PT plug (material : S45C) ※ Wind a seal tape 1 1/2 to 2 turns round the plug	PT1/16	0.7	5.1	0.16	4
	PT 1/8	1.05	7.59	0.20	5
	PT 1/4	1.75	12.7	0.24	6
	PT 3/8	3.5	25.3	0.31	8
	PT 1/2	5.0	36.2	0.39	10
PF plug (material : S35C)	PF 1/4	3.0	21.7	0.24	6
	PF 1/2	10.0	72.3	0.39	10
	PF 3/4	15.0	109	0.55	14
	PF 1	19.0	137	0.67	17
	PF 1 1/4	27.0	195	0.67	17
	PF 1 1/2	28.0	203	0.67	17

3) DISASSEMBLY

Since the regulator consists of small precision finished parts, disassembly and assembly are rather complicated.

For this reason, replacement of a regulator assembly is recommended, unless there is a special reason, but in case disassembly is necessary for an unavoidable reason, read through this manual to the end before starting disassembly.

(1) Choose a place for disassembly.

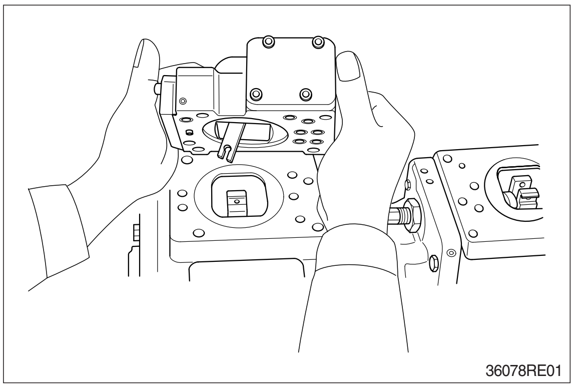
※ Choose a clean place.

※ Spread rubber sheet, cloth, or so on on top of work-bench to prevent parts from being damaged.

(2) Remove dust, rust, etc. from surfaces of regulator with clean oil.

(3) Remove hexagon socket head screw (412, 413) and remove regulator main body from pump main body.

※ Take care not to lose O-ring.



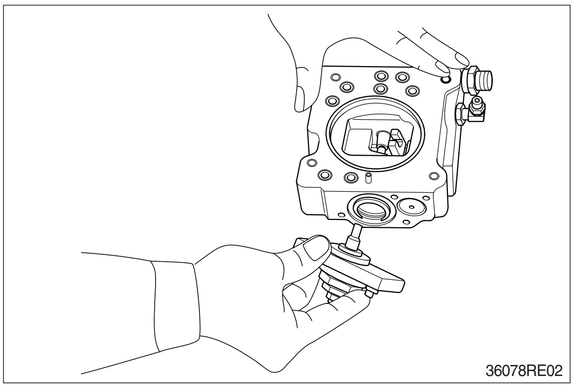
36078RE01

(4) Remove hexagon socket head screw (438) and remove cover (C,629)

※ Cover (C) is fitted with adjusting screw (C,QI) (628), adjusting stem (C, 627), lock nut (630), hexagon nut (801) and set screw (924).

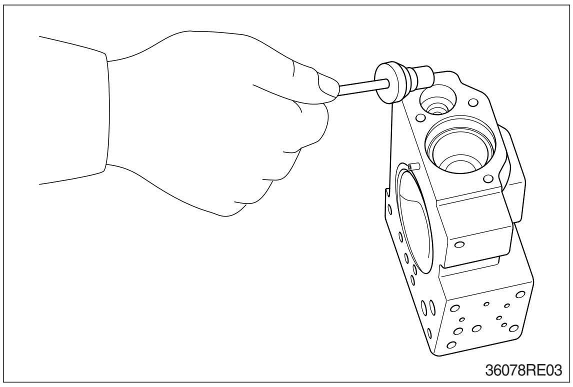
Do not loosen these screws and nuts.

If they are loosened, adjusted pressure-flow setting will vary.



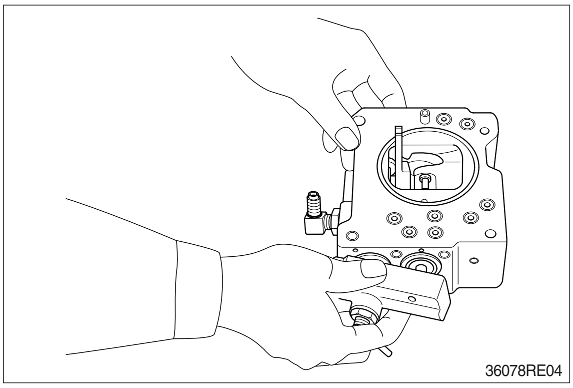
36078RE02

(5) After removing cover (C, 629) subassembly, take out outer spring (625), inner spring (626) and spring seat (C, 624) from compensating section.
Then draw out adjusting stem (Q, 645), pilot spring (646) and spring seat (644) from pilot section.
※ Adjusting stem (Q,645) can easily be drawn out with M4 bolt.



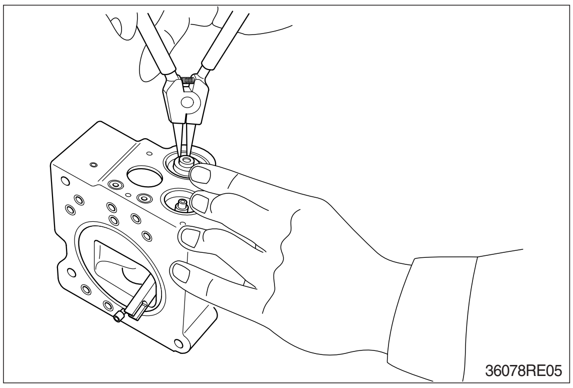
36078RE03

(6) Remove hexagon socket head screws (436, 438) and remove pilot cover (641).
After removing pilot cover, take out set spring (655) from pilot section.



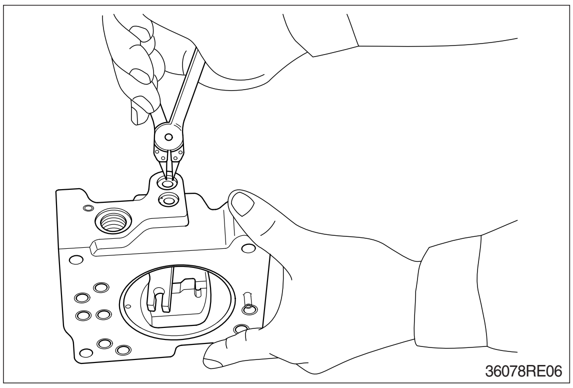
36078RE04

(7) Remove snap ring (814) and take out spring seat (653), return spring (654) and sleeve (651).
Sleeve (651) is fitted with snap ring (836).
※ When removing snap ring (814), return spring (654) may pop out.
※ Take care not to lose it.

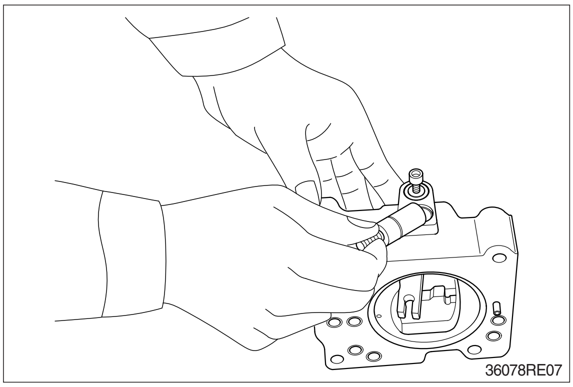


36078RE05

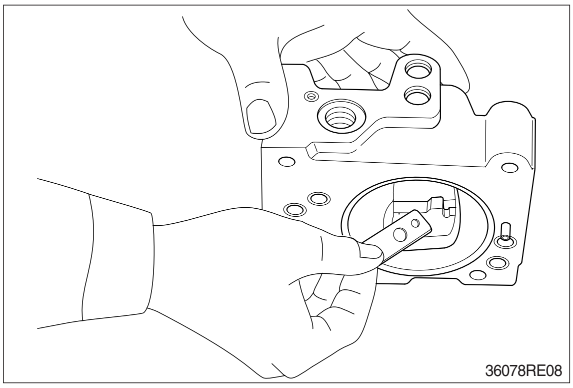
(8) Remove locking ring (858) and take out fulcrum plug (614) and adjusting plug (615).
※ Fulcrum plug (614) and adjusting plug (615) can easily be taken out with M6 bolt.



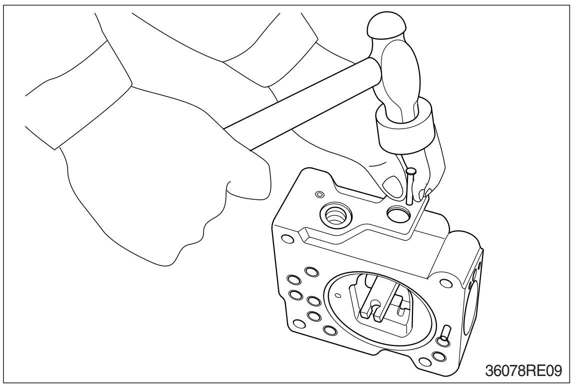
36078RE06

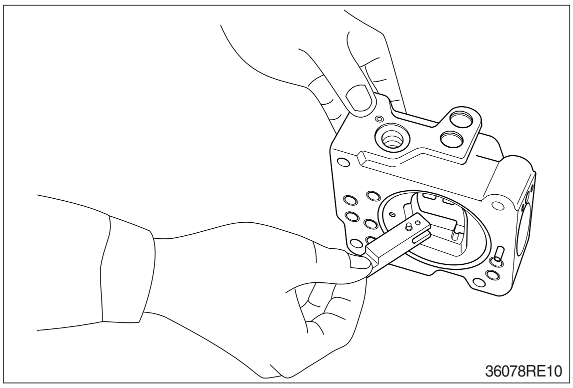


(9) Remove lever2 (613).   Do not draw out pin (875).
※ Work will be promoted by using pincers or so on.



(10) Draw out pin (874) and remove feedback lever (611).
※ Push out pin (874, 4 mm in dia.) from above with slender steel bar so that it may not interfere with lever1 (612).





(11) Remove lever1 (612). Do not draw out pin (875).

(12) Draw out pilot piston (643) and spool (652).

(13) Draw out piston case (622), compensating piston (621) and compensating rod (623).

※ Piston case (622) can be taken out by pushing compensating rod (623) at opposite side of piston case.

This completes disassembly.

4) ASSEMBLY

(1) For assembly, reverse disassembly procedures, but pay attention to the following items.

① Always repair parts that were scored at disassembly.

② Get replacement parts ready beforehand.

Mixing of foreign matter will cause malfunction.

③ Therefore, wash parts well with cleaning oil, let them dry with jet air and handle them in clean place.

④ Always tighten bolts, plugs, etc. to their specified torques.

⑤ Do not fail to coat sliding surfaces with clean hydraulic oil before assembly.

Replace seals such as O-ring with new ones as a rule.

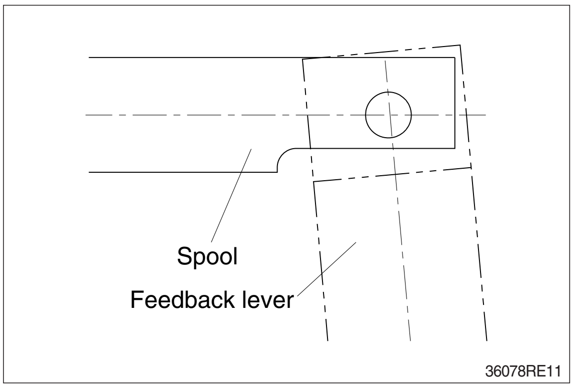
(2) Put compensating rod (623) into compensating hole of casing(601).

(3) Put pin force-fitted in lever1 (612) into groove of compensating rod and fit lever 1 to pin force-fitted in casing.

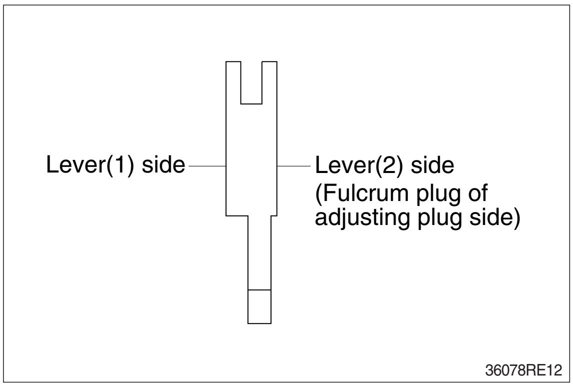
(4) Fit spool (652) and sleeve (651) into hole in spool of casing.

※ Confirm that spool and sleeve slide smoothly in casing without binding.

※ Pay attention to orientation of spool.



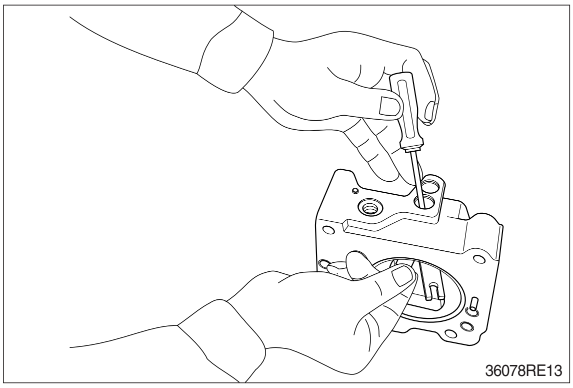
(5) Fit feedback lever (611), matching its pin hole with pin hole in spool.
Then insert pin (874).
※ Insert pin in feedback lever a little to ease operation.
※ Take care not to mistake direction of feedback lever.



36078RE12

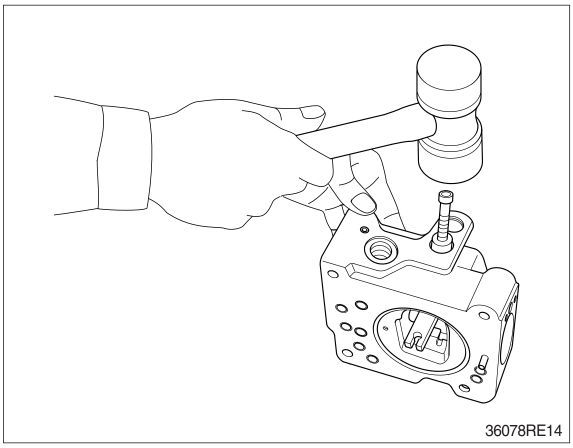
(6) Put pilot piston (643) into pilot hole of casing.
※ Confirm that pilot piston slides smoothly without binding.

(7) Put pin force-fitted in lever2 (613) into groove of pilot piston.
Then fix lever (2).

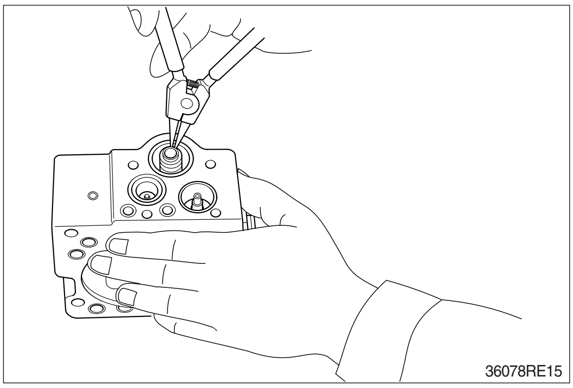

36078RE13

(8) Fit fulcrum plug (614) so that pin force-fitted in fulcrum plug (614) can be put into pin hole of lever (2).
Then fix locking ring (858).

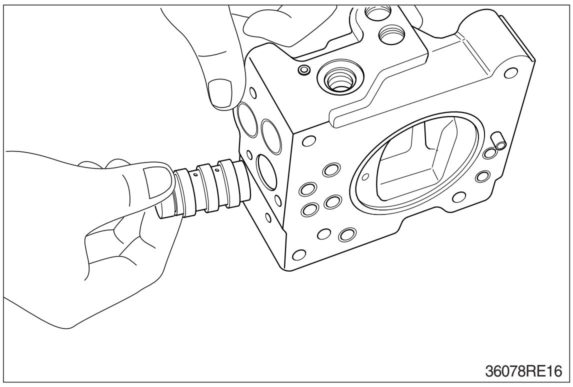
(9) Insert adjusting plug (615) and fit locking ring.
※ Take care not to mistake inserting holes for fulcrum plug and adjusting plug.
At this point in time move feedback lever to confirm that it has no large play and is free from binding.


36078RE14

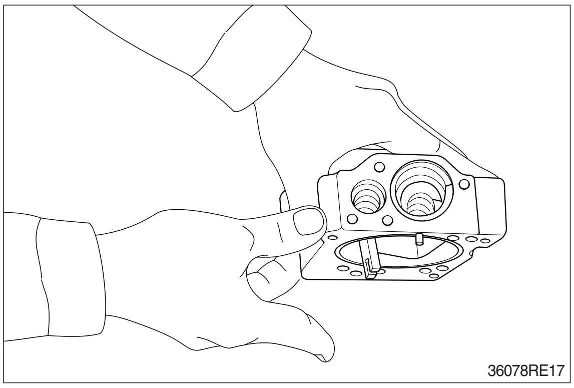
(10) Fit return spring (654) and spring seat (653) into spool hole and attach snap ring (814).


36078RE15

(11) Fit set spring (655) to spool hole and put compensating piston (621) and piston case (622) into compensating hole.
Fit pilot cover (641) and tighten it with hexagonal socket head screws (436, 438).

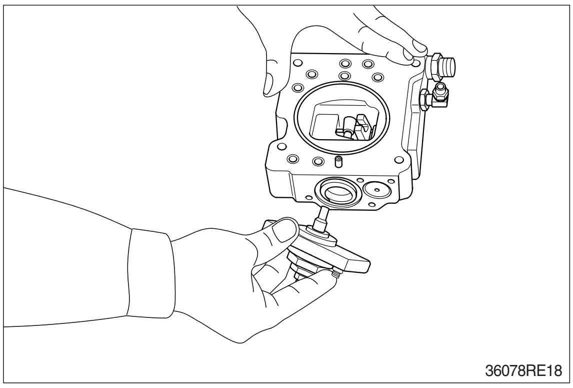

36078RE16

(12) Put spring seat (644), pilot spring (646) and adjusting stem (Q, 645) into pilot hole. Then fix spring seat (624), inner spring (626) and outer spring (625) into compensating hole.
※ When fitting spring seat, take care not to mistake direction of spring seat.


36078RE17

(13) Install cover (C, 629) fitted with adjusting screws (628), adjusting stem (C, 627), lock nut (630), hexagon nut (802) and set screw (924).
Then tighten them with hexagonal socket head screws (438).

This completes assembly.


36078RE18

GROUP 4 MAIN CONTROL VALVE

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) REMOVAL

(1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

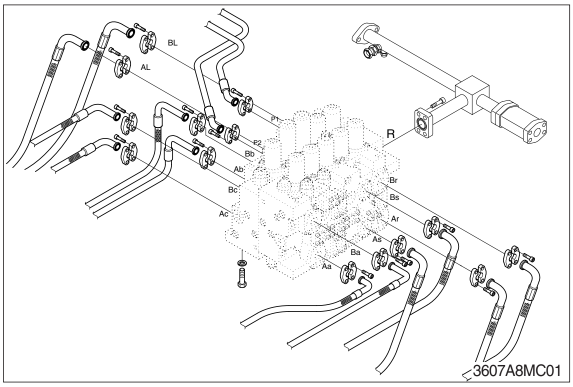
(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

13031GE18

⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.**

※ When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.

(4) Remove bolts and disconnect pipes.



3607A8MC01

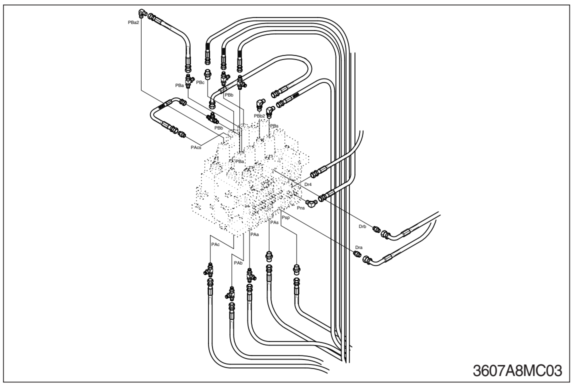
(5) Disconnect pilot line hoses.

(6) Disconnect pilot pipes.

(7) Sling the control valve assembly and remove the control valve mounting bolts.

· Weight : 340 kg (750 lb)

(8) Remove the control valve assembly.
When removing the control valve assembly, check that all the piping have been disconnected.



3607A8MC03

2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

(2) Bleed the air from below items.

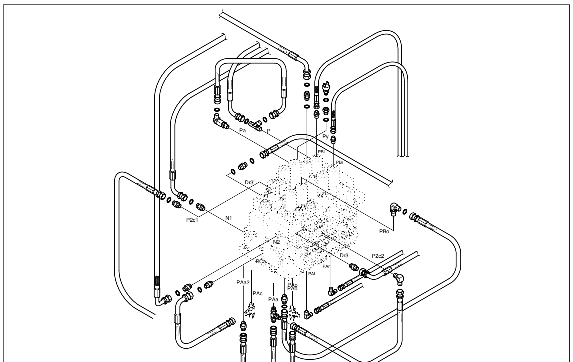
① Cylinder (Boom, arm, bucket)

② Swing motor

③ Travel motor

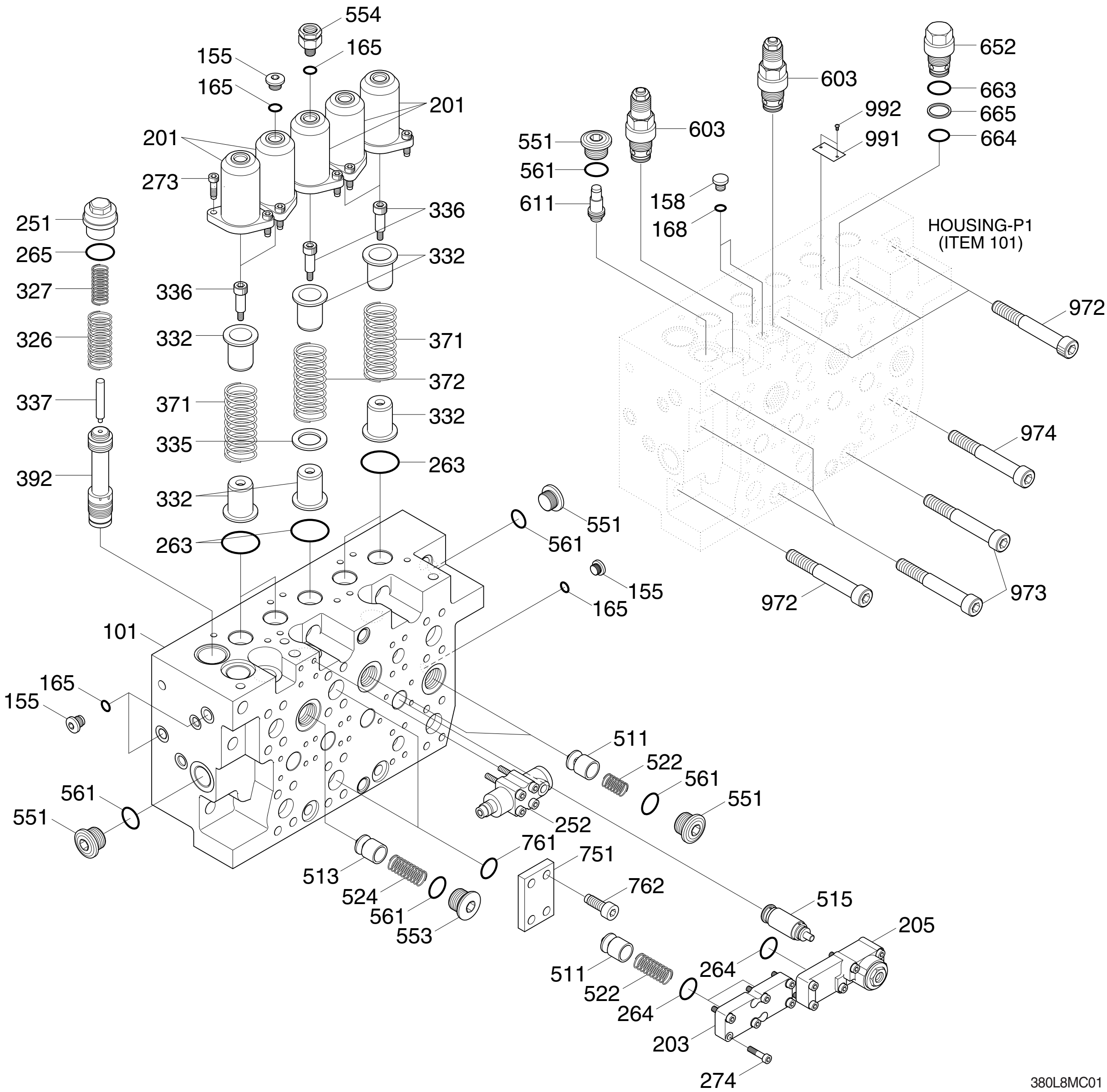
※ See each item removal and install.

(3) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and recheck the hydraulic oil leak or not.



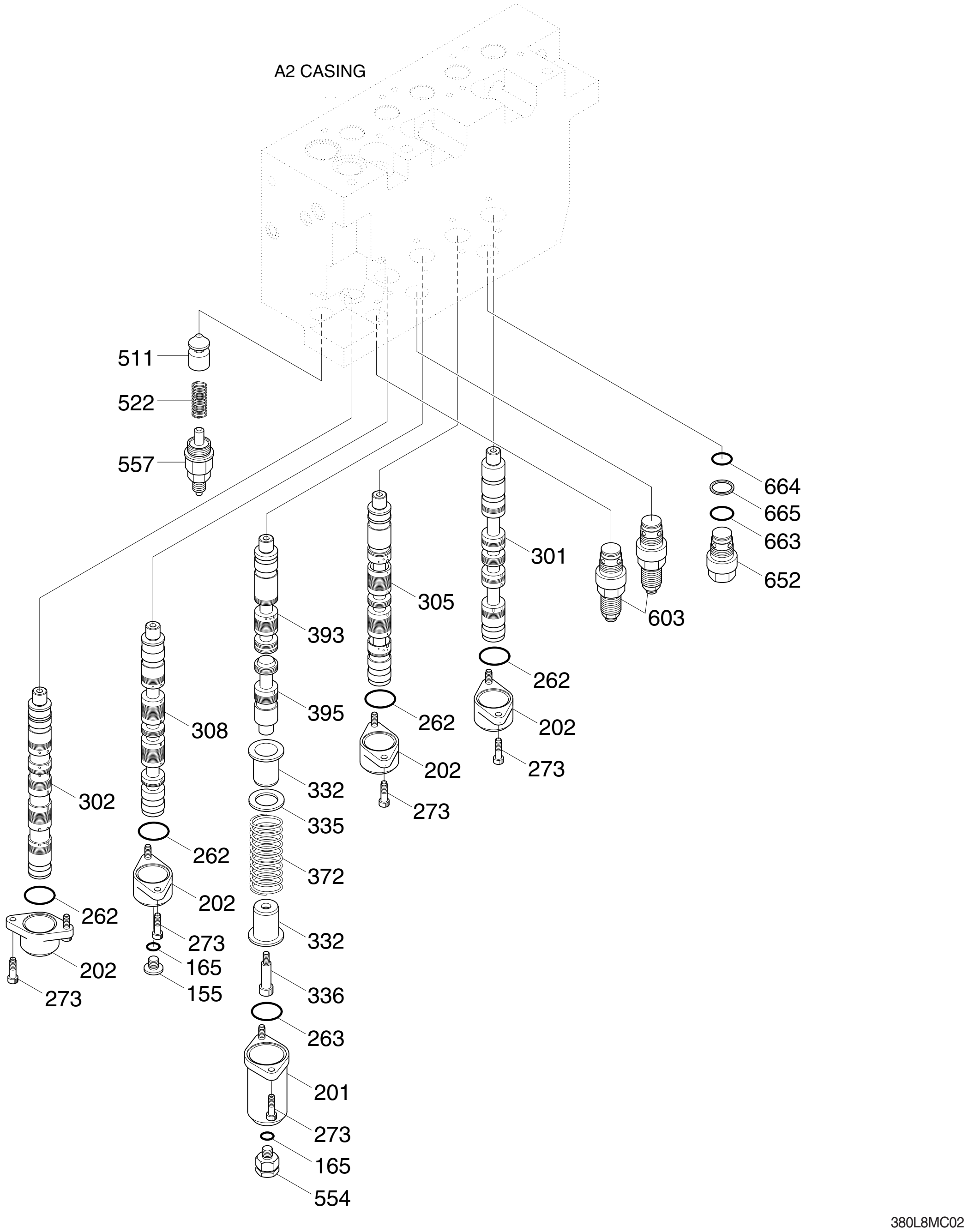
3607A8MC04

2. STRUCTURE (1/4)



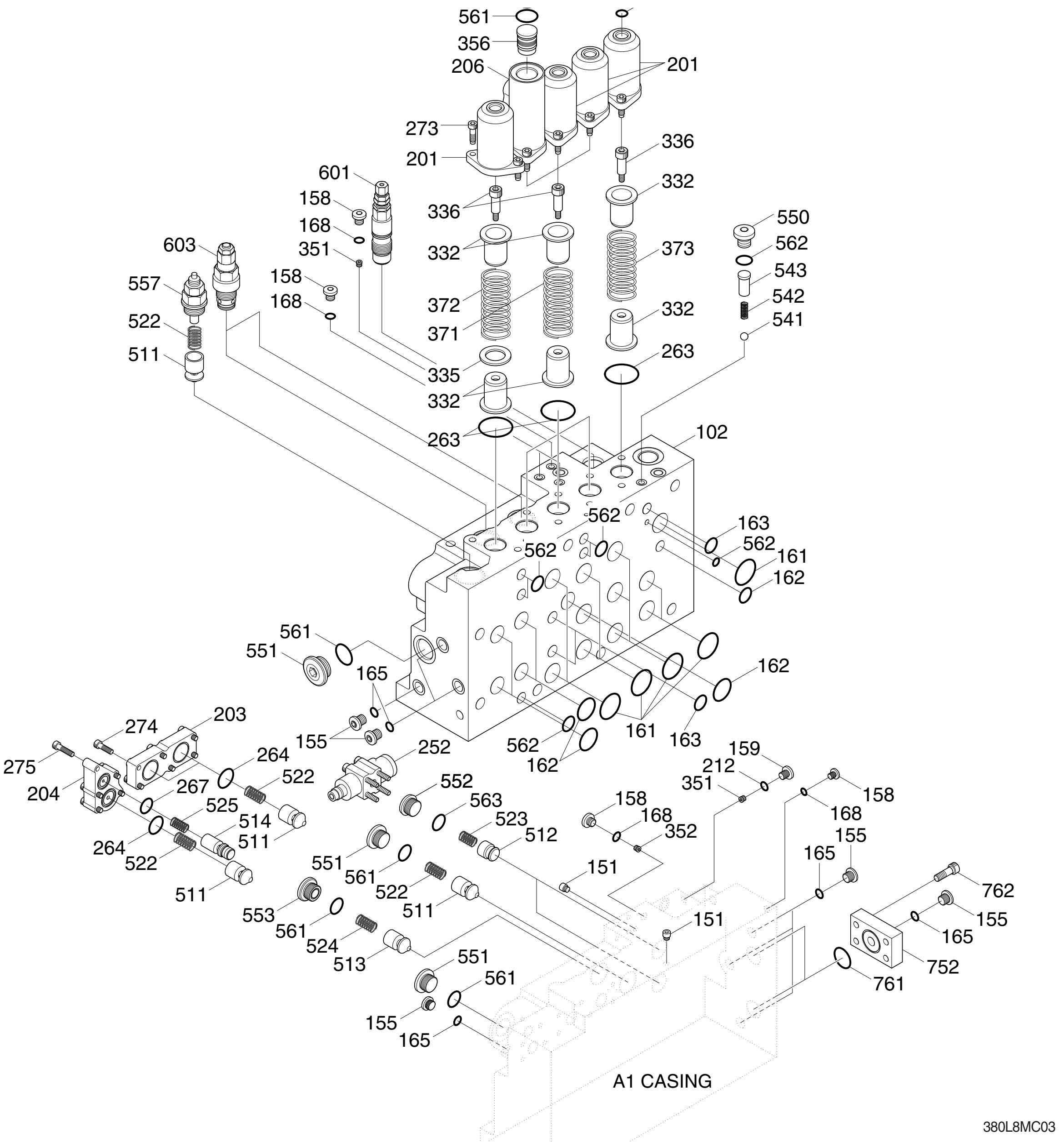
101	Casing A	327	Spring	561	O-ring
155	Plug	332	Spring seat	603	Port relief assy
158	Plug	335	Shim	611	Negative relief valve assy
165	O-ring	336	Spacer bolt	652	Plug
168	O-ring	337	Rod	663	O-ring
201	Spring cover	371	Spring	664	O-ring
203	Spring cover	372	Spring	665	Back-up ring
205	Cover sub-Bm/Priority	392	By pass cut spool	751	Flange
251	Plug	511	Poppet	761	O-ring
252	Lock valve assy	513	Poppet	762	Screw
263	O-ring	515	Boom priority valve assy	972	Screw
264	O-ring	522	Spring	973	Screw
265	O-ring	524	Spring	974	Screw
273	Screw	551	Plug	991	Name plate
274	Socket bolt	553	Plug	992	Pin
326	Spring	554	Stopper plug		

STRUCTURE (2/4)



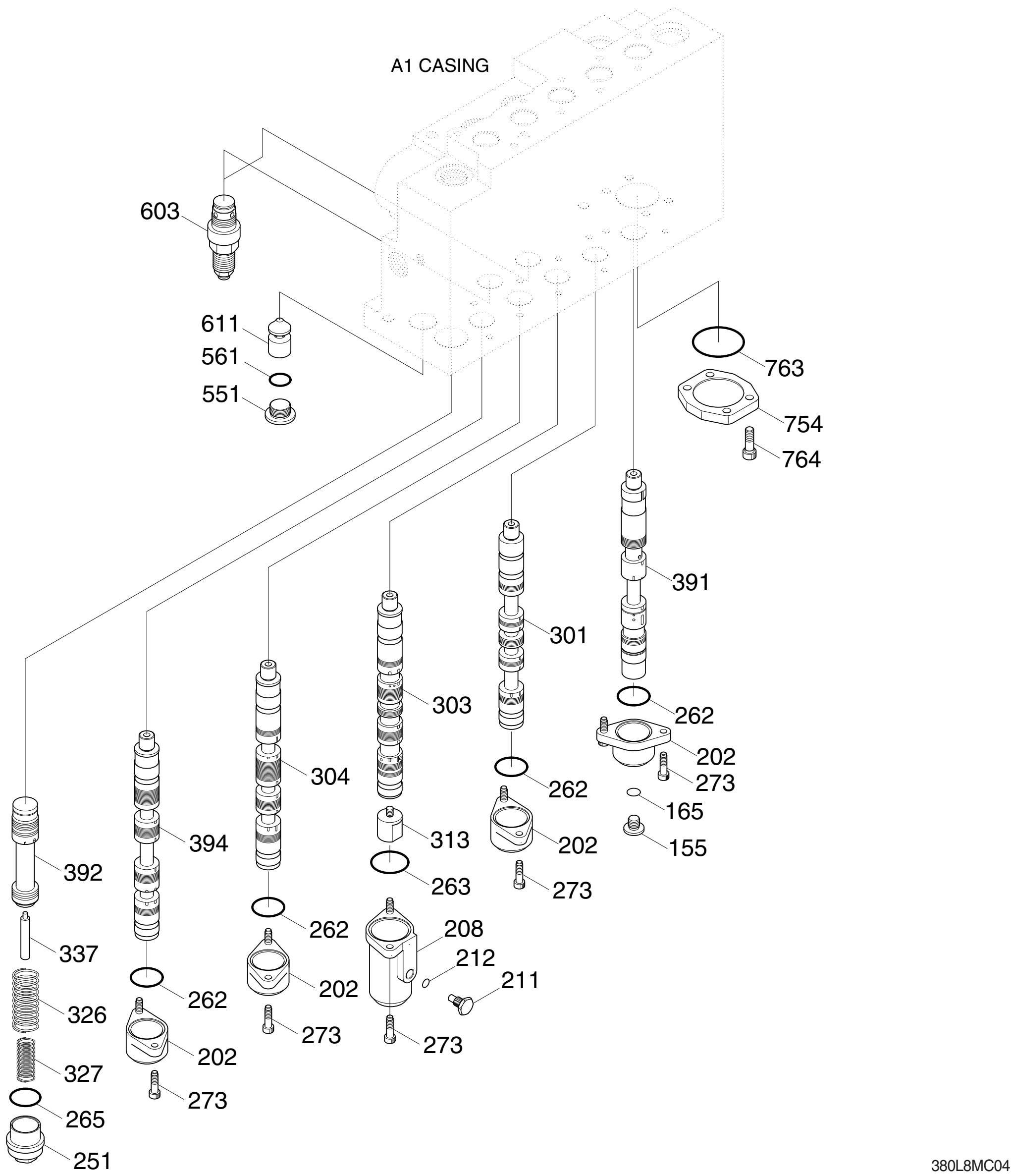
155	Plug	305	Swing spool kit	522	Spring
165	O-ring	308	Option spool kit	554	Stopper plug
201	Spring cover	332	Spring seat	557	Plug
202	Spring cover	335	Shim	603	Port relief assy
262	O-ring	336	Spacer bolt	652	Plug
263	O-ring	372	Spring	663	O-ring
273	Hex screw	393	Boom spool kit	664	O-ring
301	Travel spool kit	395	Swing priority spool kit	665	Back-up ring
302	Arm spool kit	511	Poppet		

STRUCTURE (3/4)



102	Casing-B	212	O-ring	371	Spring	551	Plug
151	Plug	252	Lock valve	372	Spring	552	Plug
155	Plug	263	O-ring	373	Spring	553	Plug
158	Plug	264	O-ring	511	Poppet	557	Plug
159	Plug	267	O-ring	512	Poppet	558	Plug
161	O-ring	273	Screw	514	Poppet	561	O-ring
162	O-ring	274	Socket bolt	522	Spring	562	O-ring
163	O-ring	275	Screw	523	Spring	563	O-ring
165	O-ring	332	Spring seat	524	Spring	601	Main relief assy
168	O-ring	335	Shim	525	Spring	603	Port relief assy
201	Spring cover	336	Spacer bolt	541	Steel ball	752	Blank flange
203	Spring cover	351	Orifice	542	Spring seat	761	O-ring
204	Cover	352	Orifice	543	Spring	762	Screw
206	Spring cover	356	Piston	550	Plug		

STRUCTURE (4/4)



155	Plug	273	Hex screw	394	Am/Confluence spool kit
165	O-ring	301	Travel spool kit	551	Plug
202	Spring cover	303	Boom spool kit	561	O-ring
208	Spool cover	304	Bucket spool kit	603	Port relief assy
211	Plug	313	Plug	611	Negative relief valve assy
212	O-ring	326	Spring	754	Flange
251	Plug	327	Spring	763	O-ring
262	O-ring	337	Rod	764	Socket screw
263	O-ring	391	Travel straight spool kit		
265	O-ring	392	By pass cut spool		

3. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

1) GENERAL PRECAUTIONS

(1) All hydraulic components must be worked with precision working. Then, before disassembling and assembling them, it is essential to select an especially-clean place.

(2) In handling a control valve, pay full attention to prevent dust, sand, etc. from entering into it.

(3) When a control valve is to be removed from the machine, apply caps and masking seals to all ports. Before disassembling the valve, re-check that these caps and masking seals are fitted completely, and then clean the outside of the assembly. Use a proper bench for working, spread a paper or rubber mat on the bench, and disassemble the valve on it.

(4) Support the body section carefully in carrying, transferring and so on of the control valve. Do not support the lever, exposed spool, end cover section or so on without fail.

(5) After disassembling and assembling of the component, it is desired to carry out various tests (for the relief characteristics, leakage, flow resistance, etc.), but the hydraulic test equipment is necessary to these tests.
Therefore, even when its disassembling can be carried out technically, do not disassemble such component that cannot be tested, adjusted, and so on.
Besides, prepare clean cleaning oil, hydraulic oil, grease, etc. beforehand.

2) TOOLS

Before disassembling the control valve, prepare the following tools beforehand.

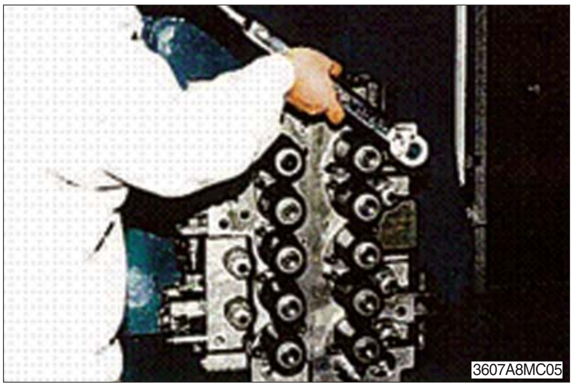
Name of tool	Quantity	Size (mm)
Vise bench	1 unit	-
Box wrench	Each 1 piece	22, 27, 32 & 36
Hexagon key wrench	Each 1 piece	5, 8, 12 & 17
Loctite #262	1 pc	-
Spanner	1 pc	10, 22, 24, 32 (Main relief valve), 36

3) DISASSEMBLING

(1) Place control valve on working bench.

※ Disassemble it in clean place and pay attention not to damage flange face.

(2) Disassembling of main spool (travel, bucket, swing, option, arm 2, boom 2, swing priority):

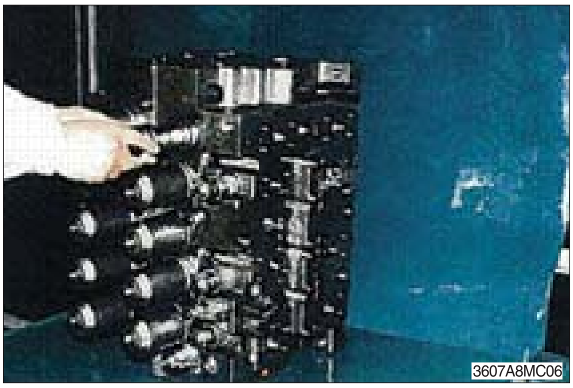


① Loosen hexagon socket head bolts (273) and remove spring cover (201), (206).

- Hexagon key wrench : 8 mm

In removing bucket spring cover (206), at first remove plug (558) and piston (356).

- Hexagon key wrench : 17 mm



② Remove spool, spring, spring seats (shim) and spacer bolt in spool assembly condition from casing.

※ When pulling out spool assembly from casing, pay attention not to damage casing.

③ Hold spool in mouthpiece-attached vise. Remove spacer bolt (336) and disassemble spring (, shim) and spring seats.

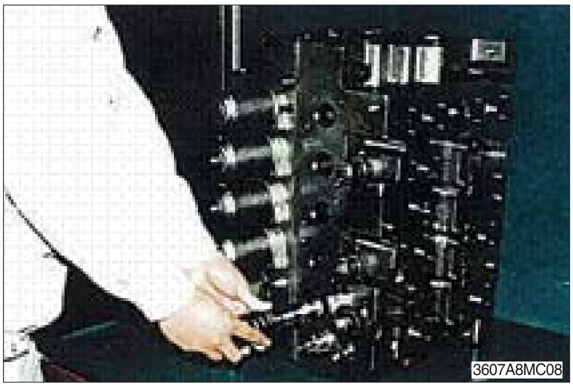
- Hexagon key wrench : 12 mm

(3) Disassembling of arm 1 spool :

① Loosen hexagon socket head bolts (273) and remove spring cover (201).
 · Hexagon key wrench : 8 mm

② Remove arm 1 spool (302), spring (371), spring seat (332) and spacer bolt (336) in spool assembly condition from casing.

※ When pulling out spool assembly from casing, pay attention not to damage casing.



3607A8MC08

③ Hold arm 1 spool (302) in mouthpiece-attached vise. Remove spacer bolt (336) and disassemble spring (371) and spring seats (332).
 · Hexagon key wrench : 12 mm

④ Do not disassemble arm 1 spool (302) more than these conditions.

3607A8MC09

(4) Disassembling of travel straight spool :

① Loosen hexagon socket head bolts (273), remove spring cover, and pull out travel straight spool (391), spring (373), spring seat (332) and spacer bolt (336) in spool assembly condition from casing.
 · Hexagon key wrench : 8 mm

※ When pulling out spool assembly from casing, pay attention not to damage casing.

② Hold travel straight spool (391) in mouthpiece-attached vise, remove spacer bolt (336) and disassemble spring (373) and spring seats (332).
 · Hexagon key wrench : 12 mm

③ Do not disassemble travel straight spool (391) more than these conditions.

(5) Disassembling of boom 1 spool :

① Loosen hexagon socket head bolts (273), remove spring cover (201) and pull out boom 1 spool (303), plug (313), spring (371), spring seats (332) and spacer bolt(336) in spool assembly condition from casing.
  · Hexagon key wrench : 8 mm

※ When pulling out spool assembly from casing, pay attention not to damage casing.

3607A8MC10

② Hold boom 1 spool (303) in mouthpiece-attached vise, remove spacer bolt (336), and disassemble spring (371) and spring seats (332).
  · Hexagon key wrench : 12 mm

Remove plug (313).
  · Spanner : 27 mm

③ Do not disassemble boom1 spool (303) more than these conditions.

3607A8MC11

(6) Disassembly of covers :

① Remove hexagon socket head bolts (273), and remove spool cover (202) and (208).
  · Hexagon key wrench : 8 mm

In removing boom1 spool cover (208), at first remove plug (211).
  · Box wrench : 22 mm

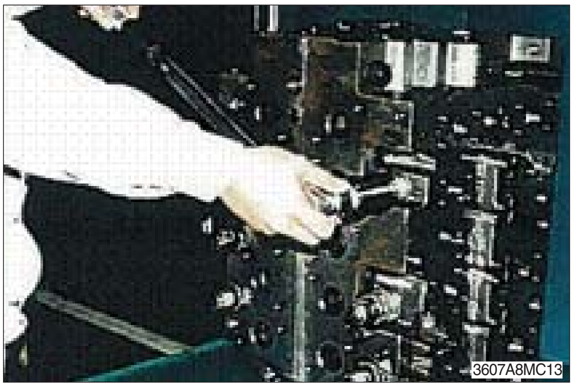
3607A8MC12

(7) Removal of main relief valve and port relief valves :

① Remove main relief valve (601) and port relief valve (603), (604), (605) from casing.

· Main relief valve : Spanner 32 mm

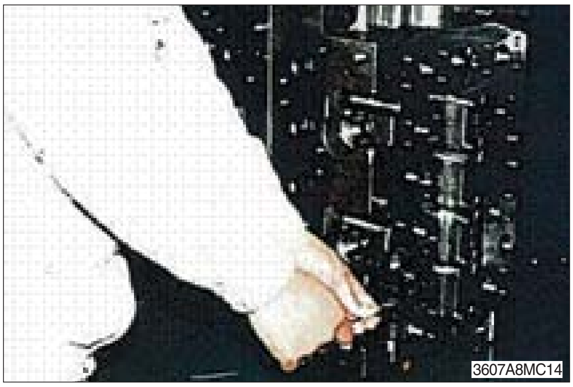
· Port relief valve : Box wrench 36 mm, Spanner 36mm



(8) Removal of lock valve assembly :

① Loosen hexagon socket head bolts and remove lock valve assembly (252).

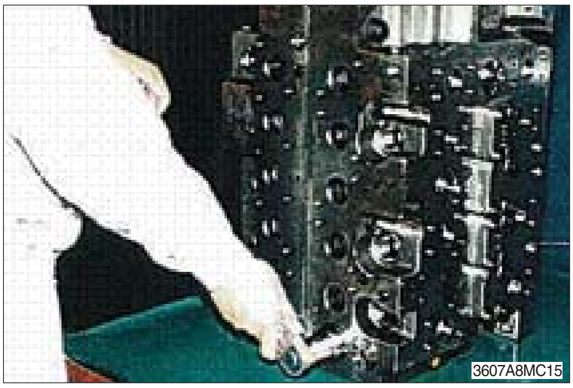
· Hexagon key wrench : 5 mm

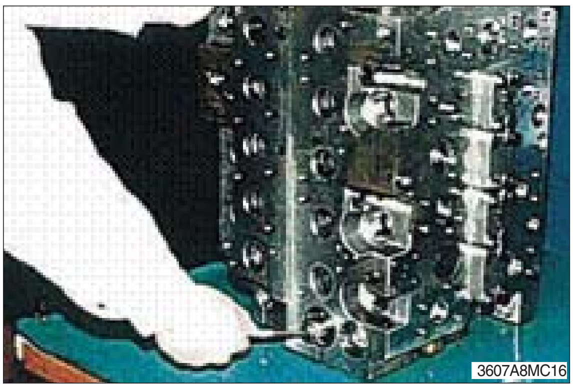


(9) Removal of bypass cut spool :

① Remove plug (251), spring (326 & 327), rod (337), and bypass cut spool (392).

· Box wrench : 27 mm

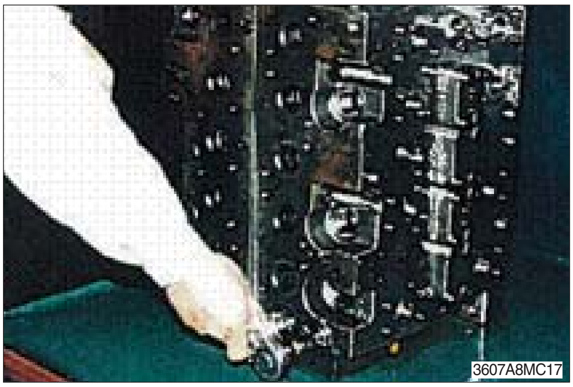




(10) Disassembly of negative control relief valve :

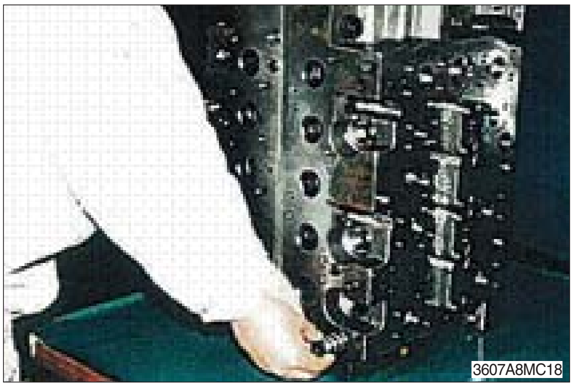
① Remove plug (551).

· Hexagon key wrench : 17 mm



3607A8MC17

② Remove poppet (611), spring (621) and damping rod(631).



3607A8MC18

(11) Disassembly of check valve :

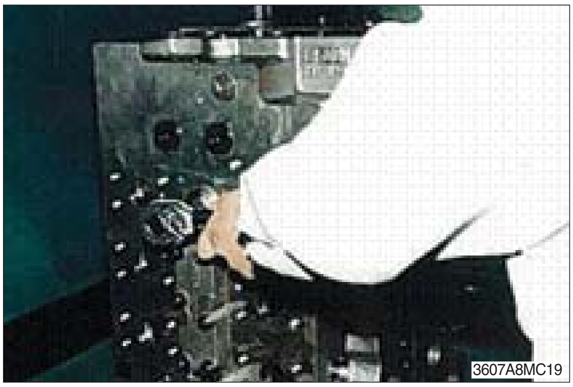
① Remove plug (551) and take out poppet (511) and spring (522).
  · Hexagon key wrench : 17 mm

② Loosen hexagon socket head bolts (274) and remove load check cover (203) and take out poppet (551) and spring (522).
  · Hexagon key wrench : 8 mm

③ Remove plug (553) and take out poppet (513) and spring (522).
  · Hexagon key wrench : 17 mm

④ Remove plug (552) and take out poppet (512) and spring (523).
  · Hexagon key wrench : 12 mm

⑤ Remove plug sub (557) and take out poppet (511) and spring (522).
  · Box wrench : 32 mm


3607A8MC19


3607A8MC20


3607A8MC21

(12) Disassembly of boom priority valve :

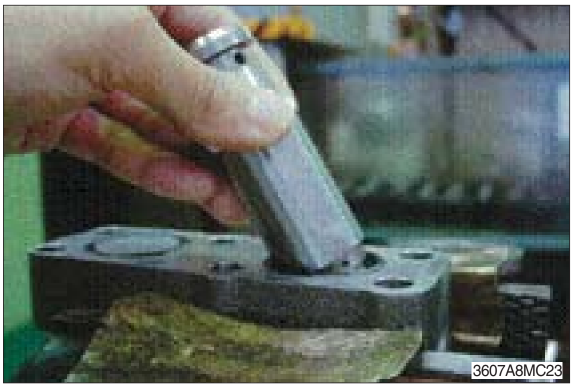
① Loosen hexagon socket head bolts (276, 277) and remove cover sub (205) and poppet sub (515) of boom priority valve.

· Hexagon key wrench : 8 ㎜

② Hold cover sub (205) in mouthpiece-attached vise, remove poppet sub (515).

③ Cover sub (205) :
Hold cover in mouthpiece-attached vise, Loosen plug (559), and remove piston (356).

· Box wrench : 24 ㎜

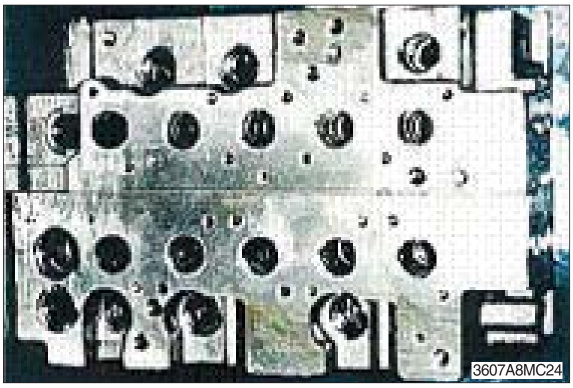


④ Poppet sub (515) :
Remove assy of poppet (101, 102), plug (103) and spring (104) from bush (106).

⑤ Remove spring (105) and spool (107).

⑥ Do not disassemble ass'y in above ④more than these conditions.

(13) Disassembly of casing :



① Except when required specially, do not disassemble tie bolts of casing A.

② Since plugs not described in above disassembling procedures are blind plugs for sacrifice holes and blind plugs for casing sanitation, do not disassemble them as far as not required specially.

(14) Inspection after disassembling :

Clean all disassembled parts with clean mineral oil fully, and dry them with compressed air. Then, place them on clean papers or cloths for inspection.

① Control valve:

a. Check whole surfaces of all parts for burrs, scratches, notches and other defects.

b. Confirm that seal groove faces of casing and block are smooth and free of dust, dent, rust etc.

c. Correct dents and damages on check seat faces of casing, if any, by lapping.

※ Pay attention not to leave lapping agent in casing.

d. Confirm that all sliding and fitting parts can be moved manually and that all grooves and paths are free from foreign matter.

e. If any spring is broken or deformed, replace it with new one.

f. When relief valve do not function properly, repair it, following its disassembling assembling procedures.

g. Replace all seats and O-rings with new ones.

② Relief valve:

a. Confirm that all seat faces at ends of all poppets and seats are free of defects and are uniform contact faces.

b. Confirm manually that main poppet and seat can slide lightly and smoothly.

c. Confirm that outside face of main poppet and inside face of seat are free from scratches and so on.

d. Confirm that springs are free from breaking, deformation, and wear.

e. Confirm that orifices of main poppet and seat section are not clogged with foreign matter.

f. Replace all O-rings with new ones.

g. When any light damage is found in above inspections, correct it by lapping.

h. When any abnormal part is found, replace it with a relief valve assembly.

4) ASSEMBLING

(1) In this assembling section, explanation only is shown. Refer to figures and photographs shown in disassembling section.

(2) Figure in ( ) shown after part name in explanation sentence shows number in construction figure.

(3) Cautions in assembling seals

① Pay attention to keep seals free from defects in its forming and damages in its handling.

② Apply grease, hydraulic oil or so on to seals and seal-fitting sections for full lubrication.

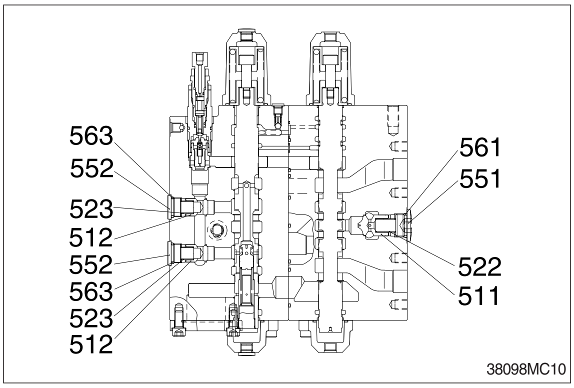
③ Do not stretch seals so much to deform them permanently.

④ In fitting O-ring, pay attention not to roll it into its position. In addition, twisted O-ring cannot remove its twisting naturally with ease after being fitted, and causes oil leakage.

⑤ Tighten fitting bolts at all sections with torque wrench to their respective tightening torques shown in "Maintenance Standards".

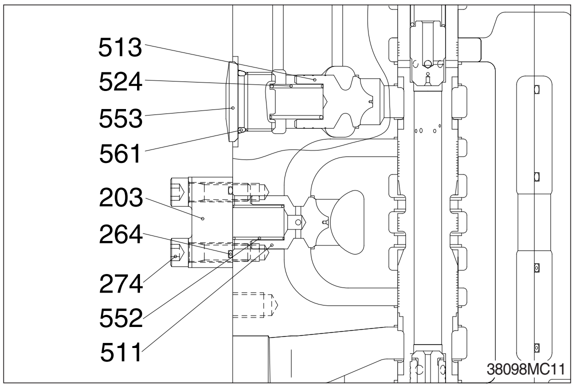
(4) Assembly of check valve :

① Assemble poppets (511,513 & 512) and springs (522 & 523).
Put O-rings (561) onto plugs (551 & 553).
Put O-rings (563) onto plugs (552).
Put O-rings (264) on cover (203).
Tighten the latters with their specified torques.



※ Use poppets, springs and plugs in following groups.

Poppet	Spring	Plug or cover	Remember that
511	522	203, 204, 551, 557	511 in 10 positions
512	523	552	512 in 2 positions
513	522	553	513 in 2 positions
514	525	204	514 in 1 positions



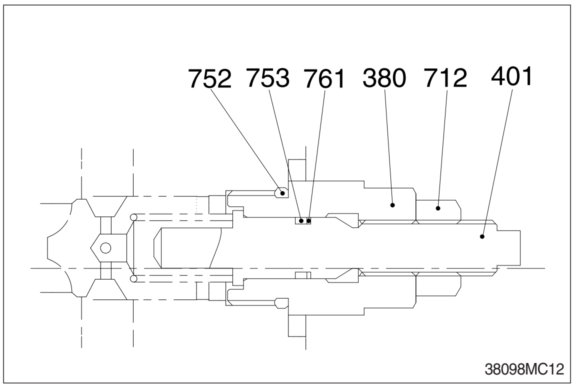
No.	Hexagon key wrench	Tightening torque kgf · m	Tightening torque lbf · ft
(551)	17 mm	37.7~41.8	273~302
(274)	8 mm	5.3~6.3	38.3~45.6
(553)	17 mm	37.7~41.8	273~302
(552)	12 mm	23.5~27.5	170~197
(557)	(box wrench) 32 mm	20.4~25.5	148~184

② Bucket, option confluence plug sub :

If you want bucket confluence or option confluence effective, loosen rod (401) and tighten lock nut (712).

If you want to cancel bucket confluence or option confluence, tighten rod (401) and lock nut (712).

- Spanner : 10 mm for (401)
- Tightening torque : 3.0~4.0 kgf · m (21.7~28.9 lbf · ft)
- Spanner : 24 mm for (712)
- Tightening torque : 4.0~5.0 kgf · m (28.9~36.2 lbf · ft)



(5) Assemble boom priority valve :

① Put O-ring (108) onto bushing (106), and assemble spool (107) and spring (105).

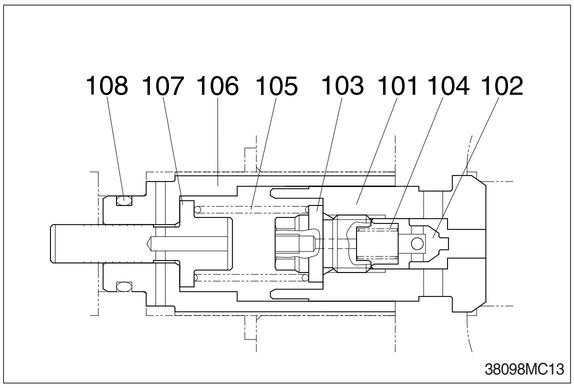
Assemble assy of poppet (101, 102), plug (103) and spring (104) into bushing (106).

Assemble bushing sub in above ② into cover (205) and assemble them into casing, and tighten hexagon socket head bolts (276, 277)

- Hexagon key wrench : 8 mm
- Tightening torque : 5.3~6.3 kgf · m (38.3~45.6 lbf · ft)

Assemble piston (356) in cover (205), and tighten plug (559)

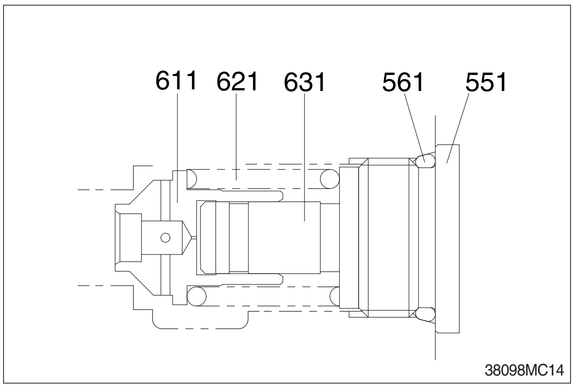
- Box wrench : 24 mm
- Tightening torque : 20.4~25.5 kgf · m (147.5~184.4 lbf · ft)



(6) Assembling of negative control relief valve

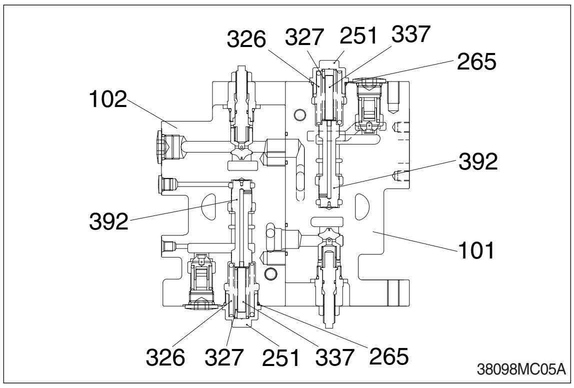
① Assemble poppet (611), spring (621),and damping rod (631) to casing A (101) & casing B(102). Put O-ring (561) onto plug (551) and tighten the latter with its specified torque.

- Hexagon key wrench : 17 mm
- Tightening torque : 37.7~41.8 kgf · m (272.7~302.3 lbf · ft)



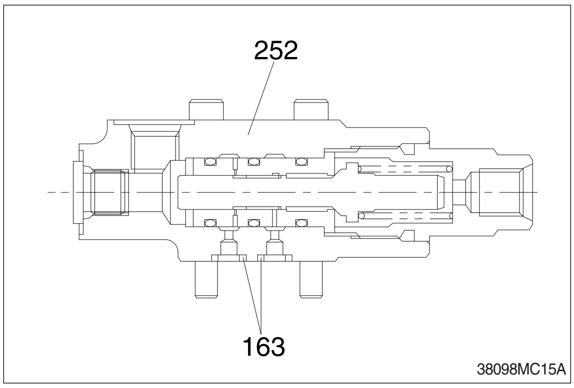
(7) Assembly of bypass cut valve

① Assemble bypass cut spool (392), spring (326 & 327) and rod (337) into casing A (101) & casing B(102).
Put O-ring (265) onto plug (251) and tighten the latter with its specified torque.
- Box wrench : 27 mm
- Tightening torque : 7.95~10.0 kgf · m (57.5~72.3 lbf · ft)



(8) Assembling of lock valve assembly

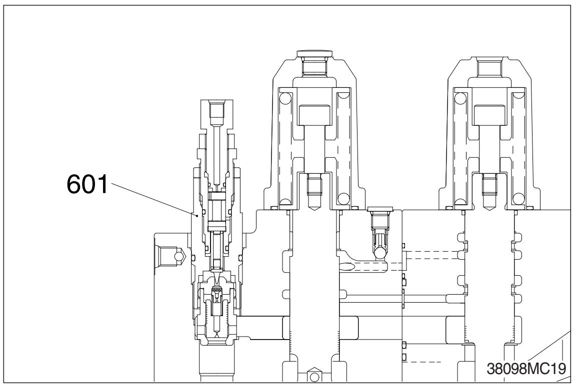
① Fit O-ring (163) to lock valve assembly (252) and tighten hexagon socket head bolts with specified torque.
- Hexagon key wrench : 5 mm
- Tightening torque : 1.0~1.42 kgf · m (7.2~10.2 lbf · ft)

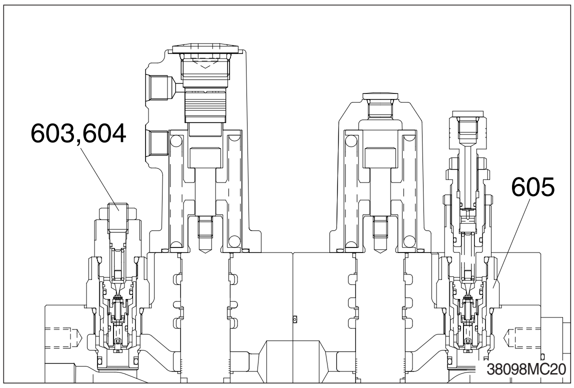


(9) Assembling of main relief valve and port relief valve :

① Assemble main relief valve (601) and port relief valves (603, 604, & 605) to casing and tighten it with specified torque.

Item	Size	Tightening torque	
		kgf · m	lbf · ft
Main relief valve	Spanner 32 mm	12.2~14.3	88.2~103
Port relief valve	Spanner 36 mm Box wrench 36 mm		





(10) Assembling of travel straight spool :

① Hold end of travel straight spool (391) in mouthpiece-attached vise, set spring seat (332) and spring (373) and tighten spacer bolt (336) with specified torque.

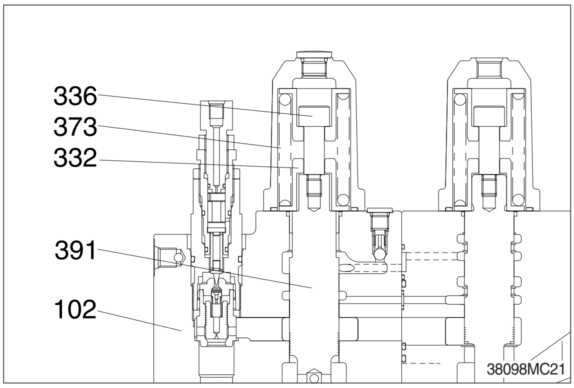
※ Before tightening spacer bolt (336), apply Loctite #262 to it.

· Hexagon key wrench : 12 mm

· Tightening torque : 3.77~4.18 kgf · m (27.2~30.2 lbf · ft)

② Fit spool assemblies of items ① above into casing B (102).

※ Fit spool assemblies into casing B (102) carefully and slowly. Do not push them forcibly without fail.



(11) Assembling of boom 1 spool :

① Hold the middle of boom 1 spool (303) in mouthpiece-attached vise, set spring seat (332) and spring (371) and tighten spacer bolt (336) with specified torque, and tighten plug(313) with specified torque.

※ Before tightening spacer bolt (336) and plug (313), apply Loctite #262 to them.

· Spacer bolt (336) : Hexagon key wrench 12 mm

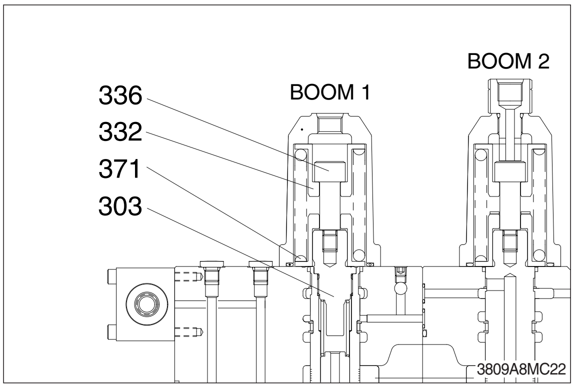
· Tightening Torque : 3.77~4.18 kgf · m (27.2~30.2 lbf · ft)

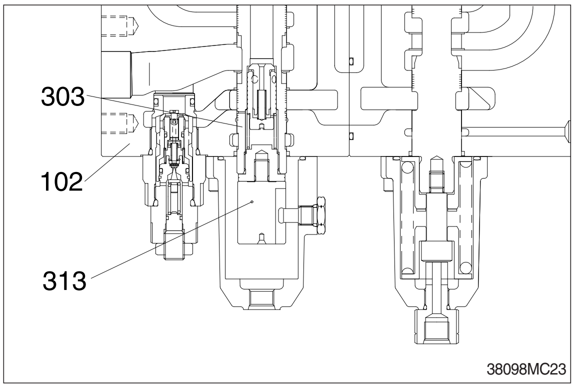
· Plug (313) : Spanner 27 mm

· Tightening Torque : 3.77~4.18 kgf · m (27.2~30.2 lbf · ft)

② Fit spool assemblies of Items ① above into casing B (102).

※ Fit spool assemblies into casing B (102) carefully and slowly. Do not push them forcibly without fail.



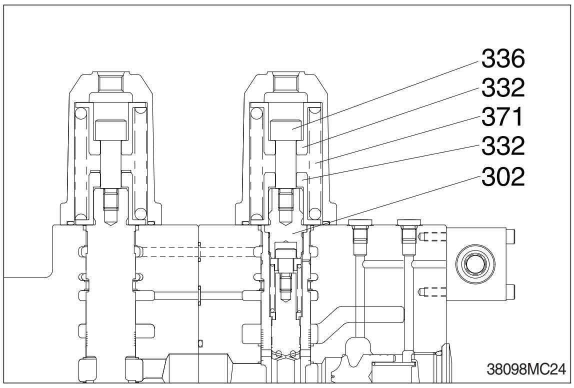


(12) **Assembling of arm 1 spool :**

① Hold end of arm 1 spool (302) in mouthpiece-attached vise, set spring seats (332) and spring (371) and tighten spacer bolt (336) with specified torque.

※ Before tightening spacer bolt (336), apply Loctite #262 to it.

· Hexagon key wrench : 12 mm
· Tightening Torque : 3.77~4.18 kgf · m (27.2~30.2 lbf · ft)



② Fit spool assemblies of Items ① above into casing A (101).

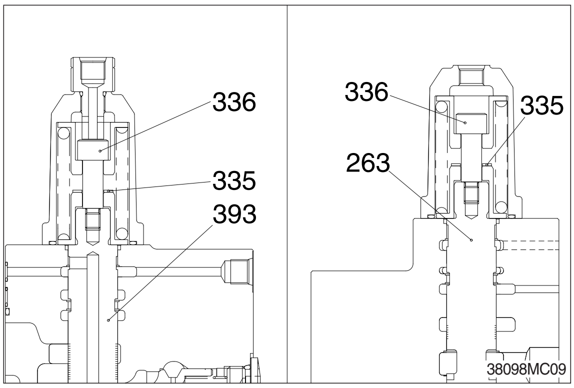
※ Fit spool assemblies into casing A (101) carefully and slowly.
Do not push them forcibly without fail.

(13) Assembling of main spool (travel (301), bucket (304), swing (305), option (308), arm 2 (394), boom 2 (393), swing priority (395)

① Hold end of each spool in mouthpiece-attached vise, set spring seats, springs (shim (335) for arm 2, boom 2 and swing priority spool) and tighten spacer bolt (336) with specified torque.

※ Before tightening spacer bolt (336), apply Loctite #262 to it.

· Hexagon key wrench : 12 mm
· Tightening Torque : 3.77~4.18 kgf · m (27.2~30.2 lbf · ft)

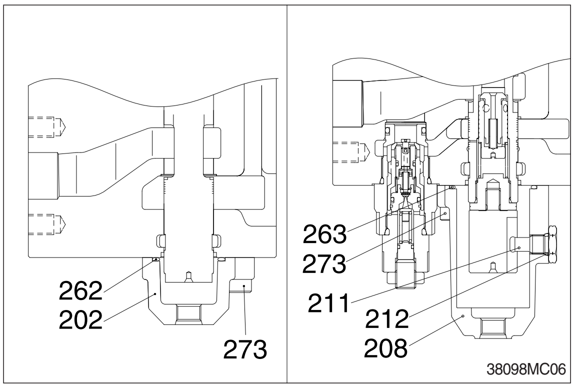


② Insert spool assemblies of Items ① above into casing.

※ Fit spool assemblies into casing A (101) and casing B (102) carefully and slowly.
Do not push them forcibly without fail.

(14) **Assembling of cover :**

① Fit spool covers (202) and (208) to sides reverse to spring sides spools, and tighten hexagon socket head bolts (273) with specified torque.



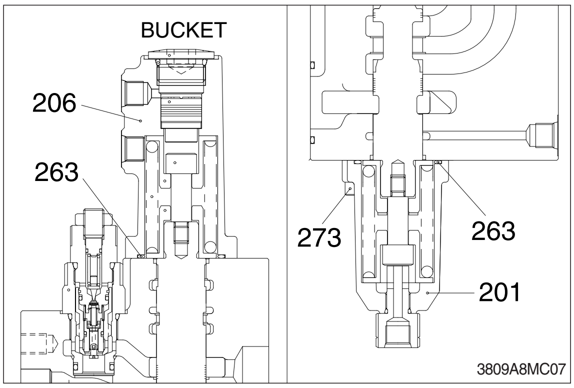
※ Confirm that O-rings (262) have been fitted to spool cover (202), O-ring (263) to boom 1 spool cover (208).

- Hexagon key wrench : 8 mm
- Tightening torque : 5.3~6.3 kgf · m (38.3~45.6 lbf · ft)

② Boom 1 spool cover :
Put O-ring (212) onto plug (211) and tighten the latter onto boom 1 spool cover (208) with its specified torque.

- Box wrench : 22 mm
- Tightening torque : 3.5~4.0 kgf · m (25.3~29 lbf · ft)

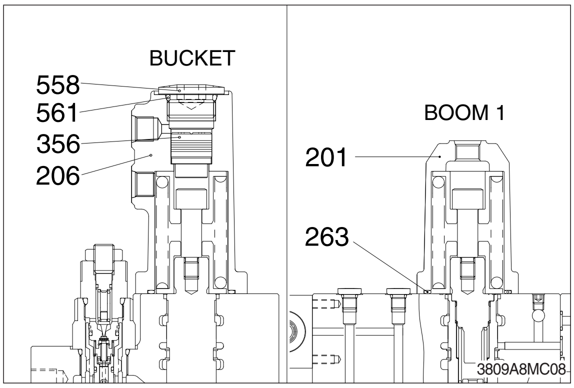
③ Fit spring covers (201), (206) to spring sides of spools, and tighten hexagon socket head bolts (273) with specified torque.



※ Confirm that O-rings (263) have been fitted.

- Hexagon key wrench : 8 mm
- Tightening torque : 5.3~6.3 kgf · m (38.3~45.5 lbf · ft)

④ Bucket spring cover :
Assemble piston (356) to bucket spring cover (206). Put O-ring (561) onto plug (558) and tighten the latter with specified torque.



- Hexagon key wrench : 17 mm
- Tightening torque : 20.1~25.1 kgf · m (144.6~180.8 lbf · ft)

⑤ Boom 1 spring cover :
Fit spring cover (201) to spring sides and tighten hexagon socket head bolts (273) with specified torque.

※ Confirm that O-rings (263) have been fitted.

- Hexagon key wrench : 8 mm
- Tightening torque : 5.3~6.3 kgf · m (38.3~45.5 lbf · ft)

GROUP 5 SWING DEVICE

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL OF MOTOR (MACHINE SERIAL NO. : -#0465)

1) REMOVAL

(1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.**

※ When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.

(4) Disconnect hoses (2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9).

(5) Sling the swing motor assembly (1) and remove the swing motor mounting bolts (10).
· Motor device weight : 75 kg (165 lb)
· Tightening torque : 97.8 ± 15 kgf·m
(707 ± 108 lbf·ft)

(6) Remove the swing motor assembly.
※ When removing the swing motor assembly, check that all the piping have been disconnected.

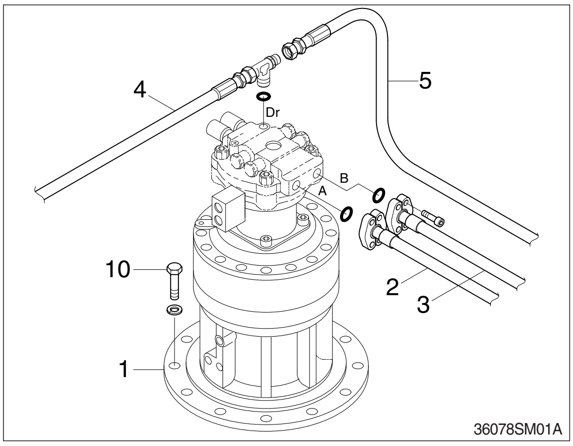
2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

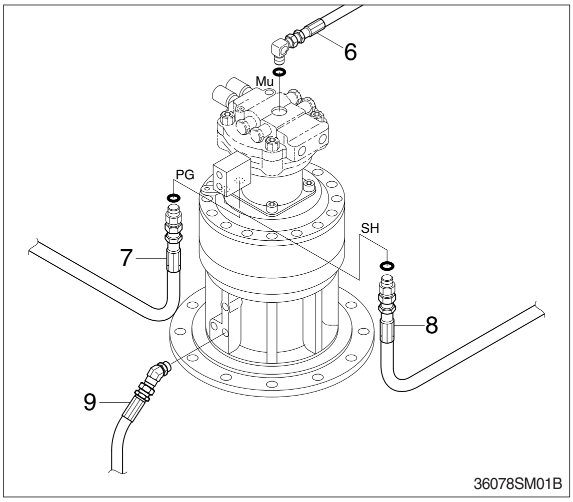
(2) Bleed the air from the swing motor.
① Remove the air vent plug.
② Pour in hydraulic oil until it over flows from the port.
③ Tighten plug lightly.
④ Start the engine, run at low idling, and check oil come out from plug.
⑤ Tighten plug fully.

(3) Confirmed the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

13031GE18



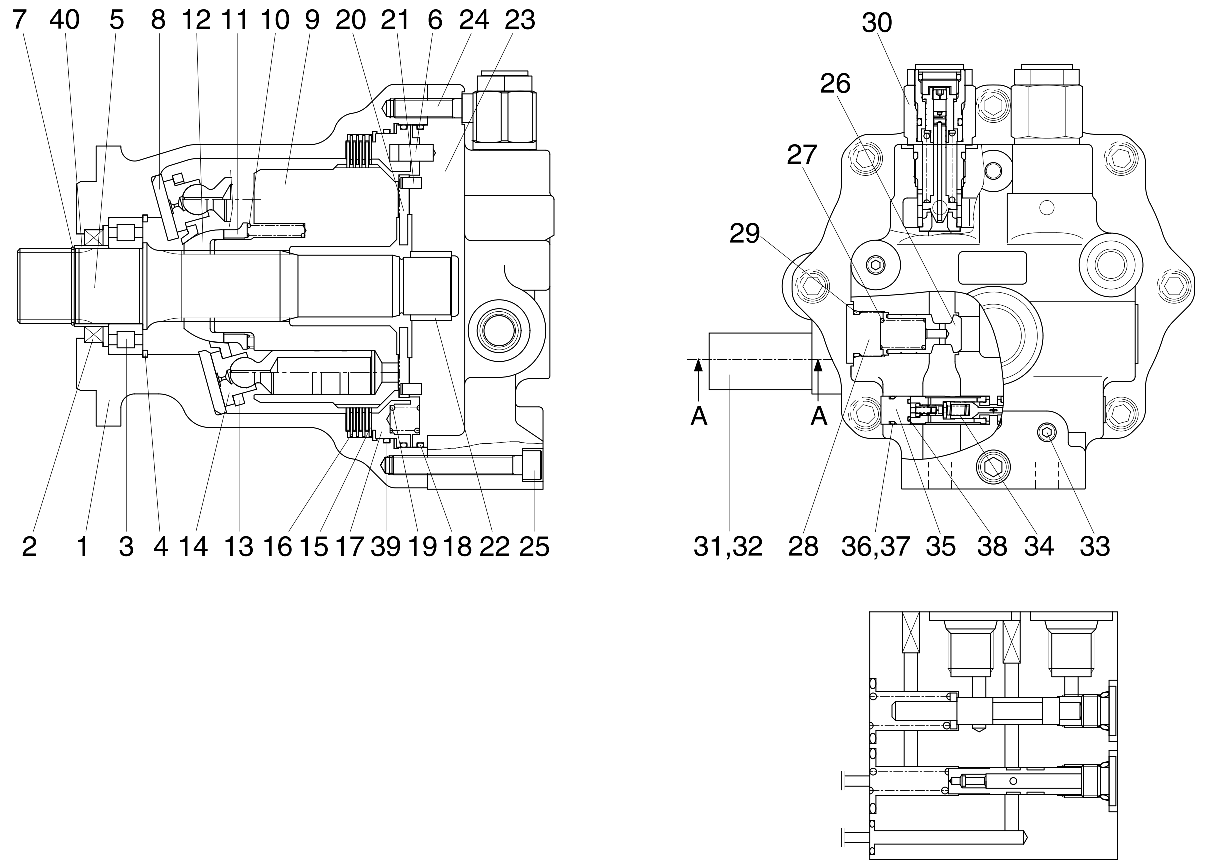
36078SM01A



36078SM01B

2. SWING MOTOR (MACHINE SERIAL NO. : -#0465)

1) STRUCTURE



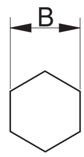
SECTION A-A

38092SM02

1	Body	15	Friction plate	29	O-ring
2	Oil seal	16	Plate	30	Relief valve assy
3	Roller bearing	17	Brake piston	31	Time delay valve
4	Snap ring	18	O-ring	32	Wrench bolt
5	Shaft	19	Spring	33	Plug
6	Pin	20	Valve plate	34	Swing reactionless valve assy
7	Stop ring	21	Pin	35	Plug
8	Shoe plate	22	Needle bearing	36	O-ring
9	Cylinder block	23	Rear cover	37	Back up ring
10	Spring	24	Wrench bolt	38	O-ring
11	Ball guide seat	25	Wrench bolt	39	O-ring
12	Ball guide	26	Poppet	40	Bushing
13	Set plate	27	Spring		
14	Piston assy	28	Plug		

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

Tool name	Remark	
Allen wrench	5	
	6	
	12	
	17	
Socket for socket wrench, spanner	36	
Torque wrench	Capable of tightening with the specified torques	
Snap ring plier(for holes, axis)	Snap ring(4)	
Solder hammer	Needle bearing(22), pin(6, 21)	
Oil seal inserting jig	Oil seal(2)	
Induction heating apparatus for bearing	Roller bearing(3)	

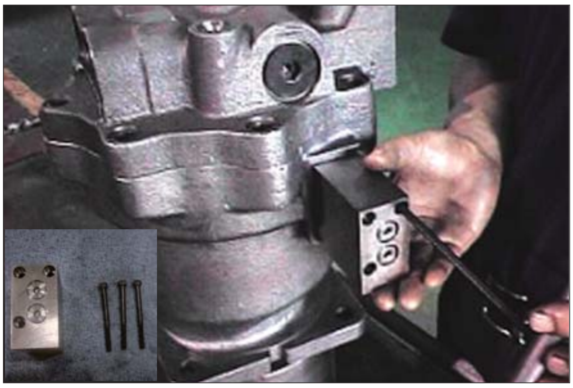
(2) Tightening torque

Part name	Item	Size	Torque		Wrench size	
			kgf · m	lbf · ft	in	mm
Wrench bolt	24	M14	20.9	151.2	0.47	12
Wrench bolt	25	M14	20.9	151.2	0.47	12
Relief valve	30	M33	18.0	130.2	1.42	36
Wrench bolt	32	PF 1/4	6.9	49.9	0.20	5
Plug	33	PF 1/4	20.9	151.2	0.24	6

2) DISASSEMBLING

(1) Disassemble the sub of a TURNING AXIS

① Unloosing wrench bolt (32) and disassemble time delay valve assy (31) from rear cover (23)

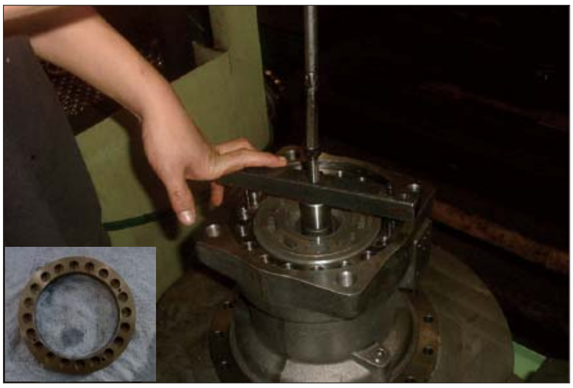


3607A8SM01/01A

② Hang rear cover (23) on hoist, unloose wrench bolt (24, 25) and disassemble from body (1).

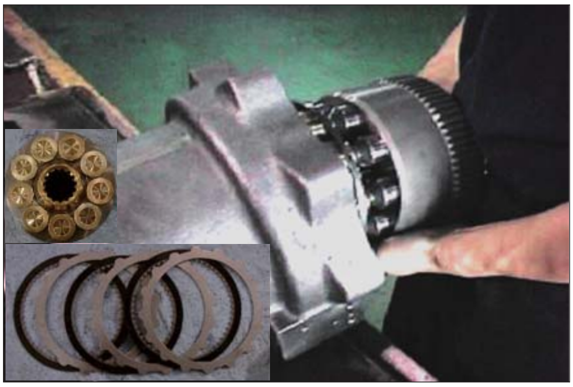
3607A8SM02

③ Using a jig, disassemble break piston (17) from body (1).



3607A8SM03

④ Disassemble respectively cylinder block assy, fricktion plate (15), plate (16) from body (1).



3607A8SM04

⑤ Disassemble shoe plate (8) from body (1).

3607A8SM05

⑥ Using a plier jig, disassemble snap ring (4) and shaft assy (5).

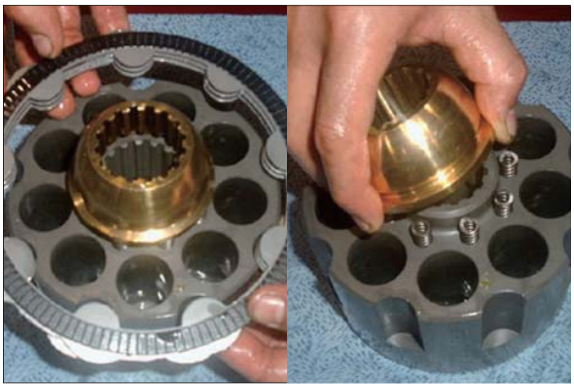
3607A8SM06/06A

(2) Disassemble cylinder block assy sub

① Disassemble pistion assy (14), set plate (13) from cylinder block assy.

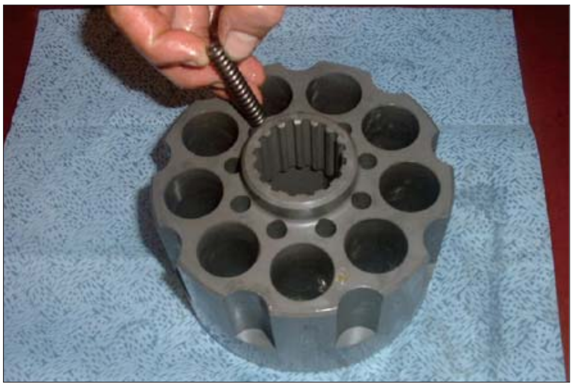
3607A8SM07

② Disassemble ball guide (12), friction plate (15), plate (16) and ball guide seat (11) from cylinder block (9).



3607A8SM08A/08B

③ Disassemble spring (10) from cylinder block (9).



3607A8SM09

(3) Disassemble rear cover assy sub

① Disassemble pin (6, 21) and valve plate (20) from rear cover (23).

3607A8SM10/10A

② Using a torque wrench, disassemble relief valve assy (30) 2 set from rear cover (23).

3607A8SM11/11A

③ Disassemble make up check valve assy with a torque wrench from rear cover (23).

3607A8SM12/12A

4) ASSEMBLING

(1) Assemble the sub of a turning axls

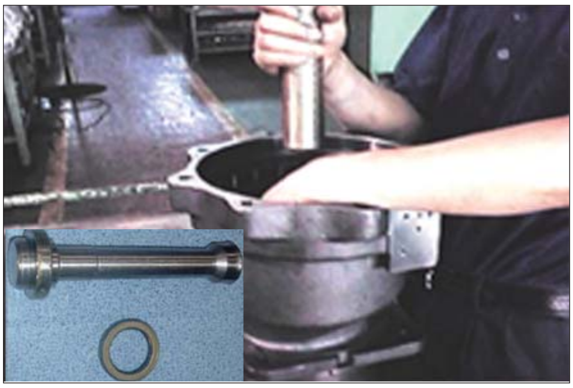
① Put roller bearing (3) on preheater and provide heat to inner wheel (compress ing temp : 290˚C for 2 minutes)
- Roller bearing ×1EA

3607A8SM21

② After assembling and compressing pre-heated roller bearing (3), stop ring (7) into shaft (5).
- Stop ring ×1EA
- Shaft× 1EA

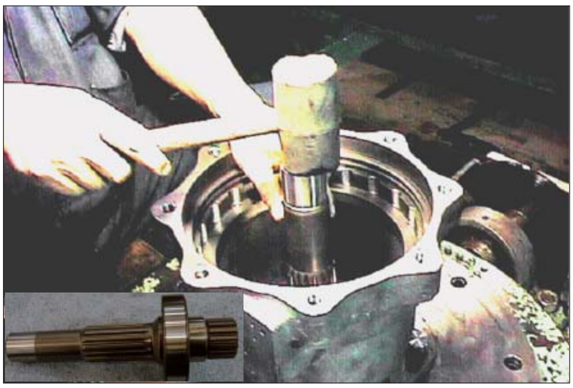
3607A8SM22/22A

③ Using a compressing tool and steel stick, assemble oil seal (2) into body (1).
- Oil seal ×1EA



3607A8SM23/23A

④ Insert above shaft sub into body (1) and assemble it with a hammer.



3607A8SM24

⑤ Fix snap ring (4) to shaft with a plier jig.
· Snap ring ×1EA


3607A8SM06

⑥ Spread grease on shoe plate (8) and assemble on the body.
· Shoe plate ×1EA


3607A8SM05

(2) Assemble the sub of cylinder block assy

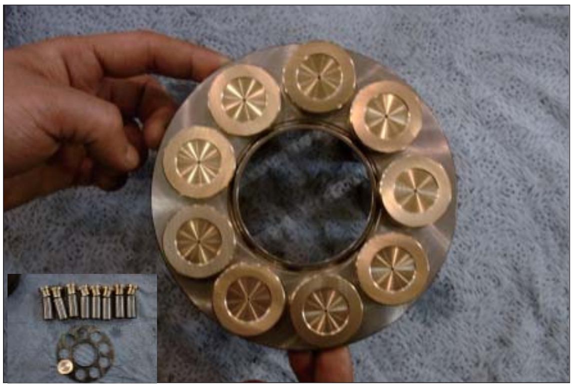
① Assemble spring (10) 9 set into cylinder block (9).
· Spring ×9EA


3607A8SM25

② Assemble ball guide (12) and ball guide seat (11) into cylinder block (9).
· Ball guide ×1EA


3607A8SM26

③ Assemble piston assy (14) 9 set into set plate (13).
 · Piston assy ×9EA
 · Set plate ×1EA



3607A8SM27

④ Assemble above item ② and ③.

3607A8SM28

⑤ Assemble cylinder block assy into body (1).

3607A8SM04

⑥ Assemble 4 set of lining plate (16), friction plate (15) respectively into body.
 · Lining plate ×4EA
 · Friction plate ×4EA

3607A8SM29

⑦ Assemble O-ring (18) into break piston (17).

- O-ring ×2EA

3607A8SM30

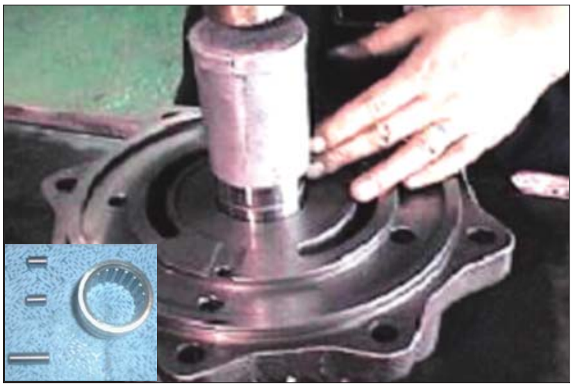
⑧ Insert break piston assy into body (1) and assemble spring (19) into break piston (17).

- Spring×19EA

3607A8SM31/31A

(3) Assemble the sub of rear cover assy sub

① After assembling needle bearing (22) into rear cover (23), with a hammer assemble pin (6, 21).



3607A8SM32/32A

② Assemble respectively make up check valve assy spring (27), poppet (26), plug (28) into rear cover (23) after then screw it torque wrench.

- Make up check sub ×2set
- Spring ×2EA
- Check ×3EA

3607A8SM33/12A

③ Assemble relief valve assy (30) 2set into rear cover (23) with a torque wrench.

3607A8SM34/11A

④ Spreading grease on valve plate (20), assemble into rear cover (23).

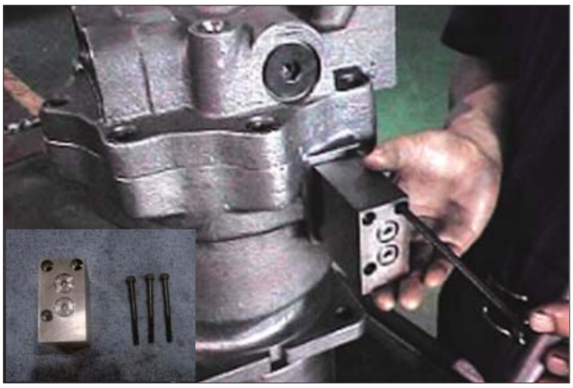
· Valve plate × 1EA

3607A8SM10/10A

⑤ Lift up rear cover assy on body (1) by a crane and assemble it with a wrench bolt (24, 25).

3607A8SM02

⑥ Assemble time delay valve assy (31) into rear cover (23) with a wrench bolt (32).



3607A8SM01/01A

(4) Air pressing test

Be sure of leakage, after press air into assembled motor.

14078SM232

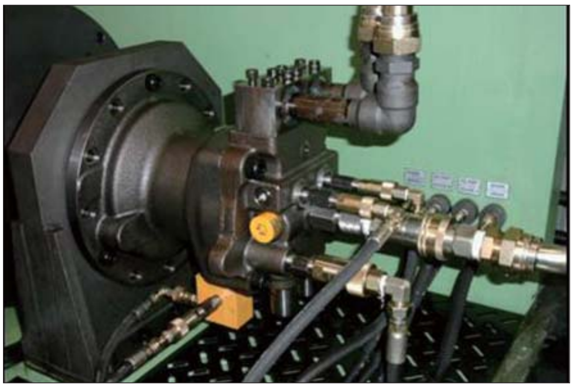
(5) Leakage check

After cleaning motor by color check No.1, paint No.3 and be sure of leakage.

14078SM233/233A

(6) Mount test bench

Mounting motor test bench, test the availability of each part.



220078SM14

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL OF MOTOR (MACHINE SERIAL NO. : #0466-)

1) REMOVAL

(1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.

※ When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.

(4) Disconnect hoses (2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9).

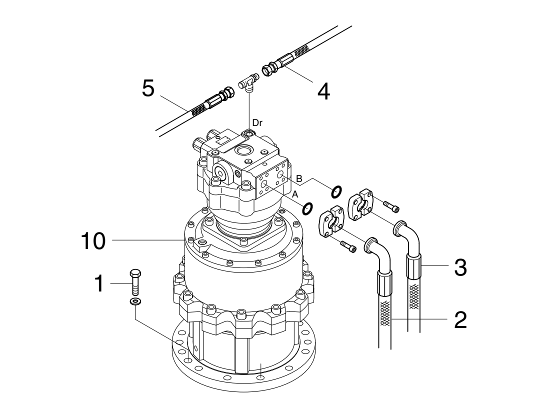
(5) Sling the swing motor assembly (1) and remove the swing motor mounting bolts (10).

· Motor device weight : 95 kg (209 lb)
· Tightening torque : 97.8 ± 15 kgf·m
(707 ± 108 lbf·ft)

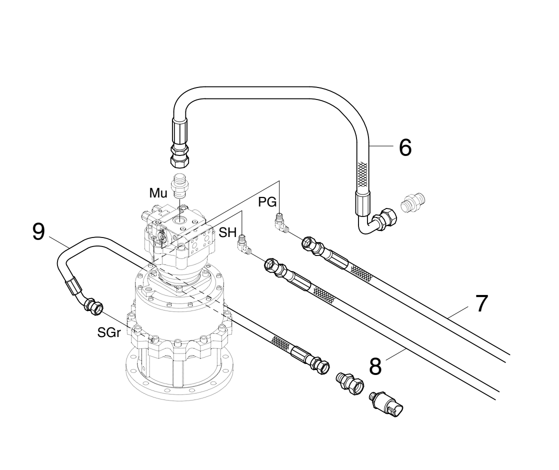
(6) Remove the swing motor assembly.

※ When removing the swing motor assembly, check that all the piping have been disconnected.

13031GE18



380A8SM01



380A8SM02

2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

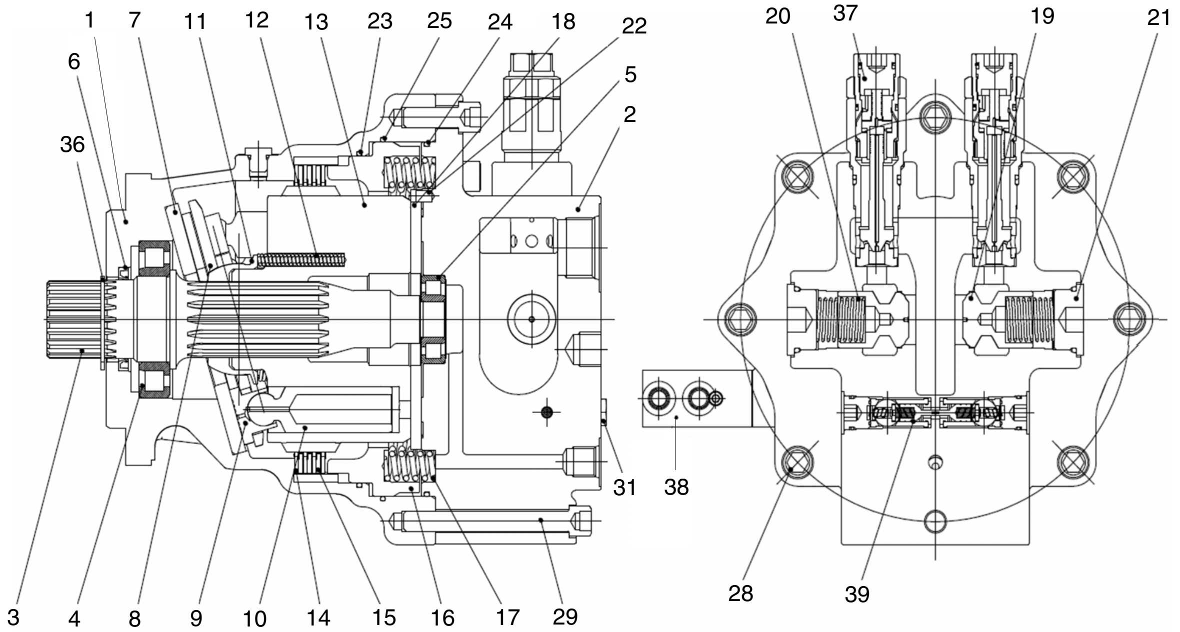
(2) Bleed the air from the swing motor.

① Remove the air vent plug.
② Pour in hydraulic oil until it over flows from the port.
③ Tighten plug lightly.
④ Start the engine, run at low idling, and check oil come out from plug.
⑤ Tighten plug fully.

(3) Confirmed the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2. SWING MOTOR (MACHINE SERIAL NO. : #0466-)

1) STRUCTURE

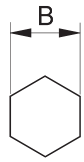


380A8SM05

1	Casing	12	Cylinder spring	23	O-ring
2	Valve casing	13	Cylinder block	24	O-ring
3	Drive shaft	14	Friction plate	25	O-ring
4	Roller bearing	15	Separation plate	28	Socket bolt
5	Roller bearing	16	Brake piston	29	Socket bolt
6	Oil seal	17	Brake spring	30	Socket bolt
7	Shoe plate	18	Valve plate	31	VP plug assy
8	Retainer plate	19	Plunger	36	Snap ring
9	Shoe	20	Check spring	37	Relief valve
10	Piston	21	RO plug assy	38	Brake valve
11	Thrust ball	22	Pin	39	Reactionless valve

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

Tool name	Remark	
Allen wrench	17	
Socket for socket wrench, spanner	5	
	19	
	36	
Plier (for stop ring)	For shaft Φ 45 mm	
Plier (for lock ring)	For hole Φ 100 mm For hole Φ 45 mm	
Driver	(-) type, 2EA	
Steel rod	10x8x200 mm, 1EA	
Hammer	Plastic hammer, steel hammer, each 1EA	
Torque wrench (adjust range)	1.0~4.5 kgf·m (7.2~32.5 lbf·ft) 4.0~18 kgf·m (28.9~130 lbf·ft) 12~48 kgf·m (86.8~347 lbf·ft)	
Slide hammer bearing plier	-	
Brake piston subtract jig	-	

(2) Tightening torque

Part name	Item	Size	Torque		Wrench size	
			kgf · m	lbf · ft	mm	inch
Socket bolt	30	M6	1.2±0.2	8.7±1.4	5	0.20
Socket bolt	28, 29	M14	11.3±1.1	81.7±8.0	17	0.67
Relief valve	37	M33	18±1.0	130±7.2	19	0.75
Plug	31	PF 1/4	3.7±0.2	26.8±1.4	36	1.42

3) DISASSEMBLING

※ The disassembling procedures are as following.

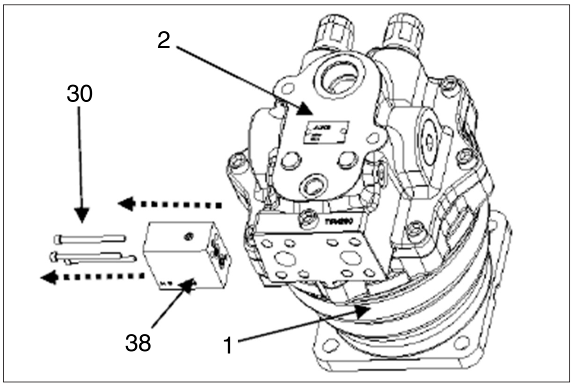
※ Figure in ( ) shown after part name in explanation sentence shows number in construction figure.

(1) Bind the circumference of the motor and lift up by crane.
Clean the motor with cleaning oil and dry it with compressed air.

(2) Drain the oil from the casing (1) through the drain port.

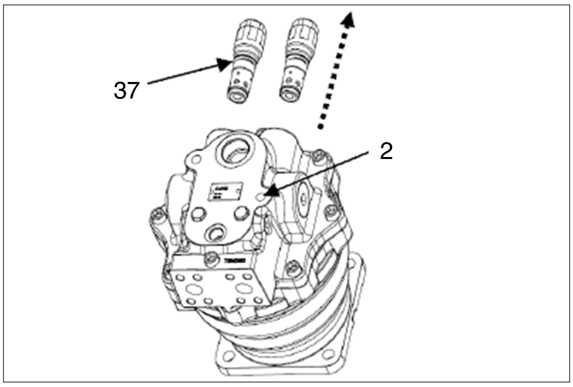
(3) Place the drive shaft (3) with the shaft side with down ward and fix it on a work table for easy disassembling.

(4) Put a fitting mark on the casing (1) and valve casing (2) and loosen the socket bolt (30) and remove the brake valve (38) form the swing motor.



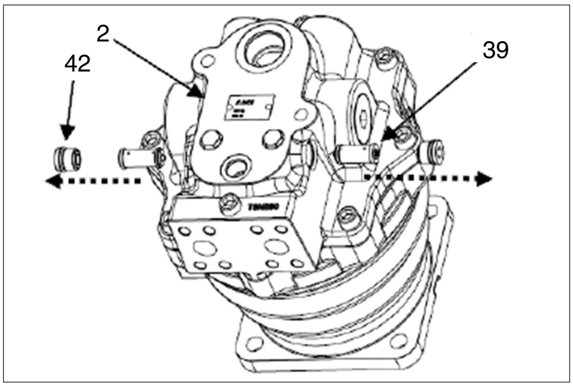
380A8SM06

(5) Loosen the relief valve (37) and take off it from the valve casing (2).



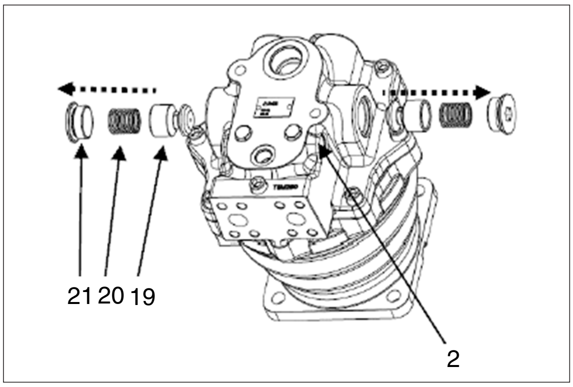
380A8SM07

(6) Remove the RO plug (42) from the valve casing (2) and pull out the reactionless valve (39).



380A8SM08

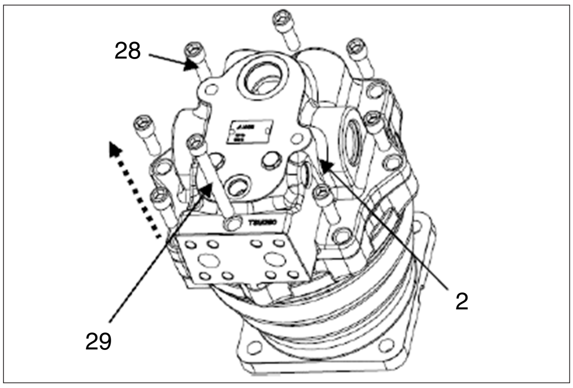
(7) Loosen the RO plug (21) from the valve casing (2) and pull out the spring (20) and plunger (19).



380A8SM09

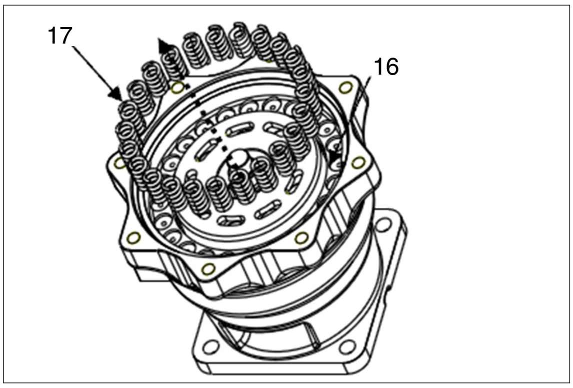
(8) Loosen the socket bolt (28, 29) and take off the valve casing (2).

※ The valve casing (2) is separated from the casing (1) automatically by the brake spring (17) force when the socket bolt (28, 29) is loosened.



380A8SM10

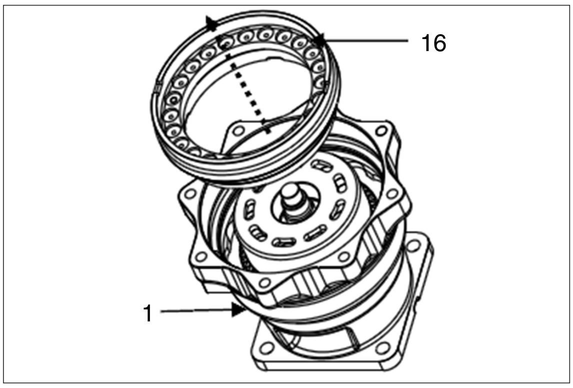
(9) Pull out the brake spring (17) from the brake piston (16).



380A8SM11

(10) The brake piston (16) from the casing (1) by using a jig.

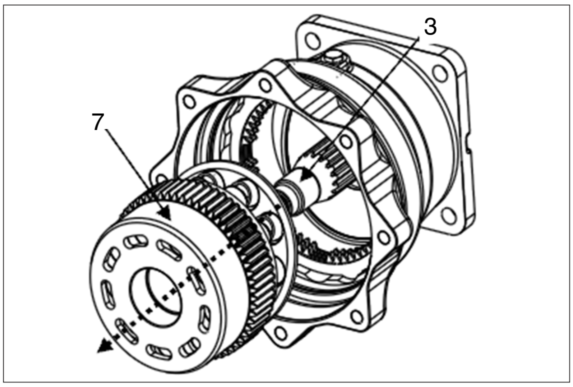
※ Pull the brake piston (16) straight up when using the bolt hole of the brake piston (16).



380A8SM12

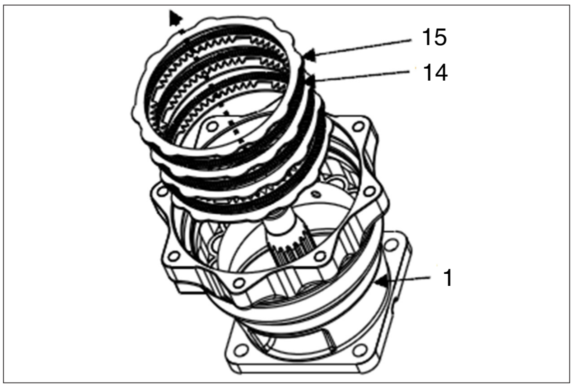
(11) Put the motor horizontally and pull out the cylinder block (13) from the drive shaft (3). And the piston assy (9, 10), retainer (8), thrust ball (11) and shoe plate (7).

※ Take care not to damage sliding face of the cylinder block (13), thrust ball (11) and shoe (9) when pull out the cylinder block (13).



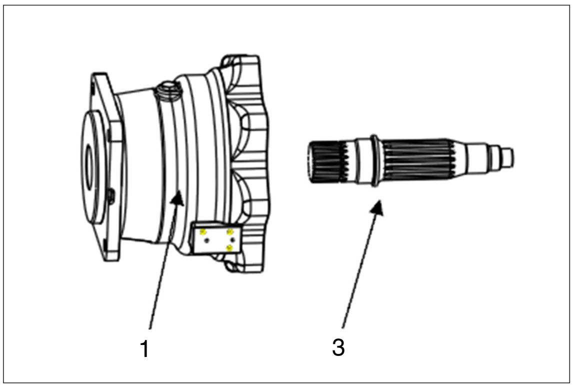
380A8SM13

(12) Take off the friction plate (14) and separation plate (15) from the casing (1).



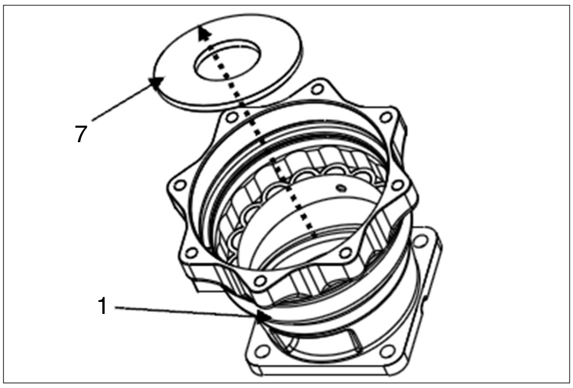
380A8SM14

(13) Separate drive shaft (3) from the casing (1).



380A8SM15

(14) Pull the shoe plate (7) from the casing (1) by tapping lightly the cylinderical roller bearing (4) side with a plastic hammer.

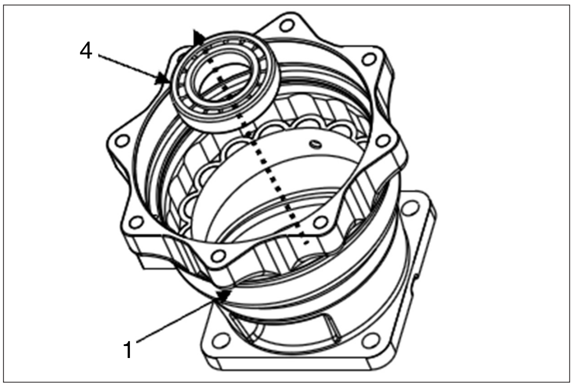


380A8SM16

(15) Pull the roller bearing (4) from the casing (1) by tapping lightly with a steel rod.

※ Take care not to damage the bearing by tapping the inner race of the cylinderical roller bearing evenly with a steel rod.

※ Do not reuse the dissembled bearing.

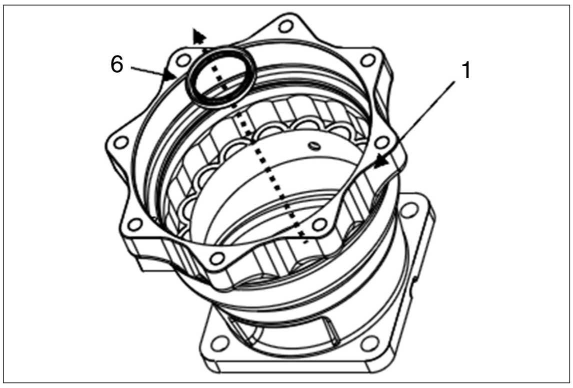


380A8SM17

※ Following works perform if necessary.

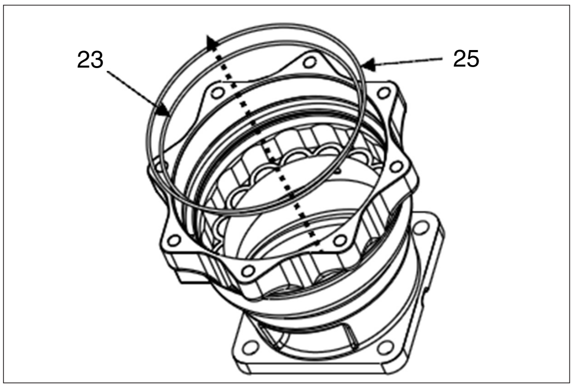
(16) Disassemble the oil seal (6) from the casing (1).

※ Disassemble the oil seal (6) by tapping bottom side of the oil seal with a steel rod.



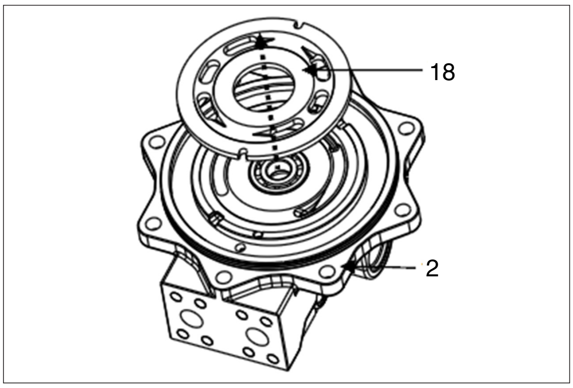
380A8SM18

(17) Disassemble the O-ring (23, 25) from the casing (1).



380A8SM19

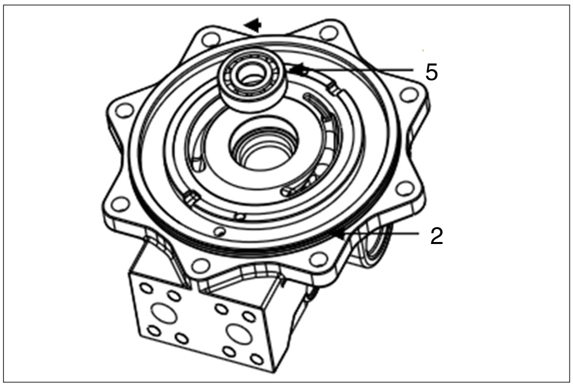
(18) Disassemble the valve (18) from the valve casing (2).



380A8SM20

(19) Disassemble the roller bearing (5) from the valve casing (2) with a plastic hammer.

※ Do not reuse the dissembled bearing.



380A8SM21

(20) This is the end of disassembling procedures.

※ Check every part for any abnormals.

4) ASSEMBLY

(1) For reassembling reverse the disassembling procedures, paying attention to the following items.

① Do not fail to repair the parts damaged during disassembling, and prepare replacement parts in advance.

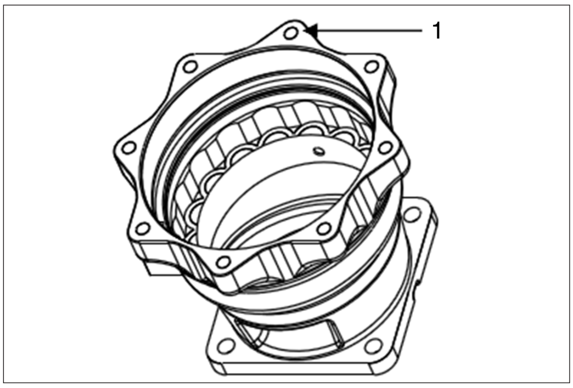
② Clean each part fully with cleaning oil and dry it with compressed air.

③ Do not fail to apply clean working oil to sliding sections, bearings, etc. before assembling them.

④ In principle, replace seal parts, such as O-rings, oil seals, etc.

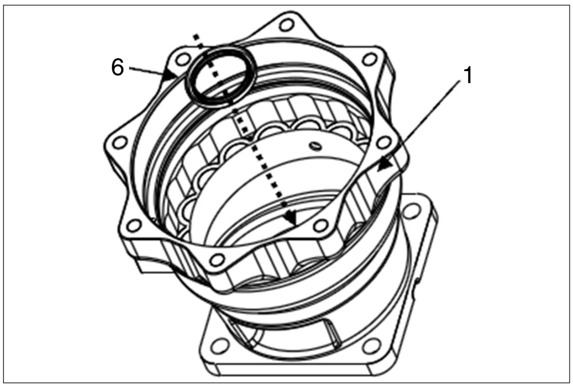
⑤ For fitting bolts, plug, etc., prepare a torque wrench or so on, and tighten them with torques shown in page 8-62-2.

(2) Place the casting (1) on a suitable place.



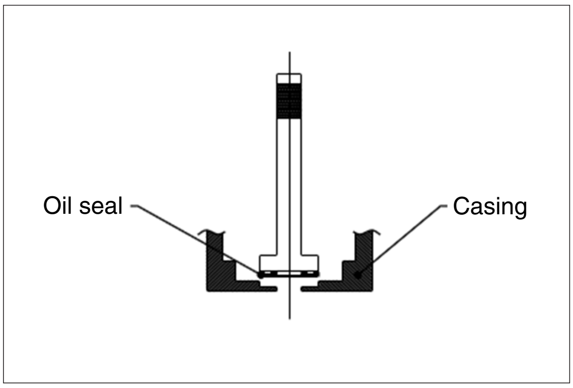
380A8SM22

(3) Assemble the oil seal (6) on the casting (1).



380A8SM23

(4) Assemble the oil seal with a jig when assembling it and take care not to damage the lip of the oil seal (6).

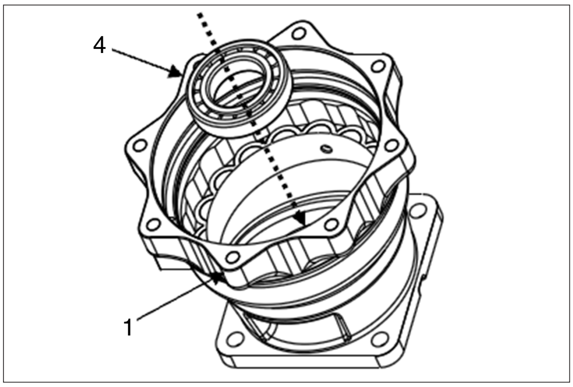


380A8SM24

(5) Using a jig, assemble the roller bearing (4) on the casting (1) by tapping the roller bearing (4) lightly.

※ Take care not to damage the bearing by tapping the inner race of the cylinderical roller bearing evenly with a steel rod.

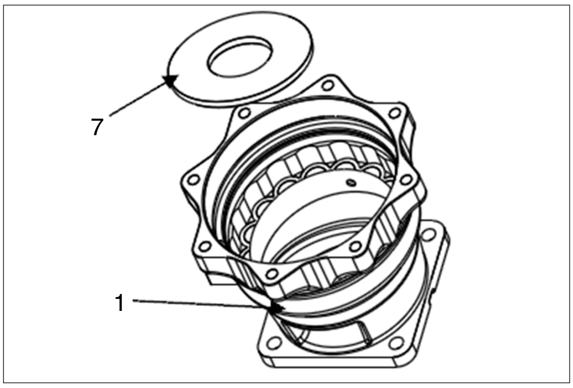
※ Do not reuse the dissembled bearing.



380A8SM25

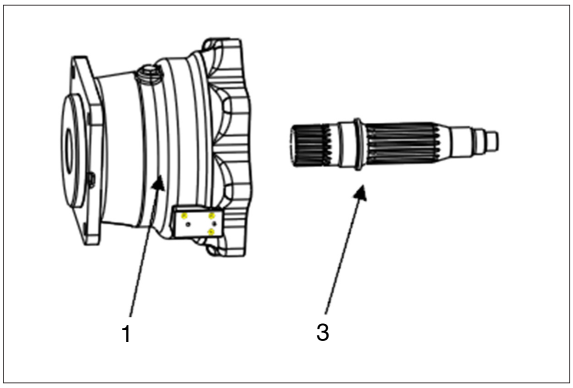
(6) Apply some grease to the back side of the show plate (7) and assemble it on the swash plate of the casing (1).

※ Take care not to mistake front and rear side of the shoe plate (7).



380A8SM26

(7) Assemble the drive shaft (3) into the casing (1).

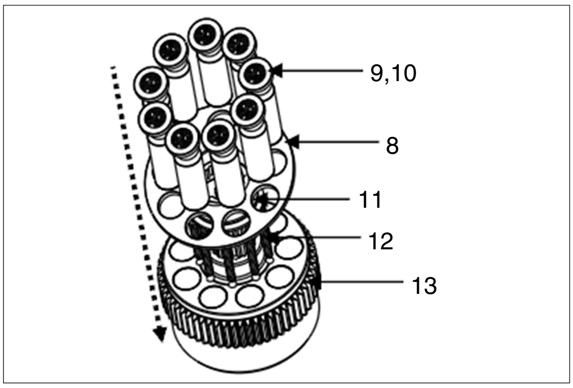


380A8SM27

(8) Insert the nine cylinder block springs (12) into the cylinder block (13).

(9) Confirm the assembling of the springs and put the thrust ball (11) on the springs.

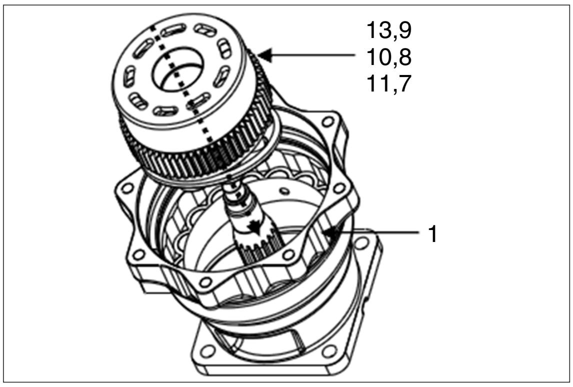
(10) Assemble the retainer (8) and piston assy (9, 10) after assembling thrust ball (11).



380A8SM28

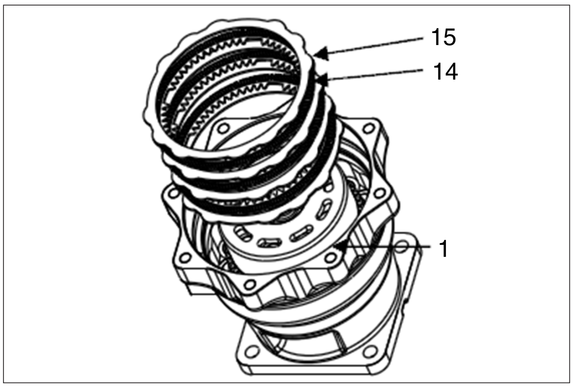
⑾ Place the motor horizontally and assemble the cylinder block (13), piston assy (9, 10), retainer (8), thrust ball (11) and shoe plate (7) into the drive shaft (3).

※ Take care not to sliding face of the thrust ball (11) and shoe (9).



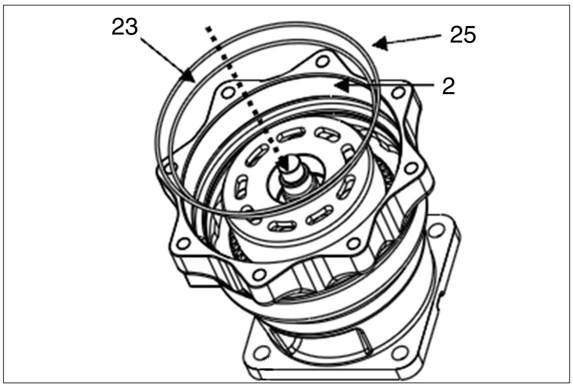
380A8SM29

⑿ Assemble the three friction plates (14) and four separation plates into the casing (1).



380A8SM30

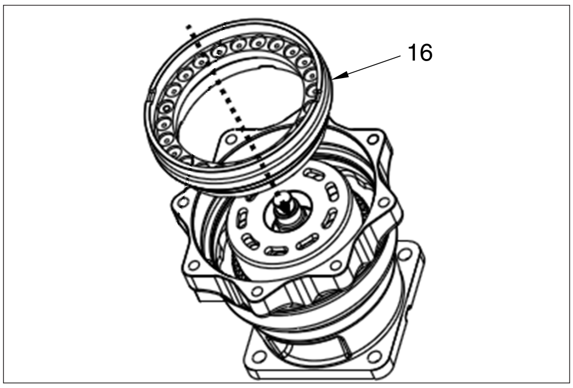
⒀ Apply some grease to the O-ring (23, 25) and assemble them on the valve casing (2).



380A8SM31

⒁ Assemble the brake piston (16) into casing (1).

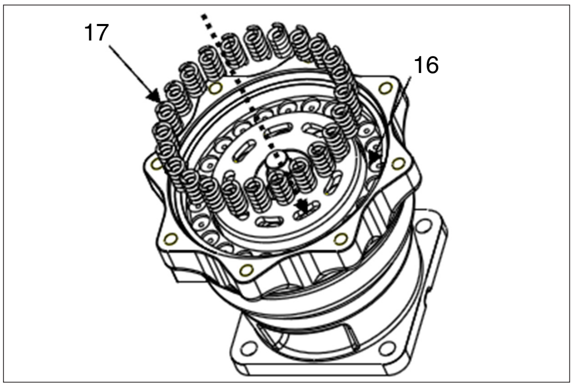
※ Assemble the brake piston (16) by tapping lightly with a plastic hammer when assembling it.



380A8SM32

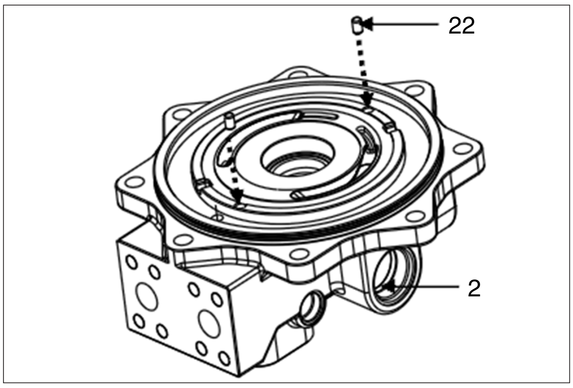
(15) Put the twenty four brakes springs (17) on the brake piston (16).

※ Take care not to slip down brake springs (17) when assembling them.



380A8SM33

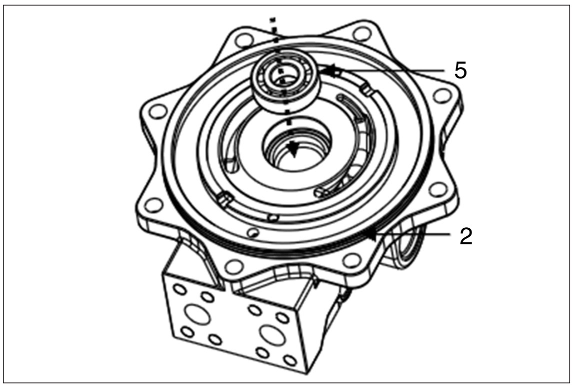
(16) Insert the pin (22) into the valve casing (1) by using a jig.



380A8SM34

(17) Assemble the cylinderical roller bearing (5) into the valve casing (2) by using a plastic hammer.

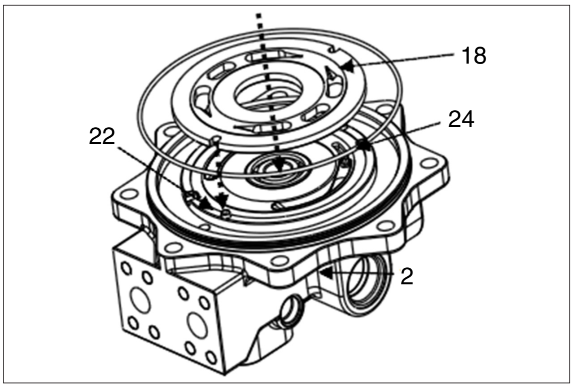
※ Tap the bearing with a hammer lightly when assembling them.



380A8SM35

(18) Apply some grease to the back side of the valve plate (18) and align the hole of the pin (22) and assemble it on the valve casing (2).

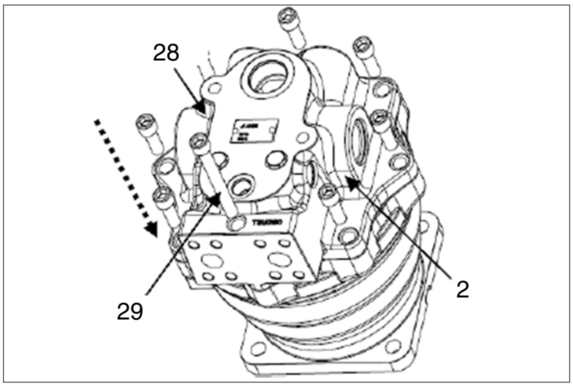
And assemble the O-ring into the hole of the O-ring.



380A8SM36

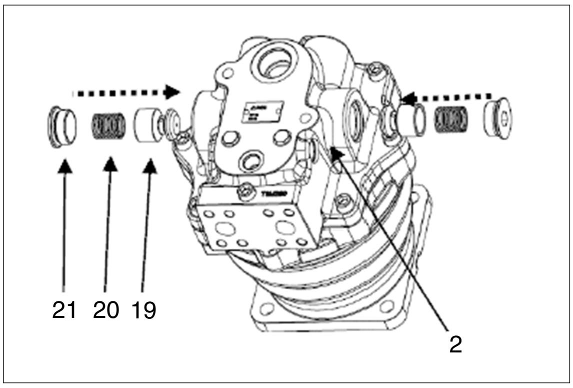
(19) Align the bolt hole of the valve casing (2) and casing (1) and tightening the socket bolt (28, 29) as specification torques.

※ Take care not to damage the bearing when assembling it.



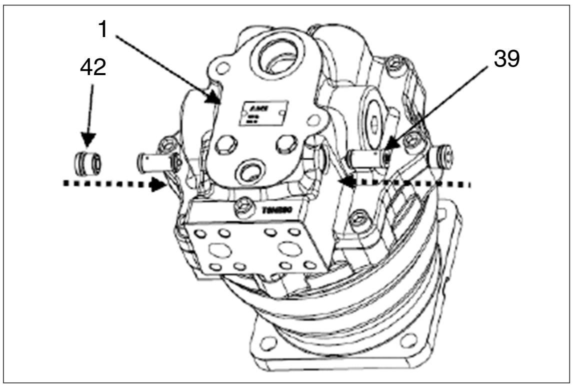
380A8SM37

(20) Assemble the spring (20) and RO plug (21) into the valve casing (2) after seat making the plunger (19) on the valve casing (2) two or three times.



380A8SM38

(21) Assemble the reactionless valve (39) into the valve casing (2) and assemble the RO plug (42) by using L-wrench.

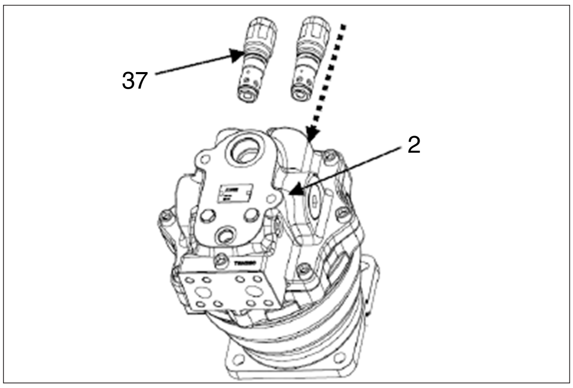


380A8SM39

(22) Assemble the relief valve (37) into the valve casing (2).

※ Apply some grease to O-ring of the relief valve when assembling it.

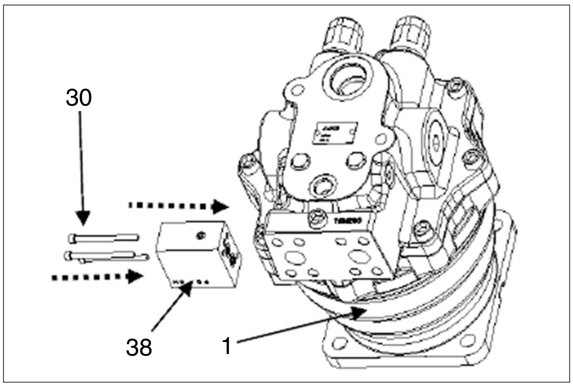
※ Tighten with a specified torque when tightening.



380A8SM40

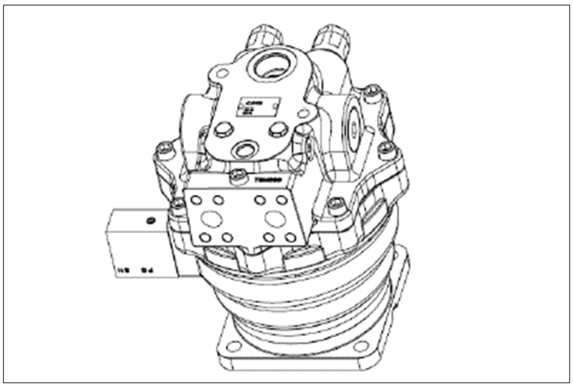
(23) Assemble the brake valve (38) on the casing (1) with the socket bolts (30).

※ Take care not to miss the O-ring of the brake valve when assembling.



380A8SM41

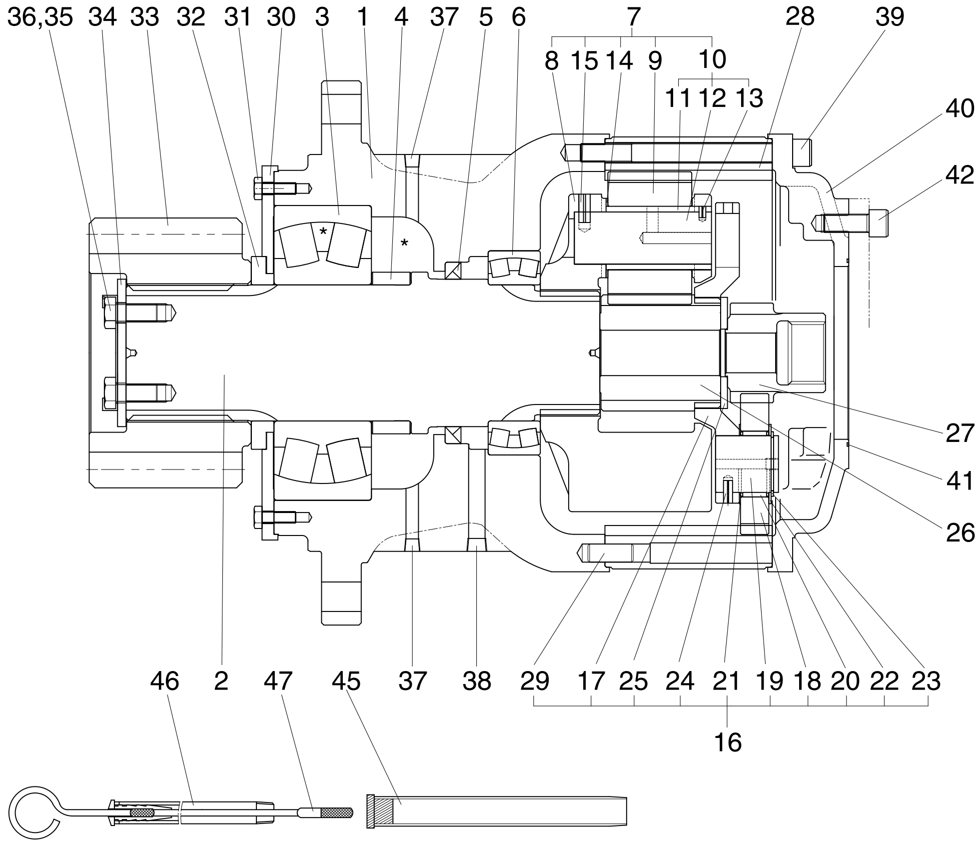
(24) Clean the face of the motor to the reduction gear with cleaning oil and dry it by compressed air.


380A8SM42

(25) This is the end of assembling procedures.

3. REDUCTION GEAR

1) STRUCTURE



38092SM03

1	Casing	17	Carrier 1	33	Pinion gear
2	Drive shaft	18	Planetary gear 1	34	Lock plate
3	Roller bearing	19	Pin 1	35	Hexagon bolt
4	Spacer ring	20	Needle cage	36	Lock washer
5	Oil seal	21	Side plate 1	37	Plug
6	Roller bearing	22	Side plate 2	38	Plug
7	Carrier 2	23	Stop ring	39	Socket bolt
8	Carrier 2	24	Spring pin	40	Cover
9	Planetary gear 2	25	Thrust ring	41	O-ring
10	Pin 2	26	Sun gear 2	42	Hexagon socket bolt
11	Pin 2	27	Sun gear 1	43	Plug
12	Bushing 2	28	Ring gear	45	Air breather assy
13	Spring pin	29	Knock pin	46	Gauge pipe
14	Thrust washer	30	Cover plate	47	Gauge bar
15	Spring pin	31	Hexagon bolt		
16	Carrier 1	32	Spacer		

2) DISASSEMBLY

(1) Removal of cover

※ Loosen the socket bolt (24) with 16mm hexagonal socket and remove the cover (37).

(2) Removal of sun gear 1 and thrust ring assembly

Remove carrier 1(16), install eye bolt to tap hole (M10) and remove carrier 1 assembly itself.

3607A8SR03

(3) Removal of sun gear 2

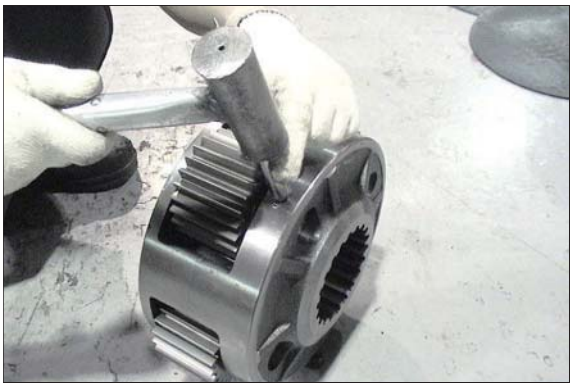
Remove sun gear 2 (26), install eye bolt to tap (M10) of carrier 2 (8) and remove carrier 2 assembly itself.

3607A8SR04

(4) Disassembly of 2nd carrier assembly

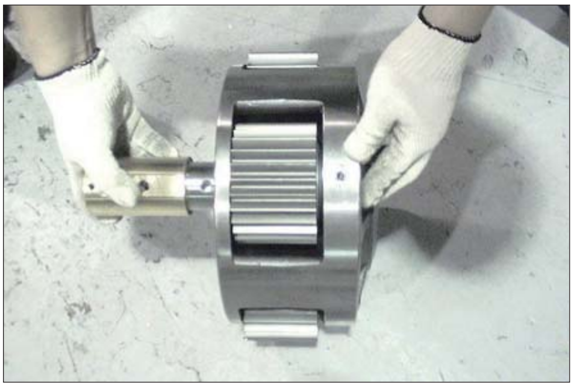
① Insert spring pin (15) into pin assy 2(11) by hammering.

※ Do not reuse spring pin after removal.



3607A8SR05

② Remove pin assy 2 (11) from carrier 2 (7), planetary gear 2 (9) and thrust washer (14) with hands.



3607A8SR06

(5) Removal of ring gear

Remove ring gear (28) from casing (1).

※ Fluid packing is applied on contacting face of ring gear and gear casing. Therefore, remove ring gear from casing by minus screw driver.

3607A8SR07

(6) Removal of drive shaft (2) assembly

① Spread off the corners of spacer (32), cover plate (30) and hex bolt (31) with a tool.

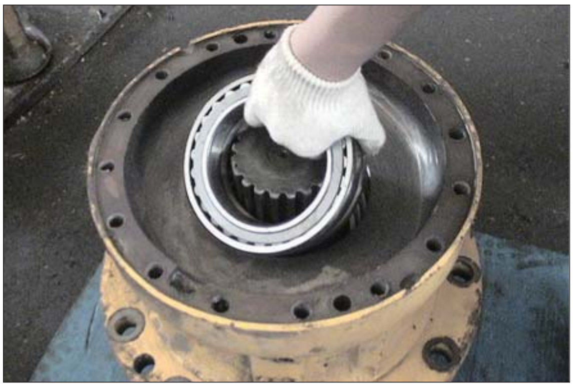
3607A8SR08

② Install hydraulic press at the end face of shaft, and remove drive shaft(2), spacer ring (4), and roller bearing (3) as assembly.

※ Do not reuse oil seal after removal.

3607A8SR09

③ Remove roller bearing (6) from gear casing (1).



3607A8SR10

④ Remove oil seal (5) from gear casing (1).

3607A8SR11

(7) Disassembly of shaft assembly

Insert motor side of shaft (2) into steel tube (inner dia : ø 145 mm) and push the end of output shaft side with hydraulic press and then remove roller bearing (3), and spacer ring (4) as assembly from drive shaft (2).

3607A8SR12

3) ASSEMBLY

(1) Assembly of drive shaft assembly

① After assembly drive shaft (2), heat roller bearing (3) up to 50˚C plus surrounding temperature and assemble it to shaft with hydraulic press and then assemble spacer ring (4) in this order.

※ Pay attention to the assembling direction of cover plate (30).

3607A8SR13

(2) Installation of oil seal

Remove oil from assembled face of oil seal of gear casing (1) and oil seal (5). Apply fluid packing (three bond of white color) on outer face of oil seal and assemble at pressing jig of gear casing. After inserting with press, lubricate oil seal with grease.

3607A8SR14

(3) Assembly of drive shaft assembly

① Be careful lest oil seal lip damage by spline of drive shaft (2).
Assemble drive shaft assembly by using seal guide.

② Put drive shaft of gear casing (1) upward. Assemble drive shaft assembly to gear casing by tightening eye bolt into tap hole (M16) of output side of drive shaft (2).

※ Place support (approx 150 mm) below of gear case (1) for seal protector contact with work table.

3607A8SR15

(4) Install of roller bearing

Put gear casing under output shaft and heat roller bearing (6) up to 50˚C plus surrounding temperature and then assemble it to the shaft.

3607A8SR16

(5) Assembly of ring gear

① Remove oil from mating faces between gear casing (1) and ring gear (28), and knock pin (29). Assemble collar of gear casing and apply fluid packing (three bond of grey color).

3607A8SR17

② Assemble ring gear (28).

36078SR18

(6) Assembly of carrier 2 assembly

① Assemble planetary gear 2 (9) to carrier 2 (8) with thrust washer (14) and insert pin assy 2 (11).

※ Lubricate gear oil to inside of gear and outside of shaft.

3607A8SR19

② Insert spring pin (15) by hammering.
※ Insert as the clearance between spring pins toward planetary gear 2 (9).


3607A8SR20

(7) Assembly of carrier 2 assembly and sun gear 2
① Mount eye bolt into tap hole (M10) of carrier 2 (8) and lift carrier assembly and then insert carrier assembly being engaged with internal teeth of ring gear (28). Rotate carrier assembly lightly so that splines of drive shaft (2) are engaged.


3607A8SR21

② Insert sun gear 2 (26) to planetary gear 2 (9).


3607A8SR22

(8) Assembly of sun gear 1, carrier 1 assembly
① Mount eye bolt into tap hole (M10) of lift carrier assembly and then insert carrier assembly being engaged with internal teeth of ring gear (28).
Rotate holder assembly lightly so that sun gear 2 (26) is engaged with teeth of carrier 1 (17).


3607A8SR23

② Insert sun gear 1 (27) to planetary gear 1 (18).

3607A8SR24

(9) Check rotation of sun gear by turning plunge part of gear casing with hands.

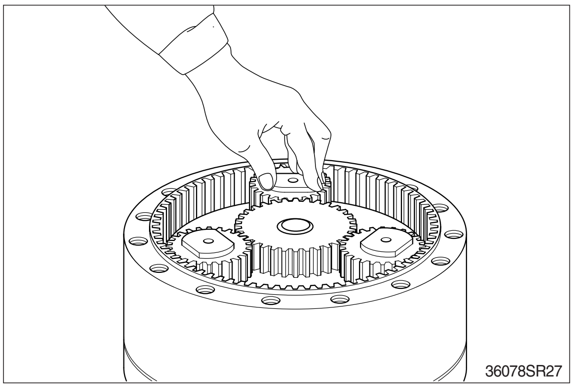
(10) Assembly of cover

Remove oil from mating faces between ring gear (28) and cover (40) and apply fluid packing.

Assemble cover (40) and tighten socket bolt (39) with 16mm hexagonal socket.

Tightening torque : 28.5±3.0 kgf · m
(206±21.7lbf · ft)

This completes assembly



36078SR27

GROUP 6 TRAVEL DEVICE

■ TRAVEL MOTOR (TYPE 1)

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) REMOVAL

(1) Swing the work equipment 90° and lower it completely to the ground.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.

※ When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.

(4) Remove the track shoe assembly.
For details, see removal of track shoe assembly.

(5) Remove the cover.

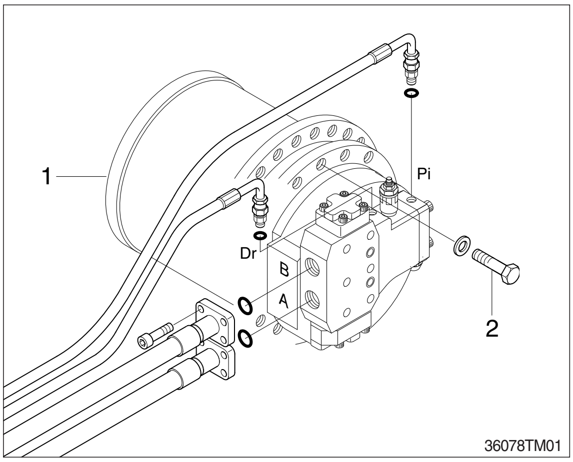
(6) Remove the hoses.
※ Fit blind plugs to the disconnected hoses.

(7) Remove the bolts and the sprocket.

(8) Sling travel device assembly (1).

(9) Remove the mounting bolts (2), then remove the travel device assembly.
· Weight : 380 ㎏ (840 ℔)

13031GE18



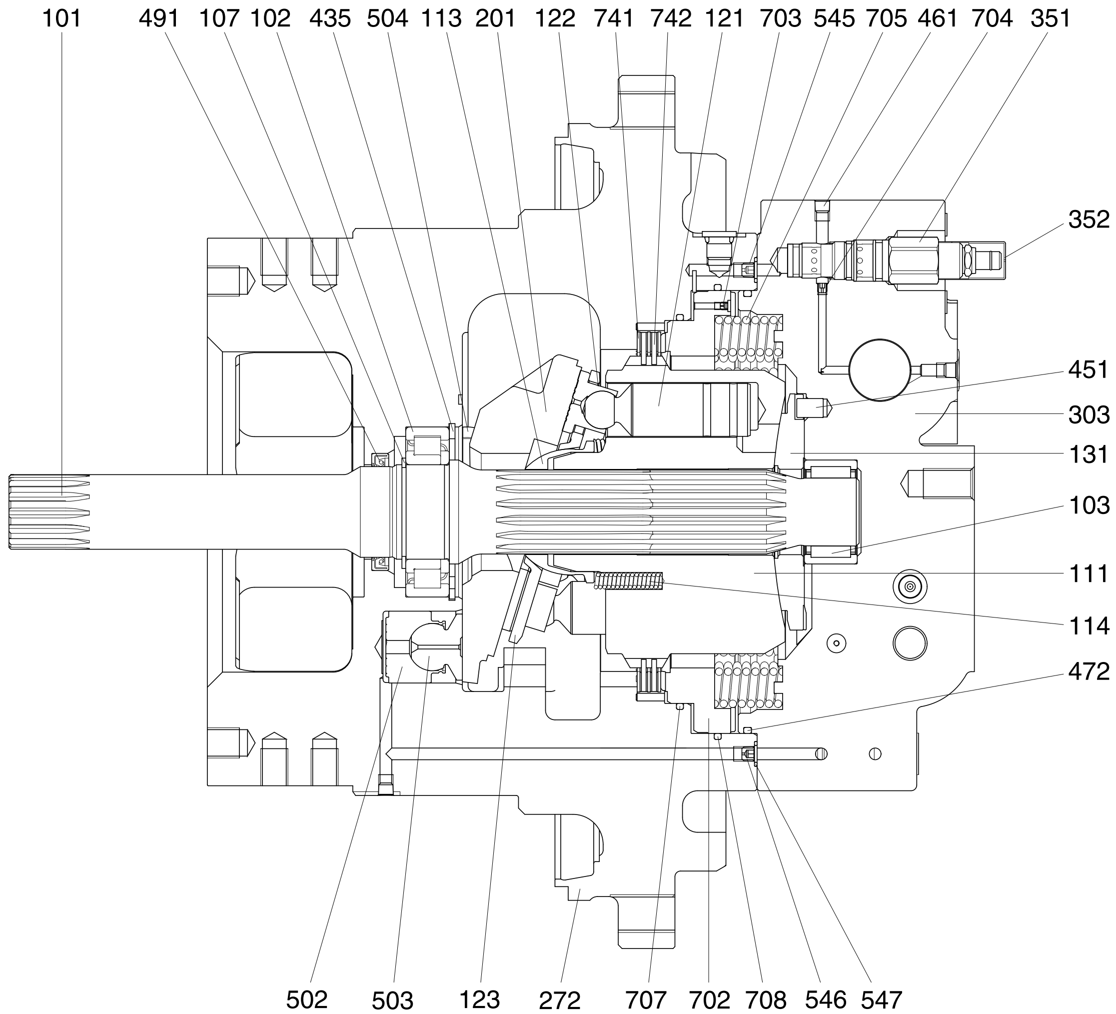
36078TM01

2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
(2) Bleed the air from the travel motor.
① Remove the air vent plug.
② Pour in hydraulic oil until it overflows from the port.
③ Tighten plug lightly.
④ Start the engine, run at low idling, and check oil come out from plug.
⑤ Tighten plug fully.
(3) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2. TRAVEL MOTOR (TYPE 1)

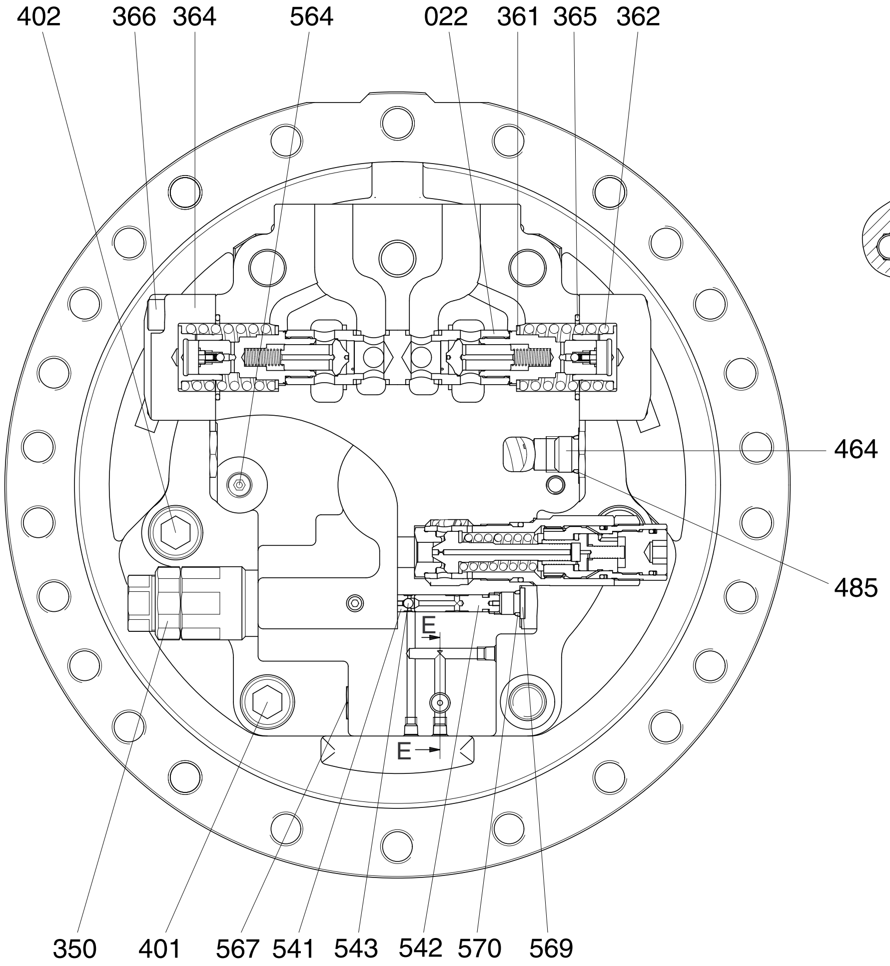
1) STRUCTURE (1/2)

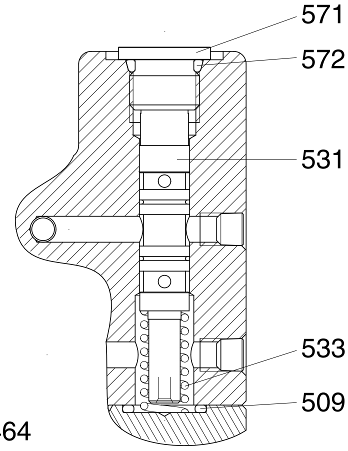


3809A2TM02

101	Drive shaft	272	Shaft casing	545	Orifice
102	Roller bearing	303	Valve casing	546	Orifice
103	Needle bearing	351	Reducing valve	547	O-ring
107	Snap ring	352	Cover	702	Brake piston
111	Cylinder block	435	Snap ring	703	Orifice
113	Spherical bushing	451	Pin	704	Orifice
114	Cylinder spring	461	Plug	705	Brake spring
121	Piston	472	O-ring	707	O-ring
122	Shoe	491	Oil seal	708	O-ring
123	Set plate	502	Piston	741	Separation plate
131	Valve plate	503	Shoe	742	Friction plate
201	Swash plate	504	Pivot ball		

STRUCTURE (2/2)





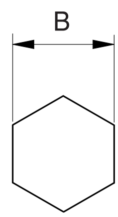
SECTION E-E

3607A2TM03

022	Counterbalance spool	402	Hex socket bolt	543	Steel ball
350	Relief valve	464	VP plug	564	Plug
361	Washer	485	O-ring	567	VP plug
362	Counterbalance spring	509	O-ring	569	RO plug
364	Counterbalance cover	531	Tilting spool	570	O-ring
365	O-ring	533	Tilting spring	571	RO plug
366	Hex socket	541	Seat	572	O-ring
401	Hex socket	542	Stopper		

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

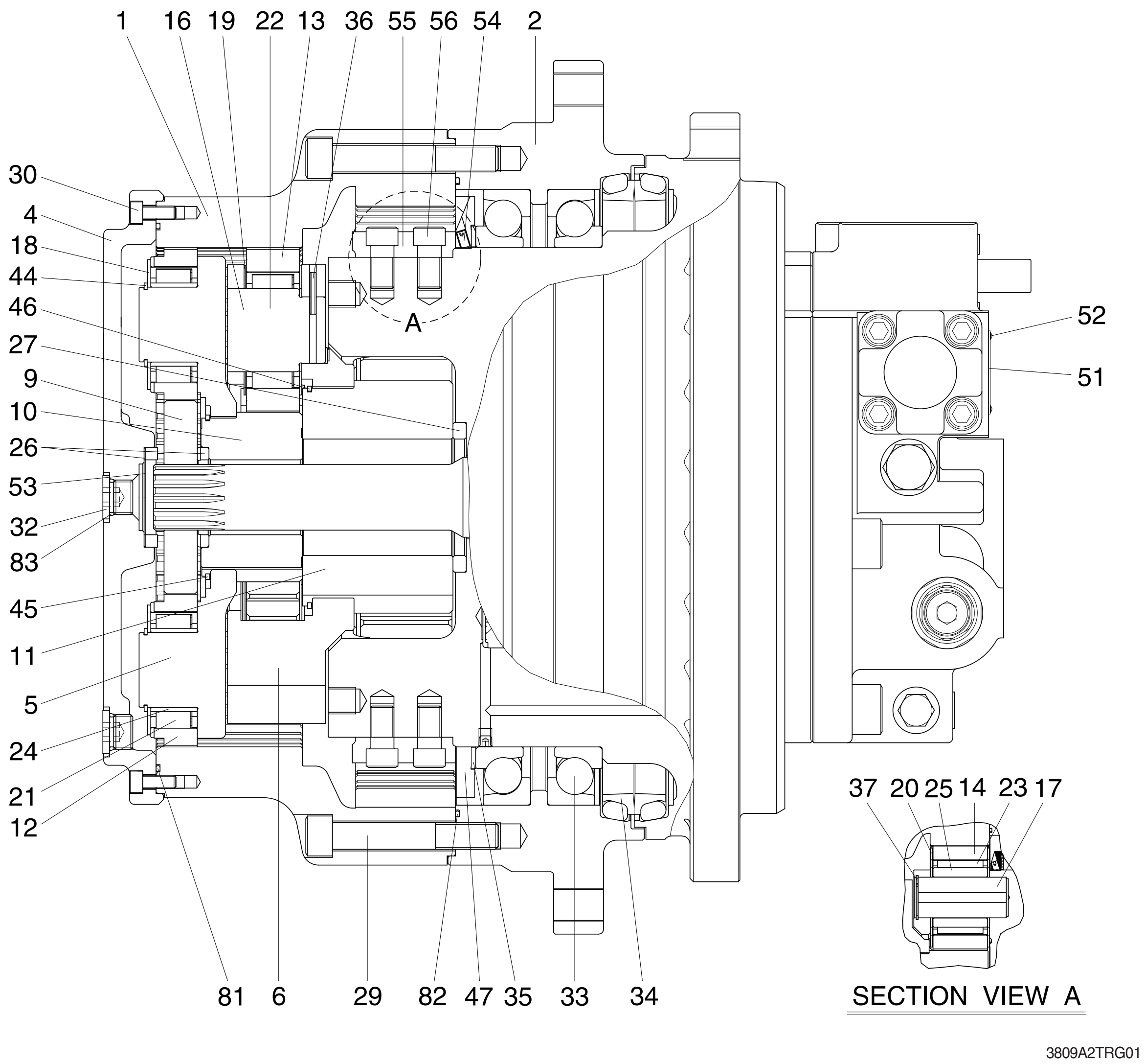
Tool name	Remark	
Allen wrench	2	
	2.5	
	4	
	6	
	8	
	10	
	17	
Socket for socket wrench, spanner	19	
	22.4	
	27	
	42	
Torque wrench	Capable of tightening with the specified torques.	
Plier (For hole, TPR-90)	For snap ring (435)	
Plier (For shaft)	For snap ring (107)	
(-) Driver	-	
Plastic hammer	Wooden hammer allowed. Nominal 1 or so	
Steel rod approx	7×7×200mm, Bearing (102, 103)	
Monkey wrench	-	
Oil seal inserting jig	-	
Bearing plier	-	
Seal tape	-	

(2) Tightening torque

Part name	Item	Size	Torque		Wrench size	
			kgf · m	lbf · ft	in	mm
Socket bolt	366	M12×45	10	72.3	0.39	10
Socket bolt	401	M20×100	44	318	0.67	17
Socket bolt	402	M20×50	44	318	0.67	17
Plug	461	NPTF 1/16	0.9	6.5	0.16	4
VP Plug	464	PF 1/4	11	79.6	1.06	27
Orifice	545, 546	NPTF 1/16	0.7	5.1	0.16	4
Plug	564	PT 1/2	2.2	15.9	0.24	6
VP Plug	567	PF 1/4	3.7	26.8	0.75	19
Plug	569	PF 1/4	3.7	26.8	0.24	6
Plug	571	PF 3/8	7.5	54.2	0.31	8
Orifice	703	M4×0.7	0.35	2.5	0.08	2
Orifice	704	M5×0.8	0.7	5.1	0.1	2.5

3. TRAVEL REDUCTION GEAR (TYPE 1)

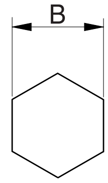
1) STRUCTURE



1	Ring gear	20	Side plate	37	Snap ring
2	Housing	21	Needle cage	44	Snap ring
4	Side cover	22	Needle cage	45	Clip
5	Carrier 1	23	Needle cage	46	W clip
6	Carrier 2	24	Inner ring	47	Nutring
9	Sun gear 1	25	Floating bushing	51	Name plate
10	Sun gear 2	26	Thrust ring	52	Rivet
11	Sun gear 3	27	Thrust ring	53	Washer
12	Planetary gear 1	29	Socket bolt	54	Set screw
13	Planetary gear 2	30	Socket bolt	55	Nutring stopper
14	Planetary gear 3	32	RO plug	56	Hex socket bolt
16	Pin 2	33	Angular bearing	81	O-ring
17	Pin 3	34	Floating seal	82	O-ring
18	Side plate	35	Shim	83	O-ring
19	Side plate	36	Spring pin		

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

Tool name	Remark	
Allen wrench	4	
	8	
	10	
	14	
Spanner	27	
Torque wrench	Capable of tightening with the specified torques.	
Plier (for shaft)	Snap ring (037, 044)	
(-) Driver	For removing floating seal	
Plastic hammer	Wooden hammer allowed	
Eye bolt	M8, M10, M16, M20, For lifting-up	
Press (1 ton)	Angular bearing (033)	
Depth gauge straight edge	100mm depth, for adjusting shins (053)	
Tap M16	For removing screw lock in tapped holes	
Oil stone	For finishing mating faces	
Punch	For preventing spring pin from coming out	
Loctite (three bond 1373B)	Set screw (054)	
Loctite	Socket bolt (029)	
Nut ring inserting jig	Nut ring (047)	

(2) Tightening torque

Part name	Item	Size	Torque		Wrench size	
			kgf · m	lbf · ft	in	mm
Socket bolt	29	M16×100	30	217	0.55	14
	30	M8×20	3.5	25.3	0.24	6
Plug	32	PF 1/2	11	79.6	0.39	10
Set screw	54	M8×16	1.0	7.2	0.24	6

4. DISASSEMBLING

1) GENERAL PRECAUTIONS

(1) Pay attention to not damaging contact surfaces for O-rings, oil seals, etc. and contact/sliding surfaces for gears, pins, bearings, etc.

(2) This motor can be disassembled even in a state on the reduction gear.
However, in that case, pay full attention to preventing mud, dust, etc. from entering in it.

(3) The numerical in parentheses following each part name indicates its part number shown in the attached **assembly drawings.**

(4) The piping side of the motor is referred to as the rear side, and the output side as the front side.

2) DISASSEMBLY OF REDUCTION GEAR

(1) Select a disassembling place.
※ Select a clean place.
※ Spread rubber sheet or cloth on work bench to prevent parts from being damaged.

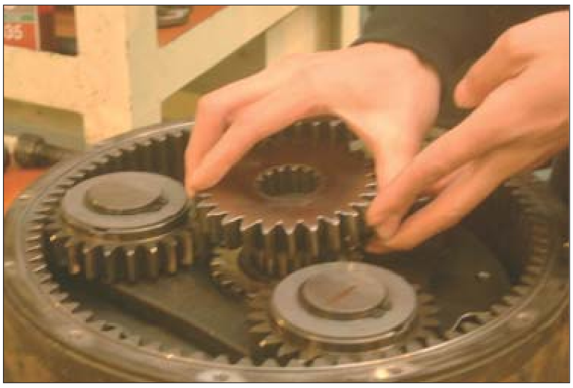
(2) Remove dust, mud, etc. from reduction gear surfaces with washing oil or so.

(3) Place reduction gear with its gear oil drain port or level gauge at the lowest position, and drain reduction gear oil.
※ Receive gear oil with clean vessel and check it for abnormalities.
Renew gear oil.

(4) Place reduction gear with its side cover (4) upward, and remove socket bolt (30), and remove side cover (4) and O-ring (81).

370078TM01

(5) Remove sun gear 1 (9).



370078TM02

(6) Remove carrier 1 (5), together with planetary gears 1 (12), sun gear 2 (10), etc. fitted.

370078TM03

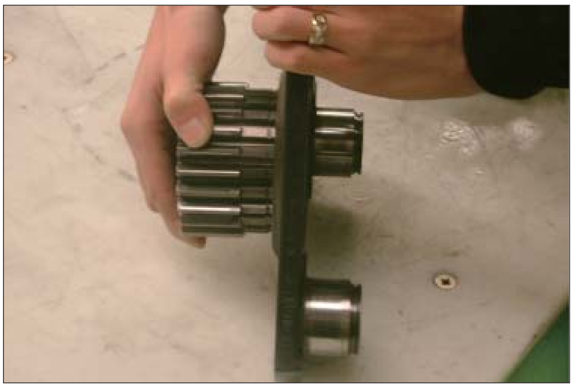
(7) Disassembling of carrier 1 sub-assembly

① Remove snap ring (44), and then remove side plate (18), planetary gear 1 (12), needle cage (21) and side plate (18).

※ If flaking is observed on the inner ring surface replace inner ring. In this case, replace planetary gear 1 and needle cage simultaneously.

370078TM04

② Remove circlip (45), and then remove carrier 1 (5) from sun gear 2 (10).



370078TM05

③ Remove thrust ring (26).

370078TM06

(8) Remove carrier 2 (6), with planetary gears 2 (13), sun gear 3 (11), etc. fitted.

※ Use M10 eyebolt. In this case, thrust ring (26) is removed simultaneously.

370078TM07

(9) Disassembling of carrier 2 sub-assembly

① Push in spring pin (36), and remove pin 2 (16), from carrier 2.

※ Carry out the following check in advance. If any abnormality should be found, carry out disassembling.
- Is there any crevice, crack or pitting on tooth surface of planetary gear?
- When turning planetary gear lightly, is there any abnormal noise or eccentric clearance? Carry out check similarly to the above for carrier 3.

370078TM08

② Remove side plate (20), planetary gear 2 (13), and needle bearing (22) from carrier 2.

③ Remove thrust ring (26).

370078TM09

④ Remove snap ring (46), and remove carrier 2 (6) from sun gear 3 (11).

⑤ Remove thrust ring (27) from sun gear 3 (11).

370078TM10

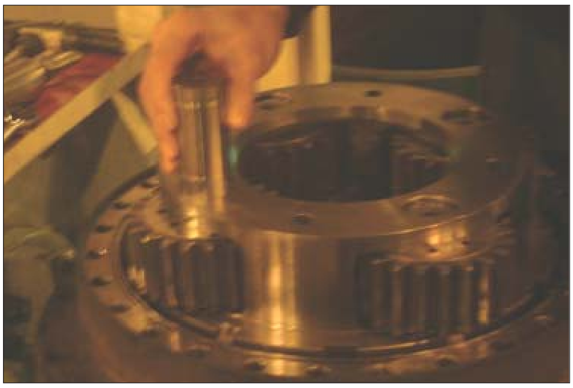
(10) Remove socket bolt (29), and then screw two M8 eyebolts on front side of ring gear (1), lift up ring gear with crane, and remove O-ring (82) from housing (2).

※ It is difficult to separate them, because it is assembled by LOCTITE.
In this case, if you can use wrench and pipe, it is easy to separate them.

370078TM11

(11) Remove snap ring (37) and then remove pin 3 (17) from shaft casing (272).

370078TM12



370078TM13

(12) Remove side plate (20), planetary gear 3 (14), needle cage (23), floating bushing (25) from shaft casing (272).

370078TM14

(13) Remove set screw (54) from nut ring (47), and then remove nut ring (47) from shaft casing (272).

※ When disassembling nut ring, remove dust, mud, etc. from set screw hole by blasting compressed air.
And remove the nut ring by using the special tool for removing the nut ring.

370078TM15

(14) Remove housing (2), angular bearing (33), floating seal (34) from shaft casing (272).

※ Screw two M16 eye bolts on front side of housing (2).
Lift up housing (2) with crane.

370078TM17

(15) Remove floating seal (34) from housing (2), paying attention to not damaging it.

※ Pay attention to O-ring and sheet faces.

370078TM18

(16) Remove floating seal (34) from casing (272), pay attention to not damaging it.

※ Pay attention to O-ring and sheet faces.

370078TM19

(17) Remove angular bearing (33) from housing (2).

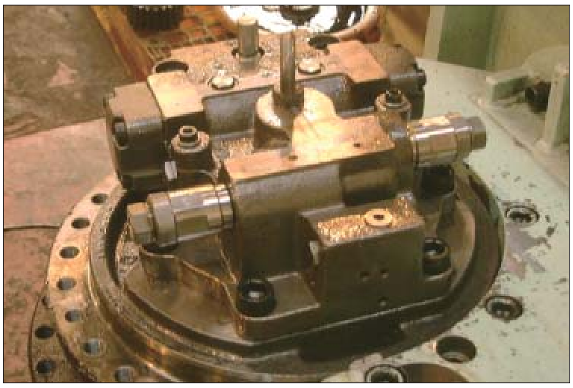
※ Bearing should be renewed once it is removed.

370078TM20

3) DISASSEMBLY OF MOTOR

(1) Disassembling of motor main body

① Place hydraulic motor on bench with its output shaft down.



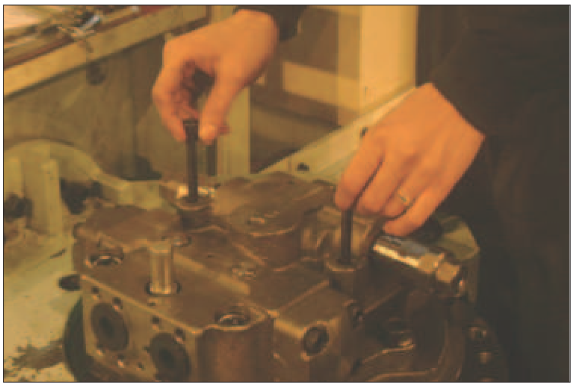
370078TM21

② Loosen relief valve (350), reducing valve (351), cover (352), plug, etc.
They are fitted to valve casing (303).

370078TM22

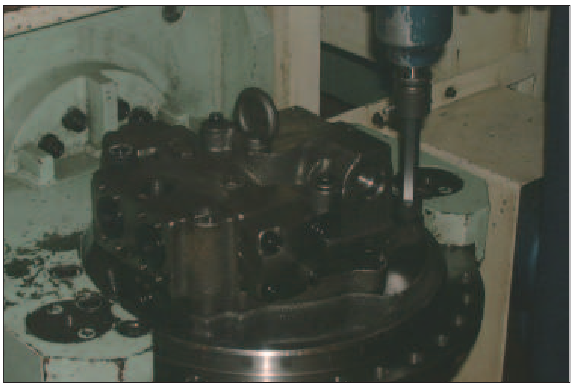
370078TM23

③ Remove plug (564) from valve casing (303). And then screw two M10×135 bolts on the holes of compelling brake release. Sub assembly (valve casing & brake piston)



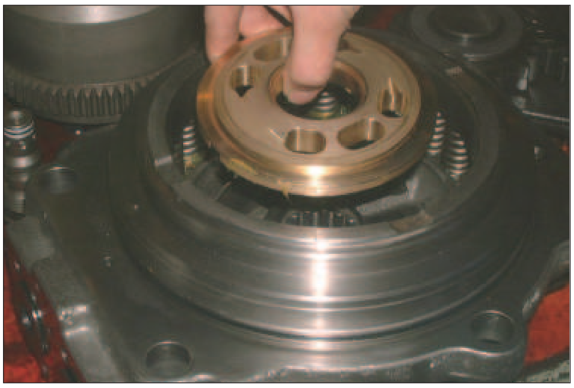
370078TM24

④ Remove socket bolts (401, 402) that assemble valve casing (303).



370078TM25

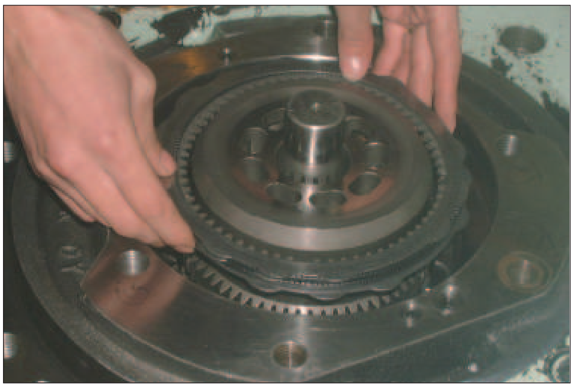
⑤ Remove the above socket bolt, and then separate valve casing sub-assembly and remove valve plate (131).



370078TM26

⑥ Pull out friction plate (742) and separation plate (741) from cylinder block (111).

※ In this case, motor should be located in horizontally.

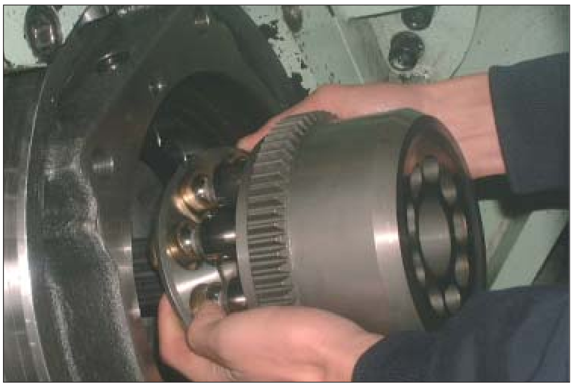


370078TM27

⑦ Pull out cylinder block and piston sub-assembly.

※ After placing the motor horizontally, take out cylinder block from casing.

※ Be careful not to damage the sliding parts of the cylinder block, spherical bushing and shoe.



370078TM28

⑧ Remove swash plate (201).

370078TM29

⑨ Remove pivot ball (504) and tilting piston sub assembly.

370078TM30

⑩ Take out snap ring (435), and then hit front side end face of shaft (101) lightly with plastic hammer or so to remove from casing (272).

※ Do not remove cylinderical roller bearing (102) as far as it remains normal.

370078TM31

⑪ Take out oil seal (491) from shaft casing (272).

※ Do not reuse the disassembling oil seal (491).

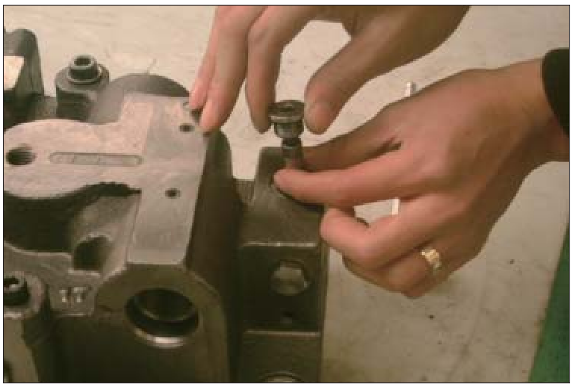
370078TM32

(2) Disassembling of valve casing sub-assembly

① Remove two M10×135 bolts for compelling brake release. Disassemble brake piston from valve casing.

370078TM33

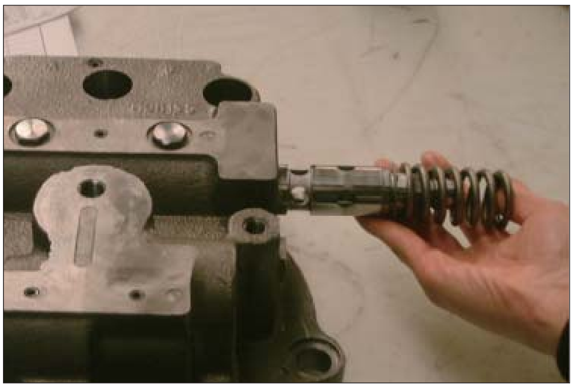
② Remove plug (571), tilting spring (533), and tilting spool (531) from valve casing.



370078TM34

③ Remove socket bolts (366), counterbalance cover (364), and counterbalance spool assembly.

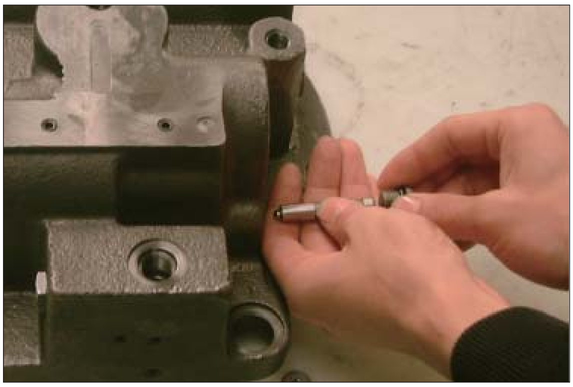
※ When any abnormality is found in counterbalance spool, counterbalance spring, etc. replace with the counter balance spool sub assembly as a set.



370078TM35

④ Remove plug (569), stopper (542), steel ball (543) and seat (541).

※ When no abnormality is found in displacement changeover, it is not necessary to overhaul it specifically.
And don't remove needle bearing (103) as far as it remains normal.



370078TM36

(3) Disassembling of cylinder sub-assembly

① Pull out set plate (123), piston (121), and shoe (122) sub-assembly.

370078TM37

② Remove spherical bush (113) and cylinder spring (114).
That is all of the disassembling work.
The pins (451) force-fitted to the valve casing cannot be removed.

370078TM38

5. ASSEMBLING

1) GENERAL CAUTIONS

(1) Clean each part fully with washing oil and dry it by blasting compressed air. It is better not to use waste cloths as much as possible.
However, if they are to be used, use clean ones, and pay attention to not leaving lint and so on.
Don't clean the friction plate with washing oil without fail.

(2) Use the torque wrench in tightening fitting screws and plugs to their respective torque shown in page 8-74, 8-76.

(3) When hammering is required, use the plastic hammer and try to hit parts lightly.

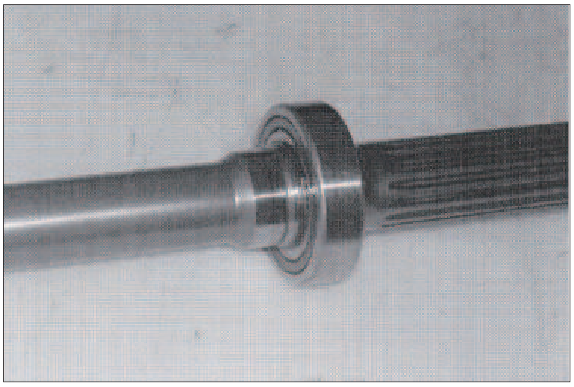
(4) Similarly to the disassembling procedures, the numeral in parentheses following each part name indicates its item number shown in the attached assembly drawings.

2) ASSEMBLY OF MOTOR

(1) Assembling driving shaft sub-assembly

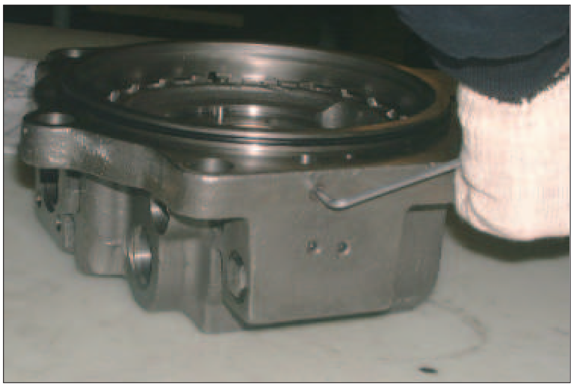
① Put roller bearing (102) on drive shaft (101), and assemble snap ring (107) by using the plier.

※ Roller bearing is press fit by the heat to drive shaft.
※ Pay attention to not damaging oil seal sliding area of driving shaft.
※ Pay attention to not fitting snap ring the other way around.

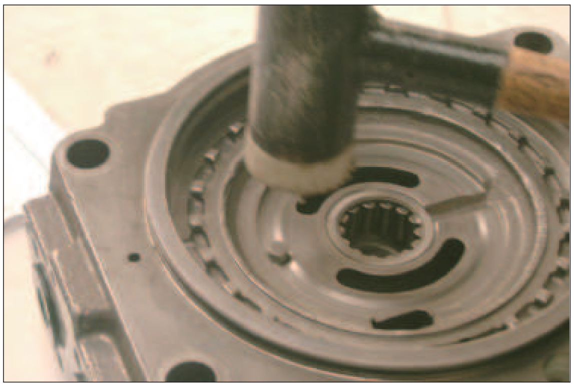

370078TM39

(2) Assembling of valve casing sub-assembly

① Tighten plugs (461, 564) into valve casing (303) with specified torque.
· Plug(461) : 0.9 kgf · m (6.5 lbf · ft)
· Plug(564) : 2.2 kgf · m (15.9 lbf · ft)


370078TM40

② Interference-fit pin (451).


370078TM41

③ Interference-fit needle bearing (103).

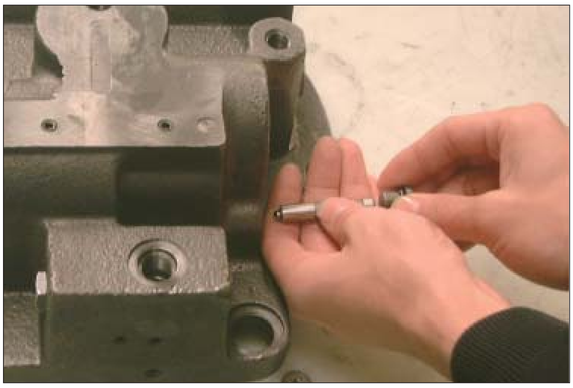
※ It is necessary when needle bearing was disassembled from the valve casing.

370078TM42

④ Assemble seat (541), steel ball (543), stopper (542) and RO plug (569) in the order named.

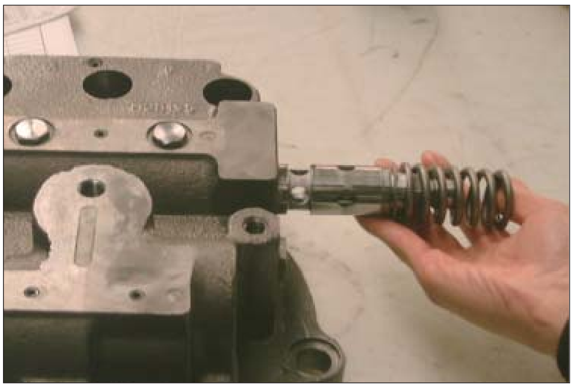
· Tightening torque : 3.7 kgf · m (26.8 lbf · ft)

※ Pay attention to not assembling seat and stopper the other way around.



370078TM43

⑤ Assemble counterbalance spool (360), washer (361), spring (362) in the order named.

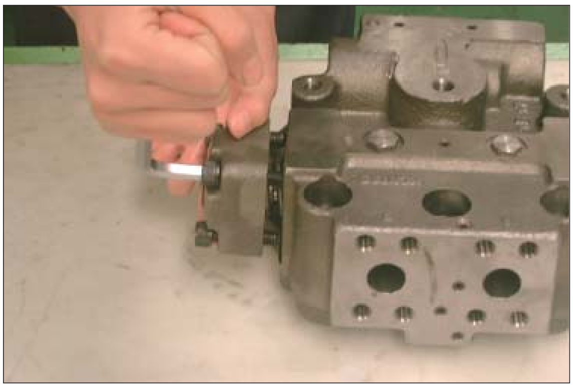


370078TM44

⑥ Fit counterbalance cover (364) by tightening socket bolt (366).

· Tightening torque : 10 kgf · m (72.3 lbf · ft)

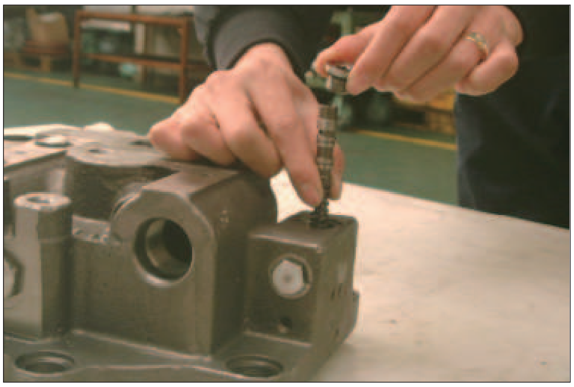
※ Confirm that O-ring (365) has been inserted in cover.



370078TM45

⑦ Assemble tilting spool (531), tilting spring (533) and plug (571) in the order named.

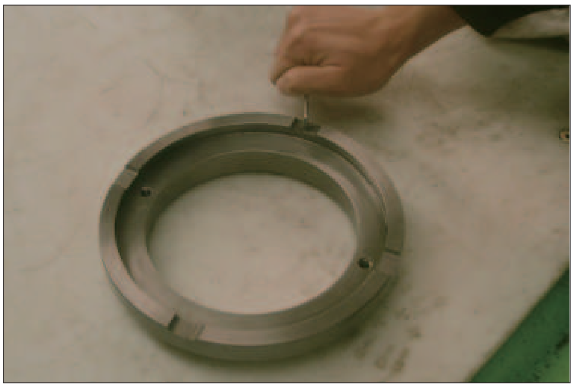
· Tightening torque : 7.5 kgf · m (54.2 lbf · ft)



370078TM46

⑧ Assemble orifice (703) and tighten them into brake piston (702) to specified torque.

· Tightening torque : 0.35 kgf · m (2.5 lbf · ft)

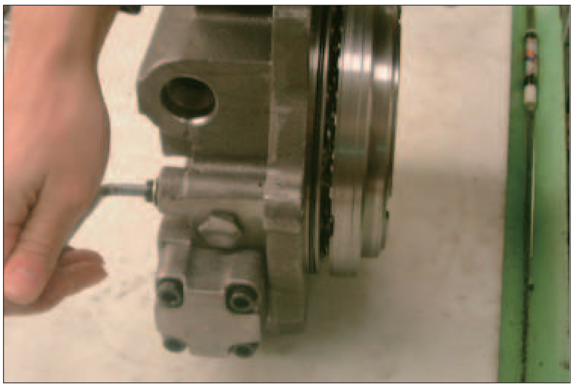


370078TM47

⑨ Assemble brake spring (705) in brake piston (702). And then screw two M10×135 bolts on the holes for compelling brake release.

Sub-assembly (valve casing & brake piston)

※ After finishing assembly, two M10×135 bolts will be removed.



370078TM48

(3) Assembling of cylinder sub-assembly

① Fit cylinder spring (114) and spherical bush (113) to cylinder block (111).

※ Match spline phase of cylinder block (111) to that of spherical bush.

370078TM49

② Put piston (121), shoe (122) sub-assembly in set plate (123) and then assemble them to cylinder block (111).

370078TM50

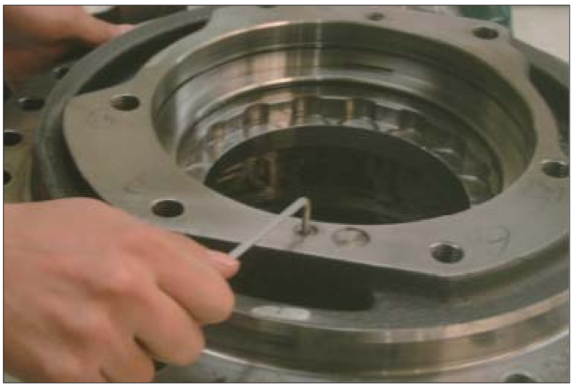
(4) Assembling of motor main body

① Tighten plug (461) and orifice (545, 546) into shaft casing (272) to specified torque.

· Plug (461) : 0.9 kgf · m (6.5 lbf · ft)

· Plug (545, 546) : 0.7 kgf · m (5.1 lbf · ft)

370078TM51



370078TM51A

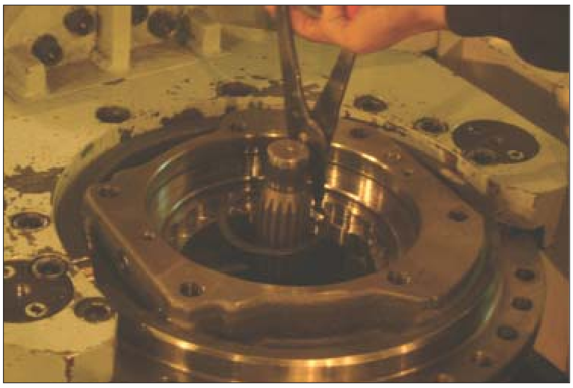
② Interference-fit oil seal (491) into shaft casing (272) by special tool.

370078TM52

③ Interference-fit the shaft sub-assembly. And then assemble snap ring (435).

※ Interference-fit outer race of cylindrical roller bearing (102) by hitting lightly with hammer, utilizing key.

370078TM53



370078TM54A

④ Assemble tilting piston sub-assembly and pivot ball (504) into shaft casing (272).

370078TM54

370078TM54A

⑤ Assemble swash plate (201) onto pivot ball (504).

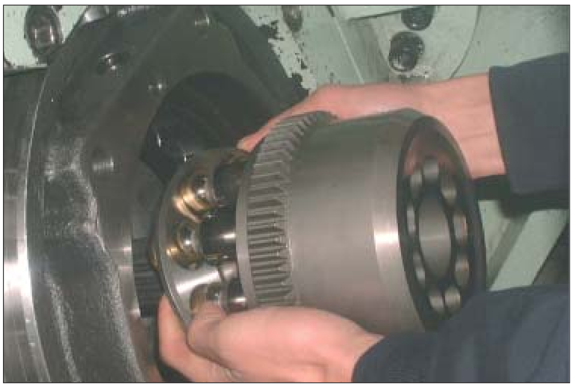
※ Apply grease on sliding area of swash plate rear surface.

※ Confirm with finger tips of both hands if swash plate moves smoothly.

370078TM55

⑥ Change position of shaft casing (272) from vertical one to horizontal one.
And then mount cylinder block sub-assembly.

※ Pay attention to not dropping swash plate.



370078TM56

⑦ Change position of shaft casing (272) from horizontal one to vertical one.

370078TM57

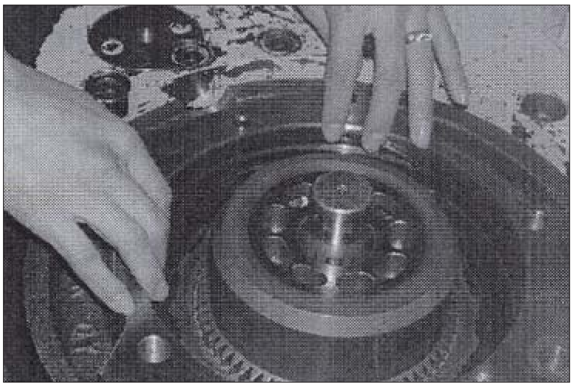
⑧ Fit separation plate (741) and friction plate (742) into cylinder block (111).

※ Mate hole of separation plate each other.

370078TM27

⑨ Assemble O-ring (707, 708) into shaft casing (272).

※ Do not reuse the disassembling O-ring (707, 708).
※ Coat the O-ring with grease.
(O-ring can be protected by grease)



370078TM59

⑩ Fit valve plate (131) to valve casing (303) sub-assembly. Assemble them to casing, and then tighten them with socket bolt (401, 402).
· Socket bolt (401, 402) Tightening torque : 44 kgf · m (318 lbf · ft)

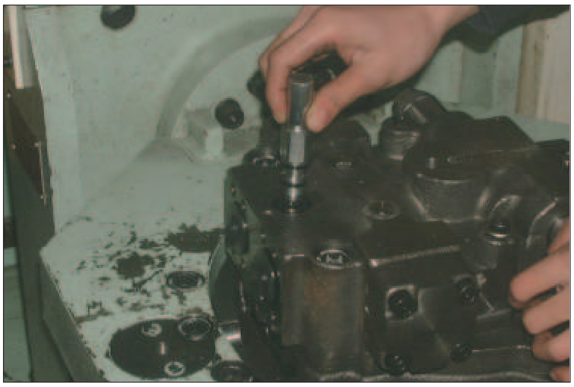
※ Apply grease on valve plate rear surface and pay attention to not dropping valve plate.
※ Use guide bolt.
※ Apply grease on roller of needle bearing and pay attention to easy to assemble with driving shaft.
※ Use crane in assembling valve casing to shaft casing.

370078TM60

370078TM60A

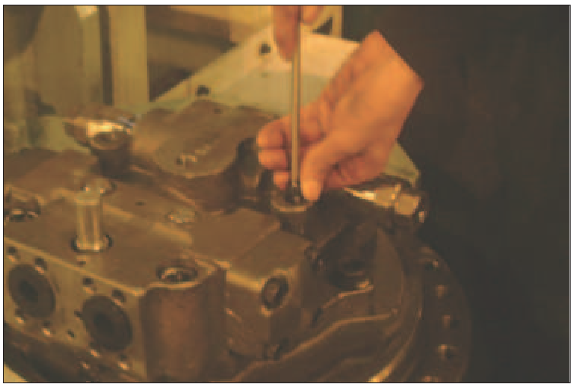
⑪ Tighten to specified torque plugs, relief valve (350), reducing valve (351), etc. fitted to valve casing sub-assembly.
· Tightening torque :
- Relief valve (350) : 18 kgf · m (130 lbf · ft)
- Reducing valve (351) : 4.5 kgf · m (32.5 lbf · ft)

370078TM61



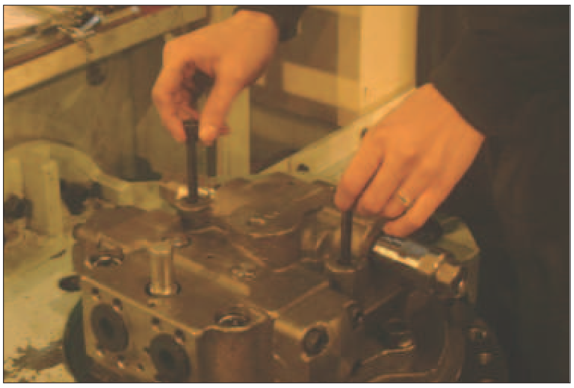
370078TM61A

⑫ Mount cover (352).



370078TM63

⑬ Disassemble two M10×135 bolts on the holes for compelling brake release.
And then assemble plug (564).
· Tightening torque : 2.2 kgf · m (15.9 lbf · ft)



370078TM24

3) ASSEMBLY OF REDUCTION GEAR

(1) Place housing (2) with its front side up, and fit angular bearings (33) with their back faces mated.

※ Fit angular bearings one by one with press or key hammer.

※ When housing is to be reused, remove screw lock of its tapped holes with M16 tap.

370078TM64

(2) Fit O-ring to floating seal (34) without twisting it, and then to housing (2).

※ Apply grease to O-ring thinly.

※ Do not reuse the disassembling O-ring.

370078TM65

(3) Similarly, fit floating seal to shaft casing (272) of hydraulic motor.

※ Do not reuse the disassembling O-ring.

370078TM66

(4) Lift up housing sub-assembly with its floating seal side down, and put inner diameter of angular bearing on outer diameter of shaft casing.

※ Pay attention to not damaging sliding faces of floating seal.

370078TM67

(5) Assemble shim (35) to nut ring (47).

※ Apply grease between shim and nut ring.

370078TM68

(6) Insert nut ring assembled shim to shaft casing, and then tighten it to specified torque, utilizing special tool.

※ After tighten it to maximum torque and then disassemble, and then tighten it to specified torque.

· Tightening torque : 60 kgf · m (434 lbf · ft)

370078TM70

(7) After assemble set screw (54) affixed LOCTITE, and punch at hole to lock it. Pay attention to not be lifted nut ring (47).

※ Screw the set screw, until upper side of set screw is lower than tilting side of nut ring.

· Loctite specifications : Three bond 1373B

· Tightening torque : 1 kgf · m (7.2 lbf · ft)

370078TM71

(8) Assemble thrust ring (27) into shaft casing (272).

※ Pay attention to not assembling thrust ring (27) the other way around. (Oil groove is located upside.)

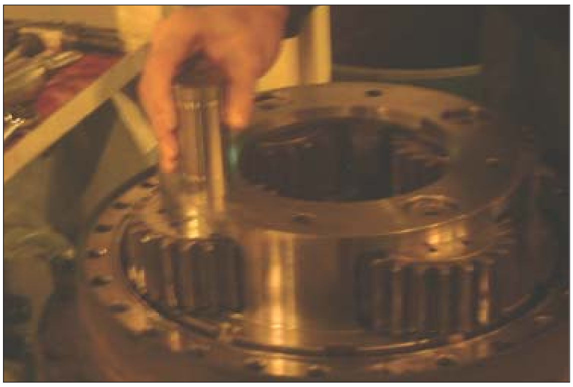
370078TM72

(9) Put needle cage (23) into inside of planetary gears 3 (14), and insert them into shaft casing, holding them between side plates (20).

※ Mate pin hole of shaft casing with center of planetary gear.

370078TM73

(10) Insert pin 3 (17) into shaft casing, and then assemble snap ring (37).



370078TM74

370078TM74A

(11) Assemble O-ring (82) to housing (2), and then assemble ring gear (1).
Pay attention to its meshing planetary gear 3 (14) and ring gear (1), utilizing crane.

※ Applying grease to O-ring thinly.
※ Do not reuse the disassembling O-ring.

370078TM75

(12) Assemble ring gear (1) and housing (29).
(Screw socket bolt (29), and tighten it to specified torque, with torque wrench.)
- Tightening torque : 30 kgf · m (217 lbf · ft)
- Loctite specifications : #636

370078TM76

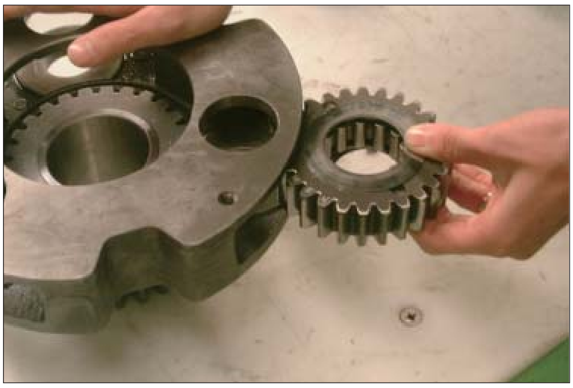
(13) Assembling carrier 2 sub-assembly

① Assemble carrier 2 (6) to sun gear 3 (11), and fit clip (46).

② Place carrier 2 with sun gear 3 up.

370078TM77

③ Put needle cage (22) into inside of planetary gear 2 (13), and insert them into carrier 2, holding them between side plates (19).



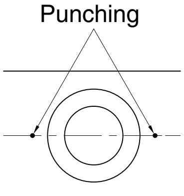
370078TM78

④ Insert pins 2 (16) into carrier 2.

370078TM78A

⑤ Insert spring pin (36) into pin holes of carrier 2 and pin 2, and punch at two points as figure to lock it.

※ Mate pin hole of carrier 2 with center of planetary gear.



370078TM79

(14) Screw two M10 eyebolts into carrier 2 sub-assembly, and assemble it with crane, paying attention to its meshing with planetary gear 2 and ring gear.

370078TM80

(15) Assembling of carrier 1 sub-assembly

① Interference-fit inner ring (24) to carrier 1 (5).

※ Inner ring is press-fit by the heat to carrier 1 (5).

370078TM81

② Assemble carrier 1 (5) to sun gear 2 (10), and fit clip (45).

370078TM82

③ Assemble thrust ring (26) to sun gear 2 (10).

※ Pay attention to not assembling thrust ring (26) the other way around.
(Oil groove is located upside.)

370078TM83

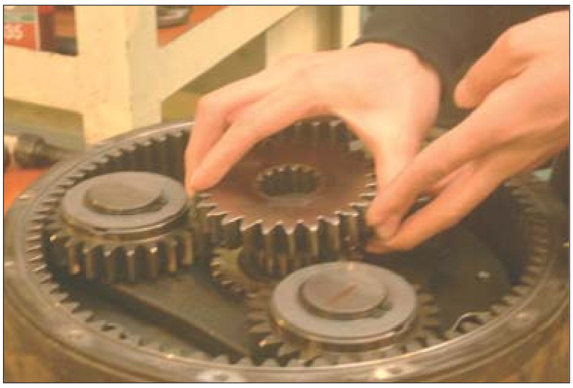
④ Put needle cage (21) into inside of planetary gear 1 (12), and assemble them, holding them between side plates (18). Then fit snap ring (44) on them.

370078TM84

(16) Assemble carrier 1 (5) sub-assembly to ring gear (1).
Paying attention to its meshing with carrier 1 sub-assembly and ring gear (1).

370078TM85

(17) Assemble sun gear 1 (9) to drive shaft (101) paying attention to its meshing with sungear and drive shaft (101).

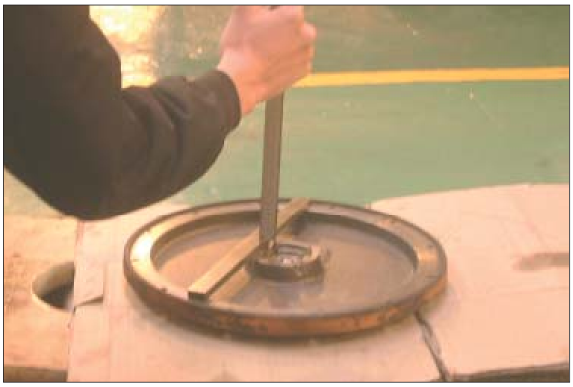


370078TM86

(18) Measure height "A" from sun gear 1 end face to ring gear (1) mating face with straight edge and depth gage.

370078TM87

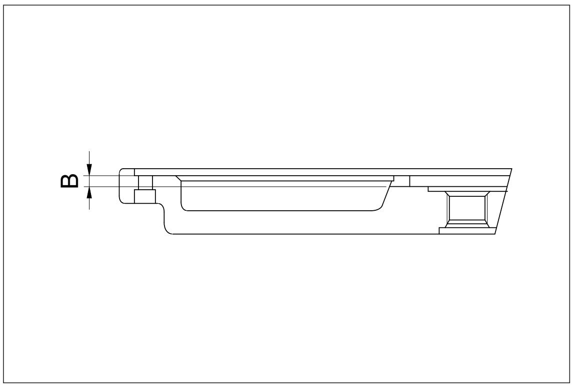
(19) Measure height "B" from side cover (4) mating face to center hold bottom with straight edge and depth gage.



370078TM88

(20) Obtain optimum thickness with the following formula.
1.5~2.0 = (B+A)
- (Thickness of thrust ring + thickness of washer)

※ Keep axial clearance between sun gear and washer 1.5~2.0 mm.



370078TM89

(21) Place washer (53) of above-selected thickness and thrust ring (26) to center of side cover (4).

※ Pay attention to not assembling thrust ring (26) the other way around and punch it (Oil groove is located upside)

370078TM90

(22) Assemble O-ring (81) into ring gear. And degrease and dry mating faces of side cover & ring gear. Then lift side cover(4) up, and place it on ring gear. And tighten socket bolt (30) to specified torque to fix side cover.
· Tightening torque : 3.5 kgf · m (25.3 lbf · ft)

370078TM91

(23) Tighten plug (32) to specified torque at side cover (4).

· Tightening torque : 11.0 kgf · m (79.6 lbf · ft)

That is all of the assembling work. After fitting the motor this reduction gear, supply oil until overflows from the level gauge.

370078TM92

4) CHECKING FACTS AFTER ASSEMBLY

(1) Air test of reduction gear

Disassemble plug (32) of reduction gear part.

When compressed air(0.3 kgf/cm^2) is inserted that in water during the 2 minutes, it should be not happened air bubble.

· Gear oil : 5.5 liter (SAE 85W-140, API GL-5 or better)

(2) Air test of hydraulic motor

One port should be opened, the others port should be closed.

When compressed air (3 kgf/cm^2) is inserted opened port in water during the 2 minutes, it should be not happened air bubble.

· Working fluid : 1.5 liter

■ TRAVEL MOTOR (TYPE 2)

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) REMOVAL

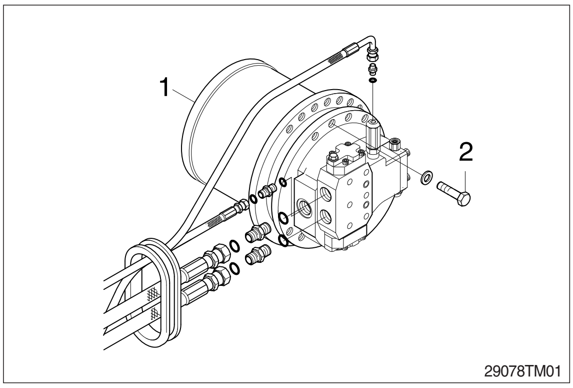
(1) Swing the work equipment 90˚ and lower it completely to the ground.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.**

※ When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.



(4) Remove the track shoe assembly.
For details, see **removal of track shoe assembly.**

(5) Remove the cover.

(6) Remove the hose.
※ Fit blind plugs to the disconnected hoses.

(7) Remove the bolts and the sprocket.

(8) Sling travel device assembly (1).

(9) Remove the mounting bolts (2), then remove the travel device assembly.
· Weight : 425 kg (940 lb)

2) INSTALL

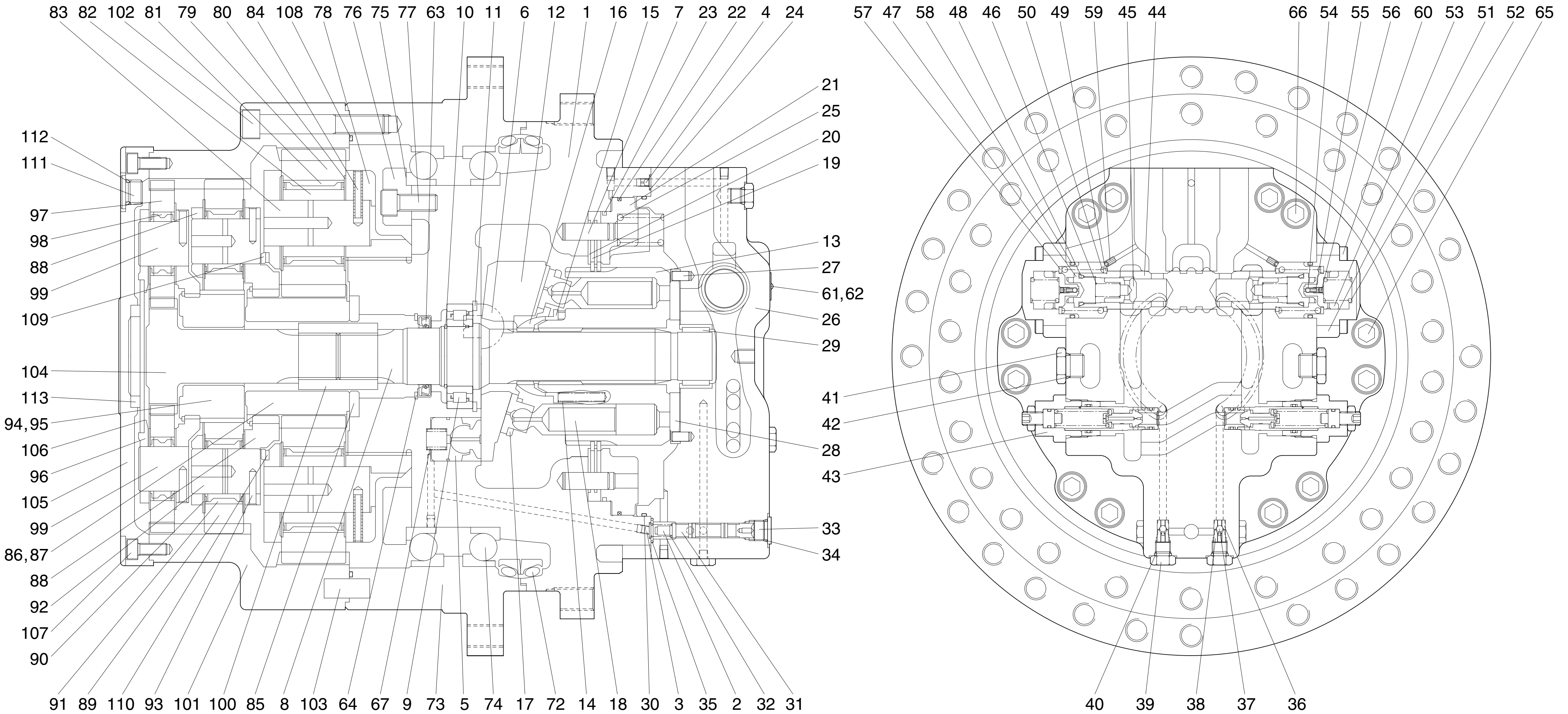
(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

(2) Bleed the air from the travel motor.
① Remove the air vent plug.
② Pour in hydraulic oil until it overflows from the port.
③ Tighten plug lightly.
④ Start the engine, run at low idling, and check oil come out from plug.
⑤ Tighten plug fully.

(3) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2. SPECIFICATION

1) TRAVEL MOTOR



1	Shaft casing	15	Spacer	29	Needle bearing	43	Relief valve assy	57	Spring seat	75	Shim	89	Planetary gear	103	Parallel pin
2	Plug	16	Ball guide	30	O-ring	44	Main spool	58	O-ring	76	Bearing guide	90	Plate	104	Drive gear
3	Orifice	17	Set plate	31	Swash spool	45	Check	59	Orifice	77	Wrench bolt	91	Needle bearing	105	End cover
4	Orifice screw	18	Piston & Shoe assy	32	Swash spring	46	Spring	60	Wrench bolt	78	Carrier	92	Pin	106	Plate
5	Swash piston	19	Friction plate	33	Plug	47	Plug	61	Name plate	79	Planetary gear	93	Spring pin	107	Wrench bolt
6	Swash ball	20	Separator plate	34	O-ring	48	O-ring	62	Rivet	80	Plate	94	Sun gear	108	O-ring
7	Brake pin	21	Brake piston	35	O-ring	49	Spring seat	63	Oil seal	81	Needle bearing	95	Snap ring	109	Ring
8	Shaft	22	Piston ring	36	Seat	50	Spring	64	Snap ring	82	Bearing bushing	96	Carrier	110	Ring
9	Roller bearing	23	Piston ring	37	Steel ball	51	Cover	65	Wrench bolt	83	Pin	97	Planetary gear	111	Plug
10	Stop ring	24	O-ring	38	Stopper	52	Spring	66	Wrench bolt	84	Spring pin	98	Needle bearing	112	O-ring
11	Lock ring	25	Brake spring	39	Plug	53	Spool	67	Spring pin	85	Thrust plate	99	Pin	113	Bushing
12	Swash plate	26	Valve casing	40	O-ring	54	Steel ball	72	Floating seal	86	Sun gear	100	Coupling		
13	Cylinder block	27	Valve plate pin	41	Plug	55	Spring	73	Hub	87	Snap ring	101	Ring gear		
14	Cylinder spring	28	Valve plate	42	O-ring	56	Plug	74	Bearing	88	Carrier	102	Wrench bolt		

2) TOOL AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

Name of tools	B-size	Name of part applied
Hexagonal L-Wrench	4	Plug (2), Orifice screw (3, 4)
	8	Plug (33)
	10	Wrench bolt (60)
	27	Hex (43)
Socket wrench/ spanner	19	Hp plug (39)
	27	Hp plug (41)
Snap-ring plier (for holes, axis)		Ring stop (10), Snap ring (64)
Hammer		Needle bearing (29), Pin (7, 27)
Torque wrench		Size : 500 kgf · m, 3000 kgf · m
Jig for oil seal assembling		Oil seal (63)
Heating tool for bearing		Roller bearing (11)

(2) Tightening torque

NO.	Part name	Standard	Size	Torque	
				kgf · m	lbf · ft
2	Plug	NPTF 1/16	4	0.9±0.2	6.51±1.45
3, 4	Orifice screw	NPTF 1/16	4	0.7	5.06
33	Plug	PF 3/8	8	7.5	54.25
39	HP plug	PF 1/4	19	3.7	26.76
41	HP plug	PF 1/2	27	11	79.56
43	Relief valve	HEX 27	27	18±1.0	130±7.0
60	Wrench bolt	M12×35L	10	13	94.03
65	Wrench bolt	M16×50L	14	13	94.03
66	Wrench bolt	M16×100L	14	6.7	48.46

2. DISASSEMBLING

1) GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

(1) Generally, hydraulic equipment is precisely manufactured and clearances between each parts are very narrow. Therefore, disassembling and assembling works should be performed on the clean place where dusts hardly gather. Tools and kerosene to wash parts should also be clean and handled with great care.

(2) When motor is removed from the host machine, wash around the ports sufficiently and put the plugs so that no dust and/or water may invade. Take off these plugs just before the piping works when re-attach it to the host machine.

(3) Before disassembling, review the sectional drawing and prepare the required parts, depending on the purpose and the range of disassembling.
Seals, O-rings, etc., if once disassembled, are not reusable.
There are some parts that should be replaced as a subassembly.
Consult with the parts manual in advance.

(4) The piston can be inserted to whichever cylinder block for the initial assembling.
However, their combination should not be changed if they are once used. To reuse them, put the matching mark on both pistons and cylinder block before disassembling.

⚠ **Take great care not to pinch your hand between parts while disassembling nor let fall parts on your foot while lifting them.**

2) DISASSEMBLEING

(1) Set up the motor assembly on the workbench for disassembly.

※ When you spin the disassembly-assembly jig at 90˚, please fix the motor drain plug (56) to the bottom.

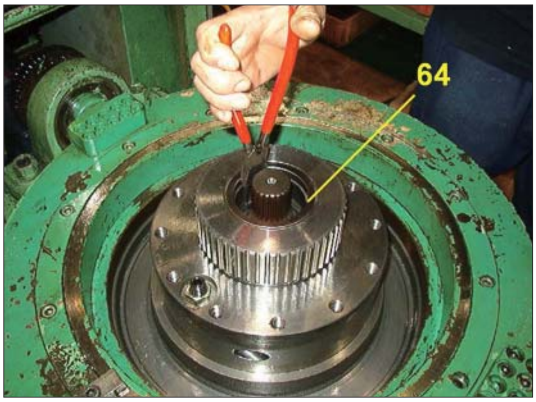
3809A2TM040

(2) Please emit the oil in the motor case with dismantlement for the drain plug (56).

※ Please inspect whether there are some kinds of foreign substance (metal powders, processed chips and others) during drain oil.

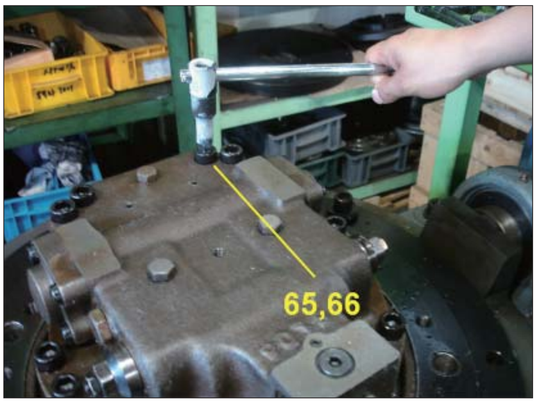
3809A2TM041

(3) Disassemble the snap-ring (64) using pliers.



3809A2TM042

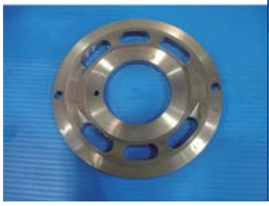
(4) Please disassemble the hexagonal socket bolt (65, 66) fixing the valve casing.



3809A2TM043

(5) Disassemble the valve plate (28) after the valve casing sub.

※ If abrasion on the valve plate, please change to new product.



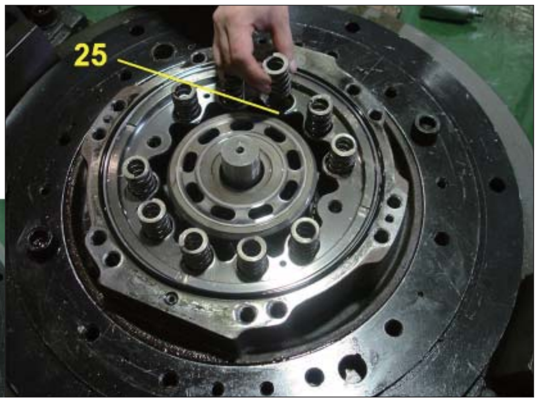
3809A2TM044A

3809A2TM044

(6) Remove brake springs (25) and take the brake piston out by screwing a M16 screw into the brake piston.

※ Number of brake springs is 10.

3809A2TM045A



3809A2TM045

(7) Remove the cylinder and piston assembly.

※ It is easer to work by placing the motor shaft horizontal.

3809A2TM046

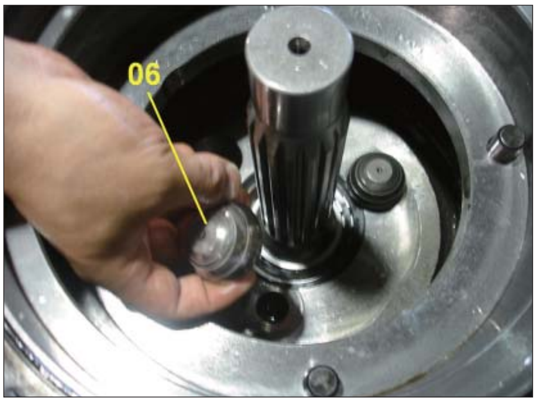
(8) Take swash plate (12) out.

3809A2TM047

(9) Take swash piston kit out.

3809A2TM048

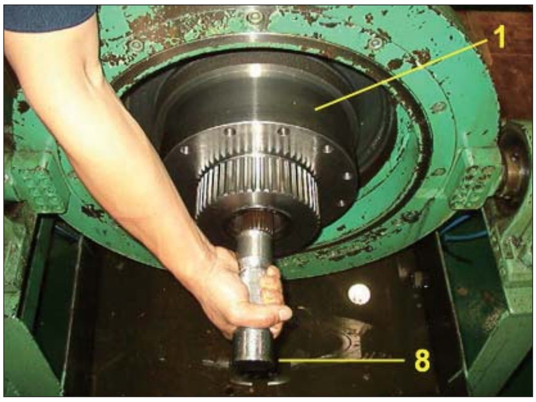
(10) Take swash ball (06) out.



3809A2TM049

(11) Take out shaft (8) from shaft casing (1) by striking the bottom part lightly with a hammer.

※ Be careful not to damage the roller bearing (9).

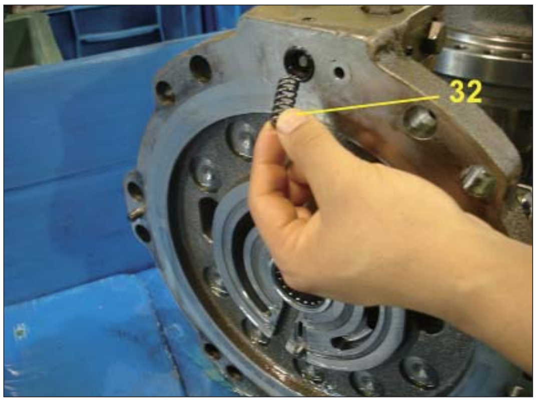


3809A2TM050

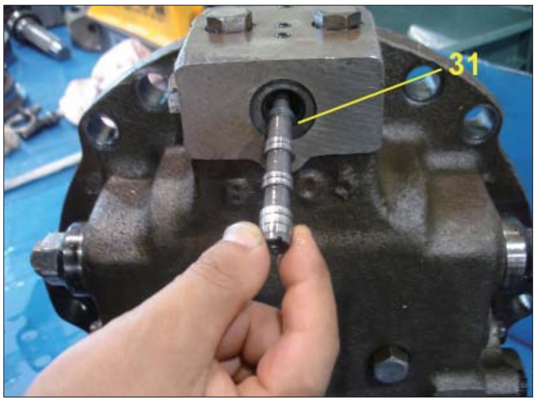
(12) Take valve casing sub out.

※ Be careful not to damage the needle bearing (29).

① Remove automatic control spring (32), automatic control spool (31).



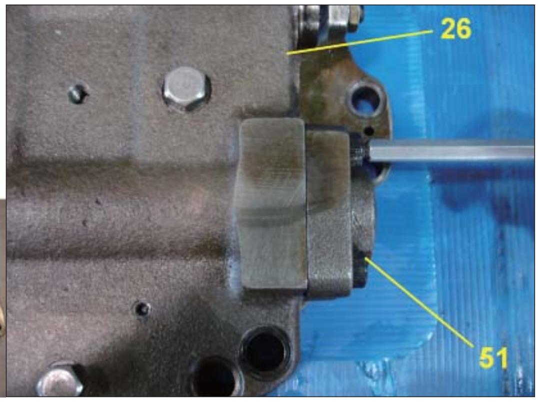
3809A2TM051



3809A2TM052

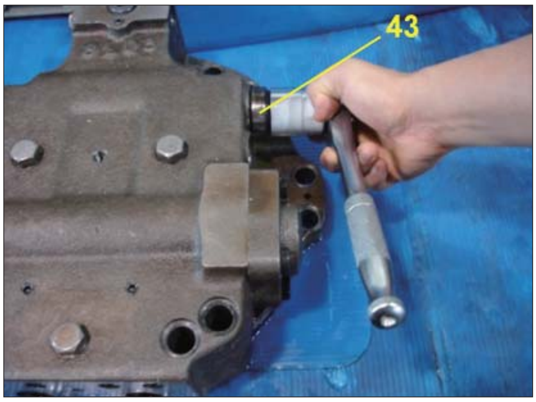
② Take out main spool cover (51) from valve casing (26). Remove spring (52), spool (53), spring seat (49), spring (50) and main spool (44) in sequence.

3809A2TM053A



3809A2TM053

③ Remove relief valve assembly (43).



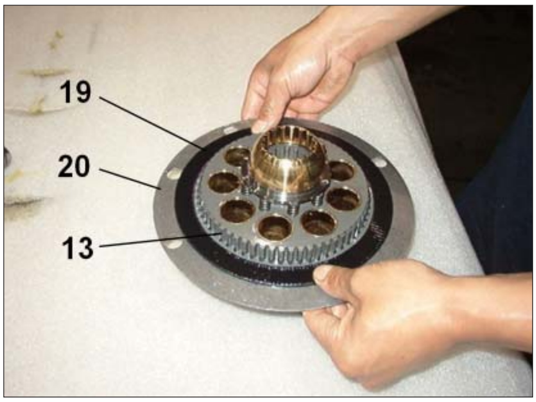
3809A2TM054

(13) Take cylinder sub out.

① Remove set plate (17) and piston (18) sub.

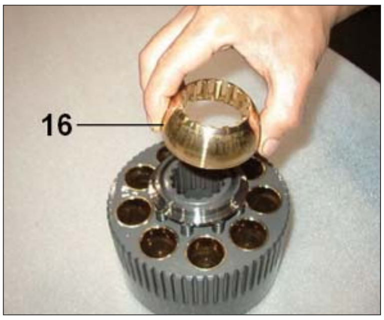
3809A2TM055

② Remove friction plates (19) and separate plates (20) from cylinder block (13).

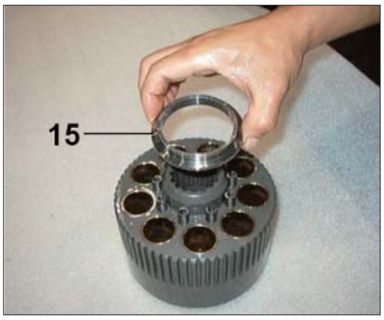


3809A2TM056

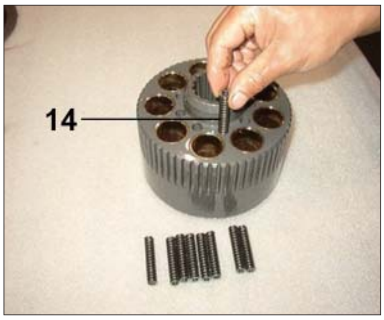
③ Remove ball guide (16), spacer (15), cylinder spring (14).



3809A2TM057



3809A2TM058



3809A2TM059

※ Disassembly has completed.
Check that the motor parts are broken or not.

3) ASSEMBLING TRAVEL MOTOR

(1) Shaft sub assembly

① Fit bearing spacer to shaft (08) and press-fit roller bearing (09).

※ Press the roller bearing after preheating.

3809A2TM060

3809A2TM061

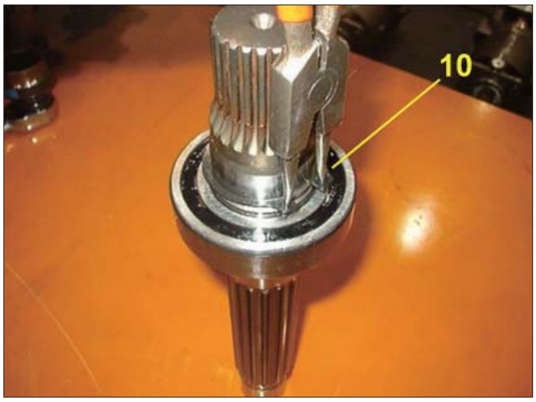
a. Induction heating apparatus temperature : 100˚C

b. Be careful not to damage the sliding surface for the seal on the shaft.

3809A2TM062

② Insert stop ring (10) with snap ring pliers.

※ Pay attention to the direction of the stop ring. (round direction is bearing direction.)



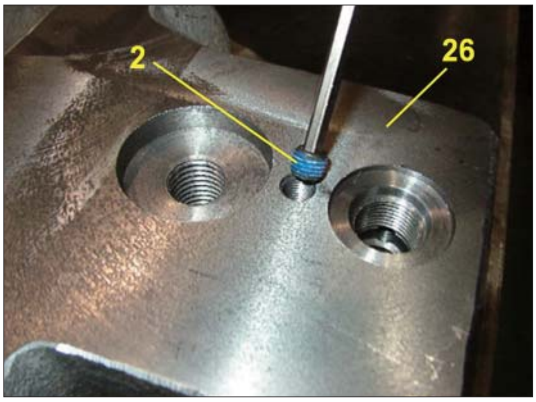
3809A2TM063

(2) Assemble valve casing sub assembly

① Tighten plugs (2) to valve casing (26) to the specified torque.

a. Apply loctite to the plug, and tighten them to the specified torque.

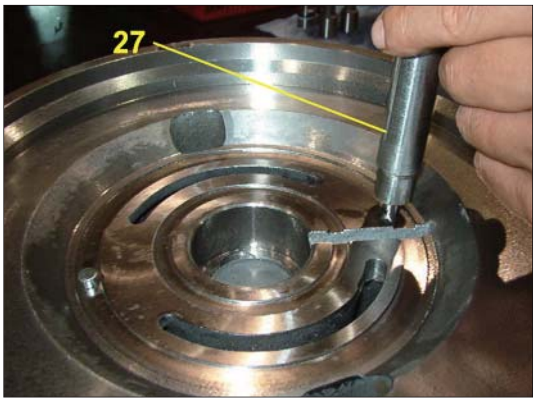
· Tightening torque : 70~110 kgf · cm



3809A2TM064

② Press-fit pin (27).

The pin's length will be 5 mm from valve plate with contacted area using a hammer.



3809A2TM065

③ Assemble needle bearing (29).

- Tools : Press-fit jig and hammer.

3809A2TM066

④ Assemble seat (36), ball (37), stopper (38), O-ring (40) and HP plug (39) in sequence.

3809A2TM067

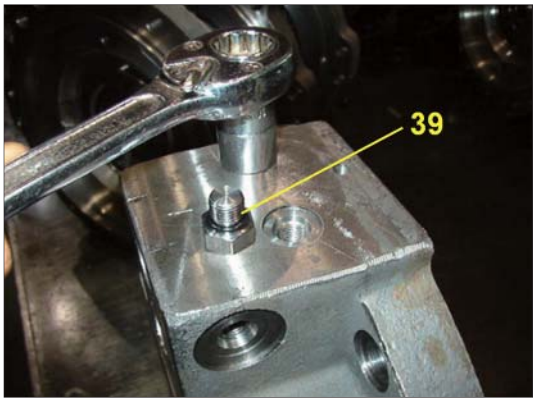
3809A2TM068

※ Pay attention to the direction of the seat and stopper.

· Tightening torque : 370 kgf · cm

⑤ Assemble HP plug (39) to the specified torque.

· 5 places
· Tightening torque : 370 kgf · cm

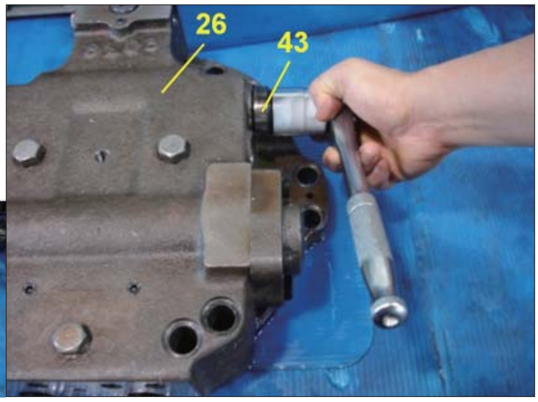


3809A2TM069

⑥ Mount relief valve (43) to the specified torque.

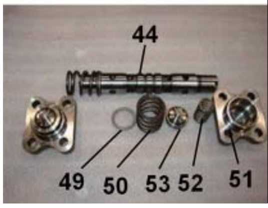
· Tightening torque : 2200 kgf · cm

3809A2TM070A

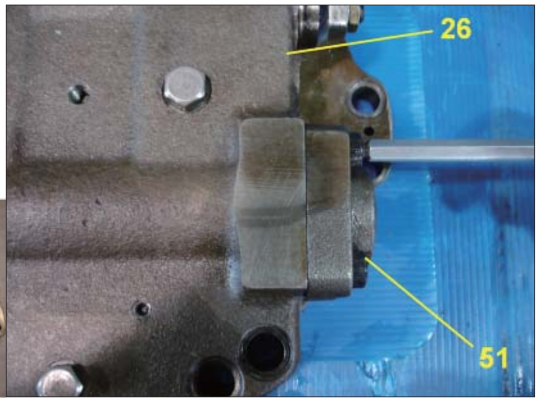


3809A2TM070

⑦ Assemble main spool cover (51), spring (52), spool (53), spring seat (49), spring (50), and main spool (44) in sequence.

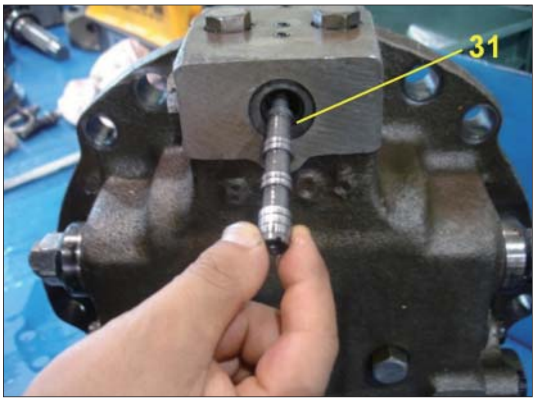


3809A2TM071A

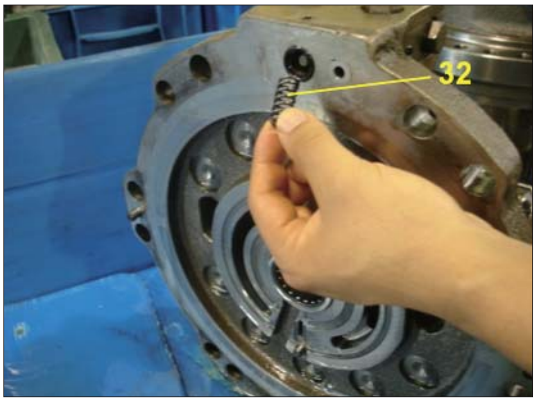


3809A2TM071

⑧ Assemble automatic control spool (31), spring (32), O-ring (35).
  · Tightening torque : 750 kgf · cm



3809A2TM072



3809A2TM073

⑨ Insert O-ring (30) to valve casing.
Apply grease to the O-ring.

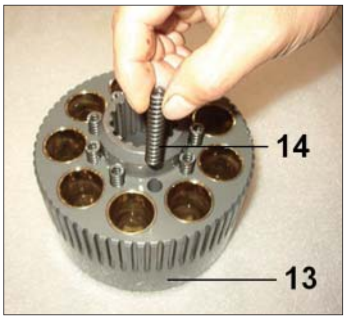
3809A2TM074

⑩ Assemble drain plug (41) to the specified torque.
  · Tightening torque : 1100 kgf · cm

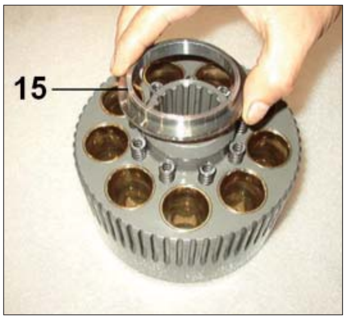
3809A2TM075

(3) Assemble cylinder sub assembly

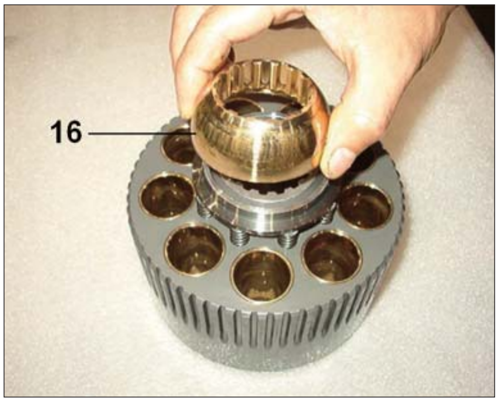
① Fit cylinder spring (14), spacer (15) and ball guide (16) to cylinder block (13).
Align the phase of the cylinder and the splineof the ball guide.



3809A2TM076A

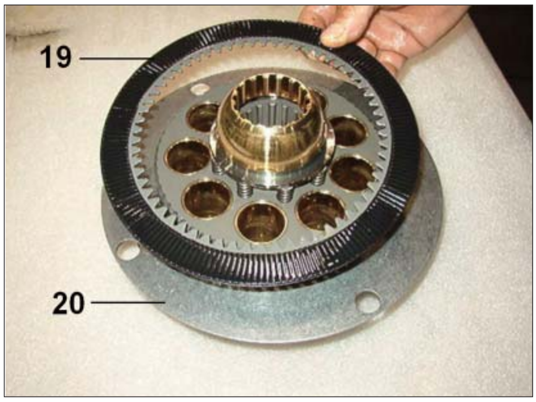


3809A2TM076B



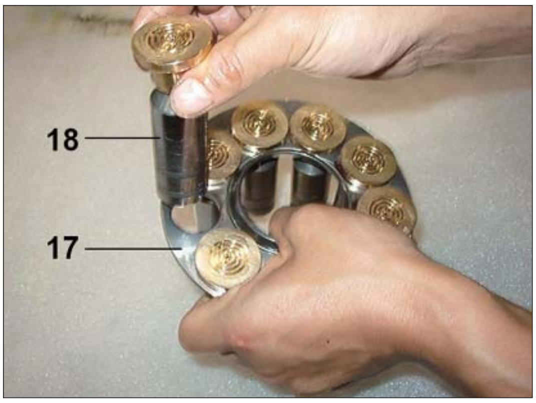
3809A2TM076

② Assemble friction plates (19) and separate plates (20).

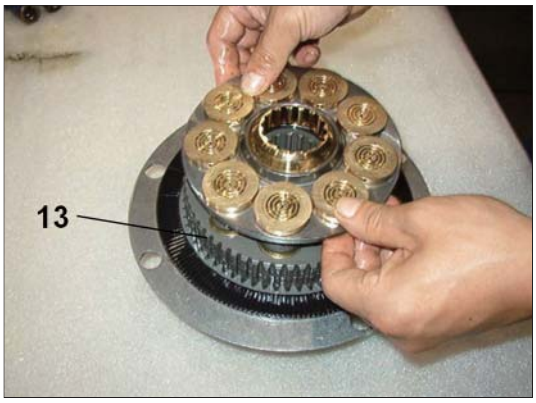


3809A2TM077

③ Insert the assembly of piston shoe (18) to retainer set plate (17) and fit it to the cylinder block (13).

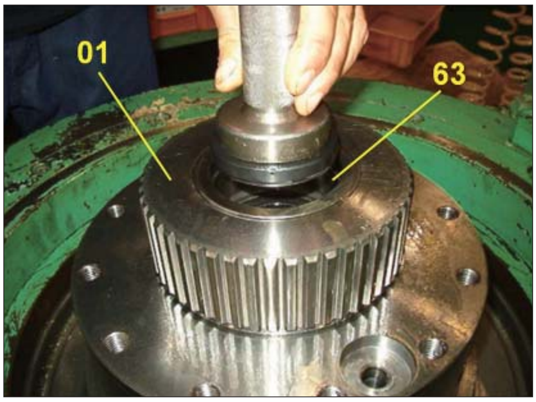


3809A2TM078



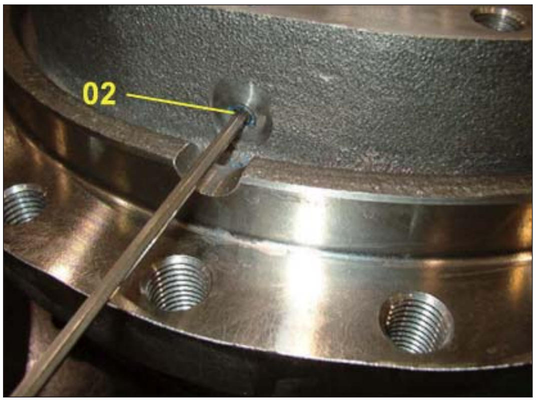
3809A2TM079

(4) Fit oil-seal (63).
※ Be careful not to damage the lip of the seal.

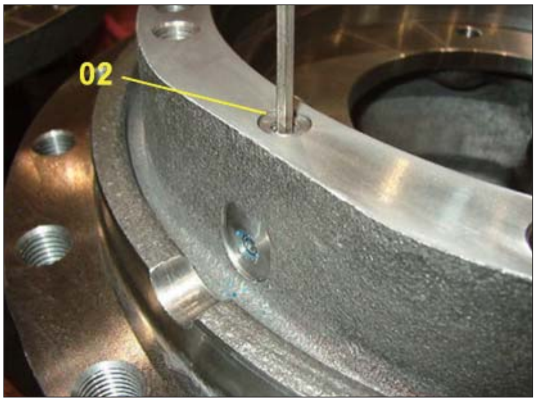


3809A2TM080

(5) Assemble plug (02) to the specified torque.



3809A2TM081



3809A2TM082

① Apply loctite to the plug and assemble.
② Tightening torque : 70~110 kgf · cm

(6) Fit pins (7).
- Tools : Hammer
Pin (7) : Please keep the length at 19 mm from surface of the shaft casing.
Pin (7) numbers - 4 EA


3809A2TM083

(7) Assemble the shaft sub assembly.

3809A2TM084

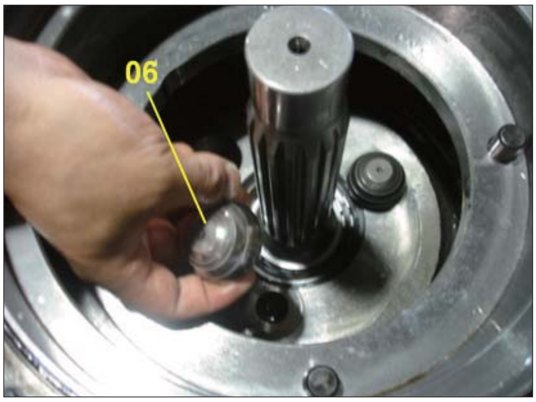
(8) Assemble swash plate (12).

3809A2TM085

(9) Assemble swash piston kit assembly.

3809A2TM086

(10) Assemble swash ball (06).

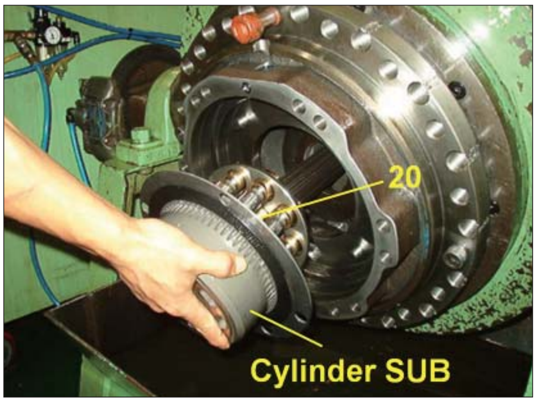


3809A2TM087

(11) Work when the shaft casing is at the vertical direction.
※ Be careful not to drop the swash plate.

3809A2TM088

(12) Fit the cylinder sub assembly.
※ Align the separate plates (20) to the pin.

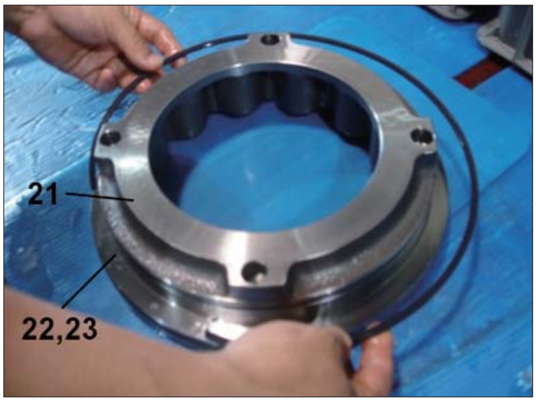


3809A2TM089

(13) Place the motor vertical again.

3809A2TM090

(14) Fit piston ring (22), piston ring (23) to brake piston (21).



3809A2TM091

(15) Fit the brake piston (21) to the shaft casing (01).

※ Pay attention to the direction of the brake piston.

3809A2TM092

(16) Mount brake springs (25).

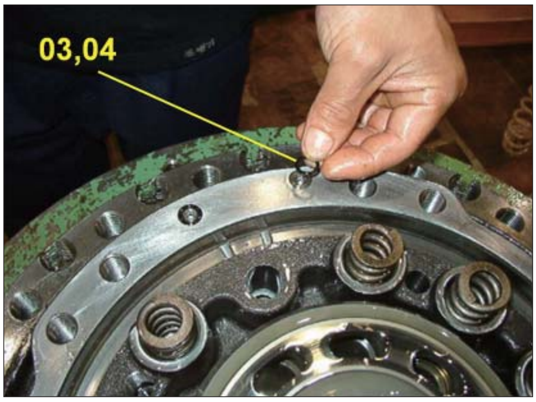
① Numbers : Springs - 10EA , Holes - 10EA

3809A2TM093

(17) Tighten orifice (03, 04) to the specified torque.

① Numbers and size : (03) 1 EA - ø 0.6
(04) 1 EA - ø 0.8

② Tightening torque : 70 kgf · cm

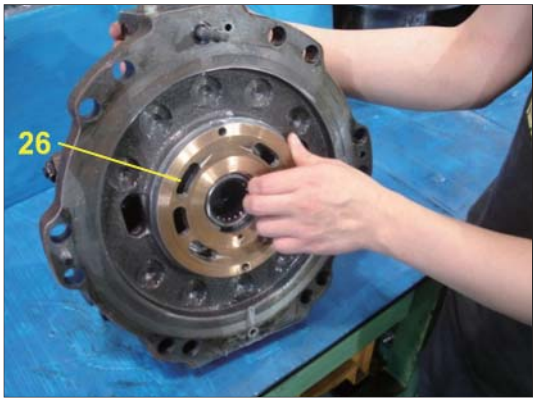


3809A2TM094

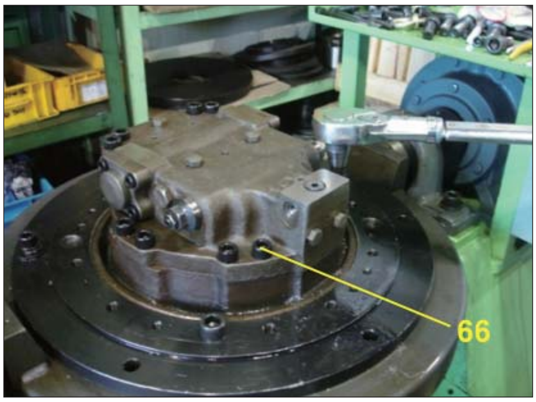
(18) Mount valve plate (26) to valve casing and tighten it with hexagonal socket bolt (66).

① Apply grease to the valve plate back and be careful not to drop the valve plate.
② When you assemble the valve casing to shaft casing, please use a crane.
③ The hole (ø5) of valve plate will be located for inlet and outlet port of valve casing.
④ Coat grease to swash spool of swash spring.
 · Tightening torque : 2400 kgf · cm

- Bolt tightening torque : 1800±100 kgf · cm



3809A2TM095



3809A2TM096

(19) Tighten relief valves (43) to the specified torque.

3809A2TM097

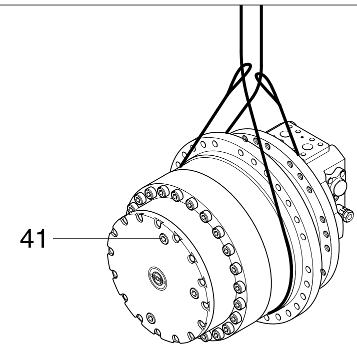
※ Assembly has completed.

3. DISASSEMBLING REDUCTION GEAR

1) DISASSEMBLY

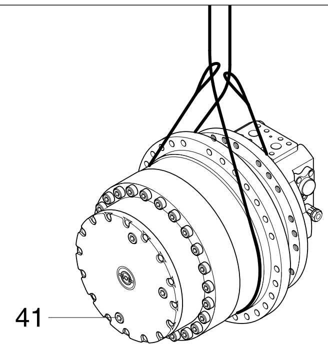
(1) Loosen drain plug (41).

- Do not remove drain plug (41) at once.
- Because gear oil was compressed, plug and oil protrude suddenly.



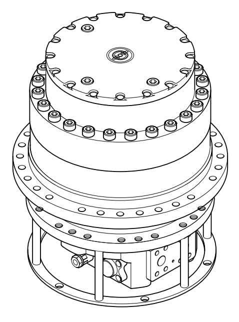
3809A2TM111

(2) After loosening drain plug (41), drain gear oil.



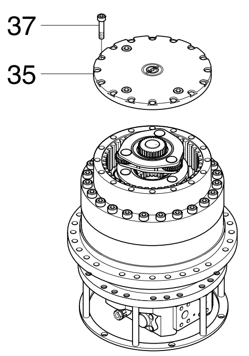
3809A2TM112

(3) Overturn the traveling device.



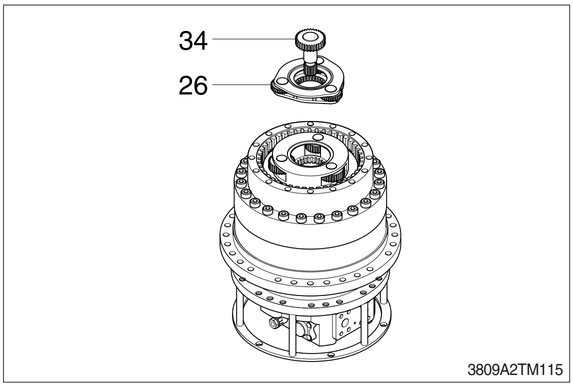
3809A2TM113

(4) After loosening bolt (37), take cover (35) off.

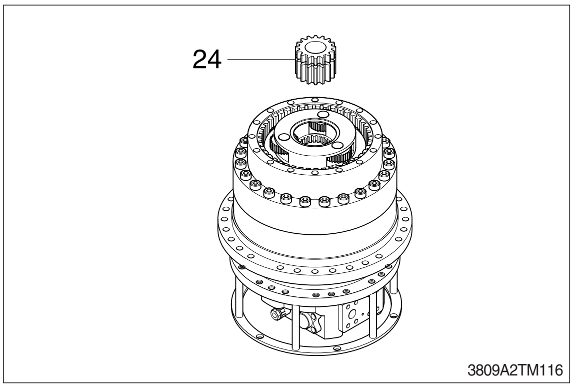


3809A2TM114

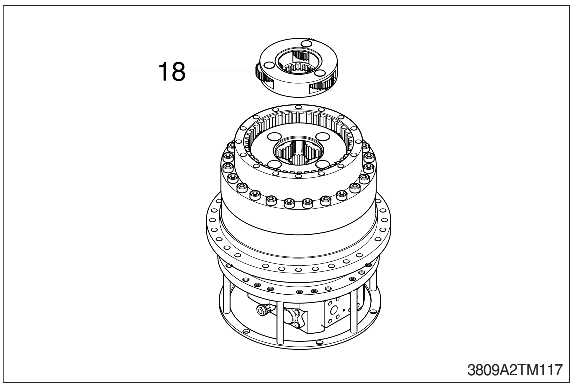
(5) Remove drive gear (34) and No.3 carrier (26).



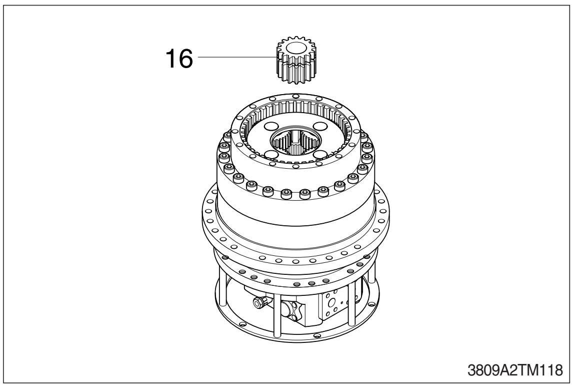
(6) Remove No.2 sun gear B (24).



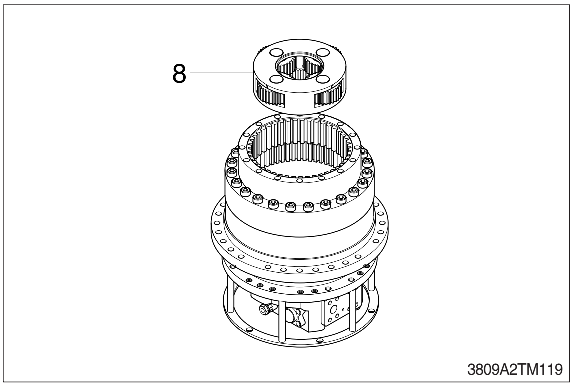
(7) Remove No.2 carrier B (18).



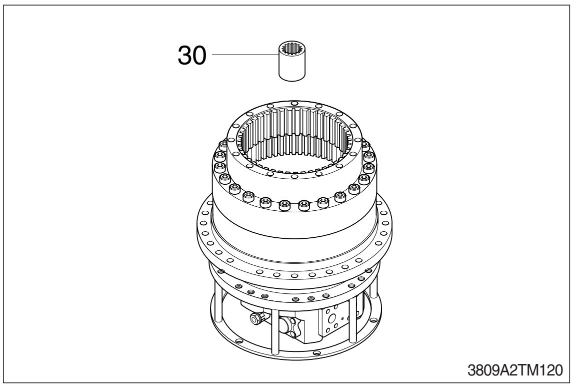
(8) Remove No.1 sun gear A (16).



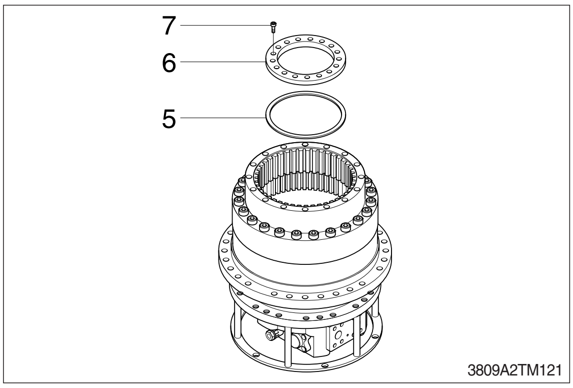
(9) Remove No.1 carrier A (8).



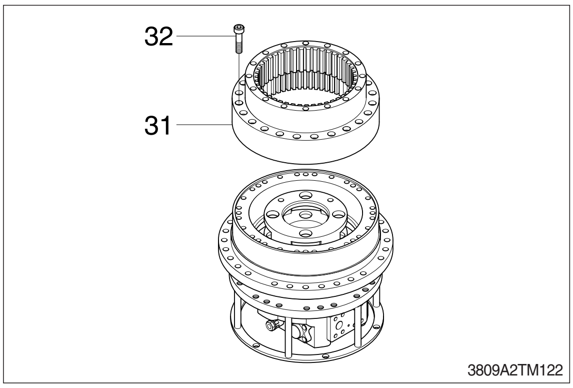
(10) Remove coupling (30).



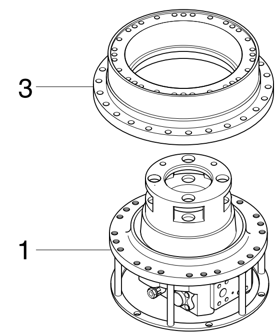
(11) After loosening bolt (7), remove bearing guide (6) and shim (5).



(12) After loosening bolt (32), remove ring gear (31).
- Tools : I-bolt, Hoist

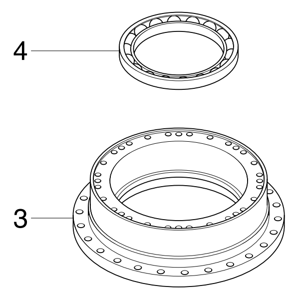


(13) Remove hub (3) from assembly (1).
- Tools : I-bolt, Hoist



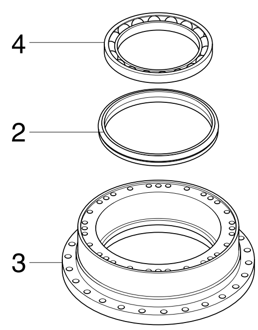
3809A2TM123

(14) Remove angular bearing (4) from hub (3).



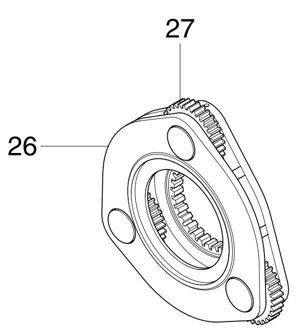
3809A2TM124

(15) Remove floating seal (2) and angular bearing (4) at opposite of hub (3).



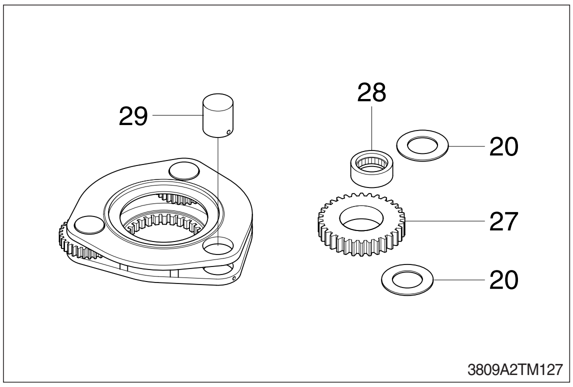
3809A2TM125

(16) Remove planetary gear C (27) from No.3 carrier C (26).



3809A2TM126

(17)After removing pin (29), remove No.3 planetary gear C (27), needle bearing (11) and plate C (20).



(18)Remove No.2 carrier B (18) assy.

(19)Remove No.1 carrier A (8) assy.

※ Disassembly has completed.

4. ASSEMBLING REDUCTION GEAR

- General precautions
  Clean every part by kerosene and dry them by air blow.
  Surfaces to be applied by loctite must be decreased by solvent.
  Check every part for any abnormals.
  Each hexagon socket head bolt should be used with loctite No. 242 applied on its threads.
  Apply gear oil slightly on each part before assembling.
  Take great care not to pinch your hand between parts or tools while assembling nor let fall parts on your foot while lifting them.

Inspection before reassembling

Thrust washer

· Check if there are seizure, abnormal wear or uneven wear.

· Check if wear is over the allowable limit.

Gears

· Check if there are pitting or seizure on the tooth surface.

· Check if there are cracks on the root of tooth by die check.

Bearings

· Rotate by hand to see if there are something unusual such as noise or uneven rotation.

Floating seal

· Check flaw or score on sliding surface or on O-rings.

1) Track gearbox, assembly

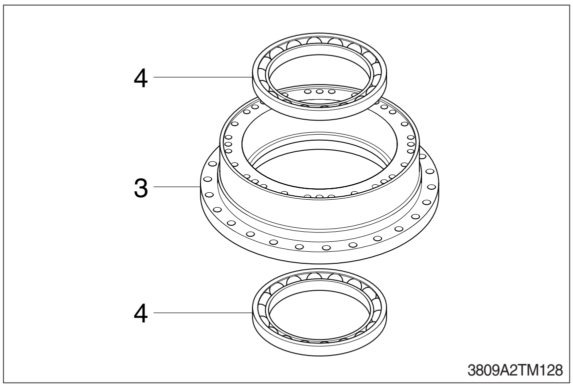
Before assembly track gearbox

Please observe following item.

- Wash all parts cleanly using solvent and dry all parts perfectly using compressed air.
- Check metal dust in casing and cleansing solution.
- Before application packing, please remove oil certainly.
- Before insert needle bearing, apply grease to bearing inlet enough.
- Apply lubricant to rotation part and sliding part.
- Damaged part or discolored part exchanges by new parts.

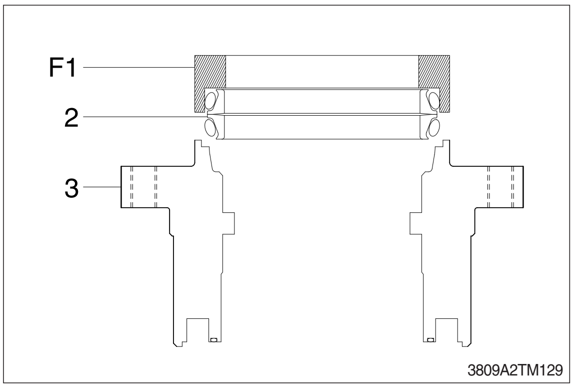
(1) Assemble hub

① Press fit angular bearing (4) to hub (3).



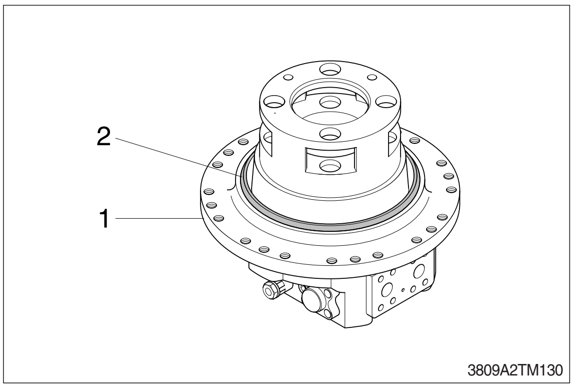
② Assemble floating seal (2) to hub (3) using press jig (F1).

- Remove completely the oil of surface that O-ring and O-ring contact.
- Dry completely the floating seal.
- After assembling the floating seal, check floating seal angle (within 1 mm).
- After assembling the floating seal, coat lubricant to the sliding surface of the floating seal.

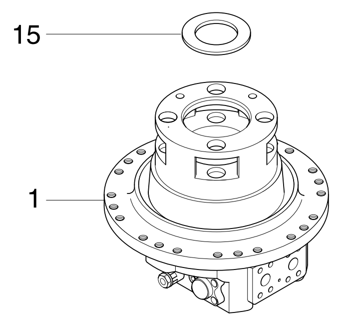


③ Assemble floating seal (2) to track motor (1) using press jig (F1).
Assembling sequence is same with sequence (②).

- Remove completely the oil of surface that O-ring and O-ring contact.
- Dry completely the floating seal.
- After assembling floating seal, coat lubricant to the sliding surface of the floating seal.

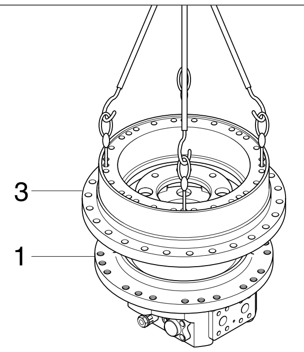


(2) Assemble thrust plate (15) to spline surface of track motor (1).



3809A2TM131

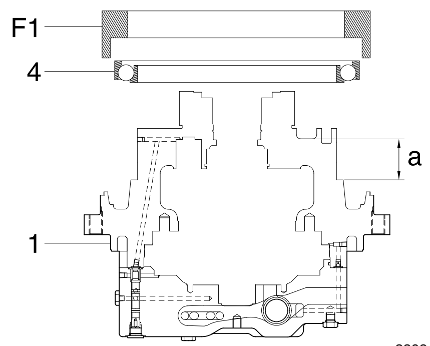
(3) Insert the assembly of hub (3) to track motor (1).



3809A2TM132

(4) Stick bearing (4) to track motor (1) using press jig (F1).

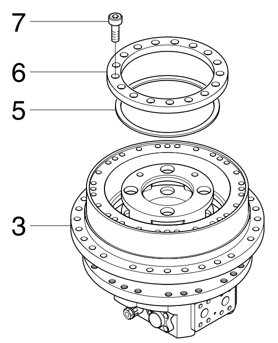
- Don't heat the bearing.
- Don't hit the bearing retainer.
- Spin the hub. (two times ~ three times)
- Measure "a" size of figure.



3809A2TM133

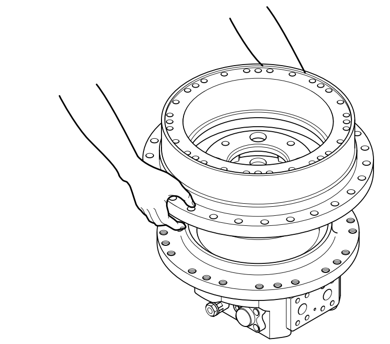
(5) After assembling shim (5), assemble bearing guide (6) using bolt (7).

- Select thickness of shim (5) and assembly.
- Apply loctite #262 to bolt (7).
  · Tightening torque : 1300 kgf · cm



3809A2TM134

(6) Assemble bearing guide.
According to the hub turn, we can check it goes on smoothly or not.

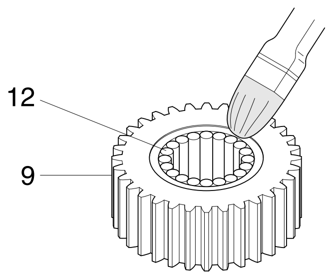

3809A2TM135

(7) Assemble No.1 carrier A (8) sub.

① Mount bearing bushing (12) to No.1 planetary gear A (9).

- Bearing bushing numbers : 18EA

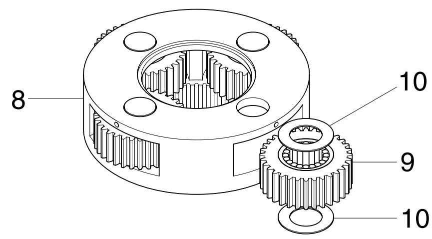
Insert needle and coat grease.



3809A2TM136

② Mount No.1 planetary gear A (9) and plate A (10) to No.1 carrier A (8).

- Align the hole of carrier and needle inside diameter.

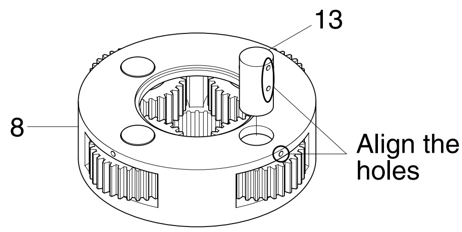


3809A2TM137

③ Put pin (13) on holes of No.1 carrier A (8).

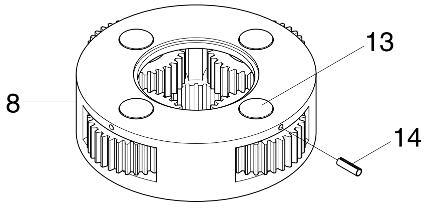
※ Align the holes of the carrier and pin holes.

※ Beat on it lightly with hammer and put in.



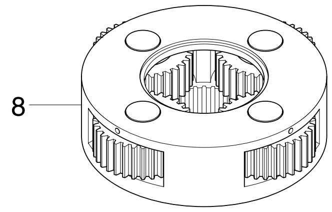
3809A2TM138

④ Assemble carrier (8) and pin (13) striking pin (14) by hammer.
After assembly pin (14), caulking.



3809A2TM139

⑤ Complete remainder by equal method.



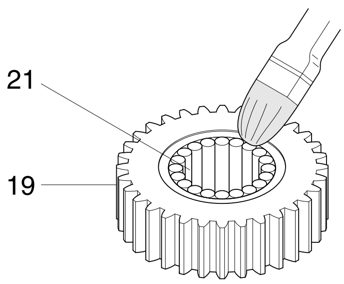
3809A2TM140

(8) Assemble No.2 carrier B (18) sub.

① Mount needle (21) to No.2 planetary gear B (19).

- Needle numbers : 15 EA

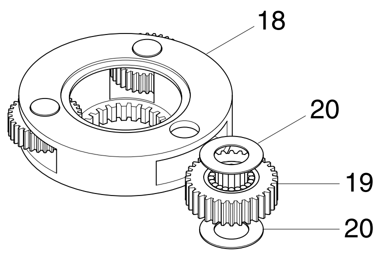
Insert needle and coat grease.



3809A2TM141

② Insert No.2 planetary gear B (19) and plate B (20) to No.2 carrier B (18).

- Align the holes of the carrier and pin holes.

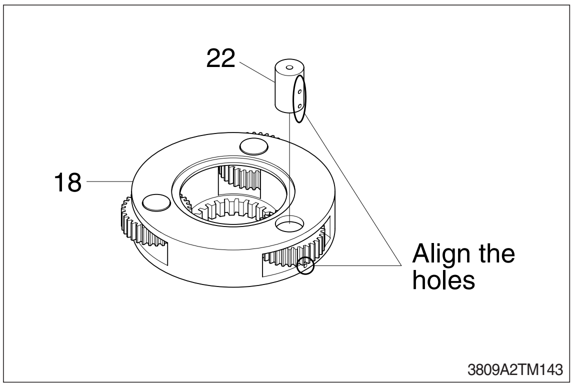


3809A2TM142

③ Put pin (22) on holes of No.2 carrier B (18).

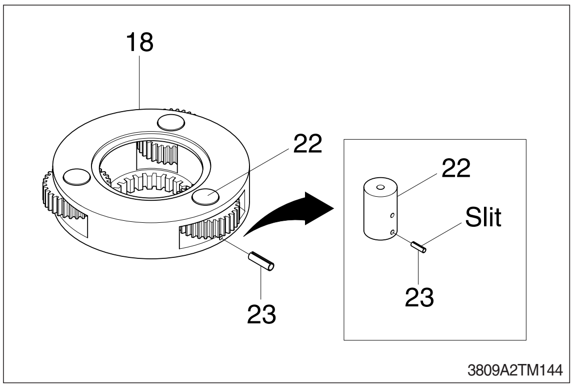
※ Align the holes of the carrier and pin holes.

※ Beat on it lightly with hammer and put in.

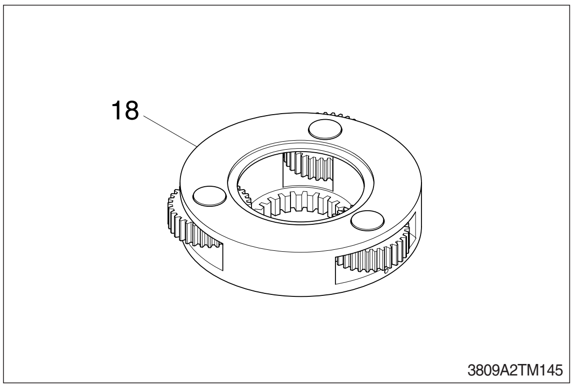


④ Assemble carrier (18) and pin (22), striking pin (23) by hammer.

- If the pin's divided side is not located in the above,it will be damaged during operation.
- After assembly pin, caulking.

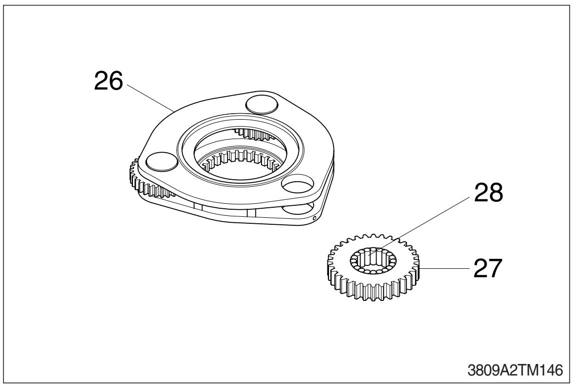


⑤ Complete remainder by equal method.



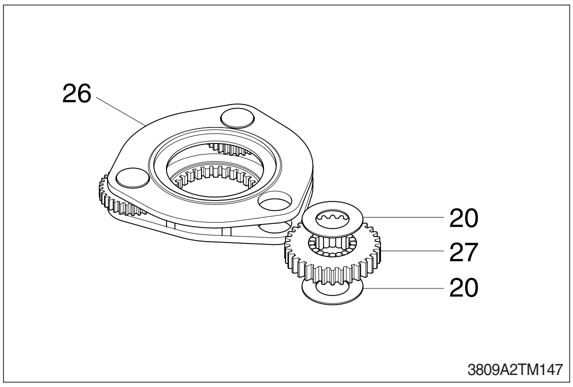
(9) Assemble No.3 carrier C (26) sub.

① Insert needle bearing (28) to No.3 planetary gear C (27).
Insert needle and coat grease.



② Insert No.3 planetary gear C (27) and plate C (20) to No.3 carrier C (26).

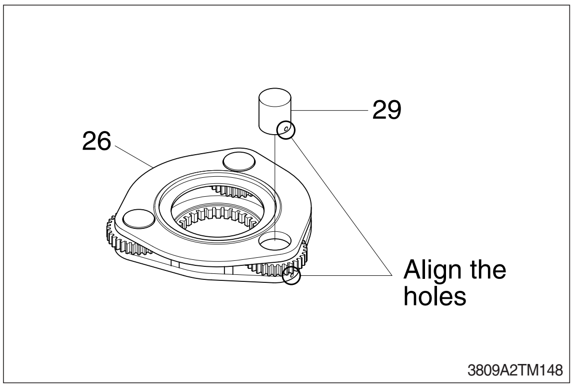
- Align the holes of the carrier and inside diameter of needle bearing.



③ Put pin (29) on holes of No.3 carrier C (26).

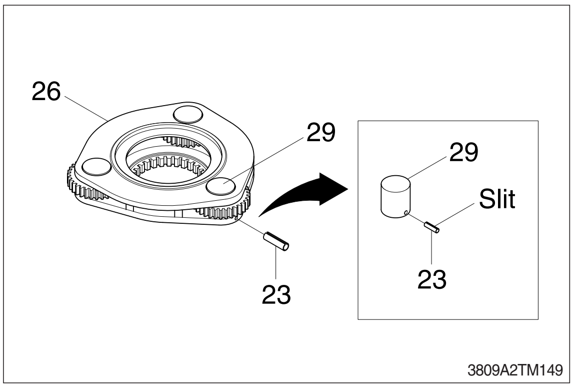
※ Align the holes of the carrier and pin holes.

※ Beat on it lightly with hammer and put in.

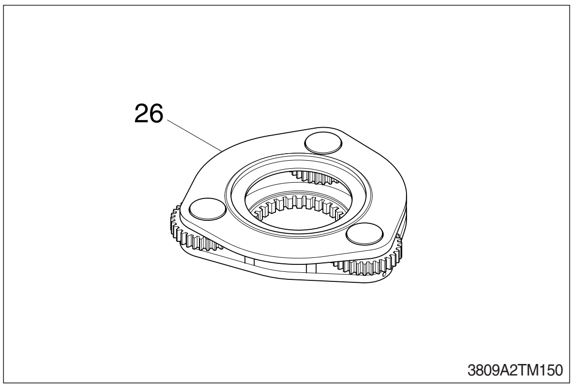


④ Assemble carrier (26) and pin (29) striking pin (23) by hammer.

- If the pin's divided side is not located in the above, it will be damaged during operation.
- After assembly pin, caulking.

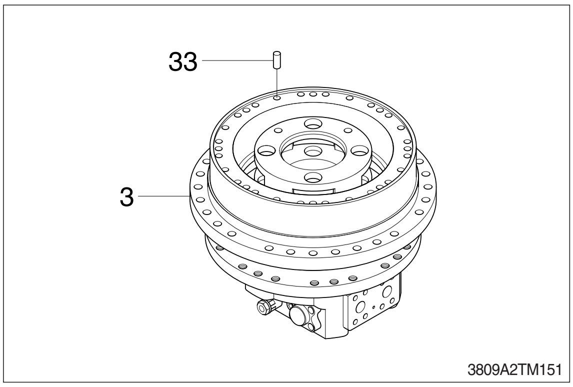


⑤ Complete remainder by equal method.

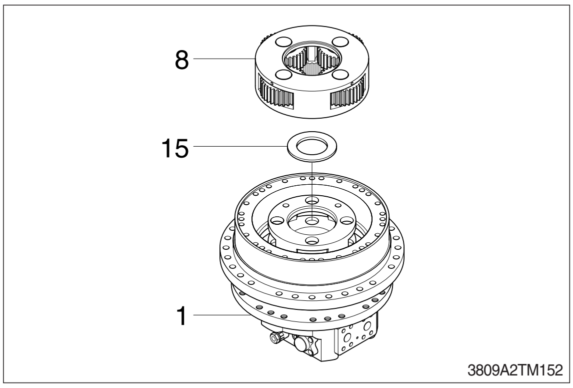


(10)Press-fit parallel pin (33) to the surface of hub (3).

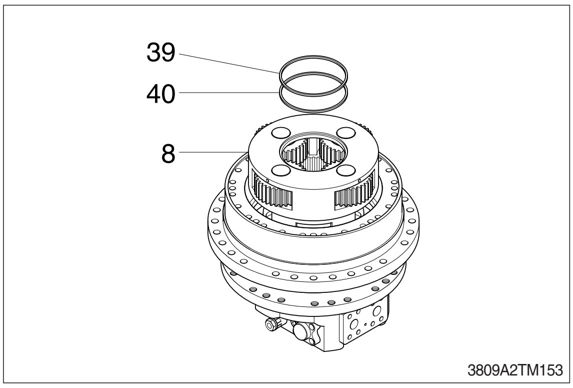
- Parallel pin numbers : 8EA



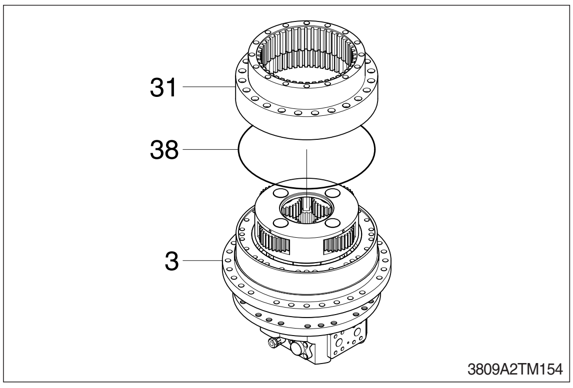
(11)Insert thrust plate (15) to shaft casing of track motor (1).
Press-fit No.1 carrier A (8) assy to shaft casing spline using hoist.



(12)Press-fit ring (39, 40) to the No.1 carrier A (8) assy.

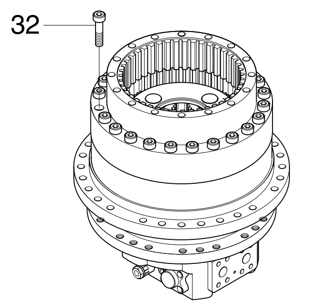


(13)Mounting O-ring (38) into hub (3), and assemble ring gear (31) to hub (3).



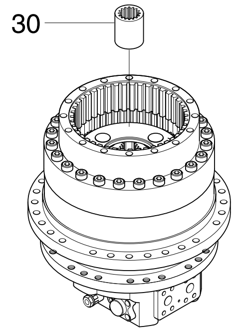
(14)Tighten hub and ring gear.

- Bolt numbers : 24 EA
- Tightening torque : 1800 kgf · cm



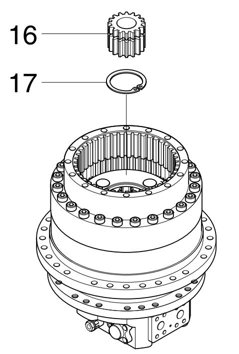
3809A2TM155

(15)Insert coupling (30) to splineof shaft.



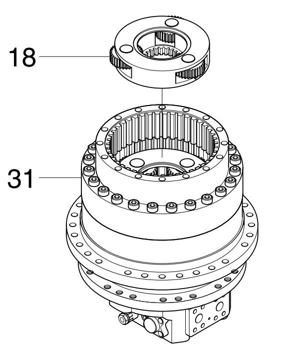
3809A2TM156

(16)Assemble snap ring (17) to sun gear A (16).
Insert sun gear A (16) to carrier A.



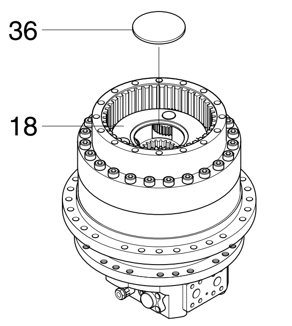
3809A2TM157

(17)Assemble carrier B (18) to ring gear (31).



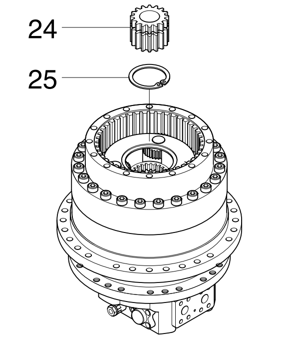
3809A2TM158

(18) Assemble plate (36) to carrier B (18).



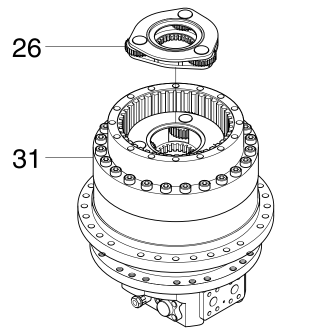
3809A2TM158A

(19) Assemble snap ring (25) to sun gear B (24).
Insert carrier B to sun gear B (24).



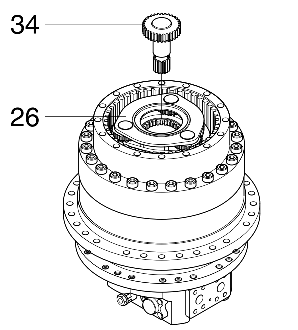
3809A2TM159

(20) Assemble carrier C (26) assy to ring gear (31).
After assembling, check whether gear rotate or not.



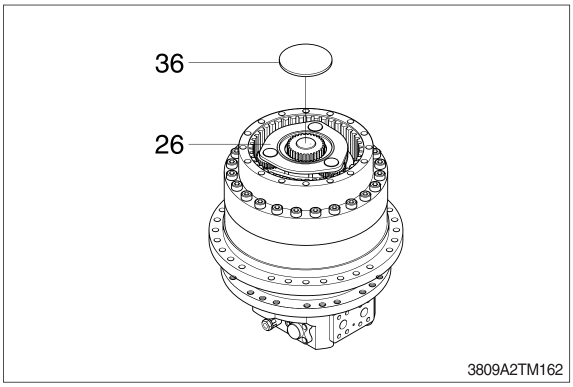
3809A2TM160

(21) Assemble carrier C (26) to drive gear (34).

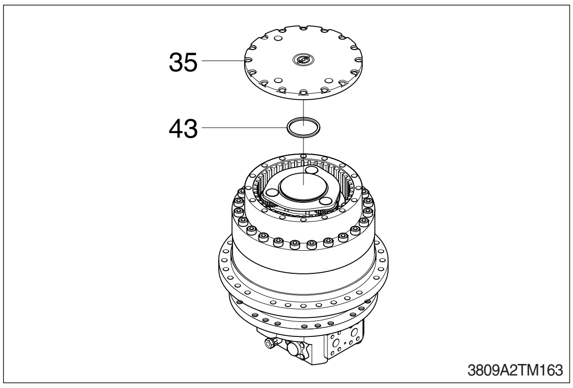


3809A2TM161

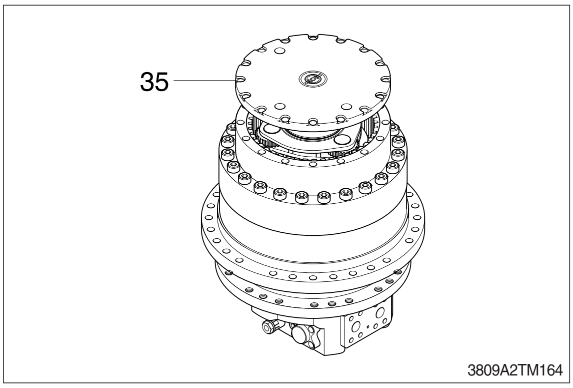
(22) Assemble plate (36) to carrier C (26).



(23) Press-fit bushing (43) to cover (35).

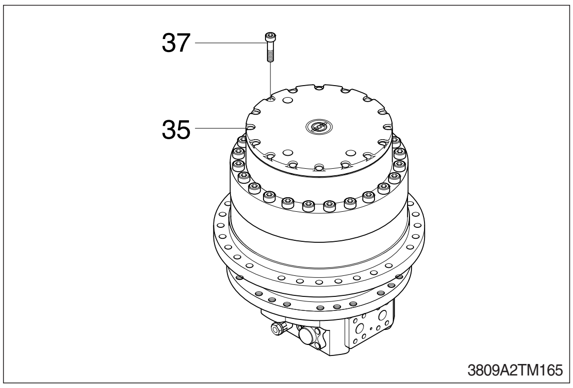


(24) Assemble cover (35).



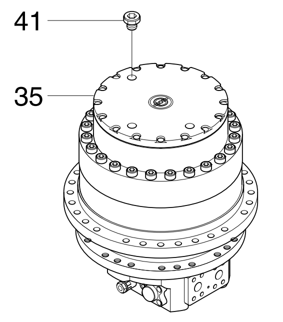
(25) Assemble cover (35) and tighten them to the specified torque.

· Tightening torque : 750 kgf · cm

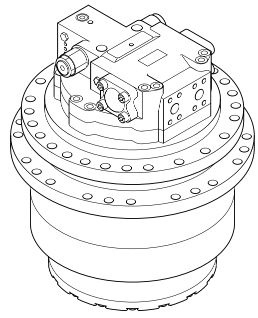


(26) Inject gear oil and assemble plug (41) of cover (35).

- Volume of gear oil : 4.5 liter



3809A2TM166


3809A2TM167

※ Assembly has completed.

GROUP 7 RCV LEVER

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) REMOVAL

(1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.


13031GE18

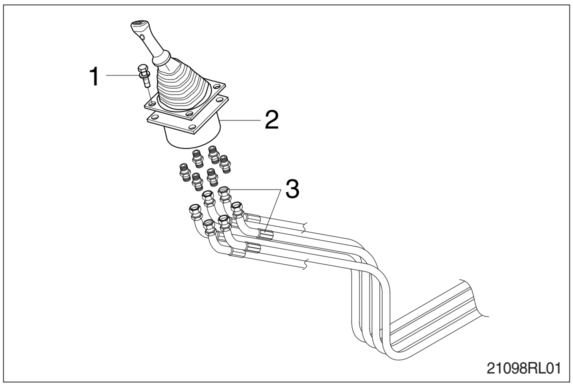
(4) Loosen the socket bolt (1).

(5) Remove the cover of the console box.

(6) Disconnect pilot line hoses (3).

(7) Remove the pilot valve assembly (2).

※ When removing the pilot valve assembly, check that all the hoses have been disconnected.



21098RL01

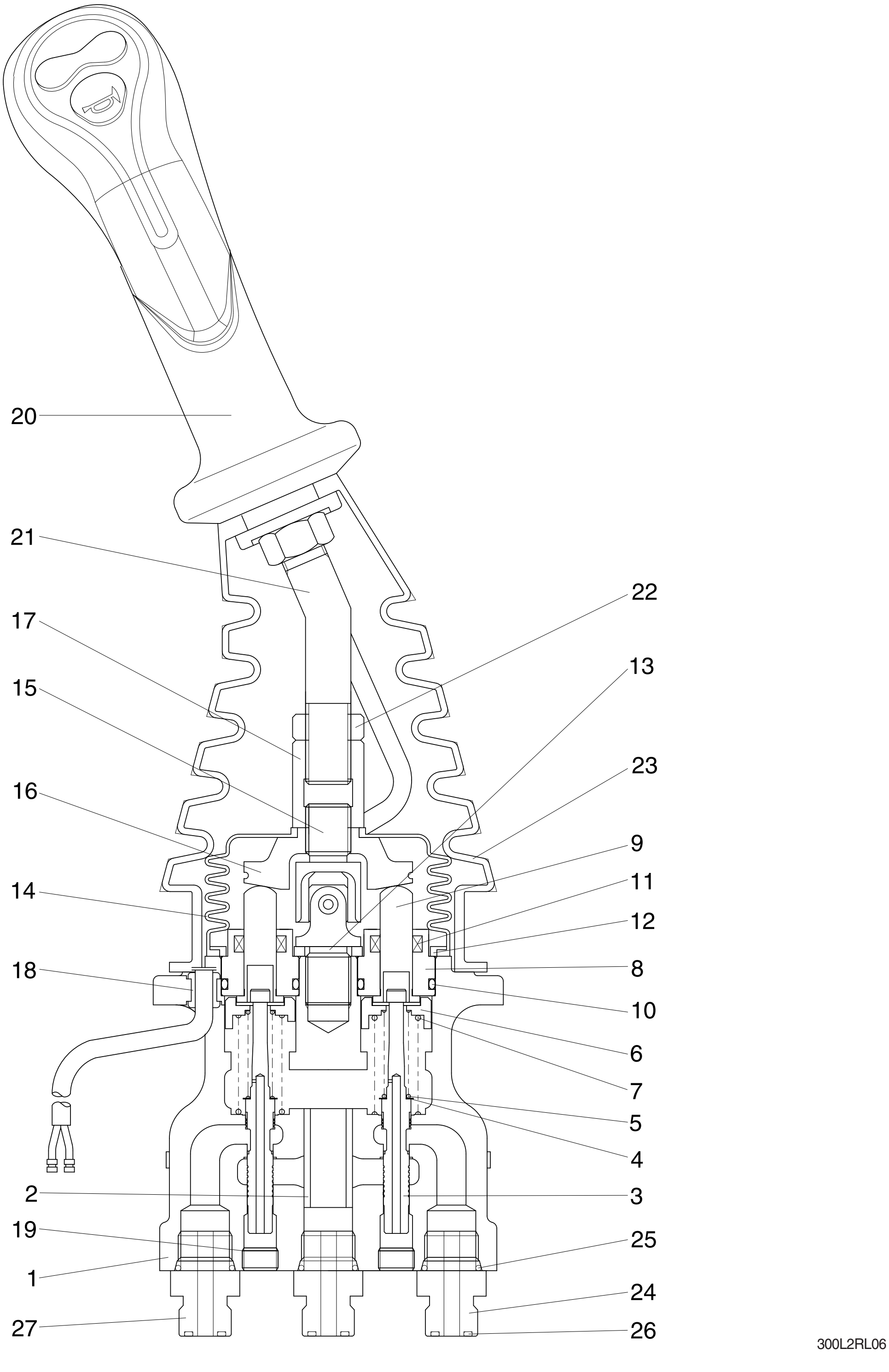
2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

(2) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

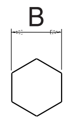
1) STRUCTURE



1	Case	8	Plug	15	Joint assembly	22	Nut
2	Bushing	9	Push rod	16	Swash plate	23	Boot
3	Spool	10	O-ring	17	Adjusting nut	24	Last guard filter
4	Shim	11	Rod seal	18	Bushing	25	O-ring
5	Spring	12	Plate	19	Plug	26	O-ring
6	Spring seat	13	Spacer	20	Handle assembly	27	Connector
7	Spring	14	Boot	21	Handle bar		

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

Tool name	Remark	
Allen wrench	6	
Spanne	22	
	27	
(+) Driver	Length 150	
(-) Driver	Width 4~5	
Torque wrench	Capable of tightening with the specified torques	

(2) Tightening torque

Part name	Item	Size	Torque	
			kgf · m	lbf · ft
Joint	15	M14	3.5	25.3
Swash plate	16	M14	5.0±0.35	36.2±2.5
Adjusting nut	17	M14	5.0±0.35	36.2±2.5
Lock nut	22	M14	5.0±0.35	36.2±2.5

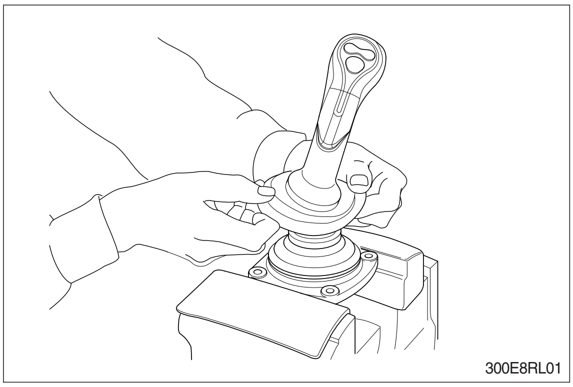
3) DISASSEMBLY

※ Procedures are based on the type L1.

(1) Clean pilot valve with kerosene.
※ Put blind plugs into all ports

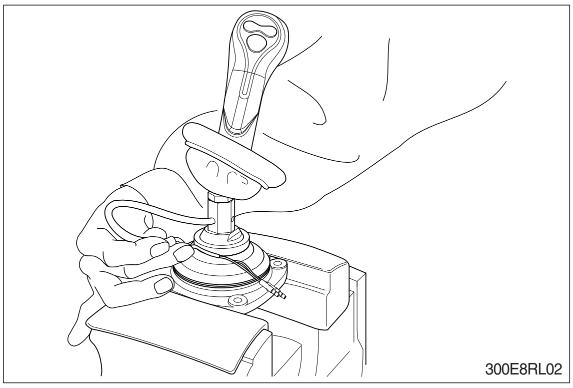
(2) Fix pilot valve in a vise with copper (or lead) sheets.

(3) Remove end of boot (23) from case (1) and take it out upwards.



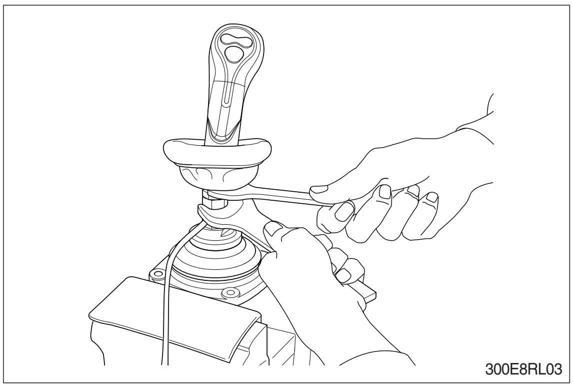
300E8RL01

※ For valve with switch, remove cord also through hole of casing.



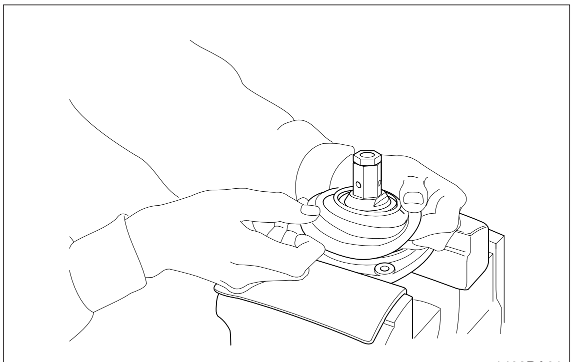
300E8RL02

(4) Loosen lock nut (22) and adjusting nut (17) with spanners on them respectively, and take out handle section as one body.



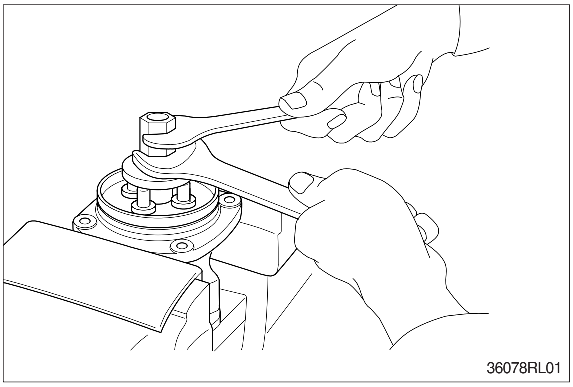
300E8RL03

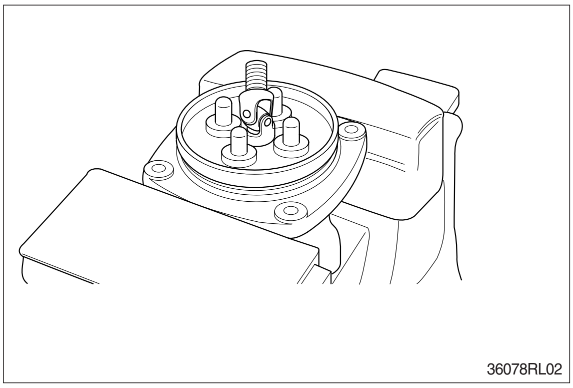
(5) Remove the boot (14).



1408DA61

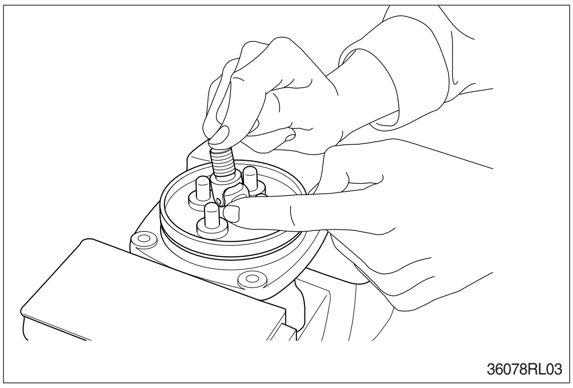
(6) Loosen adjusting nut (17) and swash plate (16) with spanners on them respectively, and remove them.

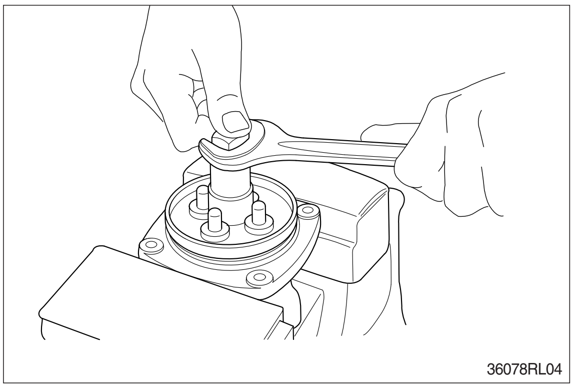




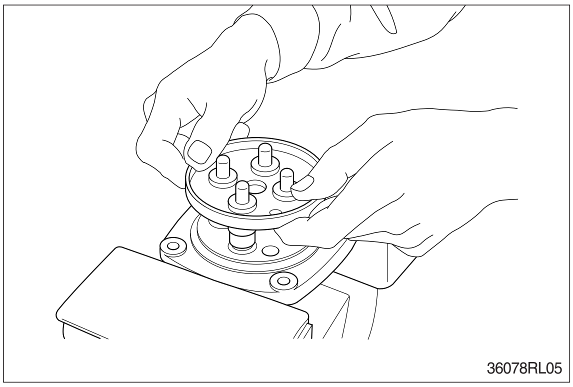
(7) Turn joint anticlockwise to loosen it, utilizing jig (Special tool).

※ When return spring (7) is strong in force, plate (12), plug (8) and push rod (9) will come up on loosening joint.
Pay attention to this.





(8) Remove plate (12).

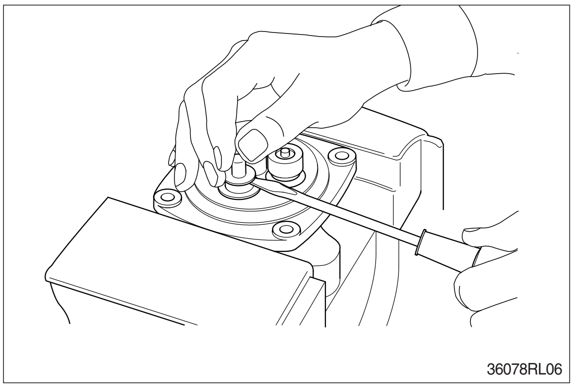


36078RL05

(9) When return spring (7) is weak in force, plug (8) stays in casing because of sliding resistance of O-ring.

※ Take it out with minus screwdriver.
Take it out, utilizing external periphery groove of plug and paying attention not to damage it by partial loading.

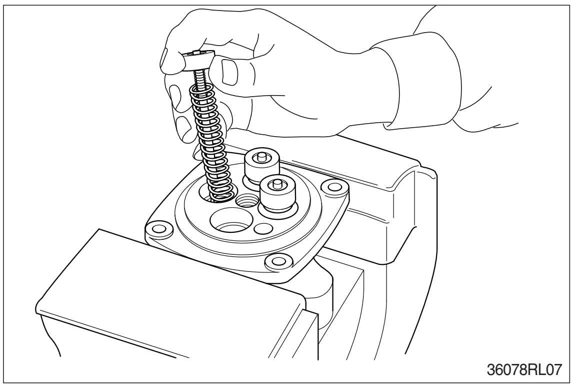
※ During taking out, plug may jump up due to return spring (7) force.
Pay attention to this.



36078RL06

(10) Remove reducing valve subassembly and return spring (7) out of casing.

※ Record relative position of reducing valve subassembly and return springs.



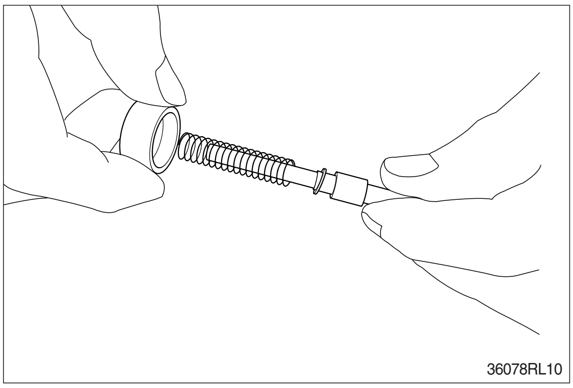
36078RL07

(11) Separate spool (3), spring seat (6), spring (5) and shim (4) individually.

※ Pay attention not to damage spool surface.

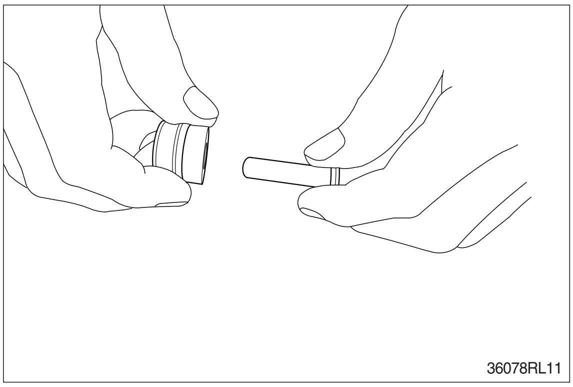
※ Record original position of spring seat (6).

※ Until being assembled, they should be handled as one subassembly group.

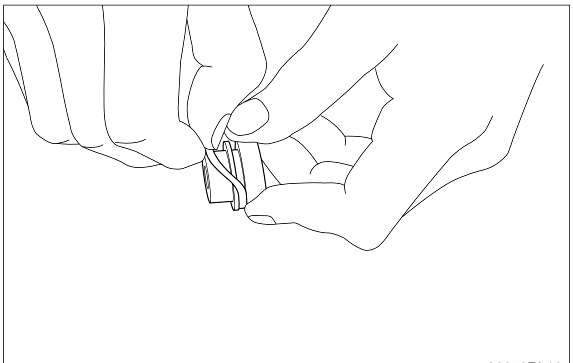


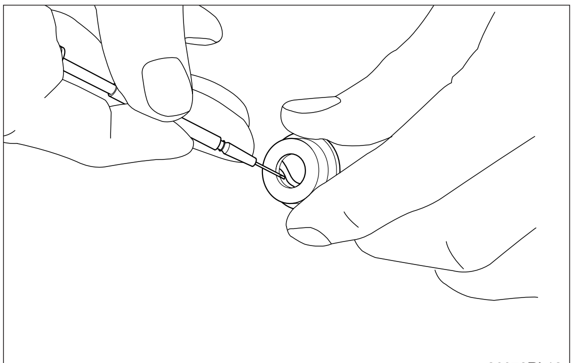
36078RL10

(12) Take push rod (9) out of plug (8).

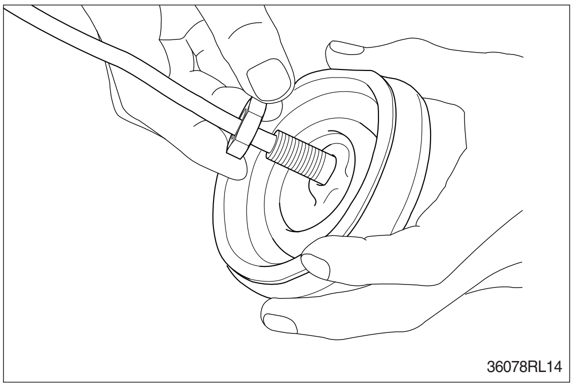

36078RL11

(13) Remove O-ring (10) and seal (11) from plug (8).
Use small minus screwdriver or so on to remove this seal.

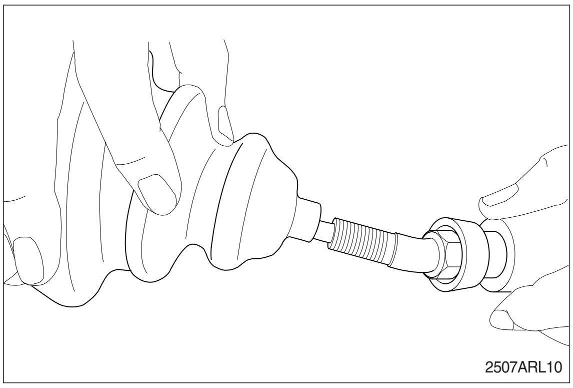

36078RL12


36078RL13

(14) Remove lock nut (22) and then boot (23).



36078RL14



2507ARL10

(15) Cleaning of parts

① Put all parts in rough cleaning vessel filled with kerosene and clean them (rough cleaning).

※ If dirty part is cleaned with kerosene just after putting it in vessel, it may be damaged. Leave it in kerosene for a while to loosen dust and dirty oil.

※ If this kerosene is polluted, parts will be damaged and functions of reassembled valve will be degraded.

Therefore, control cleanliness of kerosene fully.

② Put parts in final cleaning vessel filled with kerosene, turning it slowly to clean them even to their insides (finish cleaning).

※ Do not dry parts with compressed air, since they will be damaged and/or rusted by dust and moisture in air.

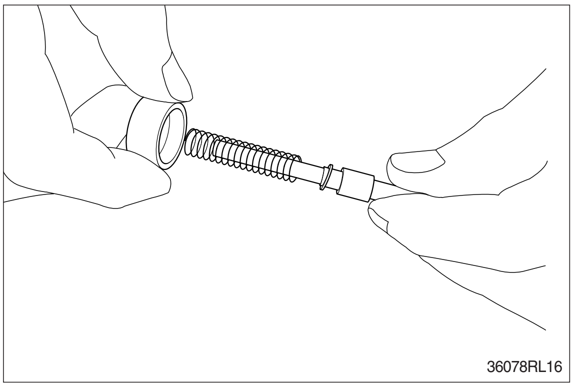
(16) Rust prevention of parts

Apply rust-preventives to all parts.

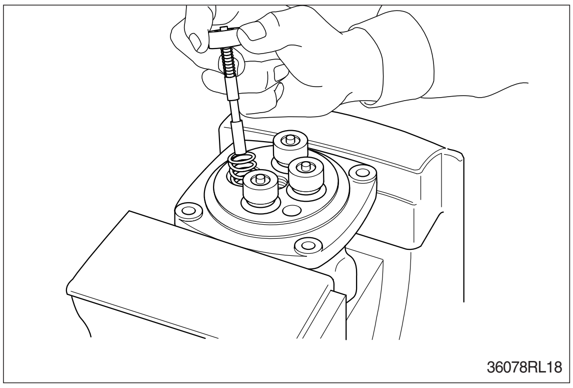
※ If left as they after being cleaned, they will be rusted and will not display their functions fully after being reassembled.

4) ASSEMBLY

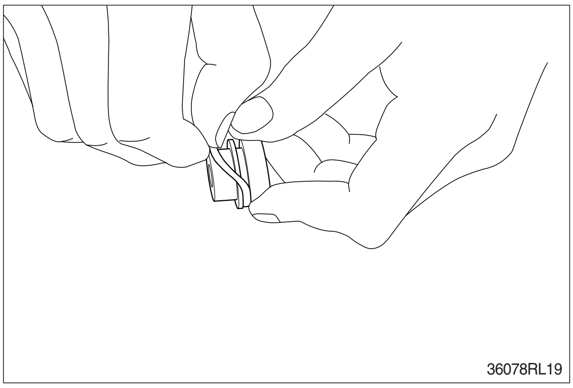
(1) Put shim (4), springs (5) and spring seat (6) onto spool (3) in this order.



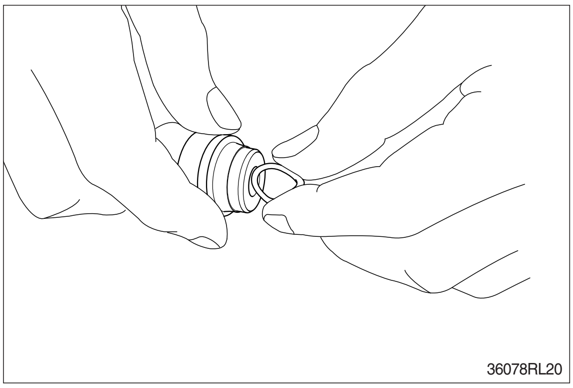
(2) Assemble spring (7) into casing (1).
Assemble reducing valve subassembly into casing.
※ Assemble them to their original positions.



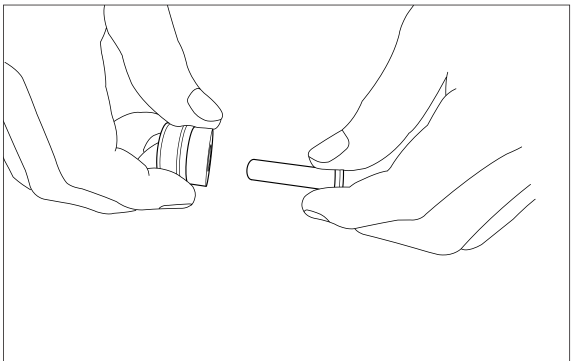
(3) Assemble O-ring (10) onto plug (8).



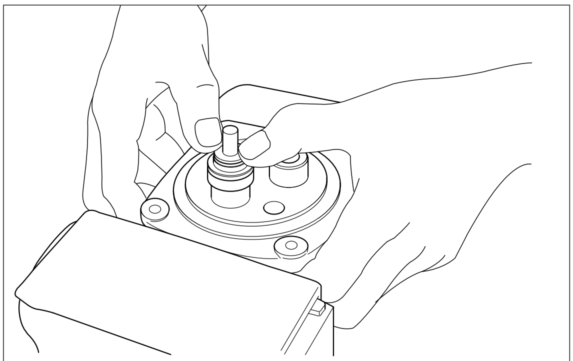
(4) Assemble seal (11) to plug (8).
※ Assemble seal in such lip direction as shown below.



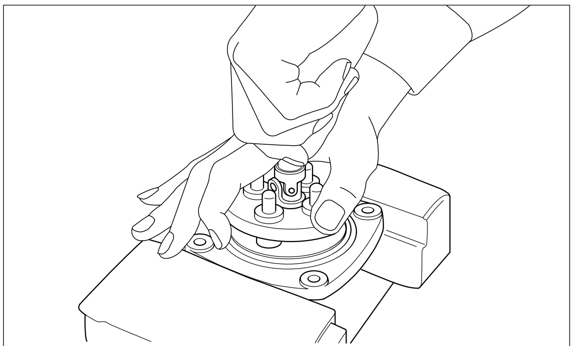
(5) Assemble push rod (9) to plug (8).
※ Apply working oil on push-rod surface.


36078RL21

(6) Assemble plug subassembly to casing.
※ When return spring is weak in force, subassembly stops due to resistance of O-ring.

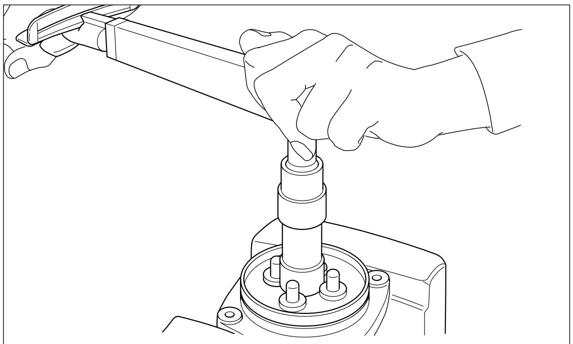

36078RL22

(7) When return spring is strong in force, assemble 4 sets at the same time, utilizing plate (12), and tighten joint (15) temporarily.


36078RL23

(8) Fit plate (12).

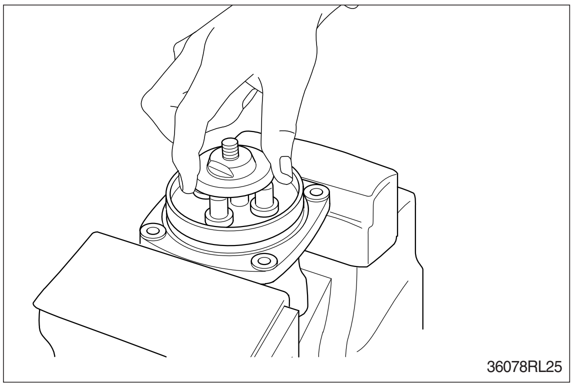
(9) Tighten joint (15) with the specified torque to casing, utilizing jig.


36078RL24

(10) Assemble swash plate (16) to joint (15).

※ Screw it to position that it contacts with 4 push rods evenly.

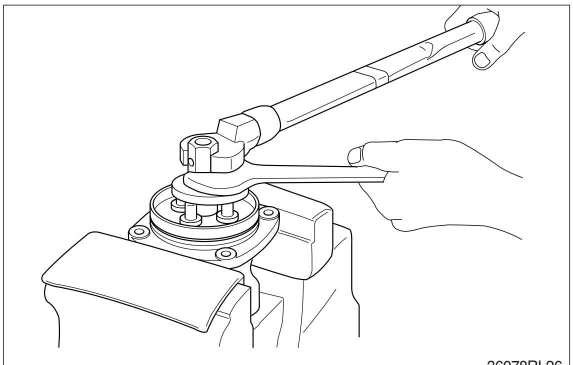
※ Do not screw it over.



36078RL25

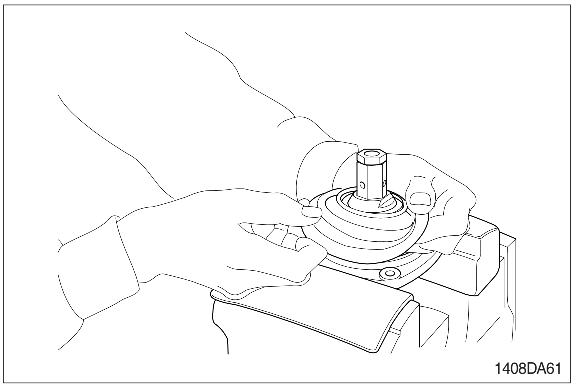
(11) Assemble adjusting nut (17), apply spanner to width across flat of plate (16) to fix it, and tighten adjusting nut to the specified torque.

※ During tightening, do not change position of disk.



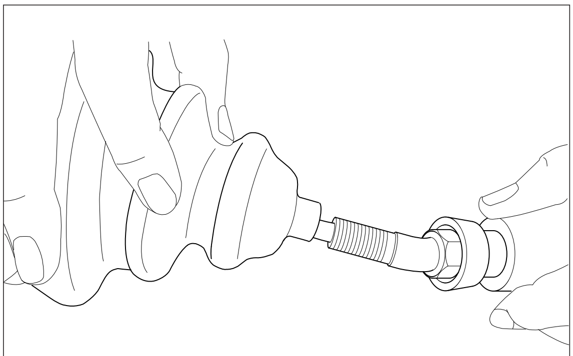
36078RL26

(12) Fit boot (14) to plate.

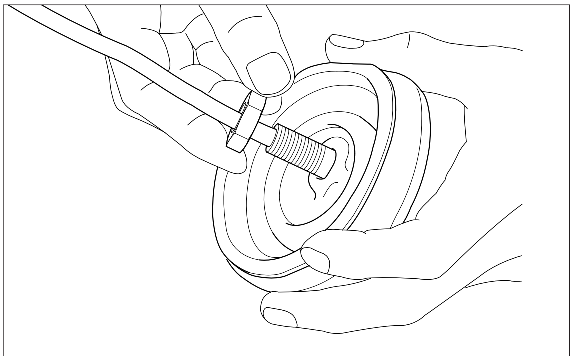


1408DA61

(13) Fit boot (23) and lock nut (22), and handle subassembly is assembled completely.

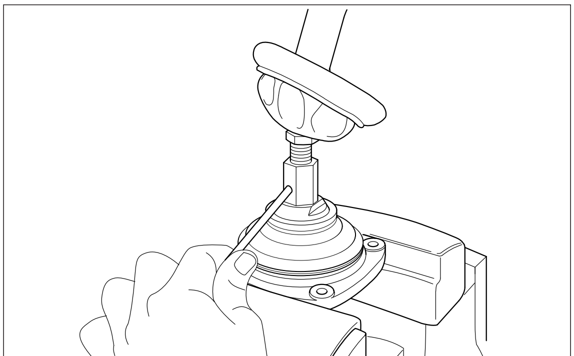


2507ARL10



36078RL27

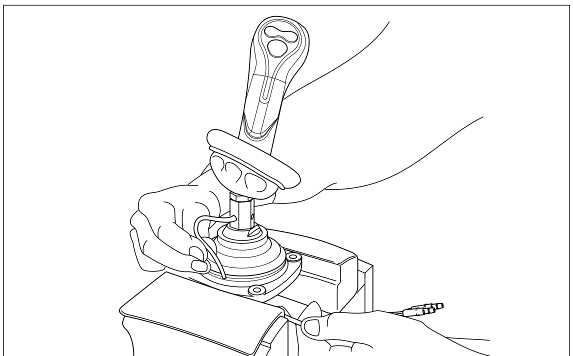
(14) Pull out cord and tube through adjusting nut hole provided in direction 60° to 120° from casing hole.



1408DA66

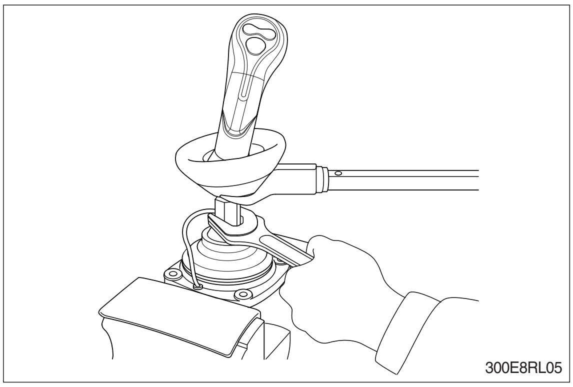
(15) Assemble bushing (18) to plate and pass cord and tube through it.

※ Provide margin necessary to operation.

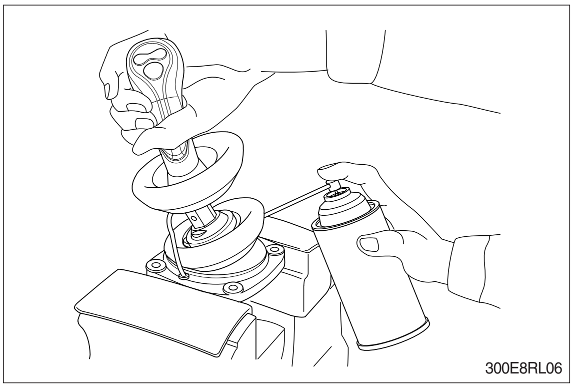


300E8RL04

(16) Determine handle direction, tighten lock nut (22) to specified torque to fix handle.

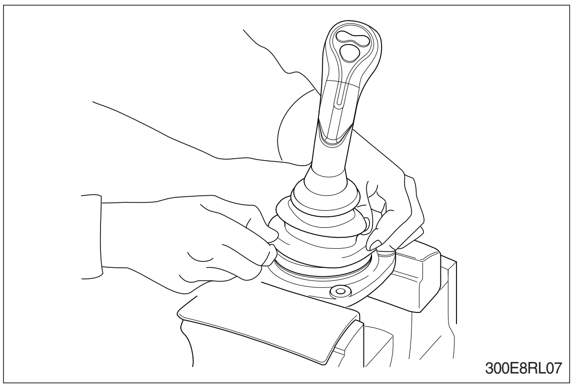


(17) Apply grease to rotating section of joint and contacting faces of disk and push rod.



(18) Assemble lower end of bellows to casing.

(19) Inject volatile rust-preventives through all ports and then put blind plugs in ports.



GROUP 8 TURNING JOINT

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) REMOVAL

(1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

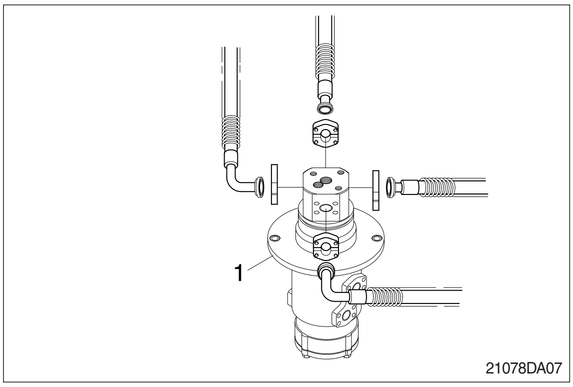
⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.**

※ When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.


13031GE18

(4) Disconnect all hoses.

(5) Sling the turning joint assembly (1) and remove the mounting bolt (2).
Weight : 55 kg (120 lb)
Tightening torque : 12.3±1.3 kgf · m
(89±9.4 lbf · ft)



21078DA07

(6) Remove the turning joint assembly.

※ When removing the turning joint, check that all the hoses have been disconnected.

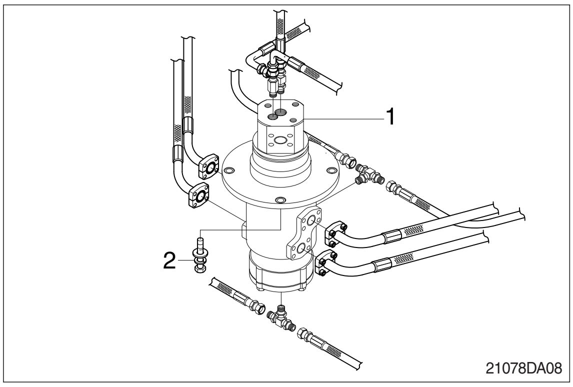
2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

※ Take care of turning joint direction.

※ Assemble hoses to their original positions.

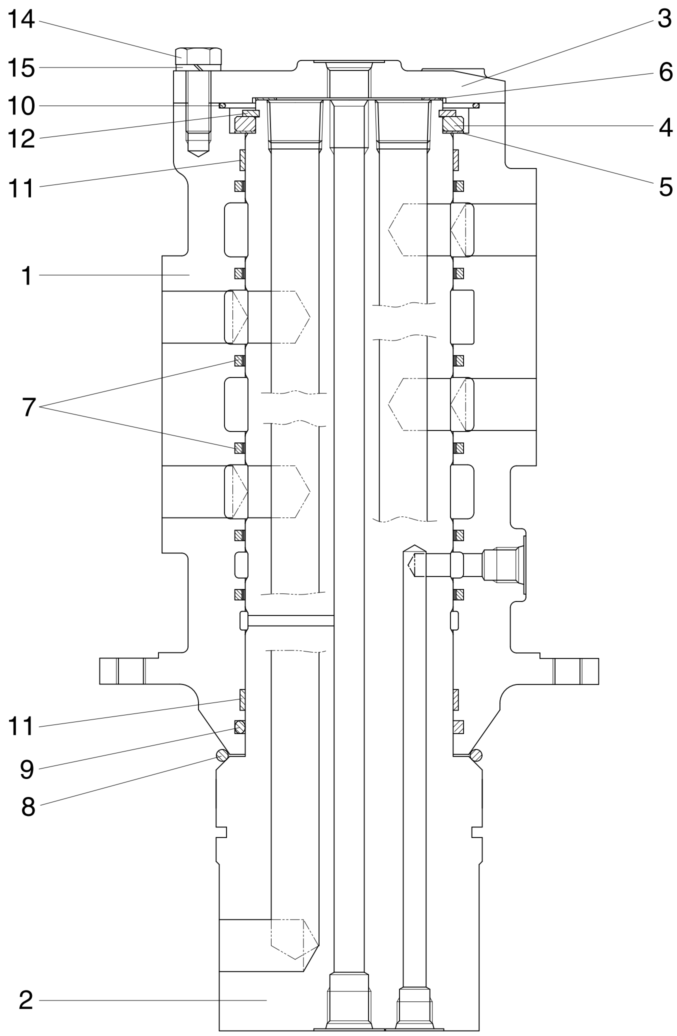
※ Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.



21078DA08

2. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

1) STRUCTURE



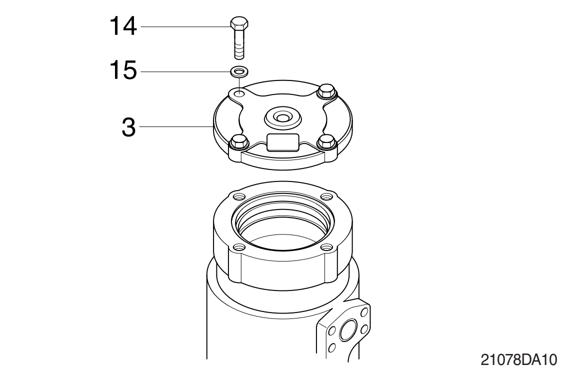
21098TJ01

1	Hub	6	Shim	11	Wear ring
2	Shaft	7	Slipper seal	12	Retainer ring
3	Cover	8	O-ring	13	Plug
4	Spacer	9	O-ring	14	Hexagon bolt
5	Shim	10	O-ring	15	Spring washer

2) DISASSEMBLY

※ Before the disassembly, clean the turning joint.

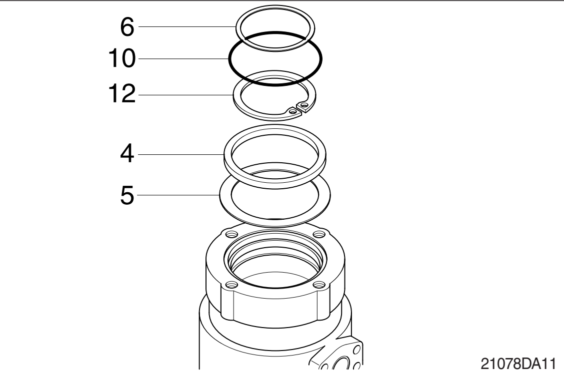
(1) Remove bolts (14), washer (15) and cover (3).



21078DA10

(2) Remove shim (6) and O-ring (10).

(3) Remove retainer ring (12), spacer (4) and shim (5).

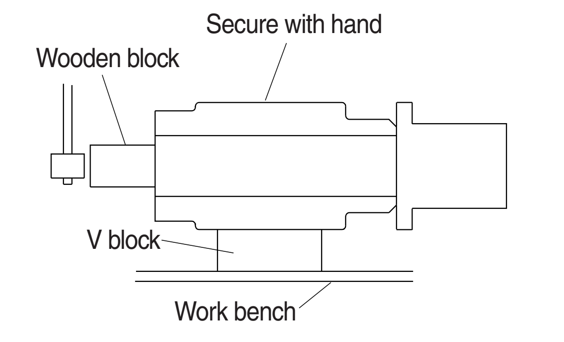


21078DA11

(4) Place hub (1) on a V-block and by using a wood buffer at the shaft end, hit out shaft (2) to about 1/2 from the body with a hammer.

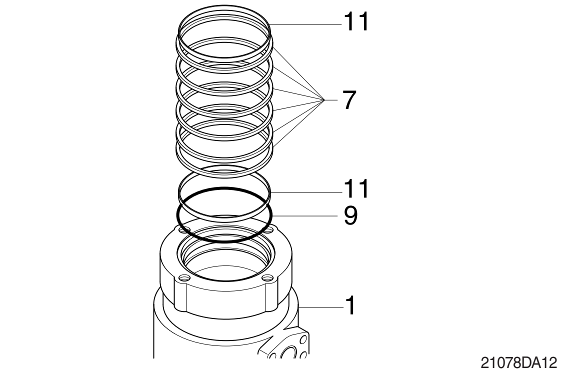
※ Take care not to damage the shaft (2) when remove hub (1) or rest it sideway.

※ Put a fitting mark on hub (1) and shaft (2).



8-14(3) (360-7)

(5) Remove six slipper seals (7) and O-ring (9), two wear ring (11) from hub (1).



21078DA12

3) ASSEMBLY

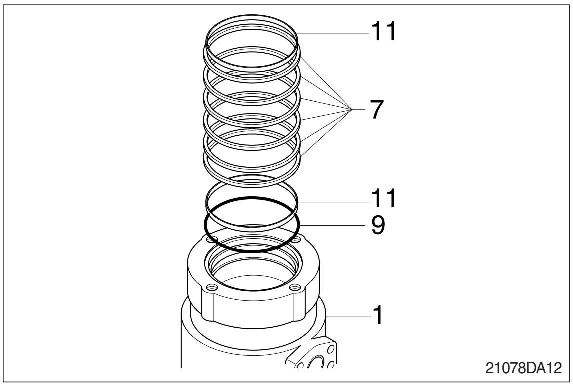
※ Clean all parts.

※ As a general rule, replace oil seals and O-ring.

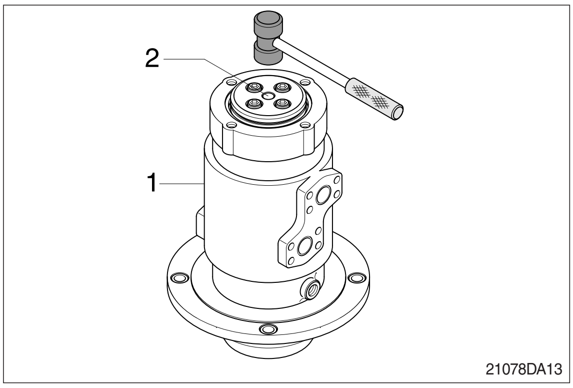
※ Coat the sliding surfaces of all parts with engine oil or grease before installing.

(1) Fix seven slipper seal (7) and O-ring (9), two wear ring (11) to hub (1).

(2) Fit O-ring (8) to shaft (2).



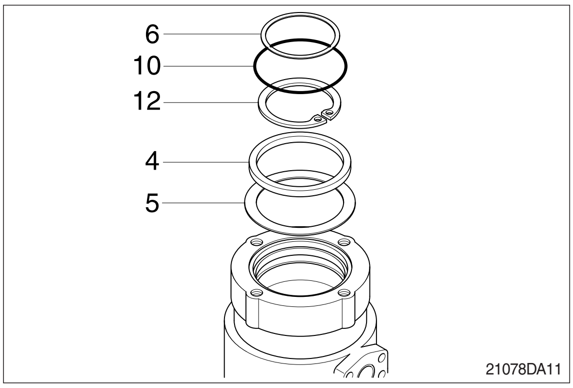
(3) Set shaft (2) on block, tap hub (1) with a plastic hammer to install.



(4) Fit shim (5), spacer (4) and retainer ring (12) to shaft (2).

(5) Fit O-ring (10) to hub (1).

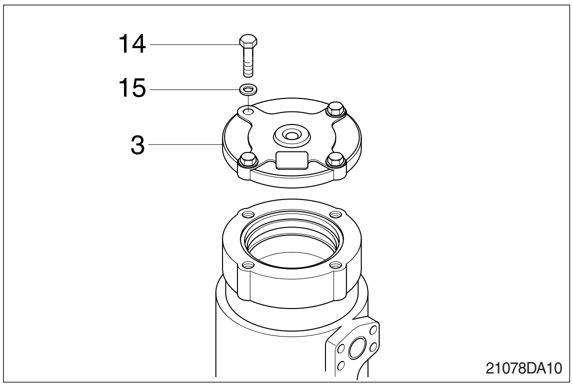
(6) Fit shim (6) to shaft (2).



(7) Install cover (3) to body (1) and tighten bolts (14).

Torque : 10~12.5 kgf · m

(72.3~90.4 lbf · ft)



GROUP 9 BOOM, ARM AND BUCKET CYLINDER

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) BUCKET CYLINDER

(1) Removal

※ Expand the arm and bucket fully, lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

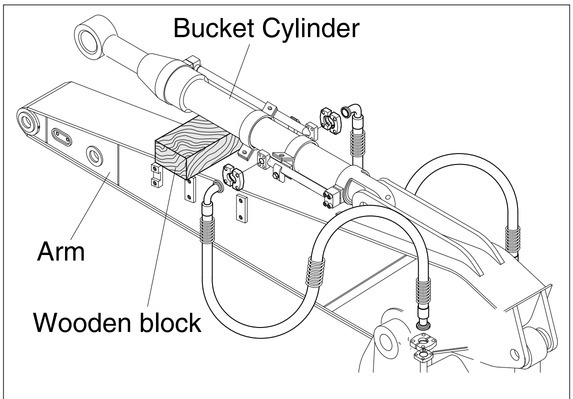
※ Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

13031GE18

⚠ **Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.**

※ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Fit blind plugs in the hoses after disconnecting them, to prevent dirt or dust from entering.

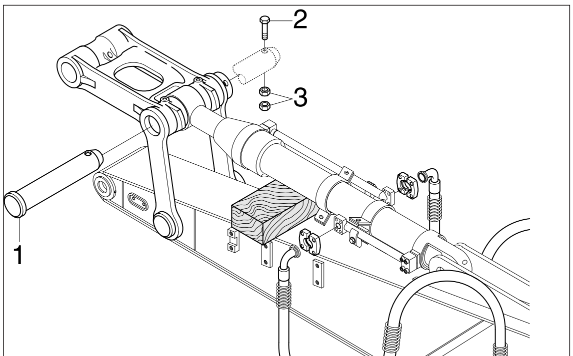
① Set block between bucket cylinder and arm.



21078DA14

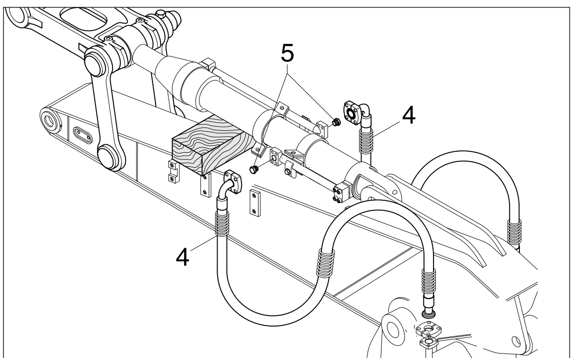
② Remove nuts (3), bolt (2) and pull out pin (1).

※ Tie the rod with wire to prevent it from coming out.



21078DA15

③ Disconnect bucket cylinder hoses (4) and put plugs (5) on cylinder pipe.

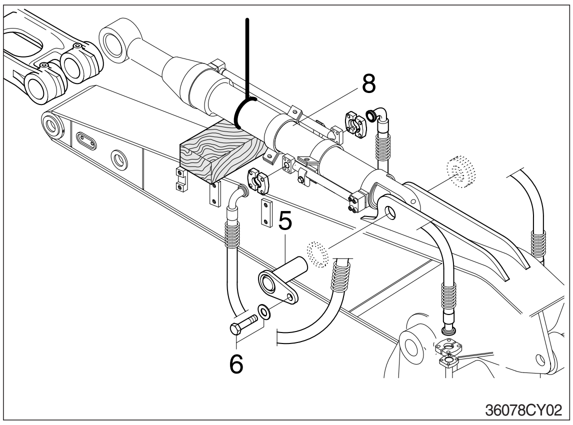


21078DA16

④ Sling bucket cylinder assembly, and remove bolt (6), plate (7) then pull out pin (5).

⑤ Remove bucket cylinder assembly (8).

· Weight : 320 ㎏ (710 ℔)



(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

⚠ **When aligning the mounting position of the pin, do not insert your fingers in the pin hole.**

※ Bleed the air from the bucket cylinder.

※ Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2) ARM CYLINDER

(1) Removal

※ Expand the arm and bucket fully, lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

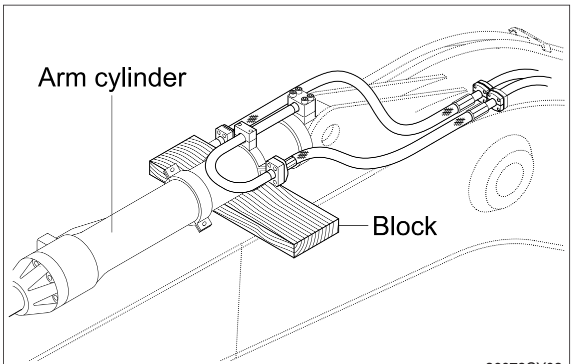
※ Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

13031GE18

⚠ Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

※ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Fit blind plugs in the hoses after disconnecting them, to prevent dirt or dust from entering.

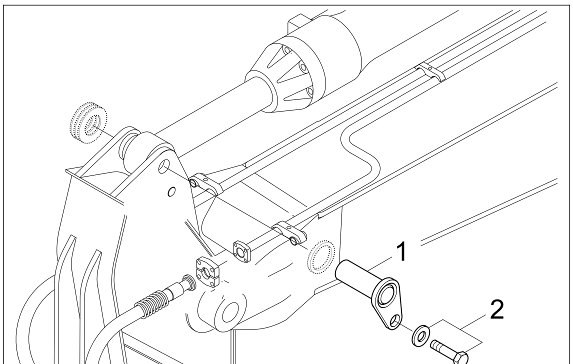
① Set block between arm cylinder and boom.



36078CY03

② Remove bolt (2) and pull out pin (1).

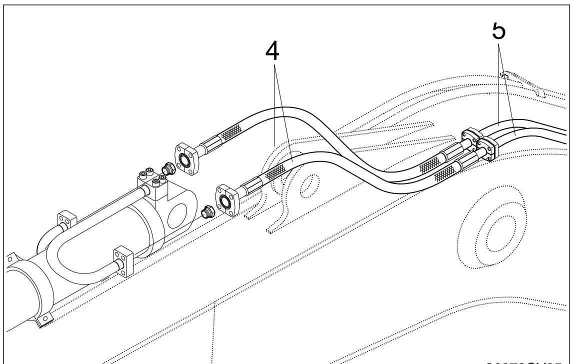
※ Tie the rod with wire to prevent it from coming out.



36078CY04

③ Disconnect arm cylinder hoses (4) and put plugs on cylinder pipe.

④ Disconnect greasing pipings (5).

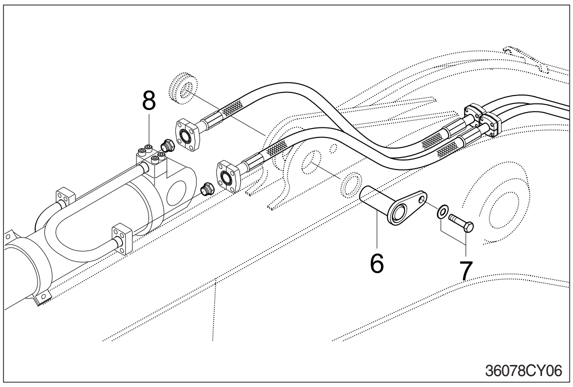


36078CY05

⑤ Sling arm assembly (9), and remove bolt (7), plate (8) then pull out pin (6).

⑥ Remove arm cylinder assembly (9).

· Weight : 490 ㎏ (1080 ㏈)



(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

⚠ **When aligning the mounting position of the pin, do not insert your fingers in the pin hole.**

※ Bleed the air from the arm cylinder.

※ Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

3) BOOM CYLINDER

(1) Removal

※ Expand the arm and bucket fully, lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

※ Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

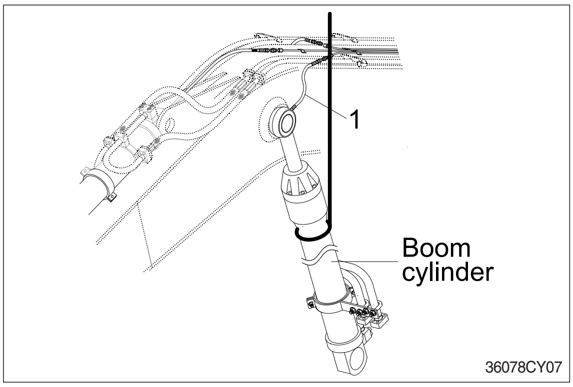
13031GE18

⚠ Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

※ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Fit blind plugs in the hoses after disconnecting them, to prevent dirt or dust from entering.

① Disconnect greasing hoses (1).

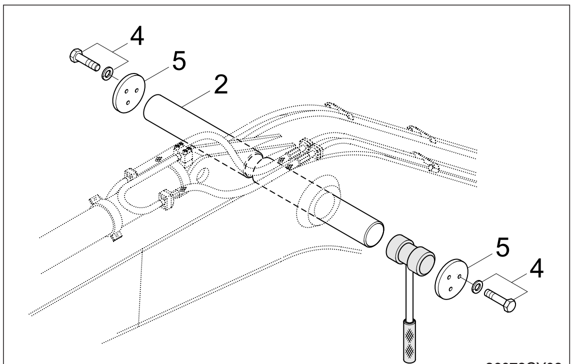
② Sling boom cylinder assembly.



36078CY07

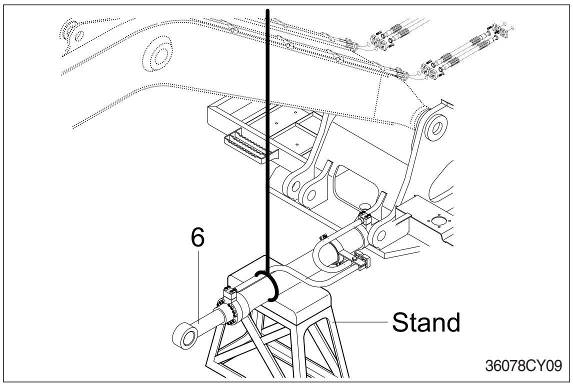
③ Remove bolt (4), stop plate (5) and pull out pin (2).

※ Tie the rod with wire to prevent it from coming out.



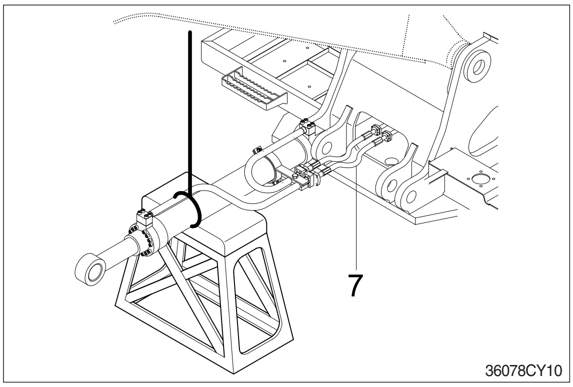
36078CY08

④ Lower the boom cylinder assembly (6) on a stand.



36078CY09

⑤ Disconnect boom cylinder hoses (7), and put plugs on cylinder pipe.

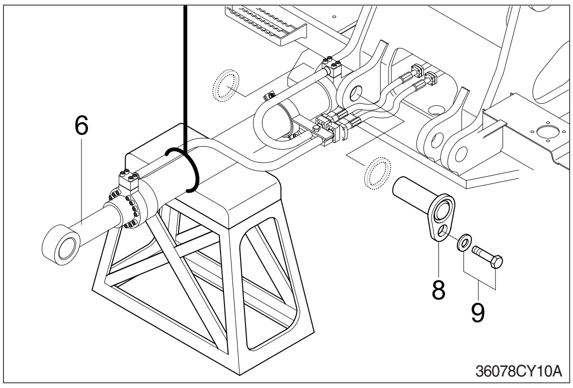


36078CY10

⑥ Remove bolt (9) and pull out pin (8).

⑦ Remove boom cylinder assembly (6).

· Weight : 370 ㎏ (820 ㏐)



36078CY10A

(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

⚠ **When aligning the mounting position of the pin, do not insert your fingers in the pin hole.**

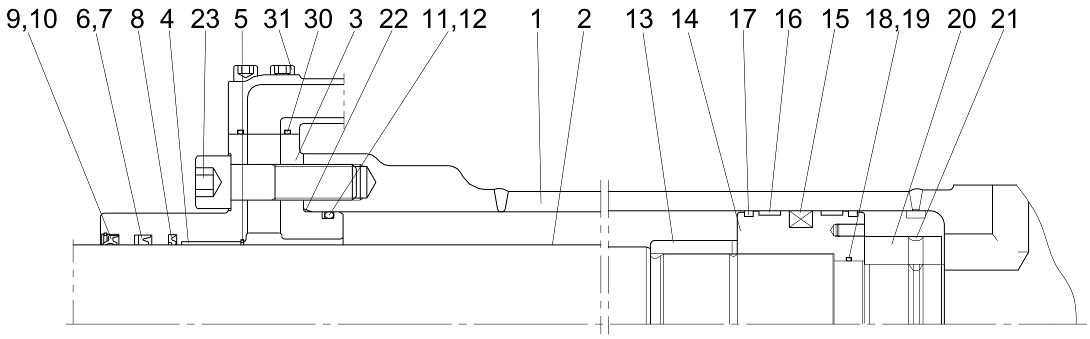
※ Bleed the air from the boom cylinder.

※ Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

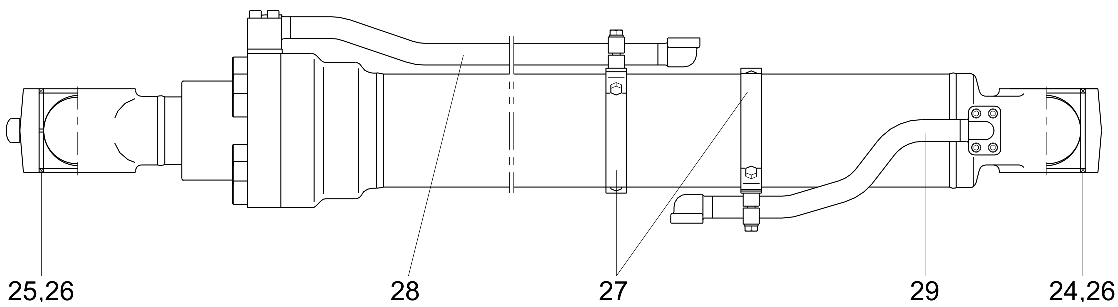
2. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

1) STRUCTURE

(1) Bucket cylinder

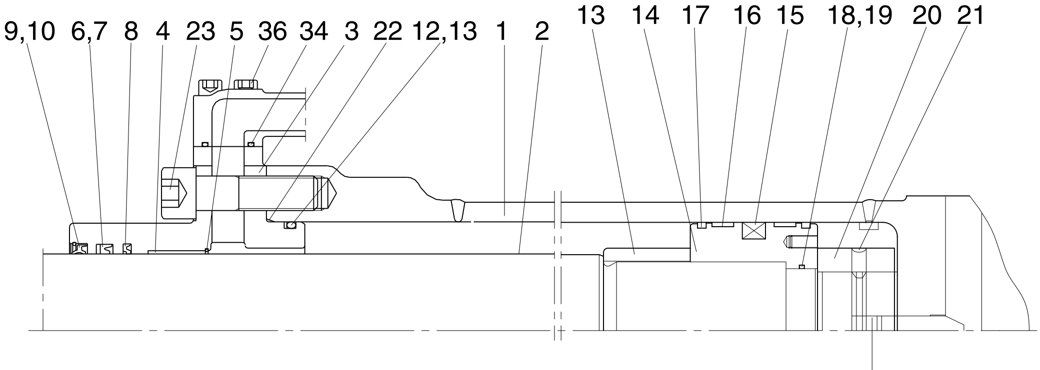


Internal detail

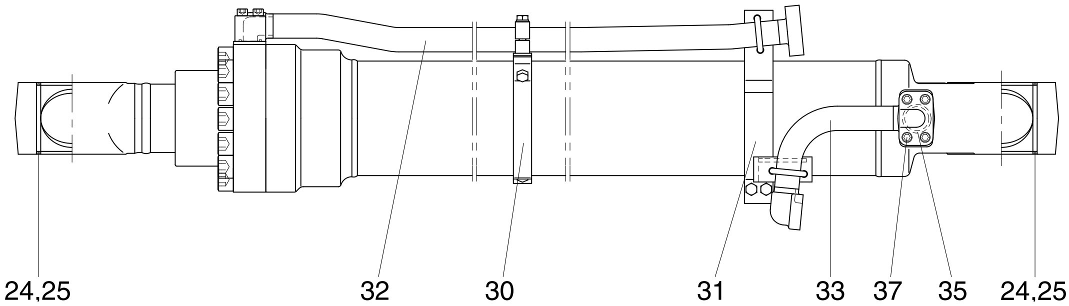


1 Tube assembly
2 Rod assembly
3 Gland
4 DD2 bushing
5 Snap ring
6 Rod seal
7 Back up ring
8 Buffer ring
9 Dust wiper
10 Snap ring
11 O-ring
12 Back up ring
13 Cushion ring
14 Piston
15 Piston seal
16 Wear ring
17 Dust ring
18 O-ring
19 Back up ring
20 Lock nut
21 Set screw
22 O-ring
23 Hexagon socket head bolt
24 Pin bushing
25 Pin bushing
26 Dust seal
27 Band assembly
28 Pipe assembly (R)
29 Pipe assembly (B)
30 O-ring
31 Hexagon socket head bolt

(2) Arm cylinder



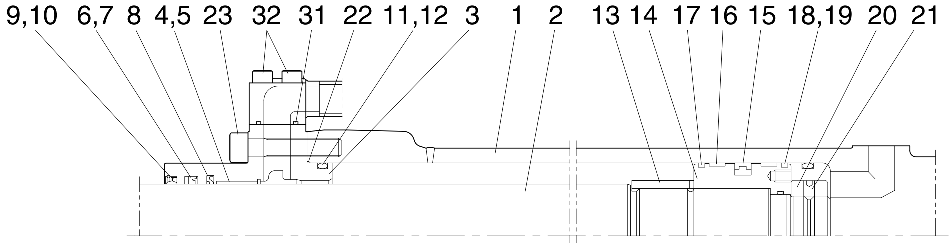
Internal detail



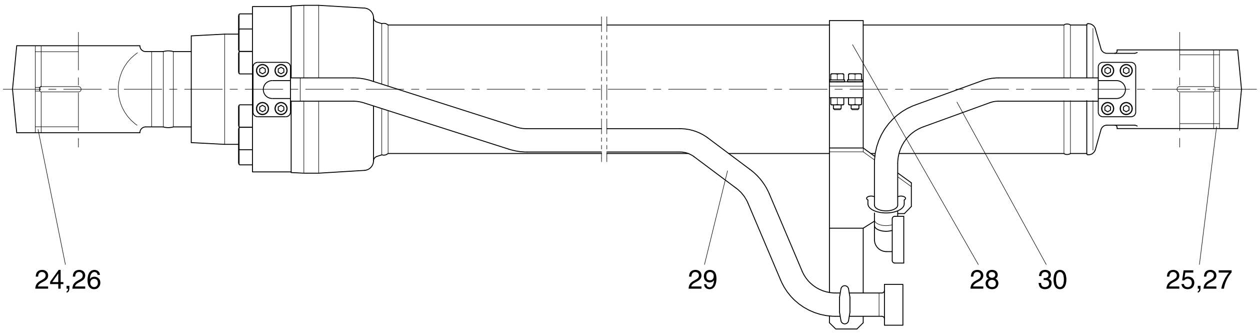
38098CY02

1	Tube assembly	14	Piston	27	Coil spring
2	Rod assembly	15	Piston seal	28	O-ring
3	Gland	16	Wear ring	29	Plug
4	DD2 bushing	17	Dust ring	30	Band assembly (R)
5	Snap ring	18	O-ring	31	Band assembly (B)
6	Rod seal	19	Back up ring	32	Pipe assembly (R)
7	Back up ring	20	Lock nut	33	Pipe assembly (B)
8	Buffer ring	21	Set screw	34	O-ring
9	Dust wiper	22	O-ring	35	O-ring
10	Snap ring	23	Hexagon socket head bolt	36	Hexagon socket head bolt
11	O-ring	24	Pin bushing	37	Hexagon socket head bolt
12	Back up ring	25	Dust seal		
13	Cushion ring	26	Check valve		

(3) Boom cylinder



Internal detail

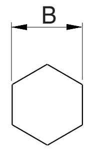


3809A8CY03

1	Tube assembly	12	Back up ring	23	Hexagon socket head bolt
2	Rod assembly	13	Cushion ring	24	Pin bushing (R)
3	Gland	14	Piston	25	Pin bushing (B)
4	DD2 bushing	15	Piston seal	26	Dust seal
5	Snap ring	16	Wear ring	27	Dust seal
6	Rod seal	17	Dust ring	28	Band assembly
7	Back up ring	18	O-ring	29	Pipe assembly (R)
8	Buffer ring	19	Back up ring	30	Pipe assembly (B)
9	Dust wiper	20	Lock nut	31	O-ring
10	Snap ring	21	Set screw	32	Hexagon socket head bolt
11	O-ring	22	O-ring		

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

Allen wrench	10	
	19	
Spanner	19	
(-) Driver	Small and large sizes	
Torque wrench	Capable of tightening with the specified torques	

(2) Tightening torque

Part name		Item	Size	Torque	
				kgf · m	lbf · ft
Socket head bolt	Bucket cylinder	23	M20	46±5	333±36.1
	Boom cylinder	23	M22	63±6	456±43.4
	Arm cylinder	23	M22	63±6	456±43.4
Socket head bolt	Bucket cylinder	31	M12	9.4±1	68.0±7.2
	Boom cylinder	32	M12	9.4±1	68.0±7.2
	Arm cylinder	36	M12	9.4±1	68.0±7.2
		37	M12	9.4±1	68.0±7.2
Lock nut	Bucket cylinder	20	M76	100±10	723±72.3
	Boom cylinder	20	M80	150±15	1085±108
	Arm cylinder	20	M90	150±15	1085±108
Piston	Bucket cylinder	14	-	150±15	1085±109
	Boom cylinder	14	-	200±20	1447±145
	Arm cylinder	14	-	200±20	1447±145

3) DISASSEMBLY

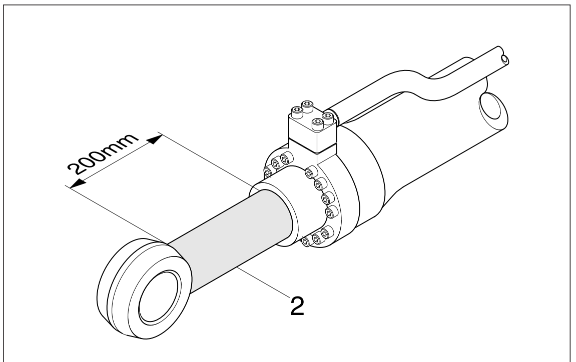
(1) Remove cylinder head and piston rod

※ Procedures are based on the bucket cylinder.

① Hold the clevis section of the tube in a vise.

※ Use mouth pieces so as not to damage the machined surface of the cylinder tube. Do not make use of the outside piping as a locking means.

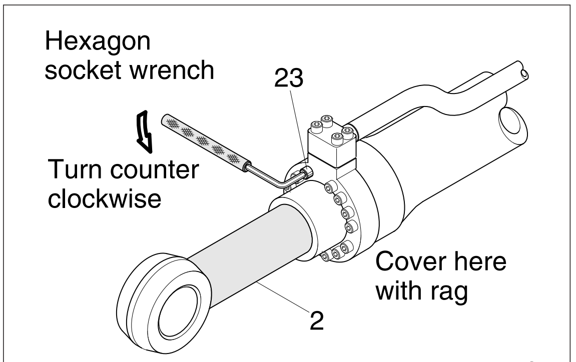
② Pull out rod assembly (2) about 200mm (7.1in). Because the rod assembly is rather heavy, finish extending it with air pressure after the oil draining operation.



21078DA30

③ Loosen and remove socket bolts (23) of the gland in sequence.

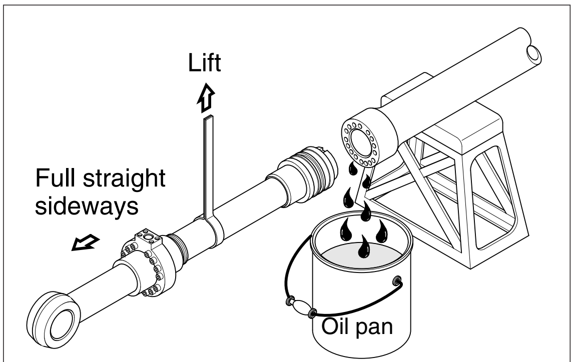
※ Cover the extracted rod assembly (2) with rag to prevent it from being accidentally damaged during operation.



38098CY04

④ Draw out cylinder head and rod assembly together from tube assembly (1).

※ Since the rod assembly is heavy in this case, lift the tip of the rod assembly (2) with a crane or some means and draw it out. However, when rod assembly (2) has been drawn out to approximately two thirds of its length, lift it in its center to draw it completely.

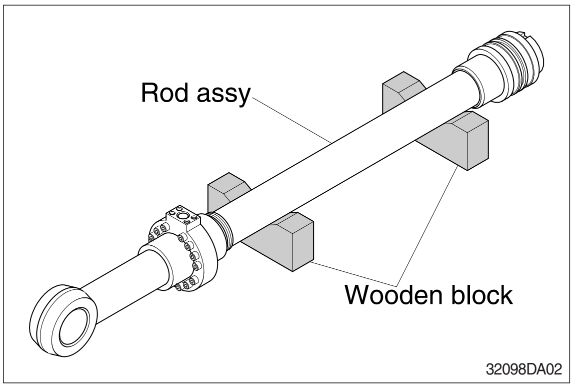


21078DA32

Note that the plated surface of rod assembly (2) is to be lifted. For this reason, do not use a wire sling and others that may damage it, but use a strong cloth belt or a rope.

⑤ Place the removed rod assembly on a wooden V-block that is set level.

※ Cover a V-block with soft rag.

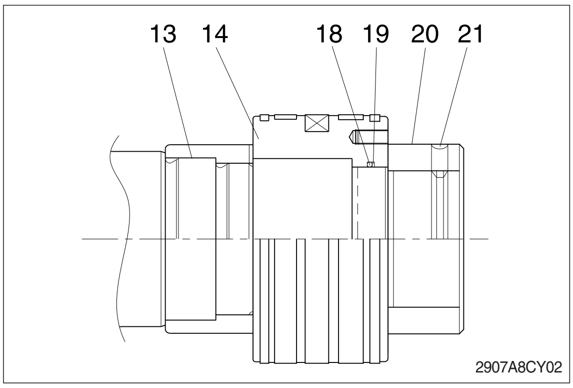


(2) Remove piston and cylinder head

① Loosen socket set screw (21) and remove set screw (21).

※ Since set screw (21) and lock nut (20) is tightened to a high torque, use a hydraulic and power wrench that utilizers a hydraulic cylinder, to remove the lock set screw (21) and lock nut (20).

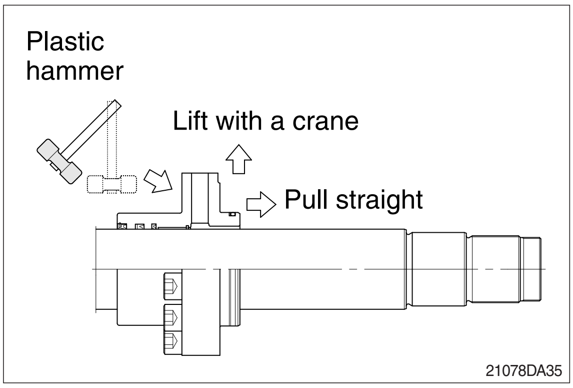
② Remove piston assembly (14), back up ring (19), and O-ring (18).



③ Remove the cylinder head assembly from rod assembly (2).

※ If it is too heavy to move, move it by striking the flanged part of cylinder head with a plastic hammer.

※ Pull it straight with cylinder head assembly lifted with a crane. Exercise care so as not to damage the lip of rod bushing (4) and packing (5,6,7,8,9,10) by the threads of rod assembly (2).

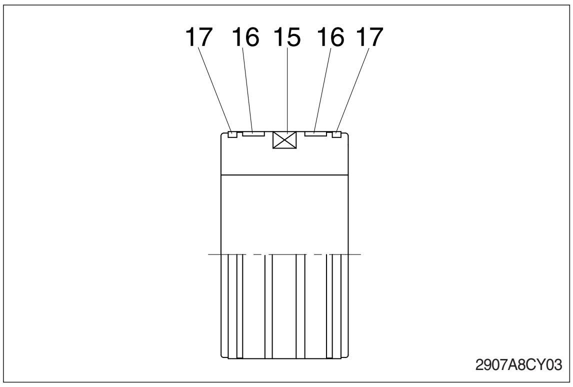


(3) Disassemble the piston assembly

① Remove wear ring (16).

② Remove dust ring (17) and piston seal (15).

※ Exercise care in this operation not to damage the grooves.



(4) Disassemble cylinder head assembly

① Remove back up ring (12) and O-ring (11).

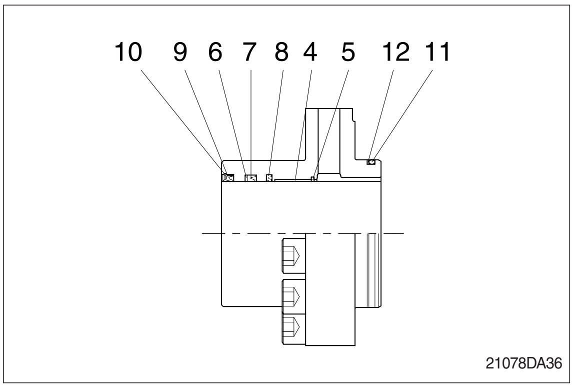
② Remove snap ring (10), dust wiper (9).

③ Remove back up ring (7), rod seal (6), buffer ring (8) and snap ring (5).

※ Exercise care in this operation not to damage the grooves.

※ Do not remove seal and ring, if does not damaged.

※ Do not remove bushing (4).

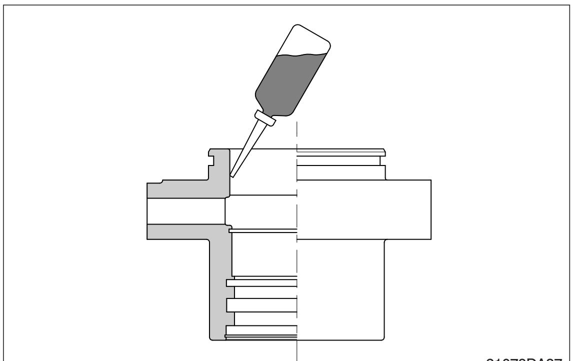


3) ASSEMBLY

(1) Assemble cylinder head assembly

※ Check for scratches or rough surfaces if found smooth with an oil stone.

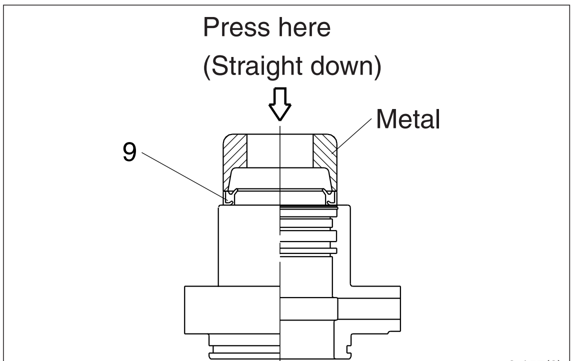
① Coat the inner face of gland (3) with hydraulic oil.



21078DA37

② Coat dust wiper (9) with grease and fit dust wiper (9) to the bottom of the hole of dust seal.
At this time, press a pad metal to the metal ring of dust seal.

③ Fit snap ring (10) to the stop face.

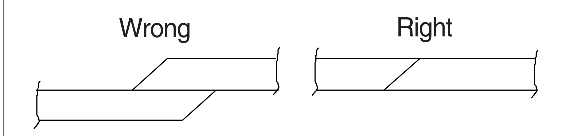


8-157(2)

④ Fit back up ring (7), rod seal (6) and buffer ring (8) to corresponding grooves, in that order.

※ Coat each packing with hydraulic oil before fitting it.

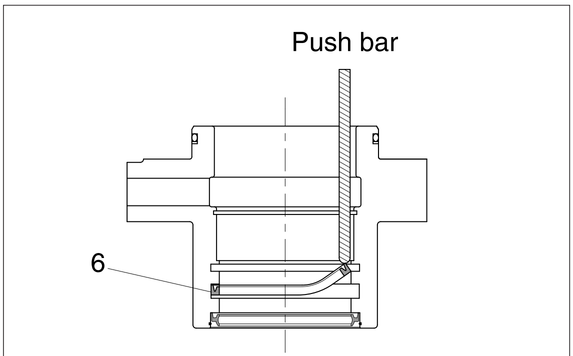
※ Insert the backup ring until one side of it is inserted into groove.



8-157(3)

※ Rod seal (6) has its own fitting direction. Therefore, confirm it before fitting them.

※ Fitting rod seal (6) upside down may damage its lip. Therefore check the correct direction that is shown in fig.

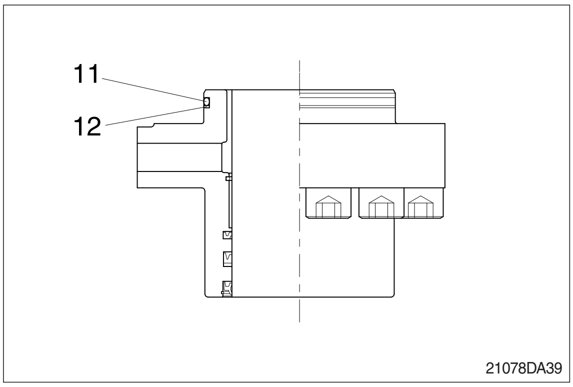


21078DA38

⑤ Fit back up ring (12) to gland (3).

※ Put the backup ring in the warm water of 30~50˚C.

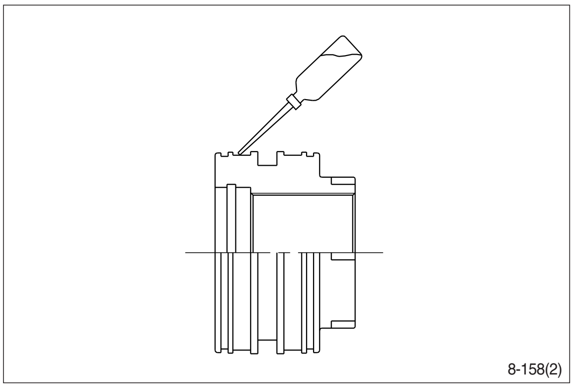
⑥ Fit O-ring (11) to gland (3).



(2) Assemble piston assembly

※ Check for scratches or rough surfaces. If found smooth with an oil stone.

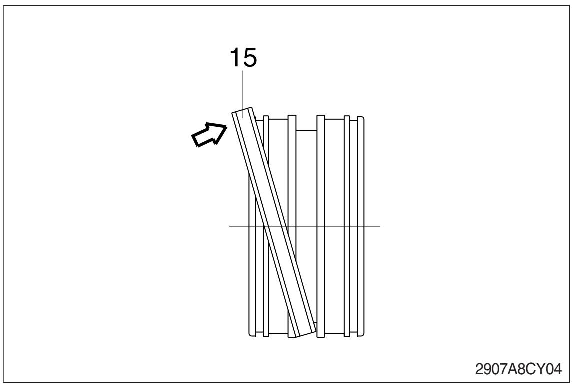
① Coat the outer face of piston (14) with hydraulic oil.



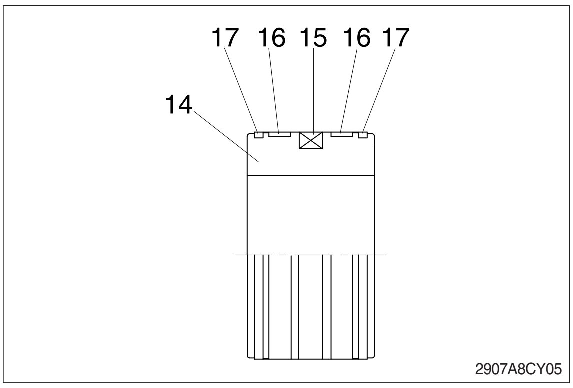
② Fit piston seal (15) to piston.

※ Put the piston seal in the warm water of 60~100˚C for more than 5 minutes.

※ After assembling the piston seal, press its outer diameter to fit in.



③ Fit wear ring (16) and dust ring (17) to piston (14).

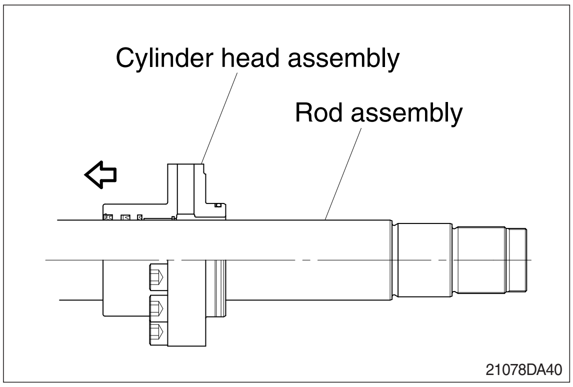


(3) Install piston and cylinder head

① Fix the rod assembly to the work bench.

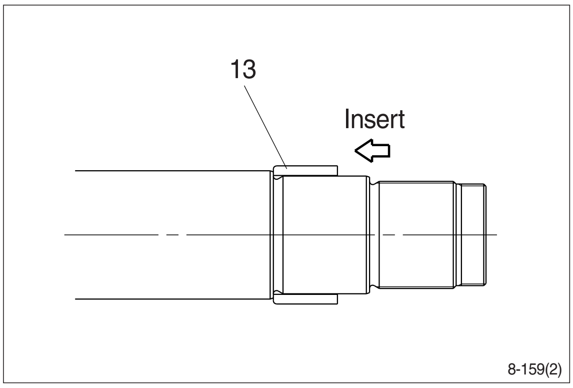
② Apply hydraulic oil to the outer surface of rod assembly (2), the inner surface of piston and cylinder head.

③ Insert cylinder head assembly to rod assembly.



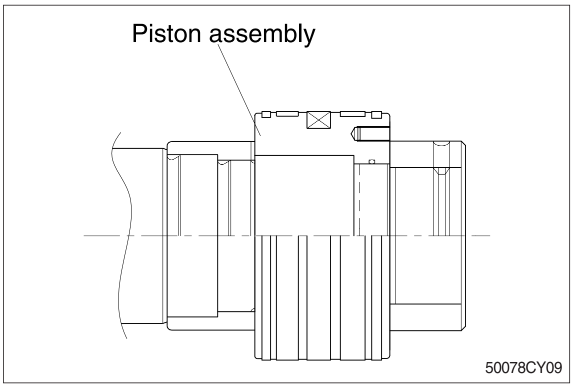
④ Insert cushion ring (13) to rod assembly.

※ Note that cushion ring (13) has a direction in which it should be fitted.



⑤ Fit piston assembly to rod assembly.

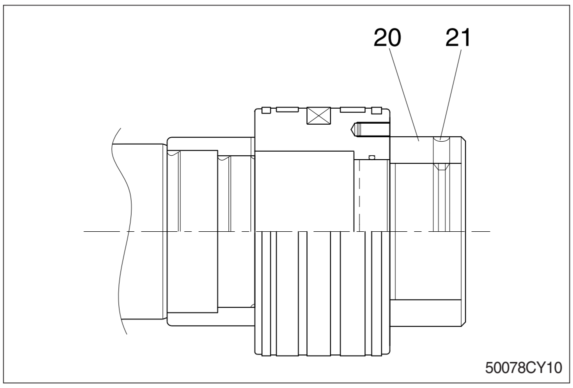
· Tightening torque : 150±15 kgf · m (1085±108 lbf · ft)



⑥ Fit lock nut (20) and tighten the set screw (21).

· Tightening torque :

Item		kgf · m	lbf · ft
Bucket	20	100±10	723±72.3
	21	5.4±0.5	39.1±3.6
Boom Arm	20	150±15	1085±108
	21	5.4±0.5	39.1±3.6



(3) Overall assemble

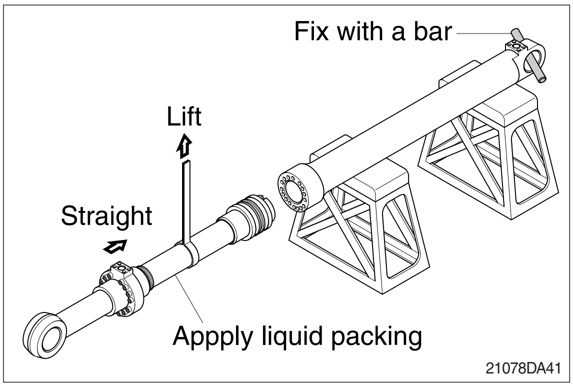
① Place a V-block on a rigid work bench. Mount the tube assembly (1) on it and fix the assembly by passing a bar through the clevis pin hole to lock the assembly.

② Insert the rod assembly in to the tube assembly, while lifting and moving the rod assembly with a crane.

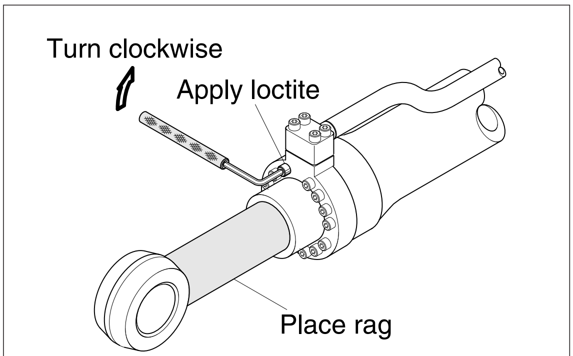
※ Be careful not to damage piston seal by thread of tube assembly.

③ Match the bolt holes in the cylinder head flange to the tapped holes in the tube assembly and tighten socket bolts to a specified torque.

※ Refer to the table of tightening torque.



21078DA41



21078DA42

GROUP 10 UNDERCARRIAGE

1. TRACK LINK

1) REMOVAL

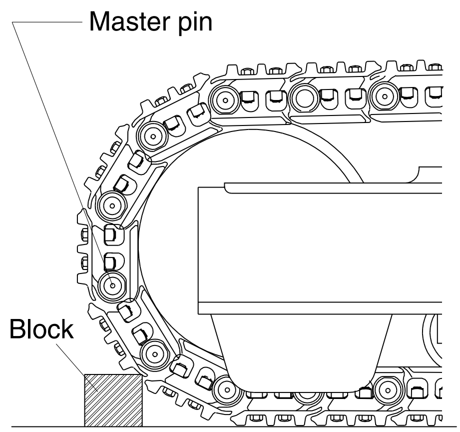
(1) Move track link until master pin is over front idler in the position put wooden block as shown.

(2) Loosen tension of the track link.

※ If track tension is not relieved when the grease valve is loosened, move the machine backwards and forwards.

※ Unscrew the grease nipple after release the tension by pushing the poppet only when necessarily required.
Grease leaking hole is not existing. So, while unscrew the grease nipple, grease is not leaking until the grease nipple is completely coming out. If the tension is not released in advance, the grease nipple can be suddenly popped out by pressurized grease.

(3) Push out master pin by using a suitable tool.

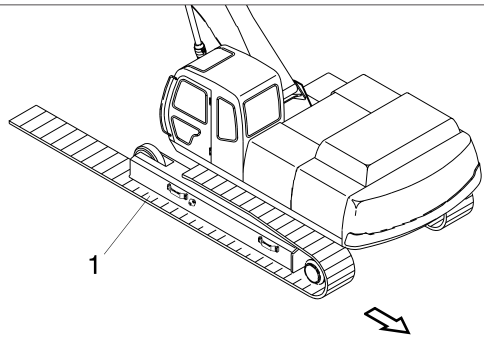


36078UC09

(4) Move the machine slowly in reverse, and lay out track link assembly (1).

※ Jack up the machine and put wooden block under the machine.

※ Don't get close to the sprocket side as the track shoe plate may fall down on your feet.

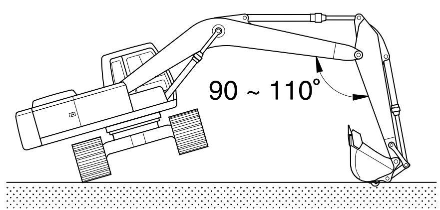


36078UC10

2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

※ Adjust the tension of the track link.

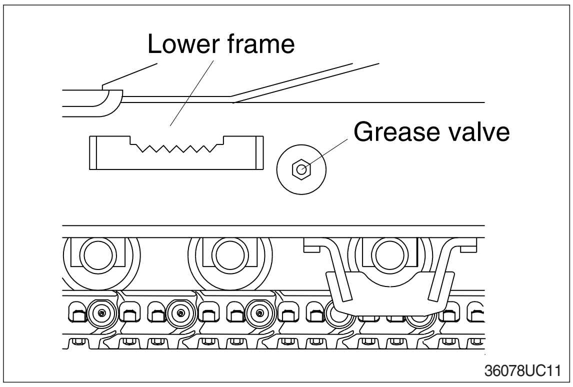


21074OP14

2. CARRIER ROLLER

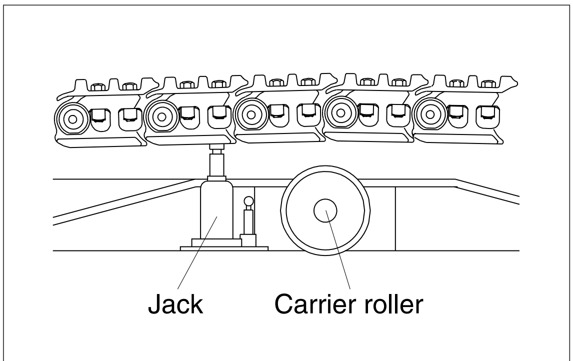
1) REMOVAL

(1) Loosen tension of the track link.



36078UC11

(2) Jack up the track link height enough to permit carrier roller removal.

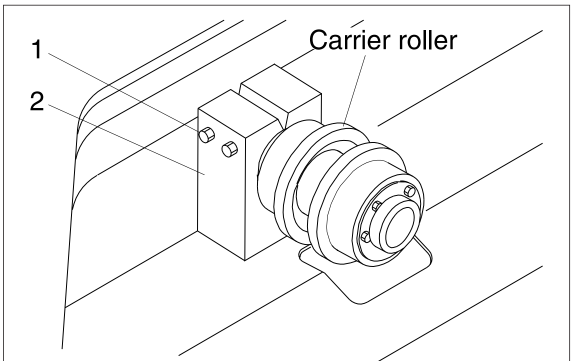


36078UC12

(3) Loosen the lock nut (1).

(4) Open bracket (2) with a screwdriver, push out from inside, and remove carrier roller assembly.

· Weight : 40 kg (88 lb)



36078UC13

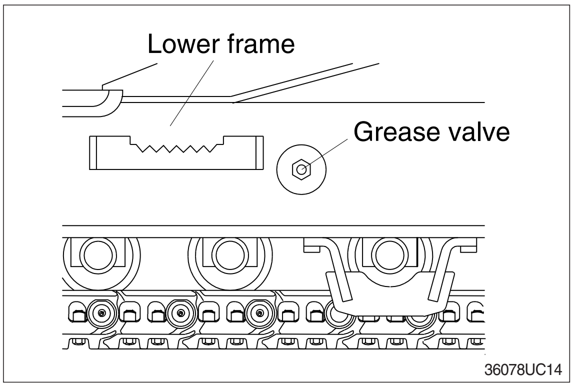
2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

3. TRACK ROLLER

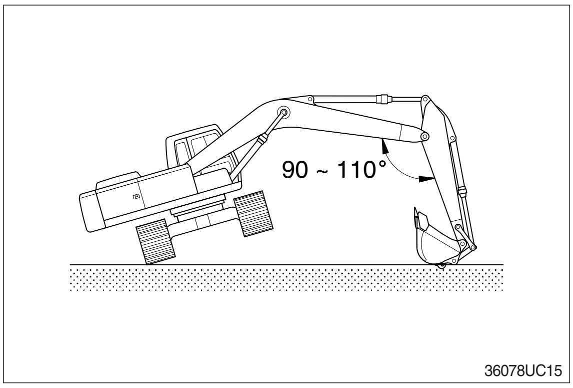
1) REMOVAL

(1) Loosen tension of the track link.



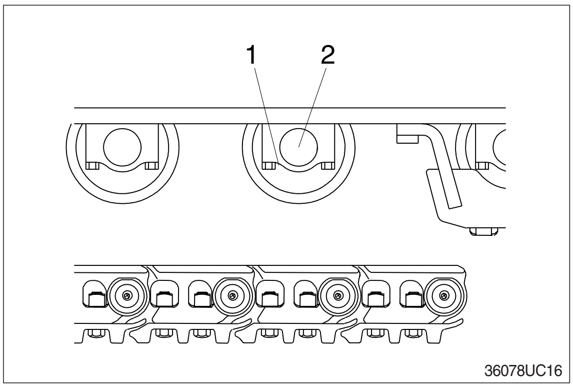
(2) Using the work equipment, push up track frame on side which is to be removed.

※ After jack up the machine, set a block under the unit.



(3) Remove the mounting bolts (1) and draw out the track roller (2).

· Weight : 80 ㎏ (176.4 ℓb)



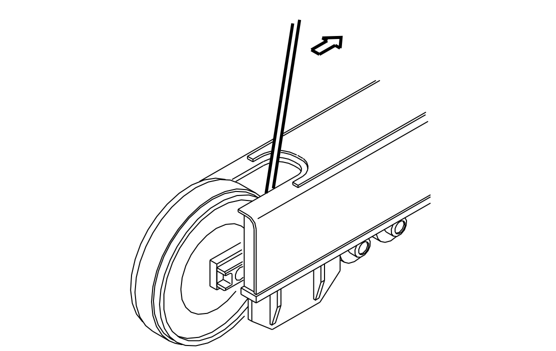
2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

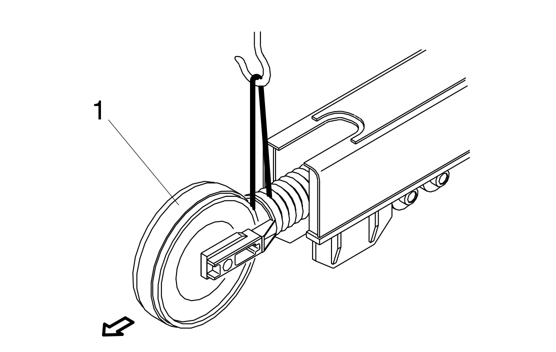
4. IDLER AND RECOIL SPRING

1) REMOVAL

(1) Remove the track link.
For detail, see removal of track link.

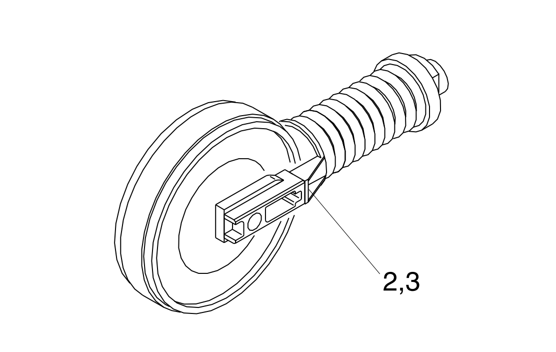

36078UC17

(2) Sling the recoil spring (1) and pull out idler and recoil spring assembly from track frame, using a pry.
· Weight : 420 kg (930 lb)



36078UC18

(3) Remove the bolts (2), washers (3) and separate ilder from recoil spring.

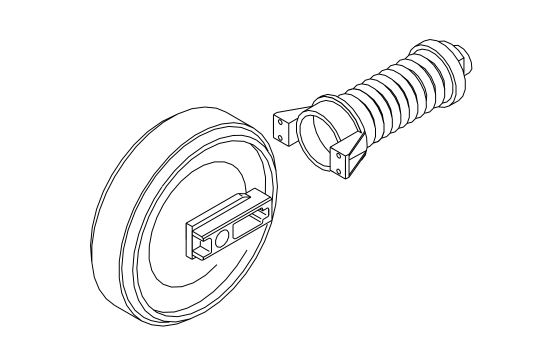


36078UC19

2) INSTALL

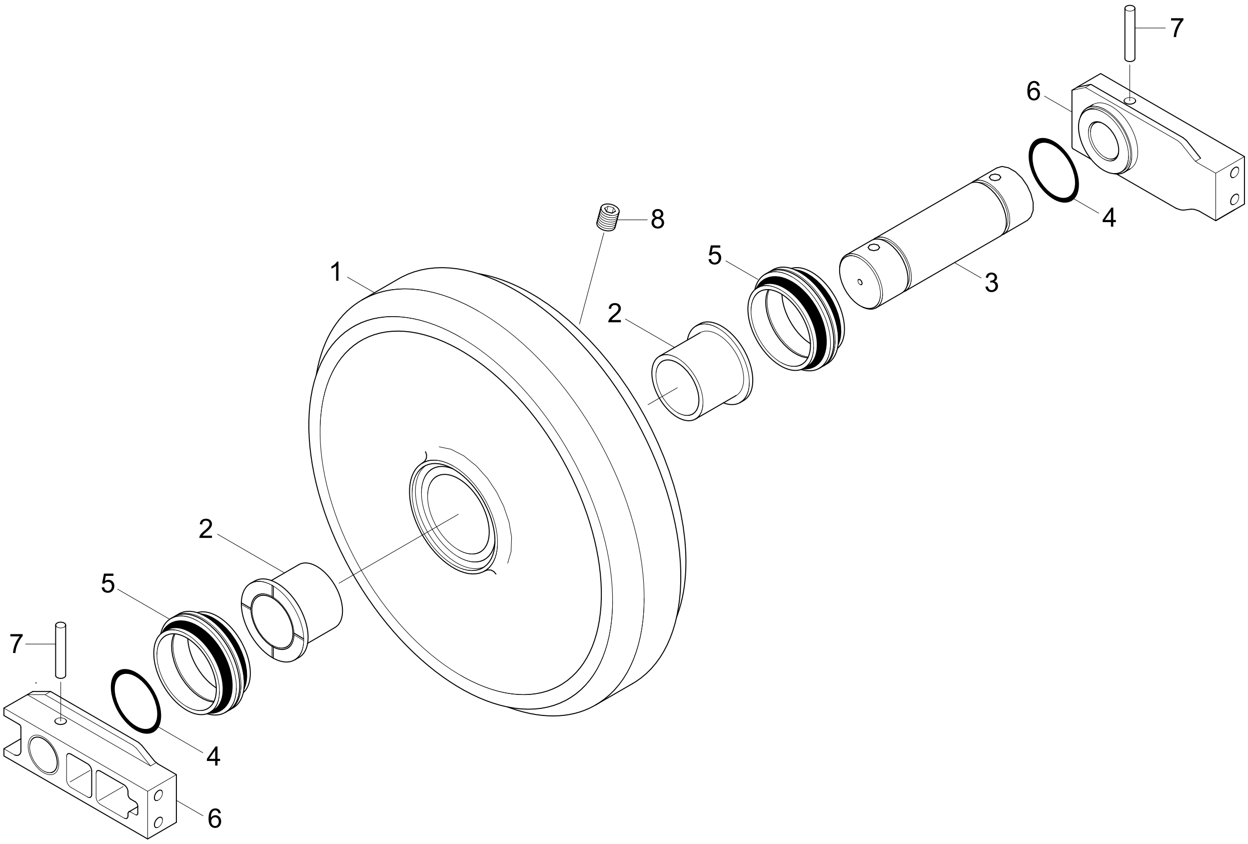
(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

※ Make sure that the boss on the end face of the recoil cylinder rod is in the hole of the track frame.


36078UC20

3) DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY OF IDLER

(1) Structure



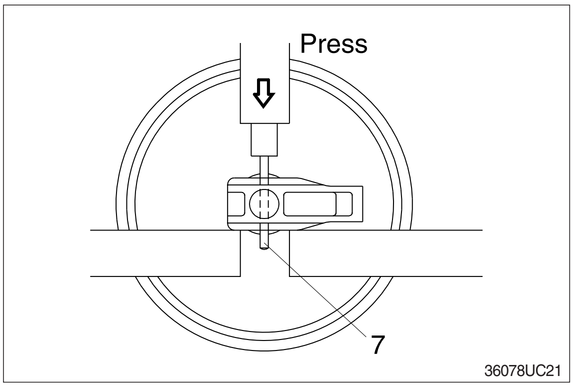
36078UC01

1	Shell	4	O-ring	7	Spring pin
2	Bushing	5	Seal assembly	8	Plug
3	Shaft	6	Bracket		

(2) Disassembly

① Remove plug and drain oil.

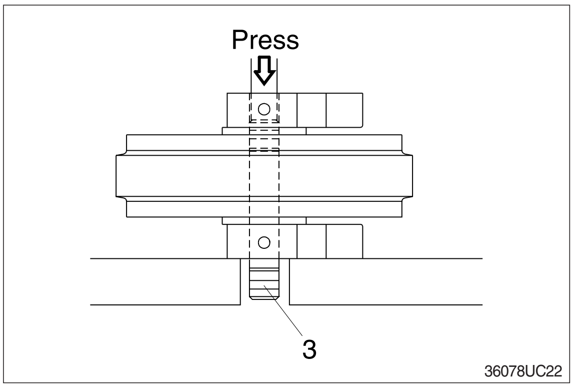
② Draw out the spring pin (7), using a press.



③ Pull out the shaft (3) with a press.

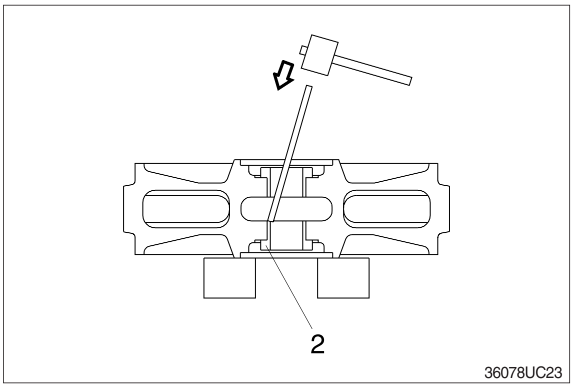
④ Remove seal (5) from shell (1) and bracket (6).

⑤ Remove O-ring (4) from shaft.



⑥ Remove the bushing (2) from shell, using a special tool.

※ Only remove bushing if replacement is necessity.

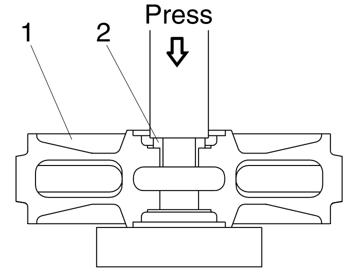


(3) Assembly

※ Before assembly, clean the parts.

※ Coat the sliding surfaces of all parts with oil.

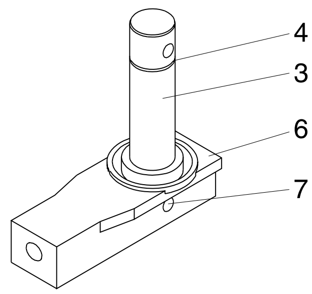
① Cool up bushing (2) fully by some dry ice and press it into shell (1).
Do not press it at the normal temperature, or not knock in with a hammer even after the cooling.



36078UC24

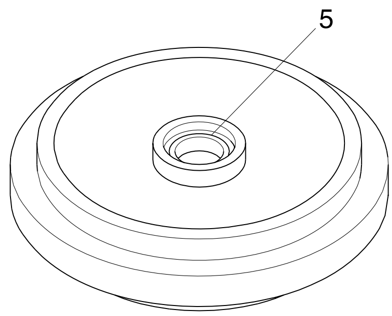
② Coat O-ring (4) with grease thinly, and install it to shaft (3).

③ Insert shaft (3) into bracket (6) and drive in the spring pin (7).



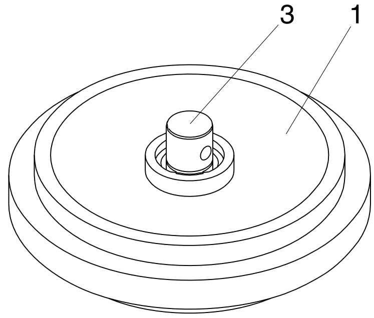
36078UC25

④ Install seal (5) to shell (1) and bracket (6).



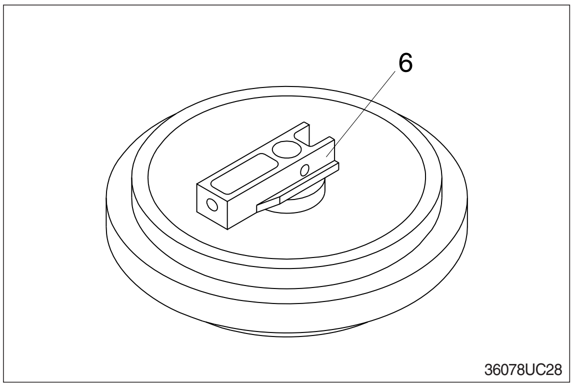
36078UC26

⑤ Install shaft (3) to shell (1).



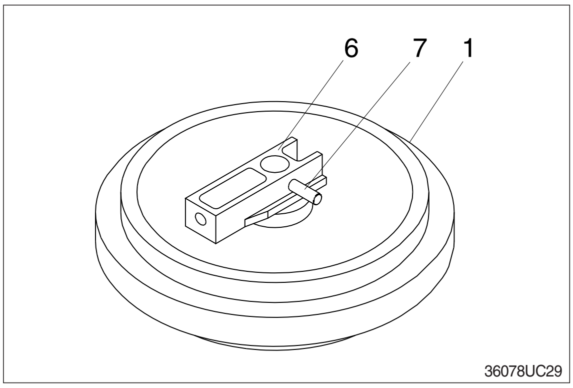
36078UC27

⑥ Install bracket (6) attached with seal (5).



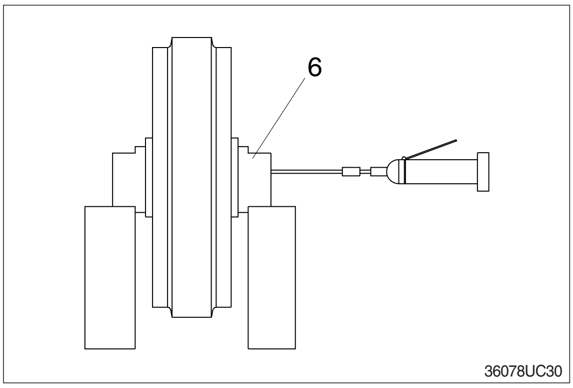
36078UC28

⑦ Knock in the spring pin (7) with a hammer.



36078UC29

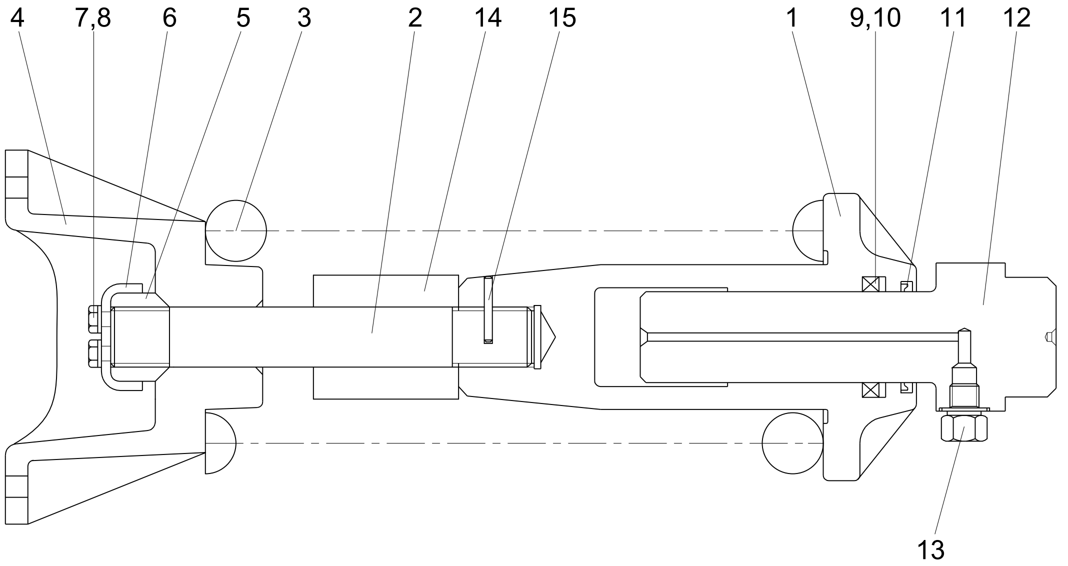
⑧ Lay bracket (6) on its side.
Supply engine oil to the specified level, and tighten plug.



36078UC30

4) DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY OF RECOIL SPRING

(1) Structure



36078UC02

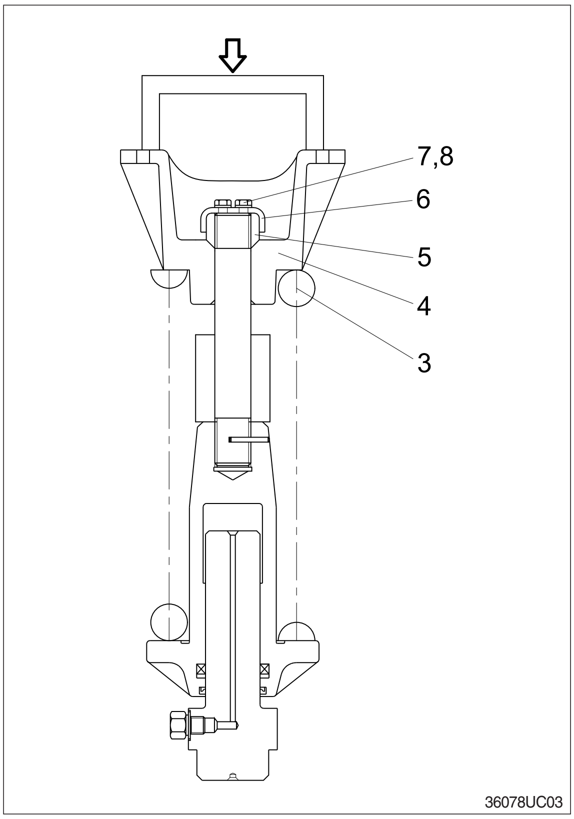
1	Body	6	Lock plate	11	Dust seal
2	Tie bar	7	Hexagon bolt	12	Rod
3	Spring	8	Spring washer	13	Grease valve
4	Bracket	9	Rod packing	14	Tube stopper
5	Lock nut	10	Back up ring	15	Spring pin

(2) Disassembly

① Apply pressure on spring (3) with a press.

※ The spring is under a large installed load. This is dangerous, so be sure to set properly.

· Spring set load : 21100 ± 1688 kg (46517 ± 3721 lb)



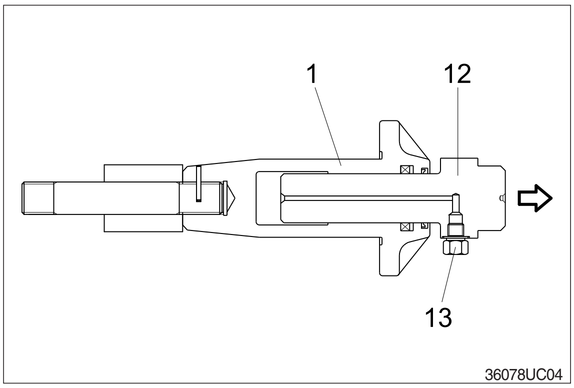
② Remove bolt (7), spring washer (8) and lock plate (6).

③ Remove lock nut (5).
Take enough notice so that the press which pushes down the spring, should not be slipped out in its operation.

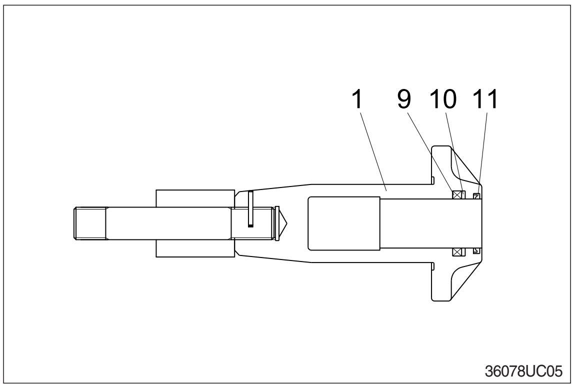
④ Lighten the press load slowly and remove bracket (4) and spring (3).

⑤ Remove rod (12) from body (1).

⑥ Remove grease valve (13) from rod (12).



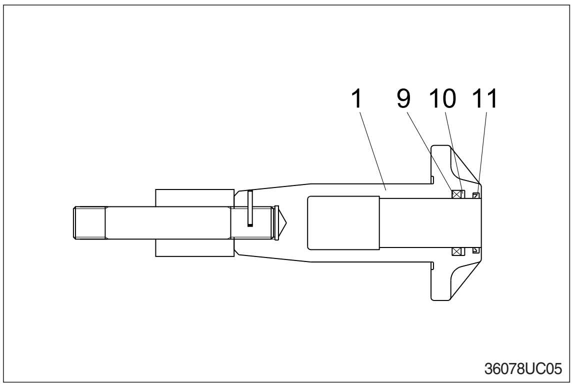
⑦ Remove rod packing (9), back up ring (10) and dust seal (11).



(3) Assembly

① Install dust seal (11), back up ring (10) and rod packing (9) to body (1).

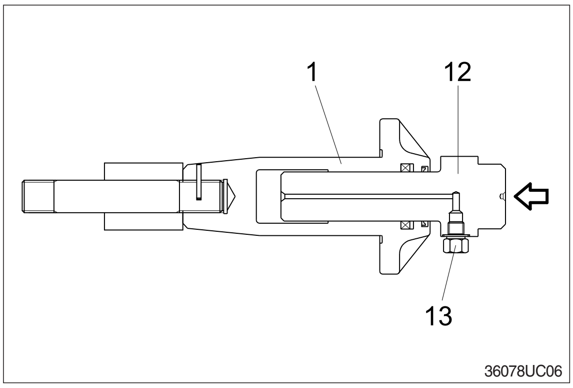
※ When installing dust seal (11) and rod packing (9), take full care so as not to damage the lip.



② Pour grease into body (1), then push in rod (12) by hand.
After take grease out of grease valve mounting hole, let air out.

※ If air letting is not sufficient, it may be difficult to adjust the tension of crawler.

③ Fit grease valve (13) to rod (12).
· Tightening torque : 10±1 kgf · m
(72.3±7.2 lbf · ft)

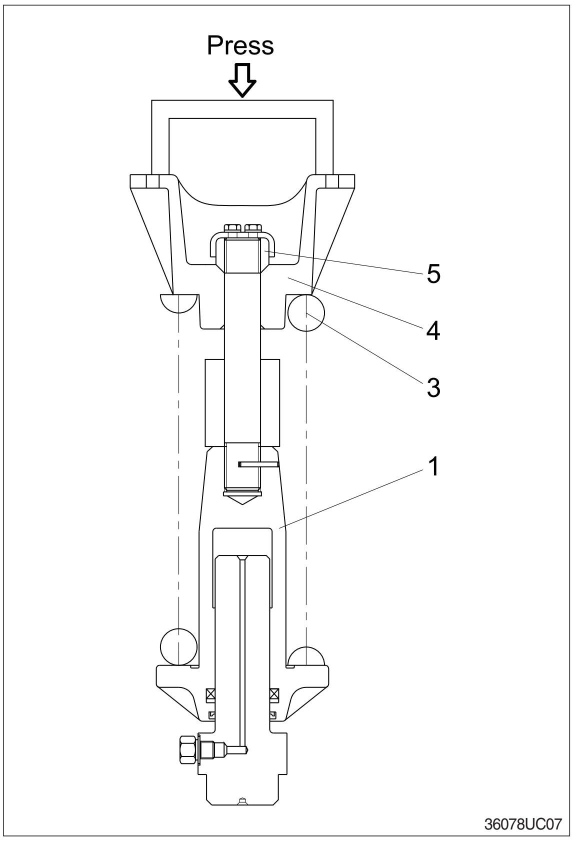


④ Install spring (3) and bracket (4) to body (1).

⑤ Apply pressure to spring (3) with a press and tighten lock nut (5).

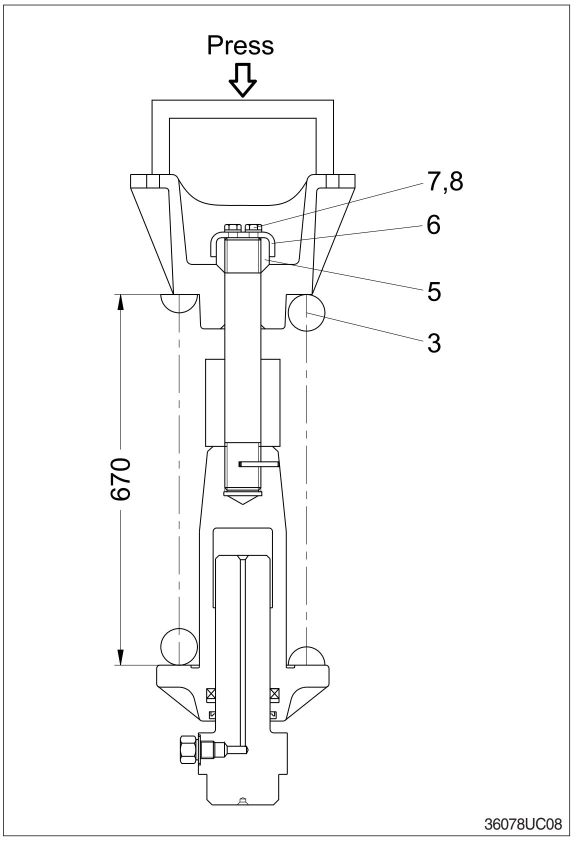
※ Apply sealant before assembling.

※ During the operation, pay attention specially to prevent the press from slipping out.



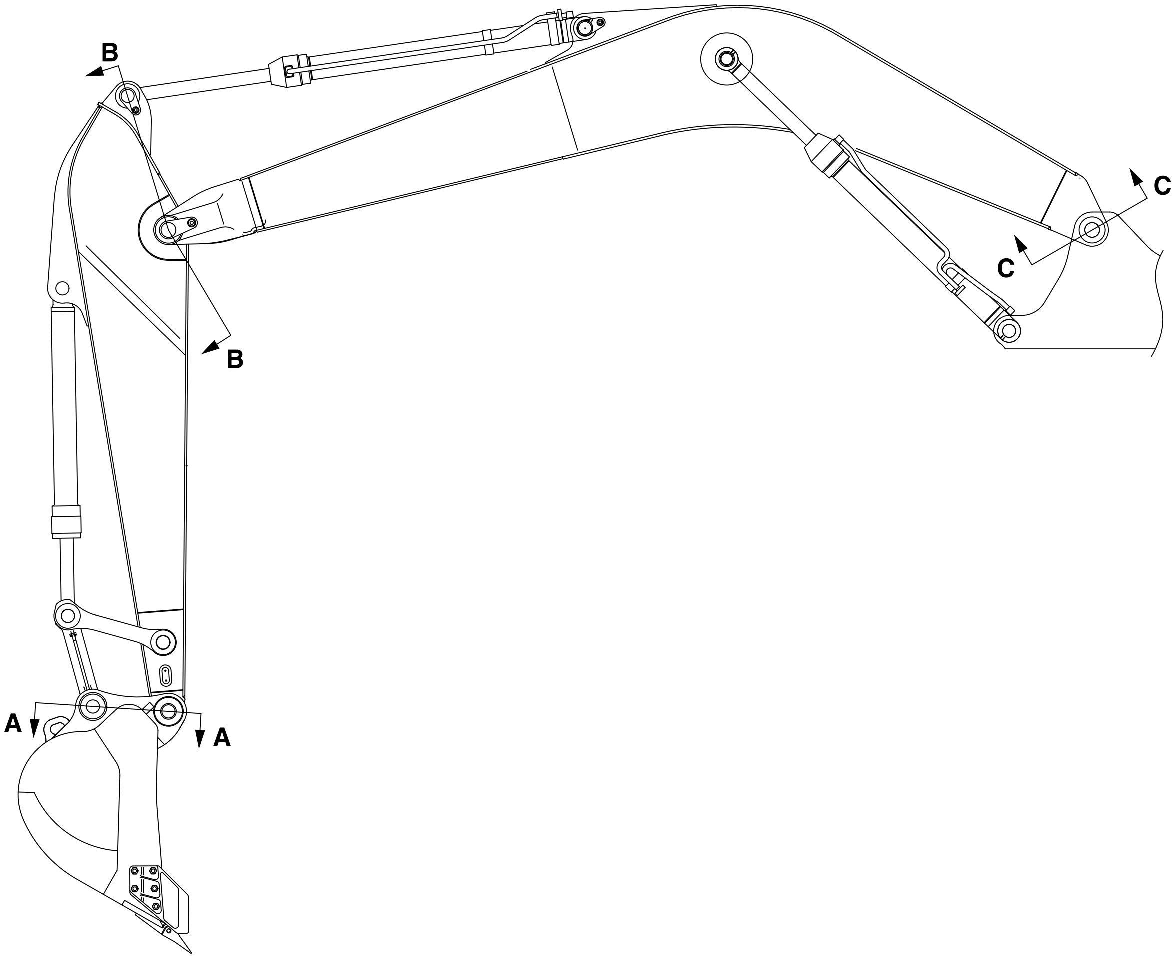
⑥ Lighten the press load and confirm the set length of spring (3).

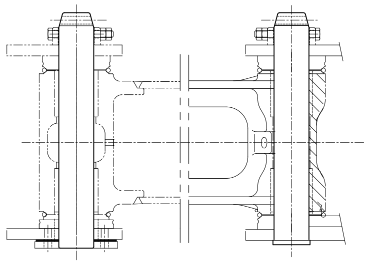
⑦ After the setting of spring (3), install lock plate (6), spring washer (8) and bolt (7).



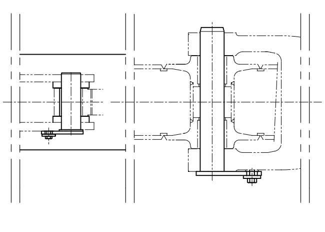
GROUP 11 WORK EQUIPMENT

1. STRUCTURE

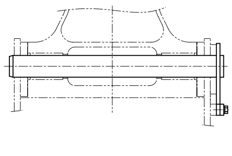




SECTION



SECTION



SECTION C

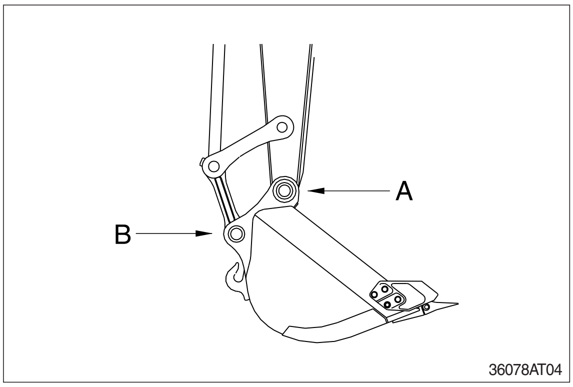
21078DA44

2. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

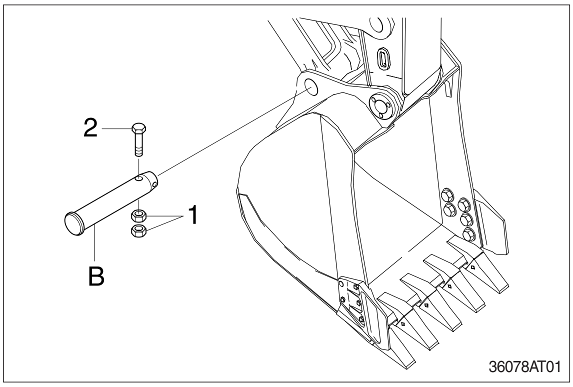
1) BUCKET ASSEMBLY

(1) Removal

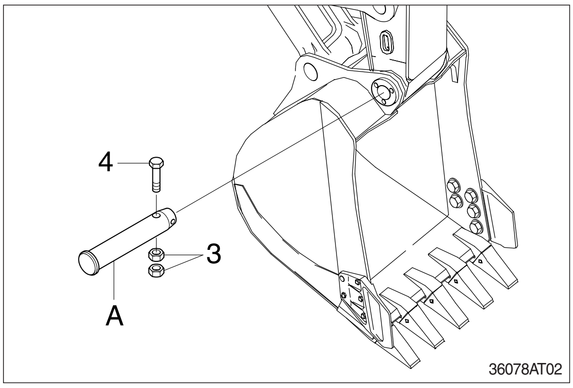
① Lower the work equipment completely to ground with back of bucket facing down.



② Remove nuts (1), bolt (2) and draw out the pin (B).



③ Remove nuts (3), bolt (4) and draw out the pin (A).

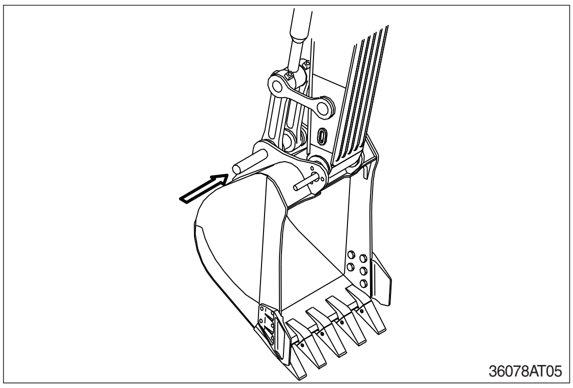


(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

⚠ **When aligning the mounting position of the pin, do not insert your fingers in the pin hole.**

※ Adjust the bucket clearance.
For detail, see operator's manual.



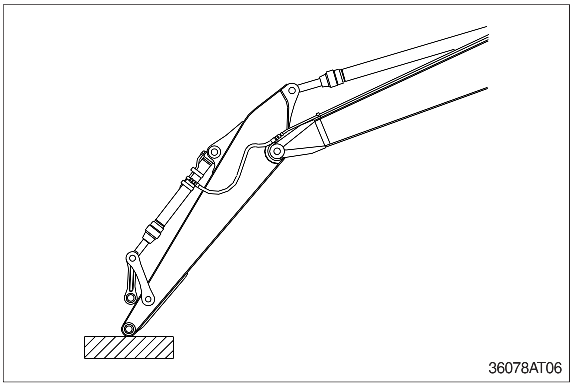
2) ARM ASSEMBLY

(1) Removal

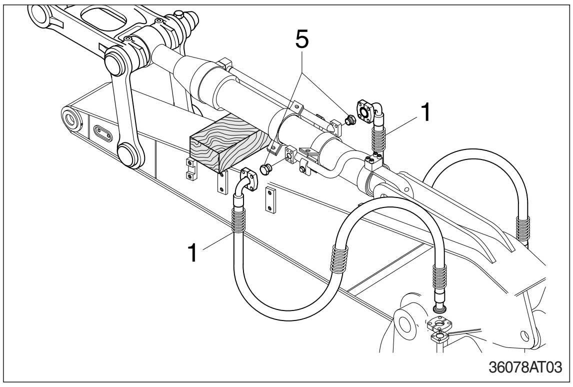
※ Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrated the skin causing serious injury.**

① Remove bucket assembly.
For details, see removal of bucket assembly.



② Disconnect bucket cylinder hose(1).



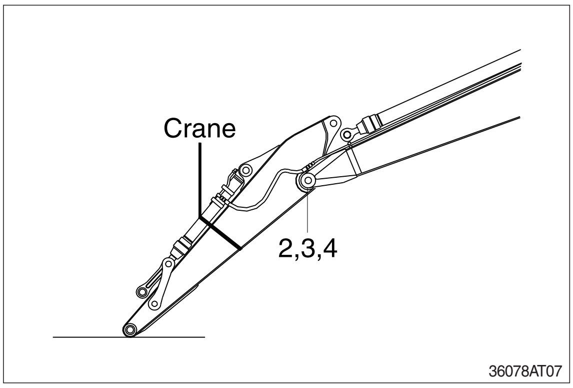
⚠ **Fit blind plugs (5) in the piping at the chassis end securely to prevent oil from spurting out when the engine is started.**

③ Sling arm cylinder assembly, remove spring, pin stopper and pull out pin.

※ Tie the rod with wire to prevent it from coming out.
For details, see removal of arm cylinder assembly.

④ Place a wooden block under the cylinder and bring the cylinder down to it.

⑤ Remove bolt (2), plate (3) and pull out the pin (4) then remove the arm assembly.
· Weight : 1243 ㎏(2740 ㏈)



※ When lifting the arm assembly, always lift the center of gravity.

(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

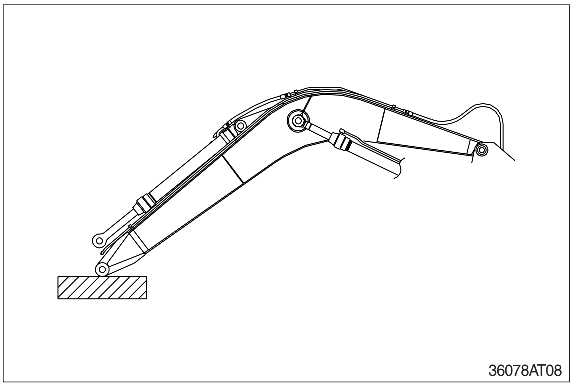
⚠ **When lifting the arm assembly, always lift the center of gravity.**

※ Bleed the air from the cylinder.

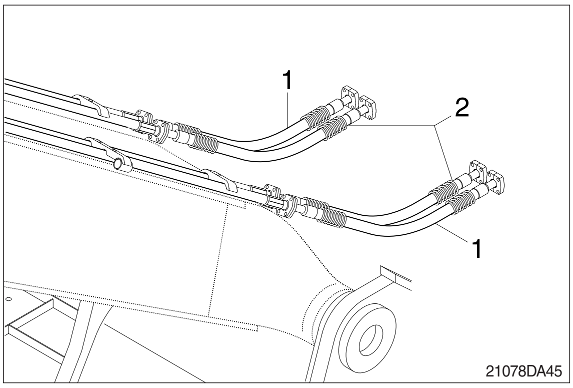
3) BOOM ASSEMBLY

(1) Removal

① Remove arm and bucket assembly.
For details, see removal of arm and bucket assembly.
② Remove boom cylinder assembly from boom.
For details, see removal of arm cylinder assembly.

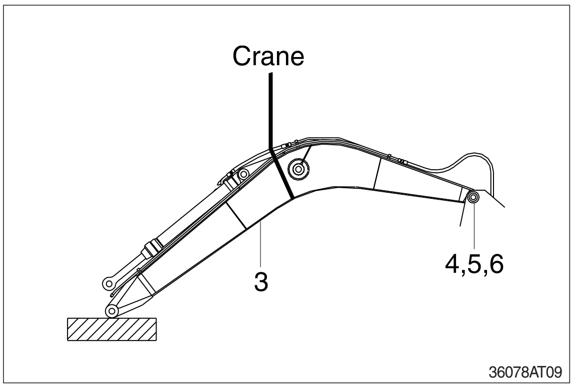

36078AT08

③ Disconnect head lamp wiring.
④ Disconnect bucket cylinder hoses (2) and arm cylinder hoses (1).
※ When the hoses are disconnected, oil may spurt out.
⑤ Sling boom assembly (3).



21078DA45

⑥ Remove bolt (4), plate (5) and pull out the pin (6) then remove boom assembly.
· Weight : 2600 ㎏ (5730 ㏈)
※ When lifting the boom assembly always lift the center of gravity.



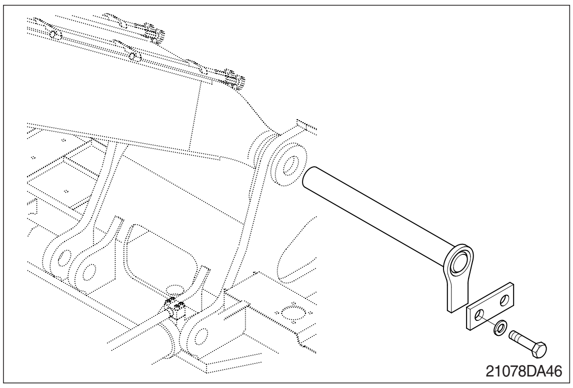
36078AT09

(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

⚠ **When lifting the arm assembly, always lift the center of gravity.**

※ Bleed the air from the cylinder.


21078DA46

SECTION 9 COMPONENT MOUNTING TORQUE

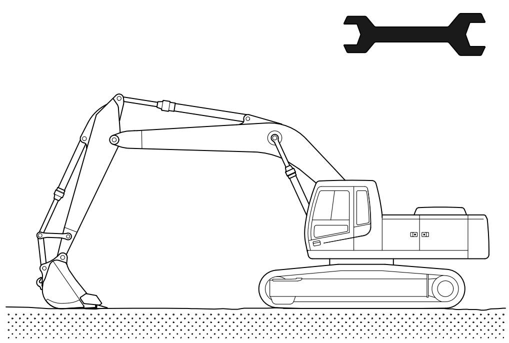
SECTION 9 COMPONENT MOUNTING TORQUE

GROUP 1 INTRODUCTION GUIDE

1. This section shows bolt specifications and standard torque values needed when mounting components to the machine.
2. Use genuine Hyundai spare parts.
   We expressly point out that Hyundai will not accept any responsibility for defects resulted from non-genuine parts.
   In such cases Hyundai cannot assume liability for any damage.

※ Only metric fasteners can be used and incorrect fasteners may result in machine damage or malfunction.

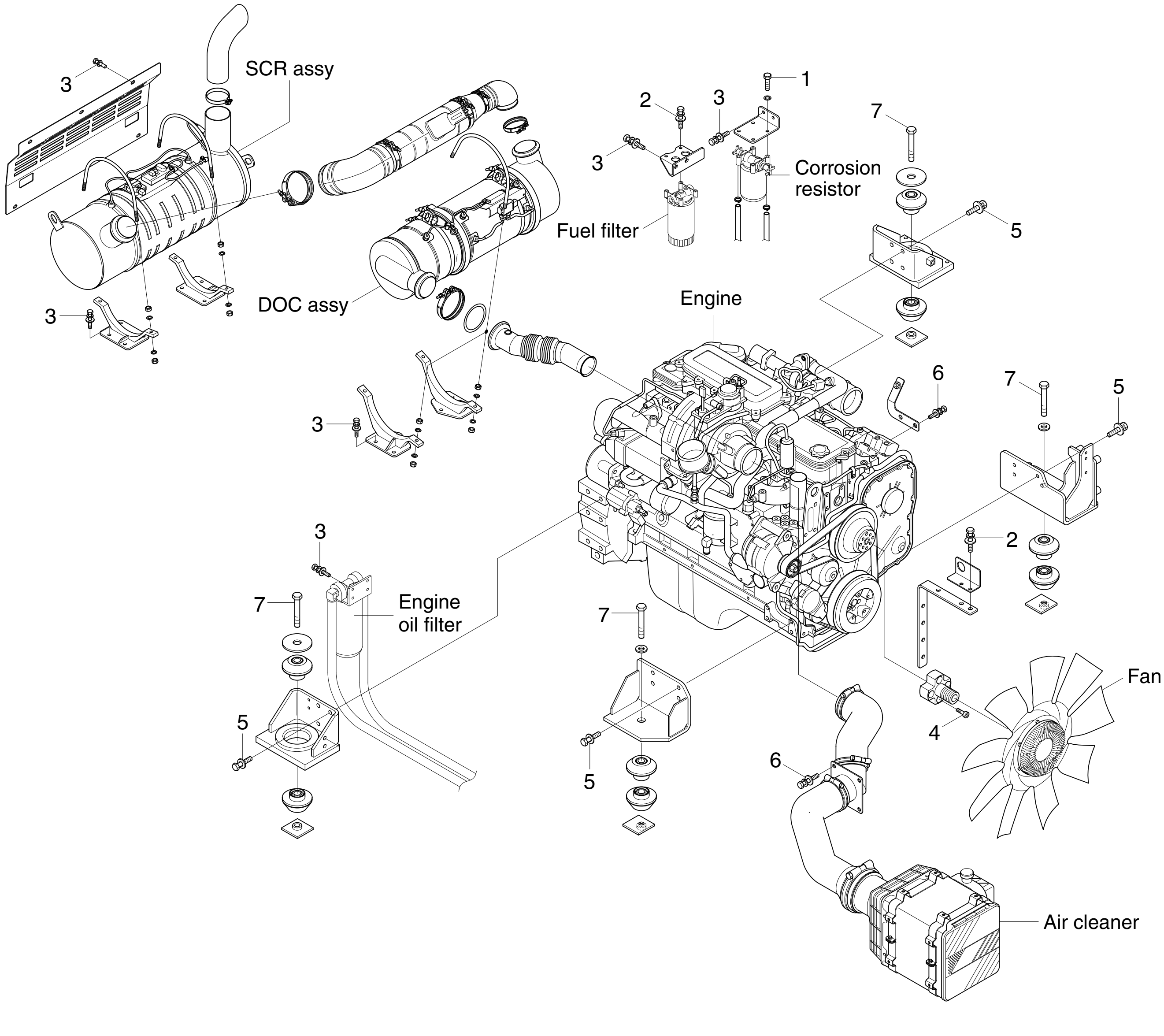
※ Before installation, clean all the components with a non-corrosive cleaner. Bolts and threads must not be worn or damaged.



29079CM00

GROUP 2 ENGINE SYSTEM

ENGINE AND ACCESSORIES MOUNTING

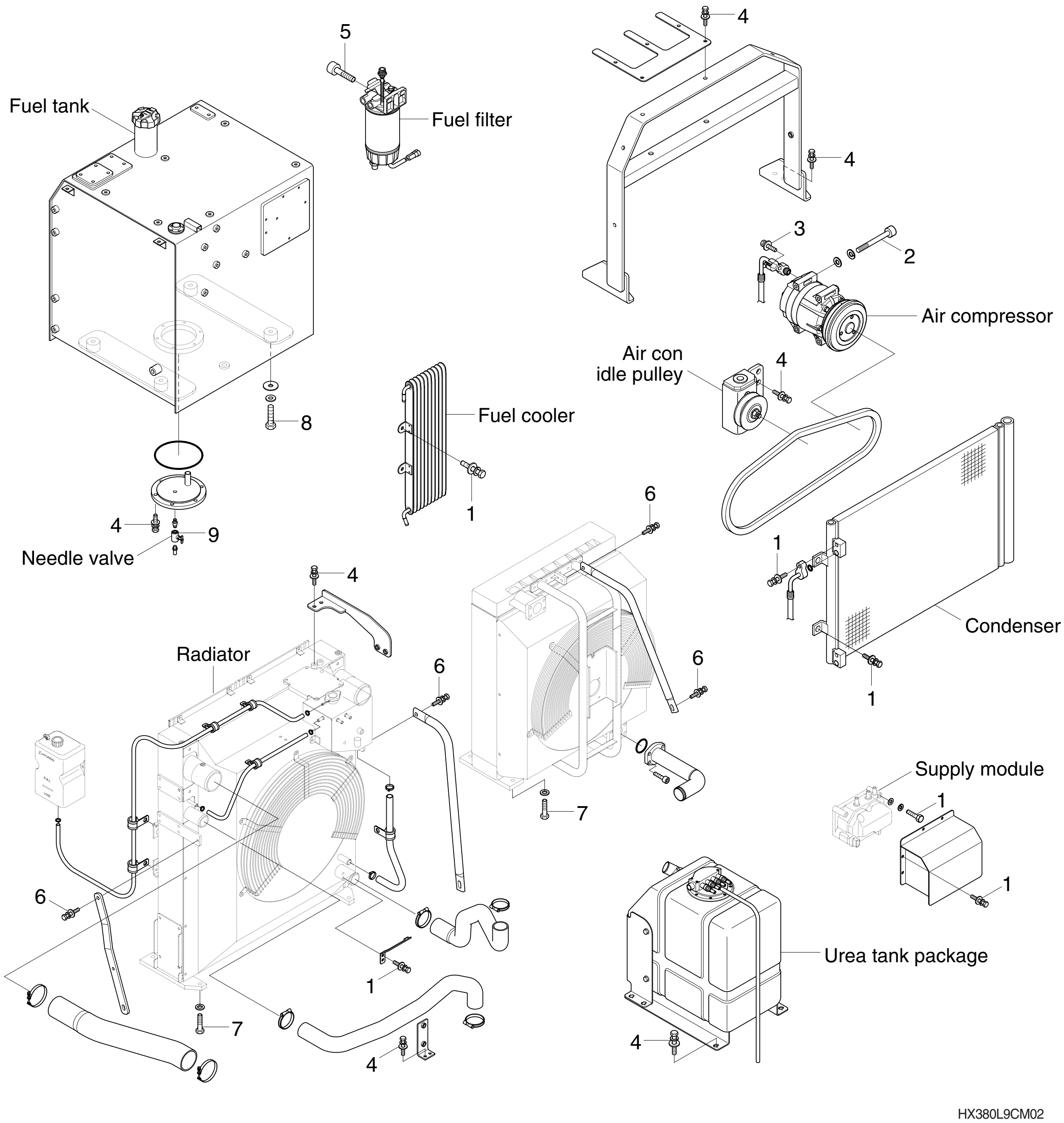


· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 6×1.0	1.44±0.3	10.4±2.2
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
3	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
4	M10×1.5	8.27±1.7	59.8±12.3

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
5	M12×1.75	11.5±1.0	83.2±7.2
6	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
7	M24×3.0	90±9.0	651±65.1

COOLING SYSTEM AND FUEL TANK MOUNTING

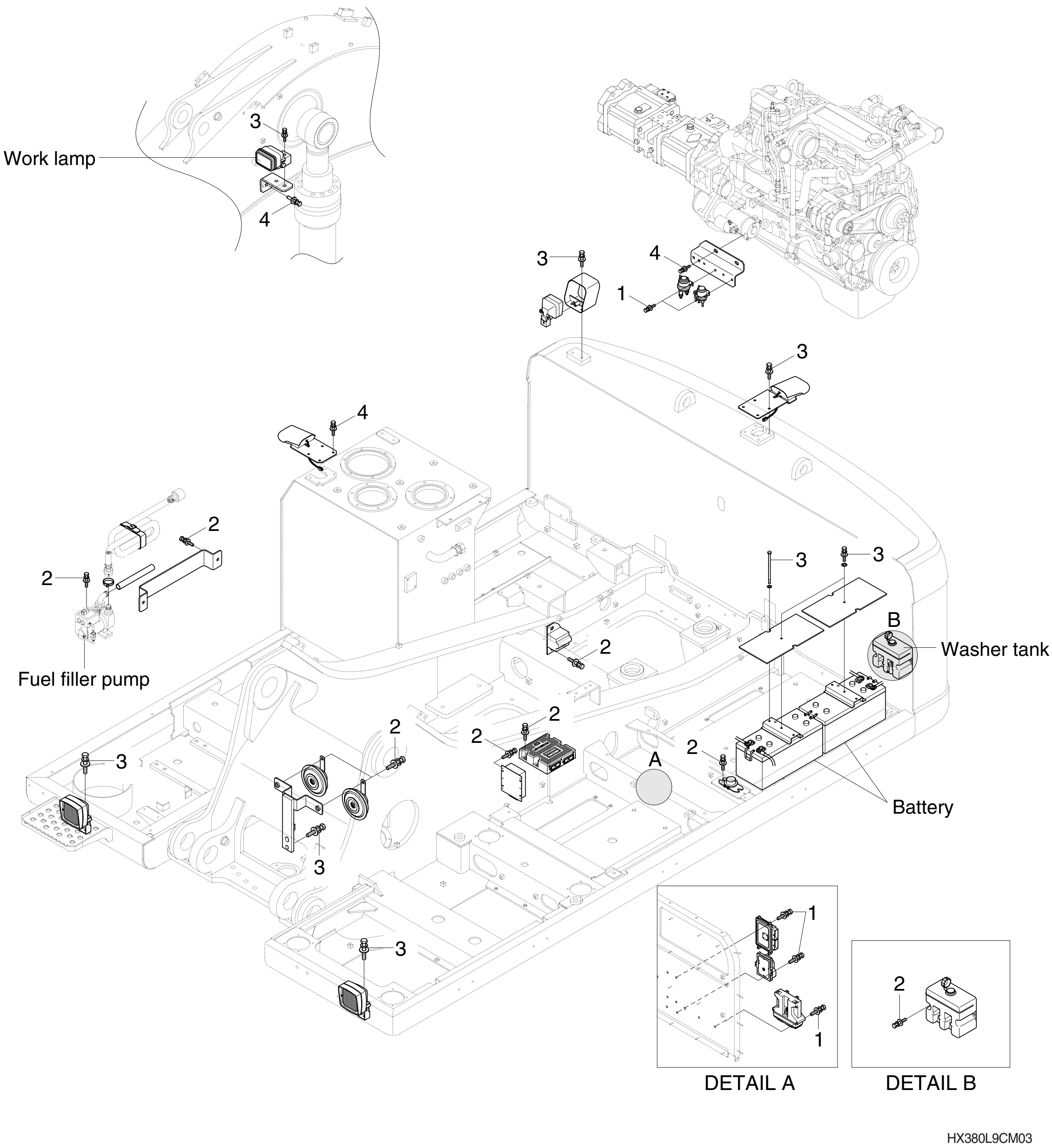


· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
2	M 8×1.25	4.05±0.8	29.3±5.8
3	M10×1.25	7.4±1.5	53.5±10.8
4	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
5	M10×1.5	8.27±1.7	59.8±12.3

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
6	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
7	M16×2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5
8	M20×2.5	46±5.1	333±36.9
9	-	2.3±0.6	16.6±4.3
-	-	-	-

ELECTRIC COMPONENTS MOUNTING 1

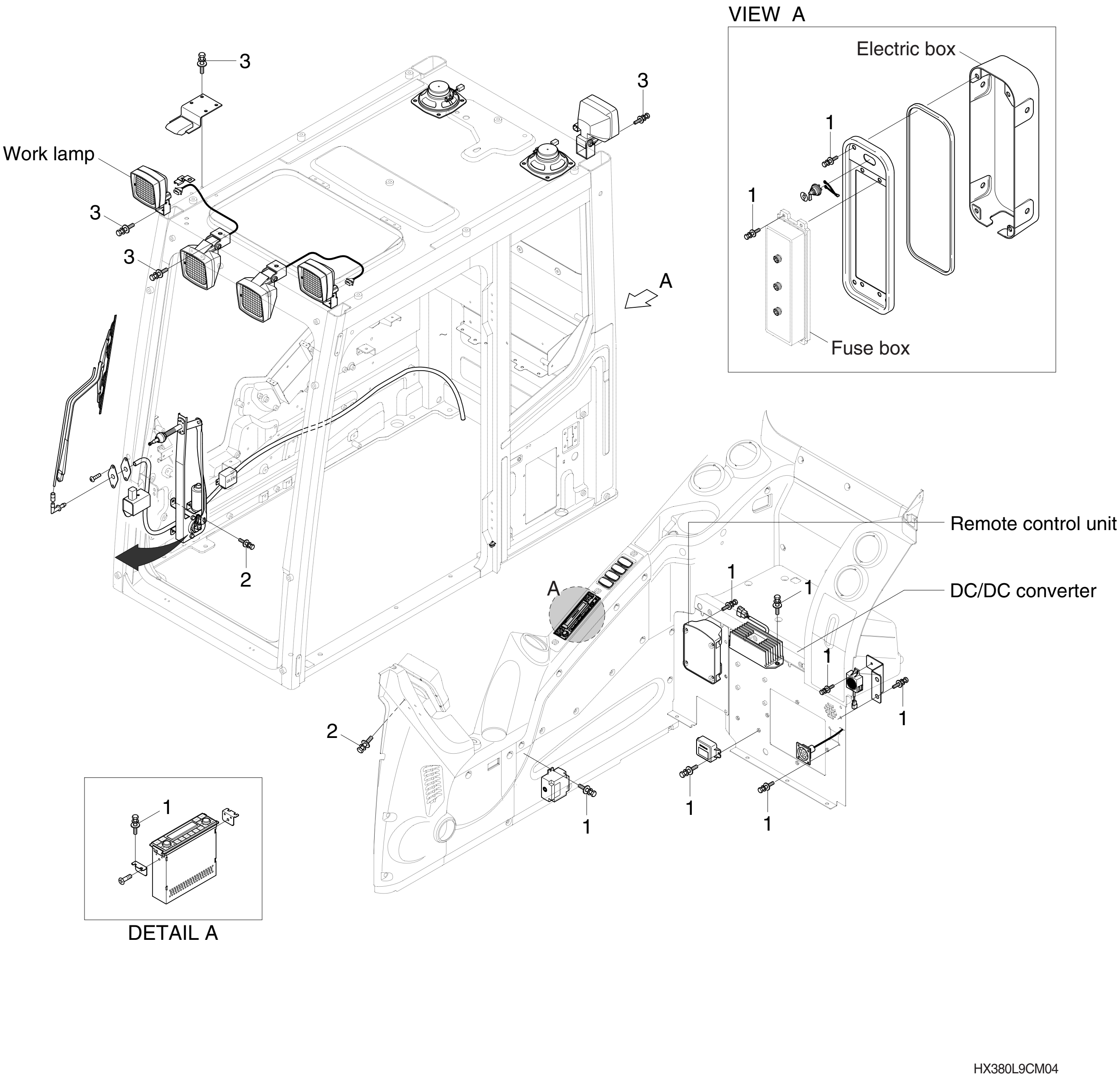


· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 6×1.0	1.05±0.2	7.6±1.45
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
3	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
4	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7

ELECTRIC COMPONENTS MOUNTING 2



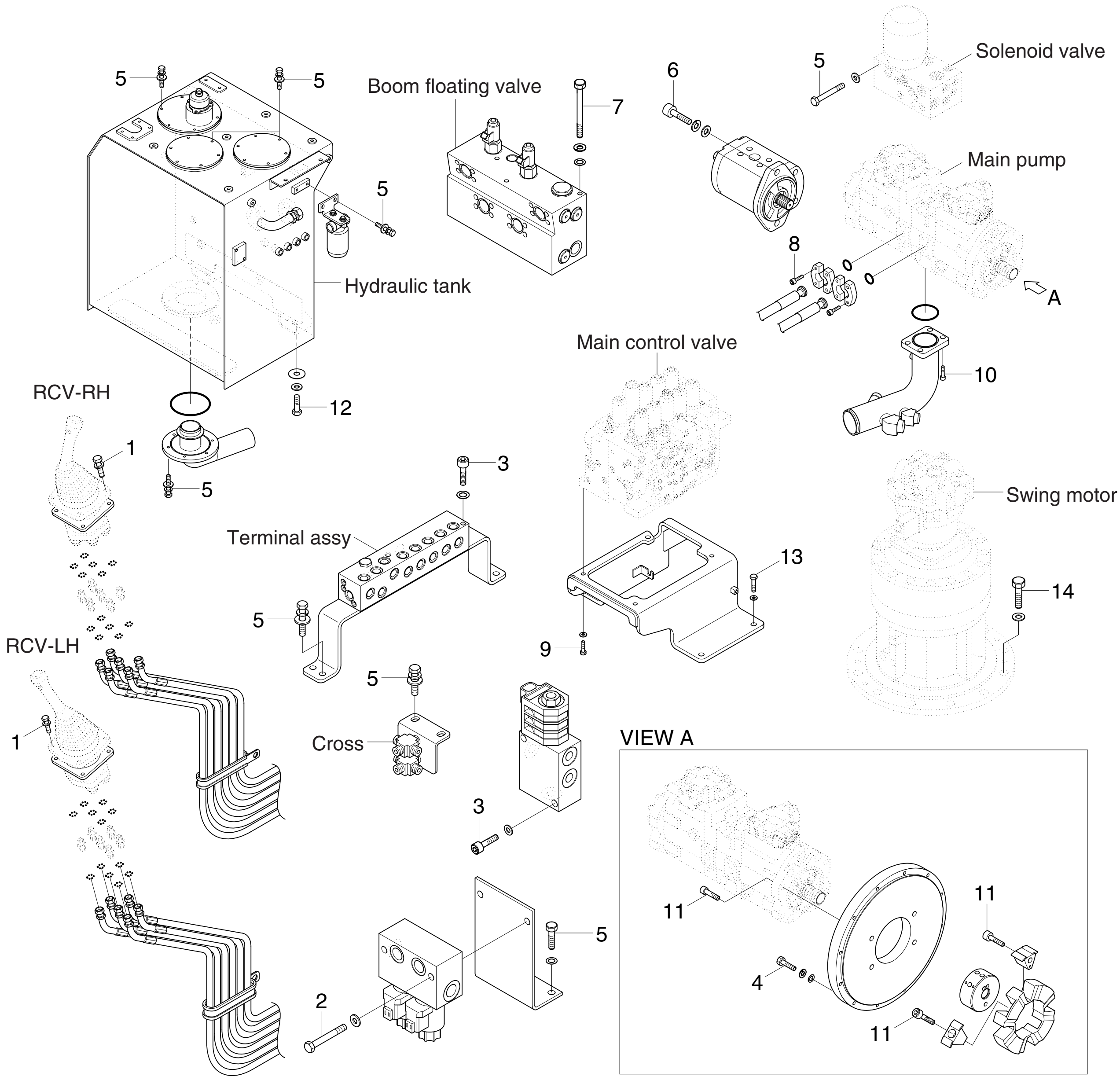
· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 6×1.0	1.05±0.2	7.6±1.45
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
3	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
-	-	-	-

GROUP 4 HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

HYDRAULIC COMPONENTS MOUNTING 1



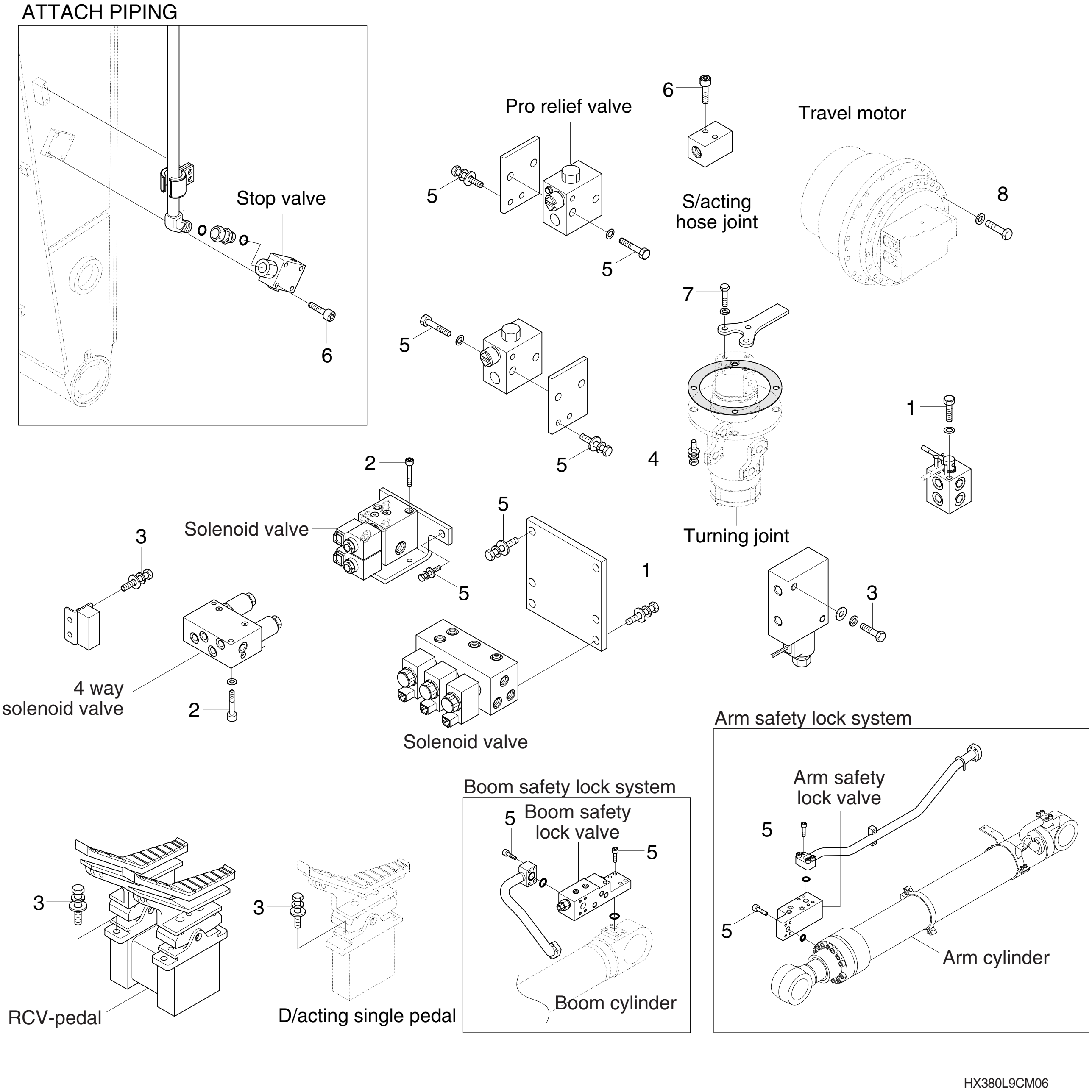
HX380L9CM05

· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 6×1.0	1.05±0.2	7.6±1.45
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
3	M 8×1.25	4.05±0.8	29.3±5.8
4	M10×1.5	4.8±0.3	34.7±2.2
5	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
6	M10×1.5	8.27±1.7	59.8±12.3
7	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
8	M12×1.75	14.7±2.2	106±15.9
9	M16×2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5
10	M16×2.0	35.6±7.1	257±51
11	M20×2.5	46.5±2.5	336±18.1
12	M20×2.5	57.9±5.8	419±42
13	M20×2.5	57.9±8.7	419±62.9
14	M24×3.0	97.8±15	707±108

HYDRAULIC COMPONENTS MOUNTING 2

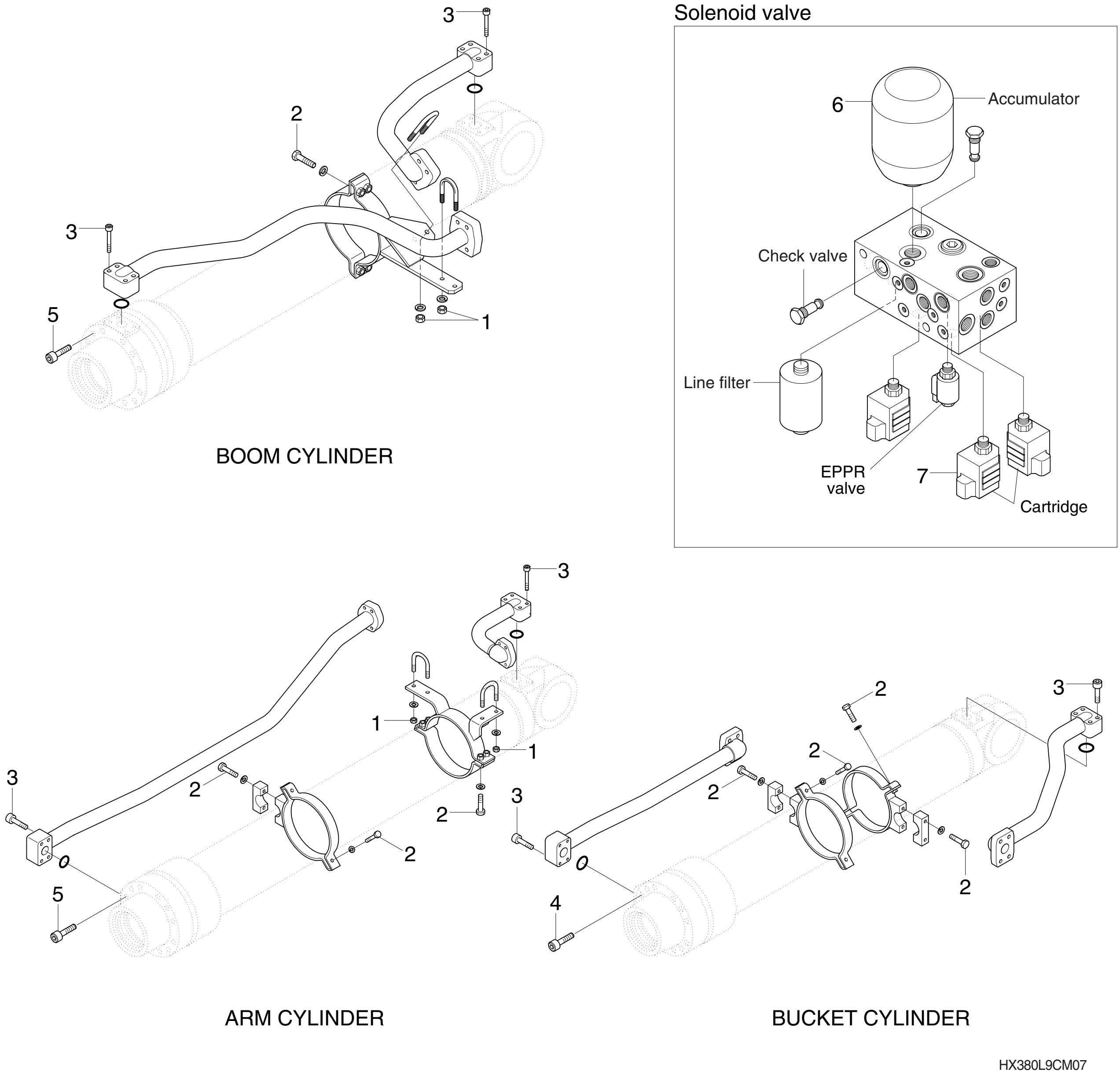


· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
2	M 8×1.25	4.05±0.8	29.3±5.8
3	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
4	M12×1.75	12.3±1.2	89.0±8.7

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
5	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
6	M12×1.75	14.7±2.2	106±15.9
7	M14×2.0	19.6±2.9	142±21.0
8	M20×2.5	57.9±8.7	419±62.9

HYDRAULIC COMPONENTS MOUNTING 3



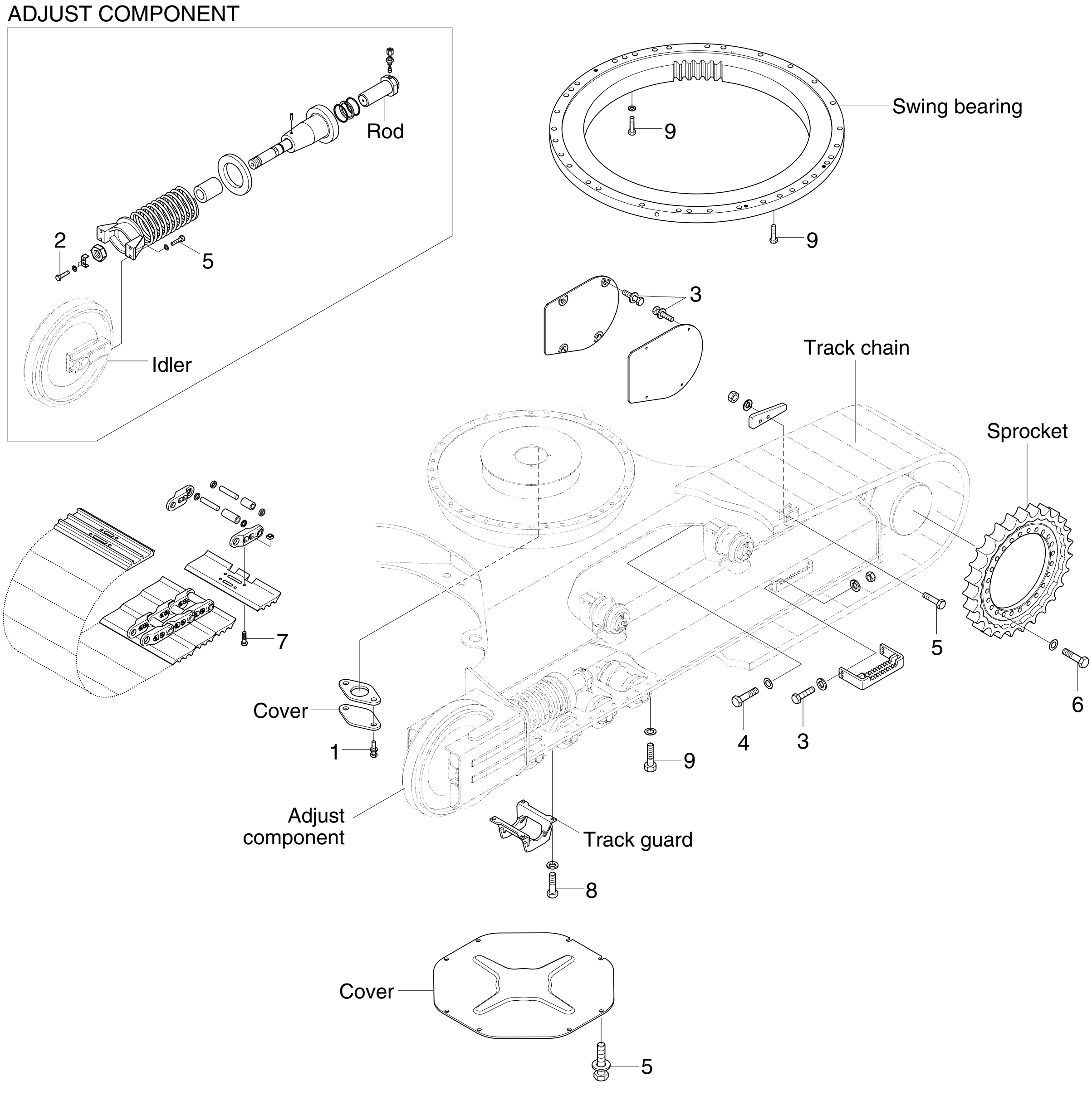
· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M10×1.5	3.2±0.3	23.1±2.2
2	M12×1.75	5.5±0.6	39.8±4.3
3	M12×1.75	9.4±1.0	68.0±7.2
4	M20×2.5	46±5.0	333±36.2

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
5	M22×2.5	63 ±6.0	456 ±43.4
6	-	5.6±0.5	40.5±3.6
7	-	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
-	-	-	-

GROUP 5 UNDERCARRIAGE

UNDERCARRIAGE MOUNTING



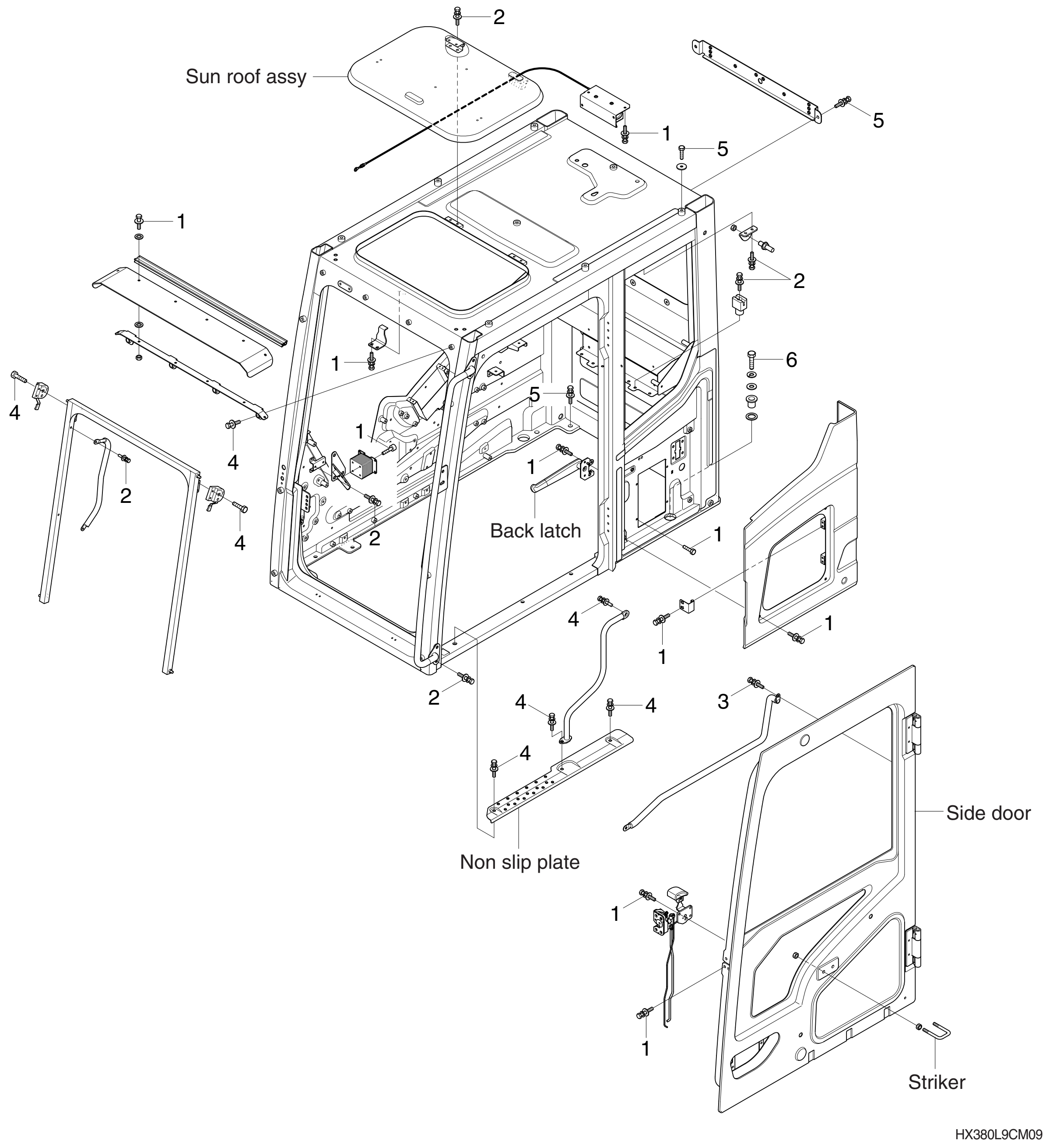
· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
2	M12×1.25	13.3±2.7	96.2±19.5
3	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
4	M16×2.0	29.7±3.0	215±21.7
5	M16×2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
6	M20×2.5	57.9±6.0	419±43.4
7	M24×1.5	140±5.0	1010±36.2
8	M24×3.0	77.4±11	560±80
9	M24×3.0	100±10	723±72.3
-	-	-	-

GROUP 6 STRUCTURE

CAB AND ACCESSORIES MOUNTING

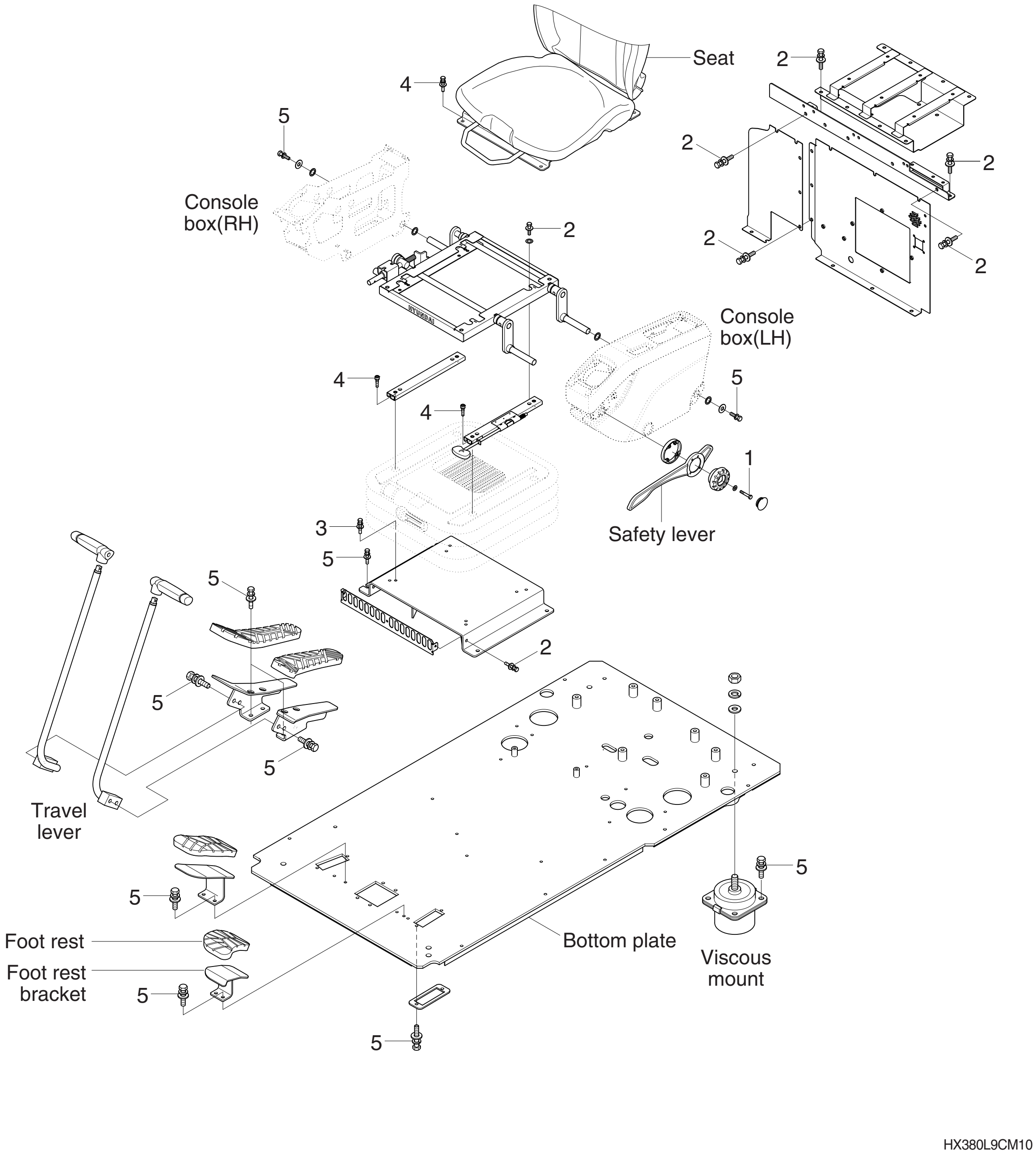


· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 6×1.0	1.05±0.2	7.6±1.45
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
3	M 8×1.25	3.43±0.7	24.8±5.1

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
4	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
5	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
6	M24×3.0	100±15	723±109

CAB INTERIOR MOUNTING

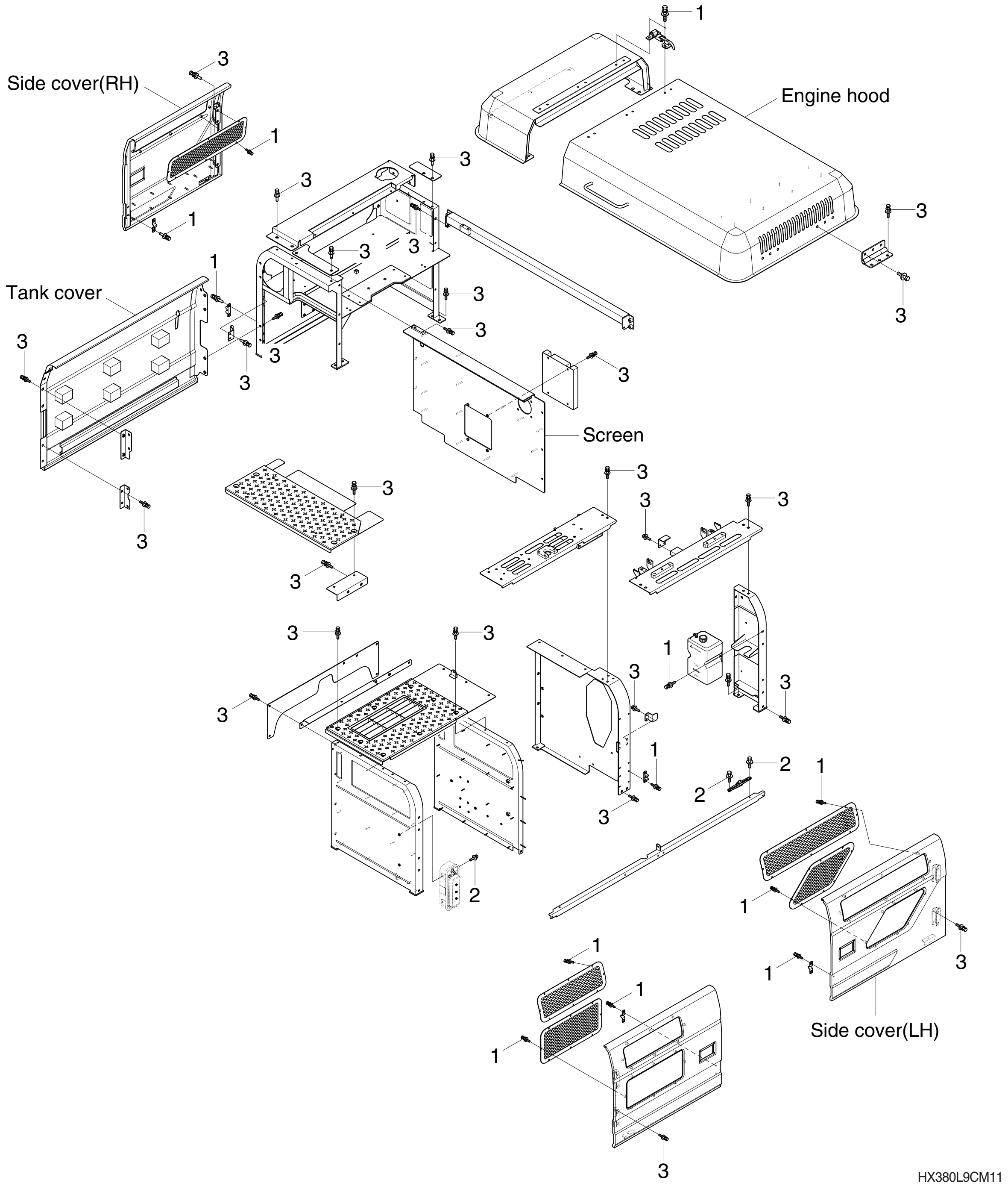


· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 6×1.0	1.05±0.2	7.6±1.45
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
3	M 8×1.25	3.43±0.7	24.8±5.1

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
4	M 8×1.25	4.05±0.8	29.3±5.8
5	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
-	-	-	-

COWLING MOUNTING

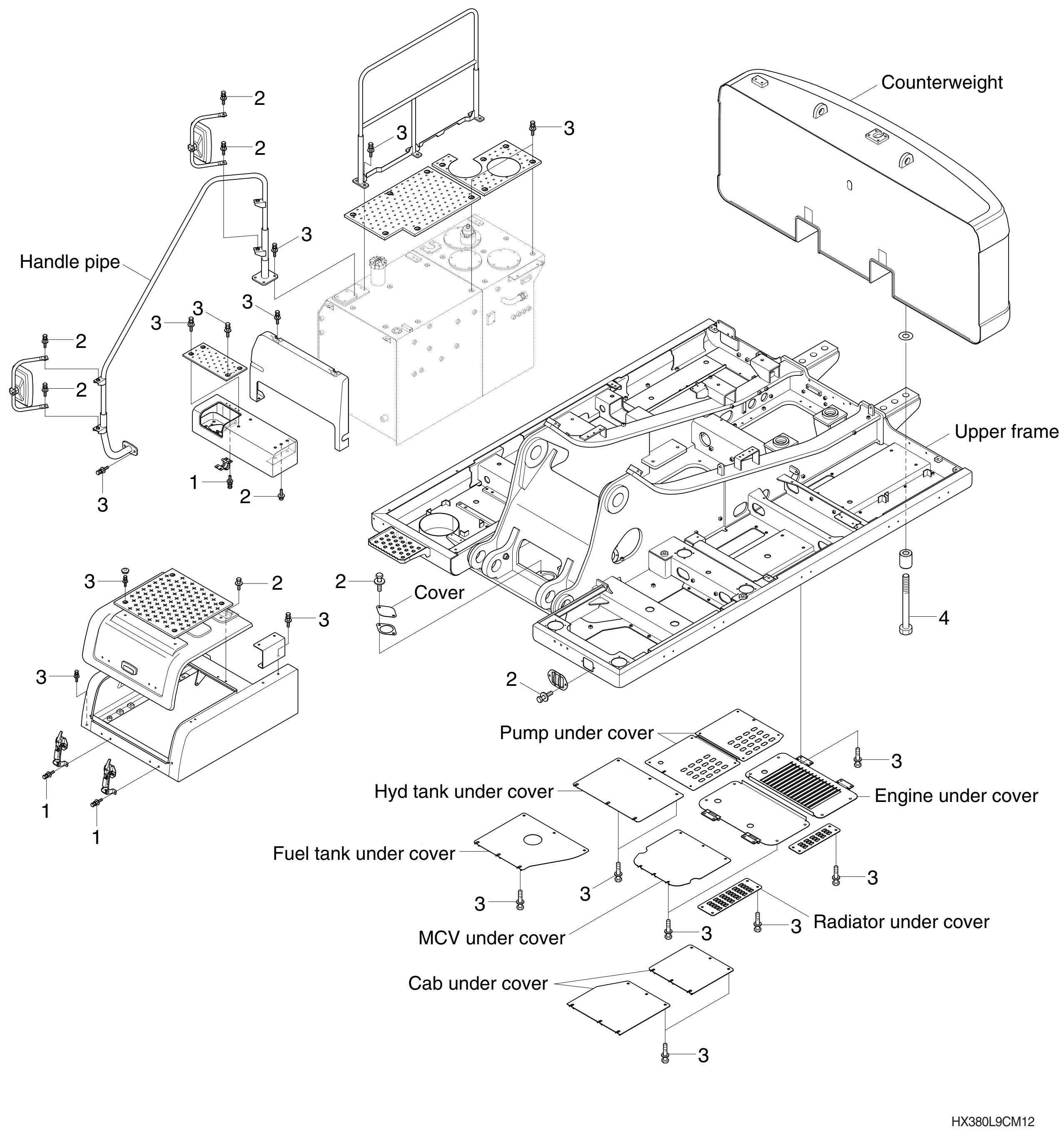


· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
2	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
3	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
-	-	-	-

COUNTERWEIGHT AND COVERS MOUNTING

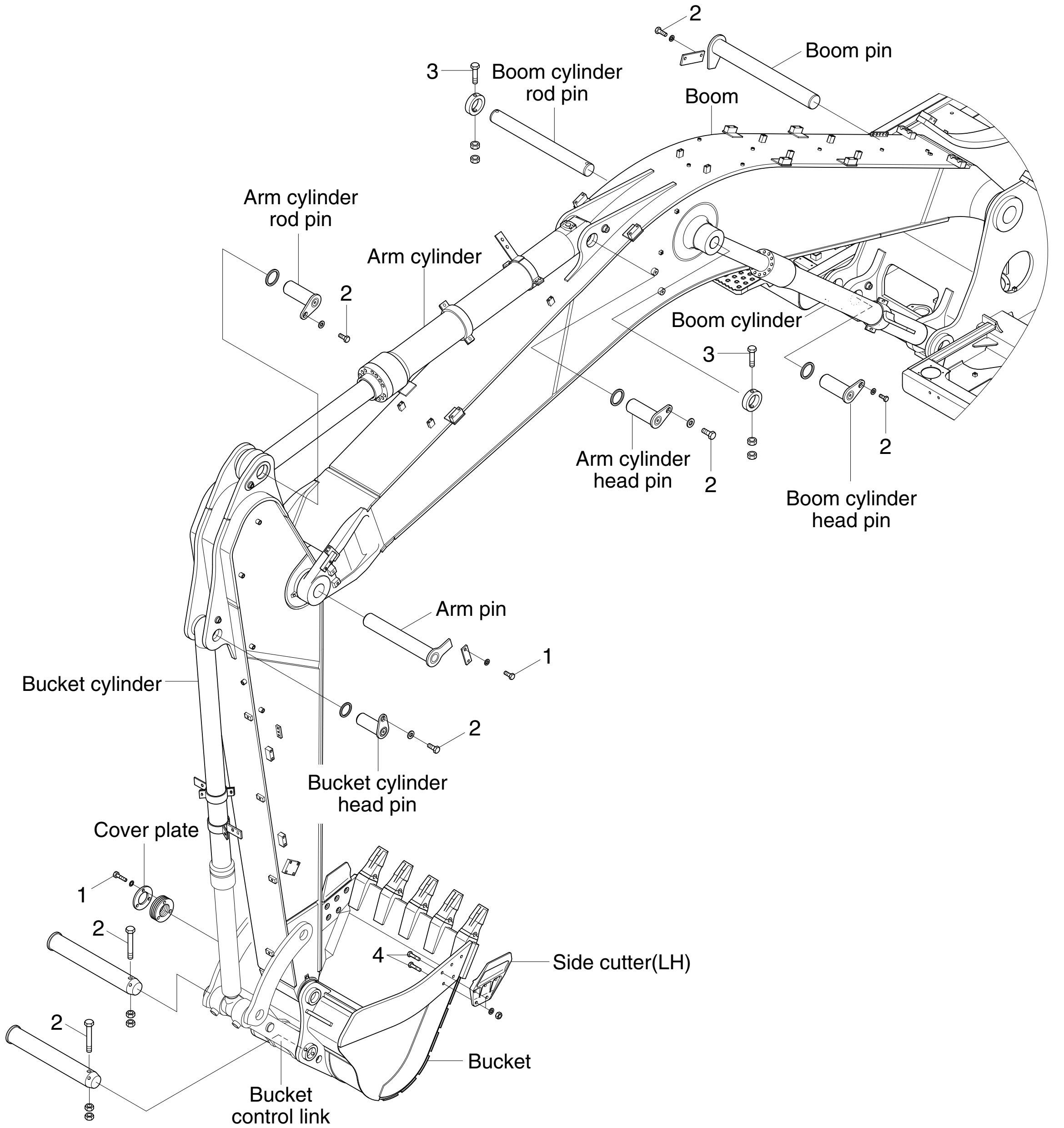


· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
2	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
3	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
4	M36×3.0	337±33	2440±239

GROUP 7 WORK EQUIPMENT



HX380L9CM13

· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M16×2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5
2	M20×2.5	57.9±8.7	419±62.9

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
3	M24×3.0	100±15	723±109
4	M30×3.5	199±30	1439±217